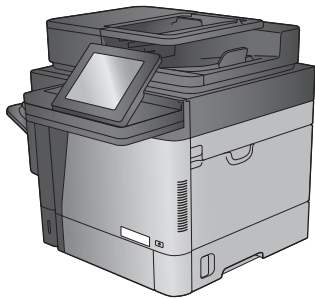


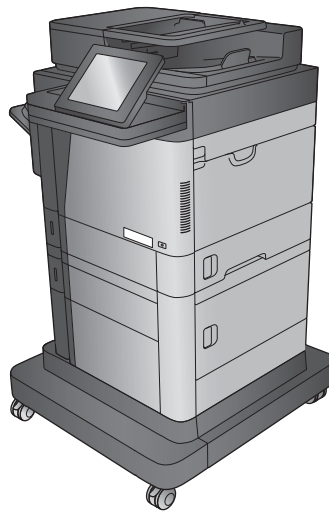


# LaserJet Enterprise MFP M630

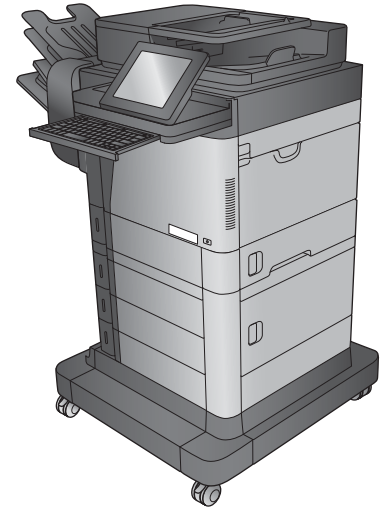
## Repair Manual



M630dn  
M630h



M630f



M630z



[www.hp.com/support/ljMFPM630](http://www.hp.com/support/ljMFPM630)  
For product theory and troubleshooting information, see the Troubleshooting Manual.





# HP LaserJet Enterprise MFP M630

Repair Manual

**Copyright and License**

© 2014 Copyright Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 1, 9/2014

**Trademark Credits**


Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows® XP, and Windows Vista® are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.


## Conventions used in this guide

---


 **TIP:** Helpful hints or shortcuts.

**Reinstallation tip:** Reinstallation helpful hints, shortcuts, or considerations.

 **NOTE:** Information that explains a concept or how to complete a task.

 **IMPORTANT:** Information that help the user to avoid potential product error conditions.

 **CAUTION:** Procedures that the user must follow to avoid losing data or damaging the product.

 **WARNING!** Procedures that the user must follow to avoid personal injury, catastrophic loss of data, or extensive damage to the product.

---



## For additional service and support information

HP service personnel, go to the Link Service Access Work Bench (SAW) at <http://h41302.www4.hp.com/km/saw/home.do>.

Channel partners, go to Link HP Channel Services Network (CNS) at <https://h30125.www3.hp.com/hpcsn>.

- Install and configure
- Product specifications
- Up to date control-panel message ( CPMD) troubleshooting
- Solutions for product issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Service advisories
- Warranty & regulatory information





---

# Table of contents

<b>1 Removal and replacement .....</b>	<b>1</b>
For additional service and support information .....	2
Removal and replacement strategy .....	3
Considerations during removal and replacement .....	3
Required tools .....	5
Types of screws .....	5
Service approach .....	5
Before performing service .....	6
After performing service .....	6
Parts removal order .....	6
Customer self-repair (CSR) assemblies .....	7
Toner cartridge .....	8
Introduction .....	8
Step 1: Remove the toner cartridge .....	8
Step 2: Unpack the replacement toner cartridge .....	9
Step 3: Install the toner cartridge .....	10
Parts Return .....	13
Staple cartridge (for models with a stapler/stacker) .....	14
Introduction .....	14
Step 1: Remove the staple cartridge .....	14
Step 2: Unpack the replacement staple cartridge .....	15
Step 3: Install the staple cartridge .....	16
Parts Return .....	17
Backside background selector .....	18
Introduction .....	18
Step 1: Remove the backside background selector .....	18
Step 2: Unpack the replacement backside background selector .....	20
Step 3: Install the backside background selector .....	21
Parts Return .....	22
Formatter .....	23
Introduction .....	23
Step 1: Remove the formatter .....	24

Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM) .....	25
Identify the component type .....	25
Remove the HDD .....	26
Remove the SSM .....	27
Step 3: Remove the DIMM .....	28
Step 4: Remove the fax PCA .....	29
Step 5: Unpack the replacement formatter .....	30
Step 6: Install the HDD or SSM .....	31
Step 7: Install the DIMM .....	34
Step 8: Install the fax PCA .....	36
Step 9: Install the formatter .....	37
Step 10: Test the installation .....	38
Parts Return .....	39
Hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM) .....	25
Introduction .....	40
Step 1: Remove the formatter .....	40
Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM) .....	25
Identify the component type .....	42
Remove the HDD .....	43
Remove the SSM .....	44
Step 3: Unpack the replacement HDD or SSM .....	45
Step 4: Install the HDD or SSM .....	45
Install the HDD .....	46
Install the SSM .....	49
Step 5: Install the formatter .....	37
Step 6: Test the installation .....	51
Step 7: Reinstall the product firmware .....	52
Parts Return .....	53
Memory DIMM .....	54
Introduction .....	54
Step 1: Remove the formatter .....	54
Step 2: Remove the memory DIMM .....	55
Step 3: Unpack the replacement DIMM .....	56
Step 4: Reinstall the memory DIMM .....	57
Step 5: Install the formatter .....	37
Step 6: Test the installation .....	59
Parts Return .....	60
Fax printed-circuit assembly (PCA) .....	61
Introduction .....	61
Step 1: Remove the formatter .....	61
Step 2: Remove the fax PCA .....	62

Step 3: Unpack the replacement fax PCA .....	64
Step 4: Install the fax PCA .....	65
Step 5: Install the formatter .....	37
Step 6: Test the installation .....	66
Parts Return .....	67
Output bin and bin base assembly .....	68
Introduction .....	68
Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly .....	68
Step 2: Unpack the replacement output bin and bin base assembly .....	68
Step 3: Install the output bin and bin base assembly .....	69
Parts Return .....	69
Duplex accessory .....	70
Introduction .....	70
Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox .....	70
Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory .....	72
Step 3: Unpack the replacement duplex accessory .....	73
Step 4: Install the duplex accessory .....	73
Step 5: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox .....	74
Step 6: Turn the product power on .....	75
Parts Return .....	75
Fuser-entrance guide .....	76
Introduction .....	76
Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox .....	76
Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory .....	78
Step 3: Remove the fuser-entrance guide .....	79
Step 4: Unpack the replacement fuser-entrance guide .....	80
Step 5: Install the fuser-entrance guide .....	80
Step 6: Install the duplex accessory .....	80
Step 7: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox .....	81
Step 8: Turn the product power on .....	82
Parts Return .....	82
Fuser .....	83
Introduction .....	83
Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox .....	83
Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory .....	85
Step 3: Remove the fuser-entrance guide .....	86
Step 4: Remove the fuser .....	87
Step 5: Unpack the replacement fuser .....	87
Step 6: Install the fuser .....	87
Step 7: Install the fuser-entrance guide .....	88
Step 8: Install the duplex accessory .....	88

Step 9: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox .....	89
Step 10: Turn the product power on .....	90
Step 11: Reset the supplies counter .....	90
Parts Return .....	91
Control-panel assembly .....	92
Introduction .....	92
Step 1: Remove the control panel .....	93
Step 2: Remove the keyboard (M630z only) .....	97
Step 3: Unpack the replacement control-panel assembly .....	101
Step 4: Install the keyboard (M630z only) .....	102
Step 5: Install the control-panel assembly .....	105
Parts Return .....	109
Keyboard assembly (M630z only) .....	92
Introduction .....	92
Step 1: Remove the control panel .....	111
Step 2: Remove the keyboard .....	97
Step 3: Unpack the replacement keyboard assembly .....	118
Step 4: Install the keyboard .....	102
Step 5: Install the control-panel assembly .....	122
Parts Return .....	126
Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers .....	127
Introduction .....	127
Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers .....	127
Step 2: Unpack the replacement rollers .....	131
Step 3: Install the Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers .....	132
Parts Return .....	136
Tray 2-5 pickup and feed rollers .....	137
Introduction .....	137
Step 1: Remove the Tray 2 - 5 pickup and feed rollers .....	137
Step 2: Unpack the replacement rollers .....	140
Step 3: Install the Tray 2 - 5 pickup and feed rollers .....	141
Parts Return .....	143
Transfer roller .....	144
Introduction .....	144
Step 1: Remove the transfer roller .....	144
Step 2: Unpack the replacement roller .....	148
Step 3: Install the transfer roller .....	149
Parts Return .....	151
Document-feeder maintenance kit .....	152
Introduction .....	152
Step 1: Remove the document-feeder rollers .....	152

Step 2: Remove the document-feeder separation pad .....	154
Step 3: Unpack the replacement rollers and separation pad .....	155
Step 4: Install the document-feeder separation pad .....	156
Step 5: Install the document-feeder rollers .....	159
Step 6: Reset the supplies counter .....	160
Parts Return .....	160
Document feeder white backing .....	161
Introduction .....	161
Step 1: Remove the document feeder white backing .....	161
Step 2: Unpack the replacement document feeder white backing .....	162
Step 3: Install the document feeder white backing .....	164
Parts Return .....	168
Document feeder and image scanner assemblies .....	169
Document-feeder mylar strip .....	170
Introduction .....	170
Step 1: Remove the document-feeder mylar strip .....	170
Step 2: Unpack the replacement mylar strip .....	173
Step 3: Install the document-feeder mylar strip .....	173
Parts Return .....	175
Document-feeder roller cover .....	176
Reinstall the document-feeder roller cover .....	181
Scanner rear cover .....	182
Introduction .....	182
Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover .....	182
Step 2: Install the scanner rear cover .....	183
Step 3: Turn the product power on .....	184
Scanner control board (SCB) .....	185
Introduction .....	185
Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover .....	185
Step 2: Remove the SCB .....	186
Step 4: Unpack the replacement SCB .....	192
Step 4: Install the SCB .....	193
Step 5: Install the scanner rear cover .....	199
Step 6: Turn the product power on .....	200
Parts Return .....	200
Document feeder .....	201
Introduction .....	201
Step 1: Remove the backside background selector .....	202
Step 2: Remove the scanner rear cover .....	203
Step 3: Remove the SCB .....	204
Step 4: Remove the document feeder .....	210

Step 5: Unpack the replacement document feeder .....	211
Step 6: Install the document feeder .....	212
Step 7: Install the SCB .....	213
Step 8: Install the scanner rear cover .....	219
Step 9: Install the backside background selector .....	221
Step 10: Install the document feeder white backing .....	223
Step 11: Reset the supplies counters and calibrate the scanner .....	227
Parts Return .....	228
Document-feeder hinge assembly .....	229
Remove the document-feeder hinge assembly .....	229
Image scanner assembly .....	230
Introduction .....	230
Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover .....	231
Step 2: Remove the SCB .....	231
Step 3: Remove the document feeder .....	237
Step 4: Remove the image scanner assembly .....	238
Step 5: Unpack the replacement image scanner assembly .....	246
Step 6: Install the image scanner assembly .....	247
Step 7: Install the document feeder .....	254
Step 8: Install the SCB .....	256
Step 9: Install the scanner rear cover .....	262
Step 10: Install the replacement document feeder white backing .....	223
Step 11: Reset the supplies counters and calibrate the scanner .....	271
Parts Return .....	271
Covers, doors, tray, and external panels (product base) .....	272
Identification and location (product base) .....	273
Front cover .....	274
Introduction .....	274
Step 1: Remove the front cover .....	274
Step 2: Unpack the replacement front cover .....	277
Step 3: Install the front cover .....	277
Step 4: Turn the product power on .....	281
Parts Return .....	281
Envelope feeder cover .....	282
Image scanner cable cover .....	283
Introduction .....	283
Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover .....	283
Step 2: Unpack the replacement image scanner cable cover .....	284
Step 3: Install the image scanner cable cover .....	285
Step 4: Turn the product power on .....	286
Parts Return .....	286

Tray 1 cover .....	287
Introduction .....	287
Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 cover .....	287
Step 2: Unpack the replacement Tray 1 cover .....	290
Step 3: Install the Tray 1 cover .....	291
Step 4: Turn the product power on .....	293
Parts Return .....	294
Tray .....	295
Side-rear cover .....	296
Introduction .....	296
Step 1: Remove the formatter .....	24
Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox .....	297
Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory .....	299
Step 4: Remove the side-rear cover .....	300
Step 5: Unpack the replacement side-rear cover .....	301
Step 6: Install the side-rear cover .....	301
Step 7: Install the duplex accessory .....	302
Step 8: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox .....	303
Step 9: Install the formatter .....	37
Step 10: Test the installation .....	305
Parts Return .....	306
Front-left cover and logo panel assembly .....	307
Remove the front-left cover and logo panel assembly .....	307
Install the front-left cover and logo panel assembly .....	310
Power-switch assembly .....	314
Introduction .....	314
Step 1: Remove the front cover .....	314
Step 2: Remove the power-switch assembly .....	317
Step 3: Unpack the replacement power-switch assembly .....	317
Step 4: Install the power-switch assembly .....	318
Step 5: Install the front cover .....	318
Step 6: Turn the product power on .....	322
Parts Return .....	322
Rear-right cover .....	323
Introduction .....	323
Step 1: Remove the rear-right cover .....	323
Step 2: Unpack the replacement rear-right cover .....	324
Step 3: Install the rear-right cover .....	325
Step 4: Turn the product power on .....	326
Parts Return .....	326
Rear-left cover .....	327

Introduction .....	327
Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover .....	327
Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover .....	328
Step 3: Remove the rear-left cover .....	329
Step 4: Unpack the replacement rear-left cover .....	330
Step 5: Install the rear-left cover .....	331
Step 6: Install the rear-right cover .....	332
Step 7: Install the image scanner cable cover .....	333
Step 8: Turn the product power on .....	334
Parts Return .....	334
Rear-top cover .....	335
Introduction .....	335
Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover .....	335
Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover .....	336
Step 3: Remove the rear-left cover .....	337
Step 4: Remove the rear-top cover .....	338
Step 5: Unpack the replacement rear-top cover .....	339
Step 6: Install the rear-top cover .....	340
Step 7: Install the rear-left cover .....	341
Step 8: Install the rear-right cover .....	342
Step 9: Install the image scanner cable cover .....	343
Step 10: Turn the product power on .....	344
Parts Return .....	344
Right-lower door .....	345
Introduction .....	345
Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 cover .....	345
Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover .....	348
Step 3: Remove the right-lower door .....	349
Step 4: Unpack the replacement right-lower door .....	351
Step 5: Install the right-lower door .....	351
Step 6: Install the rear-right cover .....	353
Step 7: Install the Tray 1 cover .....	354
Step 8: Turn the product power on .....	356
Parts Return .....	357
Document-feeder hinge cover .....	358
Remove the document-feeder hinge cover .....	358
Install the document-feeder hinge cover .....	360
Main assemblies .....	361
Registration assembly .....	362
Cassette-door-open detection switch (SW105) .....	363
Introduction .....	363



Step 1: Remove the cassette-door-open detection switch .....	363
Step 2: Unpack the replacement switch assembly .....	365
Step 3: Install the cassette-door-open detection switch .....	366
Step 4: Turn the product power on .....	368
Parts Return .....	368
Reverse assembly upper guide assembly .....	369
Install the reverse assembly upper guide assembly .....	370
Reverse assembly .....	371
Laser/scanner assembly .....	375
Remove the laser/scanner assembly .....	375
Cartridge sensor assembly .....	378
Remove the cartridge sensor assembly .....	378
Temperature sensor .....	380
Remove the temperature sensor .....	380
DC controller shield-plate assembly .....	382
Introduction .....	382
Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover .....	382
Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover .....	383
Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover .....	384
Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly .....	385
Step 5: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly .....	386
Step 6: Install the rear-top cover .....	387
Step 7: Install the rear-right cover .....	388
Step 8: Install the image scanner cable cover .....	389
Step 9: Turn the product power on .....	390
DC controller .....	391
Introduction .....	391
Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover .....	392
Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover .....	392
Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover .....	393
Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly .....	394
Step 5: Remove the DC controller .....	395
Step 6: Unpack the replacement DC controller .....	397
Step 7: Install the DC controller .....	398
Step 8: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly .....	399
Step 9: Install the rear-top cover .....	399
Step 10: Install the rear-right cover .....	400
Step 11: Install the image scanner cable cover .....	401
Step 12: Turn the product power on .....	402
Parts Return .....	402
Tray 1 pickup assembly .....	403

Introduction .....	403
Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover .....	404
Step 2: Remove the rear-top cover .....	404
Step 3: Remove the Tray 1 cover .....	405
Step 4: Remove the rear-right cover .....	408
Step 5: Remove the right-lower door .....	409
Step 6: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly .....	411
Step 7: Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly .....	412
Step 8: Unpack the replacement Tray 1 pickup assembly .....	414
Step 9: Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly .....	415
Step 10: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly .....	417
Step 11: Install the right-lower door .....	418
Step 12: Install the rear-right cover .....	420
Step 13: Install the Tray 1 cover .....	421
Step 14: Install the rear-top cover .....	423
Step 15: Install the image scanner cable cover .....	424
Step 16: Turn the product power on .....	425
Parts Return .....	425
Interconnect board (ICB) .....	426
Introduction .....	426
Step 1: Remove the formatter .....	24
Step 2: Remove the image scanner cable cover .....	428
Step 3: Remove the rear-right cover .....	428
Step 4: Remove the rear-top cover .....	429
Step 5: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly .....	430
Step 6: Remove the ICB .....	431
Step 7: Unpack the replacement interconnect board .....	433
Step 8: Install the ICB .....	434
Step 9: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly .....	436
Step 10: Install the rear-top cover .....	437
Step 11: Install the rear-right cover .....	438
Step 12: Install the image scanner cable cover .....	439
Step 13: Install the formatter .....	37
Step 14: Test the installation .....	441
Parts Return .....	442
Feed motor (M101) .....	443
Introduction .....	443
Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover .....	443
Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover .....	444
Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover .....	445
Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly .....	446

Step 5: Remove the feed motor .....	447
Step 6: Unpack the replacement feed motor .....	448
Step 7: Install the feed motor .....	448
Step 8: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly .....	449
Step 9: Install the rear-top cover .....	450
Step 10: Install the rear-right cover .....	451
Step 11: Install the image scanner cable cover .....	452
Step 12: Turn the product power on .....	453
Parts Return .....	453
Drum motor (M102) .....	454
Remove the drum motor .....	454
Fuser motor (M299) .....	455
Remove the fuser motor .....	455
Main fan (FN101) .....	456
Remove the main fan .....	456
Laser/scanner fan (FN102) .....	458
Remove the laser/scanner fan .....	458
Install the laser/scanner fan .....	459
Cartridge front-side fan (FN103) .....	460
Remove the cartridge front-side fan .....	460
Install the cartridge front-side fan .....	461
Low-voltage power supply fan (FN104) .....	462
Remove the low-voltage power supply fan .....	462
Install the low-voltage power supply fan .....	463
Reverse assembly fan (FN105) .....	464
Remove the reverse assembly fan .....	464
Cartridge fan (FN301) .....	467
Remove the cartridge fan .....	467
Install the cartridge fan .....	470
Interlock switch assembly (SW101 and SW106) .....	471
Remove the interlock switch assembly .....	471
Output accessory detection switch (SW104) .....	474
Remove the output accessory detection switch .....	474
Low-voltage power supply (LVPS) .....	479
Introduction .....	479
Step 1: Remove the formatter .....	24
Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox .....	481
Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory .....	482
Step 4: Remove the side-rear cover .....	483
Step 5: Remove the image scanner cable cover .....	484
Step 6: Remove the rear-right cover .....	485

Step 7: Remove the rear-left cover .....	486
Step 8: Remove the rear-top cover .....	487
Step 9: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly .....	488
Step 10: Remove the ICB .....	489
Step 11: Remove the LVPS .....	491
Step 12: Unpack the replacement LVPS .....	496
Step 13: Install the LVPS .....	498
Step 14: Install the ICB .....	503
Step 15: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly .....	505
Step 16: Install the rear-top cover .....	506
Step 17: Install the rear-left cover .....	507
Step 18: Install the rear-right cover .....	508
Step 19: Install the image scanner cable cover .....	509
Step 20: Install the side-rear cover .....	510
Step 21: Install the duplex accessory .....	511
Step 22: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox .....	511
Step 23: Install the formatter .....	37
Step 24: Test the installation .....	514
Parts Return .....	515
Lifter base assembly .....	516
Remove the lifter base assembly .....	516
Lifter assembly .....	518
Remove the lifter assembly .....	518
High-voltage power supply (HVPS) .....	521
Introduction .....	522
Step 1: Remove the formatter .....	24
Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox .....	523
Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory .....	525
Step 4: Remove the fuser-entrance guide .....	526
Step 5: Remove the fuser .....	527
Step 6: Remove the front cover .....	527
Step 7: Remove the side-rear cover .....	529
Step 8: Remove the image scanner cable cover .....	530
Step 9: Remove the rear-right cover .....	531
Step 10: Remove the rear-left cover .....	532
Step 11: Remove the rear-top cover .....	533
Step 12: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly .....	534
Step 13: Remove the DC controller .....	535
Step 14: Remove the ICB .....	537
Step 15: Remove the LVPS .....	539
Step 16: Remove the HVPS .....	544

Step 17: Unpack the replacement HVPS .....	551
Step 18: Install the HVPS .....	551
Step 19: Install the LVPS .....	561
Step 20: Install the ICB .....	566
Step 21: Install the DC controller .....	568
Step 22: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly .....	569
Step 23: Install the rear-top cover .....	570
Step 24: Install the rear-left cover .....	571
Step 25: Install the rear-right cover .....	572
Step 26: Install the side-rear cover .....	573
Step 27: Install the image scanner cable cover .....	574
Step 28: Install the front cover .....	575
Step 29: Install the fuser .....	578
Step 30: Install the fuser-entrance guide .....	579
Step 31: Install the duplex accessory .....	579
Step 32: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox .....	580
Step 33: Install the formatter .....	37
Step 34: Test the installation .....	582
Parts Return .....	583
Feed roller assembly .....	584
Remove the feed roller assembly .....	584
Pickup drive assembly .....	585
Introduction .....	585
Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox .....	586
Step 2: Remove the Tray 1 cover .....	587
Step 3: Remove the image scanner cable cover .....	590
Step 4: Remove the rear-right cover .....	591
Step 5: Remove the rear-left cover .....	592
Step 6: Remove the rear-top cover .....	593
Step 7: Remove the right-lower door .....	594
Step 8: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly .....	596
Step 9: Remove the DC controller .....	597
Step 10: Remove the feed motor .....	598
Step 11: Remove the pickup drive assembly .....	599
Step 12: Unpack the replacement pickup drive assembly .....	599
Step 13: Install the pickup drive assembly .....	600
Step 14: Install the feed motor .....	601
Step 15: Install the DC controller .....	601
Step 16: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly .....	602
Step 17: Install the right-lower door .....	603
Step 18: Install the rear-top cover .....	605

Step 19: Install the rear-left cover .....	606
Step 20: Install the rear-right cover .....	607
Step 21: Install the image scanner cable cover .....	608
Step 22: Install the Tray 1 cover .....	609
Step 23: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox .....	611
Step 24: Turn the product power on .....	613
Parts Return .....	613
Cassette pickup assembly .....	614
Introduction .....	615
Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox .....	615
Step 2: Remove the Tray 1 cover .....	616
Step 3: Remove the cassette-door-open detection switch .....	619
Step 4: Remove the image scanner cable cover .....	621
Step 5: Remove the rear-right cover .....	622
Step 6: Remove the rear-left cover .....	623
Step 7: Remove the rear-top cover .....	624
Step 8: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly .....	625
Step 9: Remove the DC controller .....	626
Step 10: Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly .....	628
Step 11: Remove the feed motor .....	630
Step 12: Remove the pickup drive assembly .....	631
Step 13: Remove the cassette pickup assembly .....	631
Step 14: Unpack the replacement cassette pickup assembly .....	635
Step 15: Install the cassette pickup assembly .....	635
Step 16: Install the pickup drive assembly .....	639
Step 17: Install the feed motor .....	640
Step 18: Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly .....	640
Step 19: Install the DC controller .....	643
Step 20: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly .....	644
Step 21: Install the rear-top cover .....	645
Step 22: Install the rear-left cover .....	646
Step 23: Install the rear-right cover .....	647
Step 24: Install the image scanner cable cover .....	648
Step 25: Install the cassette-door-open detection switch .....	649
Step 26: Install the Tray 1 cover .....	651
Step 27: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox .....	653
Step 28: Turn the product power on .....	655
Parts Return .....	655
Optional input and output accessories .....	656
1x500-sheet paper feeder .....	657
Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	658

Left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	659
Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	659
Right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	663
Remove the right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	663
Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	666
Remove the right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	666
Front-upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	667
Remove the front-upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	667
Pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	669
Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	669
Install the pickup drive assembly .....	670
Pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	671
Remove the pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	671
Install the pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	674
Lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	675
Remove the lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	675
Lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	676
Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	676
Controller printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	678
Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	678
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet .....	679
Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	680
Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	681
Stock box and rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	682
Remove the stock box and rails .....	682
Left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	684
Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	684
Front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	685
Remove the front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	685
Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	686
Remove the right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	686
Right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	687
Right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	689
Remove the right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	689
Right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	690
Remove the right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	690
Pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	692

Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	692
Install the paper drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	694
Paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	692
Remove the paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	695
Install the paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	698
Lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	699
Remove the lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	699
Lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	700
Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) ...	700
Controller printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	702
Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	702
2,500-sheet high capacity input (HCI) .....	704
Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	705
Right door (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	706
Right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	707
Remove the right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	707
Right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	708
Remove the right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	708
Front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	709
Right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	710
Remove the right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	710
Left cover (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	711
Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	712
Remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	712
Install the Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	715
Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	716
Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	716
Install the Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	715
Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	720
Remove the Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	720
Pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	722
Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	722
Install the pickup drive assembly .....	723
Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	724
Remove the Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	724
Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	726



Remove the Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	726
Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	728
Remove the Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	728
Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	729
Remove the Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	729
Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	730
Remove the Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	730
Controller printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	731
Remove the controller PCA (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	731
Stapling mailbox .....	732
Front cover (stapling mailbox) .....	733
Rear cover (stapling mailbox) .....	734
Handle assembly (stapling mailbox) .....	735
Remove the handle assembly .....	735
Top cover (stapling mailbox) .....	737
Remove the top cover .....	737
Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox) .....	738
Output bin assembly cover (stapling mailbox) .....	740
Remove the output bin assembly cover .....	740
Driver printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (stapling mailbox) .....	742
Output bin sensor printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (stapling mailbox) .....	744
Remove the output bin sensor PCA .....	744
Stapler assembly (stapling mailbox) .....	745
Remove the stapler assembly .....	745
Jogger assembly (stapling mailbox) .....	746
Remove the jogger assembly .....	746
Output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox) .....	747
Remove the output bin solenoid .....	747
Output bin assembly (stapling mailbox) .....	749
Remove the output bin assembly .....	749
Stage top assembly (stapling mailbox) .....	751
Remove the stage top assembly .....	751
Install the stage top assembly .....	760
Stage assembly (stapling mailbox) .....	761
Remove the stage assembly .....	761
Output bin 3 drive assembly (stapling mailbox) .....	764
Remove the output bin 3 drive assembly .....	764

**2 Parts and diagrams ..... 769**

For additional service and support information .....	770
Order parts, accessories, and supplies .....	771

Ordering information .....	771
Related documentation .....	771
Supplies part numbers .....	772
Customer self-repair kits .....	772
Service replacement kits .....	774
Accessories .....	775
How to use the parts lists and diagrams .....	776
Document feeder and scanner components .....	778
Document feeder components .....	780
Document feeder components (1 of 2) .....	780
Document feeder components (2 of 2) .....	782
Scanner control board (SCB) .....	784
Control panel .....	786
Covers .....	788
Upper plate assembly .....	790
Internal components .....	792
Internal components (1 of 5) .....	792
Internal components (2 of 5) .....	794
Internal components (3 of 5) .....	796
Internal components (4 of 5) .....	798
Internal components (5 of 5) .....	800
High-voltage power supply .....	802
1x500-sheet paper feeder .....	804
1x500-sheet paper feeder covers .....	804
1x500-sheet paper feeder components .....	806
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet .....	808
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers .....	808
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components .....	810
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder .....	812
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers .....	812
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) .....	814
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) .....	816
Stapling mailbox .....	818
Stapling mailbox covers .....	818
Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) .....	820
Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) .....	822
Envelope feeder .....	824
Envelope feeder covers .....	824
Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) .....	826
Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) .....	828
Alphabetical parts list .....	830

Numerical parts list ..... 843

**Index ..... 857**



---

# List of tables

Table 1-1	Identification and location (product base)	273
Table 2-1	Ordering information	771
Table 2-2	Related documentation and software	771
Table 2-3	Supplies part numbers	772
Table 2-4	Customer self-repair kits	772
Table 2-5	Service replacement kits	774
Table 2-6	Accessories	775
Table 2-7	Document feeder and scanner components	779
Table 2-8	Document feeder components (1 of 2)	781
Table 2-9	Document feeder components (2 of 2)	783
Table 2-10	Scanner control board (SCB)	785
Table 2-11	Control panel	787
Table 2-12	Covers	789
Table 2-13	Upper plate assembly	791
Table 2-14	Internal components (1 of 5)	793
Table 2-15	Internal components (2 of 5)	795
Table 2-16	Internal components (3 of 5)	797
Table 2-17	Internal components (4 of 5)	799
Table 2-18	Internal components (5 of 5)	801
Table 2-19	High-voltage power supply	803
Table 2-20	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers	805
Table 2-21	1x500-sheet paper feeder components	807
Table 2-22	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers	809
Table 2-23	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components	811
Table 2-24	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers	813
Table 2-25	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2)	815
Table 2-26	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2)	817
Table 2-27	Stapling mailbox covers	819
Table 2-28	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2)	821
Table 2-29	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2)	823
Table 2-30	Envelope feeder covers	825
Table 2-31	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2)	827

Table 2-32 Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) ..... 829

---

# List of figures

Figure 1-1	Screwdrivers .....	5
Figure 1-2	Open the top cover .....	9
Figure 1-3	Remove the toner cartridge .....	9
Figure 1-4	Recycle and unpack .....	10
Figure 1-5	Rock the toner cartridge .....	10
Figure 1-6	Remove the protective shield .....	11
Figure 1-7	Remove the sealing tape .....	11
Figure 1-8	Install the toner cartridge .....	12
Figure 1-9	Close the top cover .....	13
Figure 1-10	Slide the stapler/stacker away from the product .....	14
Figure 1-11	Open the staple-cartridge door .....	15
Figure 1-12	Remove the staple cartridge .....	15
Figure 1-13	Recycle and unpack .....	16
Figure 1-14	Install the cartridge and close the stapler door .....	16
Figure 1-15	Slide the stapler back to the product .....	16
Figure 1-16	Open the document-feeder door .....	18
Figure 1-17	Rotate the input tray up .....	19
Figure 1-18	Release two tabs .....	19
Figure 1-19	Remove the backside background selector .....	20
Figure 1-20	Recycle and unpack .....	20
Figure 1-21	Install the background selector .....	21
Figure 1-22	Rotate the input tray down .....	21
Figure 1-23	Close the document-feeder door .....	22
Figure 1-24	Remove the formatter .....	24
Figure 1-25	Remove the formatter .....	24
Figure 1-26	Remove the HDD .....	26
Figure 1-27	Release the clip .....	27
Figure 1-28	Remove the clip .....	27
Figure 1-29	Remove the SSM .....	28
Figure 1-30	Release two clips .....	28
Figure 1-31	Remove the DIMM .....	29
Figure 1-32	Locate the fax PCA .....	29

Figure 1-33	Release the connector end of the fax PCA .....	30
Figure 1-34	Remove the fax PCA .....	30
Figure 1-35	Recycle and unpack .....	31
Figure 1-36	Press down on the HDD .....	32
Figure 1-37	Install the black plastic HDD case .....	32
Figure 1-38	Make sure that the HDD is flat against the formatter .....	33
Figure 1-39	Install the SSM .....	33
Figure 1-40	Install the retainer clip .....	34
Figure 1-41	Rotate the retainer .....	34
Figure 1-42	Insert the DIMM into the holder .....	35
Figure 1-43	Install the DIMM .....	35
Figure 1-44	Make sure that the retaining clips snap into place .....	36
Figure 1-45	Insert the fax port into the holder .....	36
Figure 1-46	Install the fax PCA .....	37
Figure 1-47	Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot .....	37
Figure 1-48	Tighten the two thumbscrews .....	38
Figure 1-49	Verify that the formatter is functioning .....	39
Figure 1-50	Remove the formatter .....	41
Figure 1-51	Remove the formatter .....	41
Figure 1-52	Remove the HDD .....	43
Figure 1-53	Release the clip .....	44
Figure 1-54	Remove the clip .....	44
Figure 1-55	Remove the SSM .....	45
Figure 1-56	Check the HDD for foam pads .....	46
Figure 1-57	Install the HDD .....	46
Figure 1-58	Check the HDD installation .....	47
Figure 1-59	Install the foam pads .....	47
Figure 1-60	Press down on the HDD .....	48
Figure 1-61	Install the HDD .....	48
Figure 1-62	Check the HDD installation .....	49
Figure 1-63	Install the SSM .....	49
Figure 1-64	Install the retainer clip .....	50
Figure 1-65	Rotate the retainer .....	50
Figure 1-66	Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot .....	51
Figure 1-67	Tighten the two thumbscrews .....	51
Figure 1-68	Remove the formatter .....	55
Figure 1-69	Remove the formatter .....	55
Figure 1-70	Release two clips .....	56
Figure 1-71	Remove the DIMM .....	56
Figure 1-72	Insert the DIMM into the holder .....	57
Figure 1-73	Install the DIMM .....	58



Figure 1-74	Make sure that the retaining clips snap into place .....	58
Figure 1-75	Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot .....	59
Figure 1-76	Tighten the two thumbscrews .....	59
Figure 1-77	Verify that the formatter is functioning .....	60
Figure 1-78	Remove the formatter .....	62
Figure 1-79	Remove the formatter .....	62
Figure 1-80	Locate the fax PCA .....	63
Figure 1-81	Release the connector end of the fax PCA .....	63
Figure 1-82	Remove the fax PCA .....	64
Figure 1-83	Insert the fax port of the fax PCA into the holder .....	65
Figure 1-84	Install the fax PCA .....	65
Figure 1-85	Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot .....	66
Figure 1-86	Tighten the two thumbscrews .....	66
Figure 1-87	Verify that the formatter is functioning .....	67
Figure 1-88	Remove the output bin .....	68
Figure 1-89	Install the output bin .....	69
Figure 1-90	Remove the output bin .....	71
Figure 1-91	Remove the stapling mailbox .....	72
Figure 1-92	Remove the duplex accessory .....	73
Figure 1-93	Install the duplex accessory .....	74
Figure 1-94	Install the output bin .....	74
Figure 1-95	Install the stapling mailbox .....	75
Figure 1-96	Remove the output bin .....	77
Figure 1-97	Remove the stapling mailbox .....	78
Figure 1-98	Remove the duplex accessory .....	79
Figure 1-99	Remove the fuser-entrance guide .....	79
Figure 1-100	Install the fuser-entrance guide .....	80
Figure 1-101	Install the duplex accessory .....	81
Figure 1-102	Install the output bin .....	81
Figure 1-103	Install the stapling mailbox .....	82
Figure 1-104	Remove the output bin .....	84
Figure 1-105	Remove the stapling mailbox .....	85
Figure 1-106	Remove the duplex accessory .....	86
Figure 1-107	Remove the fuser-entrance guide .....	86
Figure 1-108	Remove the fuser .....	87
Figure 1-109	Install the fuser .....	88
Figure 1-110	Install the fuser-entrance guide .....	88
Figure 1-111	Install the duplex accessory .....	89
Figure 1-112	Install the output bin .....	89
Figure 1-113	Install the stapling mailbox .....	90
Figure 1-114	Remove third party devices .....	93

Figure 1-115	Tilt the control panel up .....	93
Figure 1-116	Remove the cover .....	94
Figure 1-117	Slide the keyboard out .....	94
Figure 1-118	Disconnect two connectors .....	95
Figure 1-119	Remove one screw .....	95
Figure 1-120	Slide the control panel to the right .....	96
Figure 1-121	Remove the control-panel assembly .....	96
Figure 1-122	Place the control-panel assembly on a flat surface .....	97
Figure 1-123	Release the flat cable .....	97
Figure 1-124	Disconnect the flat cable .....	98
Figure 1-125	Tilt the screen down .....	98
Figure 1-126	Slide the keyboard tray out .....	99
Figure 1-127	Turn the control panel face-down .....	99
Figure 1-128	Remove the keyboard .....	100
Figure 1-129	Recycle and unpack .....	101
Figure 1-130	Align the edges of the tray with the slots in the control panel .....	102
Figure 1-131	Slide the keyboard tray in .....	102
Figure 1-132	Turn the control panel face-up .....	103
Figure 1-133	Tilt the screen up .....	103
Figure 1-134	Position the flat cable in the connector .....	104
Figure 1-135	Close the latch to lock the flat cable into position .....	104
Figure 1-136	Verify that the cable is securely fastened in the connector .....	105
Figure 1-137	Install the cable and wire harness .....	105
Figure 1-138	Insert the tabs on the control panel into the slots .....	106
Figure 1-139	Slide the control panel to the left .....	106
Figure 1-140	Slide the keyboard out .....	107
Figure 1-141	Connect two connectors .....	107
Figure 1-142	Install the screw .....	108
Figure 1-143	Install the cover .....	108
Figure 1-144	Install third party devices .....	109
Figure 1-145	Test the keyboard .....	109
Figure 1-146	Tilt the control panel up .....	111
Figure 1-147	Remove the cover .....	111
Figure 1-148	Slide the keyboard out .....	112
Figure 1-149	Disconnect two connectors .....	112
Figure 1-150	Remove one screw .....	113
Figure 1-151	Slide the control panel to the right .....	113
Figure 1-152	Remove the control-panel assembly .....	114
Figure 1-153	Place the control-panel assembly on a flat surface .....	115
Figure 1-154	Release the flat cable .....	115
Figure 1-155	Disconnect the flat cable .....	116

Figure 1-156	Tilt the screen down .....	116
Figure 1-157	Slide the keyboard tray out .....	117
Figure 1-158	Turn the control panel face-down .....	117
Figure 1-159	Remove the keyboard .....	118
Figure 1-160	Align the edges of the tray with the slots in the control panel .....	119
Figure 1-161	Slide the keyboard tray in .....	119
Figure 1-162	Turn the control panel face-up .....	120
Figure 1-163	Tilt the screen up .....	120
Figure 1-164	Position the flat cable in the connector .....	121
Figure 1-165	Close the latch to lock the flat cable into position .....	121
Figure 1-166	Verify that the cable is securely fastened in the connector .....	122
Figure 1-167	Install the cable and wire harness .....	122
Figure 1-168	Insert the tabs on the control panel into the slots .....	123
Figure 1-169	Slide the control panel to the left .....	123
Figure 1-170	Slide the keyboard out .....	124
Figure 1-171	Connect two connectors .....	124
Figure 1-172	Install the screw .....	125
Figure 1-173	Install the cover .....	125
Figure 1-174	Test the keyboard .....	126
Figure 1-175	Turn the power off .....	128
Figure 1-176	Remove the envelope feeder or the environment cover .....	128
Figure 1-177	Open the separation roller cover .....	129
Figure 1-178	Remove the separation roller .....	129
Figure 1-179	Remove one screw .....	130
Figure 1-180	Remove the bushing .....	130
Figure 1-181	Remove the roller cover .....	131
Figure 1-182	Remove the rollers .....	131
Figure 1-183	Open the separation roller cover .....	132
Figure 1-184	Install the separation roller .....	133
Figure 1-185	Install the rollers .....	133
Figure 1-186	Install the roller cover .....	134
Figure 1-187	Install the bushing .....	134
Figure 1-188	Install one screw .....	135
Figure 1-189	Install the envelope feeder or the environment cover .....	135
Figure 1-190	Turn the power on .....	136
Figure 1-191	Turn the power off .....	138
Figure 1-192	Identify the product model .....	138
Figure 1-193	Remove the tray or trays .....	139
Figure 1-194	Locate the pickup and feed rollers .....	140
Figure 1-195	Remove the rollers .....	140
Figure 1-196	install the rollers .....	141

Figure 1-197	Install the tray or trays .....	142
Figure 1-198	Turn the power on .....	143
Figure 1-199	Turn the power off .....	145
Figure 1-200	Open the top cover .....	146
Figure 1-201	Remove the toner cartridge .....	147
Figure 1-202	Remove the transfer roller .....	148
Figure 1-203	Install the transfer roller .....	149
Figure 1-204	Install the toner cartridge .....	150
Figure 1-205	Turn the power on .....	151
Figure 1-206	Open the document-feeder door .....	153
Figure 1-207	Open the access door .....	153
Figure 1-208	Remove the document-feeder roller .....	154
Figure 1-209	Release one tab .....	154
Figure 1-210	Remove the document-feeder separation pad .....	155
Figure 1-211	Check the spring .....	155
Figure 1-212	Position the separation pad on the product .....	156
Figure 1-213	Check the spring .....	157
Figure 1-214	Check the tabs .....	157
Figure 1-215	Install the separation pad .....	158
Figure 1-216	Install the document-feeder roller .....	159
Figure 1-217	Rotate the roller up .....	159
Figure 1-218	Close the access door .....	160
Figure 1-219	Open the document feeder .....	161
Figure 1-220	Remove the white backing .....	162
Figure 1-221	Remove remaining adhesive .....	162
Figure 1-222	Place the white backing on the scanner .....	164
Figure 1-223	Peel off the adhesive backing .....	164
Figure 1-224	Place the two mylar-spacer strips onto the adhesive .....	165
Figure 1-225	Peel off the adhesive backing .....	165
Figure 1-226	Verify that the white backing is correctly aligned .....	166
Figure 1-227	Close the document feeder and press down .....	166
Figure 1-228	Open the document feeder .....	167
Figure 1-229	Press along the white backing .....	167
Figure 1-230	Peel off the protective sheet .....	168
Figure 1-231	Close the document feeder .....	168
Figure 1-232	Turn the power off .....	171
Figure 1-233	Open the document feeder cover .....	171
Figure 1-234	Locate the mylar strip .....	172
Figure 1-235	Remove the mylar strip .....	172
Figure 1-236	Remove any remaining adhesive .....	173
Figure 1-237	Install the document-feeder mylar strip .....	174

Figure 1-238	Press down firmly on the strip .....	174
Figure 1-239	Close the document feeder cover .....	175
Figure 1-240	Turn the power on .....	175
Figure 1-241	Open the document-feeder cover .....	176
Figure 1-242	Remove four screws .....	176
Figure 1-243	Note the location of the tabs .....	177
Figure 1-244	Release two tabs .....	177
Figure 1-245	Remove the cover .....	178
Figure 1-246	Remove three springs .....	178
Figure 1-247	Slide the shaft and rollers to the left .....	179
Figure 1-248	Move the document-feeder roller assembly out of the way .....	179
Figure 1-249	Release one hinge pin .....	180
Figure 1-250	Remove the document-feeder roller cover .....	180
Figure 1-251	Check the roller shaft .....	181
Figure 1-252	Check the document-feeder roller cover and document-feeder roller assembly .....	181
Figure 1-253	Remove two screws .....	182
Figure 1-254	Remove the cover .....	183
Figure 1-255	Install the cover .....	183
Figure 1-256	Install two screws .....	184
Figure 1-257	Remove two screws .....	186
Figure 1-258	Remove the cover .....	186
Figure 1-259	Disconnect four connectors .....	187
Figure 1-260	Release four retainers .....	187
Figure 1-261	Remove one screw and the ground wire .....	188
Figure 1-262	Remove one screw .....	188
Figure 1-263	Release one retainer .....	189
Figure 1-264	Partially slide the SCB out .....	189
Figure 1-265	Release three connectors .....	190
Figure 1-266	Remove the FFC .....	190
Figure 1-267	Release two tabs .....	191
Figure 1-268	Remove the ferrite and holder .....	191
Figure 1-269	Remove the FFC .....	192
Figure 1-270	Remove the SCB .....	192
Figure 1-271	Install the SCB .....	193
Figure 1-272	Connect the FFC .....	194
Figure 1-273	Install the ferrite and holder .....	194
Figure 1-274	Check the two tabs .....	195
Figure 1-275	Connect the FFC .....	195
Figure 1-276	Connect three connectors .....	196
Figure 1-277	Slide the SCB in .....	196
Figure 1-278	Fasten one retainer .....	197

Figure 1-279	Install one screw .....	197
Figure 1-280	Install the ground wire and one screw .....	198
Figure 1-281	Install the wire harnesses .....	198
Figure 1-282	Connect four connectors .....	199
Figure 1-283	Install the cover .....	199
Figure 1-284	Install two screws .....	200
Figure 1-285	Open the document-feeder door .....	202
Figure 1-286	Rotate the input tray up .....	202
Figure 1-287	Release two tabs .....	203
Figure 1-288	Remove the backside background selector .....	203
Figure 1-289	Remove two screws .....	204
Figure 1-290	Remove the cover .....	204
Figure 1-291	Disconnect four connectors .....	205
Figure 1-292	Release four retainers .....	205
Figure 1-293	Remove one screw and the ground wire .....	206
Figure 1-294	Remove one screw .....	206
Figure 1-295	Release one retainer .....	207
Figure 1-296	Partially slide the SCB out .....	207
Figure 1-297	Release three connectors .....	208
Figure 1-298	Remove the FFC .....	208
Figure 1-299	Release two tabs .....	209
Figure 1-300	Remove the ferrite and holder .....	209
Figure 1-301	Remove the FFC .....	210
Figure 1-302	Remove the SCB .....	210
Figure 1-303	Loosen two screws .....	211
Figure 1-304	Remove the document feeder .....	211
Figure 1-305	Route the document feeder FFC and cables .....	212
Figure 1-306	Install the document feeder .....	213
Figure 1-307	Tighten two screws .....	213
Figure 1-308	Install the SCB .....	214
Figure 1-309	Connect the FFC .....	214
Figure 1-310	Install the ferrite and holder .....	215
Figure 1-311	Check the two tabs .....	215
Figure 1-312	Connect the FFC .....	216
Figure 1-313	Connect three connectors .....	216
Figure 1-314	Slide the SCB in .....	217
Figure 1-315	Fasten one retainer .....	217
Figure 1-316	Install one screw .....	218
Figure 1-317	Install the ground wire and one screw .....	218
Figure 1-318	Install the wire harnesses .....	219
Figure 1-319	Connect four connectors .....	219

Figure 1-320	Install the cover .....	220
Figure 1-321	Install two screws .....	220
Figure 1-322	Install the background selector .....	221
Figure 1-323	Rotate the input tray down .....	221
Figure 1-324	Close the document-feeder door .....	222
Figure 1-325	Place the white backing on the scanner .....	223
Figure 1-326	Peel off the adhesive backing .....	223
Figure 1-327	Place the two mylar-spacer strips onto the adhesive .....	224
Figure 1-328	Peel off the adhesive backing .....	224
Figure 1-329	Verify that the white backing is correctly aligned .....	225
Figure 1-330	Close the document feeder and press down .....	225
Figure 1-331	Open the document feeder .....	226
Figure 1-332	Press along the white backing .....	226
Figure 1-333	Peel off the protective sheet .....	227
Figure 1-334	Close the document feeder .....	227
Figure 1-335	Remove the document-feeder hinge assembly .....	229
Figure 1-336	Remove two screws .....	231
Figure 1-337	Remove the cover .....	231
Figure 1-338	Disconnect four connectors .....	232
Figure 1-339	Release four retainers .....	232
Figure 1-340	Remove one screw and the ground wire .....	233
Figure 1-341	Remove one screw .....	233
Figure 1-342	Release one retainer .....	234
Figure 1-343	Partially slide the SCB out .....	234
Figure 1-344	Release three connectors .....	235
Figure 1-345	Remove the FFC .....	235
Figure 1-346	Release two tabs .....	236
Figure 1-347	Remove the ferrite and holder .....	236
Figure 1-348	Remove the FFC .....	237
Figure 1-349	Remove the SCB .....	237
Figure 1-350	Loosen two screws .....	238
Figure 1-351	Remove the document feeder .....	238
Figure 1-352	Release the scanner latch .....	239
Figure 1-353	Open the image scanner assembly .....	239
Figure 1-354	Remove one screw .....	240
Figure 1-355	Release one tab .....	240
Figure 1-356	Remove one screw .....	241
Figure 1-357	Remove the scanner cable cover .....	241
Figure 1-358	Feed the cables through the opening .....	242
Figure 1-359	Disconnect one connector .....	242
Figure 1-360	Close the image scanner assembly .....	243

Figure 1-361	Remove one screw .....	243
Figure 1-362	Release the cover .....	244
Figure 1-363	Release three tabs .....	244
Figure 1-364	Remove the cover .....	245
Figure 1-365	Remove three screws .....	245
Figure 1-366	Slide the image scanner assembly until it stops .....	246
Figure 1-367	Remove the scanner assembly .....	246
Figure 1-368	Install the lower scanner cover tab .....	247
Figure 1-369	Install the scanner assembly .....	248
Figure 1-370	Slide the image scanner assembly as shown .....	248
Figure 1-371	Install three screws .....	249
Figure 1-372	Install one screw .....	249
Figure 1-373	Engage the tabs .....	250
Figure 1-374	Engage three tabs .....	250
Figure 1-375	Install one screw .....	251
Figure 1-376	Install one screw .....	251
Figure 1-377	Release the scanner latch .....	252
Figure 1-378	Open the image scanner assembly .....	252
Figure 1-379	Connect one connector .....	253
Figure 1-380	Feed the cables through the opening .....	253
Figure 1-381	Install the scanner cable cover .....	254
Figure 1-382	Install one screw .....	254
Figure 1-383	Route the document feeder FFC and cables .....	255
Figure 1-384	Install the document feeder .....	255
Figure 1-385	Tighten two screws .....	256
Figure 1-386	Install the SCB .....	256
Figure 1-387	Connect the FFC .....	257
Figure 1-388	Install the ferrite and holder .....	257
Figure 1-389	Check the two tabs .....	258
Figure 1-390	Connect the FFC .....	258
Figure 1-391	Connect three connectors .....	259
Figure 1-392	Slide the SCB in .....	259
Figure 1-393	Fasten one retainer .....	260
Figure 1-394	Install one screw .....	260
Figure 1-395	Install the ground wire and one screw .....	261
Figure 1-396	Install the wire harnesses .....	261
Figure 1-397	Connect four connectors .....	262
Figure 1-398	Install the cover .....	262
Figure 1-399	Install two screws .....	263
Figure 1-400	Open the document feeder .....	264
Figure 1-401	Remove the white backing .....	264



Figure 1-402	Remove remaining adhesive .....	265
Figure 1-403	Place the white backing on the scanner .....	265
Figure 1-404	Peel off the adhesive backing .....	266
Figure 1-405	Place the two mylar-spacer strips onto the adhesive .....	266
Figure 1-406	Peel off the adhesive backing .....	267
Figure 1-407	Verify that the white backing is correctly aligned .....	267
Figure 1-408	Close the document feeder and press down .....	268
Figure 1-409	Open the document feeder .....	268
Figure 1-410	Press along the white backing .....	269
Figure 1-411	Peel off the protective sheet .....	269
Figure 1-412	Close the document feeder .....	270
Figure 1-413	Identification and location (product base) .....	273
Figure 1-414	Remove two screws .....	275
Figure 1-415	Release two tabs .....	275
Figure 1-416	Release the right-upper corner .....	276
Figure 1-417	Slide the cover to the right .....	276
Figure 1-418	Remove the cover .....	277
Figure 1-419	Note of the location of the tabs .....	278
Figure 1-420	Align four tabs .....	278
Figure 1-421	Slide the cover to the left .....	279
Figure 1-422	Engage one locking pin .....	279
Figure 1-423	Engage two tabs .....	280
Figure 1-424	Check cover installation .....	280
Figure 1-425	Install two screws .....	281
Figure 1-426	Remove the envelope feeder cover .....	282
Figure 1-427	Remove one screw .....	284
Figure 1-428	Remove the cover .....	284
Figure 1-429	Install the cover .....	285
Figure 1-430	Install one screw .....	286
Figure 1-431	Secure the outer retaining pins .....	288
Figure 1-432	Release two outer retaining pins .....	288
Figure 1-433	Release one pin .....	289
Figure 1-434	Release the left-side spring .....	289
Figure 1-435	Release the right-side spring .....	290
Figure 1-436	Remove the cover .....	290
Figure 1-437	Install the cover .....	291
Figure 1-438	Engage the right-side spring .....	292
Figure 1-439	Engage the left-side spring .....	292
Figure 1-440	Engage two outer retaining pins .....	293
Figure 1-441	Remove the low adhesive tape .....	293
Figure 1-442	Open the tray .....	295

Figure 1-443	Remove the tray .....	295
Figure 1-444	Remove the formatter .....	297
Figure 1-445	Remove the formatter .....	297
Figure 1-446	Remove the output bin .....	298
Figure 1-447	Remove the stapling mailbox .....	299
Figure 1-448	Remove the duplex accessory .....	300
Figure 1-449	Remove one screw .....	300
Figure 1-450	Remove the side-rear cover .....	301
Figure 1-451	Recycle and unpack .....	301
Figure 1-452	Install the side-rear cover .....	302
Figure 1-453	Install one screw .....	302
Figure 1-454	Install the duplex accessory .....	303
Figure 1-455	Install the output bin .....	303
Figure 1-456	Install the stapling mailbox .....	304
Figure 1-457	Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot .....	305
Figure 1-458	Tighten the two thumbscrews .....	305
Figure 1-459	Verify that the formatter is functioning .....	306
Figure 1-460	Remove two screws .....	307
Figure 1-461	Note the locations of the tabs and pins .....	308
Figure 1-462	Release one tab .....	308
Figure 1-463	Release two tabs .....	309
Figure 1-464	Release the assembly .....	309
Figure 1-465	Remove the assembly .....	310
Figure 1-466	Separate the logo panel and front-left cover .....	310
Figure 1-467	Note the locations of the tabs and pins .....	311
Figure 1-468	Align the hook tabs on the top of the assembly .....	311
Figure 1-469	Position the tab on the assembly behind the fan duct .....	312
Figure 1-470	Install the assembly .....	312
Figure 1-471	Verify that the left-side tab is correctly installed .....	313
Figure 1-472	Verify that the reverse assembly fan is correctly installed .....	313
Figure 1-473	Remove two screws .....	315
Figure 1-474	Release two tabs .....	315
Figure 1-475	Release the right-upper corner .....	316
Figure 1-476	Slide the cover to the right .....	316
Figure 1-477	Remove the cover .....	317
Figure 1-478	Remove the power-switch assembly .....	317
Figure 1-479	Install the power-switch assembly .....	318
Figure 1-480	Note of the location of the tabs .....	319
Figure 1-481	Align four tabs .....	319
Figure 1-482	Slide the cover to the left .....	320
Figure 1-483	Engage one locking pin .....	320

Figure 1-484	Engage two tabs .....	321
Figure 1-485	Check cover installation .....	321
Figure 1-486	Install two screws .....	322
Figure 1-487	Remove three screws .....	324
Figure 1-488	Remove the cover .....	324
Figure 1-489	Install the cover .....	325
Figure 1-490	Install three screws .....	326
Figure 1-491	Remove one screw .....	328
Figure 1-492	Remove the cover .....	328
Figure 1-493	Remove three screws .....	329
Figure 1-494	Remove the cover .....	329
Figure 1-495	Remove three screws .....	330
Figure 1-496	Remove the cover .....	330
Figure 1-497	Install the cover .....	331
Figure 1-498	Install three screws .....	332
Figure 1-499	Install the cover .....	332
Figure 1-500	Install three screws .....	333
Figure 1-501	Install the cover .....	333
Figure 1-502	Install one screw .....	334
Figure 1-503	Remove one screw .....	336
Figure 1-504	Remove the cover .....	336
Figure 1-505	Remove three screws .....	337
Figure 1-506	Remove the cover .....	337
Figure 1-507	Remove three screws .....	338
Figure 1-508	Remove the cover .....	338
Figure 1-509	Remove one screw .....	339
Figure 1-510	Remove the cover .....	339
Figure 1-511	Install the cover .....	340
Figure 1-512	Install one screw .....	341
Figure 1-513	Install the cover .....	341
Figure 1-514	Install three screws .....	342
Figure 1-515	Install the cover .....	342
Figure 1-516	Install three screws .....	343
Figure 1-517	Install the cover .....	343
Figure 1-518	Install one screw .....	344
Figure 1-519	Secure the outer retaining pins .....	346
Figure 1-520	Release two outer retaining pins .....	346
Figure 1-521	Release one pin .....	347
Figure 1-522	Release the left-side spring .....	347
Figure 1-523	Release the right-side spring .....	348
Figure 1-524	Remove the cover .....	348

Figure 1-525	Remove three screws .....	349
Figure 1-526	Remove the cover .....	349
Figure 1-527	Rotate the stopper .....	350
Figure 1-528	Remove the shaft .....	350
Figure 1-529	Remove the door .....	351
Figure 1-530	Install the door .....	352
Figure 1-531	Install the shaft .....	352
Figure 1-532	Rotate the stopper .....	353
Figure 1-533	Install the cover .....	353
Figure 1-534	Install three screws .....	354
Figure 1-535	Install the cover .....	354
Figure 1-536	Engage the right-side spring .....	355
Figure 1-537	Engage the left-side spring .....	355
Figure 1-538	Engage two outer retaining pins .....	356
Figure 1-539	Remove the low adhesive tape .....	356
Figure 1-540	Remove one screw .....	358
Figure 1-541	Release the corner of the cover .....	359
Figure 1-542	Remove the document feeder hinge cover .....	359
Figure 1-543	Install the document-feeder hinge cover .....	360
Figure 1-544	Remove the registration assembly and grounding plate .....	362
Figure 1-545	Remove the registration assembly .....	362
Figure 1-546	Remove two screws .....	364
Figure 1-547	Remove the cover .....	364
Figure 1-548	Remove one screw .....	365
Figure 1-549	Remove the switch .....	365
Figure 1-550	Connect one connector .....	366
Figure 1-551	Install one screw .....	367
Figure 1-552	Install the cover .....	367
Figure 1-553	Install two screws .....	368
Figure 1-554	Remove the reverse assembly upper guide assembly .....	369
Figure 1-555	Install the reverse assembly upper guide assembly .....	370
Figure 1-556	Remove one screw and the cover .....	371
Figure 1-557	Release one tab and one clip .....	371
Figure 1-558	Rotate the cover .....	372
Figure 1-559	Remove the cover .....	372
Figure 1-560	Disconnect two connectors .....	373
Figure 1-561	Remove two screws .....	373
Figure 1-562	Lift up the front of the assembly .....	374
Figure 1-563	Remove the reverse assembly .....	374
Figure 1-564	Remove the cover .....	375
Figure 1-565	Disconnect one connector .....	376

Figure 1-566	Disconnect one connector .....	376
Figure 1-567	Remove the laser/scanner assembly .....	377
Figure 1-568	Remove the cover .....	378
Figure 1-569	Remove the cartridge sensor assembly .....	379
Figure 1-570	Remove the antistatic spring .....	380
Figure 1-571	Disconnect one connector .....	381
Figure 1-572	Remove the temperature sensor .....	381
Figure 1-573	Remove one screw .....	383
Figure 1-574	Remove the cover .....	383
Figure 1-575	Remove three screws .....	384
Figure 1-576	Remove the cover .....	384
Figure 1-577	Remove one screw .....	385
Figure 1-578	Remove the cover .....	385
Figure 1-579	Remove six screws .....	386
Figure 1-580	Disconnect one connector and remove the shield .....	386
Figure 1-581	Install the shield and connect one connector .....	387
Figure 1-582	Remove six screws .....	387
Figure 1-583	Install the cover .....	388
Figure 1-584	Install one screw .....	388
Figure 1-585	Install the cover .....	389
Figure 1-586	Install three screws .....	389
Figure 1-587	Install the cover .....	390
Figure 1-588	Install one screw .....	390
Figure 1-589	Remove one screw .....	392
Figure 1-590	Remove the cover .....	392
Figure 1-591	Remove three screws .....	393
Figure 1-592	Remove the cover .....	393
Figure 1-593	Remove one screw .....	394
Figure 1-594	Remove the cover .....	394
Figure 1-595	Remove six screws .....	395
Figure 1-596	Disconnect one connector and remove the shield .....	395
Figure 1-597	Disconnect all of the connectors .....	396
Figure 1-598	Remove two screws and release one tab .....	396
Figure 1-599	Remove the DC controller .....	397
Figure 1-600	Install the DC controller .....	398
Figure 1-601	Connect all of the connectors .....	398
Figure 1-602	Install the shield and connect one connector .....	399
Figure 1-603	Remove six screws .....	399
Figure 1-604	Install the cover .....	400
Figure 1-605	Install one screw .....	400
Figure 1-606	Install the cover .....	401

Figure 1-607	Install three screws .....	401
Figure 1-608	Install the cover .....	402
Figure 1-609	Install one screw .....	402
Figure 1-610	Remove one screw .....	404
Figure 1-611	Remove the cover .....	404
Figure 1-612	Remove one screw .....	405
Figure 1-613	Remove the cover .....	405
Figure 1-614	Secure the outer retaining pins .....	406
Figure 1-615	Release two outer retaining pins .....	406
Figure 1-616	Release one pin .....	407
Figure 1-617	Release the left-side spring .....	407
Figure 1-618	Release the right-side spring .....	408
Figure 1-619	Remove the cover .....	408
Figure 1-620	Remove three screws .....	409
Figure 1-621	Remove the cover .....	409
Figure 1-622	Rotate the stopper .....	410
Figure 1-623	Remove the shaft .....	410
Figure 1-624	Remove the door .....	411
Figure 1-625	Remove six screws .....	411
Figure 1-626	Disconnect one connector and remove the shield .....	412
Figure 1-627	Remove three screws and the Tray 1 gear cover .....	412
Figure 1-628	Disconnect two connectors .....	413
Figure 1-629	Release the wire harnesses .....	413
Figure 1-630	Remove four screws .....	414
Figure 1-631	Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly .....	414
Figure 1-632	Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly .....	415
Figure 1-633	Install four screws .....	416
Figure 1-634	Install the wire harnesses in the guide .....	416
Figure 1-635	Connect two connectors .....	417
Figure 1-636	Install the Tray 1 gear cover .....	417
Figure 1-637	Install the shield and connect one connector .....	418
Figure 1-638	Remove six screws .....	418
Figure 1-639	Install the door .....	419
Figure 1-640	Install the shaft .....	419
Figure 1-641	Rotate the stopper .....	420
Figure 1-642	Install the cover .....	420
Figure 1-643	Install three screws .....	421
Figure 1-644	Install the cover .....	421
Figure 1-645	Engage the right-side spring .....	422
Figure 1-646	Engage the left-side spring .....	422
Figure 1-647	Engage two outer retaining pins .....	423

Figure 1-648	Remove the low adhesive tape .....	423
Figure 1-649	Install the cover .....	424
Figure 1-650	Install one screw .....	424
Figure 1-651	Install the cover .....	425
Figure 1-652	Install one screw .....	425
Figure 1-653	Remove the formatter .....	427
Figure 1-654	Remove the formatter .....	427
Figure 1-655	Remove one screw .....	428
Figure 1-656	Remove the cover .....	428
Figure 1-657	Remove three screws .....	429
Figure 1-658	Remove the cover .....	429
Figure 1-659	Remove one screw .....	430
Figure 1-660	Remove the cover .....	430
Figure 1-661	Remove six screws .....	431
Figure 1-662	Disconnect one connector and remove the shield .....	431
Figure 1-663	Disconnect four connectors .....	432
Figure 1-664	Disconnect three connectors .....	432
Figure 1-665	Remove two screws .....	433
Figure 1-666	Remove the ICB .....	433
Figure 1-667	Recycle and unpack .....	434
Figure 1-668	Install the ICB .....	434
Figure 1-669	Install two screws .....	435
Figure 1-670	Connect three connectors .....	435
Figure 1-671	Connect four connectors .....	436
Figure 1-672	Install the shield and connect one connector .....	436
Figure 1-673	Remove six screws .....	437
Figure 1-674	Install the cover .....	437
Figure 1-675	Install one screw .....	438
Figure 1-676	Install the cover .....	438
Figure 1-677	Install three screws .....	439
Figure 1-678	Install the cover .....	439
Figure 1-679	Install one screw .....	440
Figure 1-680	Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot .....	440
Figure 1-681	Tighten the two thumbscrews .....	441
Figure 1-682	Verify that the formatter is functioning .....	442
Figure 1-683	Remove one screw .....	444
Figure 1-684	Remove the cover .....	444
Figure 1-685	Remove three screws .....	445
Figure 1-686	Remove the cover .....	445
Figure 1-687	Remove one screw .....	446
Figure 1-688	Remove the cover .....	446

Figure 1-689	Remove six screws .....	447
Figure 1-690	Disconnect one connector and remove the shield .....	447
Figure 1-691	Remove the feed motor .....	448
Figure 1-692	Install the feed motor .....	449
Figure 1-693	Install the shield and connect one connector .....	449
Figure 1-694	Remove six screws .....	450
Figure 1-695	Install the cover .....	450
Figure 1-696	Install one screw .....	451
Figure 1-697	Install the cover .....	451
Figure 1-698	Install three screws .....	452
Figure 1-699	Install the cover .....	452
Figure 1-700	Install one screw .....	453
Figure 1-701	Remove the drum motor .....	454
Figure 1-702	Remove the fuser motor .....	455
Figure 1-703	Release two tabs .....	456
Figure 1-704	Remove the fan duct .....	456
Figure 1-705	Remove two screws and the cover .....	457
Figure 1-706	Remove the main fan .....	457
Figure 1-707	Remove the laser/scanner fan .....	458
Figure 1-708	Install the laser/scanner fan .....	459
Figure 1-709	Remove the cartridge front-side fan .....	460
Figure 1-710	Install the cartridge front-side fan .....	461
Figure 1-711	Remove the low-voltage power supply fan .....	462
Figure 1-712	Install the low-voltage power supply fan .....	463
Figure 1-713	Remove one in-line connector .....	464
Figure 1-714	Disconnect one in-line connector .....	464
Figure 1-715	Release the fan and duct .....	465
Figure 1-716	Remove the fan and duct .....	465
Figure 1-717	Separate the fan from the duct .....	466
Figure 1-718	Release two tabs .....	467
Figure 1-719	Remove the fan duct .....	467
Figure 1-720	Remove two screws and the cover .....	468
Figure 1-721	Disconnect one connector .....	468
Figure 1-722	Release the fan duct .....	469
Figure 1-723	Remove the fan duct .....	469
Figure 1-724	Remove the cartridge fan .....	470
Figure 1-725	Install the cartridge fan .....	470
Figure 1-726	Remove the Tray 1 gear cover .....	471
Figure 1-727	Disconnect two connectors .....	472
Figure 1-728	Remove one screw .....	472
Figure 1-729	Release one tab .....	473



Figure 1-730	Remove the assembly .....	473
Figure 1-731	Remove five screws and the plate .....	474
Figure 1-732	Remove one screw .....	475
Figure 1-733	Remove the guide .....	475
Figure 1-734	Remove four screws .....	476
Figure 1-735	Remove five screws .....	476
Figure 1-736	Release one tab .....	477
Figure 1-737	Remove the sheet-metal plate .....	477
Figure 1-738	Remove one screw .....	478
Figure 1-739	Remove the output accessory detection switch .....	478
Figure 1-740	Remove the formatter .....	480
Figure 1-741	Remove the formatter .....	481
Figure 1-742	Remove the output bin .....	481
Figure 1-743	Remove the stapling mailbox .....	482
Figure 1-744	Remove the duplex accessory .....	483
Figure 1-745	Remove one screw .....	483
Figure 1-746	Remove the side-rear cover .....	484
Figure 1-747	Remove one screw .....	484
Figure 1-748	Remove the cover .....	485
Figure 1-749	Remove three screws .....	485
Figure 1-750	Remove the cover .....	486
Figure 1-751	Remove three screws .....	486
Figure 1-752	Remove the cover .....	487
Figure 1-753	Remove one screw .....	487
Figure 1-754	Remove the cover .....	488
Figure 1-755	Remove six screws .....	488
Figure 1-756	Disconnect one connector and remove the shield .....	489
Figure 1-757	Disconnect four connectors .....	489
Figure 1-758	Disconnect three connectors .....	490
Figure 1-759	Remove two screws .....	490
Figure 1-760	Remove the ICB .....	491
Figure 1-761	Remove the sheet-metal plate .....	491
Figure 1-762	Remove one screw .....	492
Figure 1-763	Remove the guide .....	492
Figure 1-764	Remove four screws .....	493
Figure 1-765	Remove two screws .....	493
Figure 1-766	Release one tab .....	494
Figure 1-767	Remove the sheet-metal plate .....	494
Figure 1-768	Disconnect seven connectors .....	495
Figure 1-769	Remove three screws .....	495
Figure 1-770	Release one tab .....	496

Figure 1-771	Remove the LVPS .....	496
Figure 1-772	Recycle and unpack .....	497
Figure 1-773	Install the LVPS .....	498
Figure 1-774	Check one tab .....	498
Figure 1-775	Install three screws .....	499
Figure 1-776	Connect seven connectors .....	499
Figure 1-777	Install the sheet-metal plate .....	500
Figure 1-778	Check one tab .....	500
Figure 1-779	Install five screws .....	501
Figure 1-780	Install four screws .....	501
Figure 1-781	Install the guide .....	502
Figure 1-782	Install one screw .....	502
Figure 1-783	Install the sheet-metal plate .....	503
Figure 1-784	Install the ICB .....	503
Figure 1-785	Install two screws .....	504
Figure 1-786	Connect three connectors .....	504
Figure 1-787	Connect four connectors .....	505
Figure 1-788	Install the shield and connect one connector .....	505
Figure 1-789	Remove six screws .....	506
Figure 1-790	Install the cover .....	506
Figure 1-791	Install one screw .....	507
Figure 1-792	Install the cover .....	507
Figure 1-793	Install three screws .....	508
Figure 1-794	Install the cover .....	508
Figure 1-795	Install three screws .....	509
Figure 1-796	Install the cover .....	509
Figure 1-797	Install one screw .....	510
Figure 1-798	Install the side-rear cover .....	510
Figure 1-799	Install one screw .....	511
Figure 1-800	Install the duplex accessory .....	511
Figure 1-801	Install the output bin .....	512
Figure 1-802	Install the stapling mailbox .....	513
Figure 1-803	Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot .....	514
Figure 1-804	Tighten the two thumbscrews .....	514
Figure 1-805	Verify that the formatter is functioning .....	515
Figure 1-806	Disconnect one connector .....	516
Figure 1-807	Remove the lifter assembly .....	517
Figure 1-808	Remove one spring .....	517
Figure 1-809	Release the wire harnesses .....	518
Figure 1-810	Remove the the guide .....	519
Figure 1-811	Disconnect one connector and remove one spring .....	519

Figure 1-812	Remove the lifter assembly .....	520
Figure 1-813	Remove the formatter .....	523
Figure 1-814	Remove the formatter .....	523
Figure 1-815	Remove the output bin .....	524
Figure 1-816	Remove the stapling mailbox .....	525
Figure 1-817	Remove the duplex accessory .....	526
Figure 1-818	Remove the fuser-entrance guide .....	526
Figure 1-819	Remove the fuser .....	527
Figure 1-820	Remove two screws .....	527
Figure 1-821	Release two tabs .....	528
Figure 1-822	Release the right-upper corner .....	528
Figure 1-823	Slide the cover to the right .....	529
Figure 1-824	Remove the cover .....	529
Figure 1-825	Remove one screw .....	530
Figure 1-826	Remove the side-rear cover .....	530
Figure 1-827	Remove one screw .....	531
Figure 1-828	Remove the cover .....	531
Figure 1-829	Remove three screws .....	532
Figure 1-830	Remove the cover .....	532
Figure 1-831	Remove three screws .....	533
Figure 1-832	Remove the cover .....	533
Figure 1-833	Remove one screw .....	534
Figure 1-834	Remove the cover .....	534
Figure 1-835	Remove six screws .....	535
Figure 1-836	Disconnect one connector and remove the shield .....	535
Figure 1-837	Disconnect all of the connectors .....	536
Figure 1-838	Remove two screws and release one tab .....	536
Figure 1-839	Remove the DC controller .....	537
Figure 1-840	Disconnect four connectors .....	537
Figure 1-841	Disconnect three connectors .....	538
Figure 1-842	Remove two screws .....	538
Figure 1-843	Remove the ICB .....	539
Figure 1-844	Remove the sheet-metal plate .....	539
Figure 1-845	Remove one screw .....	540
Figure 1-846	Remove the guide .....	540
Figure 1-847	Remove four screws .....	541
Figure 1-848	Remove two screws .....	541
Figure 1-849	Release one tab .....	542
Figure 1-850	Remove the sheet-metal plate .....	542
Figure 1-851	Disconnect seven connectors .....	543
Figure 1-852	Remove three screws .....	543

Figure 1-853	Release one tab .....	544
Figure 1-854	Remove the LVPS .....	544
Figure 1-855	Release two tabs .....	545
Figure 1-856	Remove the fan duct .....	545
Figure 1-857	Remove the cover .....	546
Figure 1-858	Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws .....	546
Figure 1-859	Remove two screws and release one tab .....	547
Figure 1-860	Release the guide .....	547
Figure 1-861	Remove the guide .....	548
Figure 1-862	Release the wire harnesses and remove four screws .....	548
Figure 1-863	Feed the wire harnesses through the hole .....	549
Figure 1-864	Feed the wire harnesses through the hole .....	549
Figure 1-865	Remove the HVPS .....	550
Figure 1-866	Remove one screw and release the wire harness .....	550
Figure 1-867	Remove the feed assembly .....	551
Figure 1-868	Recycle and unpack .....	551
Figure 1-869	Check the drive belts and belt shafts .....	552
Figure 1-870	Check the foot and slot .....	552
Figure 1-871	Install the feed assembly .....	553
Figure 1-872	Verify the feed assembly installation .....	553
Figure 1-873	Install five screws .....	554
Figure 1-874	Connect one wire harness and install one screw and release .....	554
Figure 1-875	Partially install the HVPS .....	555
Figure 1-876	Feed the wire harnesses through the hole .....	555
Figure 1-877	Feed the wire harnesses through the hole .....	556
Figure 1-878	Install four screws and install the wire harnesses .....	556
Figure 1-879	Install the guide .....	557
Figure 1-880	Check the guide .....	557
Figure 1-881	Install two screws .....	558
Figure 1-882	Install four screws and connect two connectors .....	558
Figure 1-883	Install the cover .....	559
Figure 1-884	Install the fan duct .....	559
Figure 1-885	Check two tabs .....	560
Figure 1-886	Install the LVPS .....	561
Figure 1-887	Check one tab .....	561
Figure 1-888	Install three screws .....	562
Figure 1-889	Connect seven connectors .....	562
Figure 1-890	Install the sheet-metal plate .....	563
Figure 1-891	Check one tab .....	563
Figure 1-892	Install five screws .....	564
Figure 1-893	Install four screws .....	564

Figure 1-894	Install the guide .....	565
Figure 1-895	Install one screw .....	565
Figure 1-896	Install the sheet-metal plate .....	566
Figure 1-897	Install the ICB .....	566
Figure 1-898	Install two screws .....	567
Figure 1-899	Connect three connectors .....	567
Figure 1-900	Connect four connectors .....	568
Figure 1-901	Install the DC controller .....	568
Figure 1-902	Connect all of the connectors .....	569
Figure 1-903	Install the shield and connect one connector .....	569
Figure 1-904	Remove six screws .....	570
Figure 1-905	Install the cover .....	570
Figure 1-906	Install one screw .....	571
Figure 1-907	Install the cover .....	571
Figure 1-908	Install three screws .....	572
Figure 1-909	Install the cover .....	572
Figure 1-910	Install three screws .....	573
Figure 1-911	Install the side-rear cover .....	573
Figure 1-912	Install one screw .....	574
Figure 1-913	Install the cover .....	574
Figure 1-914	Install one screw .....	575
Figure 1-915	Note of the location of the tabs .....	575
Figure 1-916	Align four tabs .....	576
Figure 1-917	Slide the cover to the left .....	576
Figure 1-918	Engage one locking pin .....	577
Figure 1-919	Engage two tabs .....	577
Figure 1-920	Check cover installation .....	578
Figure 1-921	Install two screws .....	578
Figure 1-922	Install the fuser .....	579
Figure 1-923	Install the fuser-entrance guide .....	579
Figure 1-924	Install the duplex accessory .....	580
Figure 1-925	Install the output bin .....	580
Figure 1-926	Install the stapling mailbox .....	581
Figure 1-927	Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot .....	582
Figure 1-928	Tighten the two thumbscrews .....	582
Figure 1-929	Verify that the formatter is functioning .....	583
Figure 1-930	Remove the feed roller assembly .....	584
Figure 1-931	Remove the output bin .....	586
Figure 1-932	Remove the stapling mailbox .....	587
Figure 1-933	Secure the outer retaining pins .....	588
Figure 1-934	Release two outer retaining pins .....	588

Figure 1-935	Release one pin .....	589
Figure 1-936	Release the left-side spring .....	589
Figure 1-937	Release the right-side spring .....	590
Figure 1-938	Remove the cover .....	590
Figure 1-939	Remove one screw .....	591
Figure 1-940	Remove the cover .....	591
Figure 1-941	Remove three screws .....	592
Figure 1-942	Remove the cover .....	592
Figure 1-943	Remove three screws .....	593
Figure 1-944	Remove the cover .....	593
Figure 1-945	Remove one screw .....	594
Figure 1-946	Remove the cover .....	594
Figure 1-947	Rotate the stopper .....	595
Figure 1-948	Remove the shaft .....	595
Figure 1-949	Remove the door .....	596
Figure 1-950	Remove six screws .....	596
Figure 1-951	Disconnect one connector and remove the shield .....	597
Figure 1-952	Disconnect all of the connectors .....	597
Figure 1-953	Remove two screws and release one tab .....	598
Figure 1-954	Remove the DC controller .....	598
Figure 1-955	Remove the feed motor .....	599
Figure 1-956	Remove the pickup drive assembly .....	599
Figure 1-957	Install the pickup drive assembly .....	600
Figure 1-958	Check the pickup drive assembly gears .....	601
Figure 1-959	Install the feed motor .....	601
Figure 1-960	Install the DC controller .....	602
Figure 1-961	Connect all of the connectors .....	602
Figure 1-962	Install the shield and connect one connector .....	603
Figure 1-963	Remove six screws .....	603
Figure 1-964	Install the door .....	604
Figure 1-965	Install the shaft .....	604
Figure 1-966	Rotate the stopper .....	605
Figure 1-967	Install the cover .....	605
Figure 1-968	Install one screw .....	606
Figure 1-969	Install the cover .....	606
Figure 1-970	Install three screws .....	607
Figure 1-971	Install the cover .....	607
Figure 1-972	Install three screws .....	608
Figure 1-973	Install the cover .....	608
Figure 1-974	Install one screw .....	609
Figure 1-975	Install the cover .....	609

Figure 1-976	Engage the right-side spring .....	610
Figure 1-977	Engage the left-side spring .....	610
Figure 1-978	Engage two outer retaining pins .....	611
Figure 1-979	Remove the low adhesive tape .....	611
Figure 1-980	Install the output bin .....	612
Figure 1-981	Install the stapling mailbox .....	612
Figure 1-982	Remove the output bin .....	615
Figure 1-983	Remove the stapling mailbox .....	616
Figure 1-984	Secure the outer retaining pins .....	617
Figure 1-985	Release two outer retaining pins .....	617
Figure 1-986	Release one pin .....	618
Figure 1-987	Release the left-side spring .....	618
Figure 1-988	Release the right-side spring .....	619
Figure 1-989	Remove the cover .....	619
Figure 1-990	Remove two screws .....	620
Figure 1-991	Remove the cover .....	620
Figure 1-992	Remove one screw .....	621
Figure 1-993	Remove the switch .....	621
Figure 1-994	Remove one screw .....	622
Figure 1-995	Remove the cover .....	622
Figure 1-996	Remove three screws .....	623
Figure 1-997	Remove the cover .....	623
Figure 1-998	Remove three screws .....	624
Figure 1-999	Remove the cover .....	624
Figure 1-1000	Remove one screw .....	625
Figure 1-1001	Remove the cover .....	625
Figure 1-1002	Remove six screws .....	626
Figure 1-1003	Disconnect one connector and remove the shield .....	626
Figure 1-1004	Disconnect all of the connectors .....	627
Figure 1-1005	Remove two screws and release one tab .....	627
Figure 1-1006	Remove the DC controller .....	628
Figure 1-1007	Remove three screws and the Tray 1 gear cover .....	628
Figure 1-1008	Disconnect two connectors .....	629
Figure 1-1009	Release the wire harnesses .....	629
Figure 1-1010	Remove four screws .....	630
Figure 1-1011	Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly .....	630
Figure 1-1012	Remove the feed motor .....	631
Figure 1-1013	Remove the pickup drive assembly .....	631
Figure 1-1014	Remove one screw and the cassette rail .....	632
Figure 1-1015	Remove seven screws .....	632
Figure 1-1016	Disengage the cover retainer .....	633

Figure 1-1017	Remove the sheet-metal plate .....	633
Figure 1-1018	Remove one screw .....	634
Figure 1-1019	Disconnect two connectors and remove one screw .....	634
Figure 1-1020	Remove the cassette pickup assembly .....	635
Figure 1-1021	Install the cassette pickup assembly .....	636
Figure 1-1022	Install one screw and connect two connectors .....	636
Figure 1-1023	Install one screw .....	637
Figure 1-1024	Install the sheet-metal plate .....	637
Figure 1-1025	Engage the cover retainer .....	638
Figure 1-1026	Install seven screws .....	638
Figure 1-1027	Install the cassette rail and one screw .....	639
Figure 1-1028	Install the pickup drive assembly .....	639
Figure 1-1029	Check the pickup drive assembly gears .....	640
Figure 1-1030	Install the feed motor .....	640
Figure 1-1031	Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly .....	641
Figure 1-1032	Install four screws .....	641
Figure 1-1033	Install the wire harnesses in the guide .....	642
Figure 1-1034	Connect two connectors .....	642
Figure 1-1035	Install the Tray 1 gear cover .....	643
Figure 1-1036	Install the DC controller .....	643
Figure 1-1037	Connect all of the connectors .....	644
Figure 1-1038	Install the shield and connect one connector .....	644
Figure 1-1039	Remove six screws .....	645
Figure 1-1040	Install the cover .....	645
Figure 1-1041	Install one screw .....	646
Figure 1-1042	Install the cover .....	646
Figure 1-1043	Install three screws .....	647
Figure 1-1044	Install the cover .....	647
Figure 1-1045	Install three screws .....	648
Figure 1-1046	Install the cover .....	648
Figure 1-1047	Install one screw .....	649
Figure 1-1048	Connect one connector .....	649
Figure 1-1049	Install one screw .....	650
Figure 1-1050	Install the cover .....	650
Figure 1-1051	Install two screws .....	651
Figure 1-1052	Install the cover .....	651
Figure 1-1053	Engage the right-side spring .....	652
Figure 1-1054	Engage the left-side spring .....	652
Figure 1-1055	Engage two outer retaining pins .....	653
Figure 1-1056	Remove the low adhesive tape .....	653
Figure 1-1057	Install the output bin .....	654



Figure 1-1058	Install the stapling mailbox .....	654
Figure 1-1059	Remove the rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	658
Figure 1-1060	Left cover tab locations (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	659
Figure 1-1061	Release one tab (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	660
Figure 1-1062	Release one tab (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	660
Figure 1-1063	Release three tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	661
Figure 1-1064	Locate three tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	661
Figure 1-1065	Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	662
Figure 1-1066	Left cover tab locations (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	663
Figure 1-1067	Release one tab (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	664
Figure 1-1068	Release four tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	664
Figure 1-1069	Locate three tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	665
Figure 1-1070	Remove the right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	665
Figure 1-1071	Remove two screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	666
Figure 1-1072	Remove the cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	666
Figure 1-1073	Remove three screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	667
Figure 1-1074	Remove the front-upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	668
Figure 1-1075	Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	669
Figure 1-1076	Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	669
Figure 1-1077	Gears on the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	670
Figure 1-1078	Remove the tray rail (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	671
Figure 1-1079	Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	672
Figure 1-1080	Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	672
Figure 1-1081	Remove one screw and disconnect three connectors (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	673
Figure 1-1082	Remove one screw (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	673
Figure 1-1083	Remove the pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	674
Figure 1-1084	Gears on the paper drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	674
Figure 1-1085	Disconnect one connector (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	675
Figure 1-1086	Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	675
Figure 1-1087	Disconnect one connector and remove one spring (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	676
Figure 1-1088	Remove the sheet-metal plate (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	676
Figure 1-1089	Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	677
Figure 1-1090	Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	678
Figure 1-1091	Remove the rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	680
Figure 1-1092	Remove the stopper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	681
Figure 1-1093	Remove the stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	681
Figure 1-1094	Remove four screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	682
Figure 1-1095	Remove the stock box (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	682
Figure 1-1096	Remove the stock box rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	683
Figure 1-1097	Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	684
Figure 1-1098	Remove the front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	685

Figure 1-1099	Remove the right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	686
Figure 1-1100	Remove the stopper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	687
Figure 1-1101	Release the link arm (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	687
Figure 1-1102	Remove the right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	688
Figure 1-1103	Remove the right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	689
Figure 1-1104	Remove the screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	690
Figure 1-1105	Release two tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	691
Figure 1-1106	Remove the right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	691
Figure 1-1107	Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	692
Figure 1-1108	Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	693
Figure 1-1109	Paper drive assembly gears (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	694
Figure 1-1110	Remove the tray rail (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	695
Figure 1-1111	Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	696
Figure 1-1112	Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) .....	696
Figure 1-1113	Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	697
Figure 1-1114	Remove the paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	697
Figure 1-1115	Gears on the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	698
Figure 1-1116	Disconnect connector (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	699
Figure 1-1117	Remove the lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	699
Figure 1-1118	Disconnect one connector and remove one spring (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	700
Figure 1-1119	Remove the sheet-metal plate (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	701
Figure 1-1120	Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	701
Figure 1-1121	Disconnect three connectors (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	702
Figure 1-1122	Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	703
Figure 1-1123	Remove rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	705
Figure 1-1124	Remove the stopper (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	706
Figure 1-1125	Remove the right door (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	706
Figure 1-1126	Remove the right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	707
Figure 1-1127	Remove the screws (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	708
Figure 1-1128	Remove the right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	708
Figure 1-1129	Remove the front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	709
Figure 1-1130	Remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	710
Figure 1-1131	Remove the right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	710
Figure 1-1132	Remove the left cover (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	711
Figure 1-1133	Remove the tray rail (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	712
Figure 1-1134	Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	713
Figure 1-1135	Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	713
Figure 1-1136	Remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	714
Figure 1-1137	Paper drive assembly gears (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) .....	715
Figure 1-1138	Remove the tray rail (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	716
Figure 1-1139	Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) .....	717

Figure 1-1140	Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder)	717
Figure 1-1141	Remove the latch holder (HCI optional paper feeder)	718
Figure 1-1142	Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	718
Figure 1-1143	Paper drive assembly gears (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	719
Figure 1-1144	Remove the tray rail (HCI optional paper feeder)	720
Figure 1-1145	Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder)	720
Figure 1-1146	Remove the Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	721
Figure 1-1147	Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	722
Figure 1-1148	Gears on the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	723
Figure 1-1149	Disconnect connector (HCI optional paper feeder)	724
Figure 1-1150	Remove the Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	724
Figure 1-1151	Remove the lifter base assembly spring (HCI optional paper feeder)	725
Figure 1-1152	Disconnect connector (HCI optional paper feeder)	726
Figure 1-1153	Remove the Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	726
Figure 1-1154	Remove the lifter base assembly spring (HCI optional paper feeder)	727
Figure 1-1155	Disconnect connectors (HCI optional paper feeder)	728
Figure 1-1156	Remove the Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	728
Figure 1-1157	Disconnect connectors (HCI optional paper feeder)	729
Figure 1-1158	Remove the Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	729
Figure 1-1159	Remove the Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	730
Figure 1-1160	Remove the controller PCA (HCI optional paper feeder)	731
Figure 1-1161	Remove the front cover (stapling mailbox)	733
Figure 1-1162	Remove the lever assembly (stapling mailbox)	733
Figure 1-1163	Remove the rear cover (stapling mailbox)	734
Figure 1-1164	Remove one spring (stapling mailbox)	735
Figure 1-1165	Remove the bushing (stapling mailbox)	735
Figure 1-1166	Remove the bushing (stapling mailbox)	736
Figure 1-1167	Remove the handle assembly (stapling mailbox)	736
Figure 1-1168	Remove the top cover	737
Figure 1-1169	Remove two stoppers (stapling mailbox)	738
Figure 1-1170	Reinstall the two stoppers (stapling mailbox)	738
Figure 1-1171	Remove the output bin (stapling mailbox)	739
Figure 1-1172	Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox)	740
Figure 1-1173	Remove the output bin assembly cover (stapling mailbox)	741
Figure 1-1174	Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox)	742
Figure 1-1175	Release the wire harnesses (stapling mailbox)	742
Figure 1-1176	Remove the PCA (stapling mailbox)	743
Figure 1-1177	Remove the bushing (stapling mailbox)	744
Figure 1-1178	Remove the output bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox)	744
Figure 1-1179	Remove the interlock assembly (stapling mailbox)	745
Figure 1-1180	Remove the stapler assembly (stapling mailbox)	745

Figure 1-1181	Disconnect two connectors (stapling mailbox)	746
Figure 1-1182	Remove the jogger assembly (stapling mailbox)	746
Figure 1-1183	Remove the output bin solenoid and sheet-metal plate (stapling mailbox)	747
Figure 1-1184	Remove the output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox)	748
Figure 1-1185	Remove the output-bin flapper assembly (stapling mailbox)	749
Figure 1-1186	Remove two screws (stapling mailbox)	750
Figure 1-1187	Remove the output bin assembly (stapling mailbox)	750
Figure 1-1188	Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox)	751
Figure 1-1189	Disconnect four connectors (stapling mailbox)	752
Figure 1-1190	Remove the rear-rail assembly (stapling mailbox)	752
Figure 1-1191	Remove the sheet-metal plate (stapling mailbox)	753
Figure 1-1192	Remove the gear stopper (stapling mailbox)	753
Figure 1-1193	Remove one gear and the belt (stapling mailbox)	754
Figure 1-1194	Release one spring and remove the swing gear (stapling mailbox)	754
Figure 1-1195	Remove one gear and remove the belt (stapling mailbox)	755
Figure 1-1196	Remove the sensor flag (stapling mailbox)	755
Figure 1-1197	Remove the guide (stapling mailbox)	756
Figure 1-1198	Remove one gear (stapling mailbox)	756
Figure 1-1199	Replace the guide (stapling mailbox)	757
Figure 1-1200	Remove the guide (stapling mailbox)	757
Figure 1-1201	Remove the stage top assembly and right door (stapling mailbox)	758
Figure 1-1202	Remove the stopper (stapling mailbox)	758
Figure 1-1203	Remove the right door and inlet guide (stapling mailbox)	759
Figure 1-1204	Remove the paper feed guide (stapling mailbox)	759
Figure 1-1205	Install the stage top assembly (stapling mailbox)	760
Figure 1-1206	Remove two belts and five gears (stapling mailbox)	761
Figure 1-1207	Pull out the shaft (stapling mailbox)	762
Figure 1-1208	Disconnect one connector (stapling mailbox)	762
Figure 1-1209	Remove the stage assembly (stapling mailbox)	763
Figure 1-1210	Remove the stamp assembly (stapling mailbox)	763
Figure 1-1211	Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox)	764
Figure 1-1212	Disconnect two connectors (stapling mailbox)	765
Figure 1-1213	Remove one spring (stapling mailbox)	765
Figure 1-1214	Remove the tray support (stapling mailbox)	766
Figure 1-1215	Remove the lifter lever (stapling mailbox)	766
Figure 1-1216	Remove the output bin 3 drive assembly (stapling mailbox)	767
Figure 2-1	Document feeder and scanner components	778
Figure 2-2	Document feeder components (1 of 2)	780
Figure 2-3	Document feeder components (2 of 2)	782
Figure 2-4	Scanner control board (SCB)	784
Figure 2-5	Control panel	786

Figure 2-6	Covers .....	788
Figure 2-7	Upper plate assembly .....	790
Figure 2-8	Internal components (1 of 5) .....	792
Figure 2-9	Internal components (2 of 5) .....	794
Figure 2-10	Internal components (3 of 5) .....	796
Figure 2-11	Internal components (4 of 5) .....	798
Figure 2-12	Internal components (5 of 5) .....	800
Figure 2-13	High-voltage power supply .....	802
Figure 2-14	500-sheet paper feeder covers .....	804
Figure 2-15	1x500-sheet paper feeder components .....	806
Figure 2-16	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers .....	808
Figure 2-17	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components .....	810
Figure 2-18	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers .....	812
Figure 2-19	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) .....	814
Figure 2-20	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) .....	816
Figure 2-21	Stapling mailbox covers .....	818
Figure 2-22	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) .....	820
Figure 2-23	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) .....	822
Figure 2-24	Envelope feeder covers .....	824
Figure 2-25	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) .....	826
Figure 2-26	Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) .....	828



---

# 1 Removal and replacement

- [For additional service and support information](#)
- [Removal and replacement strategy](#)
- [Customer self-repair \(CSR\) assemblies](#)
- [Document feeder and image scanner assemblies](#)
- [Covers, doors, tray, and external panels \(product base\)](#)
- [Main assemblies](#)
- [Optional input and output accessories](#)

## For additional service and support information

HP service personnel, go to the Link Service Access Work Bench (SAW) at <http://h41302.www4.hp.com/km/saw/home.do>.

Channel partners, go to Link HP Channel Services Network (CNS) at <https://h30125.www3.hp.com/hpcsn>.

- Install and configure
- Product specifications
- Up to date control-panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting
- Solutions for product issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Service advisories
- Warranty & regulatory information




# Removal and replacement strategy

## Considerations during removal and replacement

This chapter describes the removal and replacement of field-replaceable units (FRUs) only.



Replacing FRUs is generally the reverse of removal. Notes are included to provide directions for difficult or critical replacement procedures.

HP does not support repairing individual subassemblies or troubleshooting to the printed-circuit assembly (PCA) component level.

 **WARNING!** Never operate or service the product with the protective cover removed from the laser scanner assembly. The reflected beam, although invisible, can cause damage the eyes.

The sheet-metal parts can have sharp edges. Be careful when handling sheet-metal parts.

Turn the product off, wait 5 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product. *If this warning is not followed*, severe injury and damage to the product can result. The power must be on for certain functional checks during troubleshooting. However, the power cord must be disconnected during parts removal. AC voltage is still present inside the product when the power switch is in the off position. The power cord must be *disconnected* before servicing the product.


 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing product parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.


Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the product.

Do not bend or fold the flat flexible cables (FFCs) during removal or installation.

Incorrectly routed or loose wire harnesses might interfere with other internal components or assemblies and be damaged, pinched, or frayed. Make sure that wire harnesses are correctly routed and retained when installing assemblies.

Do not expose the toner cartridge (or toner cartridges), to strong light even for a short time.

 **IMPORTANT:** When an assembly is removed that includes a rating plate or tag (or a product code label), make sure to transfer the plate or tag (or code label) to the replacement assembly.


 **NOTE:** To install a self-tapping screw, first turn it counterclockwise to align it with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn it clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. If a self-tapping screw-hole becomes stripped, repair the screw-hole or replace the affected assembly.

Always take note of the length, diameter, color, type, and location of each removed screw. Make sure that screws are installed in the original location they were removed from during reinstallation.

During assembly removal and replacement, or if the product is moved, remove the toner cartridge or cartridges.

Toner is a non-poisonous substance composed of plastic and a small number of colored components. If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove. Toner easily breaks down vinyl materials—avoid letting toner contact with vinyl.


During assembly removal and replacement, or if the product is moved, remove the tray cassette or cassettes.

 **TIP:** For clarity, some figures in this chapter show assemblies removed that are not required to be removed to service the product (for example, the scanner and document feeder assemblies). The procedures in this manual are correct for this product.


---

## Required tools

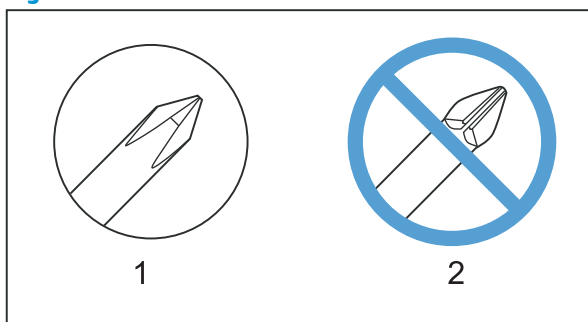
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152-mm (6-in) shaft length

 **NOTE:** For the best fit, use a JIS #2 Phillips screwdriver for the stapler/stacker.


- Small, flat-blade screwdriver
- Needle-nose pliers
- ESD strap (if one is available)
- Penlight

 **CAUTION:** Always use a Phillips screwdriver (callout 1). Do not use a Pozidriv screwdriver (callout 2) or any motorized screwdriver. These can damage screws or screw threads.

**Figure 1-1** Screwdrivers



## Types of screws

 **WARNING!** Make sure that assemblies are replaced with the correct screw type. Using the incorrect screw (for example, substituting a long screw for the correct shorter screw) can cause damage to the product or interfere with product operation. Do not intermix screws that are removed from one assembly with the screws that are removed from another assembly.

For a complete list of screw types and part numbers, see the Parts chapter.

## Service approach

The product uses a field repair strategy. Defective parts are diagnosed and replaced at the Field Replaceable Unit (FRU) assembly level. Repair normally begins by using the product internal diagnostics and the following two-step process:

1. Isolate the problem to the major system (for example, the network or server, or the product).
2. Troubleshoot the problem by using the procedures in the troubleshooting chapter.

After locating a faulty part, the product can usually be repaired at the assembly level by replacing FRUs. Some mechanical assemblies might need to be repaired at the subassembly level. Hewlett-Packard Company does not support replacement of components on the printed circuit assemblies.

The user replaces toner cartridges as they are depleted. Additional instructions about other user-replaceable parts are provided in this section.

The product tracks the amount of use on the customer-replaceable supplies by keeping a page count. The product prompts the user to replace certain items when a supply is depleted or a specific number of pages has been printed.

Swapping toner cartridges between products might cause a misrepresentation of supply life values and is not recommended.

## Before performing service

---

**⚠ WARNING!** Turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product. *If this warning is not followed, severe injury and damage to the product can result.* The power must be on for certain functional checks during troubleshooting. However, the power supply should be disconnected during parts removal.

---

1. Remove all paper.
2. Place the product on an ESD mat (if available). If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touching the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.
3. Remove the toner cartridge or toner cartridges.
4. Remove the trays.

## After performing service

1. Reinstall the toner cartridge or toner cartridges.
2. Reinstall the trays.
3. Return all paper to the trays.
4. Plug in the power cable and turn on the product.
5. Perform print-quality tests by printing from a host computer, the scanner glass, and the document feeder.

## Parts removal order

If needed, a list at the beginning of a removal procedure lists all of the assemblies that must be removed to reach the target assembly. Use these lists to determine which parts must be removed before removing other parts.

For procedures and/or steps that require identifying the right, left, or rear side of the product, face the front of the product for correct orientation.

## Customer self-repair (CSR) assemblies

- [Toner cartridge](#)
- [Staple cartridge \(for models with a stapler/stacker\)](#)
- [Backside background selector](#)
- [Formatter](#)
- [Hard-disk drive \(HDD\) or solid-state memory \(SSM\)](#)
- [Memory DIMM](#)
- [Fax printed-circuit assembly \(PCA\)](#)
- [Output bin and bin base assembly](#)
- [Duplex accessory](#)
- [Fuser-entrance guide](#)
- [Fuser](#)
- [Control-panel assembly](#)
- [Keyboard assembly \(M630z only\)](#)
- [Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers](#)
- [Tray 2-5 pickup and feed rollers](#)
- [Transfer roller](#)
- [Document-feeder maintenance kit](#)
- [Document feeder white backing](#)

## Toner cartridge

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the toner cartridge](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement toner cartridge](#)
- [Step 3: Install the toner cartridge](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides instructions about removing and replacing toner cartridge.

### Before servicing

To order a replacement assembly, use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product. To order the kit, go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts)


---

Toner cartridge kit part numbers	
<b>CF281X</b> High-capacity replacement toner cartridge	Toner cartridge kit with instruction guide
<b>CF281A</b> Standard-capacity replacement toner cartridge	

---

### Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

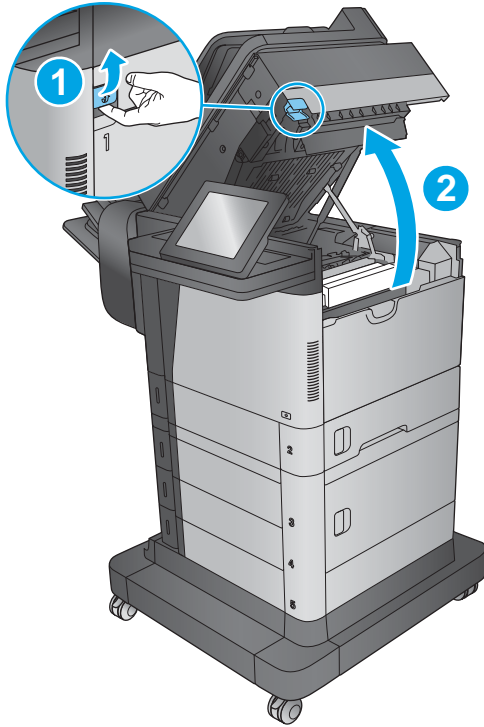
 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to the toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the product for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.

### Step 1: Remove the toner cartridge

1. Pull the top cover release lever (callout 1) to open the top cover (callout 2).

**Figure 1-2** Open the top cover



2. Grasp the handle of the used toner cartridge and pull out to remove it.

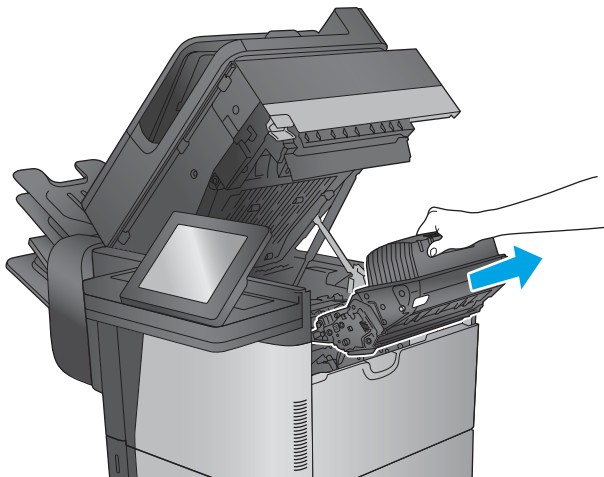
---

 **Reinstallation tip:** Align the toner cartridge with its slot, and then insert the toner cartridge into the product.

Close the top cover.

---

**Figure 1-3** Remove the toner cartridge



## Step 2: Unpack the replacement toner cartridge

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

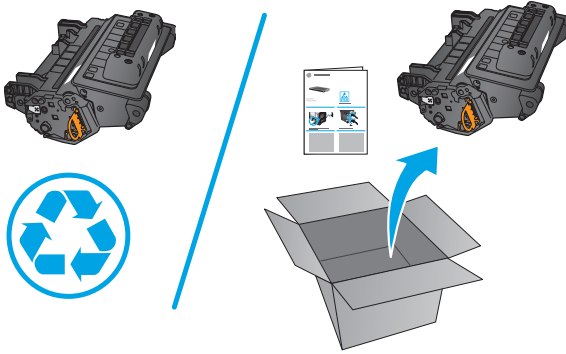
[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

**CAUTION:** To prevent damage to the replacement toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the product for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

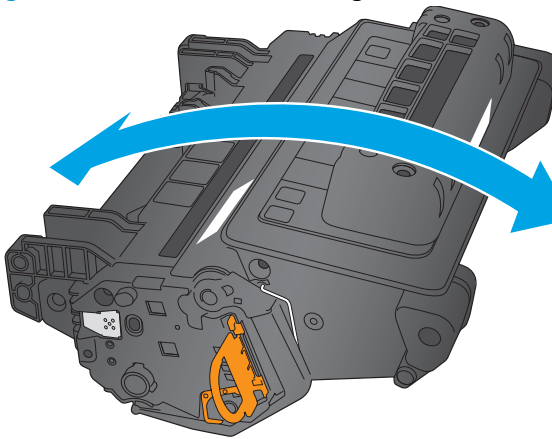
**Figure 1-4** Recycle and unpack



### Step 3: Install the toner cartridge

1. Hold both ends of the toner cartridge and rock it 5-6 times.

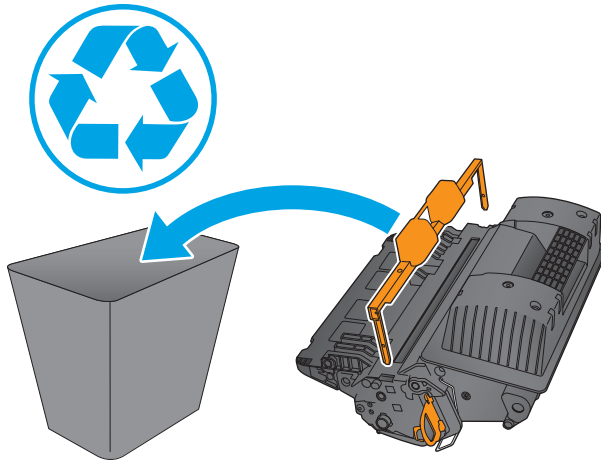
**Figure 1-5** Rock the toner cartridge





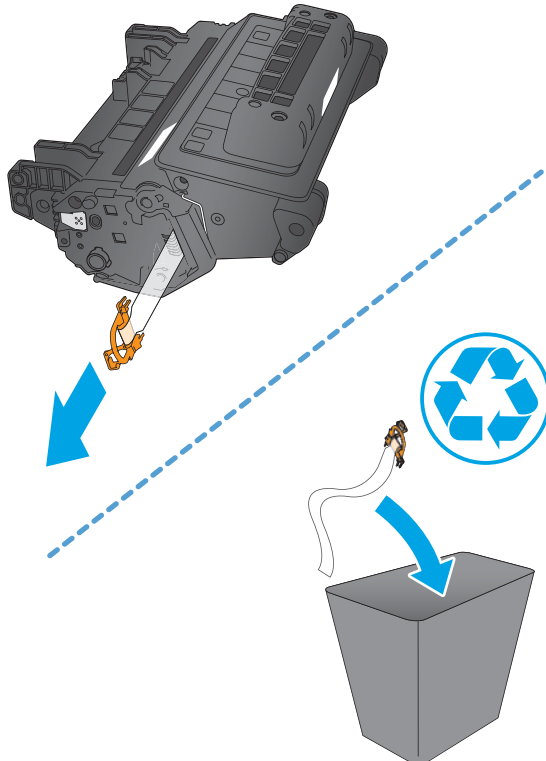
2. Remove the protective shield from the toner cartridge.

**Figure 1-6** Remove the protective shield



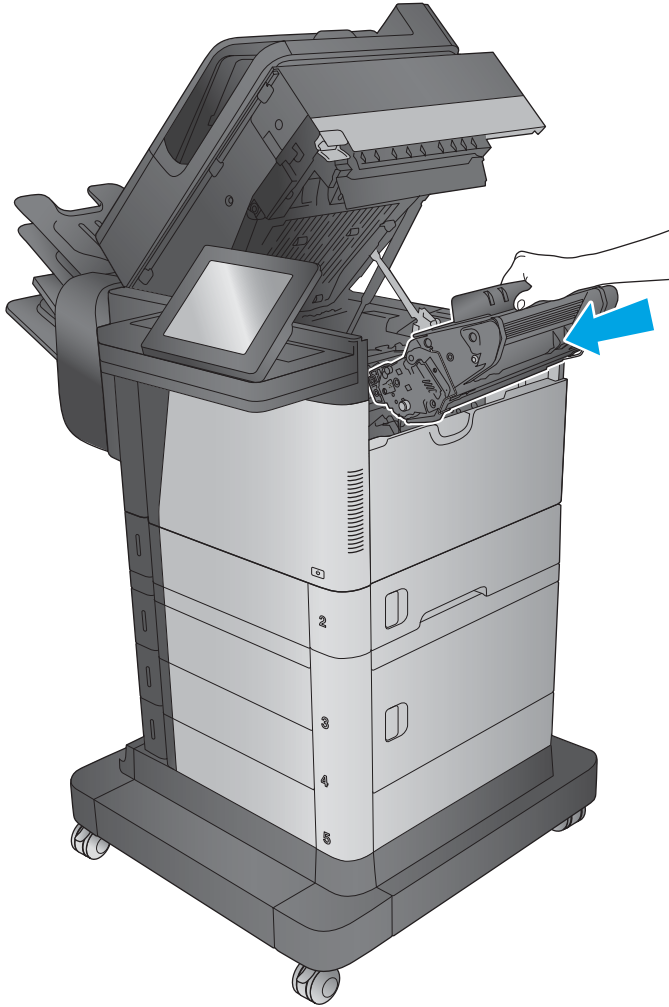
3. Pull on the orange tab to remove the toner sealing tape. Completely remove the sealing tape from the cartridge.

**Figure 1-7** Remove the sealing tape



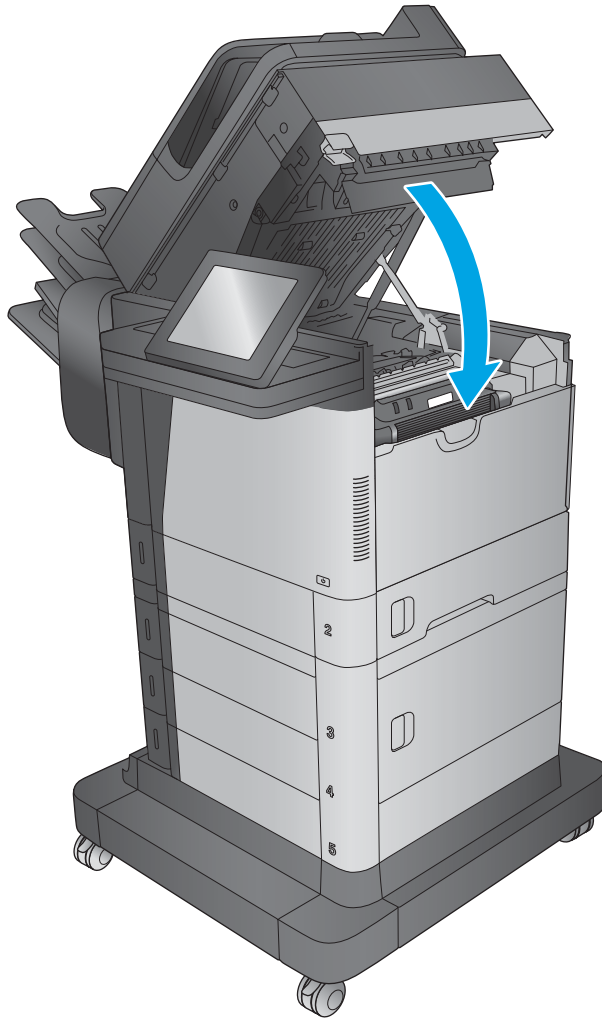
4. Align the toner cartridge with its slot, and then insert the toner cartridge into the product.

**Figure 1-8** Install the toner cartridge



5. Close the top cover.

**Figure 1-9** Close the top cover



## Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling.)

## Staple cartridge (for models with a stapler/stacker)

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the staple cartridge](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement staple cartridge](#)
- [Step 3: Install the staple cartridge](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides instructions about removing and replacing the staple cartridge.

### Before servicing

To order a replacement assembly, use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product. To order the kit, go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts)

Staple cartridge kit part numbers	
C8091A	HP staple cartridge refill kit with instruction guide

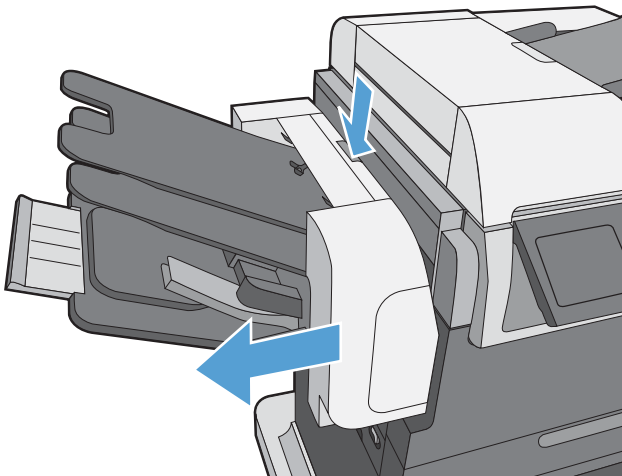
### Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

### Step 1: Remove the staple cartridge

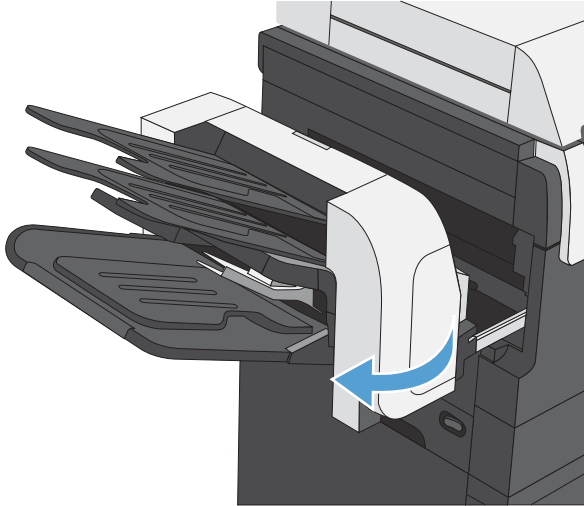
1. Press the release latch, and then slide the stapler/stacker away from the product.

**Figure 1-10** Slide the stapler/stacker away from the product



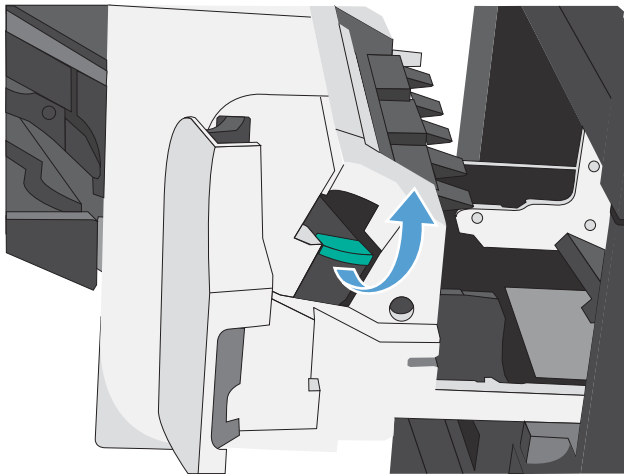
2. Open the staple-cartridge door.

**Figure 1-11** Open the staple-cartridge door



3. Lift up on the staple-cartridge green handle, and then pull the cartridge out of the stapler to remove it.

**Figure 1-12** Remove the staple cartridge




## Step 2: Unpack the replacement staple cartridge

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

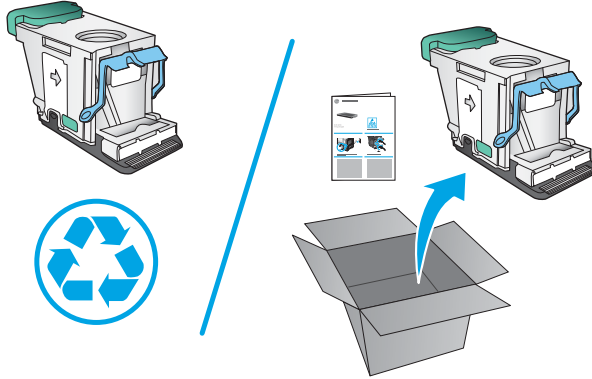
[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

---

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

---

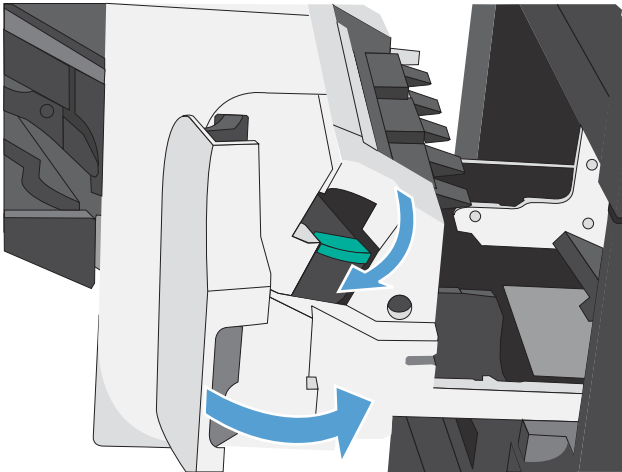
**Figure 1-13** Recycle and unpack



### Step 3: Install the staple cartridge

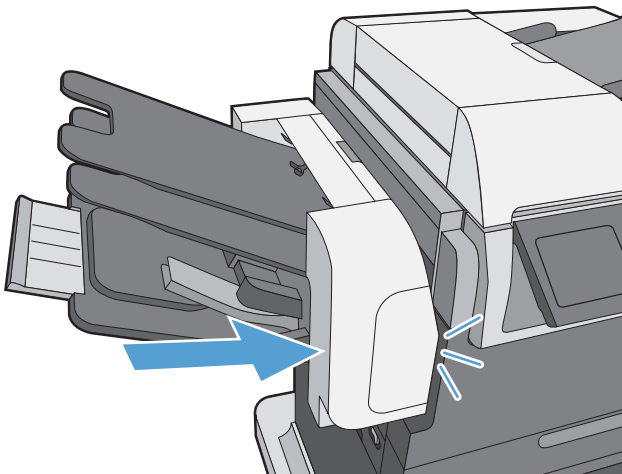
1. Insert the staple cartridge, push down on it to snap it into place, and then close the staple-cartridge door.

**Figure 1-14** Install the cartridge and close the stapler door



2. Slide the stapler/stacker toward the product until it latches in place.

**Figure 1-15** Slide the stapler back to the product



## Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling)

## Backside background selector

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the backside background selector](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement backside background selector](#)
- [Step 3: Install the backside background selector](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides instructions about removing and replacing the backside background selector.

### Before servicing

To order a replacement assembly, use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product. To order the kit, go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts)

Staple cartridge kit part numbers	
5851-5022	Backside background selector kit with instruction guide

### Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

### Step 1: Remove the backside background selector

1. Open the document-feeder door.

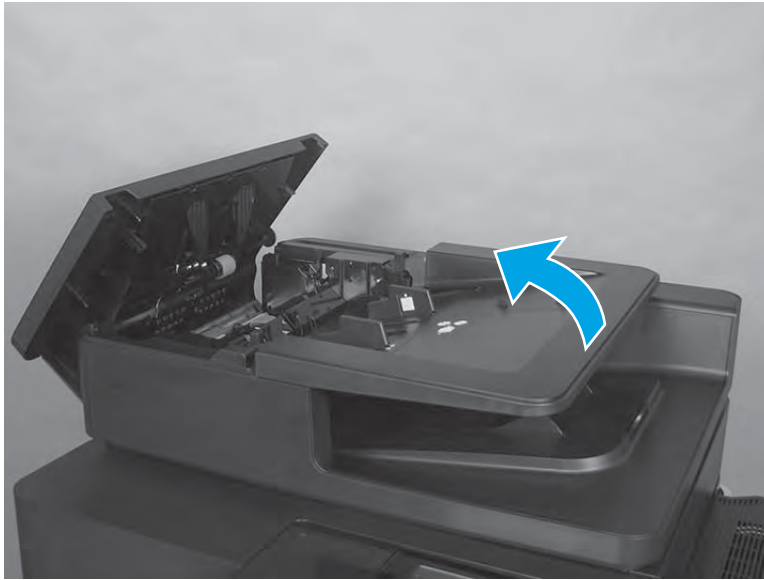
**Figure 1-16** Open the document-feeder door





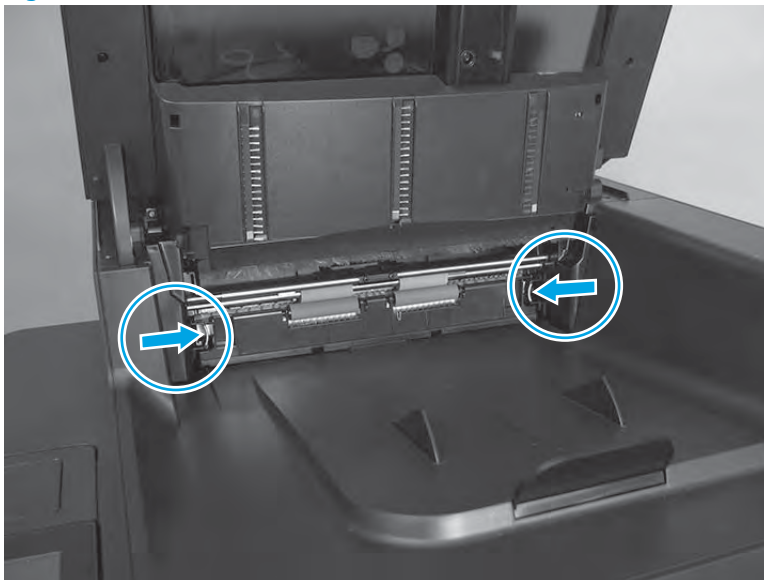
2. Rotate the input tray up.

**Figure 1-17** Rotate the input tray up



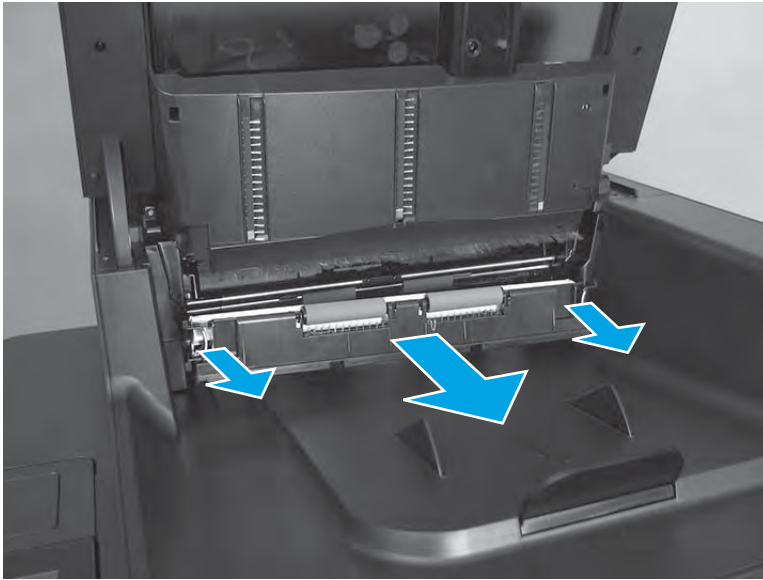
3. Release two tabs.

**Figure 1-18** Release two tabs



4. Slide the backside background selector away from the product to remove it.

**Figure 1-19** Remove the backside background selector



## Step 2: Unpack the replacement backside background selector

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

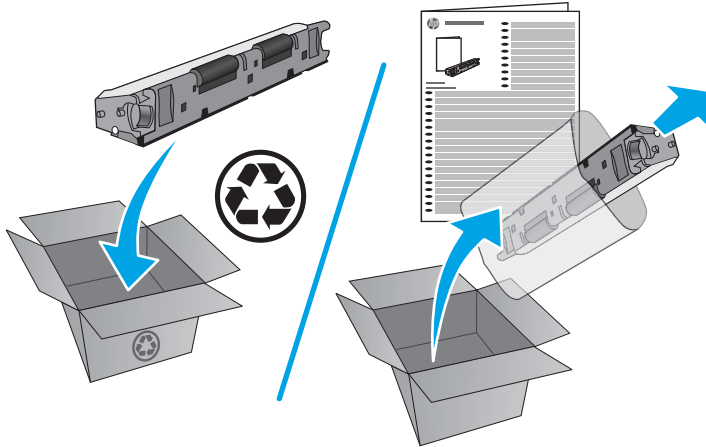
[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

---

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.


---

**Figure 1-20** Recycle and unpack

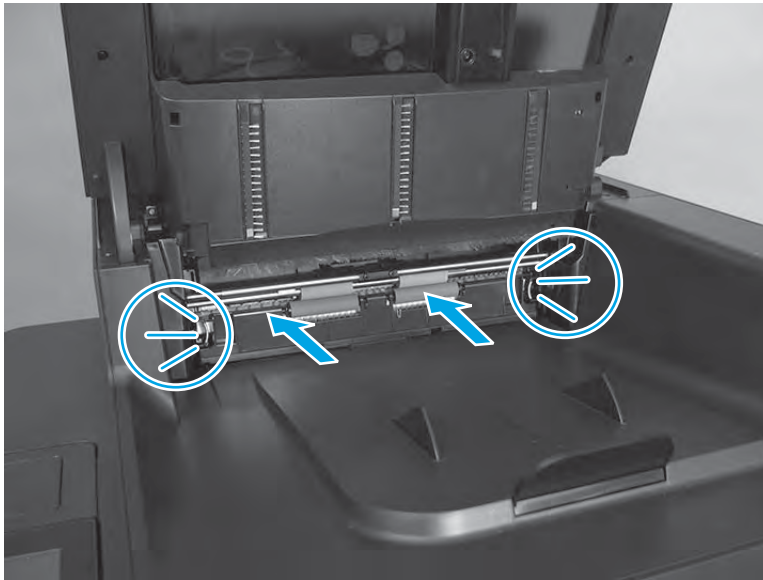


### Step 3: Install the backside background selector

1. Push in on the background selector until the tabs snap into place.

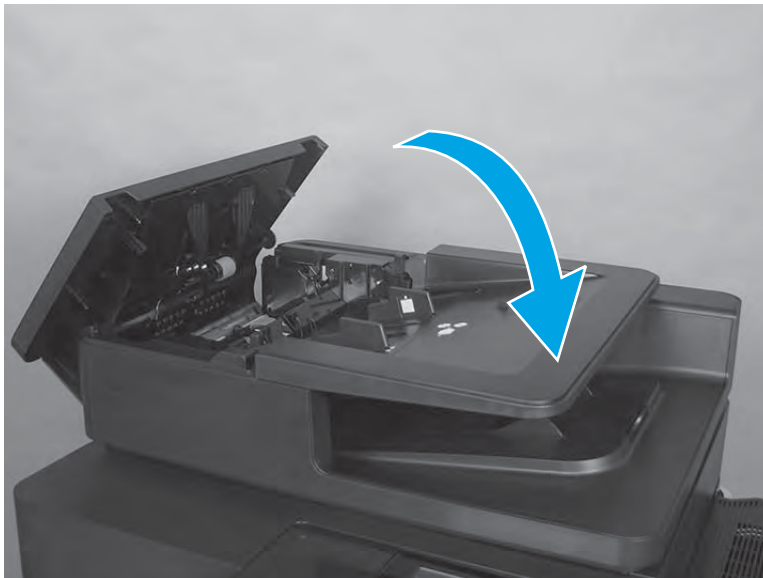
 **Reinstallation tip:** If jams occur after the assembly is installed, make sure that the assembly is fully seated.

**Figure 1-21** Install the background selector



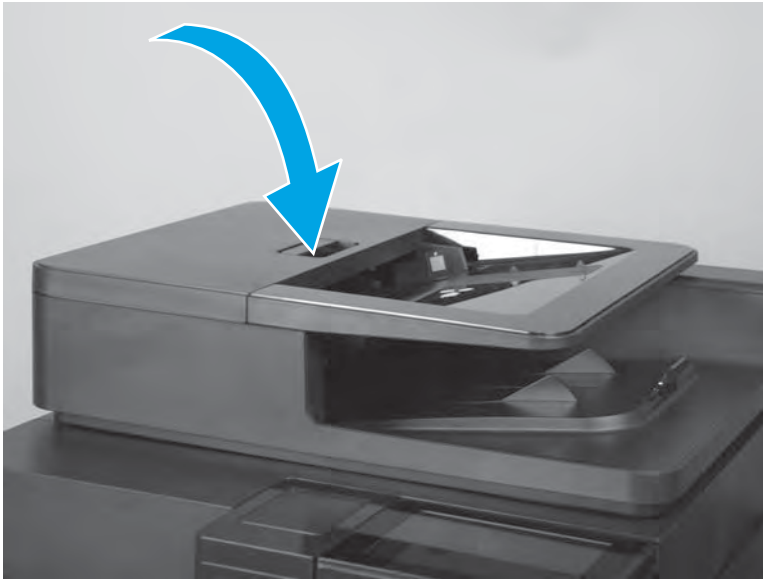
2. Rotate the input tray down.

**Figure 1-22** Rotate the input tray down



3. Close the document-feeder door.

**Figure 1-23** Close the document-feeder door



## Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling.)

## Formatter

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the formatter](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive \(HDD\) or solid-state memory \(SSM\)](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the DIMM](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the fax PCA](#)
- [Step 5: Unpack the replacement formatter](#)
- [Step 6: Install the HDD or SSM](#)
- [Step 7: Install the DIMM](#)
- [Step 8: Install the fax PCA](#)
- [Step 9: Install the formatter](#)
- [Step 10: Test the installation](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the formatter.

To replace the formatter, remove the hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM) storage device, the DIMM, and the fax printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (if installed) from the defective formatter and then install them on the replacement formatter.



## Before servicing


Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

Formatter kit part numbers	
<b>B3G85-67901</b>	Formatter kit with instruction guide
<b>B3G85-67902</b> (China/India)	Formatter kit with instruction guide (China/India only)

## Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

 **CAUTION:**  This product contains components that can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). To reduce the chance of ESD damage, place the product on an ESD mat (if available), and wear an ESD wrist strap connected to a grounded surface. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis before touching an ESD-sensitive part.

 **IMPORTANT:** Do not replace the formatter, DC controller, and hard-disk drive/solid-state memory simultaneously during a single product servicing. Doing so might cause the product to become unstable or inoperable.

## Step 1: Remove the formatter

1. Do the following steps:

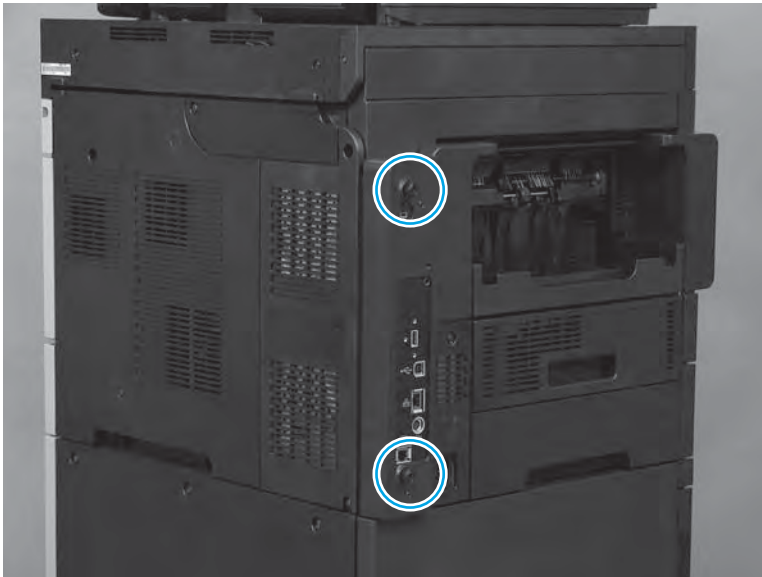
- a. Turn off the product.
- b. Disconnect the power cable.

**⚠ WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

- c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.

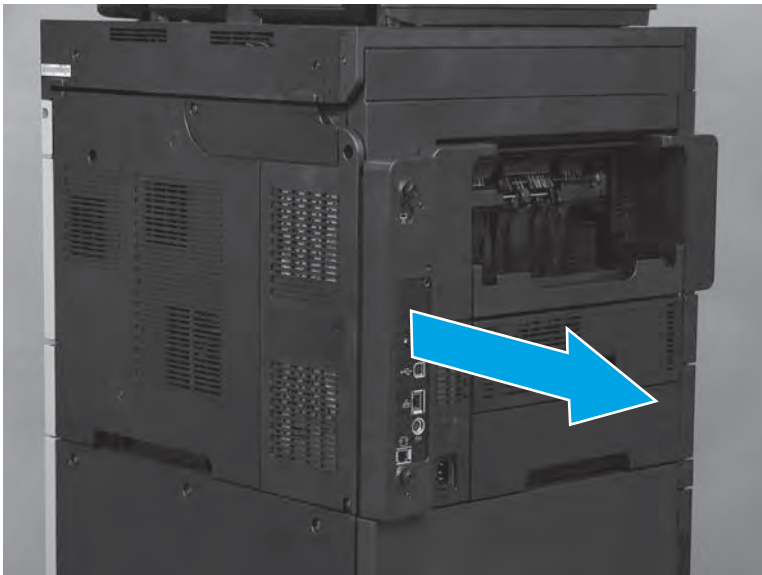
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

**Figure 1-24** Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

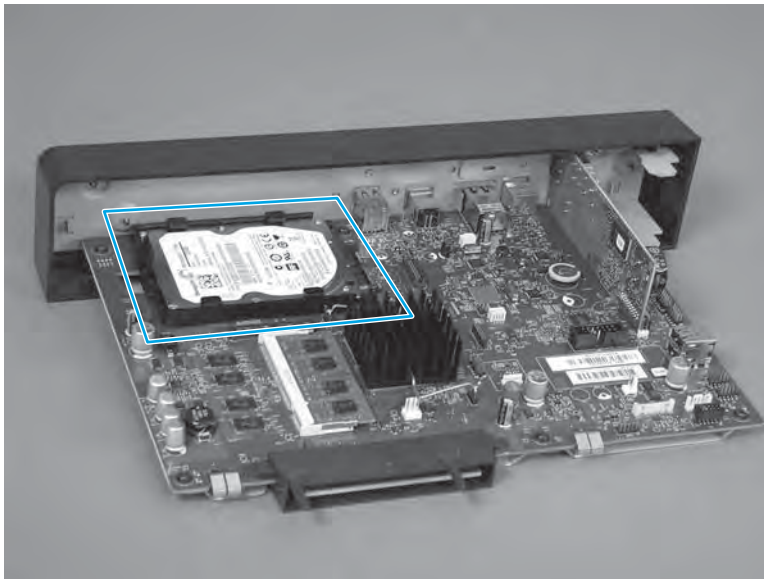
**Figure 1-25** Remove the formatter



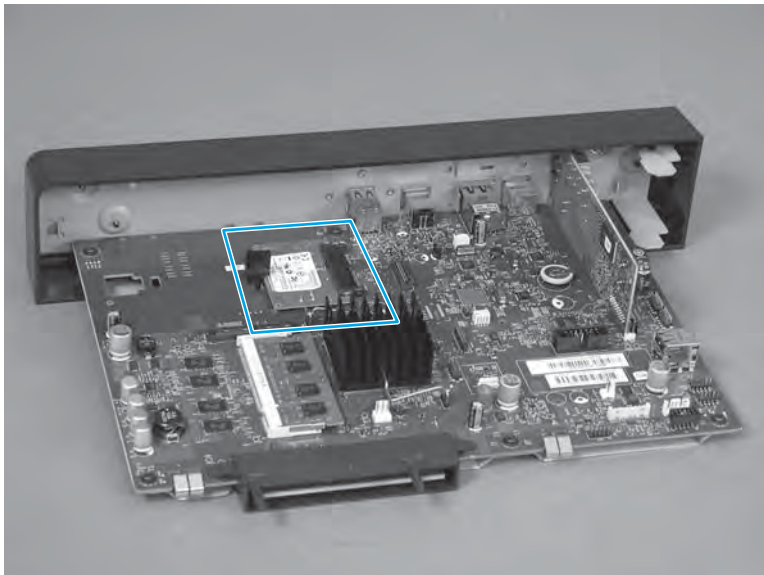
## Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM)

### Identify the component type

- Hard-disk drive (HDD). See [Remove the HDD on page 26](#).



- Solid-state memory (SSM). See [Remove the SSM on page 27](#).

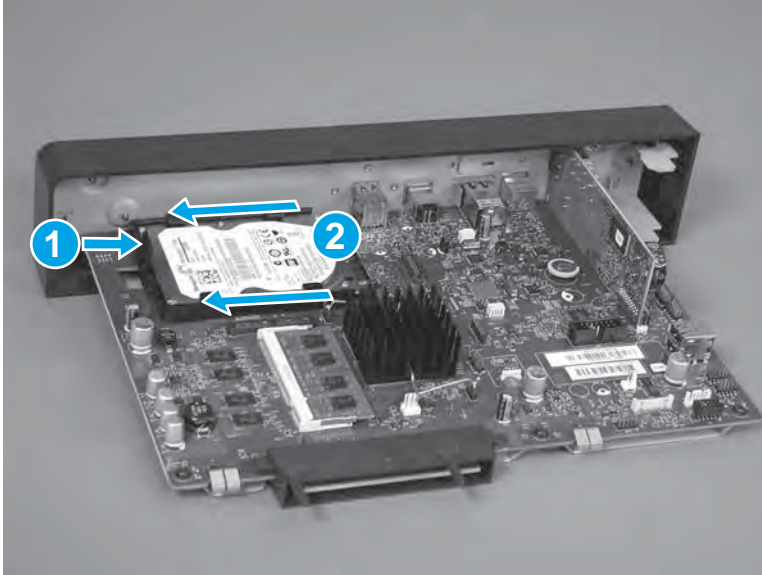


## Remove the HDD

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

- ▲ Push and hold the locking lever (callout 1) toward the HDD to release it, and then slide the black plastic HDD case in the direction of the arrows (callout 2) to remove the HDD.

**Figure 1-26** Remove the HDD



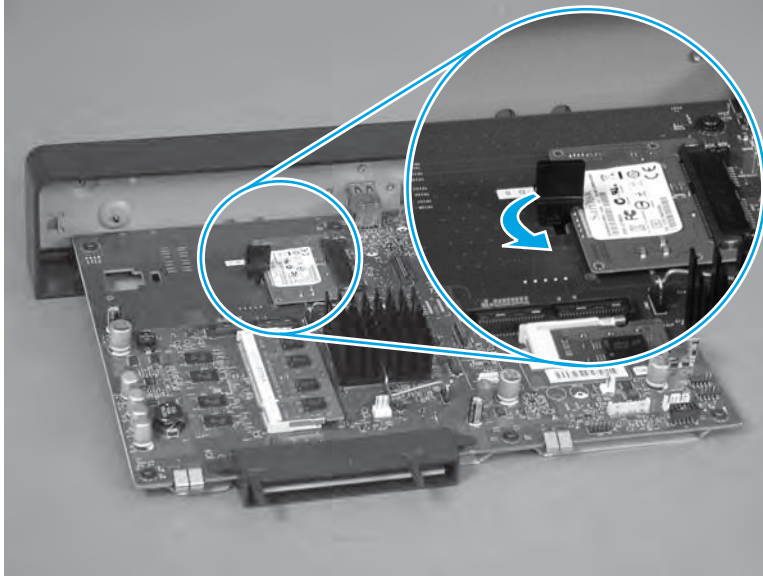


## Remove the SSM

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

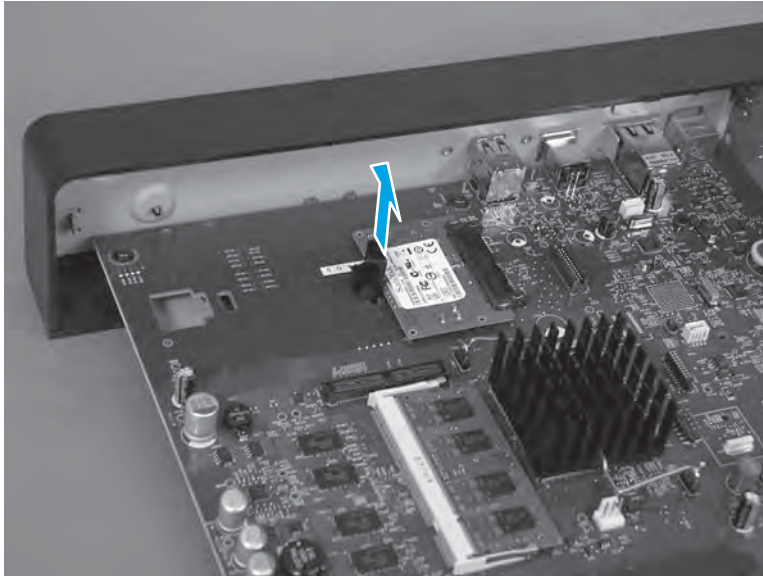
1. Rotate the retainer clip to release it.

**Figure 1-27** Release the clip



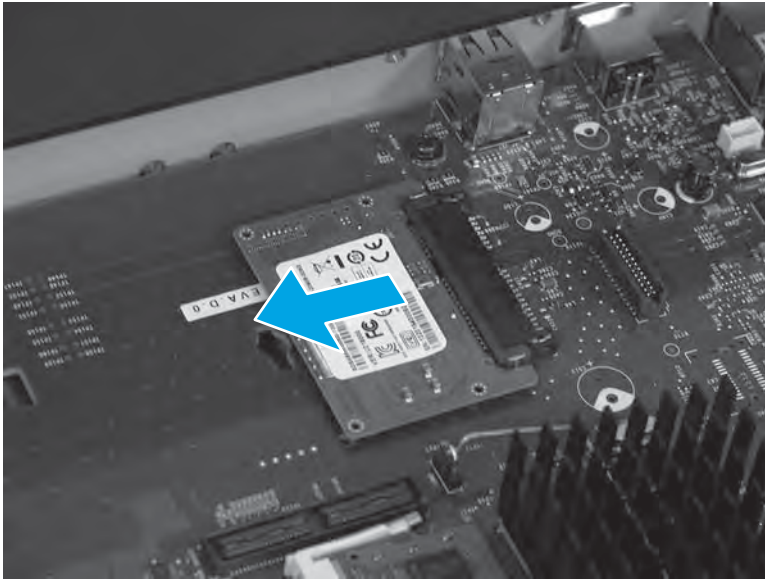
2. Lift the retainer clip up to remove it.

**Figure 1-28** Remove the clip



3. Slide the SSM away from the connector to remove it.

**Figure 1-29** Remove the SSM

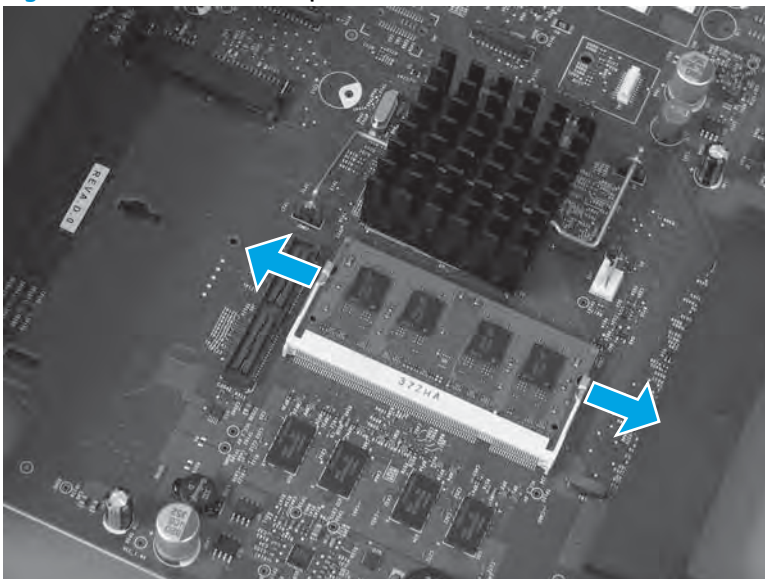


### Step 3: Remove the DIMM

**CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

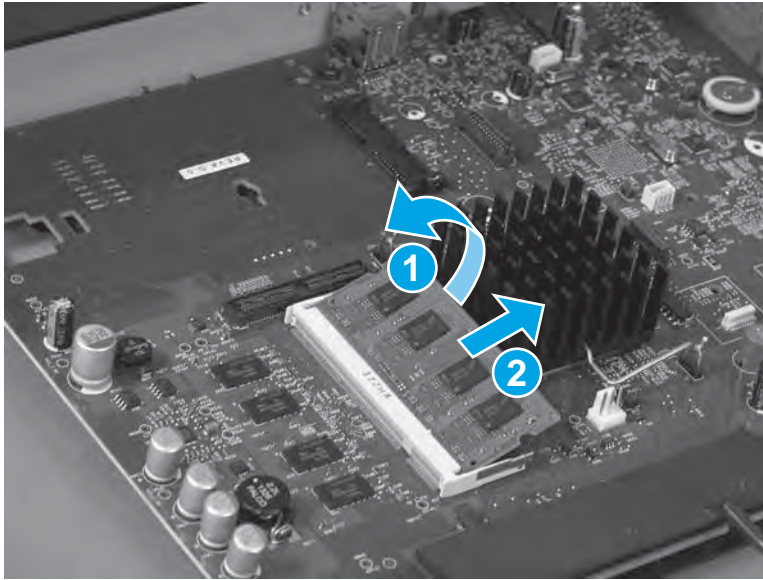
1. Release two clips.

**Figure 1-30** Release two clips




2. Rotate the DIMM upward (callout 1), and then remove it (callout 2).

**Figure 1-31** Remove the DIMM



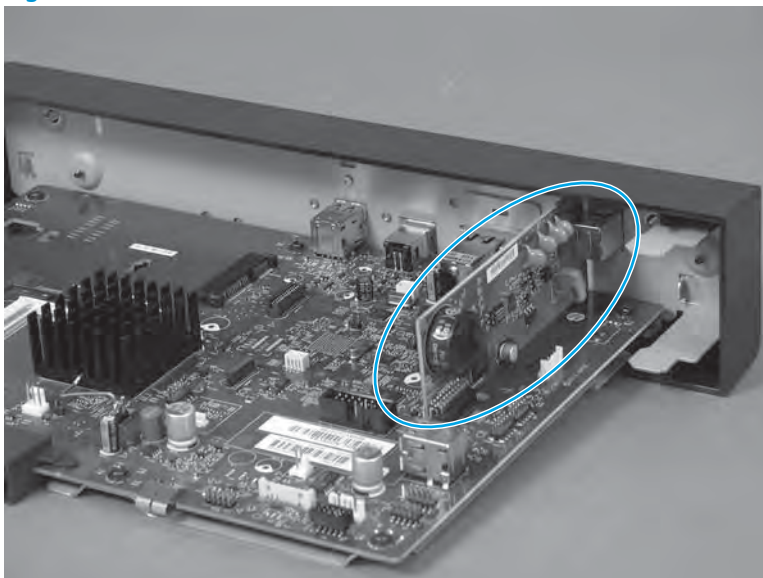
#### Step 4: Remove the fax PCA

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

 **NOTE:** If your product does not have a fax PCA, go to [Step 5: Unpack the replacement formatter on page 30](#).

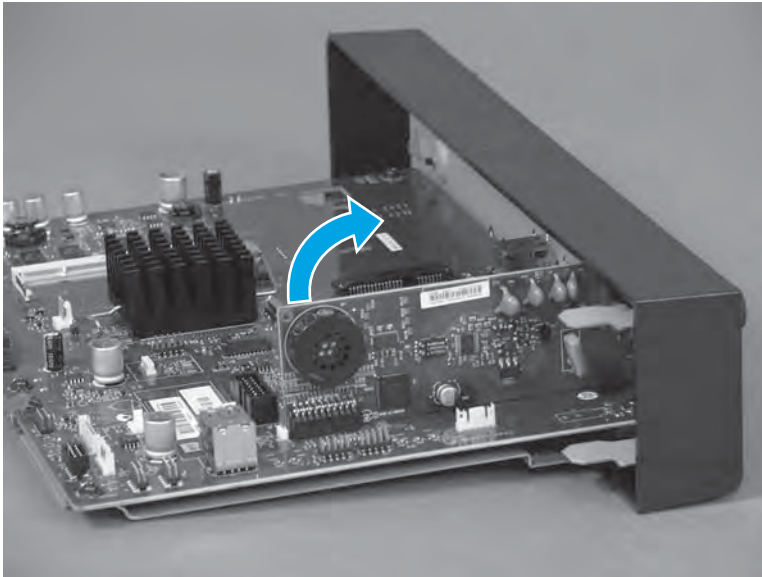
1. Locate the fax PCA that is installed on the formatter.

**Figure 1-32** Locate the fax PCA




2. Rotate the connector end (away from the phone port) of the fax PCA up and away from the formatter to release it.

**Figure 1-33** Release the connector end of the fax PCA



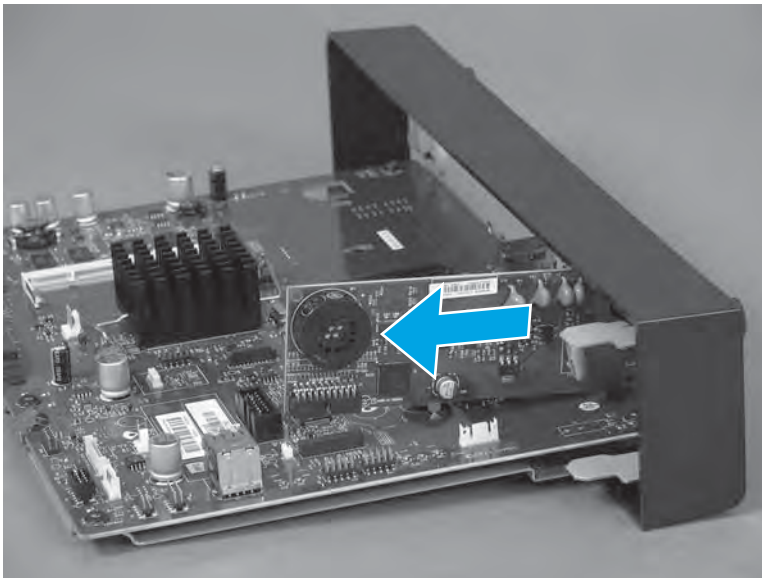
3. Carefully remove the fax PCA from the formatter bracket.

---

 **NOTE:** Set this part aside. It will be installed on the replacement formatter.

---

**Figure 1-34** Remove the fax PCA




## Step 5: Unpack the replacement formatter

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

---

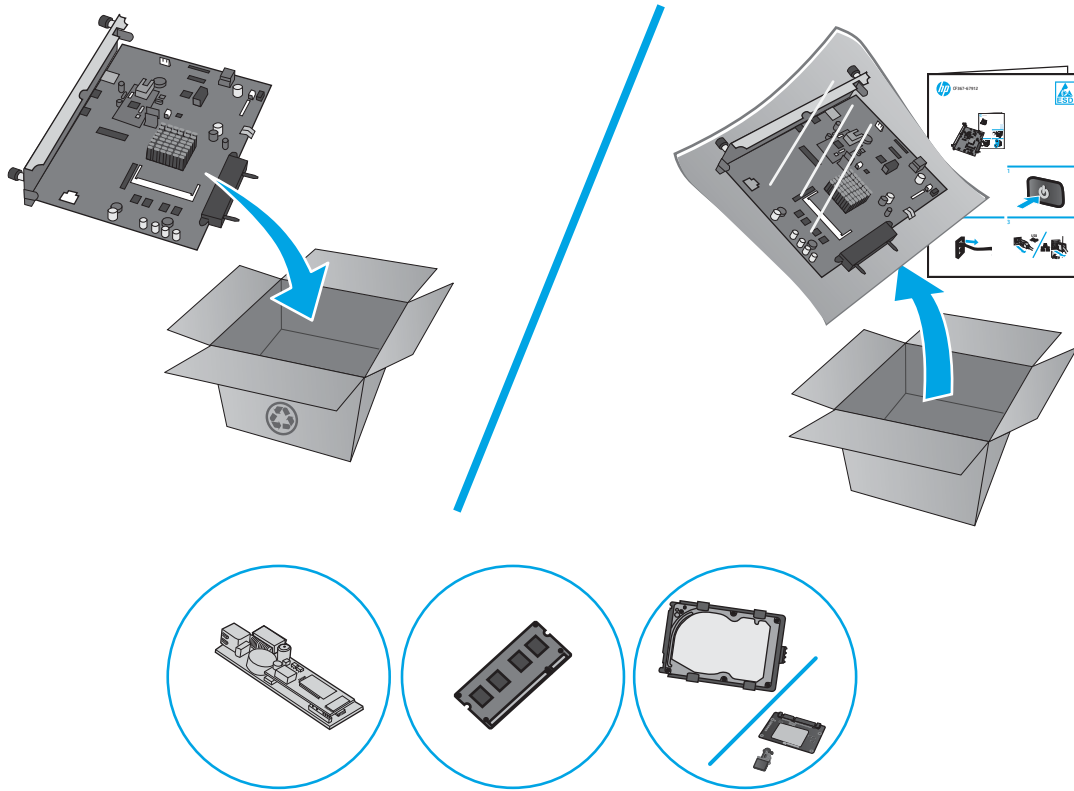
 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

Do not dispose of the HDD or SSM, DIMM, or fax PCA (fax models only) that were removed earlier.

---

**Figure 1-35** Recycle and unpack




## Step 6: Install the HDD or SSM

---

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

---

1. To install the HDD, do the following steps:
  - a. If foam pads are installed on the backside of the HDD, press down on the connector-side corners of the HDD and on the locking lever to compress the foam.

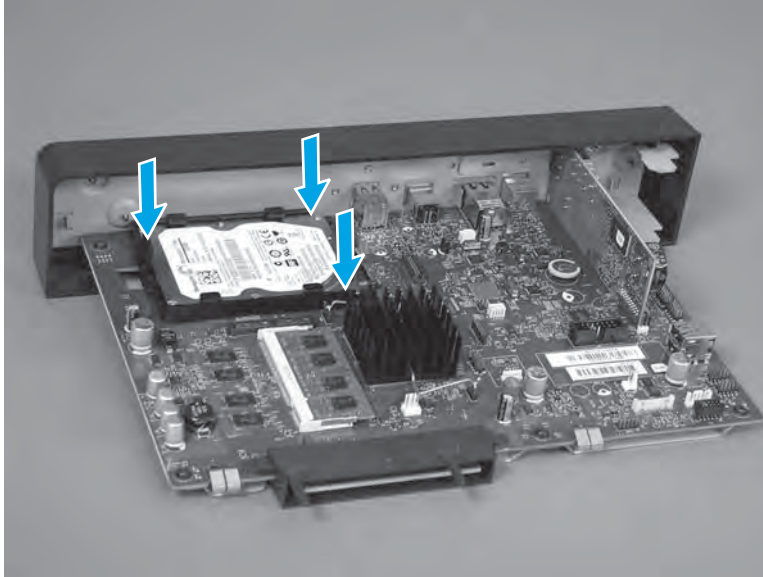
 **CAUTION:** Do not press down on the center of the HDD.

---

 **NOTE:** If there are no foam pads installed on the backside of the HDD, skip this step.

---

**Figure 1-36** Press down on the HDD

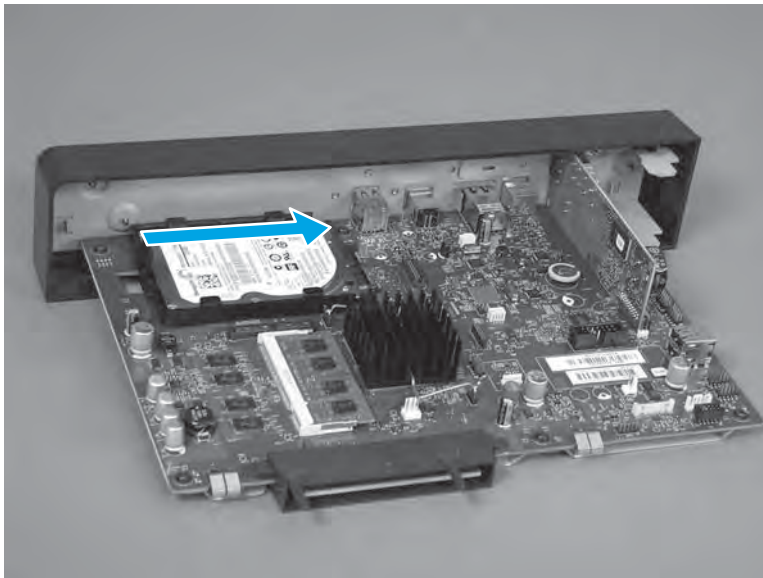


- b.** Slide the HDD into the connector on the formatter.



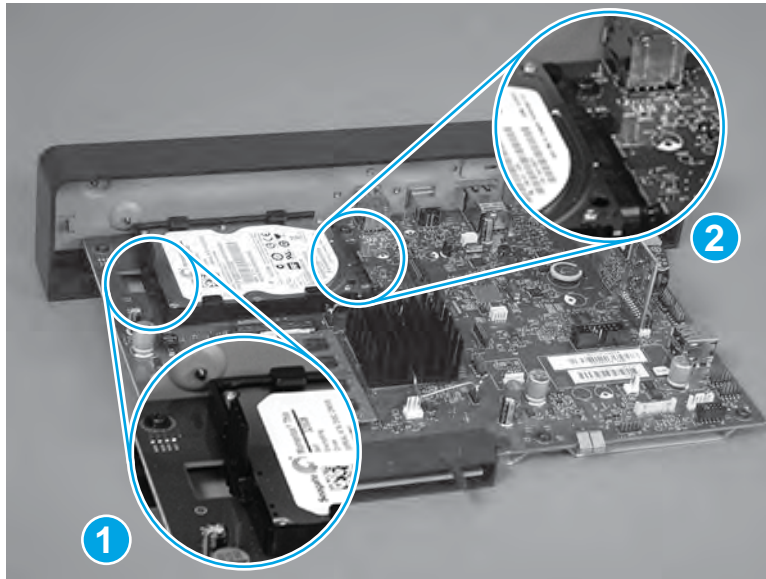
**NOTE:** If foam pads are installed on the backside of the HDD, make sure that they are compressed enough to allow the HDD to easily slide into the connector, and that the locking lever fits into the slot on the formatter.

**Figure 1-37** Install the black plastic HDD case



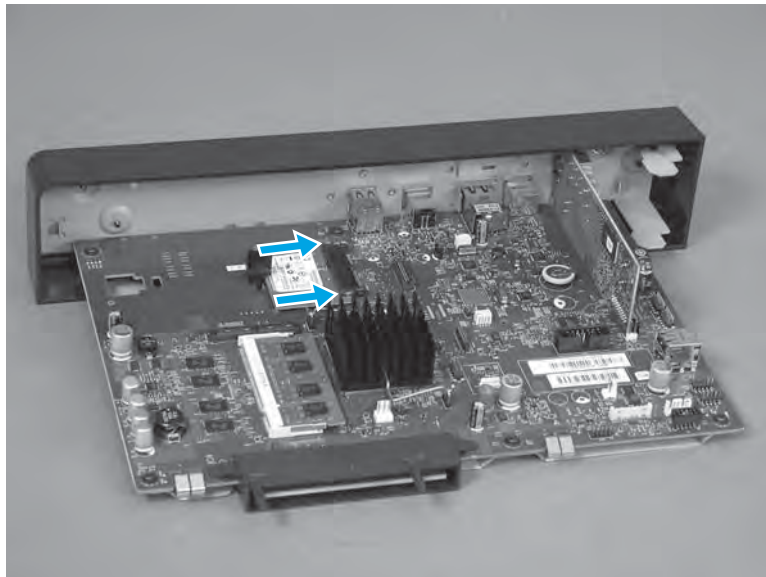
- c. When correctly installed, the HDD locking lever (callout 1) and the connector (callout 2) are securely fastened. Make sure that locking lever prevents the HDD from moving, and that the HDD is fully seated in the connector.

**Figure 1-38** Make sure that the HDD is flat against the formatter



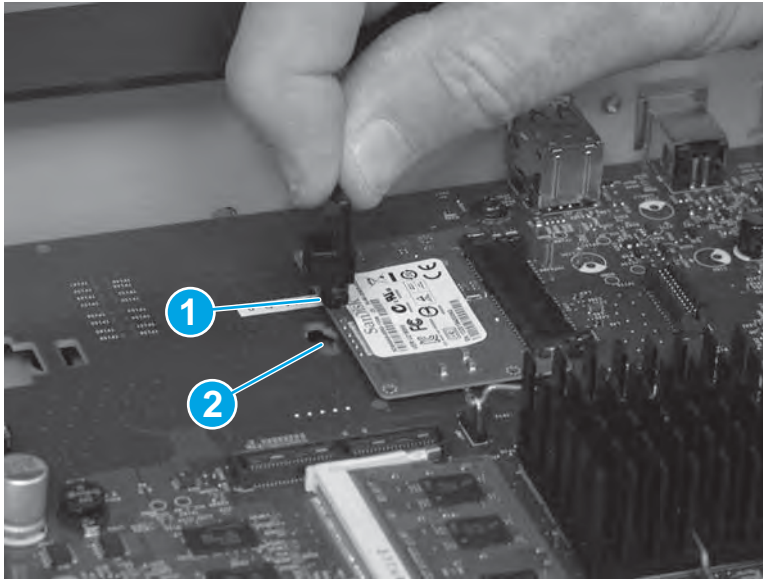
- 2. To install the SSM, do the following steps:
  - a. Slide the SSM in the direction of the arrow to install it.

**Figure 1-39** Install the SSM



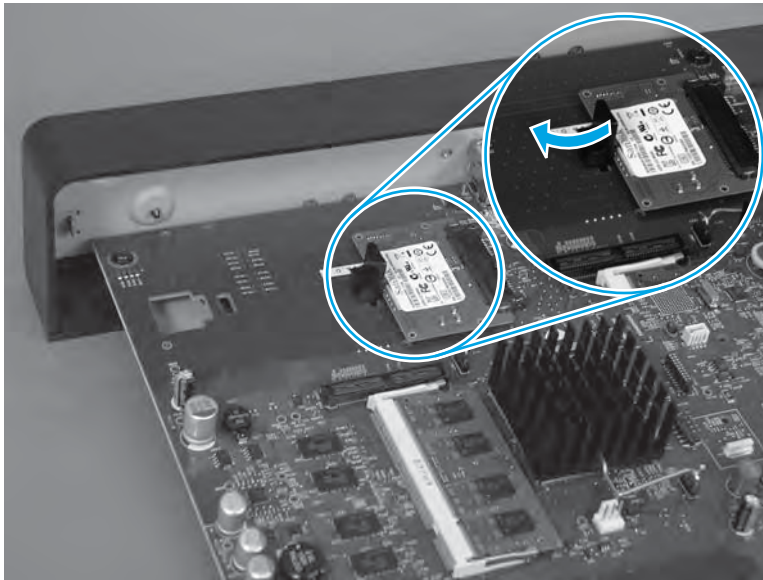
- b. Position the retainer clip (callout 1) in the slot (callout 2).

**Figure 1-40** Install the retainer clip



- c. Rotate the retainer clip to lock it.

**Figure 1-41** Rotate the retainer



## Step 7: Install the DIMM

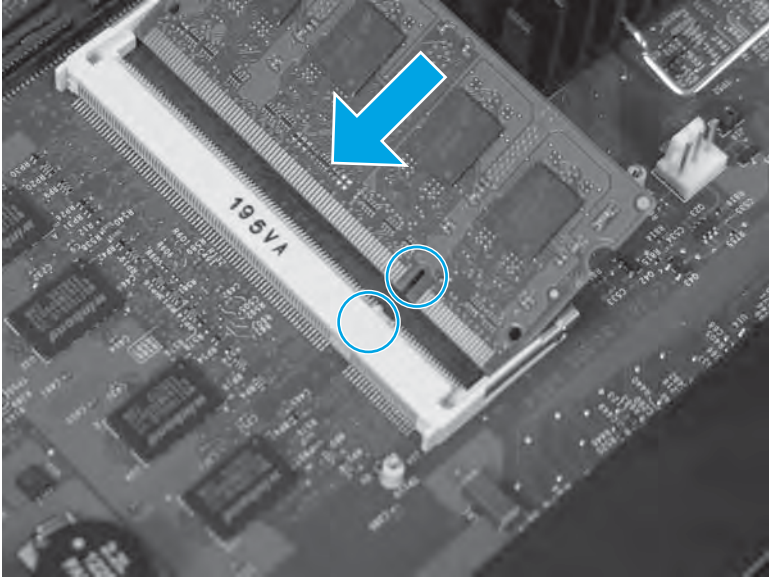
**CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Carefully insert the DIMM at an angle into the holder on the formatter.

**NOTE:**  Position the DIMM so that the slot in the DIMM is aligned with the tab in the holder.

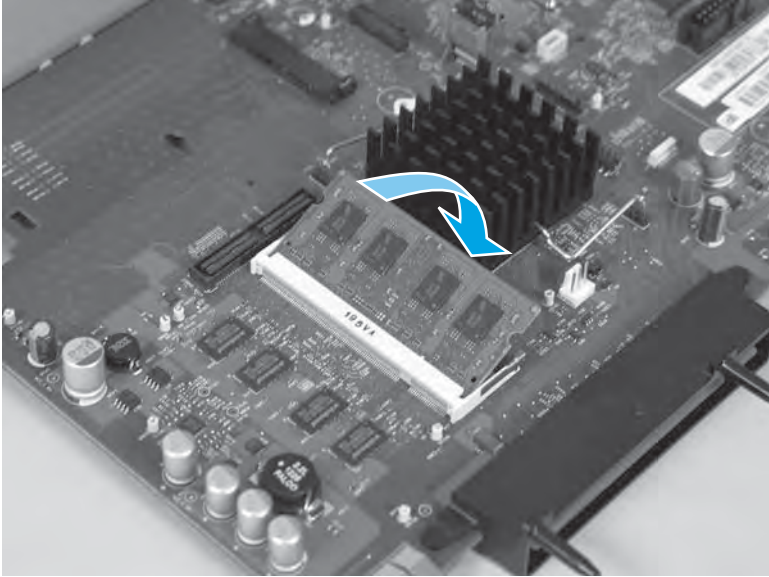


**Figure 1-42** Insert the DIMM into the holder



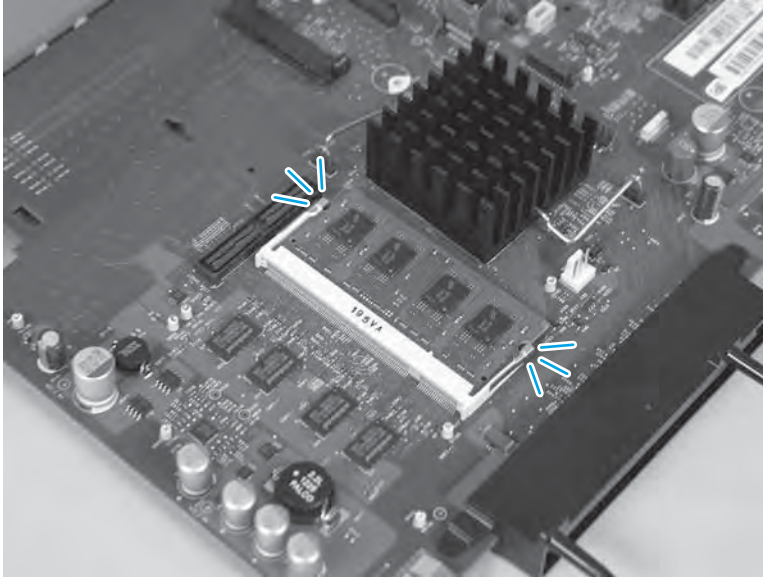
- 2. Rotate the DIMM in the direction of the arrow to install it.

**Figure 1-43** Install the DIMM



3. When the DIMM is installed make sure that the retaining clips on the right and left sides of the DIMM snap into place.

**Figure 1-44** Make sure that the retaining clips snap into place



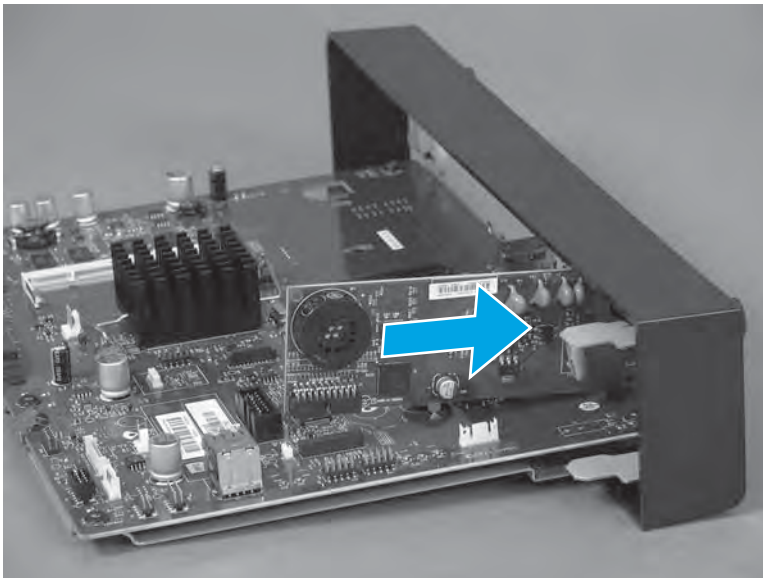
## Step 8: Install the fax PCA

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

 **NOTE:** If your product does not have a fax PCA, go to [Step 9: Install the formatter on page 37](#).

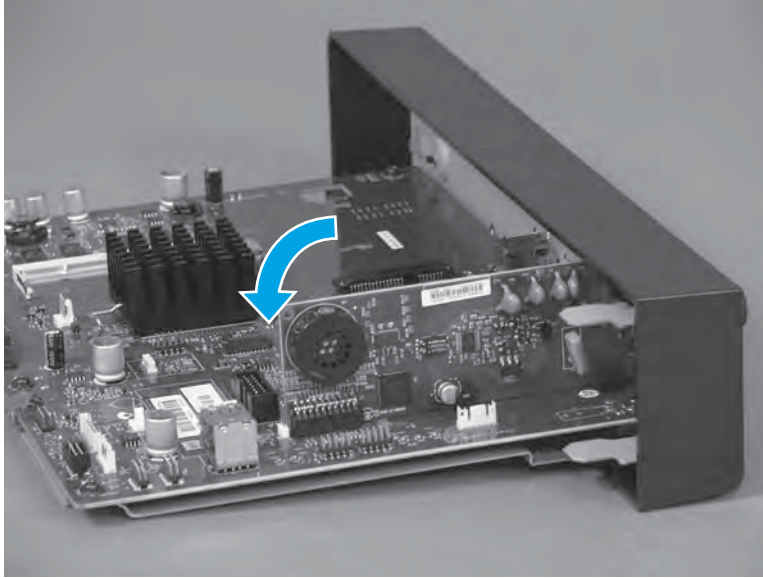
1. Insert the fax port of the fax PCA into the holder on the formatter tray.

**Figure 1-45** Insert the fax port into the holder



2. Rotate the connector end of the fax PCA in the direction of the arrow to install it.

**Figure 1-46** Install the fax PCA

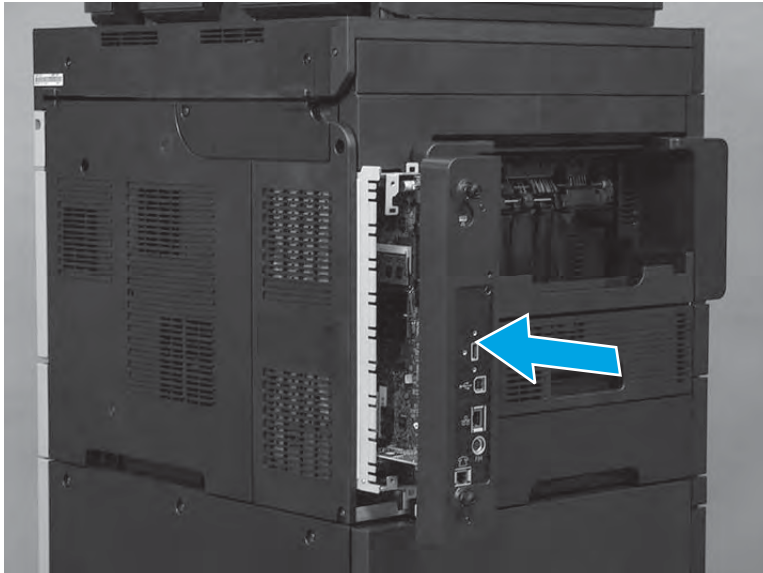


## Step 9: Install the formatter

**CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

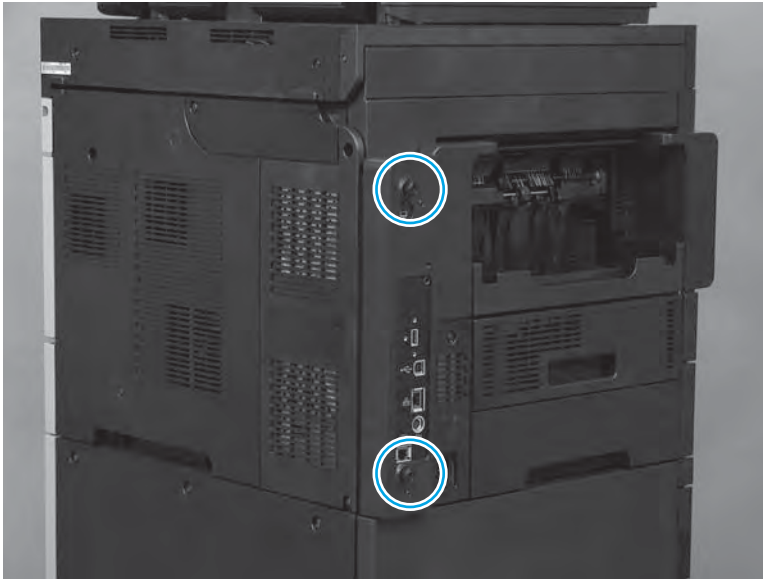
1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

**Figure 1-47** Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot



2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.


**Figure 1-48** Tighten the two thumbscrews



## Step 10: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:
  - a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.
  - b. Plug in the power cord.
2. Turn on the product.

---

 **TIP:** If the product does not initialize when the power is turned on, make sure that the memory DIMM is correctly installed.

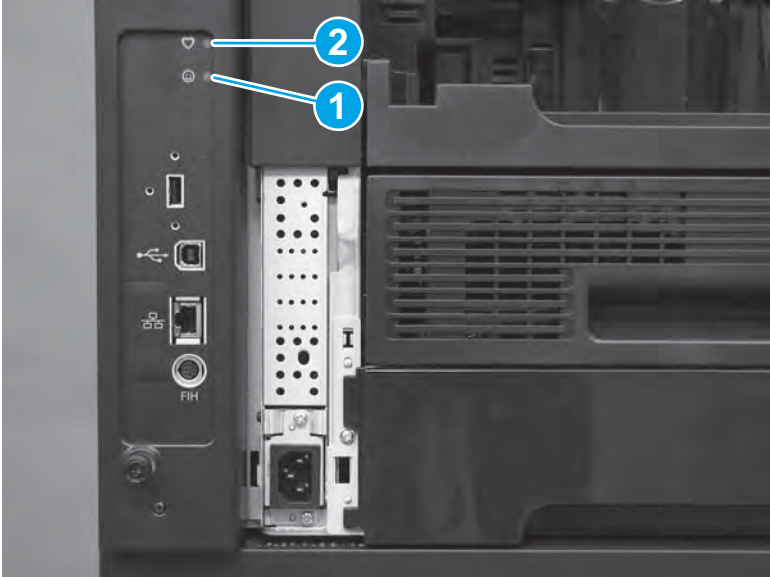
---

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter:

- The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is functioning correctly.
  - While the product is initializing, the heartbeat LED illuminates solid red for about one second, and then turns solid green for about twenty seconds.
  - After the initialization sequence is complete, the heartbeat LED blinks continuously if the printer is functioning correctly.
- The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LEDs do not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).

**Figure 1-49** Verify that the formatter is functioning



**Parts Return**

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling.)

## Hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM)

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the formatter](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive \(HDD\) or solid-state memory \(SSM\)](#)
- [Step 3: Unpack the replacement HDD or SSM](#)
- [Step 4: Install the HDD or SSM](#)
- [Step 5: Install the formatter](#)
- [Step 6: Test the installation](#)
- [Step 7: Reinstall the product firmware](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the HDD or SSM.



### Before servicing


Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

Formatter kit part numbers	
<b>B3G85-67903</b>	HDD kit with instruction guide
<b>B3G84-67907</b>	SSM kit with instruction guide

### Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

 **CAUTION:**  This product contains components that can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). To reduce the chance of ESD damage, place the product on an ESD mat (if available), and wear an ESD wrist strap connected to a grounded surface. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis before touching an ESD-sensitive part.

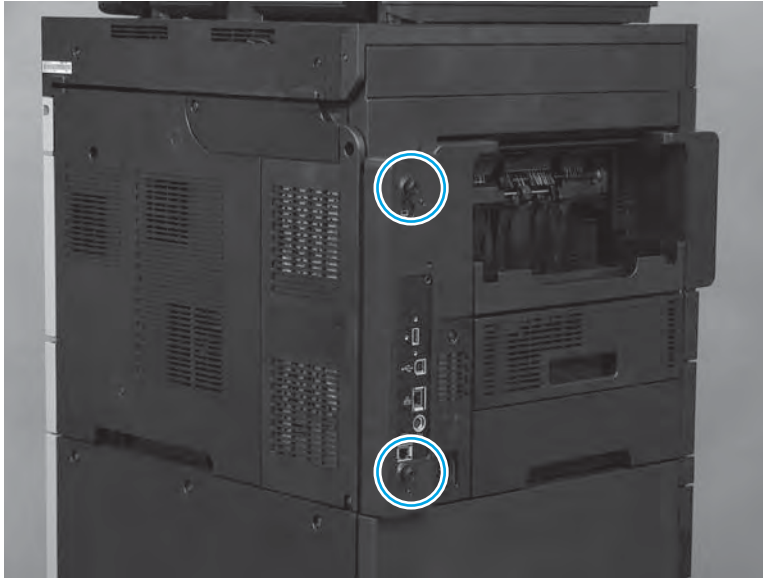
 **IMPORTANT:** Do not replace the formatter, DC controller, and hard-disk drive/solid-state memory simultaneously during a single product servicing. Doing so might cause the product to become unstable or inoperable.

### Step 1: Remove the formatter

1. Do the following steps:

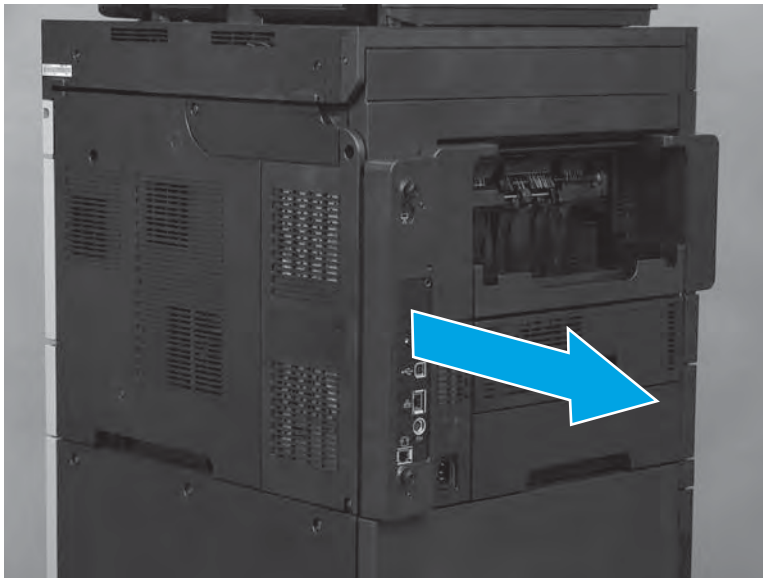
- a. Turn off the product.
  - b. Disconnect the power cable.
- 
- ⚠ WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.
- c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

**Figure 1-50** Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

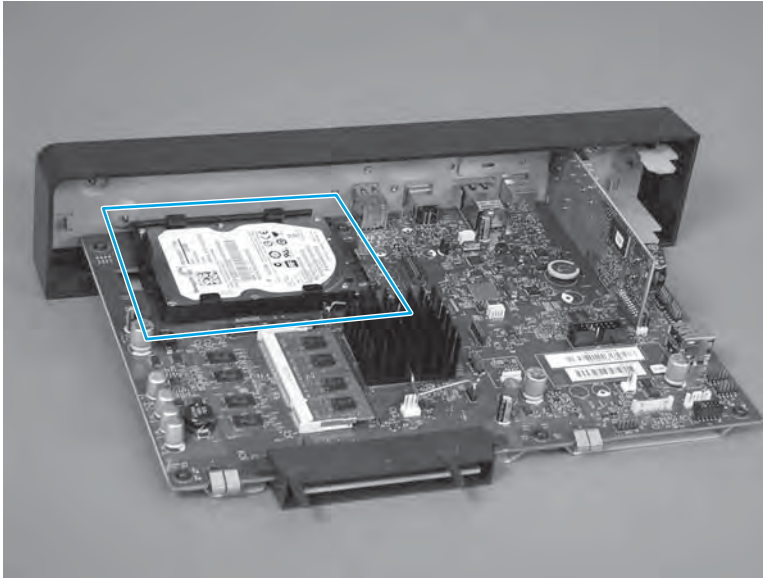
**Figure 1-51** Remove the formatter



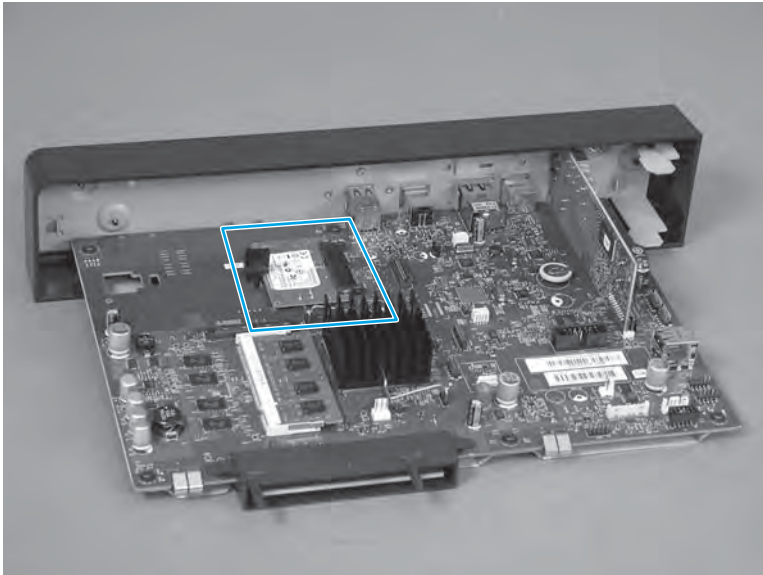
## Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM)

### Identify the component type

- Hard-disk drive (HDD). See [Remove the HDD on page 43](#).



- Solid-state memory (SSM). See [Remove the SSM on page 44](#).



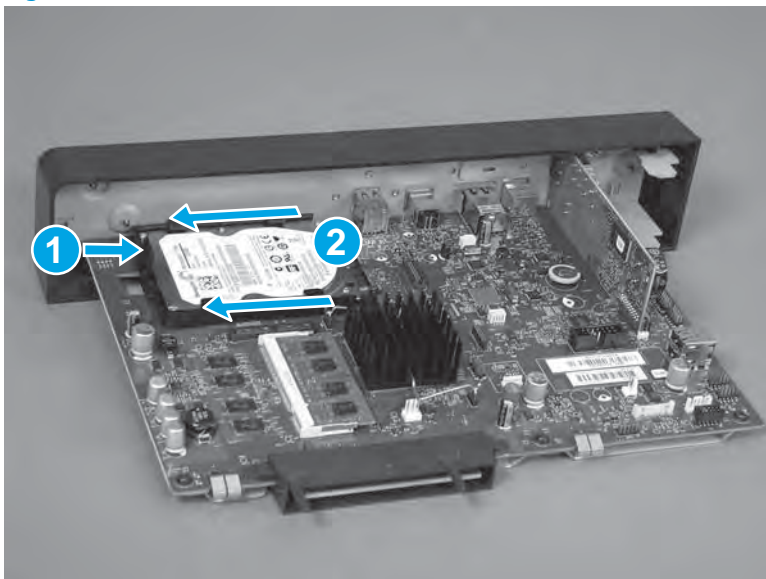


## Remove the HDD

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

- ▲ Push and hold the locking lever (callout 1) toward the HDD to release it, and then slide the black plastic HDD case in the direction of the arrows (callout 2) to remove the HDD.

**Figure 1-52** Remove the HDD

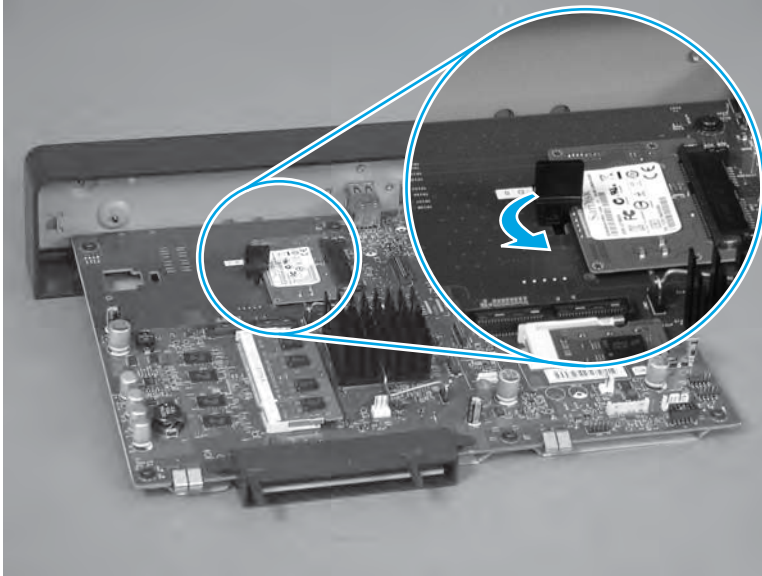


## Remove the SSM

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

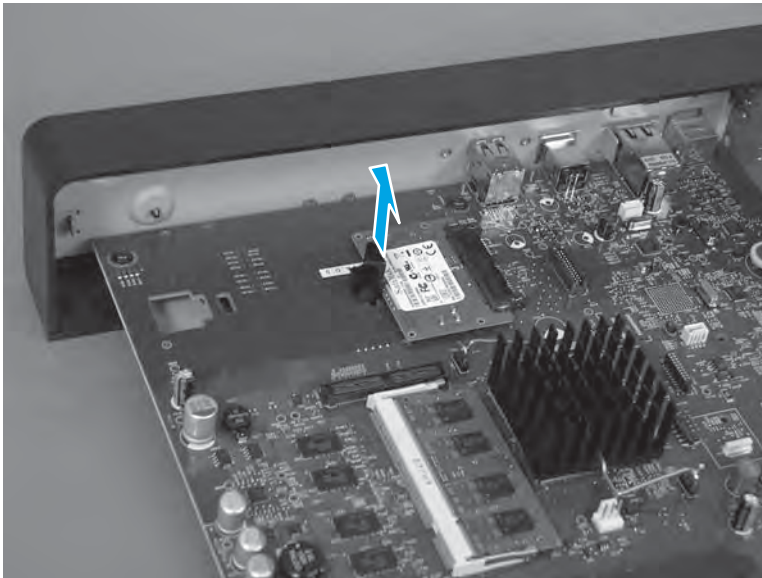
1. Rotate the retainer clip to release it.

**Figure 1-53** Release the clip



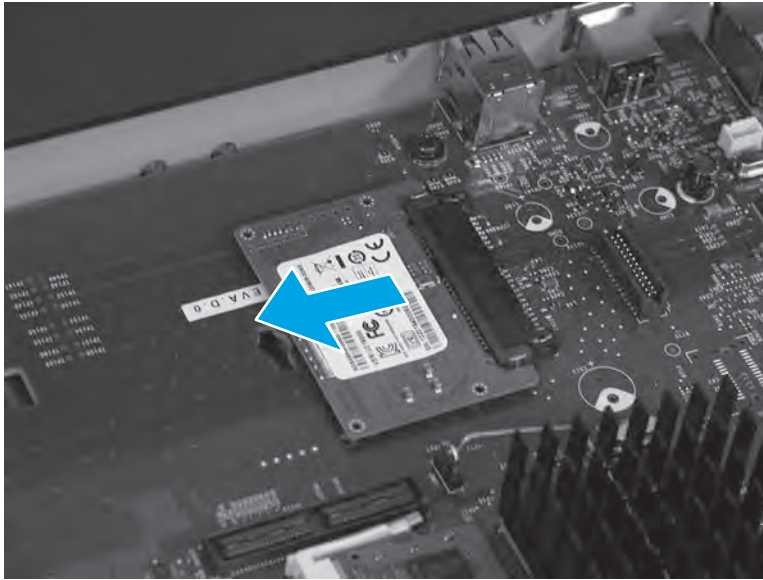
2. Lift the retainer clip up to remove it.

**Figure 1-54** Remove the clip



3. Slide the SSM away from the connector to remove it.

**Figure 1-55** Remove the SSM

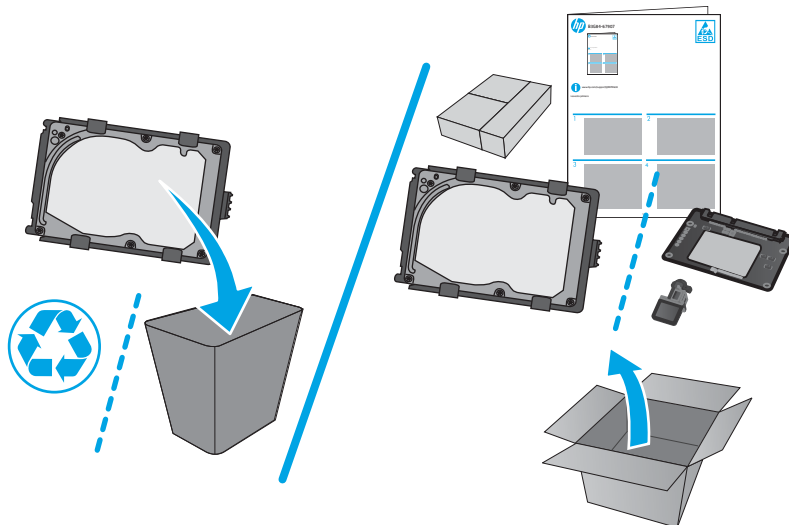


### Step 3: Unpack the replacement HDD or SSM

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[Product return and recycling](#)

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



### Step 4: Install the HDD or SSM

To install a HDD, go to [Install the HDD on page 46](#).

To install a SSM, go to [Install the SSM on page 49](#).

## Install the HDD

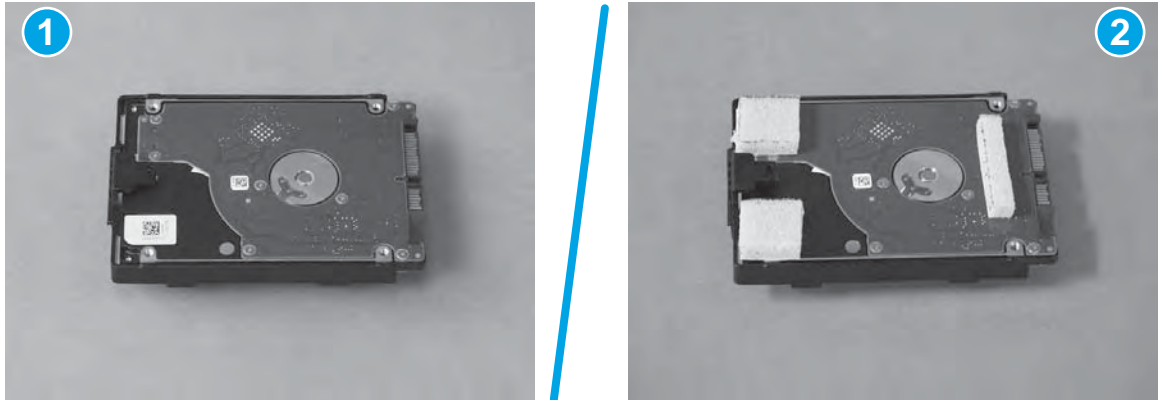
 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

1. To install a HDD, do the following steps:

Look at the underside of the removed defective HDD.

- If the HDD *does not* have foam pads installed (callout 1), go to step [2](#).
- If the HDD *does* have foam pads installed (callout 2), go to step [3](#).

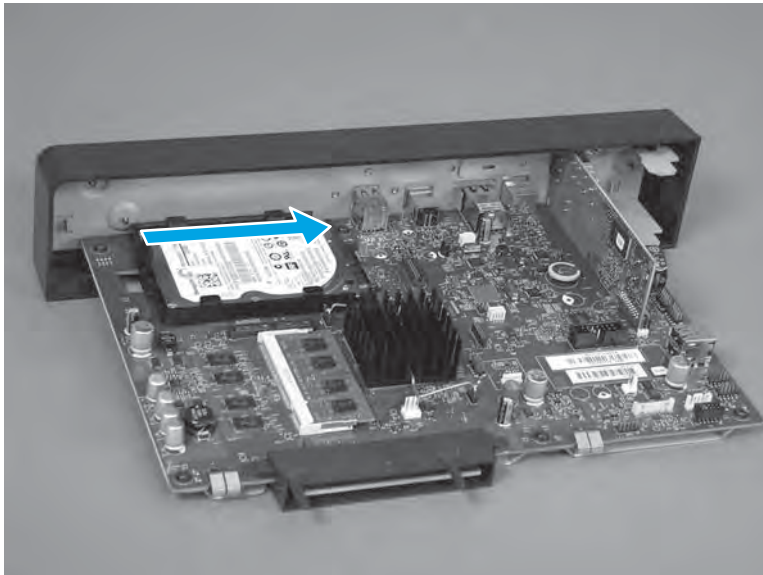
**Figure 1-56** Check the HDD for foam pads



2. Install a HDD without foam pads:

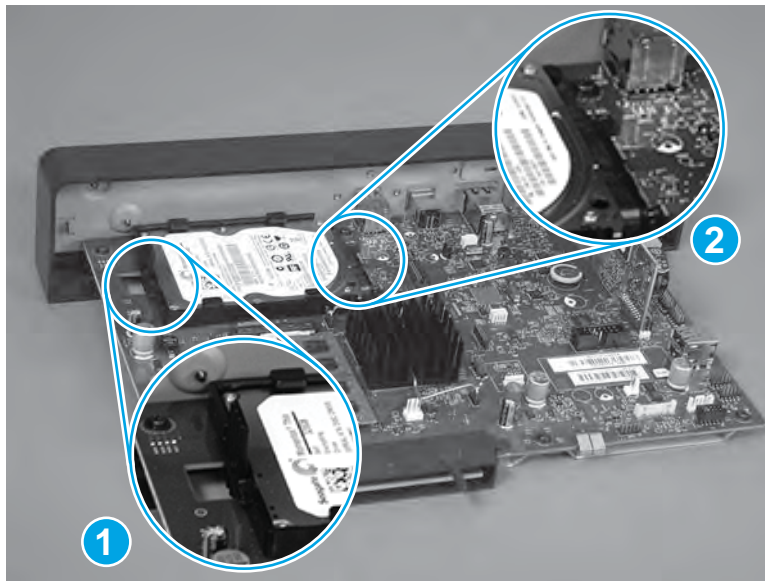
- a. Position the replacement HDD on the formatter, and then slide the HDD into the connector on the formatter.

**Figure 1-57** Install the HDD



- b. When correctly installed, the HDD locking lever (callout 1) and the connector (callout 2) are securely fastened. Make sure that locking lever prevents the HDD from moving, and that the HDD is fully seated in the connector.


**Figure 1-58** Check the HDD installation



**3.** Install a HDD with foam pads:

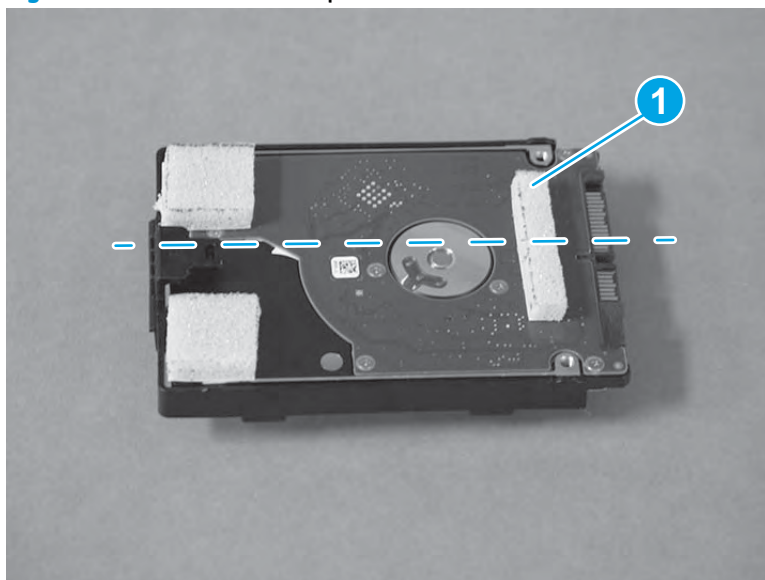
- a. Working with one foam pad at a time, carefully separate it from the other foam pads while removing it from the protective backing. Adhere the pads to the backside of the replacement HDD as shown

---

 **NOTE:** Center the long rectangular foam (callout 1) near the connector end of the HDD.

---

**Figure 1-59** Install the foam pads



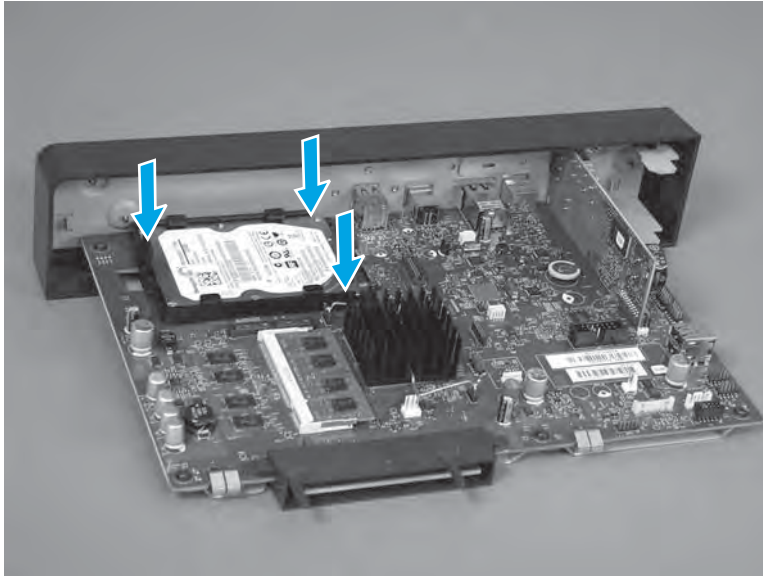
- b. Carefully press down on the connector-side corners of the HDD and on the locking lever to compress the foam on the backside of the HDD.

---

**CAUTION:** Do not press down on the center of the HDD.

---

**Figure 1-60** Press down on the HDD



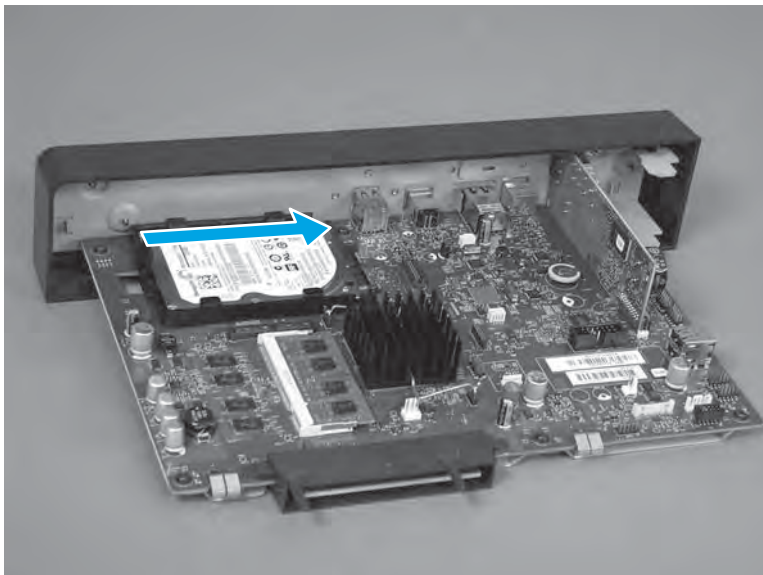
- c. With the foam on the backside of the HDD compressed, slide the HDD into the connector on the formatter.

---

**NOTE:** Make sure that the foam pads are compressed enough to allow the HDD to easily slide into the connector, and that the locking lever fits into the slot on the formatter.

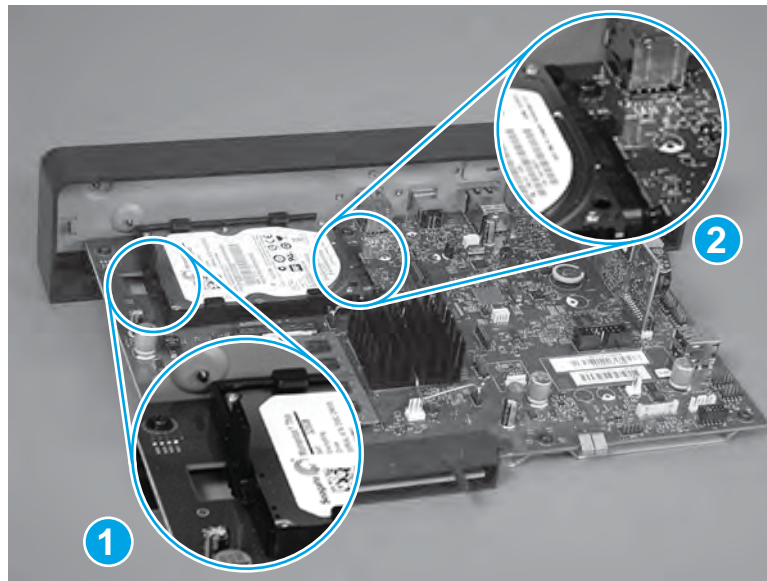
---

**Figure 1-61** Install the HDD



- d. When correctly installed, the HDD locking lever (callout 1) and the connector (callout 2) are securely fastened. Make sure that locking lever prevents the HDD from moving, and that the HDD is fully seated in the connector.

**Figure 1-62** Check the HDD installation

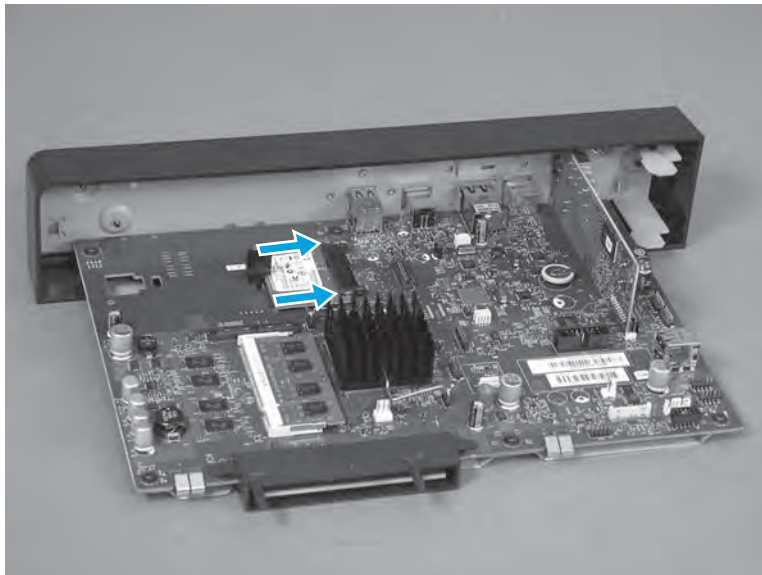


### Install the SSM

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

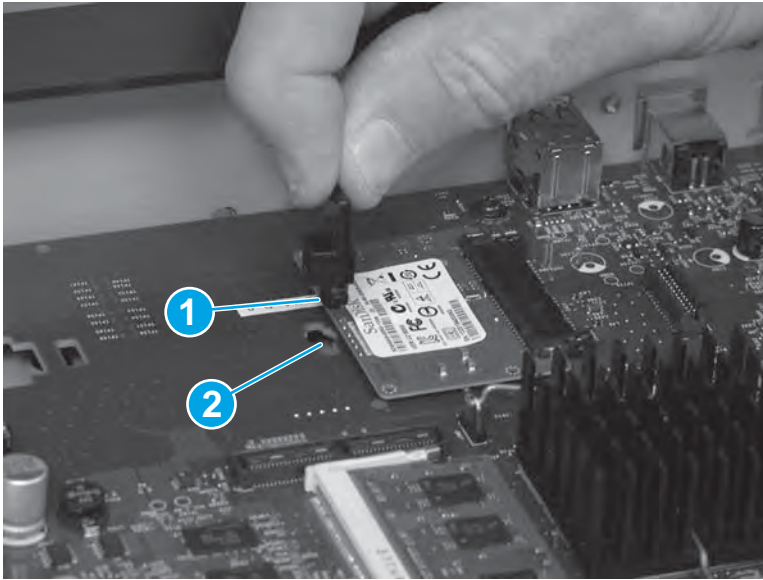
1. Position the SSM on the formatter, and then slide the SSM in the direction of the arrow to install it.

**Figure 1-63** Install the SSM



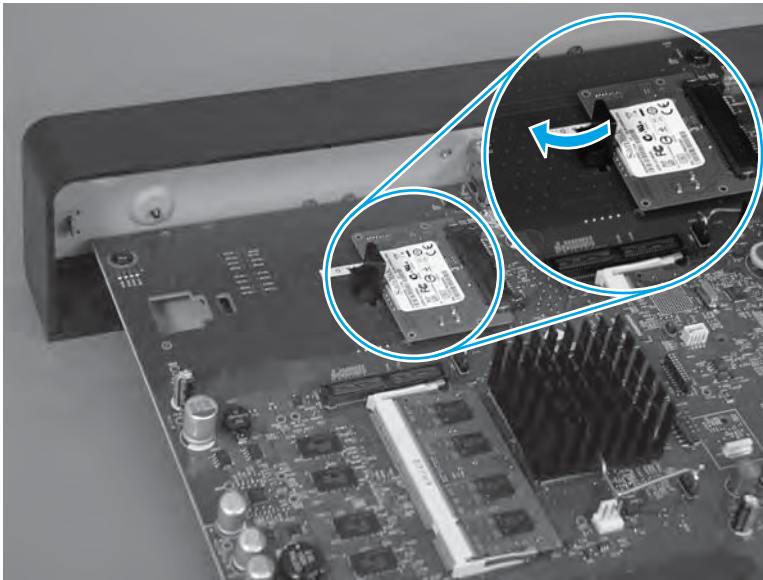
2. Position the retainer clip (callout 1) in the slot (callout 2).

**Figure 1-64** Install the retainer clip



3. Rotate the retainer clip to lock it.

**Figure 1-65** Rotate the retainer



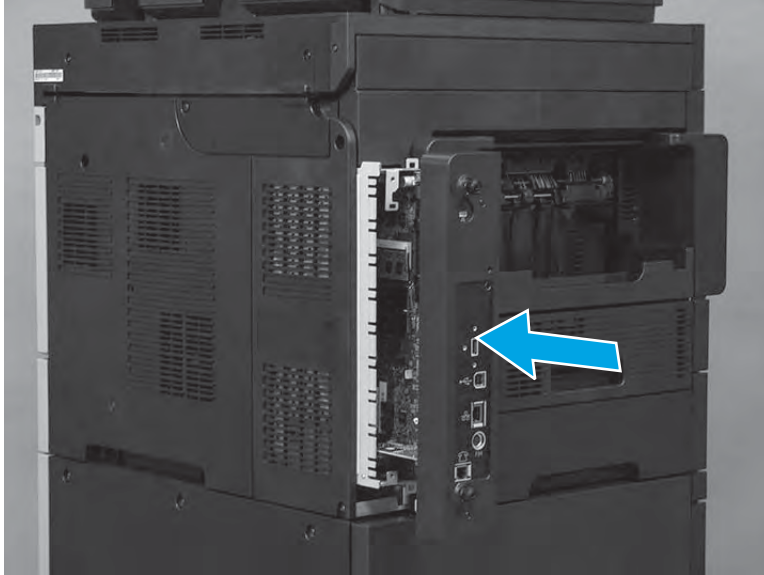
## Step 5: Install the formatter

**CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

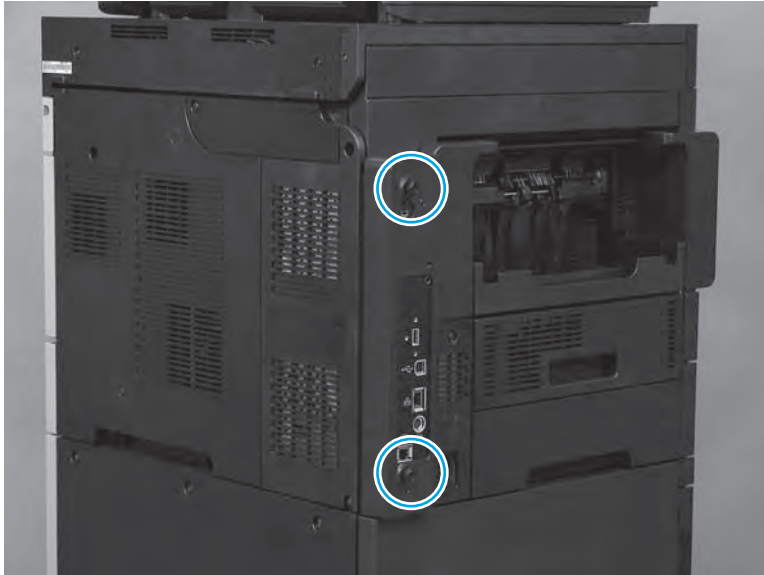


**Figure 1-66** Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot



2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.

**Figure 1-67** Tighten the two thumbscrews



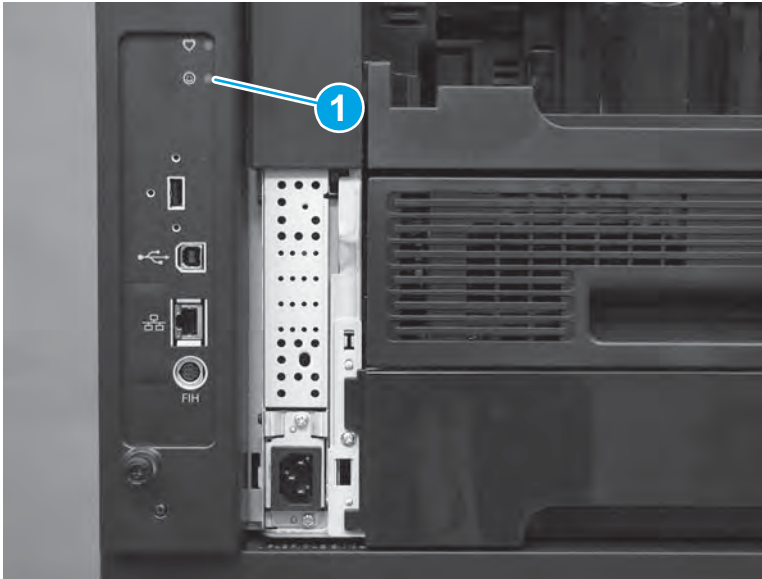
### Step 6: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:
  - a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.
  - b. Plug in the power cord.
2. Turn on the product.

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following function of the connectivity LED on the formatter.

- The connectivity LED (callout 1) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LED does not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).



## Step 7: Reinstall the product firmware

1. Turn off the product.
2. Do the one of the following:
  - In the U.S., go to [www.hp.com/support/ljMFPM630](http://www.hp.com/support/ljMFPM630).
    - a. Select **Drivers, Software, and Firmware**, and then select **Cross operating system** (BIOS, Firmware, Diagnostics, etc.).
    - b. Locate the firmware download, and then select **Download**.
  - Outside the U.S., go to [www.hp.com/support](http://www.hp.com/support).
    - a. Select your country/region.
    - b. Select **Product Support & Troubleshooting**.
    - c. Enter the product name, and then select **Search**. Select **Drivers, Software, and Firmware**, and then select **Cross operating system** (BIOS, Firmware, Diagnostics, etc.).
    - d. Locate the firmware download, and then select **Download**.
3. Copy the firmware upgrade file to the root directory of a USB flash drive. The firmware upgrade file has a .bdl extension.
4. Insert the USB flash drive into the USB port on the product control panel.
5. Turn on the product.

6. The following message displays on the control panel: **Error: 99.09.63 Incorrect Disk**. Touch the **OK** button to continue.
7. Wait for the Pre-Boot menu to appear on the control-panel display, and then touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **3 Administrator**. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
8. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **6 Manage Disk**. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
9. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **+ 6 Boot Device**. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
10. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **2 Erase / Unlock**. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
11. The message **Proceed with Requested Action** displays. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
12. Touch the back ↶ button to return to the **Pre-Boot** menu home screen.
13. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **3 Administrator**. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
14. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **1 Download**. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
15. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **3 USB Thumbdrive**. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
16. Several .bdl files might be listed. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to the firmware upgrade file that was downloaded previously. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
17. Wait while the file transfers. When the transfer is complete, the message **Complete** displays on the screen.
18. Turn the product off, remove the USB flash drive, and then turn the product on. Wait for several minutes while the product initializes. If the upgrade is unsuccessful, try sending the firmware upgrade file again.



---

**NOTE:** If the upgrade fails again, contact HP support at [www.hp.com/support/ljMFPM630](http://www.hp.com/support/ljMFPM630).

---

## Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

## Memory DIMM

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the formatter](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the memory DIMM](#)
- [Step 3: Unpack the replacement DIMM](#)
- [Step 4: Reinstall the memory DIMM](#)
- [Step 5: Install the formatter](#)
- [Step 6: Test the installation](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the memory dual-inline memory module (DIMM).



### Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

DIMM kit part number	
<b>B3G85-67909</b>	2GB memory DIMM kit with instruction guide
<b>B3G85-67910</b>	1GB memory DIMM kit with instruction guide

### Required tools


No special tools are required to install this kit.

 **CAUTION:**  This product contains components that can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). To reduce the chance of ESD damage, place the product on an ESD mat (if available), and wear an ESD wrist strap connected to a grounded surface. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis before touching an ESD-sensitive part.

### Step 1: Remove the formatter

1. Do the following steps:

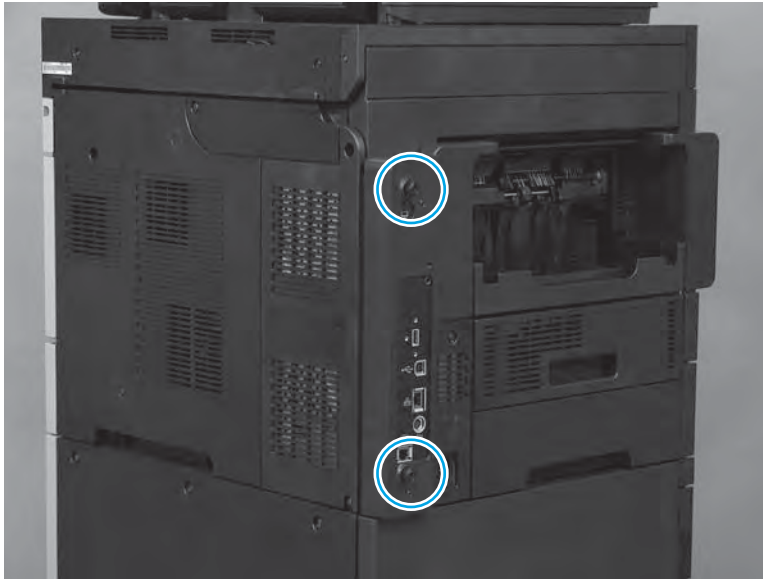
- a. Turn off the product.
- b. Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

- c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.

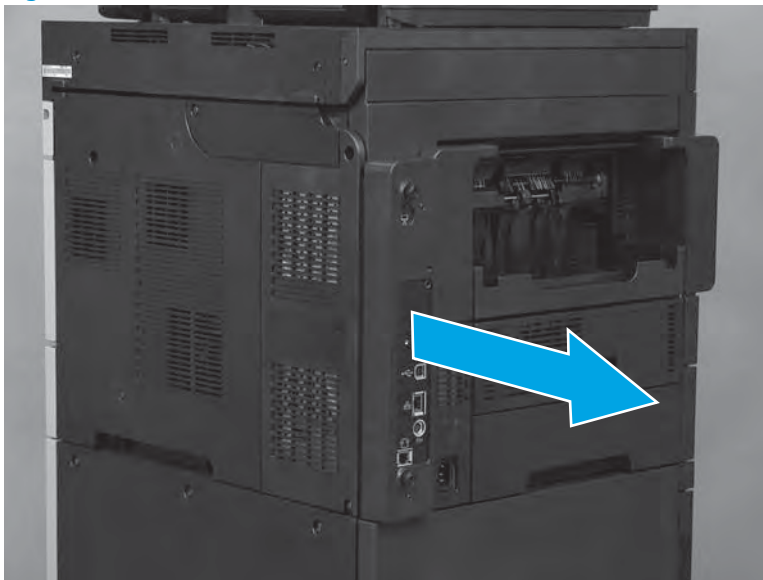
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

**Figure 1-68** Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

**Figure 1-69** Remove the formatter



## Step 2: Remove the memory DIMM

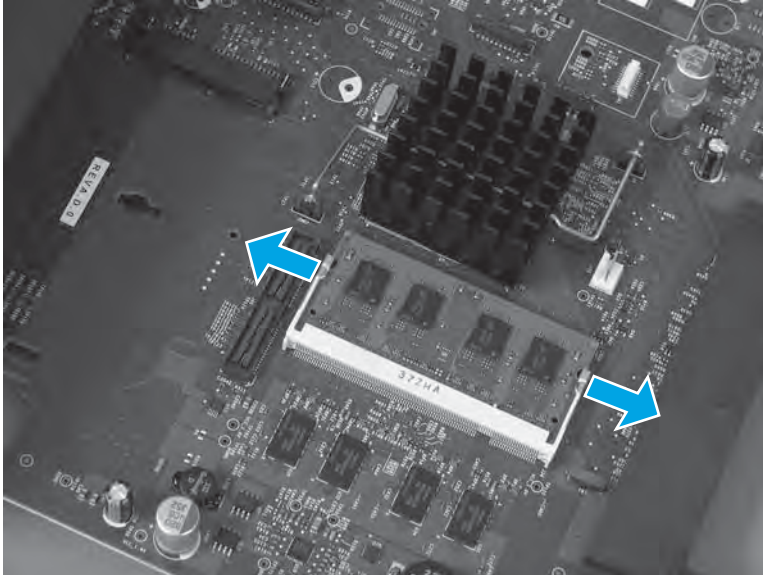
---

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

---

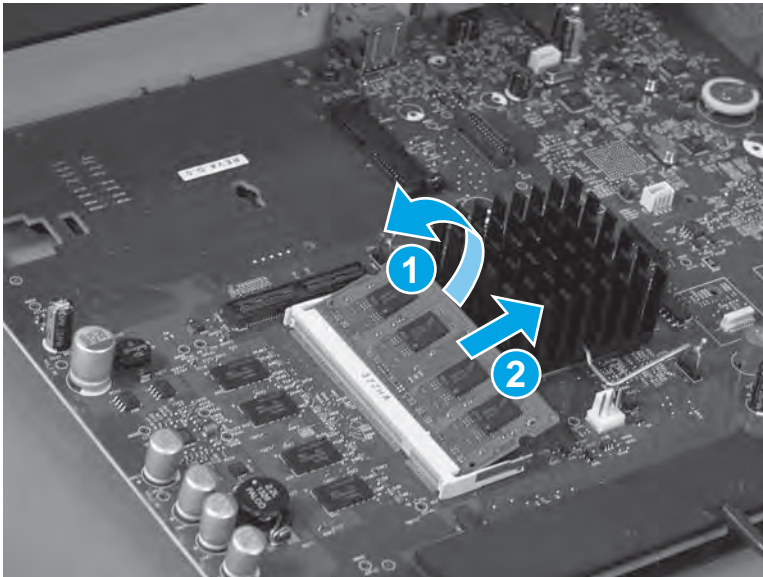
1. Release two clips.

**Figure 1-70** Release two clips



2. Rotate the DIMM upward (callout 1), and then remove it (callout 2).

**Figure 1-71** Remove the DIMM



### Step 3: Unpack the replacement DIMM

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.


---

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

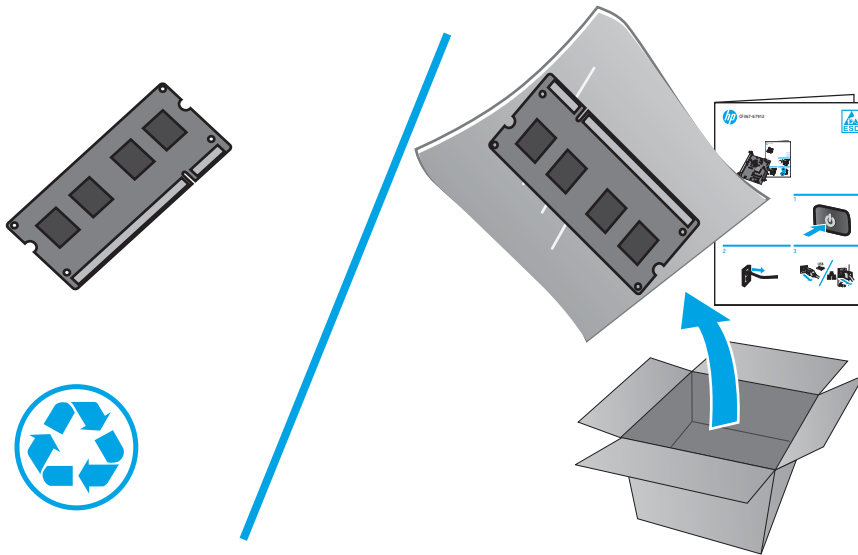
---

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

---

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.


---



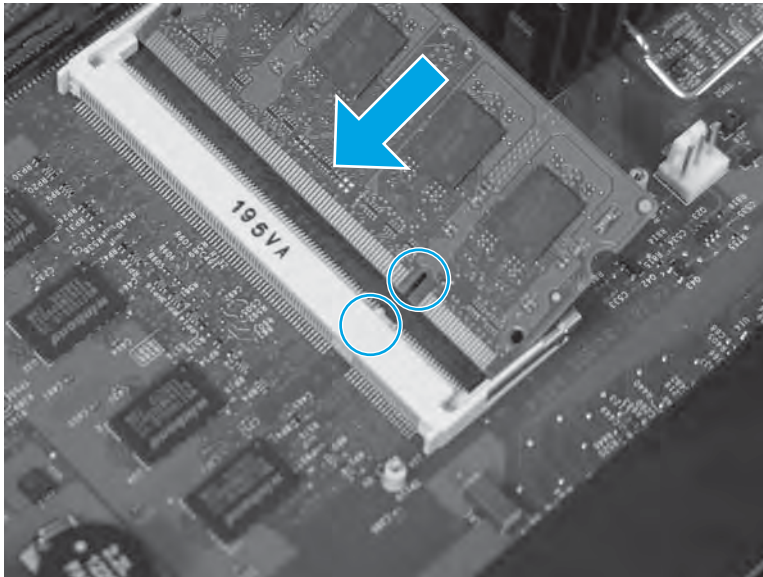
#### Step 4: Reinstall the memory DIMM

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Carefully insert the DIMM at an angle into the holder on the formatter.

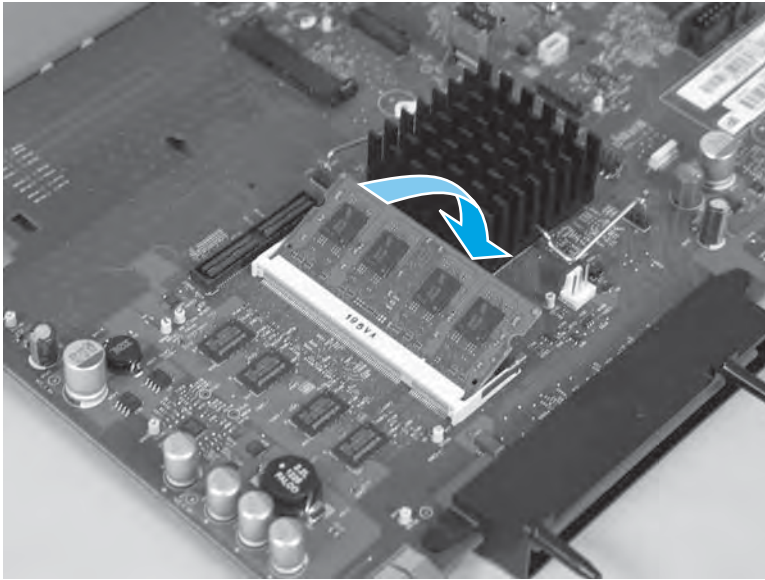
 **NOTE:** Position the DIMM so that the slot in the DIMM is aligned with the tab in the holder.

**Figure 1-72** Insert the DIMM into the holder



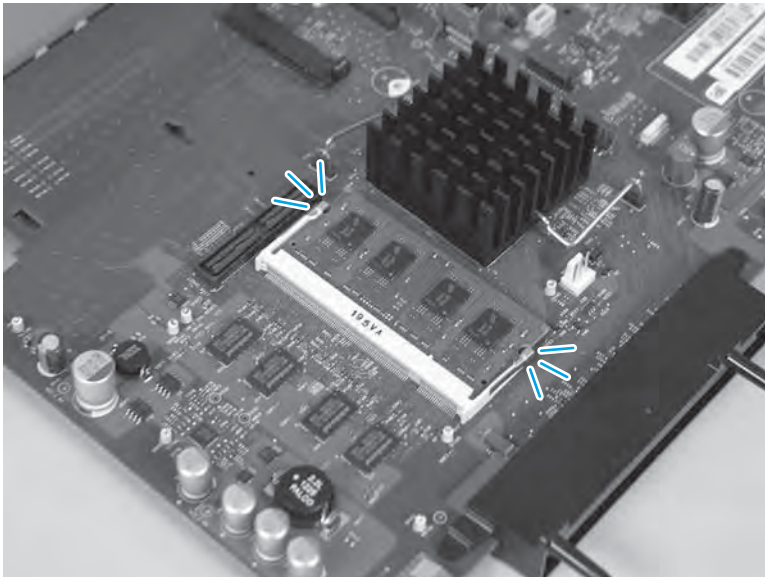
2. Rotate the DIMM in the direction of the arrow to install it.

**Figure 1-73** Install the DIMM



3. When the DIMM is installed make sure that the retaining clips on the right and left sides of the DIMM snap into place.

**Figure 1-74** Make sure that the retaining clips snap into place



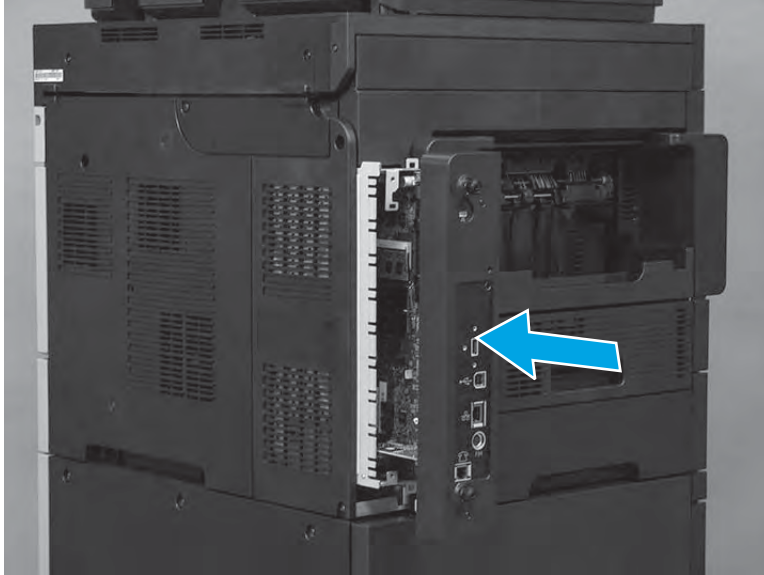
## Step 5: Install the formatter

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

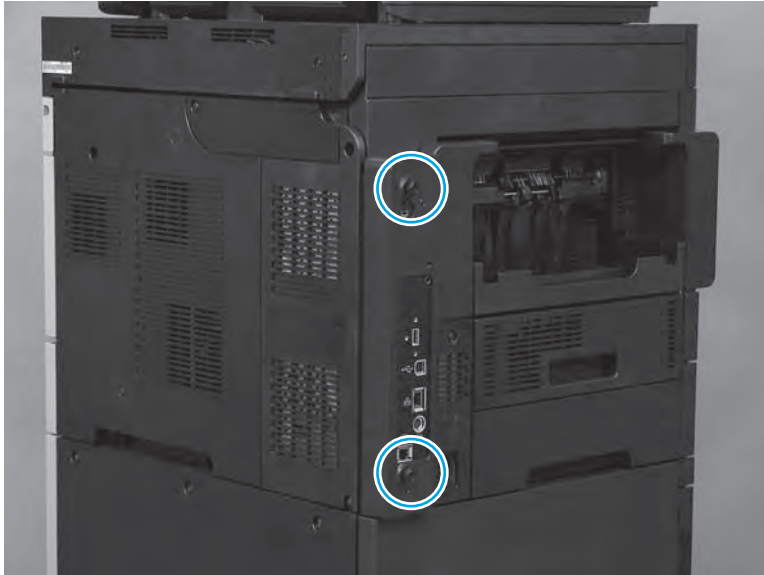


**Figure 1-75** Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot



2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.


**Figure 1-76** Tighten the two thumbscrews



## Step 6: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:
  - a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.
  - b. Plug in the power cord.
2. Turn on the product.

---

 **TIP:** If the product does not initialize when the power is turned on, make sure that the memory DIMM is correctly installed.

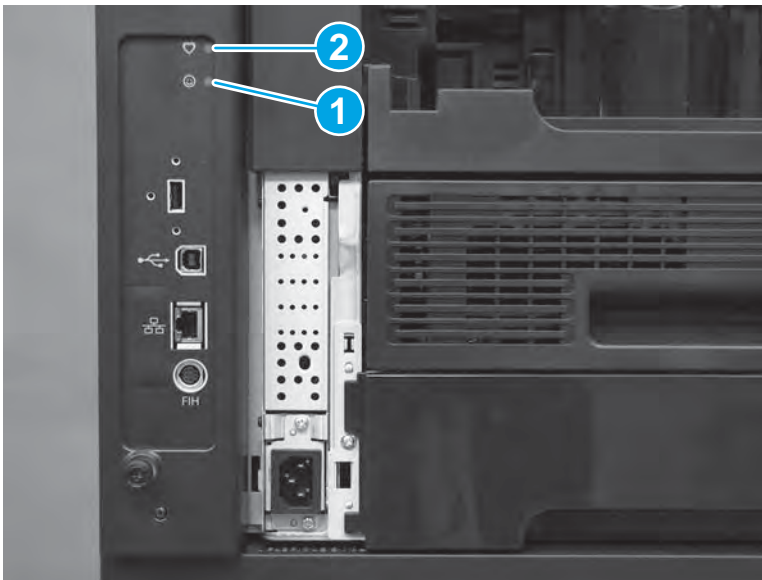
---

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter:

- The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is functioning correctly.
  - While the product is initializing, the heartbeat LED illuminates solid red for about one second, and then turns solid green for about twenty seconds.
  - After the initialization sequence is complete, the heartbeat LED blinks continuously if the printer is functioning correctly.
- The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LEDs do not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).

**Figure 1-77** Verify that the formatter is functioning



## Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

## Fax printed-circuit assembly (PCA)

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the formatter](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the fax PCA](#)
- [Step 3: Unpack the replacement fax PCA](#)
- [Step 4: Install the fax PCA](#)
- [Step 5: Install the formatter](#)
- [Step 6: Test the installation](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the fax PCA.



### Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

Fax PCA kit part numbers	
A2W77-67910	Fax PCA kit with instruction guide


### Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

 **CAUTION:**  This product contains components that can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). To reduce the chance of ESD damage, place the product on an ESD mat (if available), and wear an ESD wrist strap connected to a grounded surface. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis before touching an ESD-sensitive part.

### Step 1: Remove the formatter

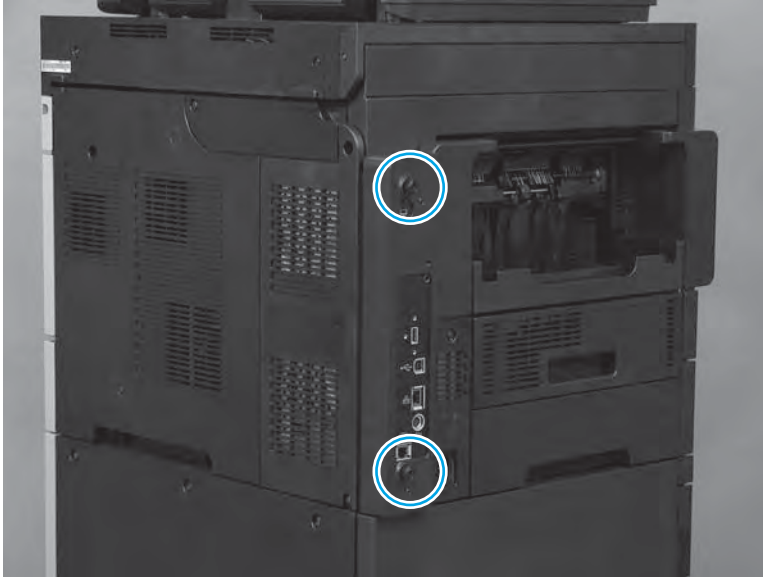
1. Do the following steps:
  - a. Turn off the product.
  - b. Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

- c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.

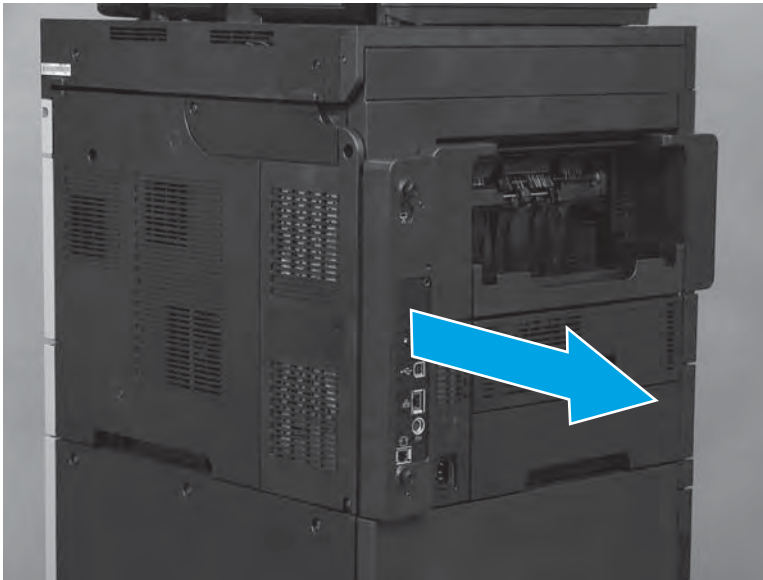
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

**Figure 1-78** Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

**Figure 1-79** Remove the formatter



## Step 2: Remove the fax PCA

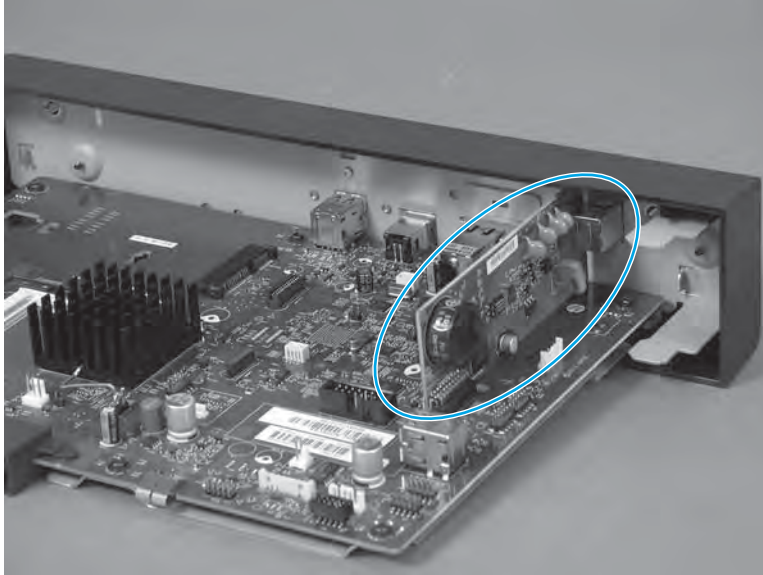
---

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

---

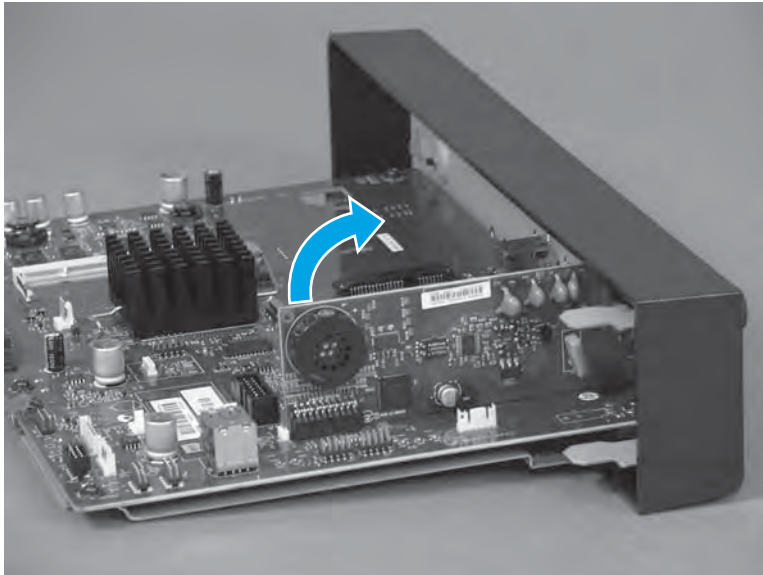
1. Locate the fax PCA that is installed on the formatter.

**Figure 1-80** Locate the fax PCA




2. Rotate the connector end (away from the phone port) of the fax PCA up and away from the formatter to release it.

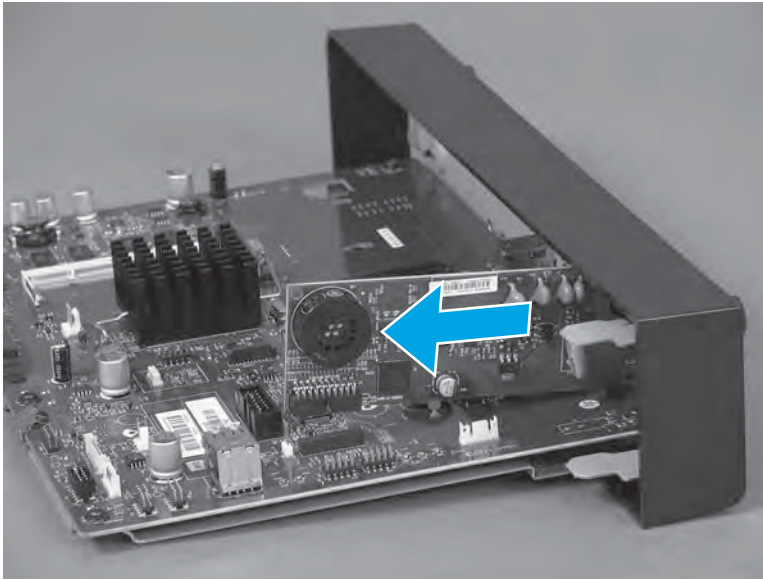
**Figure 1-81** Release the connector end of the fax PCA



- Carefully remove the fax PCA from the formatter bracket.

 **NOTE:** Set this part aside. It will be installed on the replacement formatter.

**Figure 1-82** Remove the fax PCA

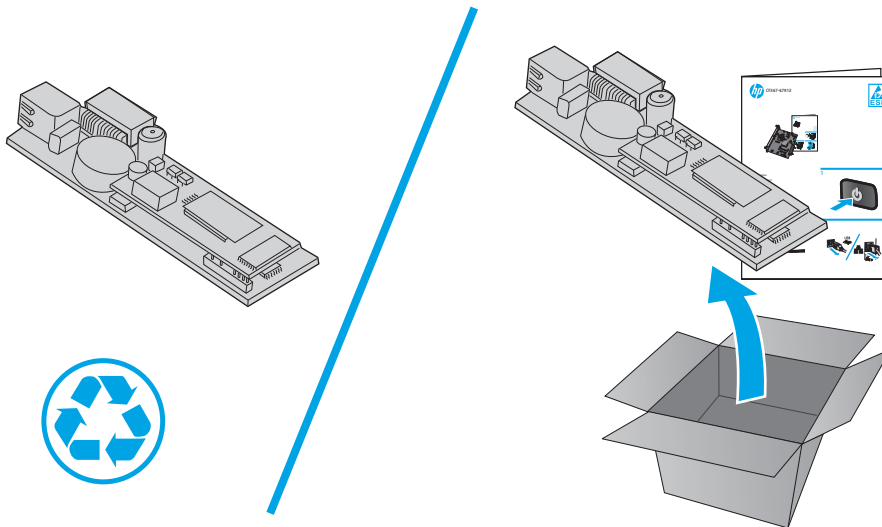


### Step 3: Unpack the replacement fax PCA

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

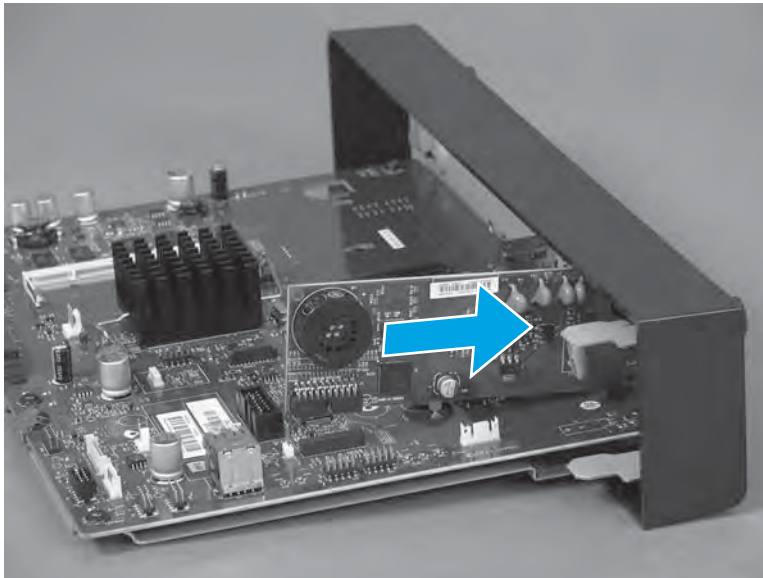


## Step 4: Install the fax PCA

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

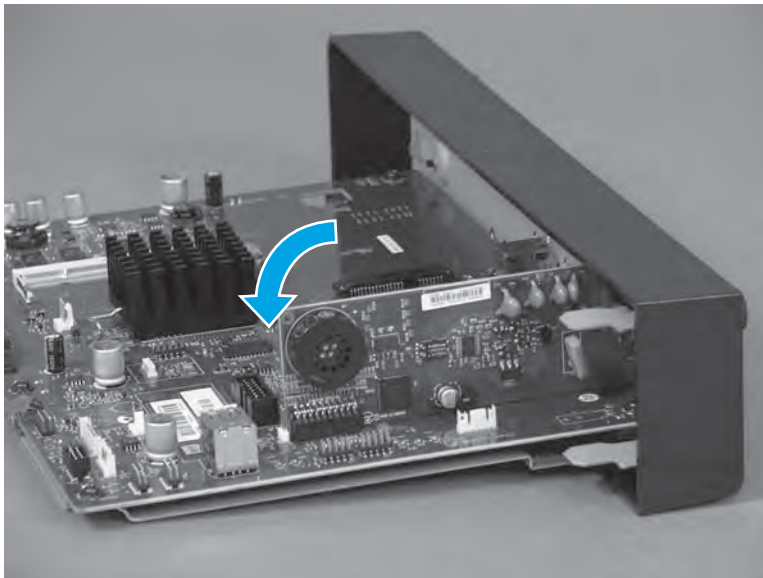
1. Insert the fax port of the fax PCA into the holder on the formatter tray.

**Figure 1-83** Insert the fax port of the fax PCA into the holder



2. Rotate the connector end of the fax PCA in the direction of the arrow to install it.

**Figure 1-84** Install the fax PCA

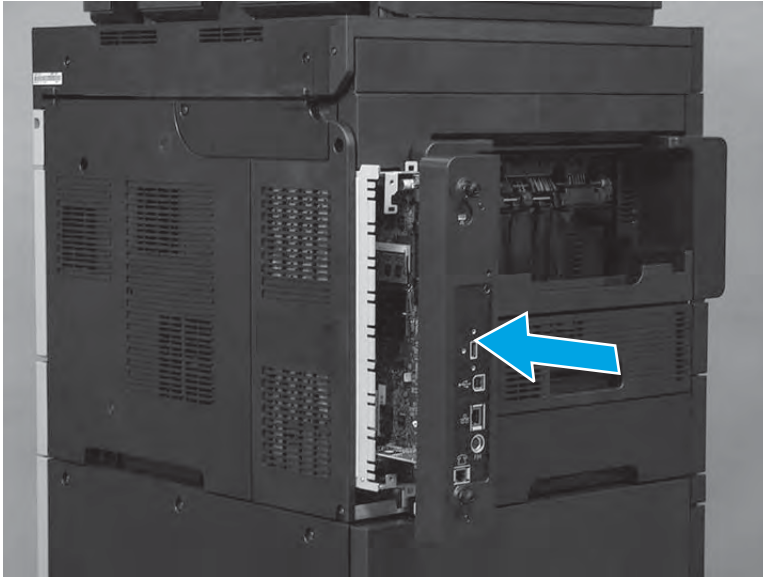


## Step 5: Install the formatter

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

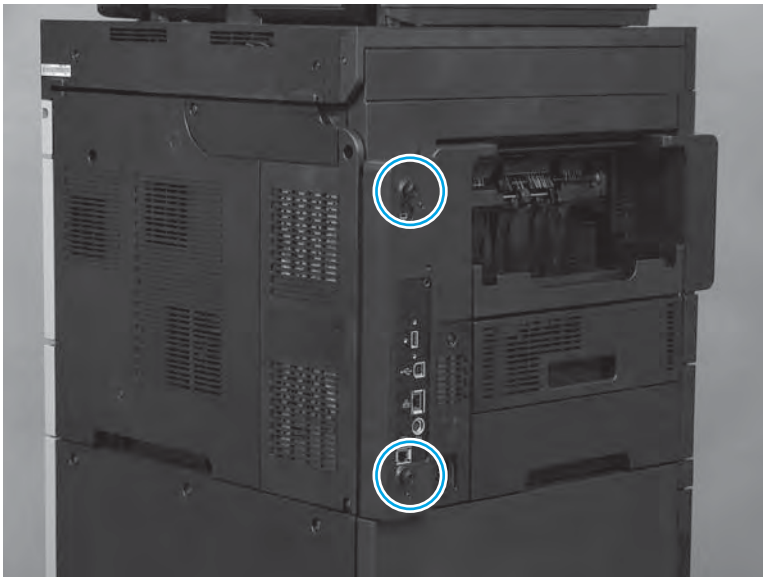
1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

**Figure 1-85** Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot



2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.

**Figure 1-86** Tighten the two thumbscrews




## Step 6: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:



- a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.
  - b. Plug in the power cord.
2. Turn on the product.

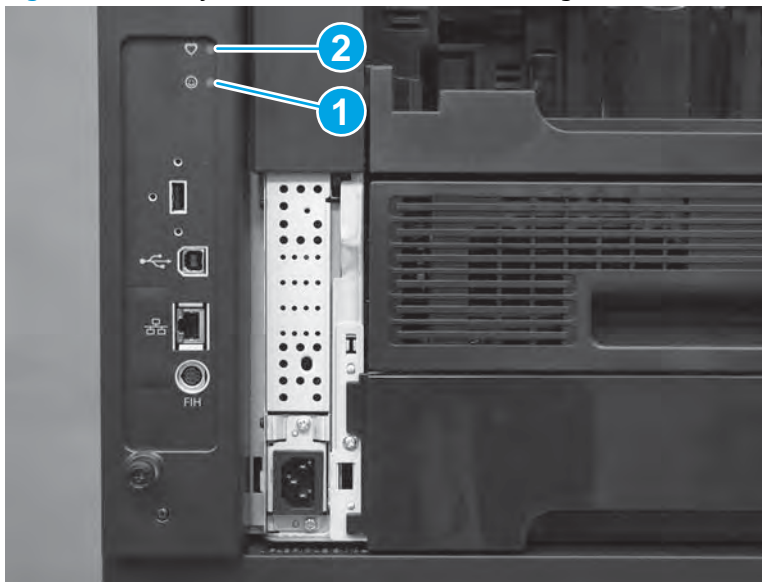
 **TIP:** If the product does not initialize when the power is turned on, make sure that the memory DIMM is correctly installed.

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter:

- The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is functioning correctly.
  - While the product is initializing, the heartbeat LED illuminates solid red for about one second, and then turns solid green for about twenty seconds.
  - After the initialization sequence is complete, the heartbeat LED blinks continuously if the printer is functioning correctly.
- The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LEDs do not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).

**Figure 1-87** Verify that the formatter is functioning



## Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

## Output bin and bin base assembly

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement output bin and bin base assembly](#)
- [Step 3: Install the output bin and bin base assembly](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the output bin and bin base assembly.

### Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

Output bin and bin base assembly part number	
<b>B3G84-69702</b>	Output bin assembly kit with instruction guide

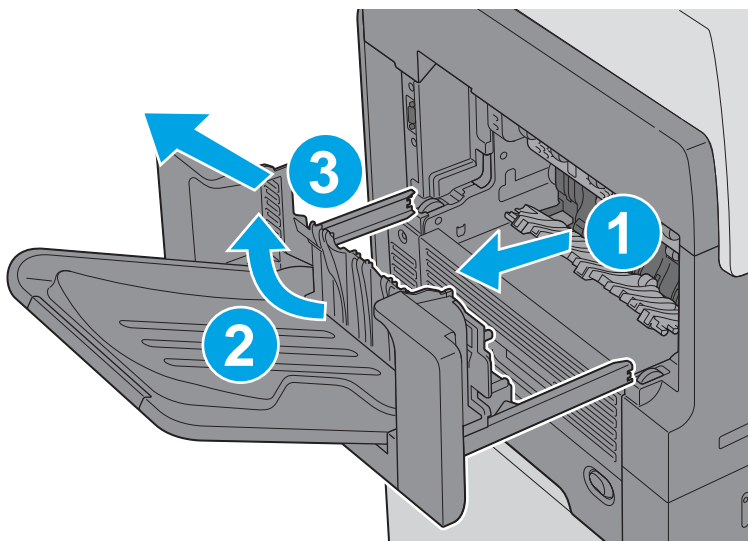
### Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

### Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly

- ▲ Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

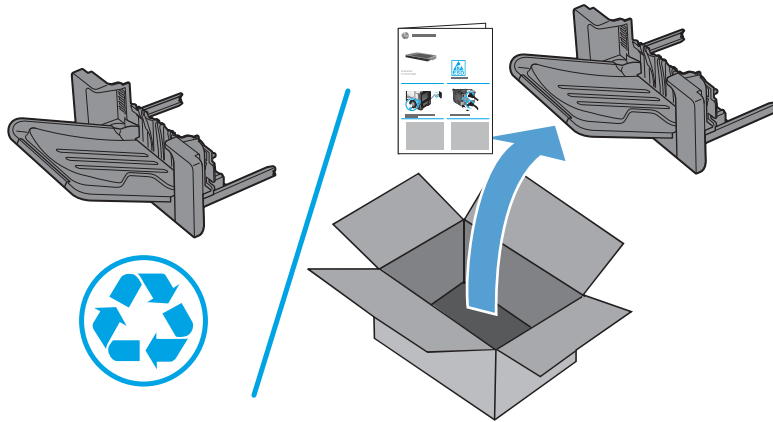
**Figure 1-88** Remove the output bin



### Step 2: Unpack the replacement output bin and bin base assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

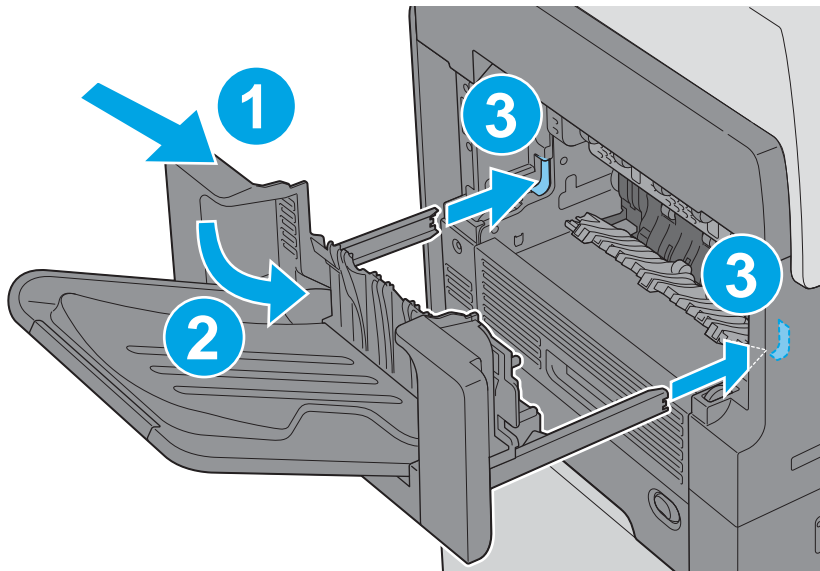
 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



### Step 3: Install the output bin and bin base assembly

- ▲ Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

**Figure 1-89** Install the output bin



### Parts Return

## Duplex accessory

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 3: Unpack the replacement duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 4: Install the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 5: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 6: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the duplex accessory.

### Before servicing


Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

Duplex accessory part number	
<b>B3G84-67903</b>	Duplex accessory kit with instruction guide

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

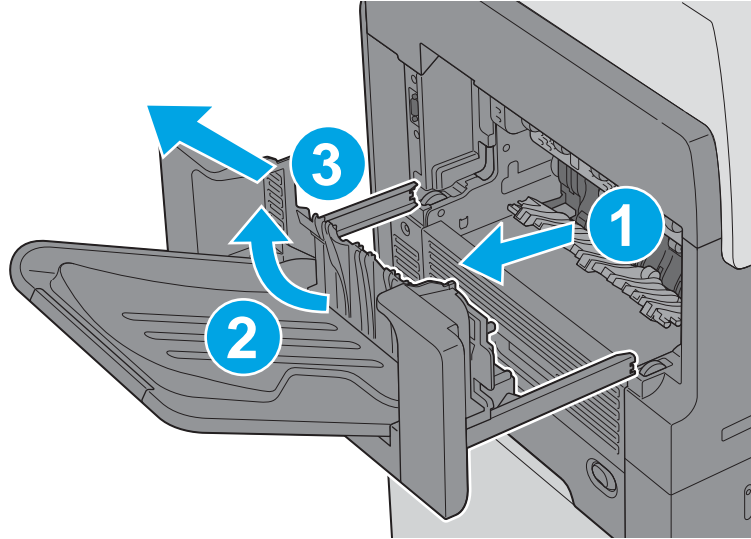
### Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

### Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

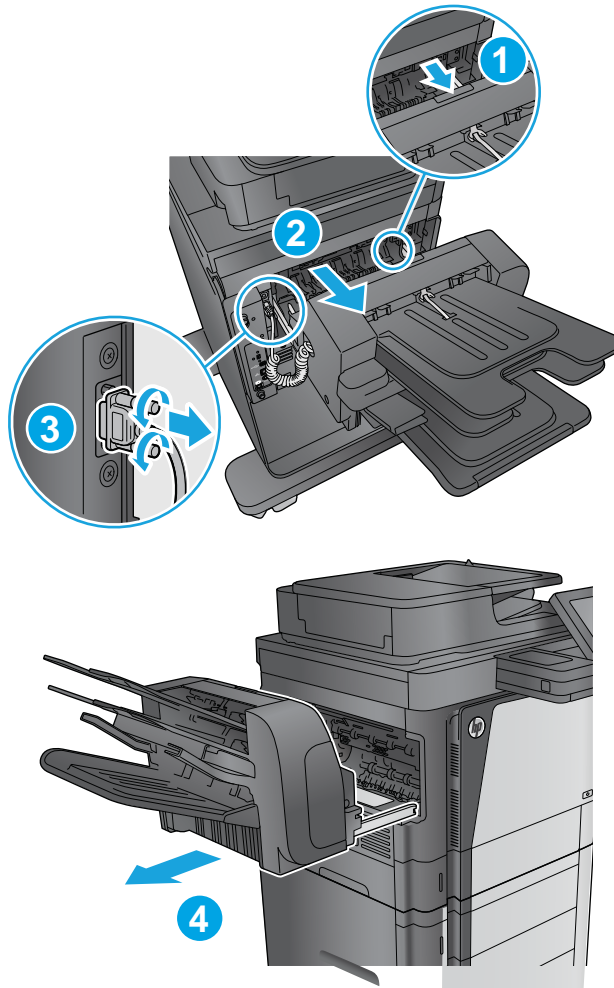
- ▲ Do one of the following steps:
  - M630dn and M630f:** Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

**Figure 1-90** Remove the output bin




- b. **M630z:** Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

**Figure 1-91** Remove the stapling mailbox

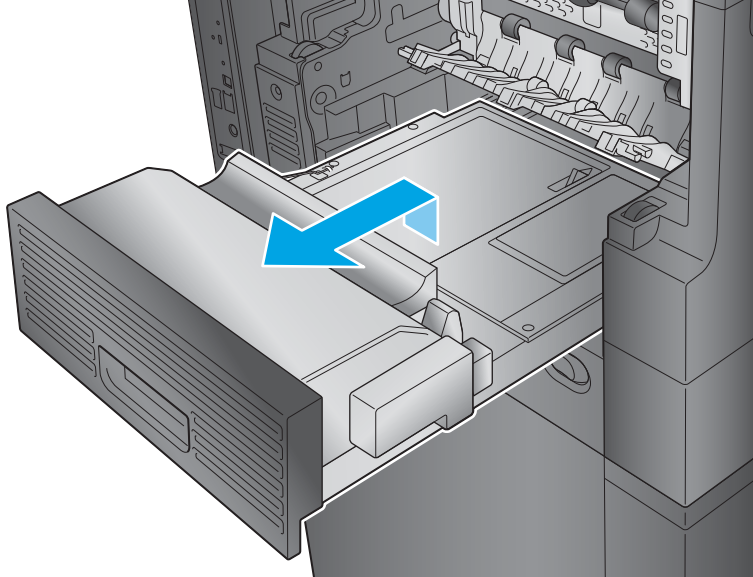


## Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory

- ▲ Slide the duplex assembly away from the product, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails, and then remove it.

 **NOTE:** Locate the duplexer at the left-hand side of the product.

**Figure 1-92** Remove the duplex accessory

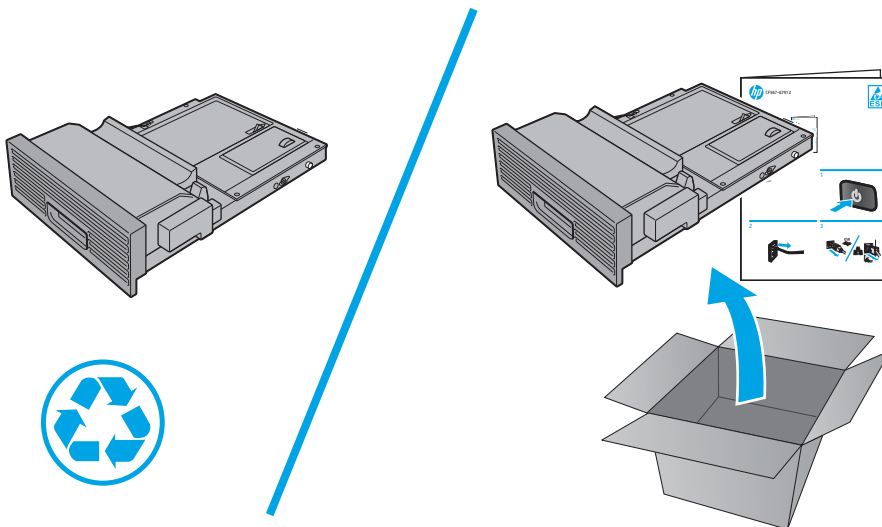


### Step 3: Unpack the replacement duplex accessory

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the assembly.



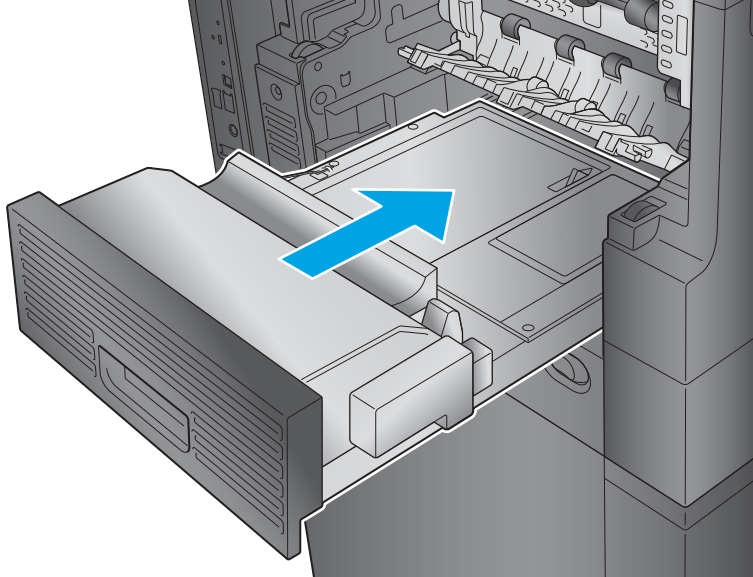
### Step 4: Install the duplex accessory

- ▲ Position the duplex assembly on the product at a slight angle, engage the slide rails, and then slide the duplex assembly all of the way into the product to install it.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that the duplex accessory is full installed.

 **NOTE:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed duplex accessory.

**Figure 1-93** Install the duplex accessory

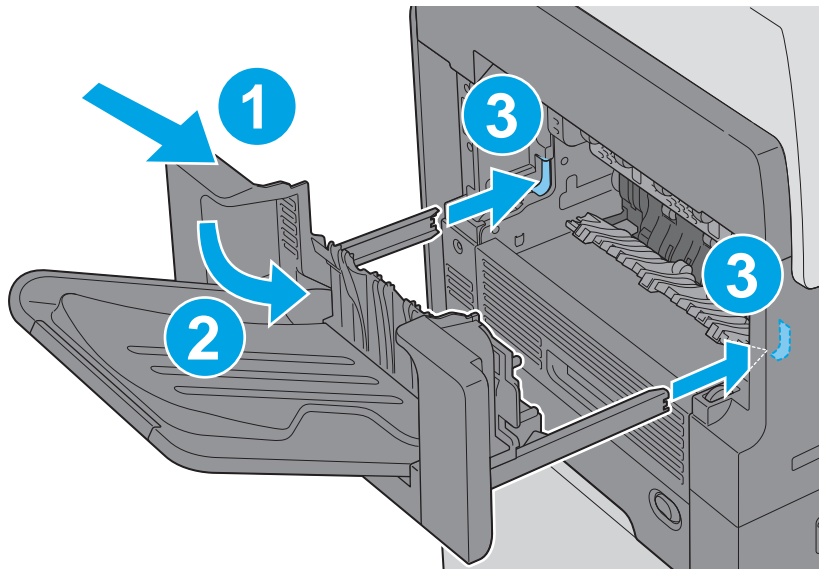


### Step 5: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following:


- a. **M630dn and M630f:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

**Figure 1-94** Install the output bin

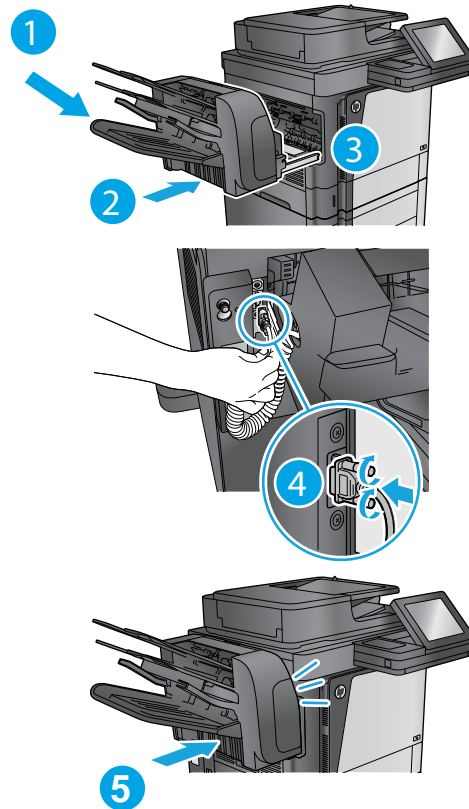




- b. **M630z:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4), and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.

 **TIP:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

**Figure 1-95** Install the stapling mailbox



## Step 6: Turn the product power on

### After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

### Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

## Fuser-entrance guide

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the fuser-entrance guide](#)
- [Step 4: Unpack the replacement fuser-entrance guide](#)
- [Step 5: Install the fuser-entrance guide](#)
- [Step 6: Install the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 7: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 8: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the fuser-entrance guide.

### Before servicing


Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

Fuser-entrance guide kit part numbers	
<b>B3G84-67904</b>	Fuser-entrance guide kit with instruction guide

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

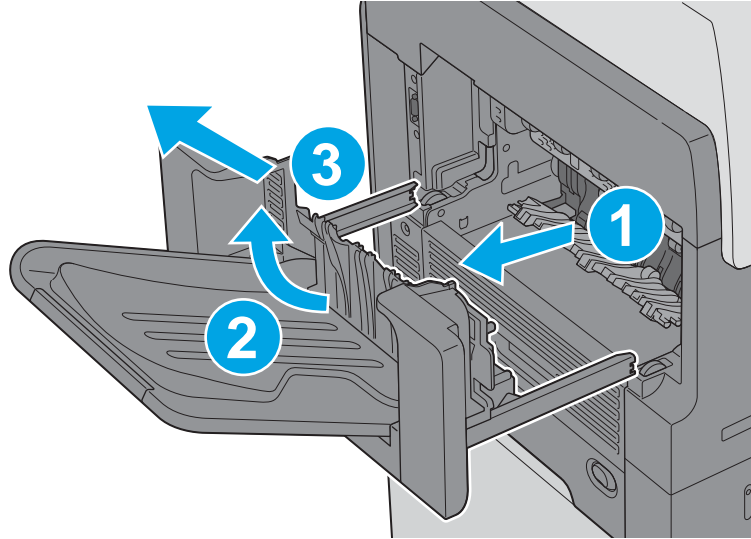
### Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

### Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

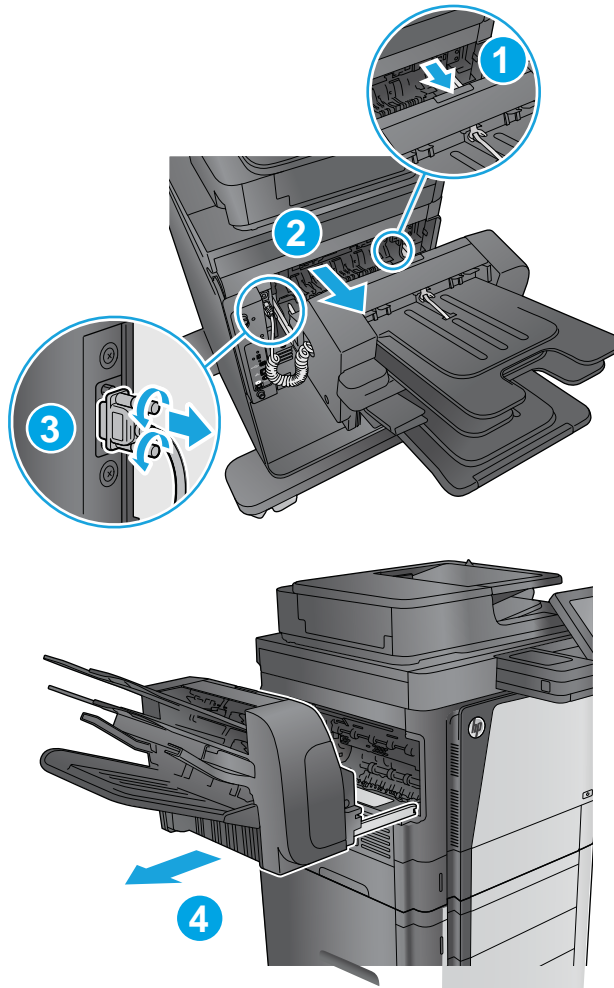
- ▲ Do one of the following steps:
  - M630dn and M630f:** Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

**Figure 1-96** Remove the output bin




- b. **M630z:** Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

**Figure 1-97** Remove the stapling mailbox

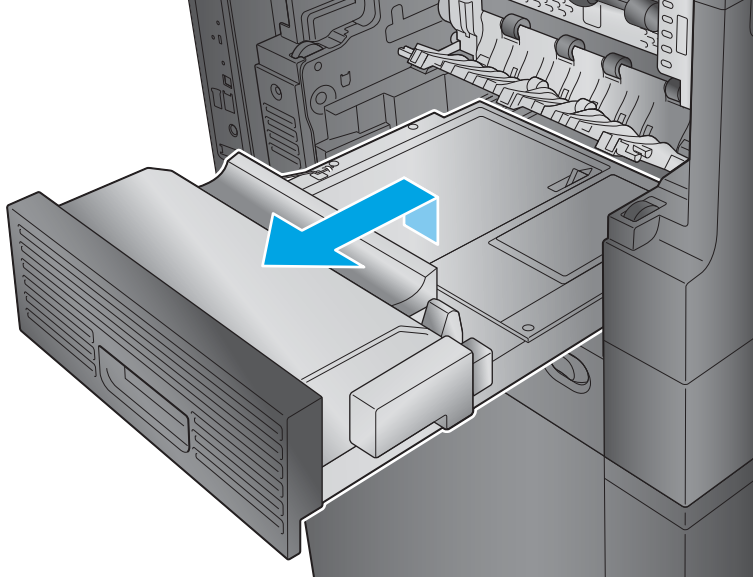


## Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory

- ▲ Slide the duplex assembly away from the product, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails, and then remove it.

 **NOTE:** Locate the duplexer at the left-hand side of the product.

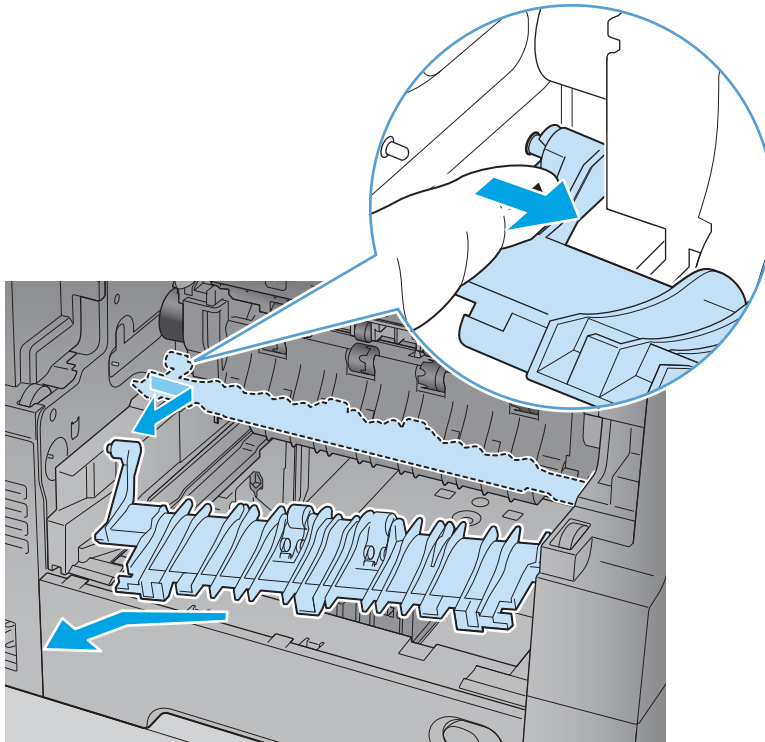
**Figure 1-98** Remove the duplex accessory



### Step 3: Remove the fuser-entrance guide

1. Flex the rear hinge-pin of the fuser-entrance guide until it clears the mounting hole in the product chassis.
2. Rotate the rear of the guide away of the product and slide the guide to the left to release the front hinge-pin. Remove the fuser-entrance guide.

**Figure 1-99** Remove the fuser-entrance guide

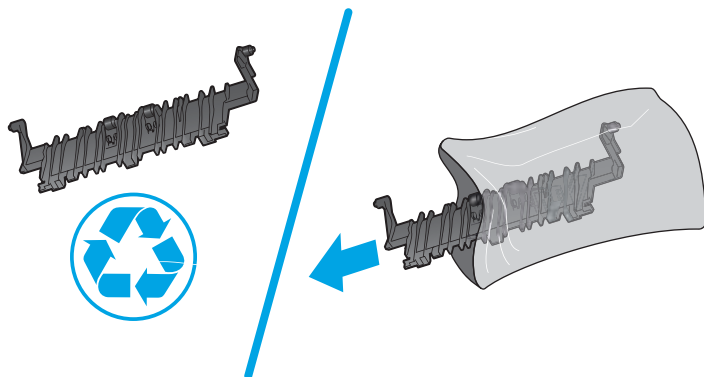


## Step 4: Unpack the replacement fuser-entrance guide

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

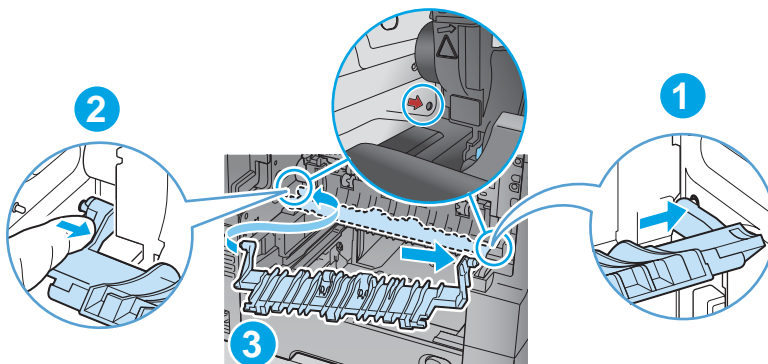
 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



## Step 5: Install the fuser-entrance guide


1. Position the front hinge-pin of the fuser-entrance guide in the mounting hole in the product chassis (callout 1).
2. Slightly flex the rear hinge pin (callout 2), rotate the guide into the product (callout 3) to install it.


**Figure 1-100** Install the fuser-entrance guide



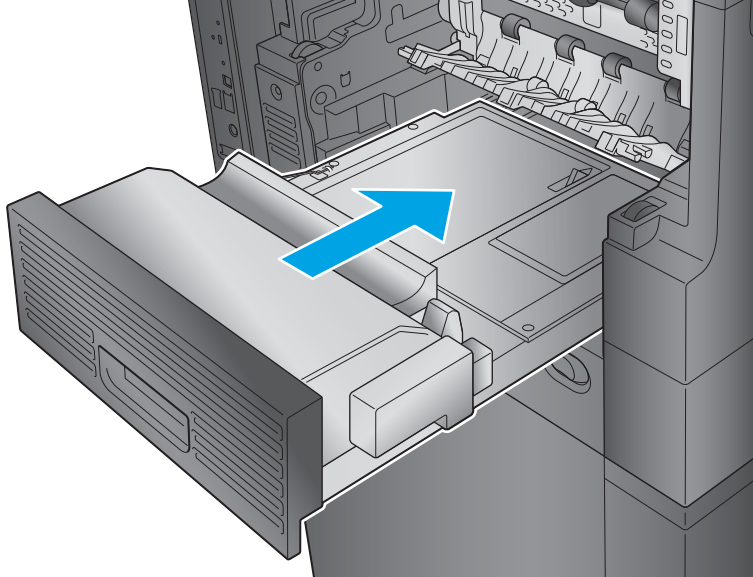
## Step 6: Install the duplex accessory

- ▲ Position the duplex assembly on the product at a slight angle, engage the slide rails, and then slide the duplex assembly all of the way into the product to install it.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that the duplex accessory is full installed.

 **NOTE:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed duplex accessory.

**Figure 1-101** Install the duplex accessory

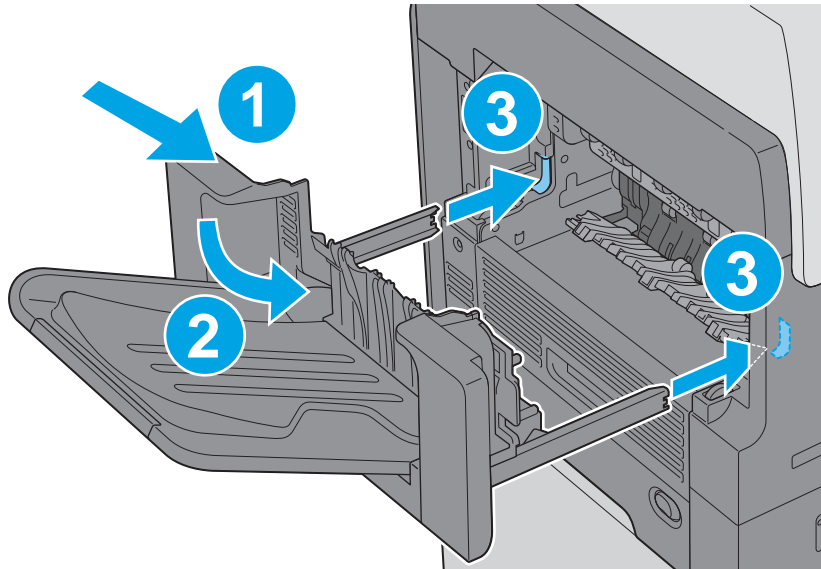


**Step 7: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox**


▲ Do one of the following:

- a. **M630dn and M630f:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

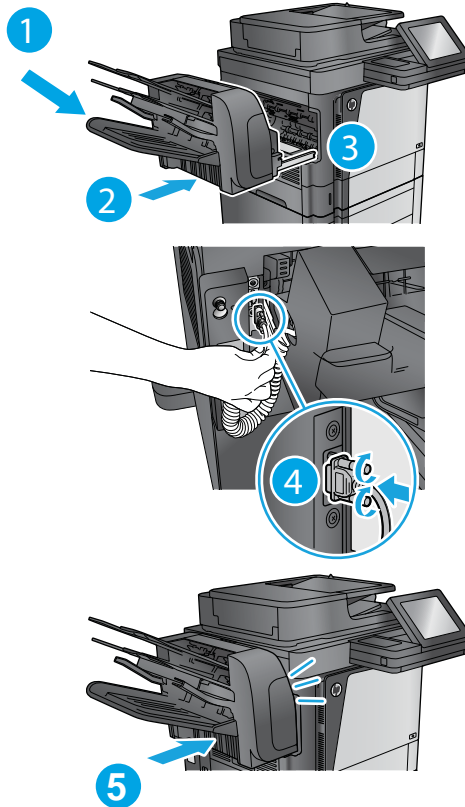
**Figure 1-102** Install the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4), and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.

 **TIP:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

**Figure 1-103** Install the stapling mailbox



## Step 8: Turn the product power on

### After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

### Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).



# Fuser

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the fuser-entrance guide](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the fuser](#)
- [Step 5: Unpack the replacement fuser](#)
- [Step 6: Install the fuser](#)
- [Step 7: Install the fuser-entrance guide](#)
- [Step 8: Install the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 9: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 10: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Step 11: Reset the supplies counter](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the fuser.

### Before servicing


Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

Fuser kit part numbers	
<b>B3M77-67903</b>	Fuser (110V) kit with instruction guide
<b>B3M78-67903</b>	Fuser (220V) kit with instruction guide

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

### Required tools

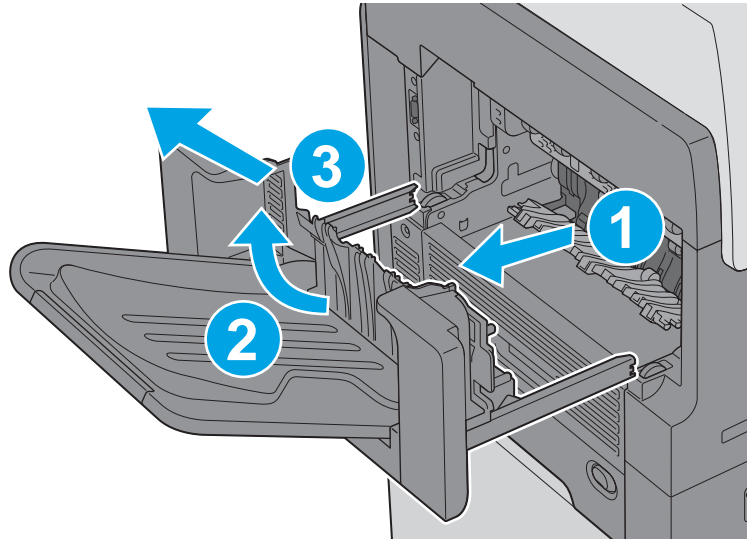
No special tools are required to install this kit.

## Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

- ▲ Do one of the following steps:

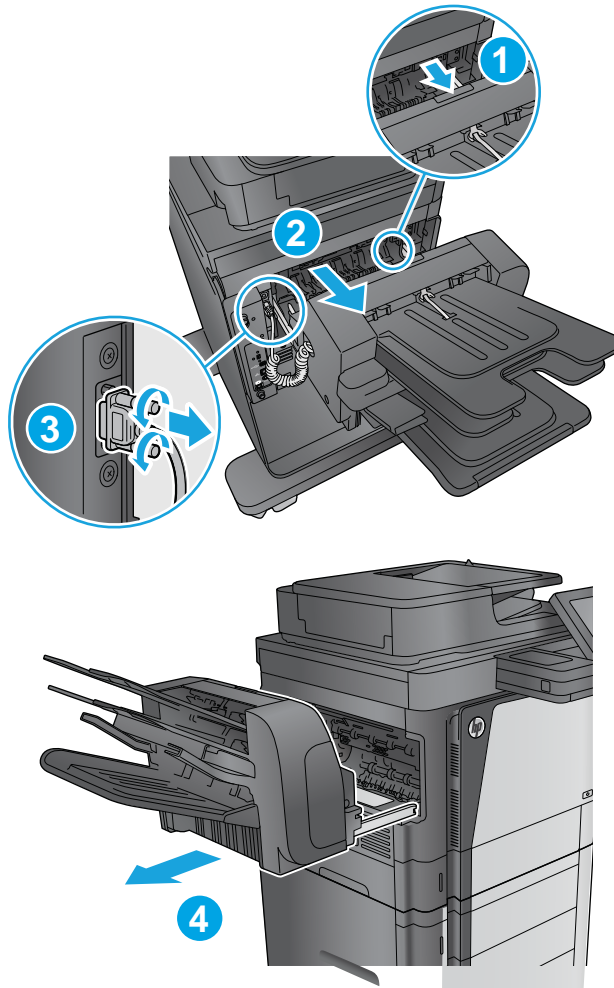
- a. **M630dn and M630f:** Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

**Figure 1-104** Remove the output bin




- b. **M630z:** Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

**Figure 1-105** Remove the stapling mailbox

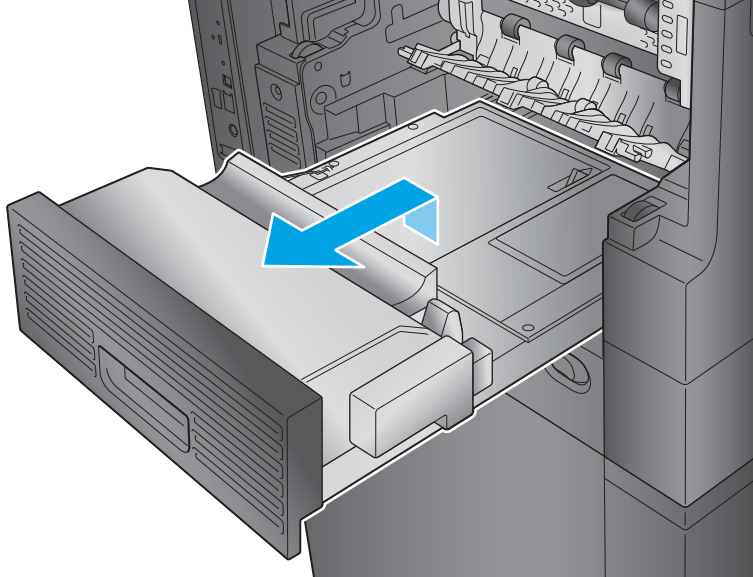


## Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory

- ▲ Slide the duplex assembly away from the product, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails, and then remove it.

 **NOTE:** Locate the duplexer at the left-hand side of the product.

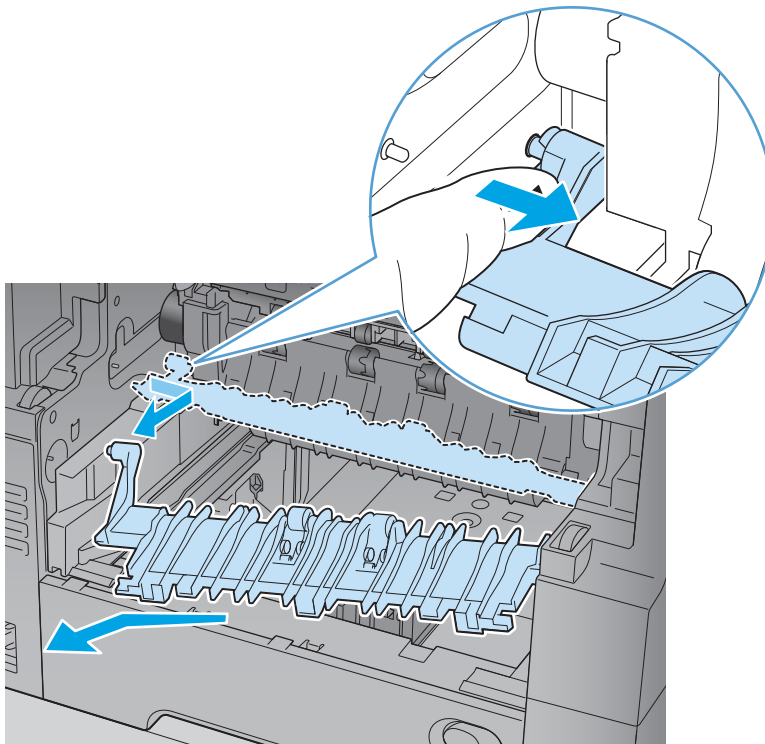
**Figure 1-106** Remove the duplex accessory



### Step 3: Remove the fuser-entrance guide

1. Flex the rear hinge-pin of the fuser-entrance guide until it clears the mounting hole in the product chassis.
2. Rotate the rear of the guide away of the product and slide the guide to the left to release the front hinge-pin. Remove the fuser-entrance guide.

**Figure 1-107** Remove the fuser-entrance guide

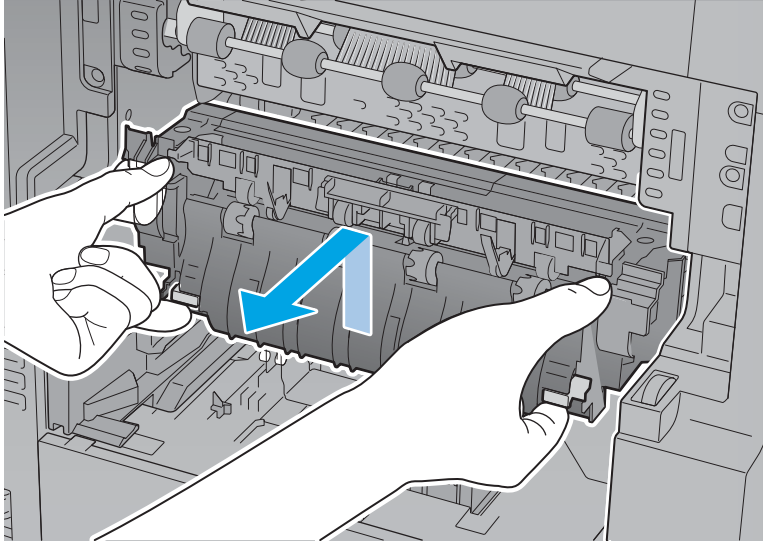


## Step 4: Remove the fuser

- ▲ Squeeze the two blue tabs on the fuser to release it, and then slide it out of the product.

**⚠ CAUTION:** The fuser is very hot. After turning the product power off, allow the fuser to cool for at least 30 minutes before removing it.

**Figure 1-108** Remove the fuser

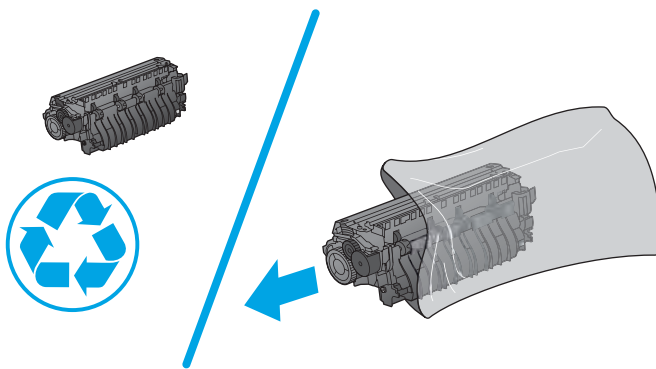


## Step 5: Unpack the replacement fuser

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[Product return and recycling](#)

**📝 NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

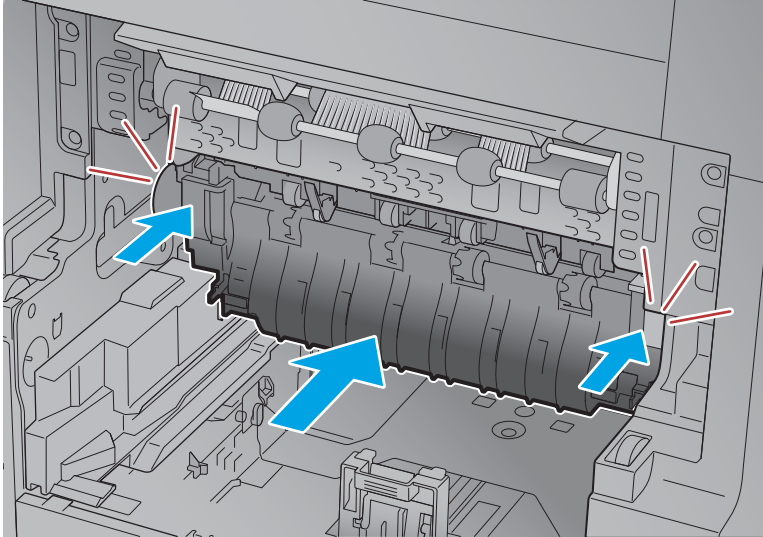


## Step 6: Install the fuser

- ▲ Position the fuser in the product, push in to install it, and then make sure that it is fully seated.

**💡 TIP:** When the fuser is fully seated, the two blue locking levers make an audible click.

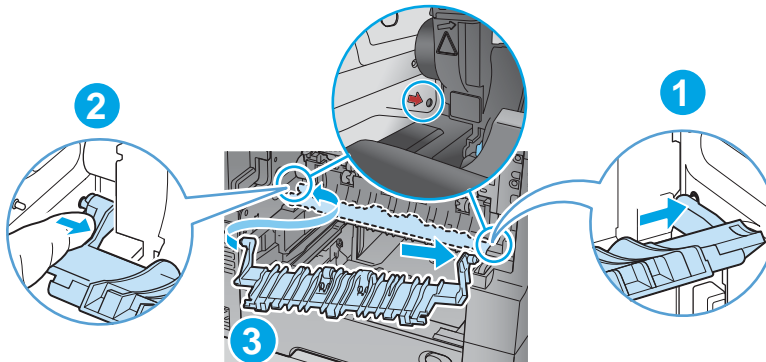
**Figure 1-109** Install the fuser



### Step 7: Install the fuser-entrance guide


1. Position the front hinge-pin of the fuser-entrance guide in the mounting hole in the product chassis (callout 1).
2. Slightly flex the rear hinge pin (callout 2), rotate the guide into the product (callout 3) to install it.


**Figure 1-110** Install the fuser-entrance guide



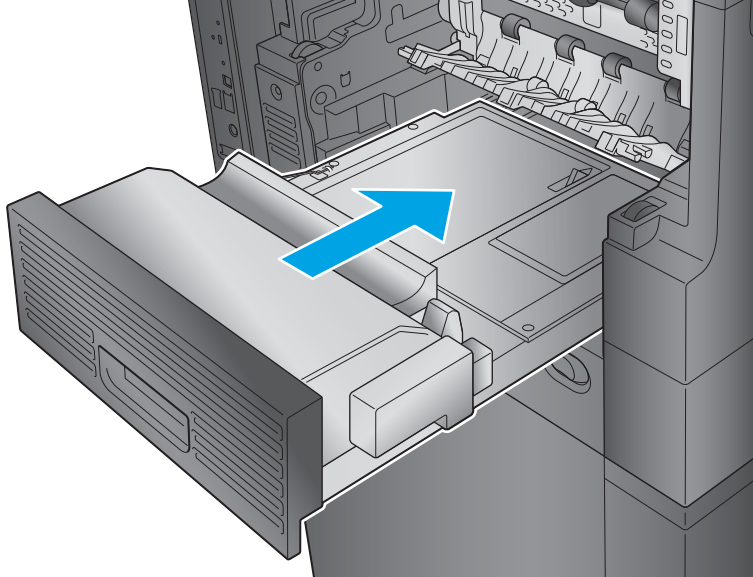
### Step 8: Install the duplex accessory

- ▲ Position the duplex assembly on the product at a slight angle, engage the slide rails, and then slide the duplex assembly all of the way into the product to install it.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that the duplex accessory is full installed.

 **NOTE:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed duplex accessory.

**Figure 1-111** Install the duplex accessory

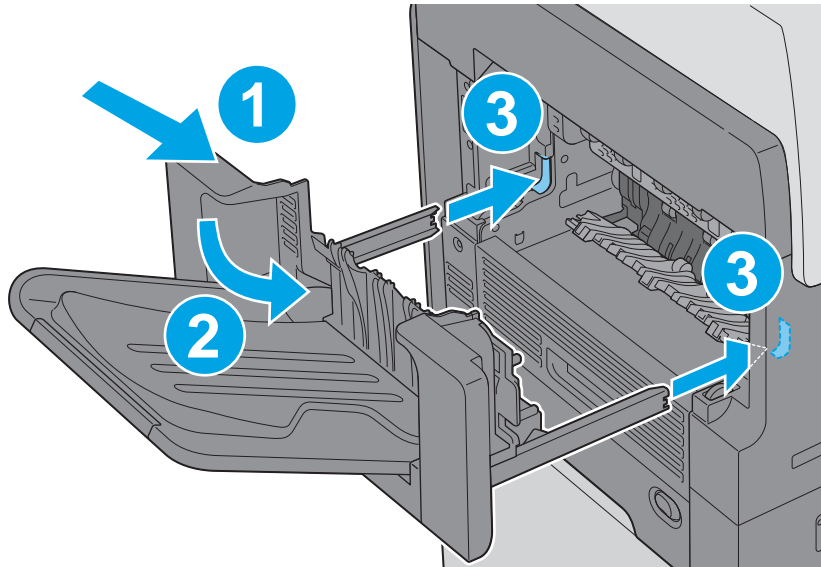


**Step 9: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox**


▲ Do one of the following:

- a. **M630dn and M630f:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

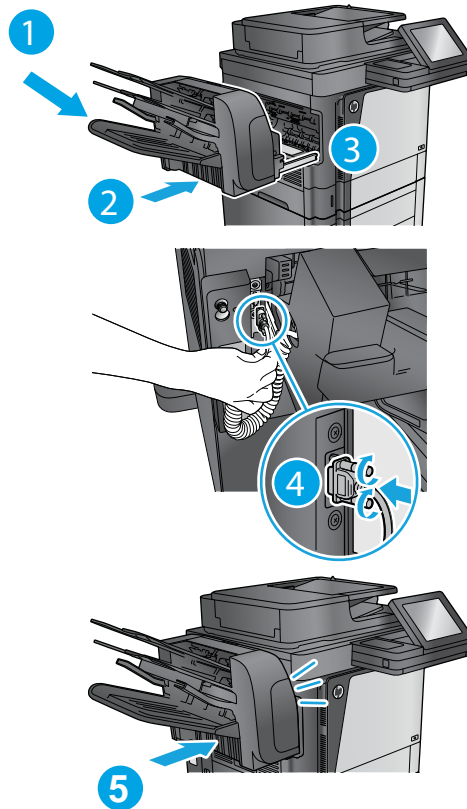
**Figure 1-112** Install the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4), and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.

 **TIP:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

**Figure 1-113** Install the stapling mailbox



## Step 10: Turn the product power on

### After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

## Step 11: Reset the supplies counter

1. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the **Administration** button.
2. Open the following menus:



- [Manage Supplies](#)
  - [Reset Supplies](#)
  - [New Maintenance Kit](#)
3. Select the [Reset](#) item to reset the supplies counter.

## Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

## Control-panel assembly

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the control panel](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the keyboard \(M630z only\)](#)
- [Step 3: Unpack the replacement control-panel assembly](#)
- [Step 4: Install the keyboard \(M630z only\)](#)
- [Step 5: Install the control-panel assembly](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides instructions about removing and replacing the control panel.

The figures in these steps show the M630z model control panel and keyboard. However, this procedure for removing the control panel is correct for all models.



**NOTE:** The M630dn and M630f models do not have the keyboard or the keyboard FFC installed.

### Before servicing

To order a replacement assembly, use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product. To order the kit, go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts)

Control panel kit part number	
<b>B3G84-67908</b>	Control panel kit with instruction guide

### Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

## Step 1: Remove the control panel

1. Do the following steps:
  - a. Turn off the product.
  - b. Disconnect the power cord.

---

**⚠ WARNING!** Turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

---

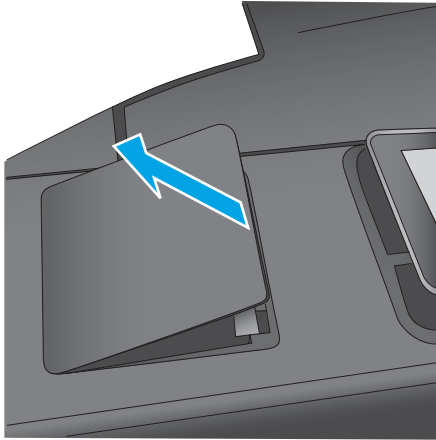
2. **Optional step:** Locate and open the Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) next to the control-panel display. The HIP is covered by a rectangular cover that is retained by clips along its long edges. Using a thin, flat-blade screwdriver along either short edge, gently pry the cover off. If a third-party device is installed under this cover, disconnect and remove the device.

---

**📝 NOTE:** Set this device aside. It will be installed on the replacement control panel.

---

**Figure 1-114** Remove third party devices



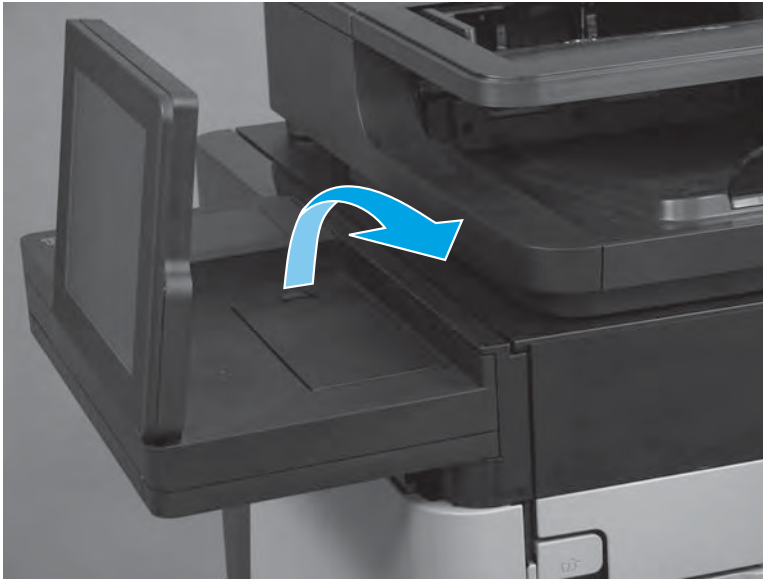
3. Tilt the control panel up.

**Figure 1-115** Tilt the control panel up



4. Release one tab, and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-116** Remove the cover



5. **M630z only:** Slide the keyboard about halfway out of the product.

**Figure 1-117** Slide the keyboard out




6. Disconnect two connectors.

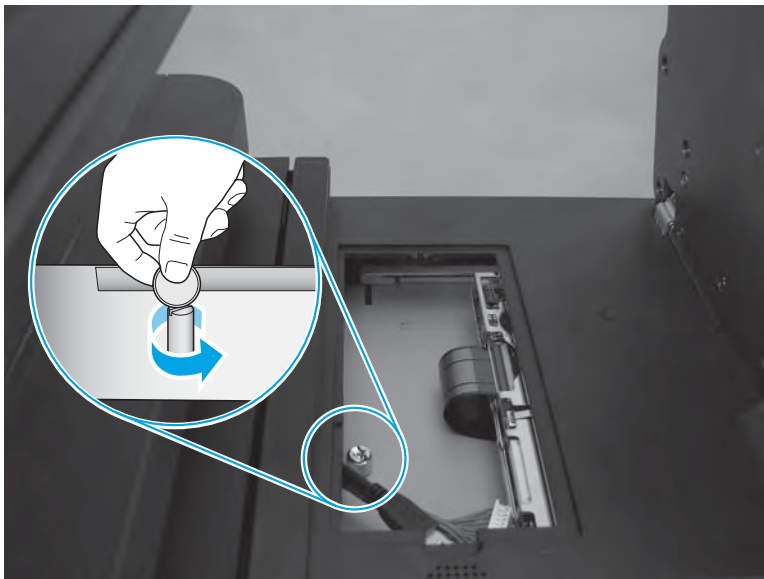
**Figure 1-118** Disconnect two connectors



7. Remove one screw.

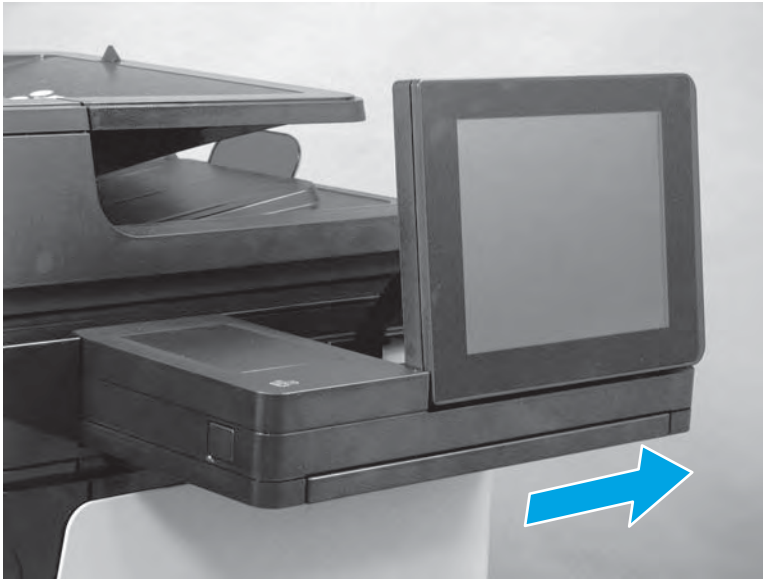
 **TIP:** Use the edge of a coin to loosen the screw.

**Figure 1-119** Remove one screw



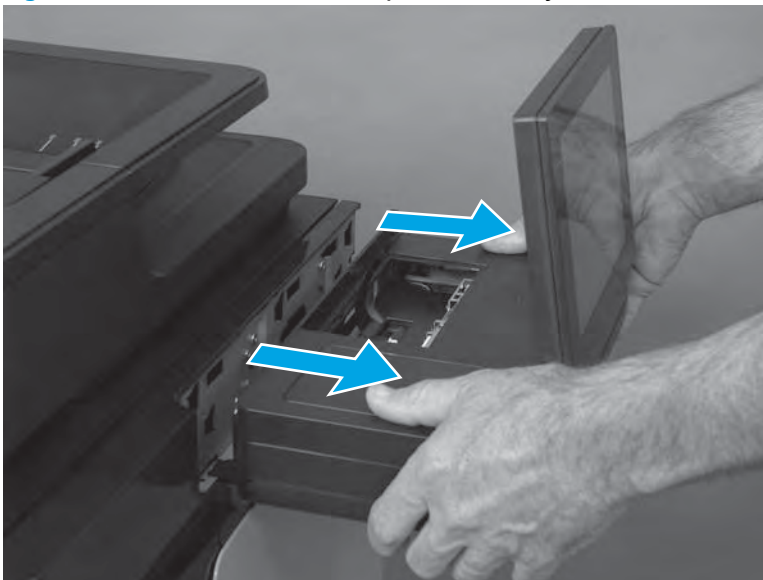
8. Slide the control panel toward the right door.

**Figure 1-120** Slide the control panel to the right



9. Slide the control panel towards the front of the product to remove it.

**Figure 1-121** Remove the control-panel assembly



## Step 2: Remove the keyboard (M630z only)

If your product does not have a keyboard, go to [Step 3: Unpack the replacement control-panel assembly on page 101](#).

1. Place the control-panel assembly on a flat surface.

**Figure 1-122** Place the control-panel assembly on a flat surface

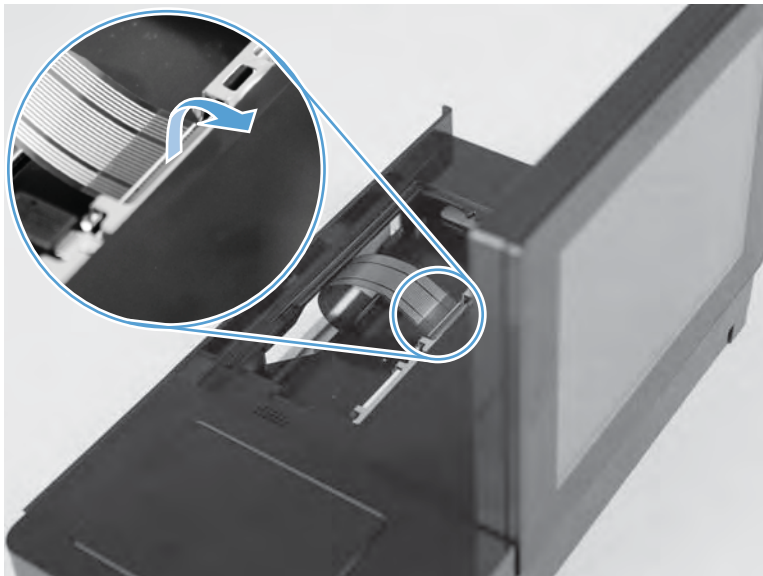


2. Open the hinged latch to release the flat cable.

**⚠ CAUTION:** Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when opening it.

**🔧 IMPORTANT:** This connector is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure a flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

**Figure 1-123** Release the flat cable



3. Disconnect the flat cable.

**Figure 1-124** Disconnect the flat cable



4. Tilt the screen down until it lays flat.

**Figure 1-125** Tilt the screen down





5. Slide the keyboard tray all of the way out of the control panel until it stops.

**Figure 1-126** Slide the keyboard tray out



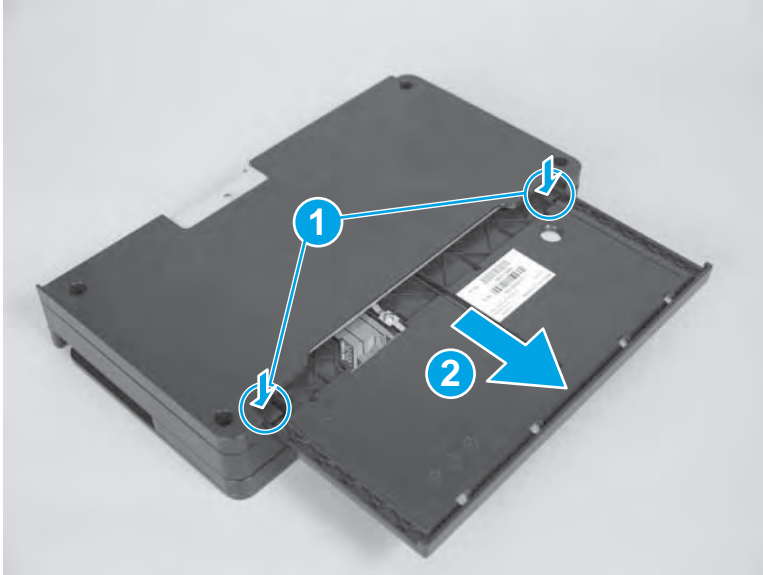
6. Turn the control panel face-down on the surface.

**Figure 1-127** Turn the control panel face-down



7. Release and hold two tabs (callout 1) while sliding the keyboard tray away from the control panel (callout 2) to remove it.

**Figure 1-128** Remove the keyboard



### Step 3: Unpack the replacement control-panel assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

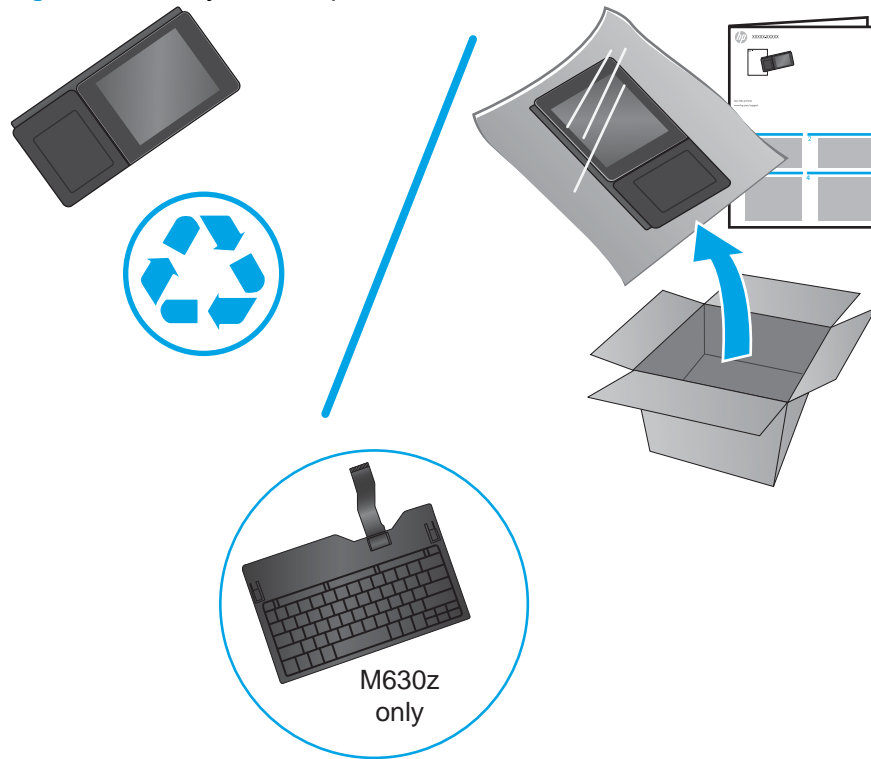
[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

---


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

---

**Figure 1-129** Recycle and unpack



---

 **NOTE:** The keyboard is not included with the replacement control-panel kit.

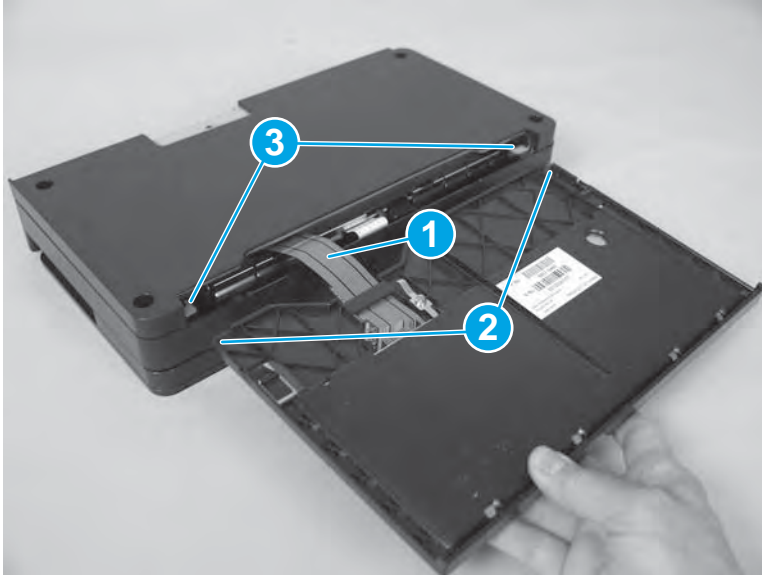
---

## Step 4: Install the keyboard (M630z only)

If your product does not have a keyboard, go to [Step 5: Install the control-panel assembly on page 105](#).

1. Turn the keyboard tray upside down, and then position the flat cable (callout 1) inside the tray cavity. Align the edges of the tray (callout 2) with the slots in the control panel (callout 3).

**Figure 1-130** Align the edges of the tray with the slots in the control panel



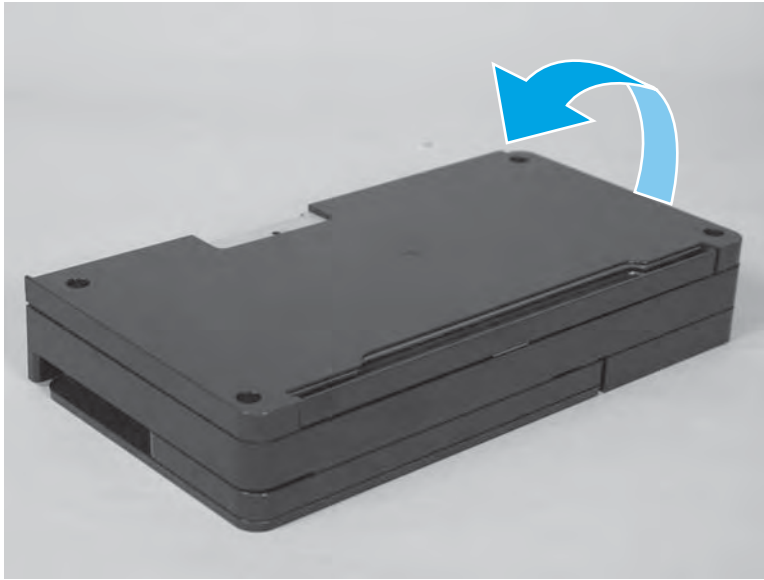
2. Slide the keyboard tray all the way into the control panel.

**Figure 1-131** Slide the keyboard tray in



3. Turn the control panel face-up.

**Figure 1-132** Turn the control panel face-up



4. Tilt the screen up.

**Figure 1-133** Tilt the screen up



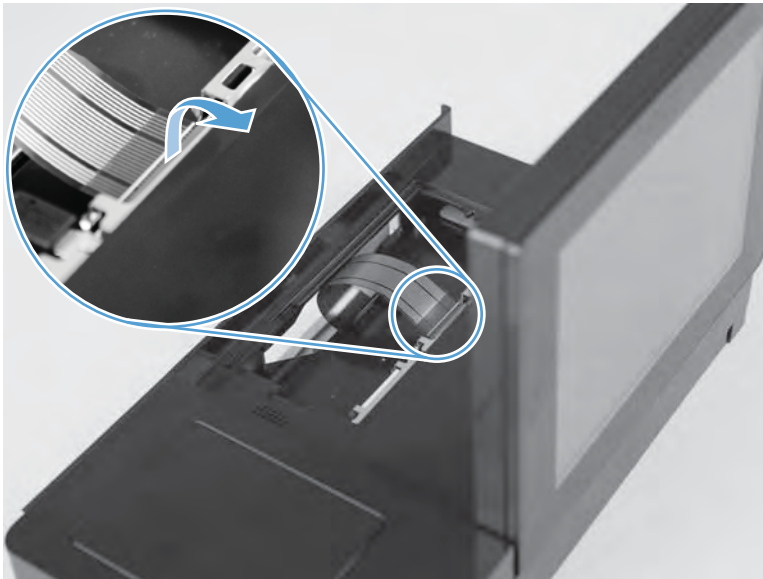
5. Open the hinged latch, and then position the flat cable in the connector.

---

**⚠ CAUTION:** Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when opening it.

---

**Figure 1-134** Position the flat cable in the connector



6. Use a finger to carefully close the latch to lock the flat cable into position.

---

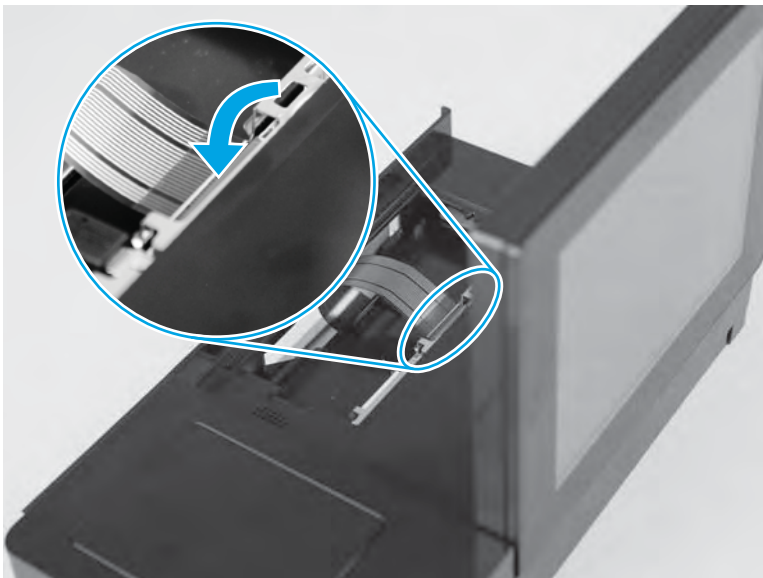
**⚠ CAUTION:** Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when closing it.

---

**📌 IMPORTANT:** This connector is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure a flat cable. When the flat cable is reinstalled, fully insert the flat cable in the connector, and then close the hinged retainer to lock the flat cable into the connector and provide proper electrical contact. If the flat cable is not locked into the connector, no electrical contact will occur.

---

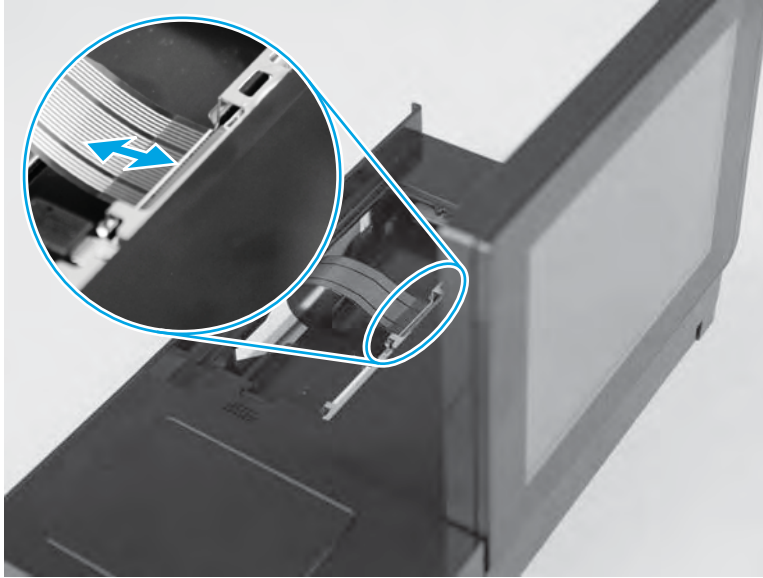
**Figure 1-135** Close the latch to lock the flat cable into position



7. Slightly pull on the flat cable to verify that it is securely fastened in the connector.

**⚠ CAUTION:** Be careful. Do not use full force to pull on the flat cable. A slight pull on the cable is sufficient to verify that it is securely fastened.

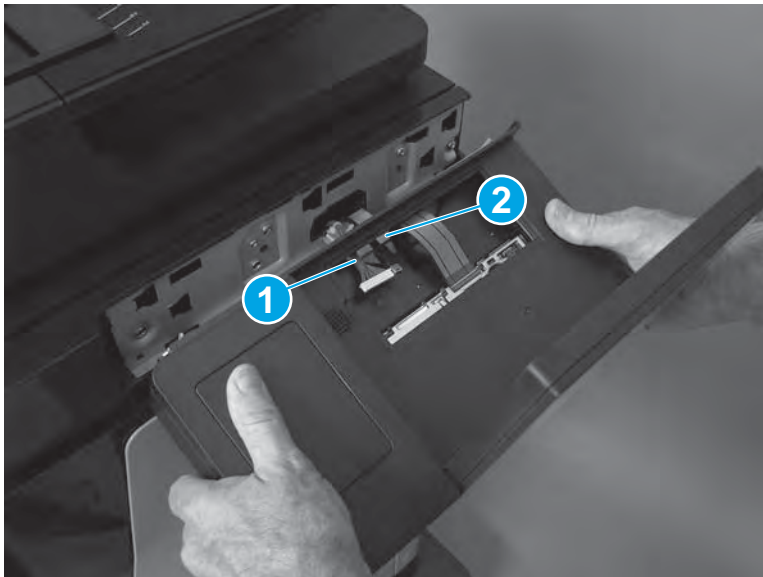
**Figure 1-136** Verify that the cable is securely fastened in the connector



### Step 5: Install the control-panel assembly

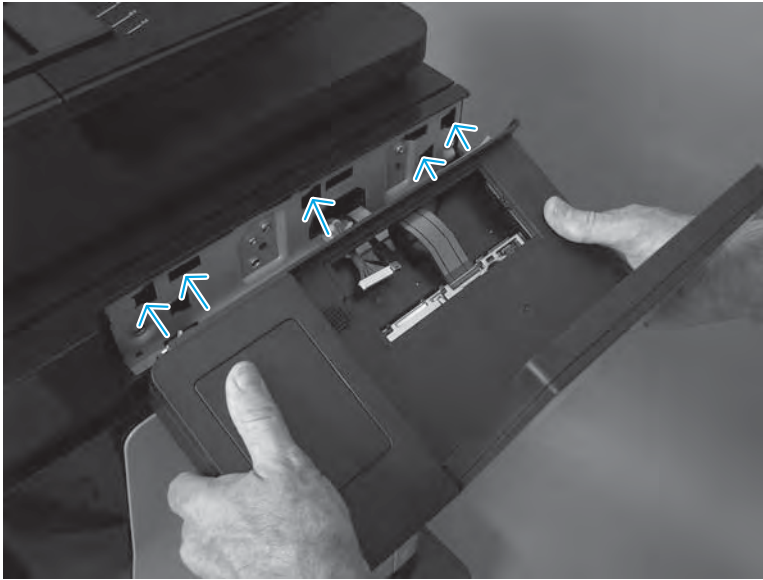
1. Insert the cable and wire harness (callout 1) into the opening at the back of the control panel (callout 2).

**Figure 1-137** Install the cable and wire harness



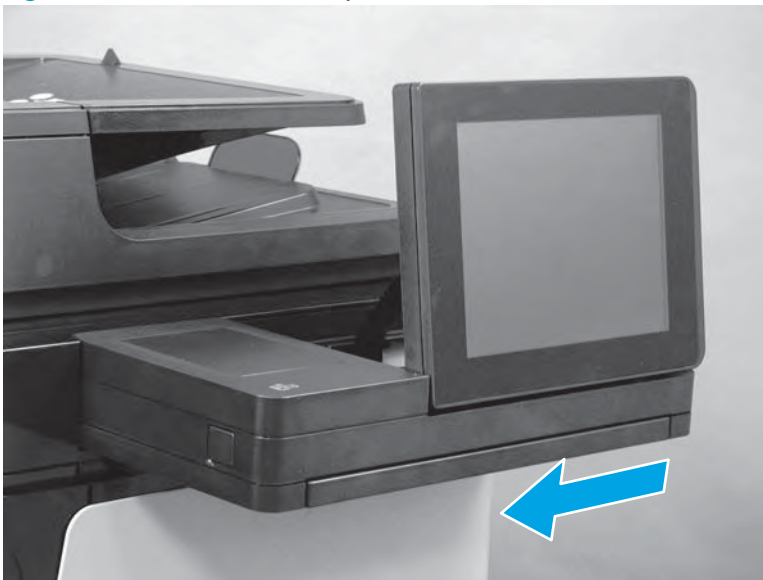
2. Insert the tabs on the control panel into the slots on the product.

**Figure 1-138** Insert the tabs on the control panel into the slots



3. Slide the control panel toward the left door to secure it to the product.

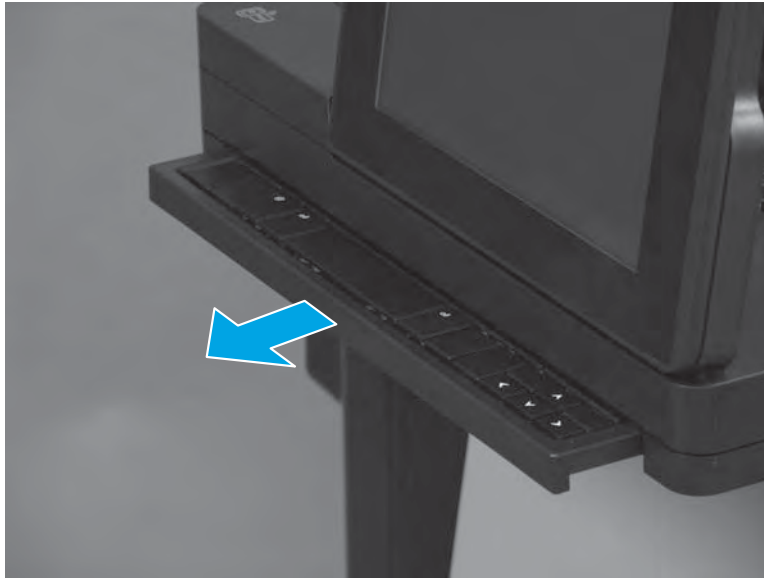
**Figure 1-139** Slide the control panel to the left





4. **M630z only:** Slide the keyboard about halfway out of the product.

**Figure 1-140** Slide the keyboard out




5. Connect two connectors.

**CAUTION:** To avoid damaging the black USB cable, make sure that the USB symbol (⚡) on the connector at the end of the cable is facing up before installing it in the control panel.

**Figure 1-141** Connect two connectors

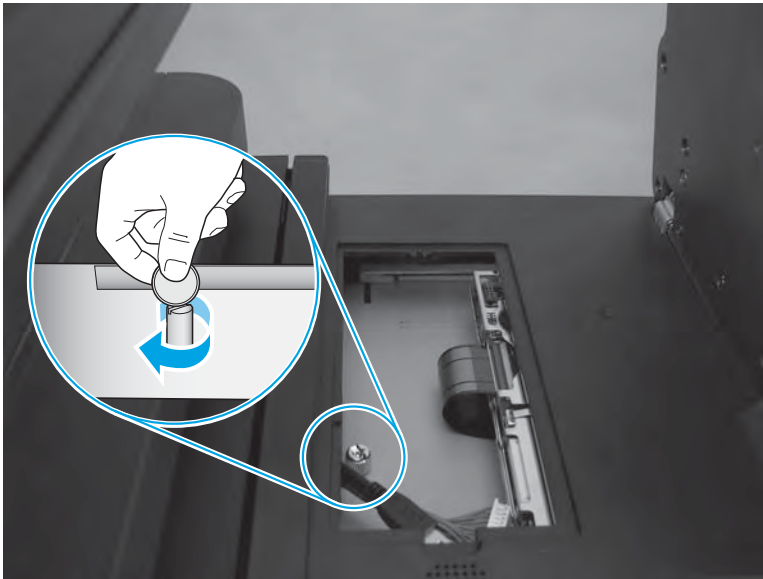


6. Install the screw.

 **TIP:** Use the edge of a coin to tighten the screw.

---

**Figure 1-142** Install the screw



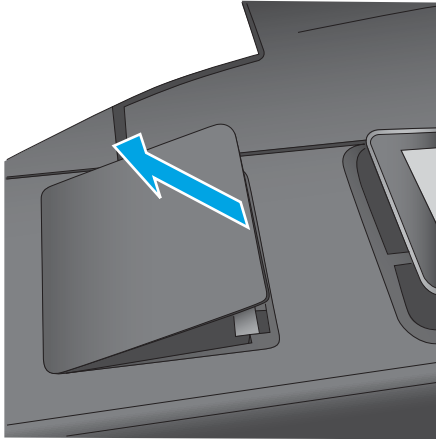
7. Install the cover.

**Figure 1-143** Install the cover



8. **Optional step:** If a device was removed from the Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP), open the HIP cover on the replacement control panel, and then reinstall the device.

**Figure 1-144** Install third party devices



9. Do the following steps:
  - a. Reconnect any removed interface cables.
  - b. Plug in the power cord.
  - c. Turn on the product.
  - d. **M630z only:** Check to make sure that the keyboard functions correctly. If it does not, make sure that the flat cable is installed correctly in the connector.

**Figure 1-145** Test the keyboard



## Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling.)

## Keyboard assembly (M630z only)

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the control panel](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the keyboard](#)
- [Step 3: Unpack the replacement keyboard assembly](#)
- [Step 4: Install the keyboard](#)
- [Step 5: Install the control-panel assembly](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides instructions about removing and replacing the keyboard assembly.

### Before servicing

To order a replacement assembly, use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product. To order the kit, go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts)

Keyboard assembly part numbers	
<b>5851-5380</b>	US keyboard assembly kit with instruction guide
<b>5851-5008</b>	UK keyboard assembly kit with instruction guide

### Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

## Step 1: Remove the control panel

1. Do the following:
  - a. Turn off the product.
  - b. Disconnect the power cord.

**⚠ WARNING!** Turn the product off, wait five seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

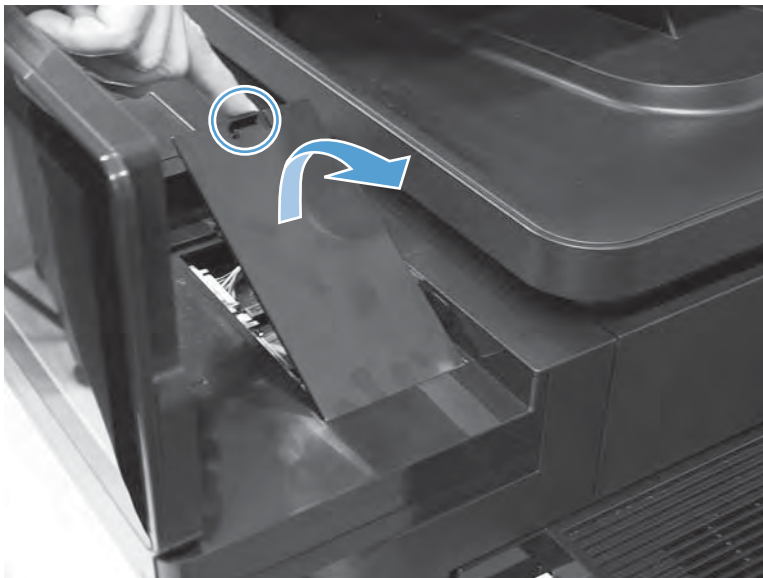
2. Tilt the control panel up.

**Figure 1-146** Tilt the control panel up



3. Release one tab, and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-147** Remove the cover



4. Slide the keyboard about halfway out of the product.

**Figure 1-148** Slide the keyboard out




5. Disconnect two connectors.

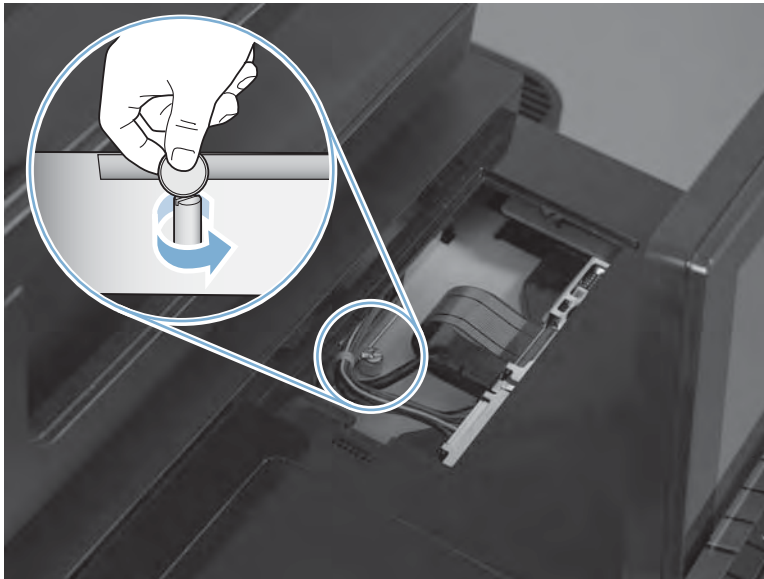
**Figure 1-149** Disconnect two connectors



6. Remove one screw.

 **TIP:** Use the edge of a coin to loosen the screw.

**Figure 1-150** Remove one screw



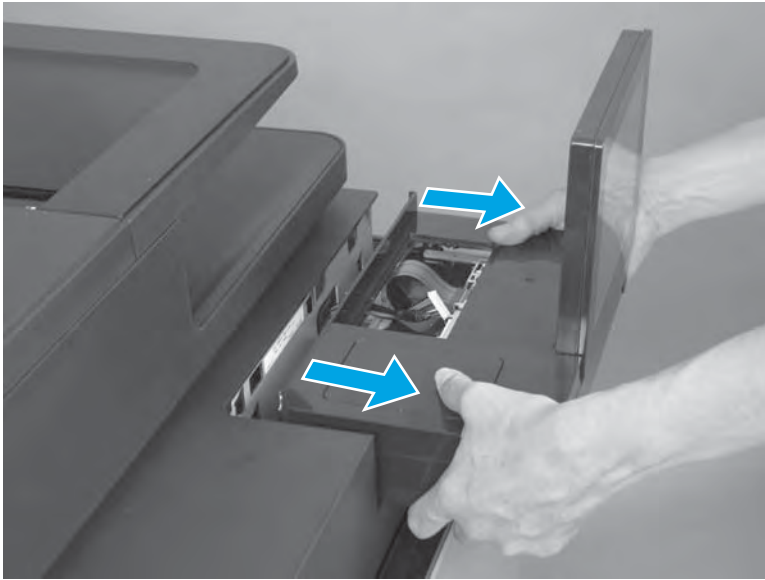
7. Slide the control panel toward the right door.

**Figure 1-151** Slide the control panel to the right



8. Slide the control panel towards the front of the product to remove it.

**Figure 1-152** Remove the control-panel assembly





## Step 2: Remove the keyboard

1. Place the control-panel assembly on a flat surface.

**Figure 1-153** Place the control-panel assembly on a flat surface

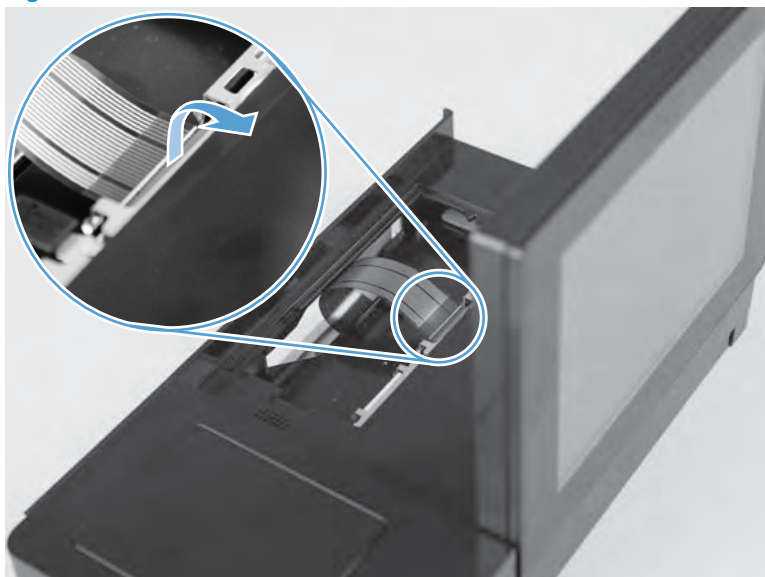


2. Open the hinged latch to release the flat cable.

**CAUTION:** Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when opening it.

**IMPORTANT:** This connector is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure a flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

**Figure 1-154** Release the flat cable



3. Disconnect the flat cable.

**Figure 1-155** Disconnect the flat cable



4. Tilt the screen down until it lays flat.

**Figure 1-156** Tilt the screen down



5. Slide the keyboard tray all of the way out of the control panel until it stops.

**Figure 1-157** Slide the keyboard tray out



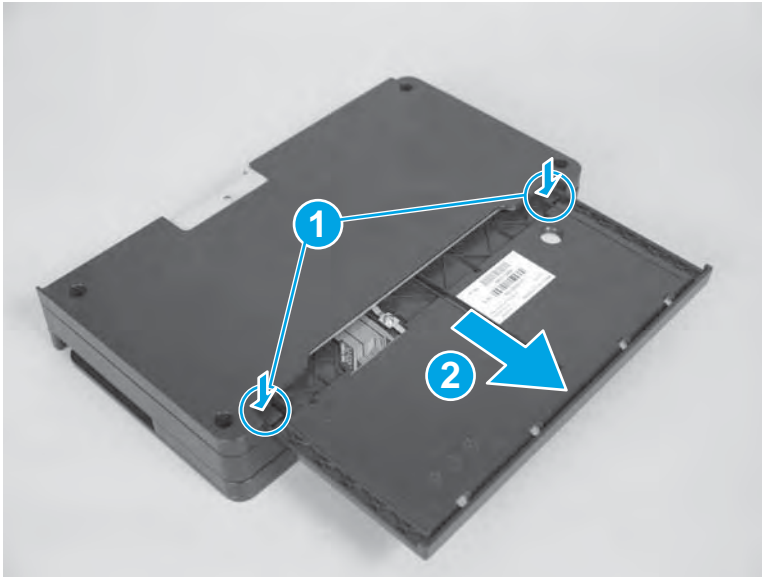
6. Turn the control panel face-down on the surface.

**Figure 1-158** Turn the control panel face-down



7. Release and hold two tabs (callout 1) while sliding the keyboard tray away from the control panel (callout 2) to remove it.

**Figure 1-159** Remove the keyboard




### Step 3: Unpack the replacement keyboard assembly

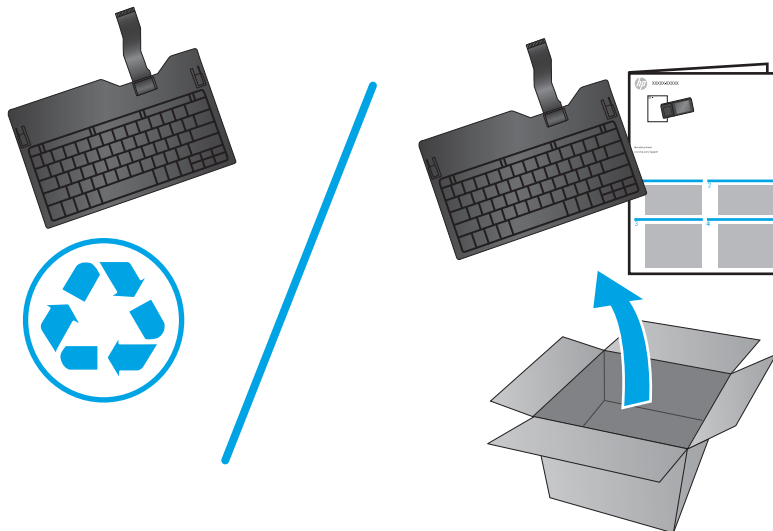
Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling)

---

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

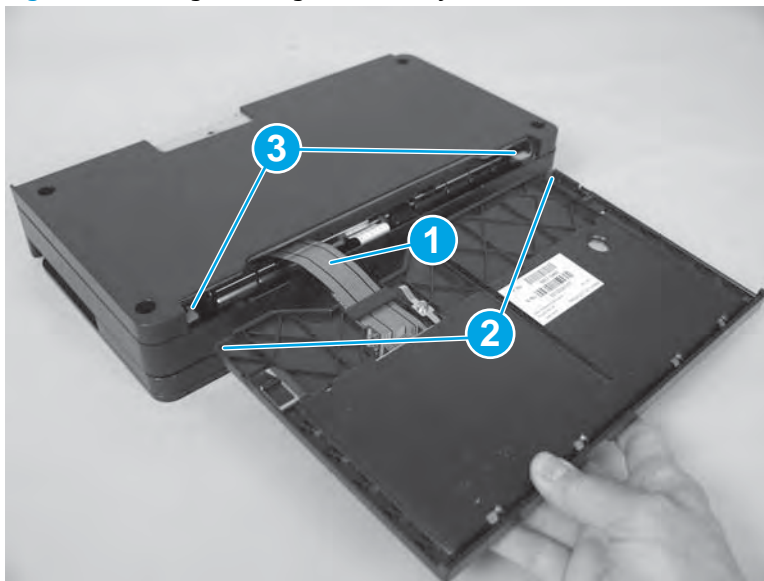
---



## Step 4: Install the keyboard

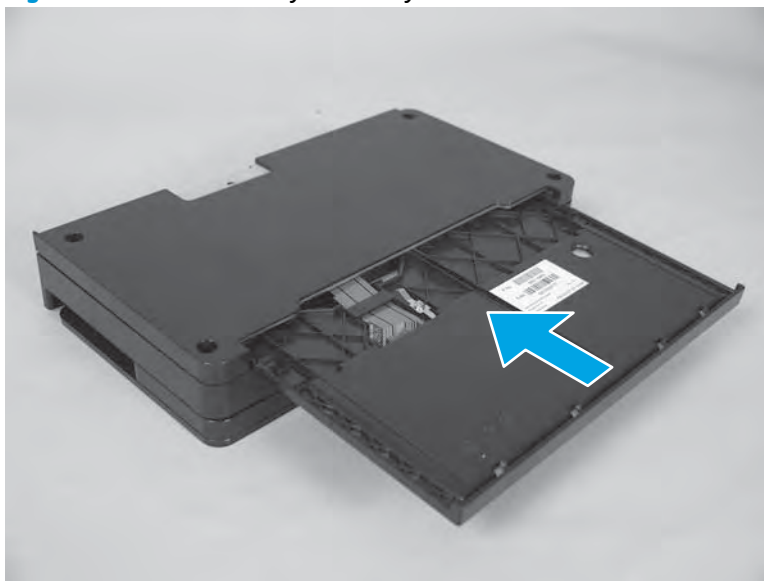
1. Turn the keyboard tray upside down, and then position the flat cable (callout 1) inside the tray cavity. Align the edges of the tray (callout 2) with the slots in the control panel (callout 3).

**Figure 1-160** Align the edges of the tray with the slots in the control panel



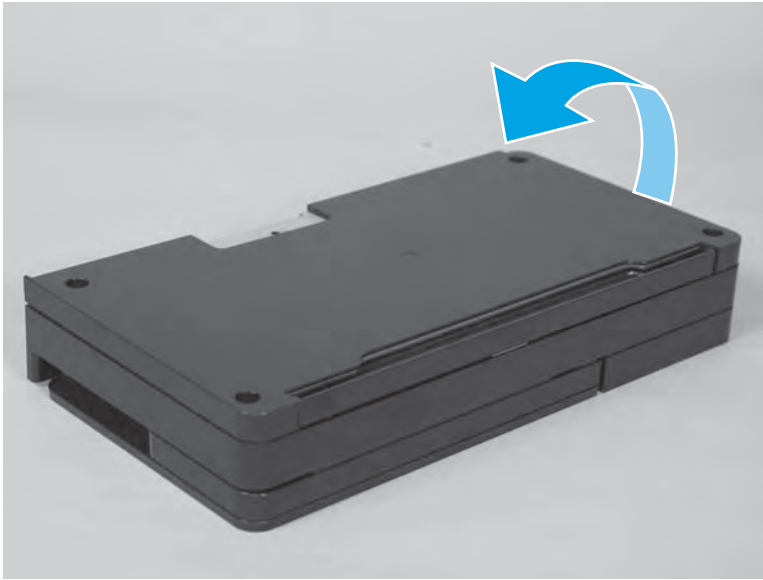
2. Slide the keyboard tray all the way into the control panel.

**Figure 1-161** Slide the keyboard tray in



3. Turn the control panel face-up.

**Figure 1-162** Turn the control panel face-up



4. Tilt the screen up.

**Figure 1-163** Tilt the screen up



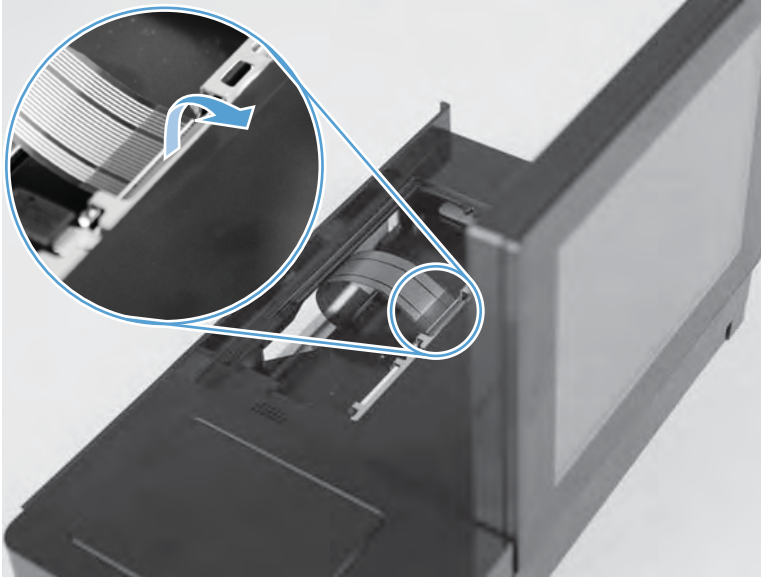
5. Open the hinged latch, and then position the flat cable in the connector.

---

**CAUTION:** Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when opening it.

---

**Figure 1-164** Position the flat cable in the connector



6. Use a finger to carefully close the latch to lock the flat cable into position.

---

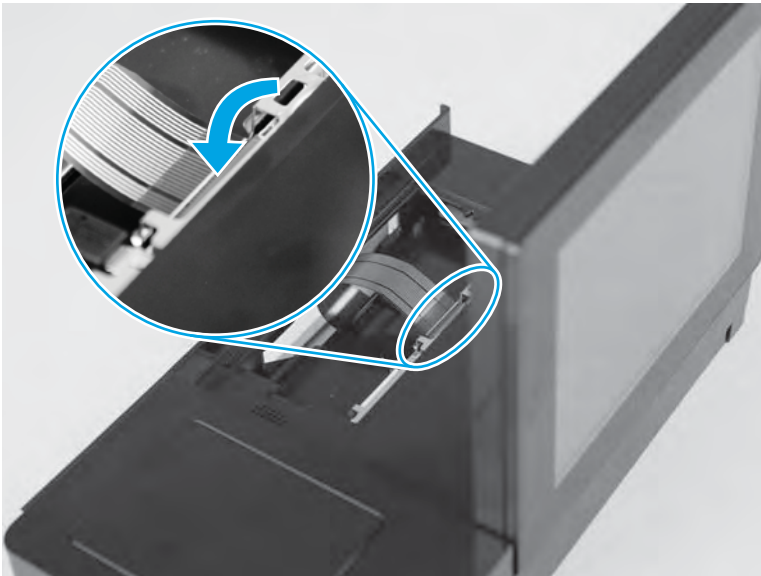
**CAUTION:** Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when closing it.

---

**IMPORTANT:** This connector is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure a flat cable. When the flat cable is reinstalled, fully insert the flat cable in the connector, and then close the hinged retainer to lock the flat cable into the connector and provide proper electrical contact. If the flat cable is not locked into the connector, no electrical contact will occur.

---

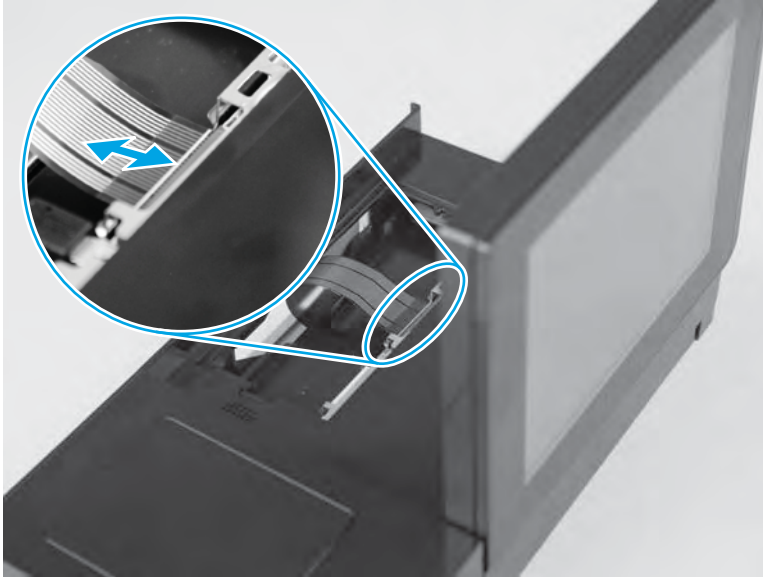
**Figure 1-165** Close the latch to lock the flat cable into position



7. Slightly pull on the flat cable to verify that it is securely fastened in the connector.

**⚠ CAUTION:** Be careful. Do not use full force to pull on the flat cable. A slight pull on the cable is sufficient to verify that it is securely fastened.

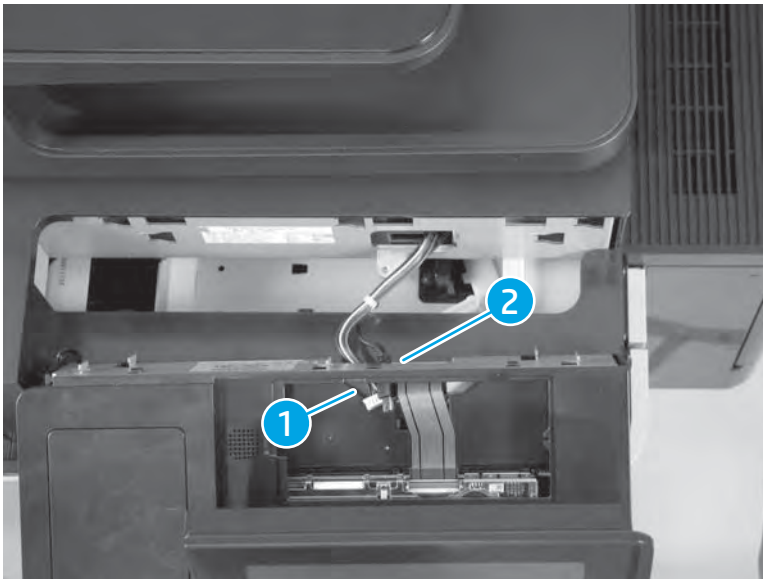
**Figure 1-166** Verify that the cable is securely fastened in the connector



### Step 5: Install the control-panel assembly

1. Insert the cable and wire harness (callout 1) into the opening at the back of the control panel (callout 2).

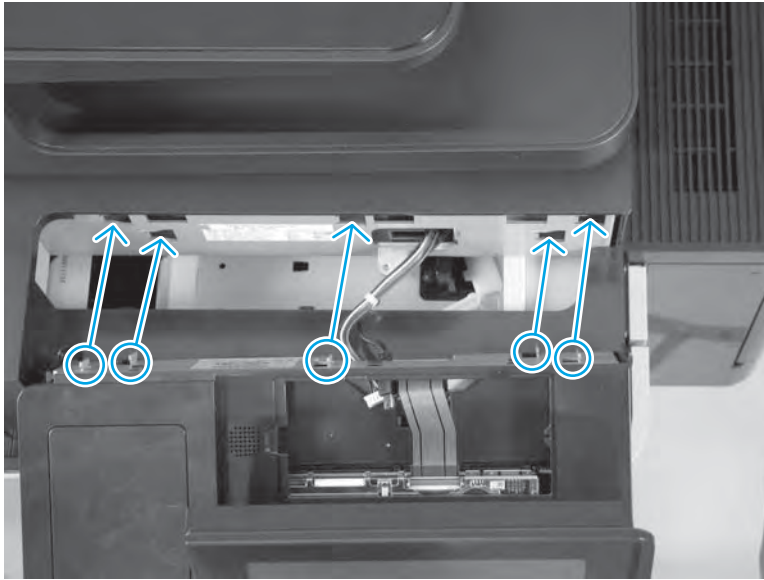
**Figure 1-167** Install the cable and wire harness





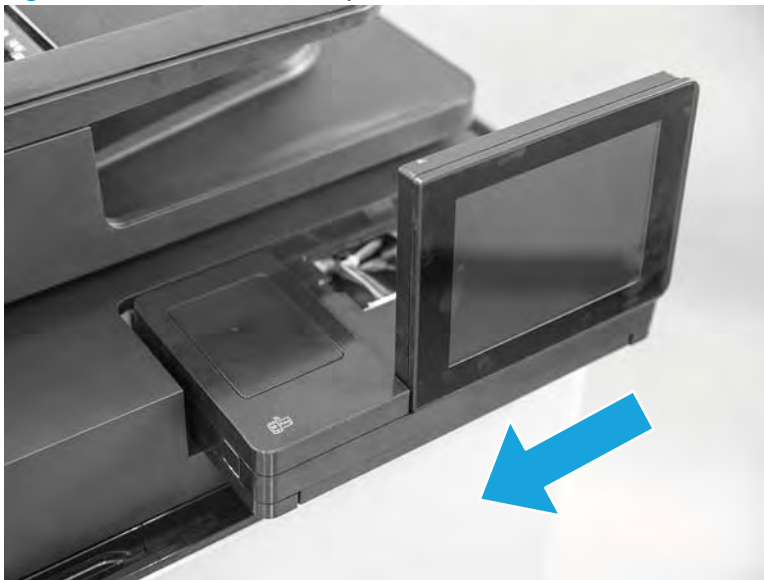
2. Insert the tabs on the control panel into the slots on the product.

**Figure 1-168** Insert the tabs on the control panel into the slots



3. Slide the control panel toward the left door to secure it to the product.

**Figure 1-169** Slide the control panel to the left



4. Slide the keyboard about halfway out of the product.

**Figure 1-170** Slide the keyboard out




5. Connect two connectors.

**CAUTION:** To avoid damaging the black USB cable, make sure that the USB symbol (🖱️) on the connector at the end of the cable is facing up before installing it in the control panel.

**Figure 1-171** Connect two connectors

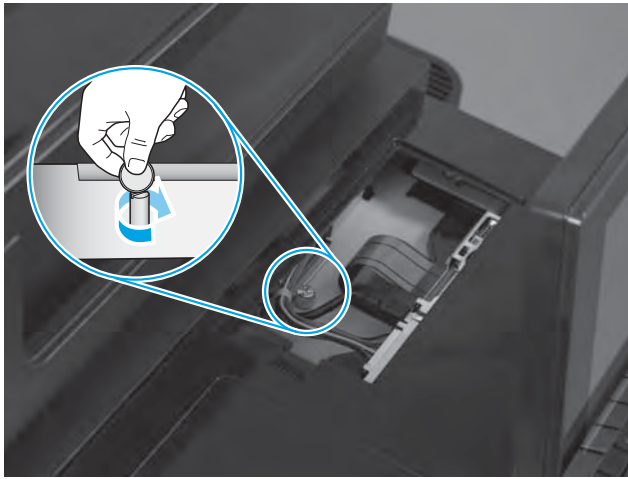


**6.** Install the screw.

 **TIP:** Use the edge of a coin to tighten the screw.

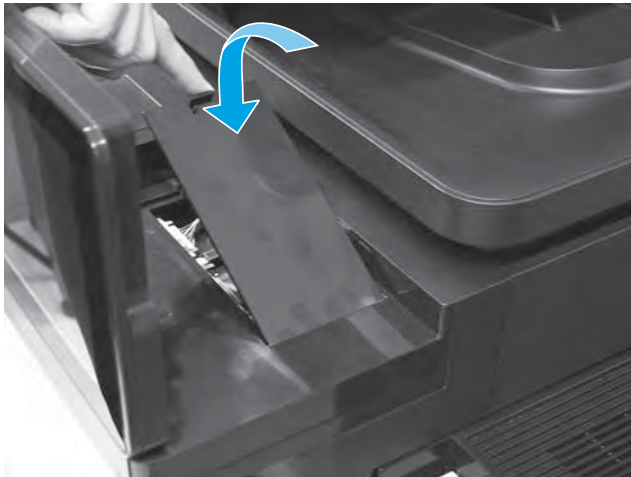
---

**Figure 1-172** Install the screw



**7.** Install the cover.

**Figure 1-173** Install the cover



**8.** Do the following steps:

- a.** Reconnect any removed interface cables.
- b.** Plug in the power cord.
- c.** Turn on the product.

- d. Check to make sure that the keyboard functions correctly. If it does not, make sure that the flat cable is installed correctly in the connector.

**Figure 1-174** Test the keyboard



## Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling.)

## Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement rollers](#)
- [Step 3: Install the Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers.

### Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

---

Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers kit part number	
---	--

---

<b>B3G84-67906</b>	Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers with instruction guide
--------------------	--

---

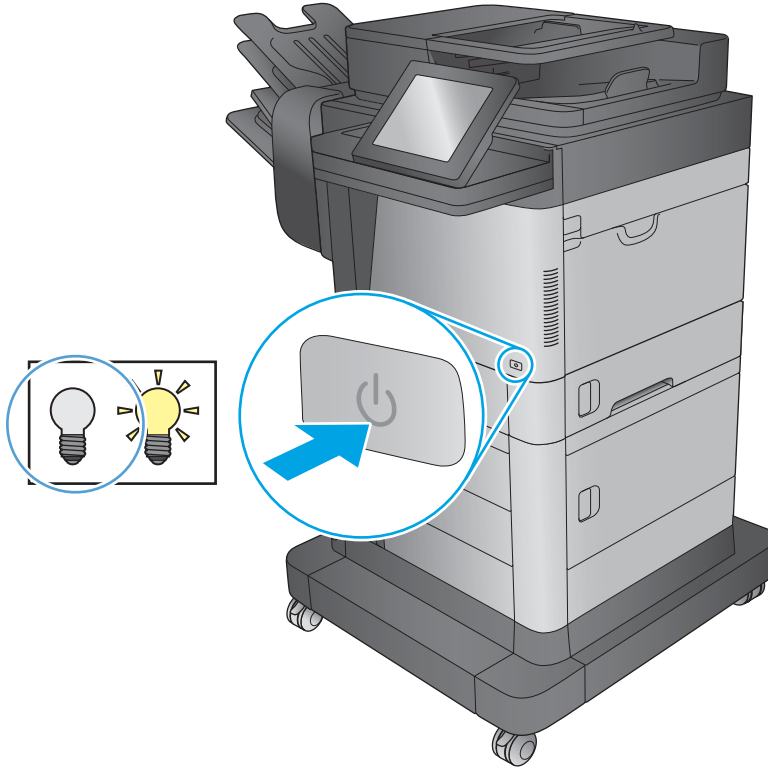
### Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers

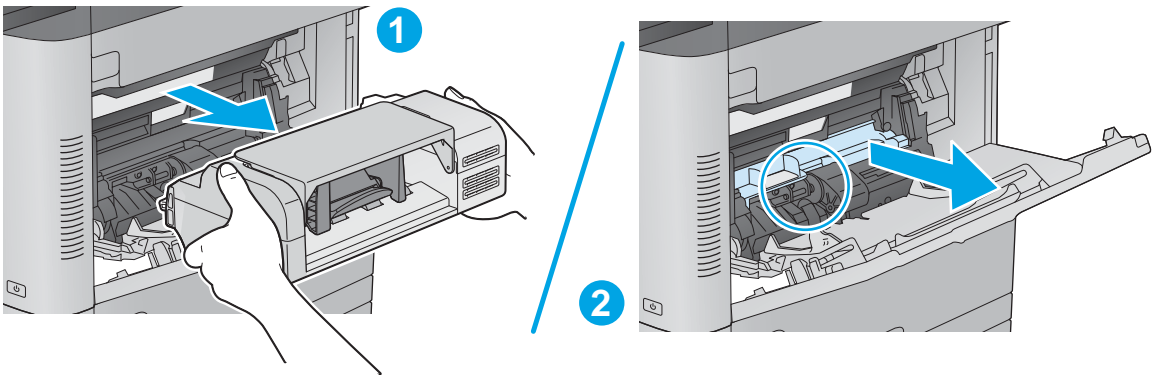
1. Use the power switch to turn the product power off.

**Figure 1-175** Turn the power off



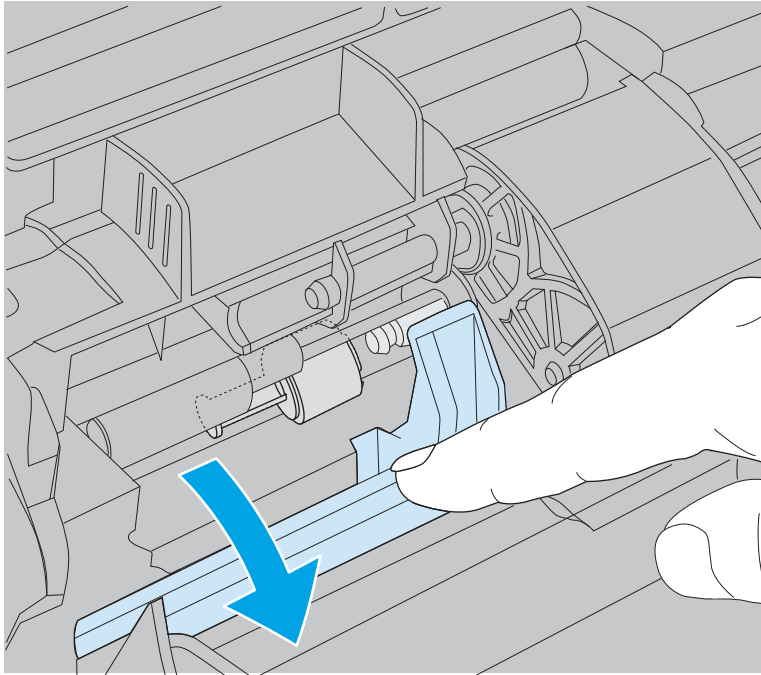
2. Remove the envelope feeder (callout 1), or open Tray 1 and then remove the environment cover (callout 2) depending on product configuration.

**Figure 1-176** Remove the envelope feeder or the environment cover



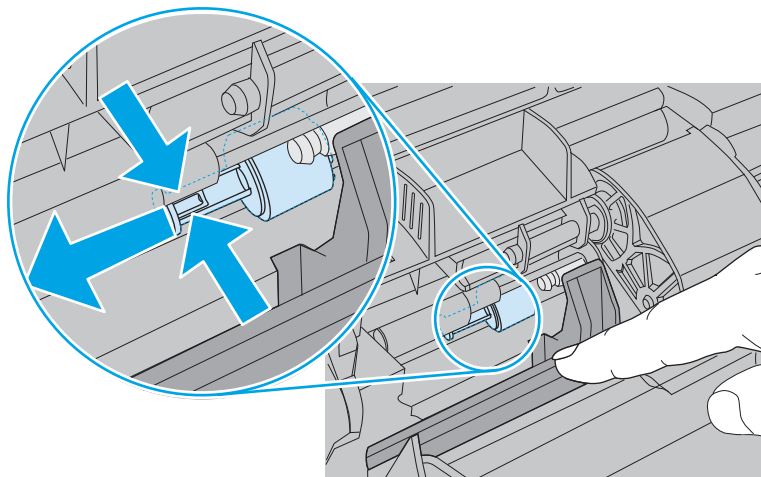
3. Open the separation roller cover.

**Figure 1-177** Open the separation roller cover



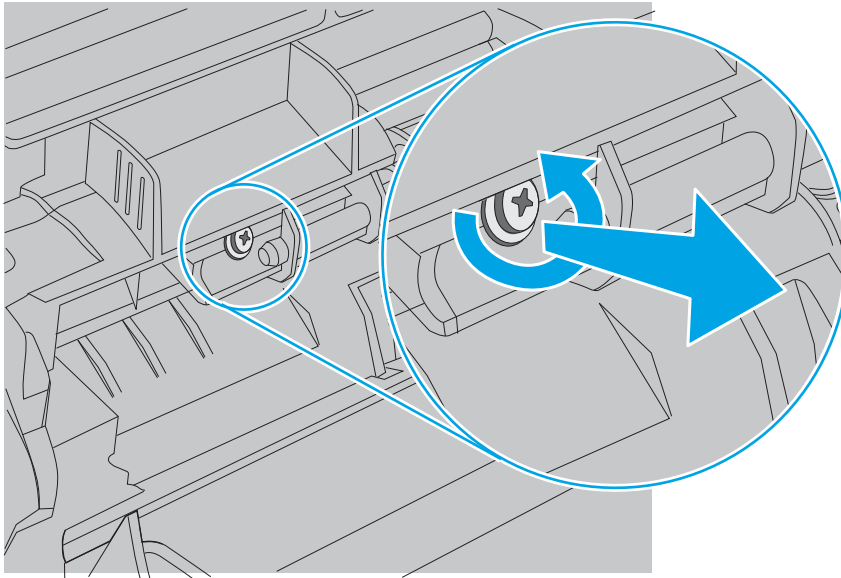
4. Release the separation roller locking tab, and then slide the roller off of the shaft to remove it.

**Figure 1-178** Remove the separation roller



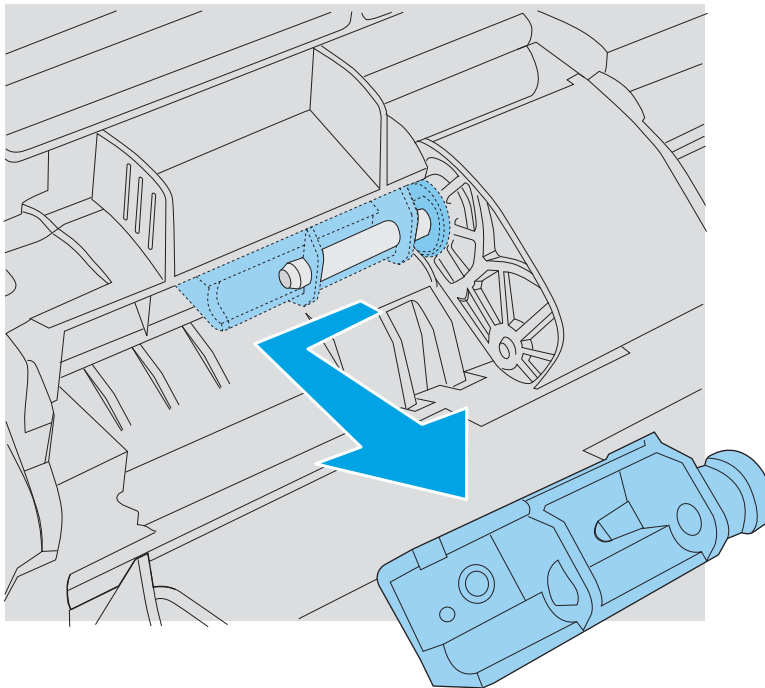
5. Remove one screw.

**Figure 1-179** Remove one screw



6. Slide the bushing off of the shaft.

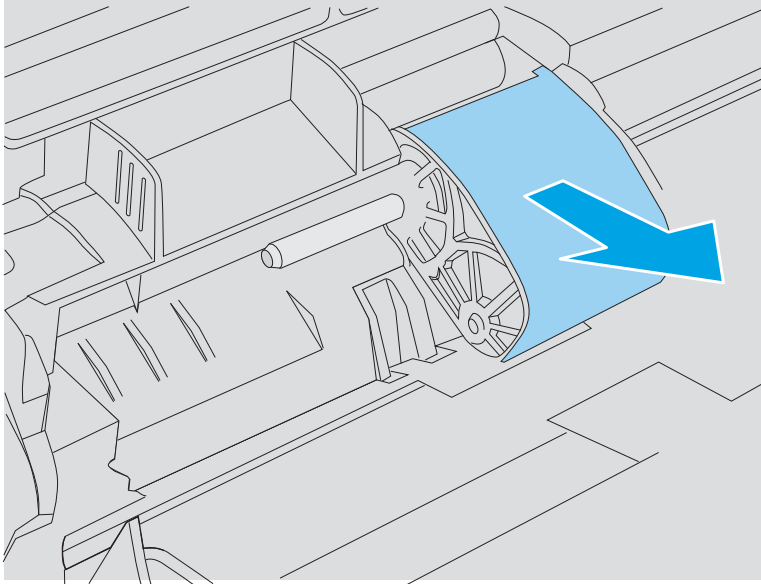
**Figure 1-180** Remove the bushing





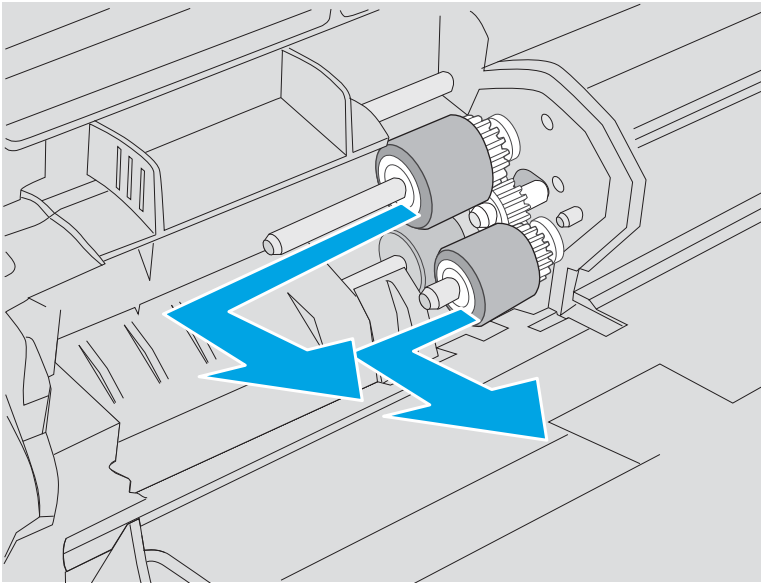
7. Remove the roller cover.

**Figure 1-181** Remove the roller cover



8. Remove the pickup and feed rollers.

**Figure 1-182** Remove the rollers



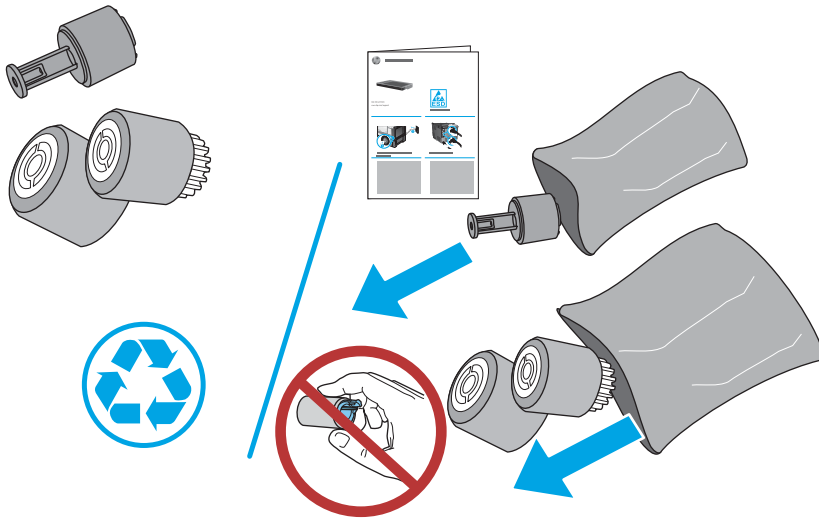
## Step 2: Unpack the replacement rollers

Unpack the replacement assemblies from the packaging.

**CAUTION:** Avoid touching the surface of the replacement rollers. Skin oils on the rollers can cause print-quality problems. Thoroughly wash your hands with soap and water to remove skin oils, and then completely dry them.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling)

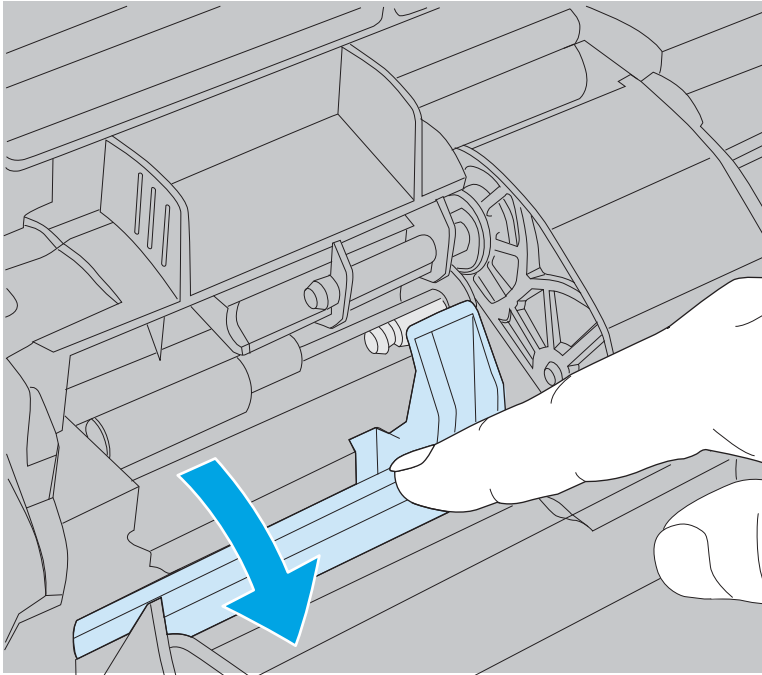
 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assemblies.



### Step 3: Install the Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers

1. Open the separation roller cover.

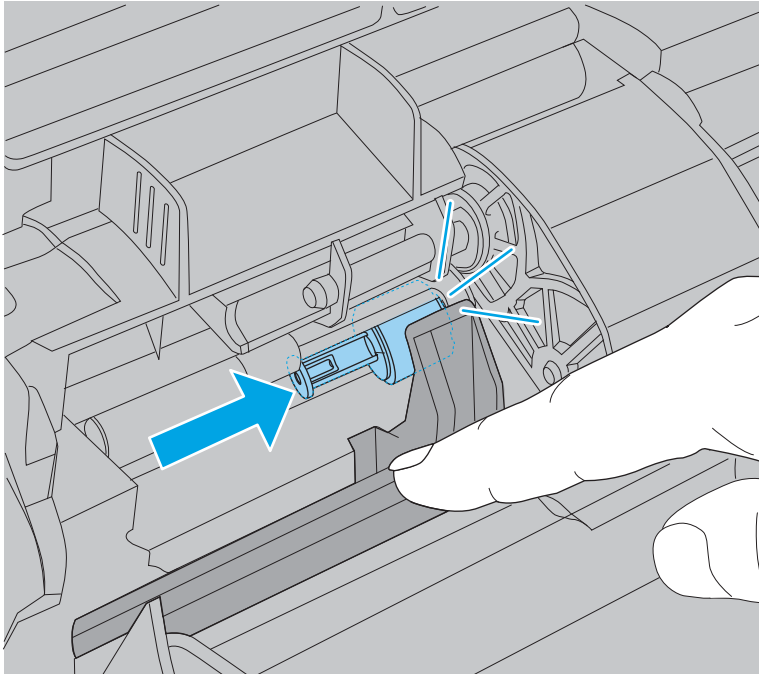
**Figure 1-183** Open the separation roller cover




2. Slide the roller onto the shaft to install it, and then close the cover.

 **TIP:** When the roller is fully installed, an audible click is heard.

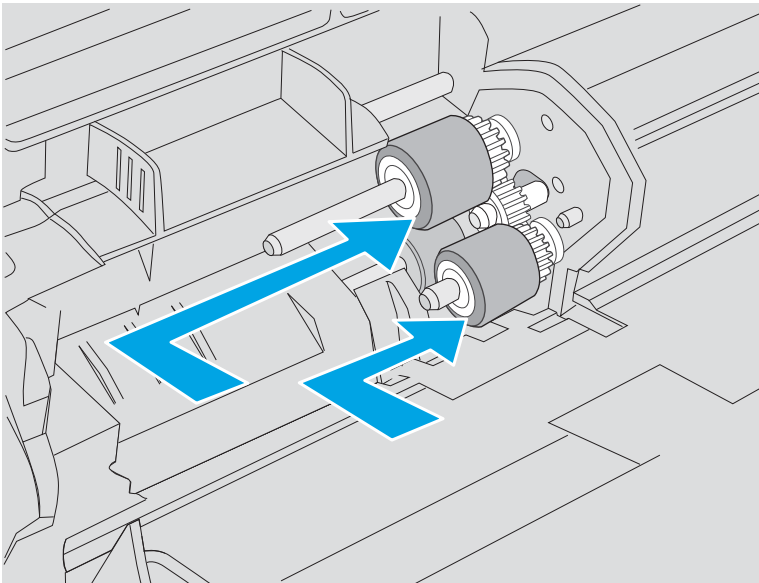
**Figure 1-184** Install the separation roller



3. Install the pickup and feed rollers.

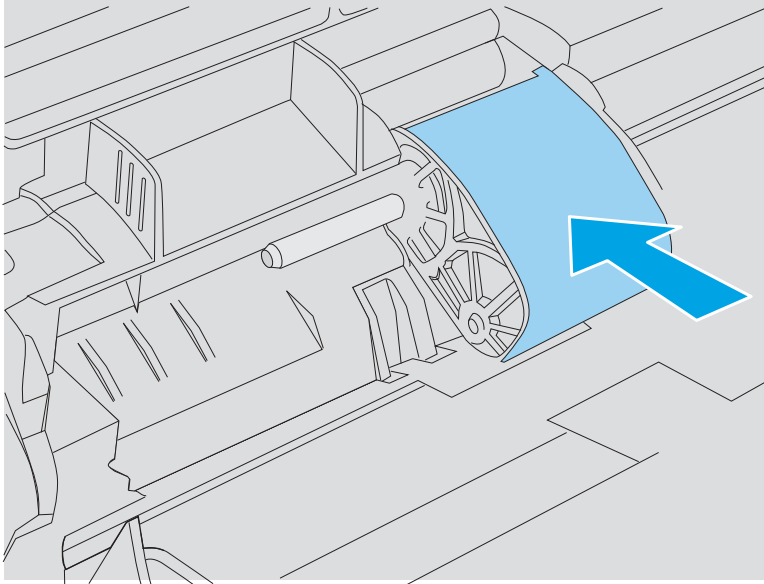
 **TIP:** Install the roller with the white gear on the lower shaft.

**Figure 1-185** Install the rollers



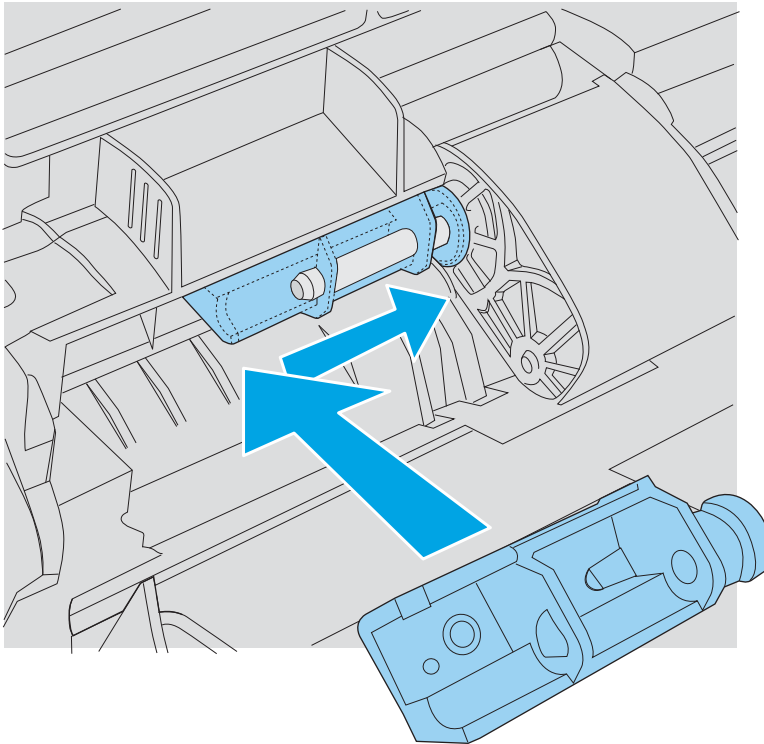
4. Install the roller cover.

**Figure 1-186** Install the roller cover



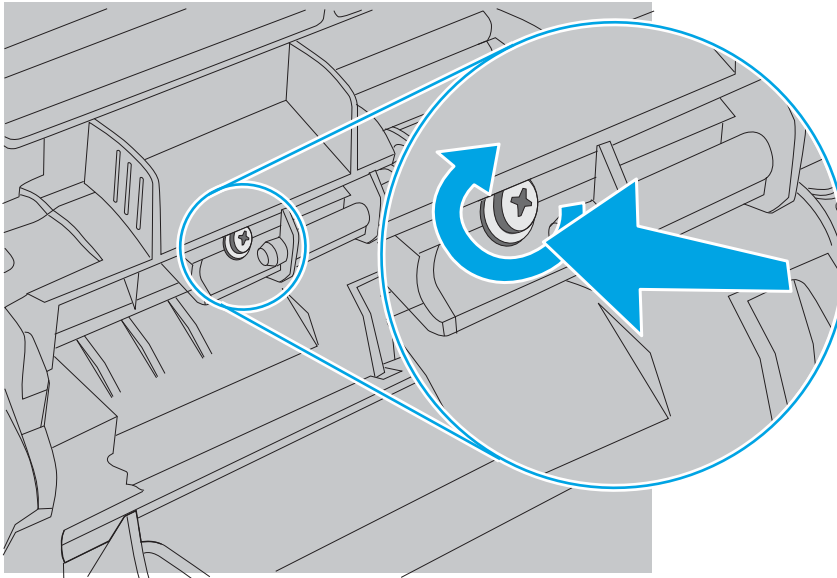
5. Slide the bushing on the shaft to install it.

**Figure 1-187** Install the bushing



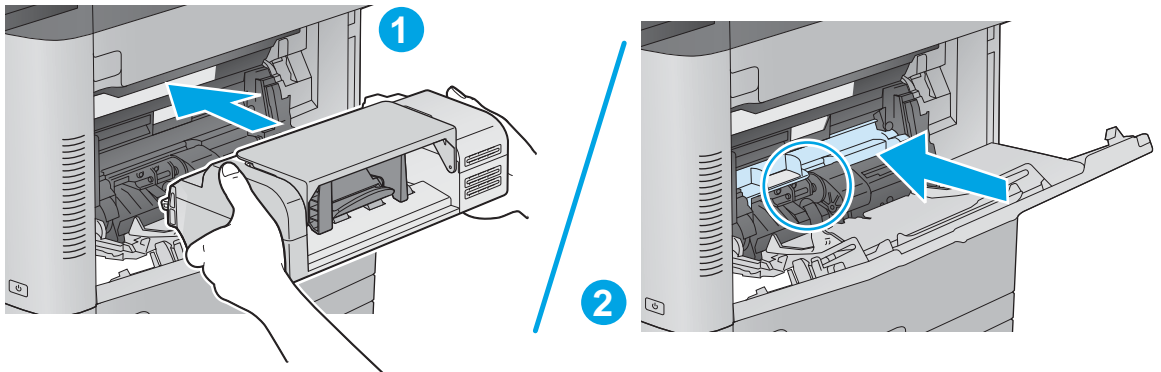
6. Install one screw.

**Figure 1-188** Install one screw



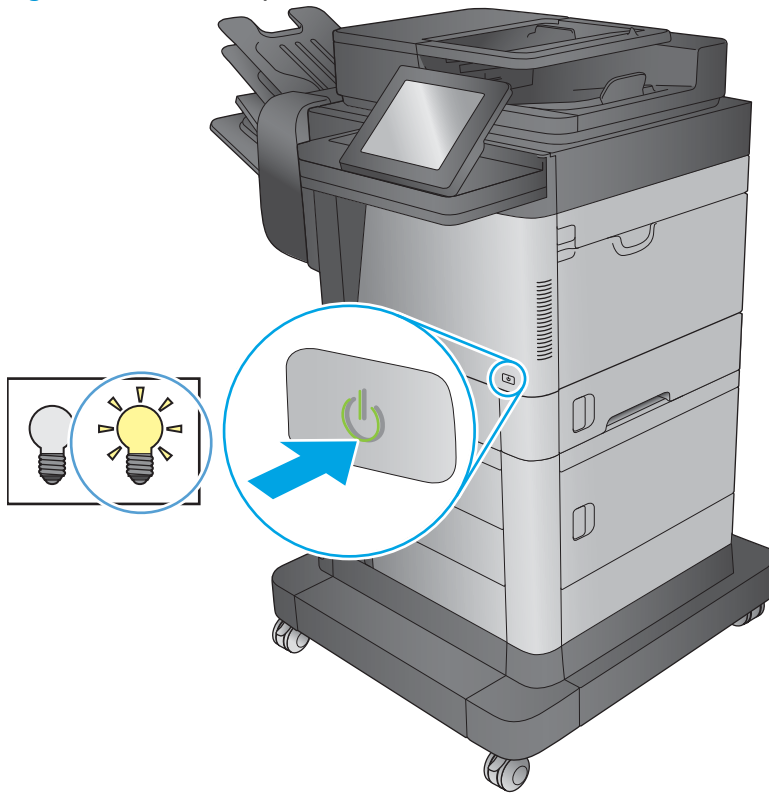
7. Install the envelope feeder (callout 1) *or*, open Tray 1 and then install the environment cover (callout 2) depending on product configuration.

**Figure 1-189** Install the envelope feeder or the environment cover



8. Use the power switch to turn the product power on.

**Figure 1-190** Turn the power on



## Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling.)

## Tray 2-5 pickup and feed rollers

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the Tray 2 - 5 pickup and feed rollers](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement rollers](#)
- [Step 3: Install the Tray 2 - 5 pickup and feed rollers](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the Tray 2 - X pickup and feed rollers.

### Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

---

Tray 2 - X pickup and feed rollers kit part number	
--	--

---

<b>B3G84-67905</b>
--------------------

Tray 2 - X pickup and rollers kit with instruction guide
--

---

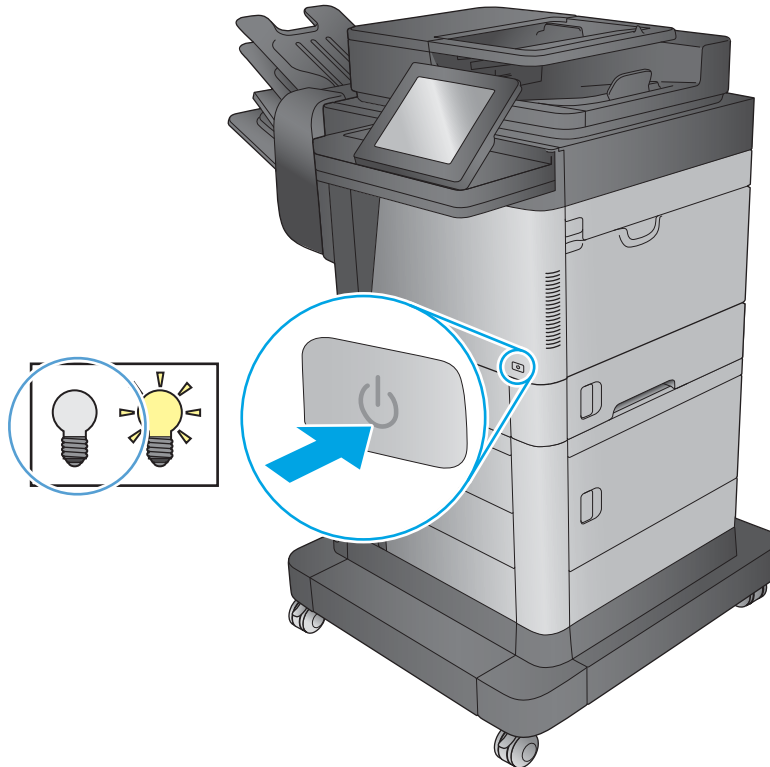
### Required tools

- No special tools are required to install this kit.

### Step 1: Remove the Tray 2 - 5 pickup and feed rollers

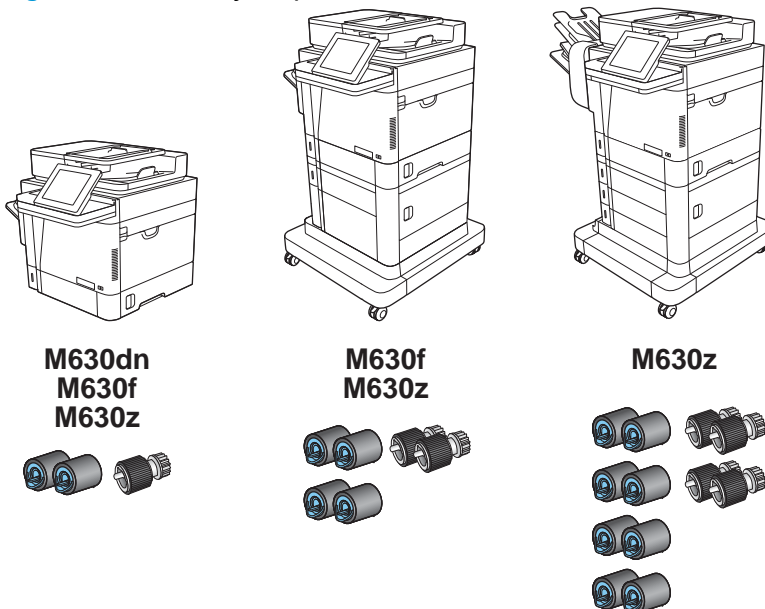
1. Use the power switch to turn the product power off.

**Figure 1-191** Turn the power off



2. The figures in this procedure show the 2,500-sheet high-capacity feeder, however the procedure for replacing the rollers is correct for all product models.

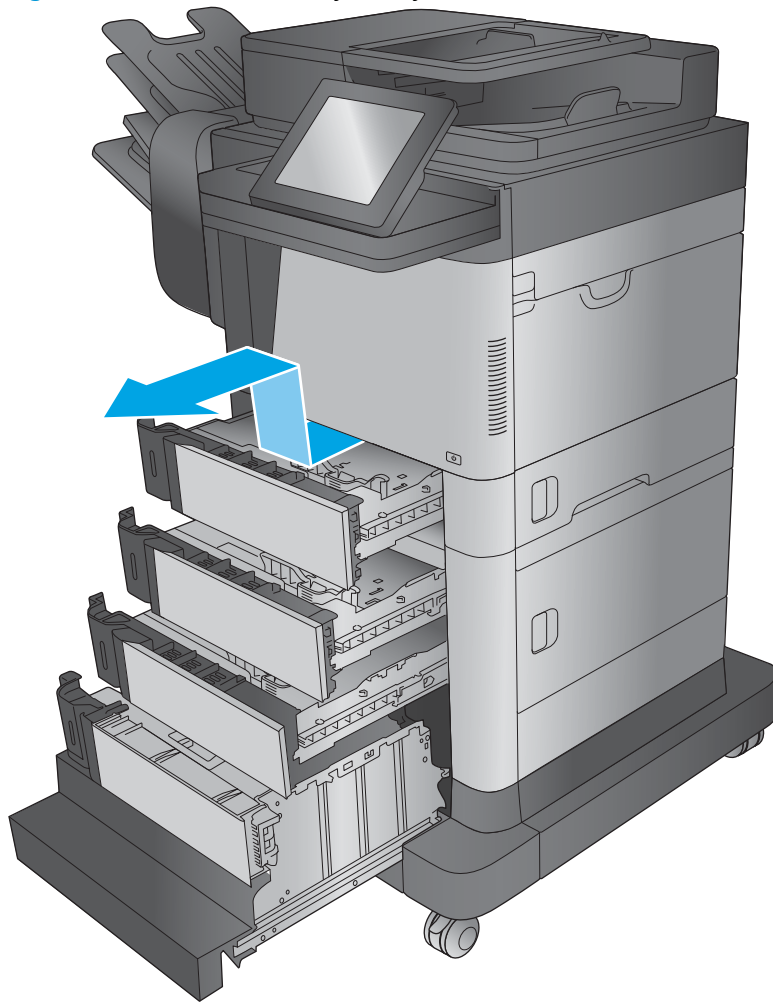
**Figure 1-192** Identify the product model





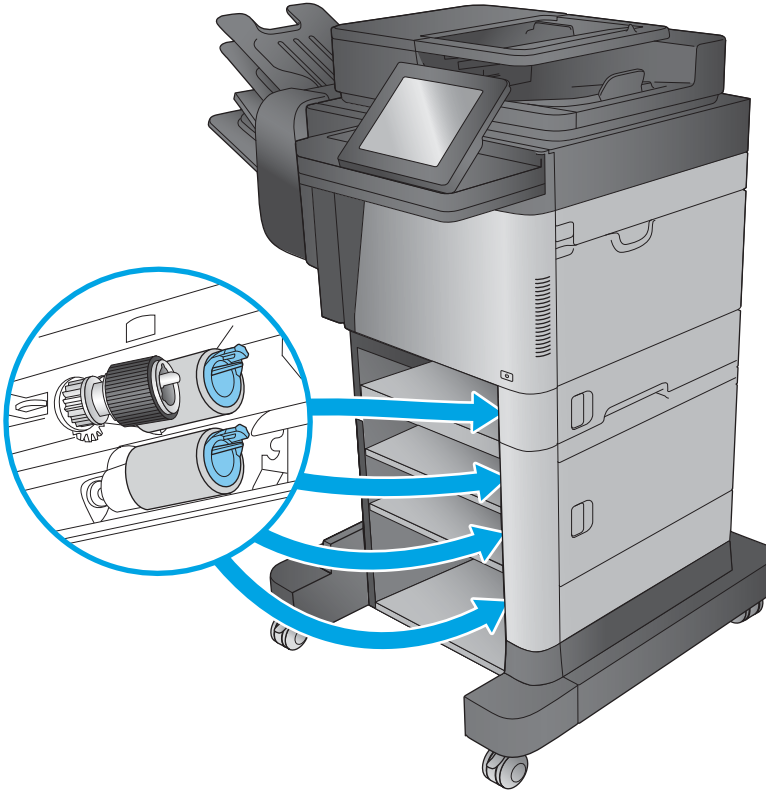
3. Remove the tray or trays.

**Figure 1-193** Remove the tray or trays



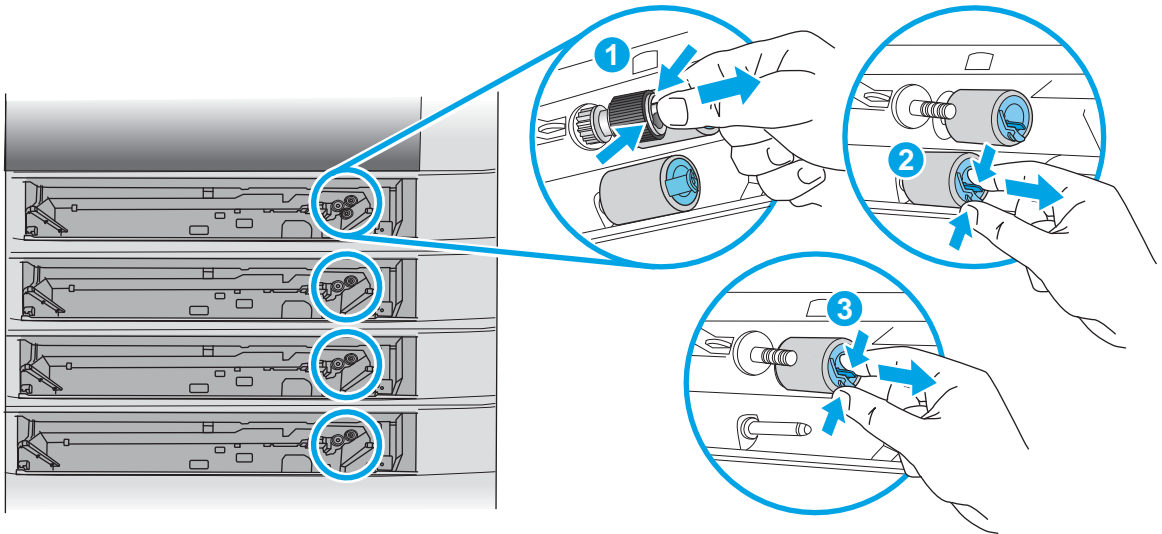
4. Locate the pickup and feed rollers.

**Figure 1-194** Locate the pickup and feed rollers



5. Pinch the tab on the pickup roller or feed roller to release it, and then slide the roller off of the shaft.

**Figure 1-195** Remove the rollers



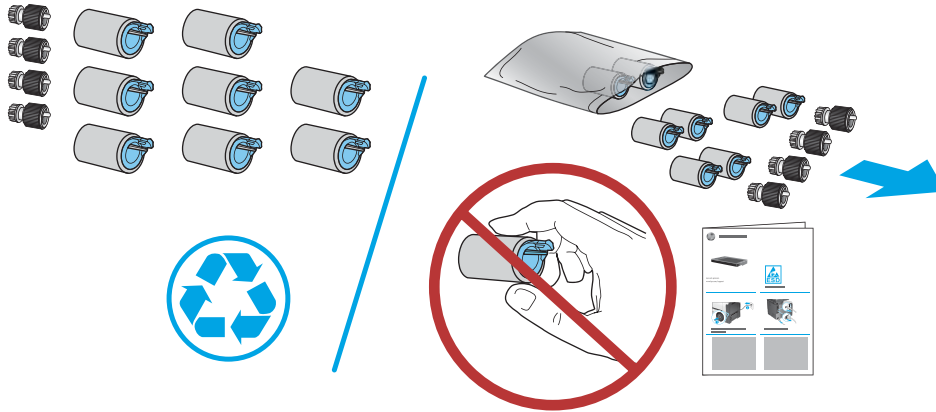
## Step 2: Unpack the replacement rollers

Unpack the replacement assemblies from the packaging.

**CAUTION:** Avoid touching the surface of the replacement rollers. Skin oils on the rollers can cause print-quality problems. Thoroughly wash your hands with soap and water to remove skin oils, and then completely dry them.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling)

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assemblies.

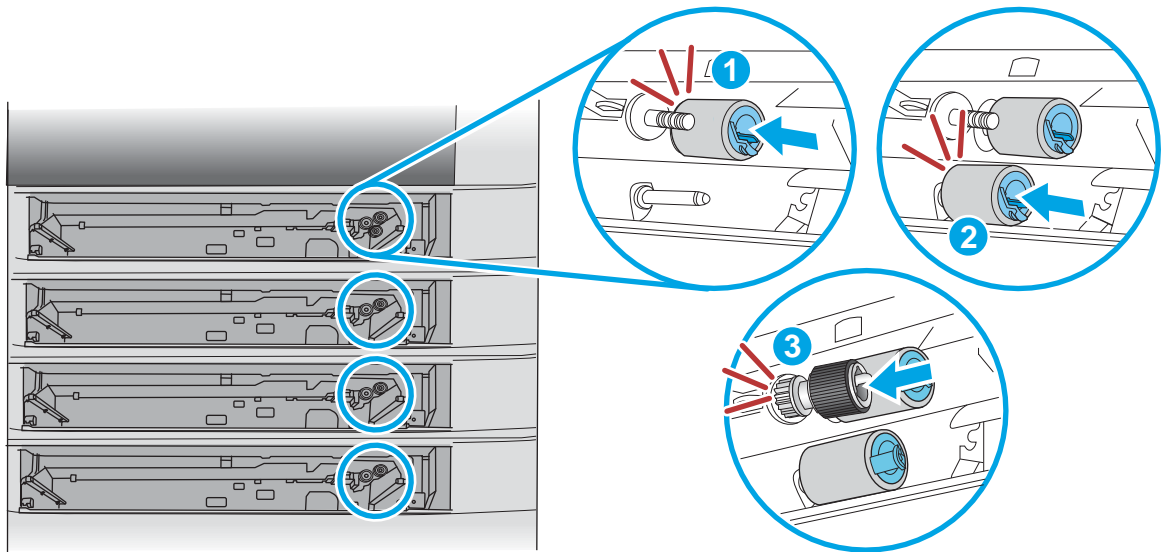


### Step 3: Install the Tray 2 - 5 pickup and feed rollers

1. Slide the pickup and feed rollers on the shaft to install them.

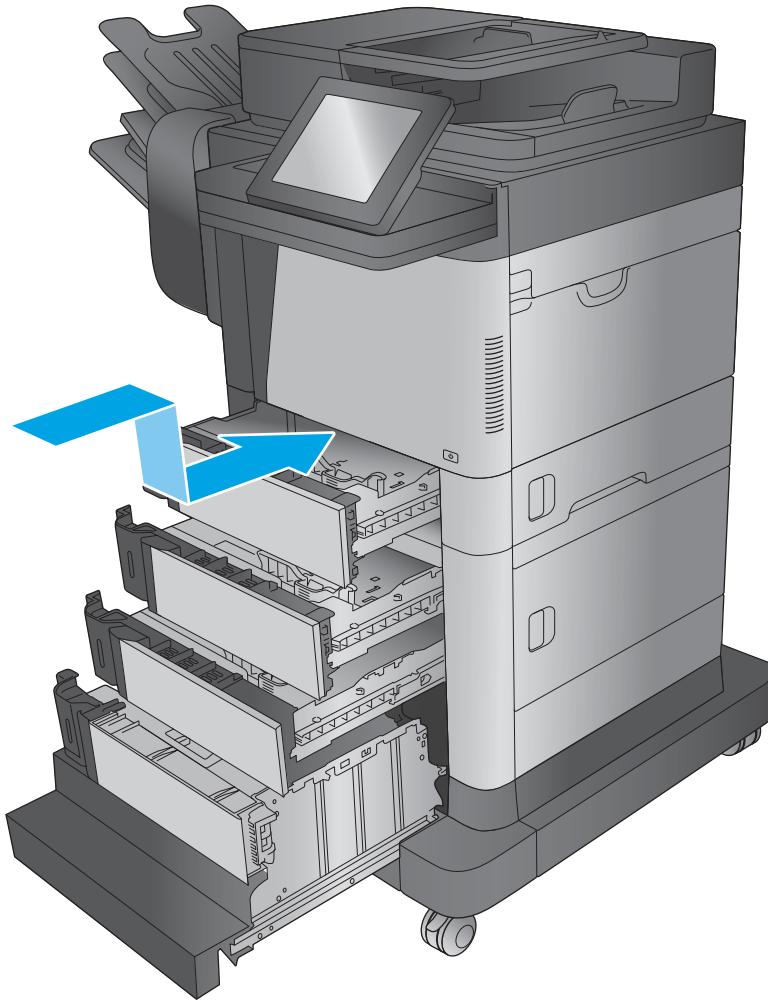
**TIP:** When the rollers are fully installed, an audible click is heard.

**Figure 1-196** install the rollers



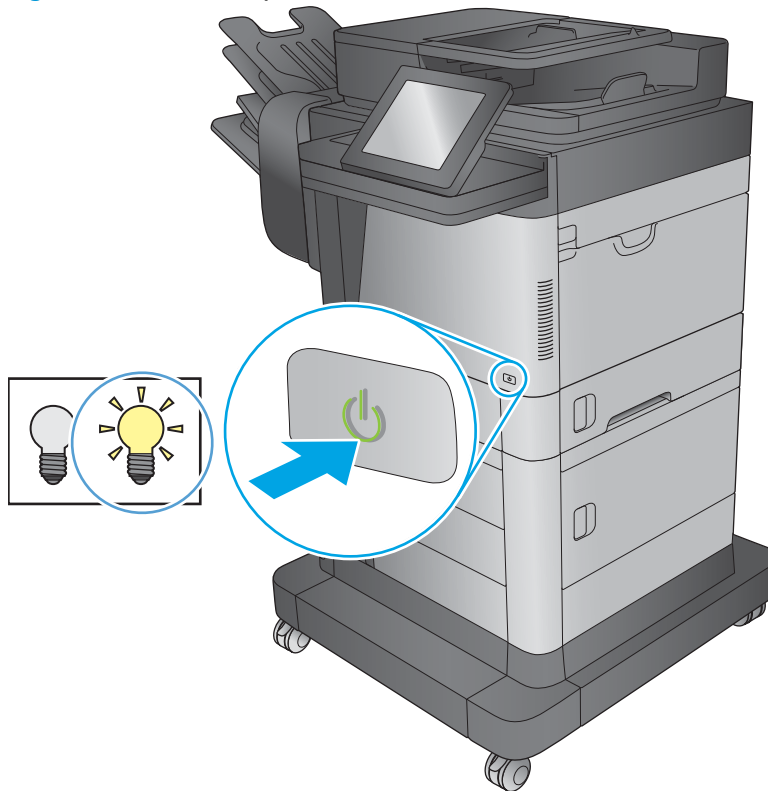
2. Install the tray or trays.

**Figure 1-197** Install the tray or trays



3. Use the power switch to turn the product power on.

**Figure 1-198** Turn the power on



## Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling.)

## Transfer roller

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the transfer roller](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement roller](#)
- [Step 3: Install the transfer roller](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the transfer roller.

### Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

Transfer roller kit part number	
<b>B3G84-67901</b>	Transfer roller with instruction guide

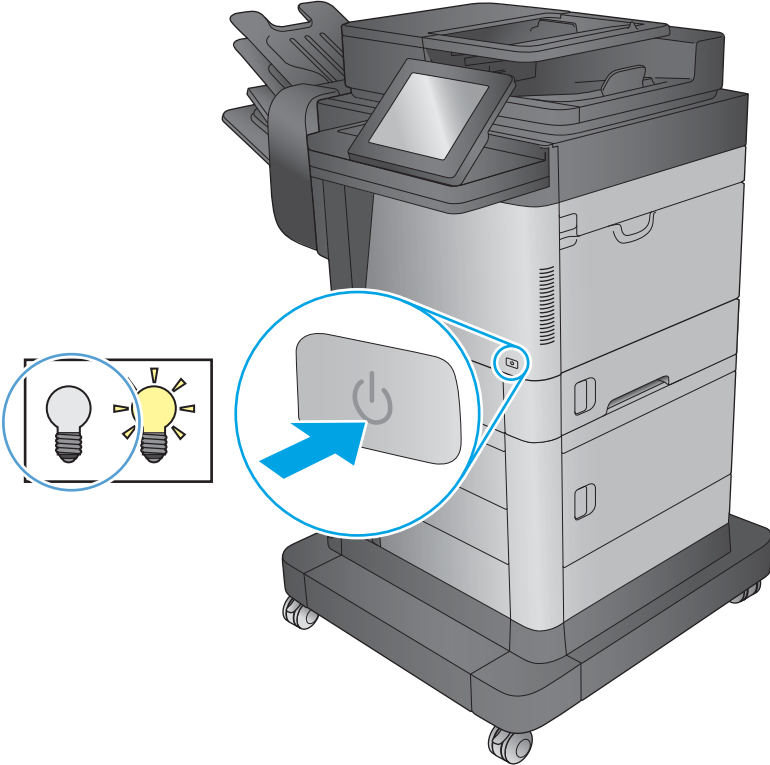
### Required tools

- A special removal tool, and a pair of protective gloves are provided in this kit.

### Step 1: Remove the transfer roller

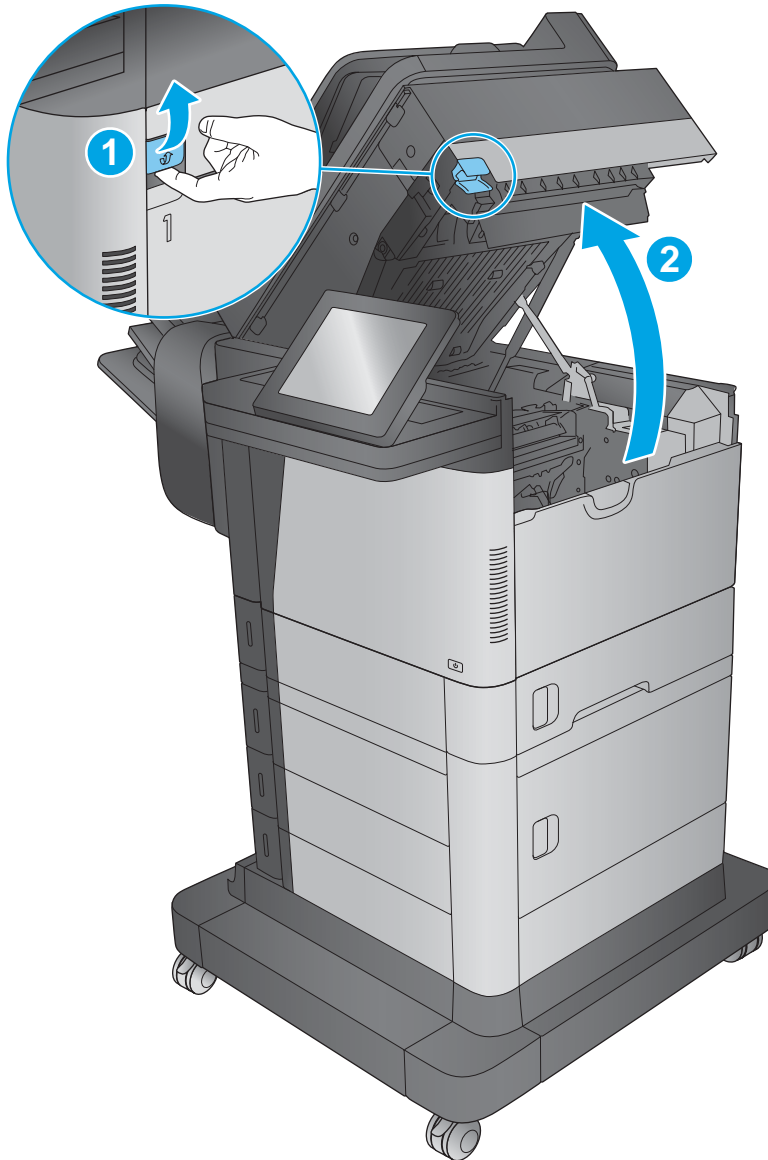
1. Use the power switch to turn the product power off.

**Figure 1-199** Turn the power off



2. Open the top cover.

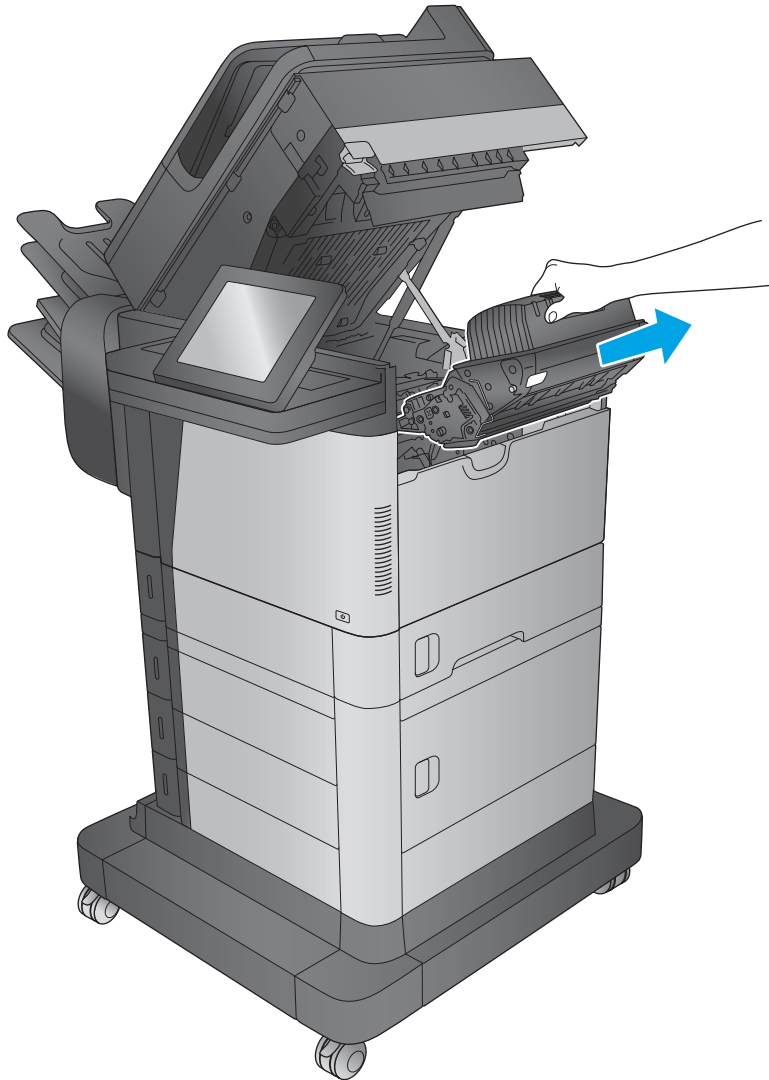
**Figure 1-200** Open the top cover





3. Remove the toner cartridge.

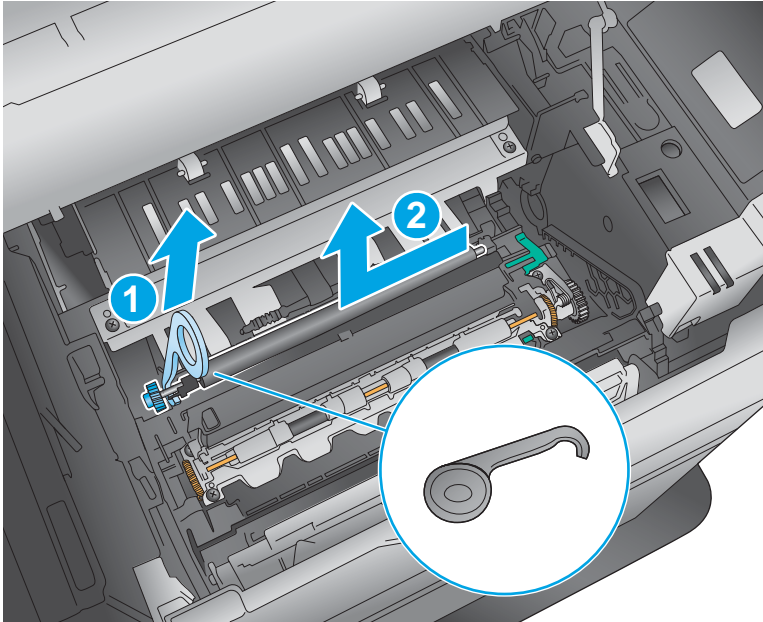
**Figure 1-201** Remove the toner cartridge



4. Use the removal tool provided in the kit (or flat-blade screwdriver) to slightly lift the left end of the roller shaft (callout 1; near the blue gear). Slide the transfer roller to the left to remove it (callout 2).


 **TIP:** Open Tray 1 to make removing the roller easier.

**Figure 1-202** Remove the transfer roller



## Step 2: Unpack the replacement roller

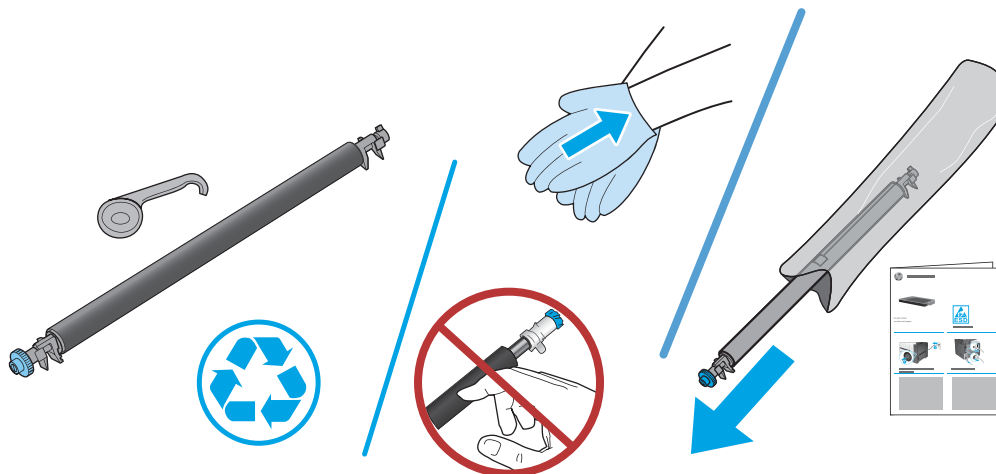
Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:** Skin oils on the roller can cause print-quality problems. Make sure to put on the protective gloves provided with the kit.

If protective gloves are not available, avoid touching the surface of the replacement roller. Thoroughly wash your hands with soap and water to remove skin oils, and then completely dry them.


[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling)

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

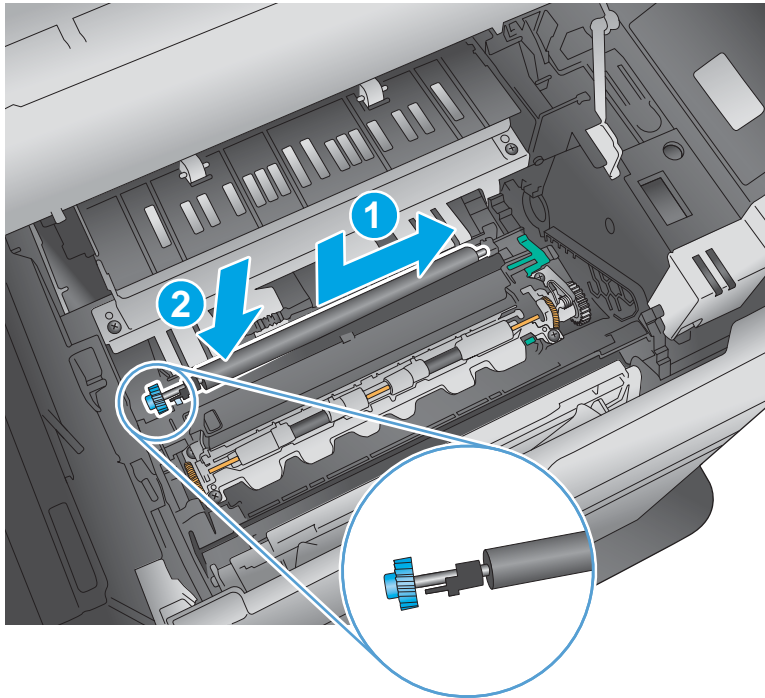


### Step 3: Install the transfer roller

1. Install the left end (callout 1; near the black collar) of the roller assembly in the product, and then rotate the right end down (callout 2) to install it.

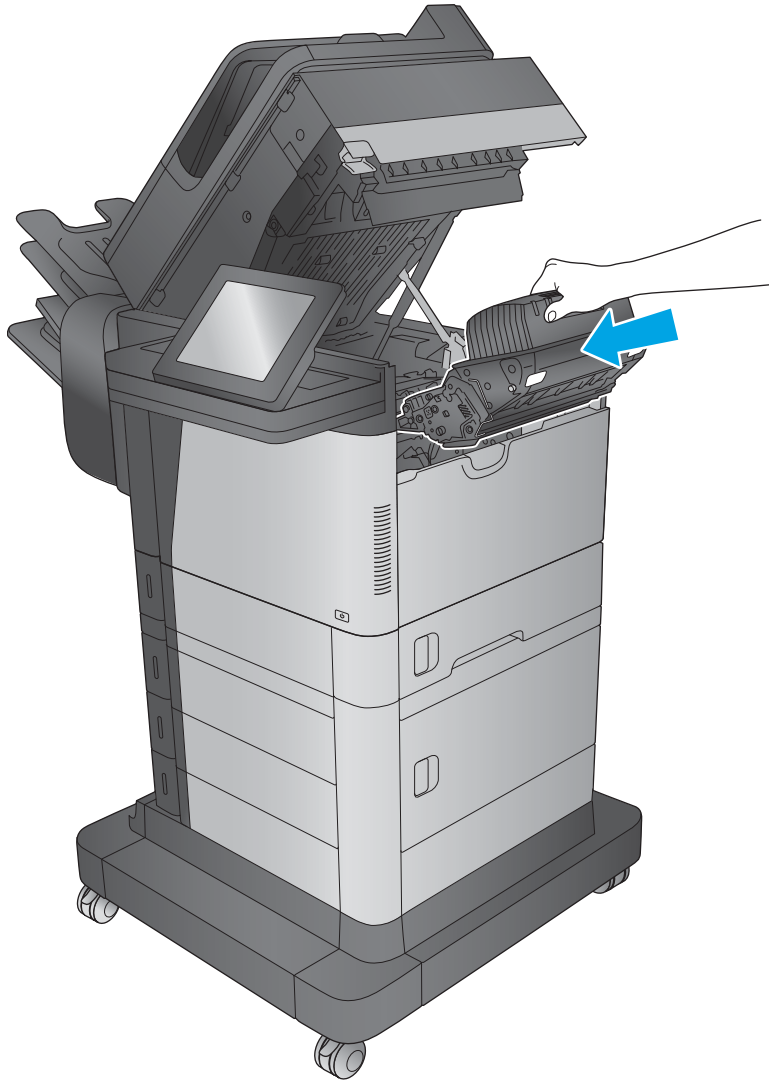
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that both ends of the roller assembly are fully seated in the holders.

**Figure 1-203** Install the transfer roller



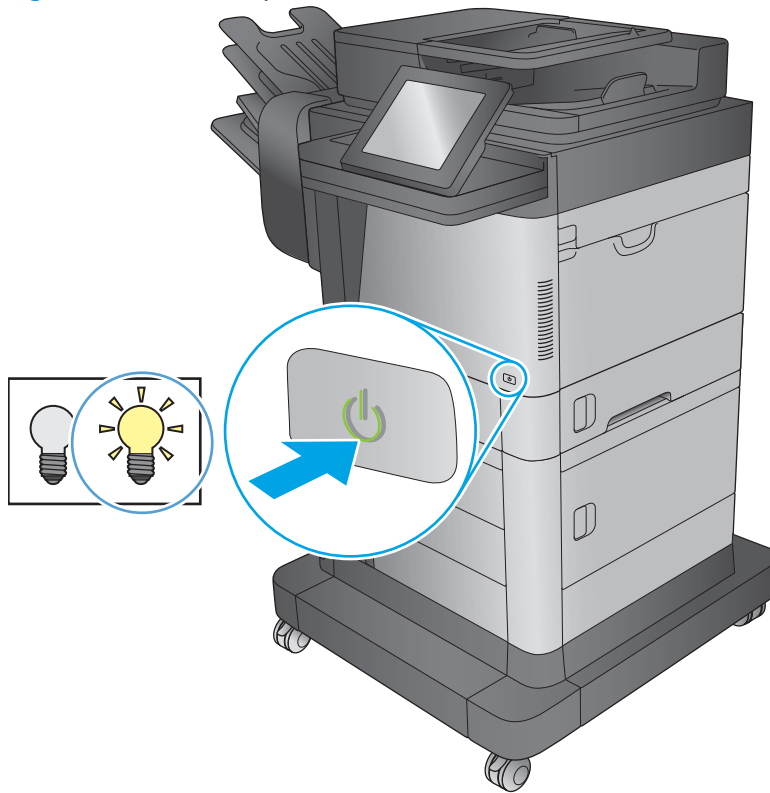
2. Install the toner cartridge.

**Figure 1-204** Install the toner cartridge



3. Use the power switch to turn the product power on.

**Figure 1-205** Turn the power on



## Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling.)

## Document-feeder maintenance kit

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the document-feeder rollers](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the document-feeder separation pad](#)
- [Step 3: Unpack the replacement rollers and separation pad](#)
- [Step 4: Install the document-feeder separation pad](#)
- [Step 5: Install the document-feeder rollers](#)
- [Step 6: Reset the supplies counter](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the document-feeder roller and separation pad.

### Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

Document-feeder maintenance kit part number	
L2725-60002	Document-feeder maintenance kit with instruction guide

**NOTE:** The document-feeder maintenance kit includes the pickup and feed rollers assembly and the separation pad assembly.

### Required tools

- No special tools are required to install this kit.



**IMPORTANT:** When a replacement roller is installed, reset the [New Document Feeder Kit](#) supplies counter. See [Step 6: Reset the supplies counter on page 160](#).

### Step 1: Remove the document-feeder rollers

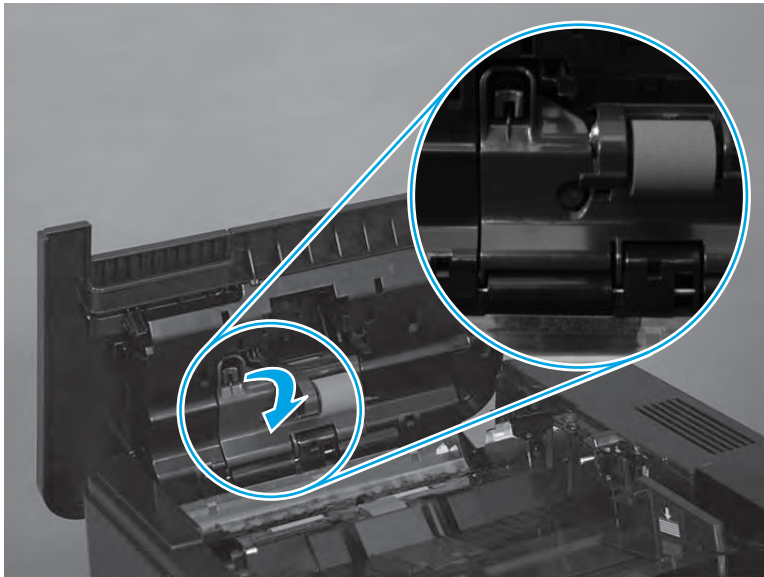
1. Open the document-feeder door.

**Figure 1-206** Open the document-feeder door




2. Release one tab, and then open the access door.

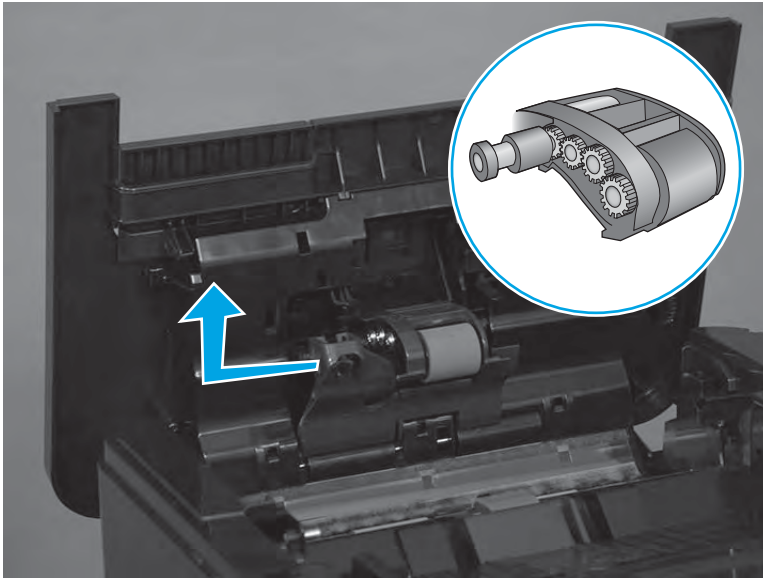
**Figure 1-207** Open the access door



3. Slide the roller left, and then lift it up and out of the product.

 **NOTE:** If the roller does not drop down when the access door is opened, rotate it down now.

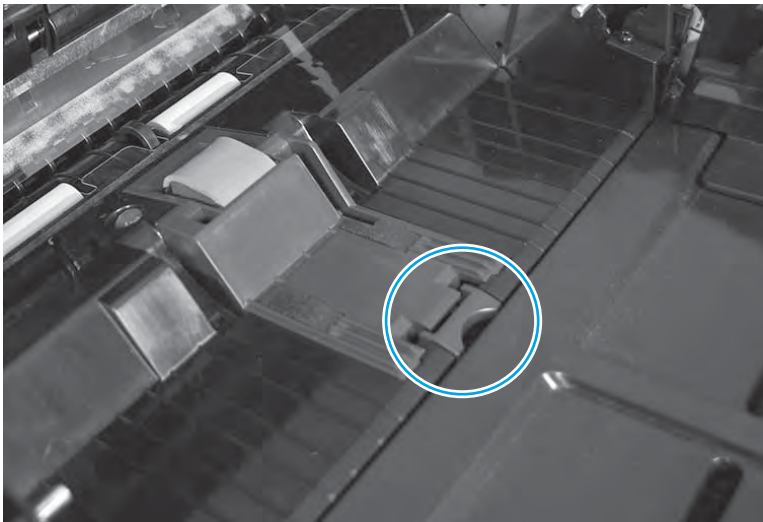
**Figure 1-208** Remove the document-feeder roller



## Step 2: Remove the document-feeder separation pad


1. Release one tab.

**Figure 1-209** Release one tab

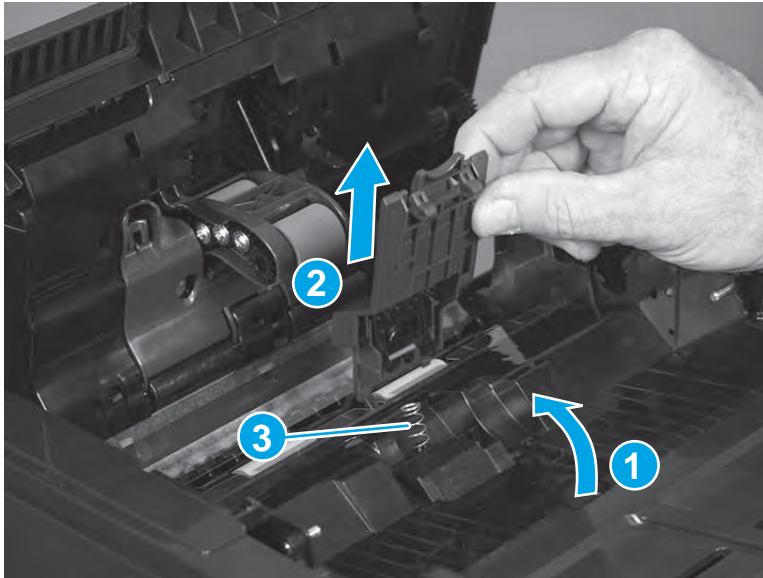




2. Rotate the separation pad and holder up (callout 1), and then lift it up (callout 2) to remove it.

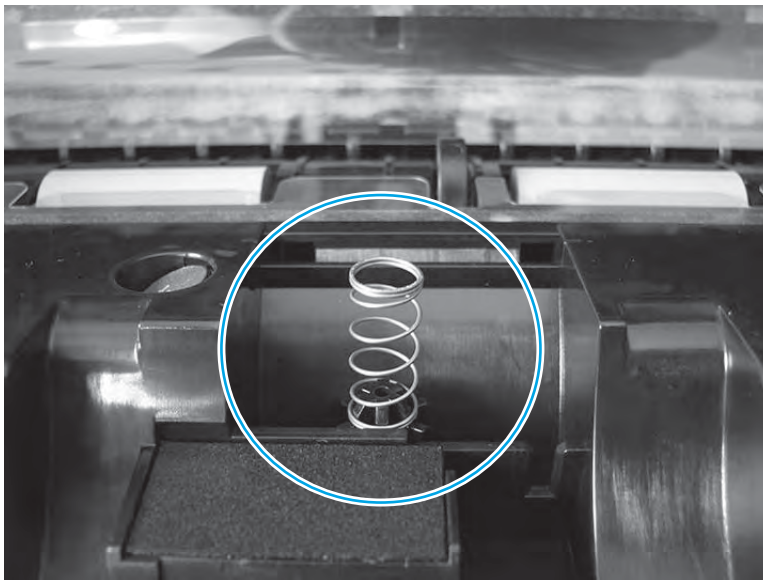
 **IMPORTANT:** The spring (callout 3) under the separation pad and holder can easily be dislodged when the holder is removed.

**Figure 1-210** Remove the document-feeder separation pad



3. If the spring becomes dislodged, securely reinstall it as shown.


**Figure 1-211** Check the spring

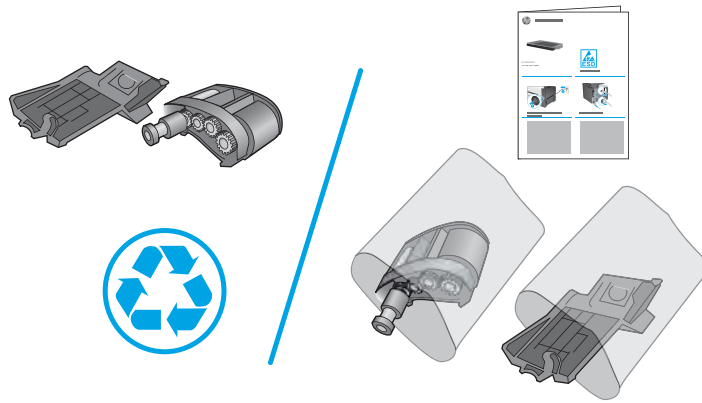


### Step 3: Unpack the replacement rollers and separation pad

Unpack the replacement assemblies from the packaging.


[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling)

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assemblies.



#### Step 4: Install the document-feeder separation pad

1. Position the separation pad on the product.

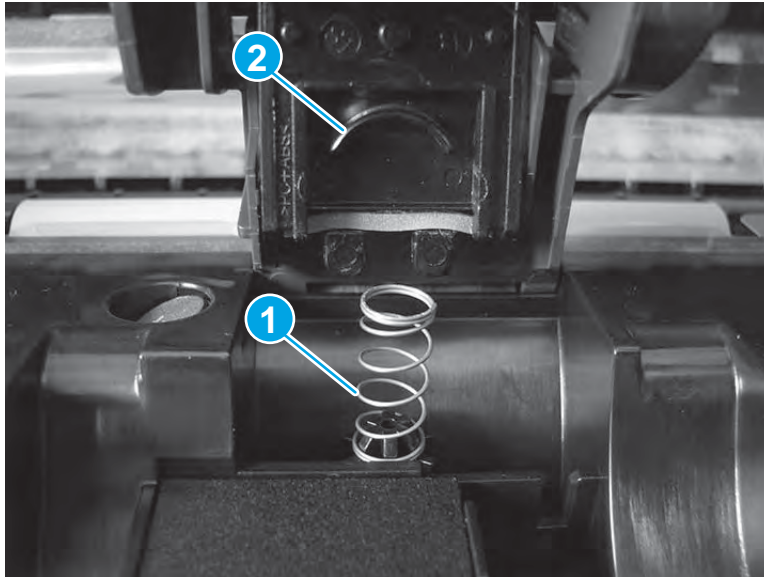
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure spring does not get bent upon reinstallation of the separation pad.

**Figure 1-212** Position the separation pad on the product



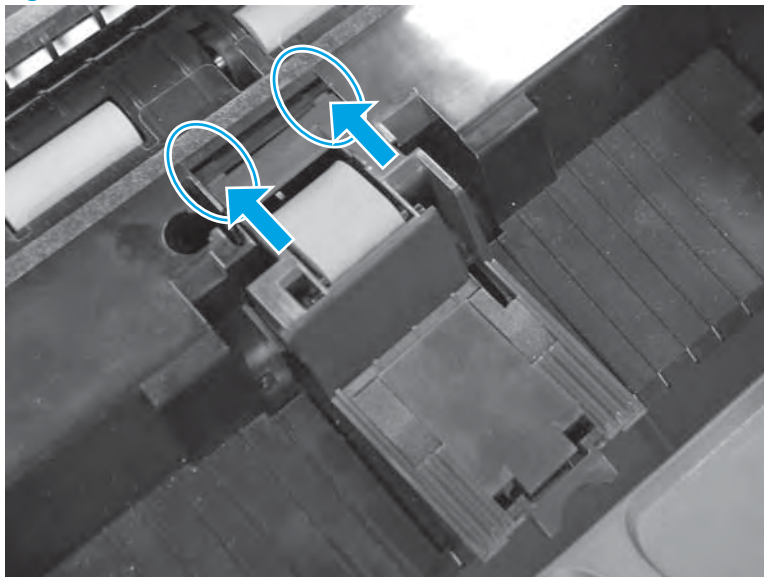
2. When the separation pad and holder is installed, make sure that the separation-pad spring (callout 1) is positioned under and behind the ridge (callout 2) on the bottom of the holder.

**Figure 1-213** Check the spring



3. Make sure that the tabs on the separation pad holder are positioned in the provided slots.

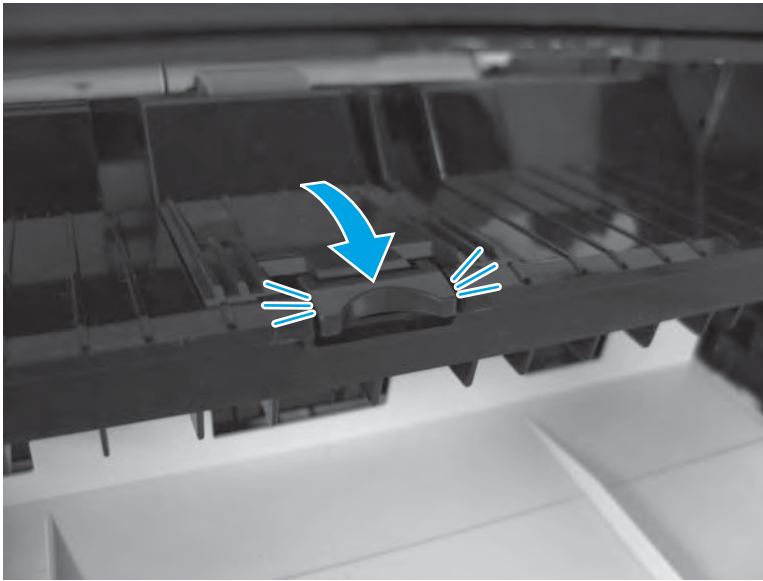
**Figure 1-214** Check the tabs



4. Rotate the separation pad down until it snap in place.

 **Reinstallation tip:** When the pad is correctly installed, an audible click should be heard.

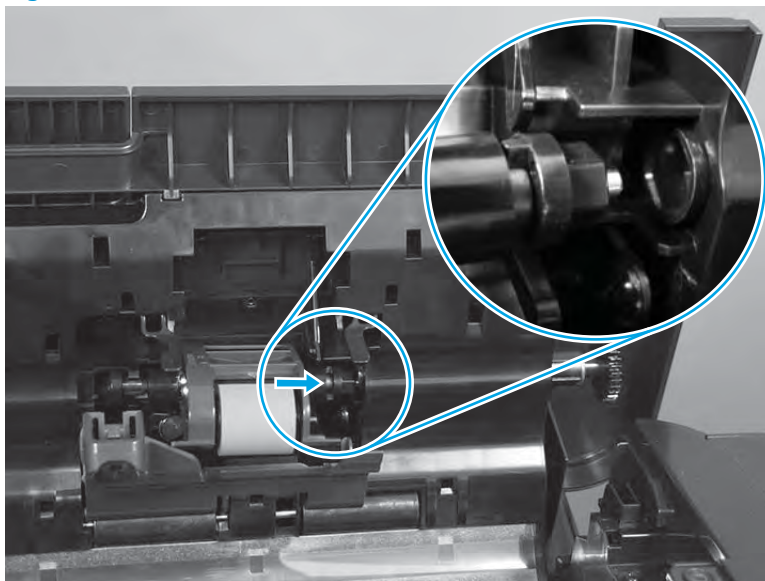
**Figure 1-215** Install the separation pad



## Step 5: Install the document-feeder rollers

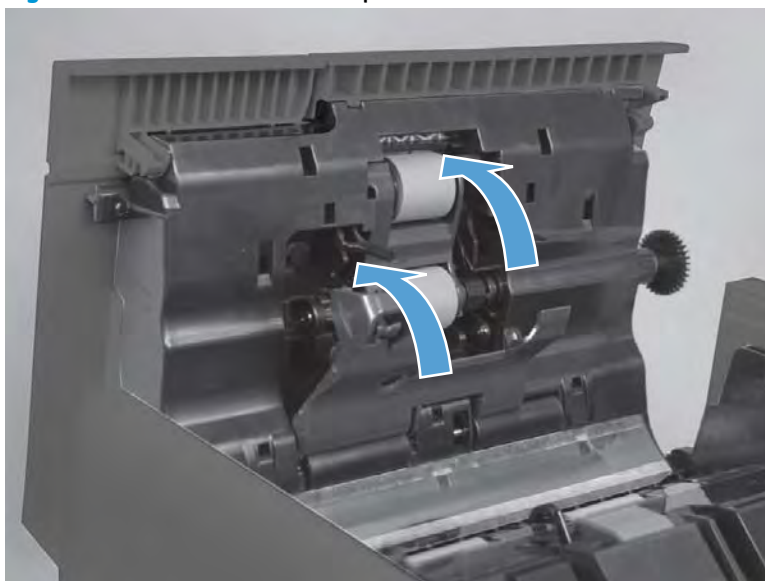
1. The roller assembly is keyed. When reinstalling the roller assembly, position the hex-shaped fitting on the shaft toward the rear of the product.

**Figure 1-216** Install the document-feeder roller




2. Rotate the roller up into the document feeder.

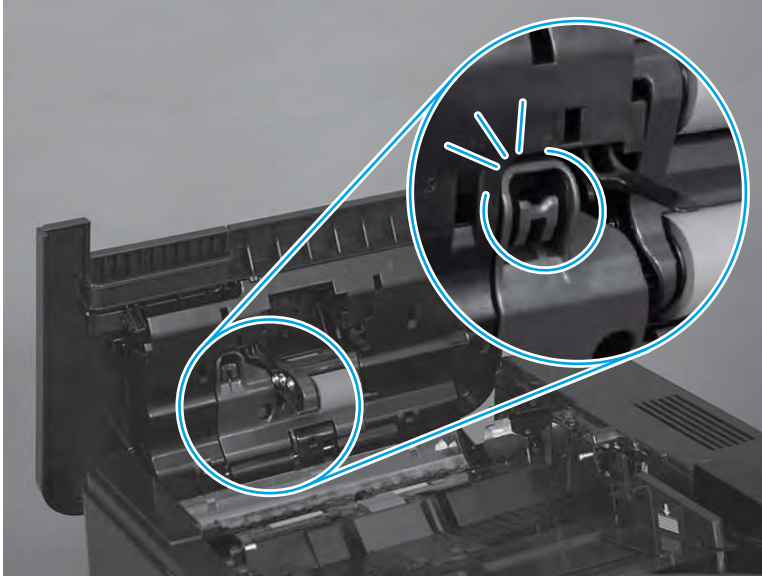
**Figure 1-217** Rotate the roller up



3. Close the access door.

 **Reinstallation tip:** The access door must be fully closed. When closing the door, two audible clicks should be heard. If, after replacing the roller document feeder, a document feeder jam message appears on the control panel display, make sure that the access door is fully closed.

**Figure 1-218** Close the access door



### Step 6: Reset the supplies counter

1. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the **Administration** button.
2. Open the following menus:
  - **Manage Supplies**
  - **Reset Supplies**
  - **New Document Feeder Kit**
3. Select the **Reset** item to reset the supplies counter.

### Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling.)

## Document feeder white backing

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the document feeder white backing](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement document feeder white backing](#)
- [Step 3: Install the document feeder white backing](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the document feeder white backing.

### Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

---

Document feeder white backing kit part number	
---	--

---

<b>5851-6084</b>	Document feeder white backing kit with instruction guide
------------------	--

---

### Required tools

- No special tools are required to install this kit.

### Step 1: Remove the document feeder white backing

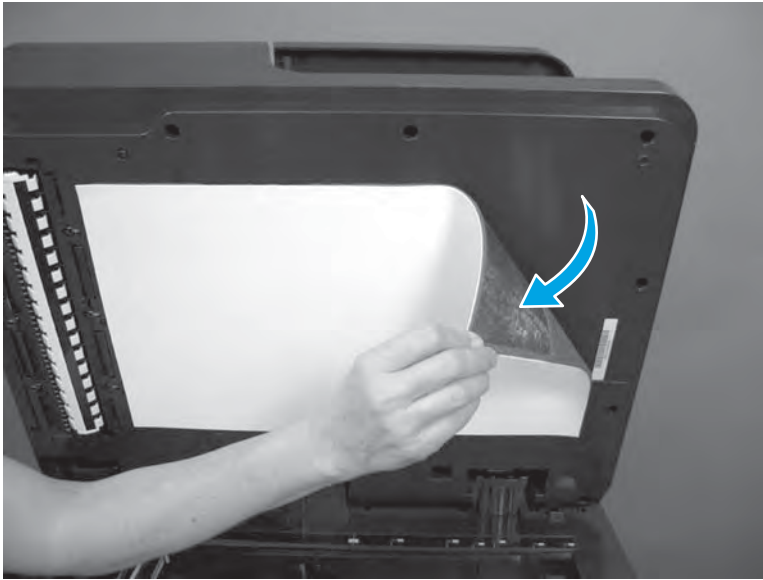
1. Open the document feeder.

**Figure 1-219** Open the document feeder



2. Carefully remove the white backing.

**Figure 1-220** Remove the white backing



3. Remove any remaining adhesive.

**Figure 1-221** Remove remaining adhesive



## Step 2: Unpack the replacement document feeder white backing

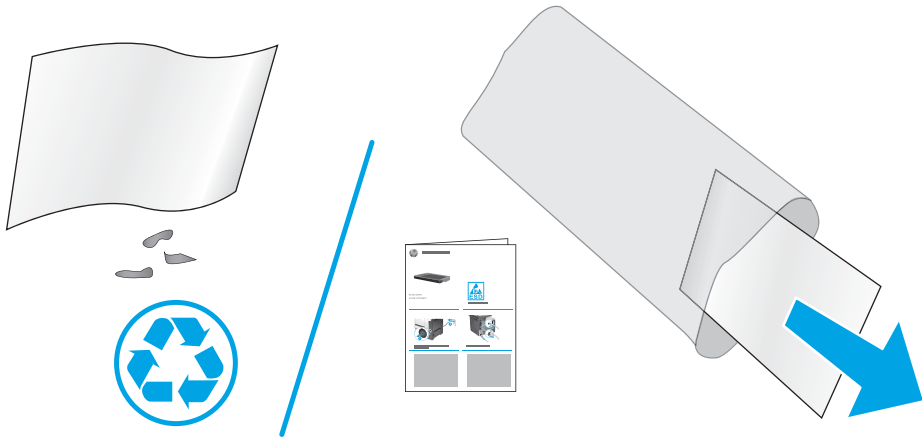
Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling)



**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

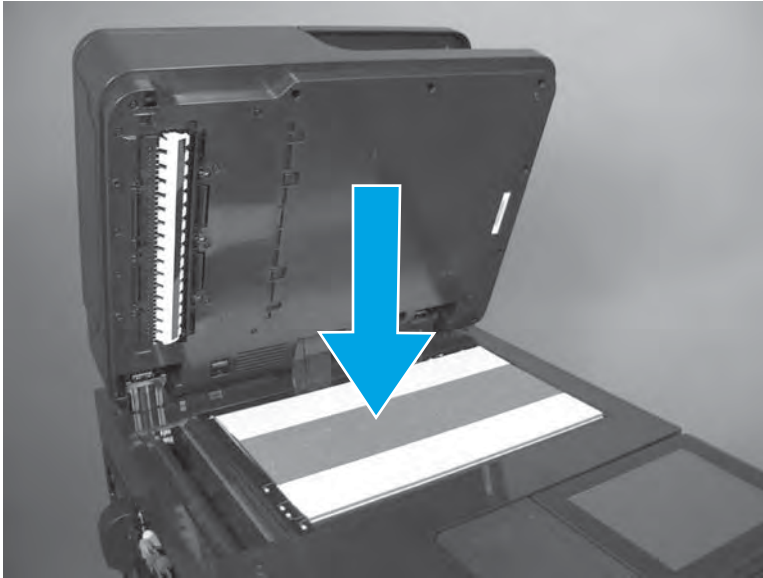




### Step 3: Install the document feeder white backing

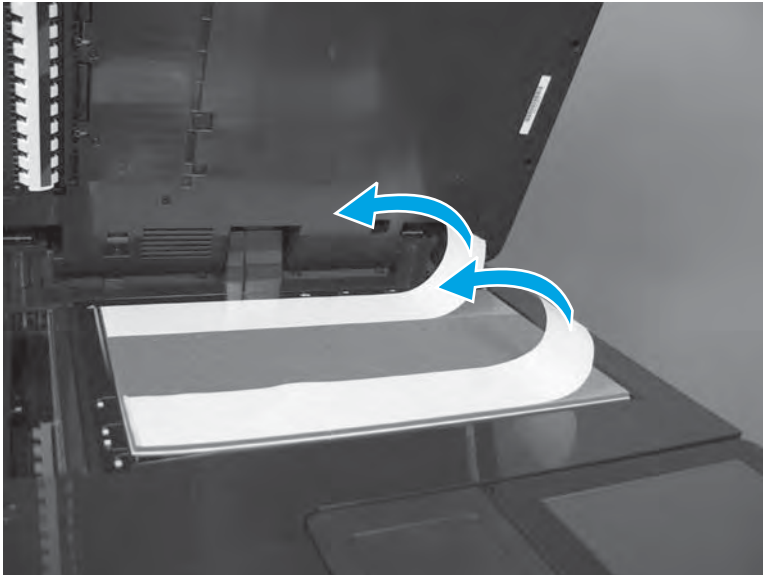
1. Place the white backing on the scanner glass.

**Figure 1-222** Place the white backing on the scanner




2. Peel off the two strips of adhesive backing.

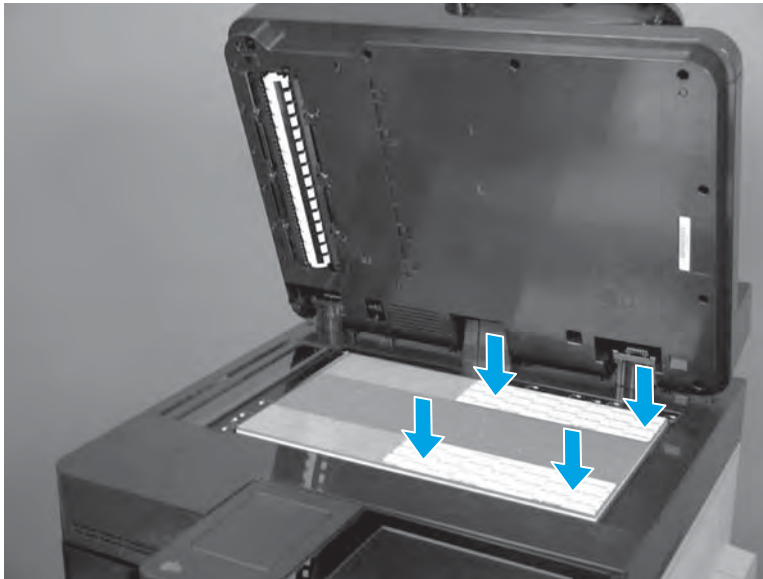
**Figure 1-223** Peel off the adhesive backing



3. Place the two mylar-spacer strips (included with the kit) onto the adhesive, as shown.

 **IMPORTANT:** Align the mylar with the edges of the adhesive on the white backing.

**Figure 1-224** Place the two mylar-spacer strips onto the adhesive



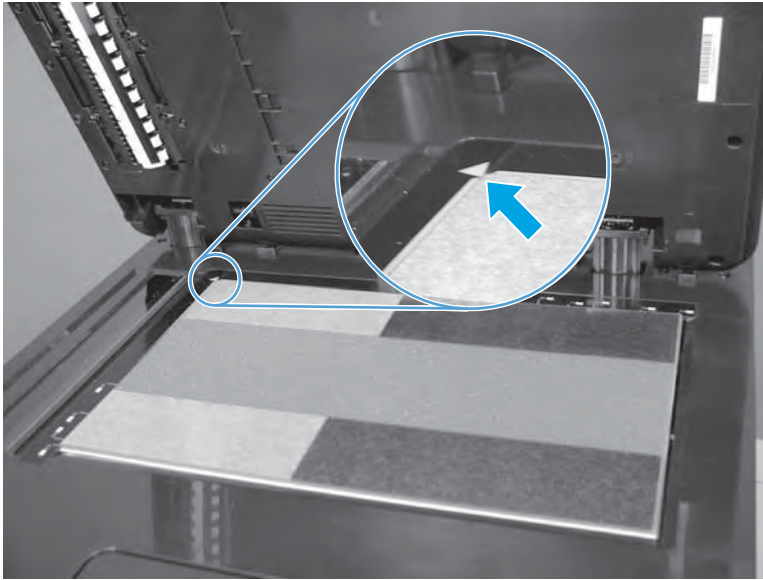
4. Peel off the two strips of adhesive backing.

**Figure 1-225** Peel off the adhesive backing



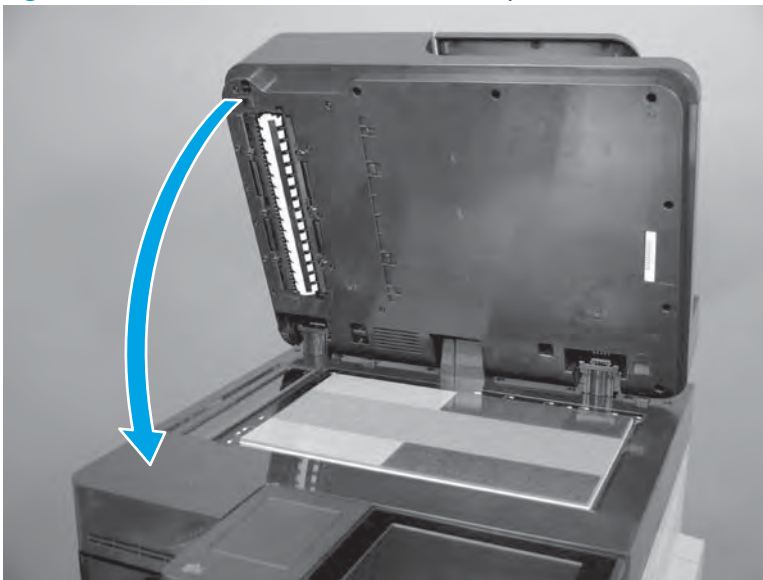
5. Verify that the white backing is aligned with the left rear corner of the scanner glass.

**Figure 1-226** Verify that the white backing is correctly aligned



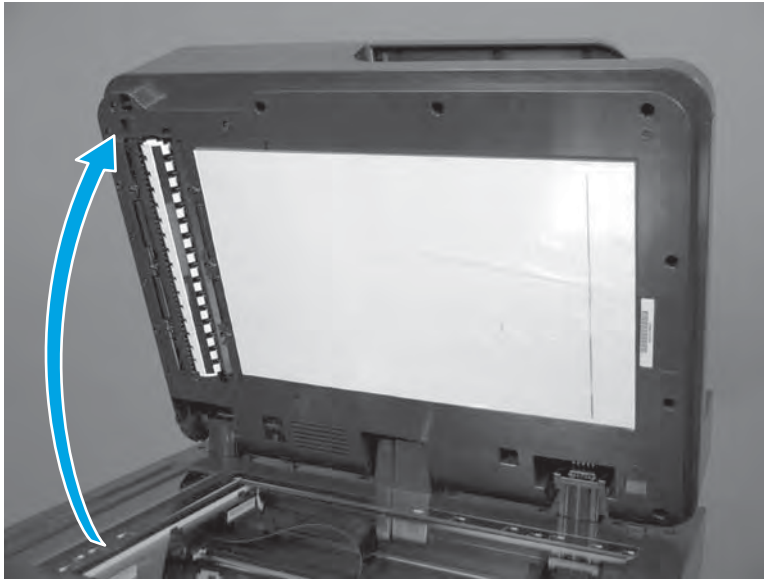
6. Close the document feeder. Press down firmly to adhere the white backing.

**Figure 1-227** Close the document feeder and press down



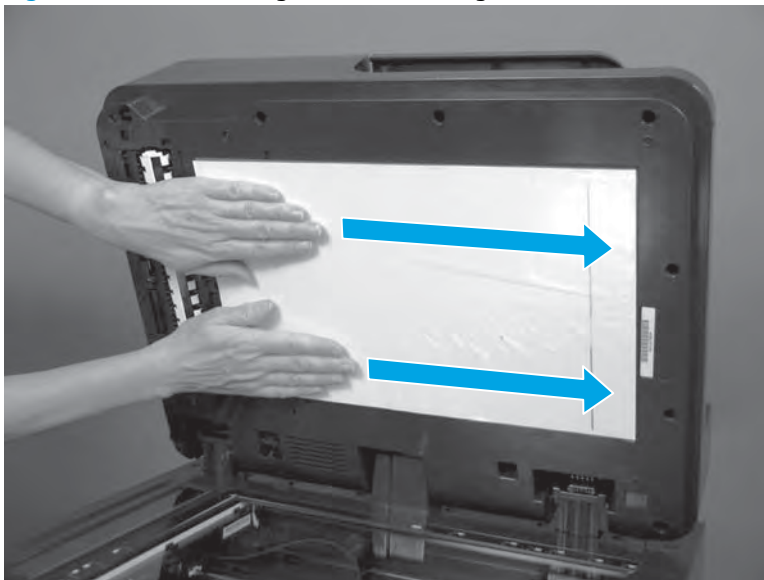
7. Open the document feeder.

**Figure 1-228** Open the document feeder



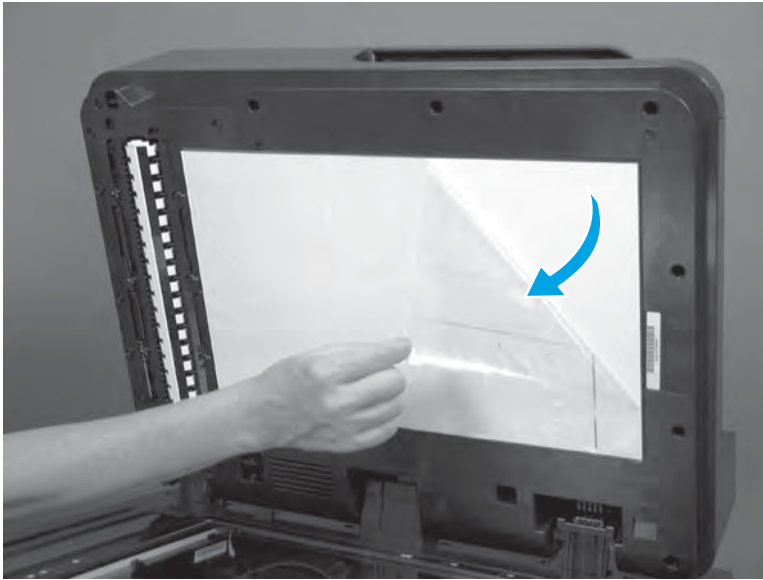
8. Press along the top and bottom of the white backing, over the areas with adhesive.

**Figure 1-229** Press along the white backing



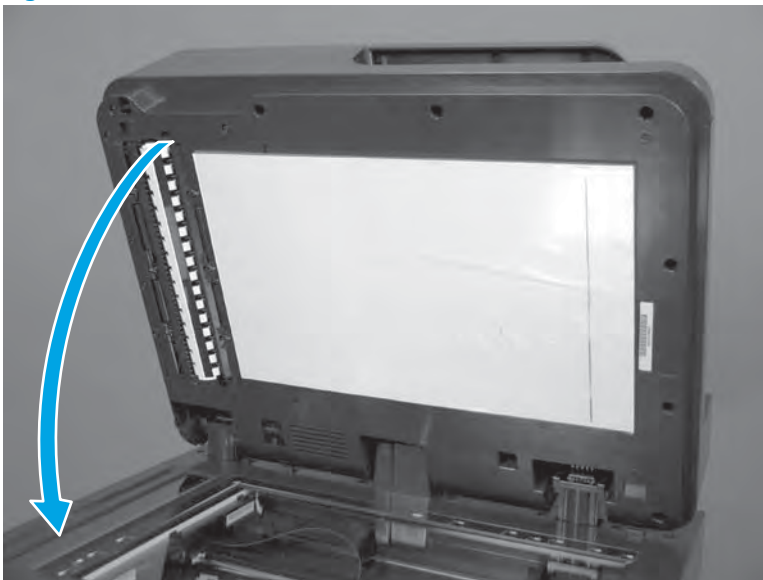
9. Peel off the protective plastic sheet.

**Figure 1-230** Peel off the protective sheet



10. Close the document feeder.

**Figure 1-231** Close the document feeder



## Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

## Document feeder and image scanner assemblies

- [Document-feeder mylar strip](#)
- [Document-feeder roller cover](#)
- [Scanner rear cover](#)
- [Scanner control board \(SCB\)](#)
- [Document feeder](#)
- [Document-feeder hinge assembly](#)
- [Image scanner assembly](#)

## Document-feeder mylar strip

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the document-feeder mylar strip](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement mylar strip](#)
- [Step 3: Install the document-feeder mylar strip](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the document-feeder mylar strip.

### Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

Document-feeder mylar strip kit part number	
<b>B3G86-67903</b>	Document-feeder mylar strip kit with instruction guide

**NOTE:** The document-feeder mylar kit contains two mylar guides. Only one guide is required for the product. The second guide is used if the adhesive on the first guide is contaminated during installation.

### Required tools

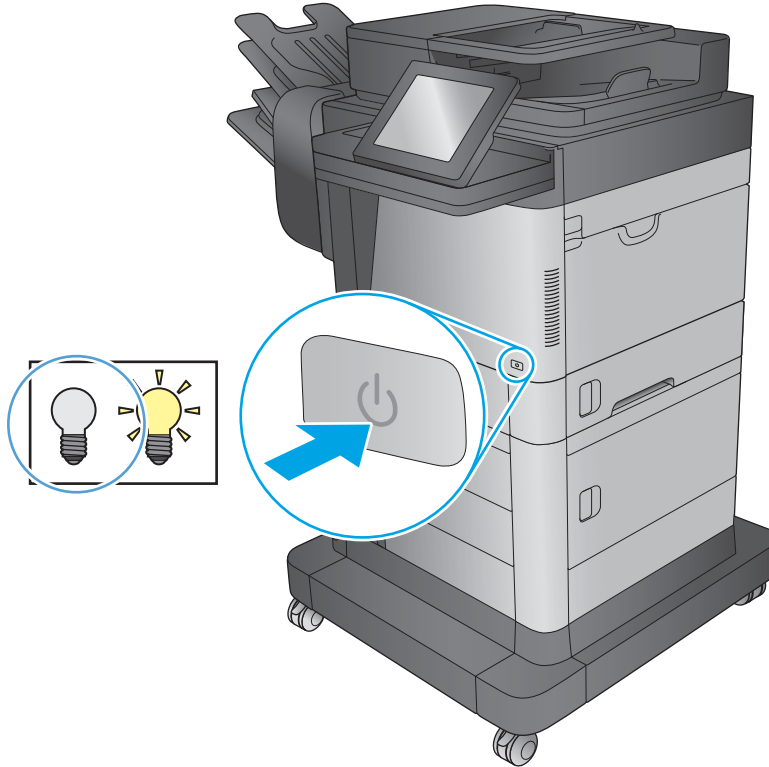
- No special tools are required to install this kit.

### Step 1: Remove the document-feeder mylar strip

1. Use the power switch to turn the product power off.



**Figure 1-232** Turn the power off



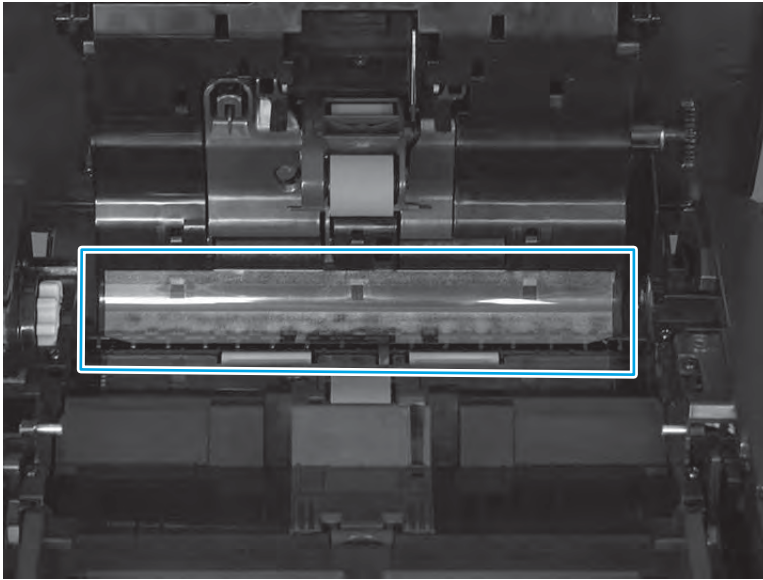
2. Open the document feeder cover.

**Figure 1-233** Open the document feeder cover



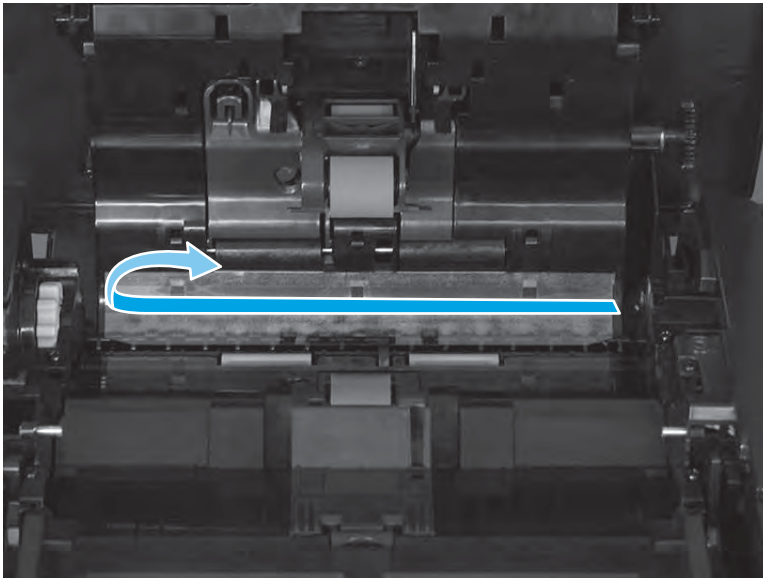
3. Locate the mylar strip inside the document feeder.

**Figure 1-234** Locate the mylar strip



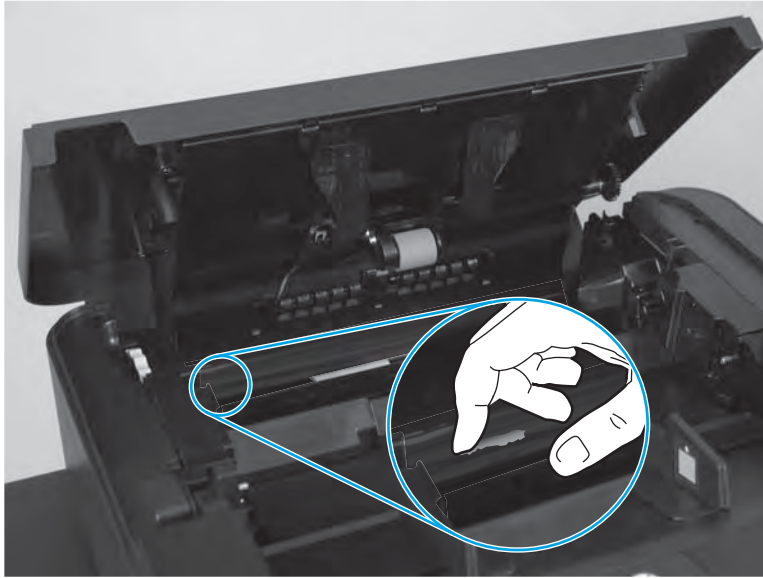
4. Carefully remove the mylar strip.

**Figure 1-235** Remove the mylar strip



5. Use a finger to remove any remaining adhesive.

**Figure 1-236** Remove any remaining adhesive



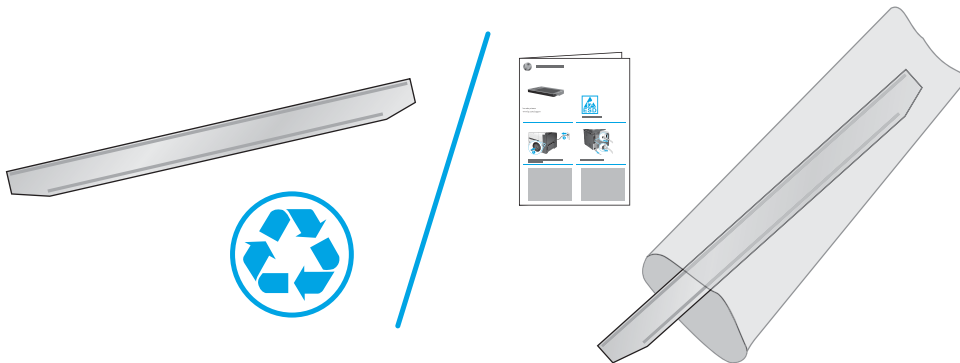
## Step 2: Unpack the replacement mylar strip

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

**CAUTION:** Avoid touching the surface of the replacement mylar strip. Skin oils on the mylar strip can cause print-quality problems. Thoroughly wash your hands with soap and water to remove skin oils, and then completely dry them.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling)

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



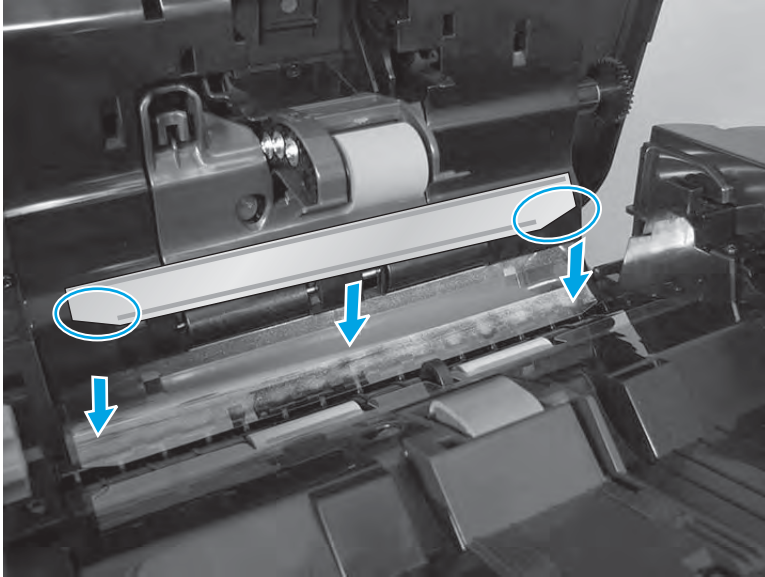
## Step 3: Install the document-feeder mylar strip

1. Remove the protective backing from the adhesive portion of the replacement mylar strip, and then position the strip as shown, with the beveled corners on the strip facing the document tray.

**IMPORTANT:** When handling the replacement mylar strip, do not touch the adhesive portion of the strip.

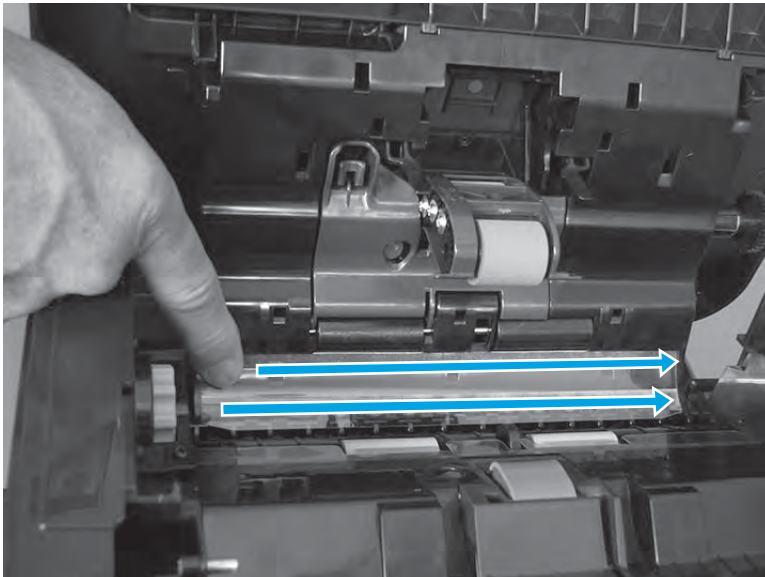
**NOTE:** Make sure that the adhesive side of the guide is face down.

**Figure 1-237** Install the document-feeder mylar strip



2. Press down firmly on the strip to adhere it to the product.

**Figure 1-238** Press down firmly on the strip



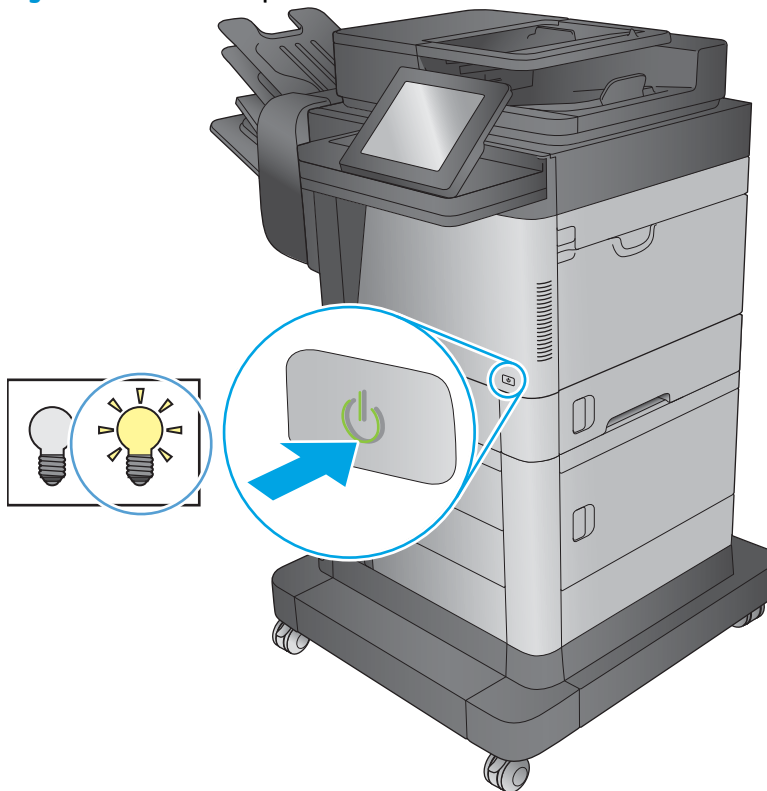
3. Close the document feeder cover.

**Figure 1-239** Close the document feeder cover



4. Use the power switch to turn the product power on.

**Figure 1-240** Turn the power on



## Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

## Document-feeder roller cover

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

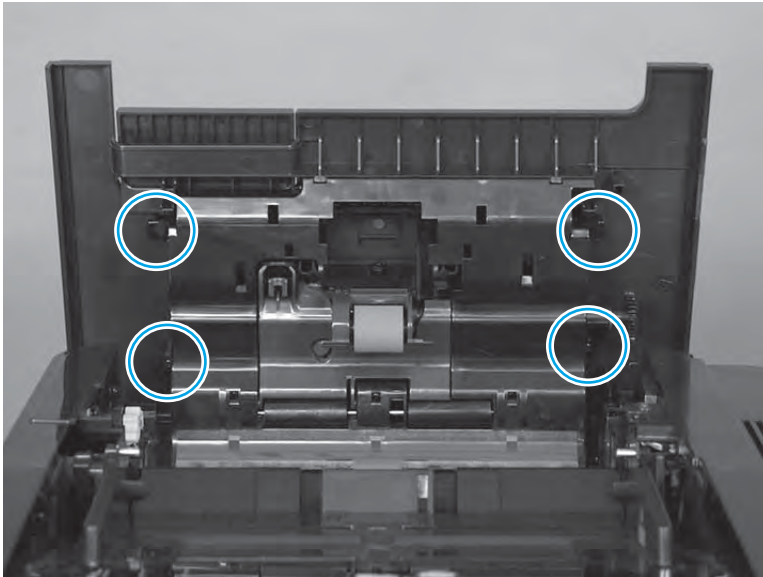
1. Open the document-feeder cover.

**Figure 1-241** Open the document-feeder cover



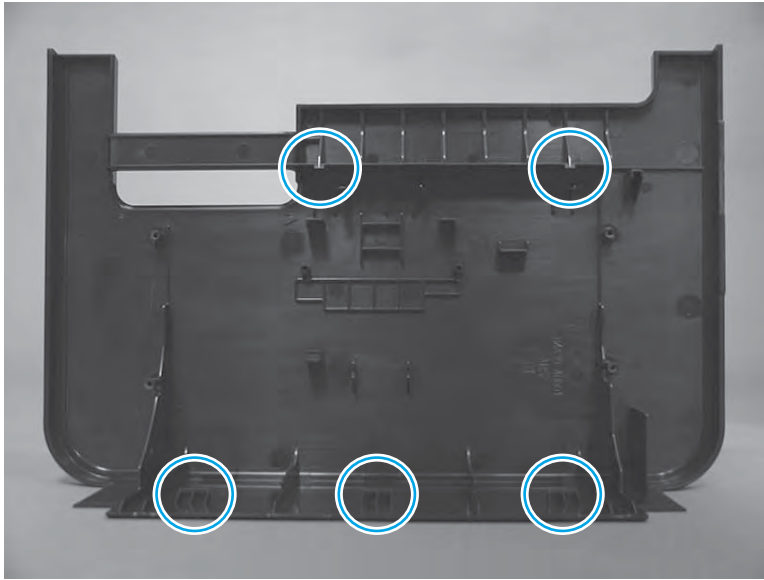
2. Remove four screws.

**Figure 1-242** Remove four screws



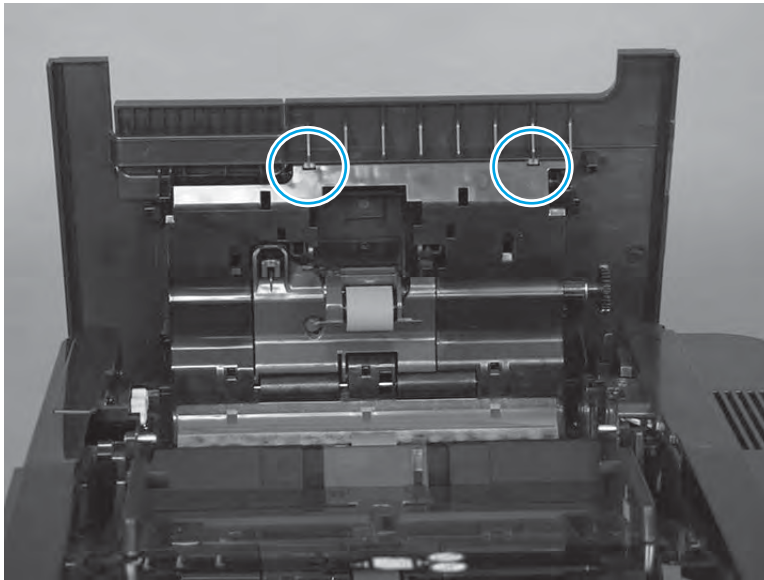
3. Before removing the cover, note the location of the tabs.

**Figure 1-243** Note the location of the tabs



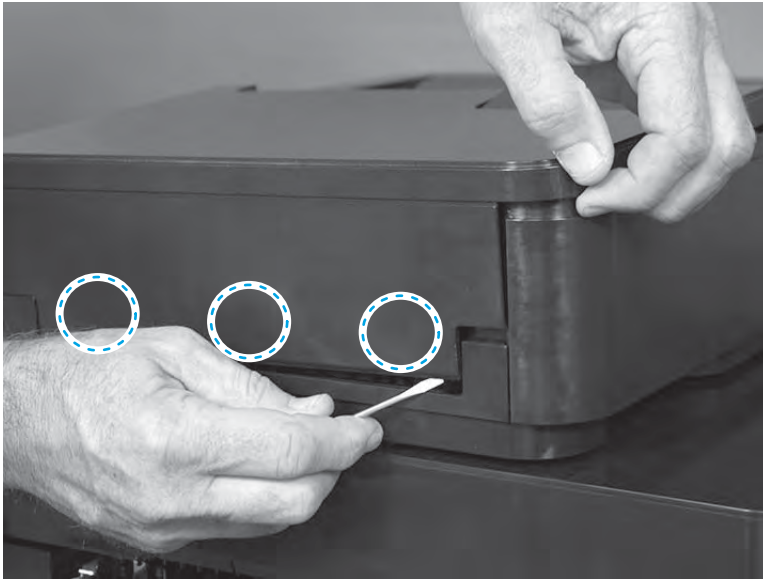
4. Release two tabs.

**Figure 1-244** Release two tabs




5. Close the document-feeder cover, and then release the remaining three tabs and remove the cover.

**Figure 1-245** Remove the cover



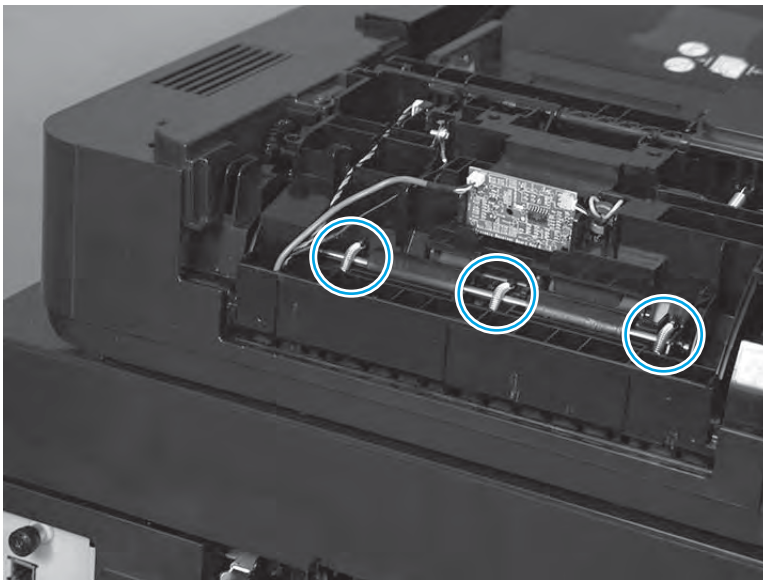
6. Remove three springs.

---

 **Reinstallation tip:** Use needle nose pliers to reattach the spring. Attach the spring to the bottom hook first.

---

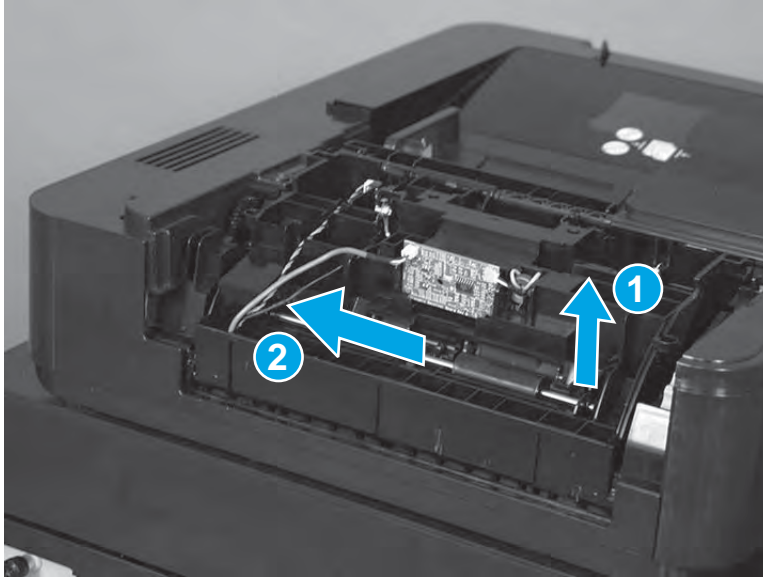
**Figure 1-246** Remove three springs





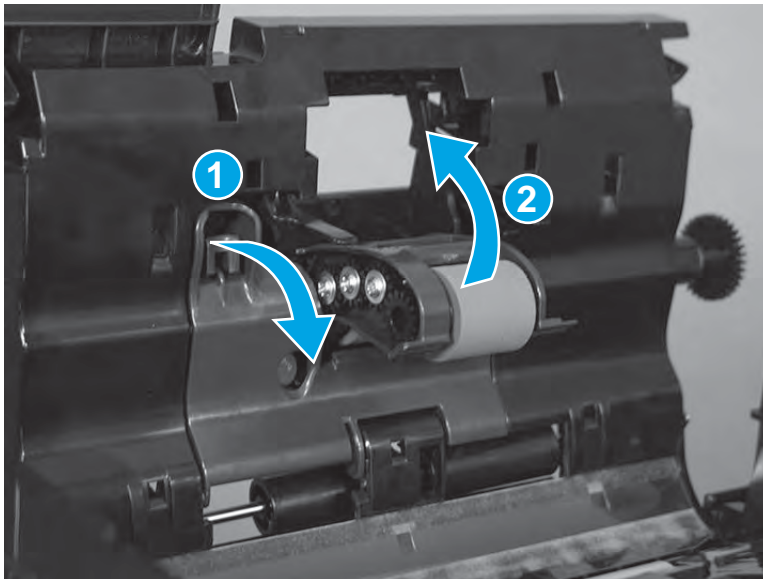
7. Lift the right end of the roller shaft up (callout 1), and then slide the shaft and rollers to the left (callout 2).

**Figure 1-247** Slide the shaft and rollers to the left



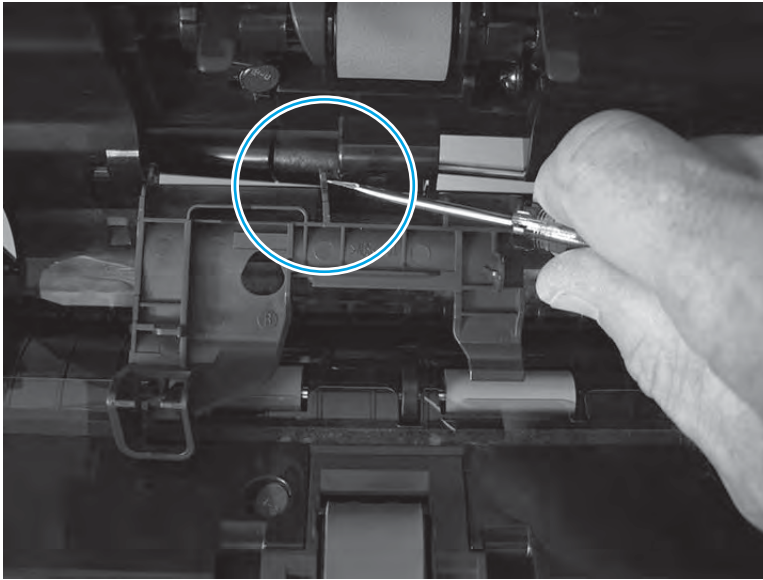
8. Open the document-feeder cover, open the document-feeder roller cover (callout 1), and move the document-feeder roller assembly out of the way (callout 2).

**Figure 1-248** Move the document-feeder roller assembly out of the way



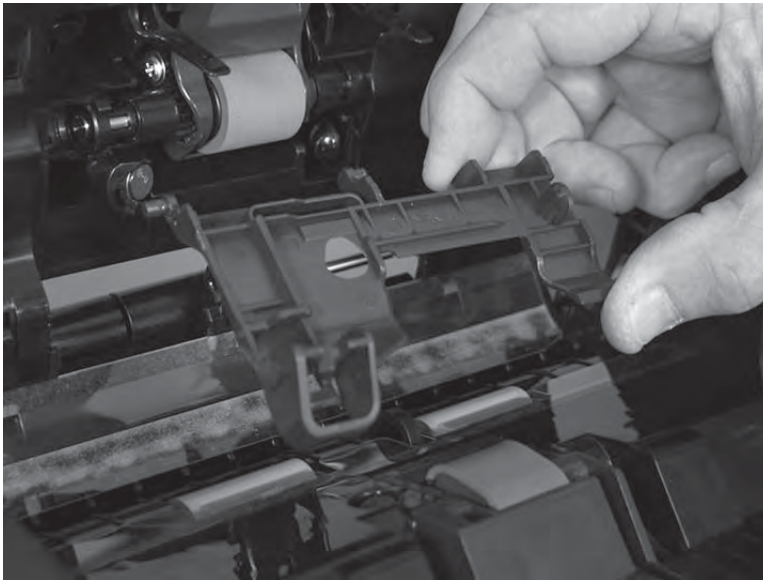
9. Release one hinge pin on the document-feeder roller cover.

**Figure 1-249** Release one hinge pin



10. Remove the document-feeder roller cover.

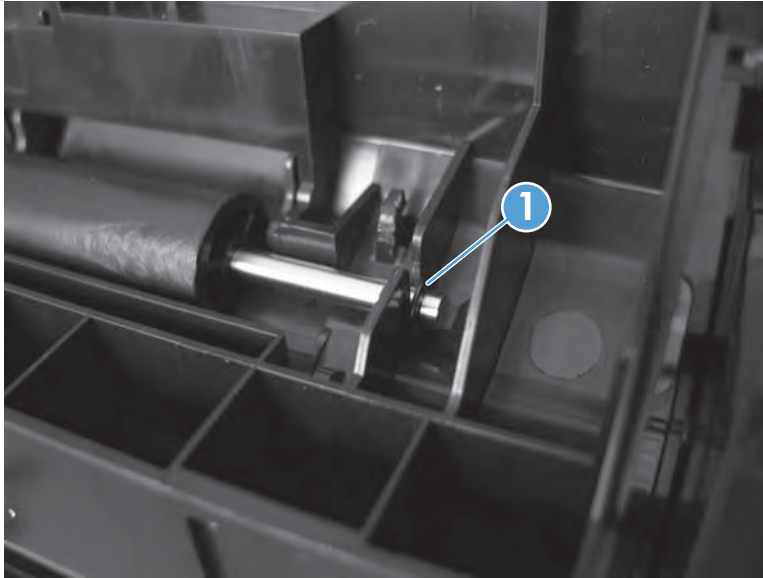
**Figure 1-250** Remove the document-feeder roller cover



## Reinstall the document-feeder roller cover

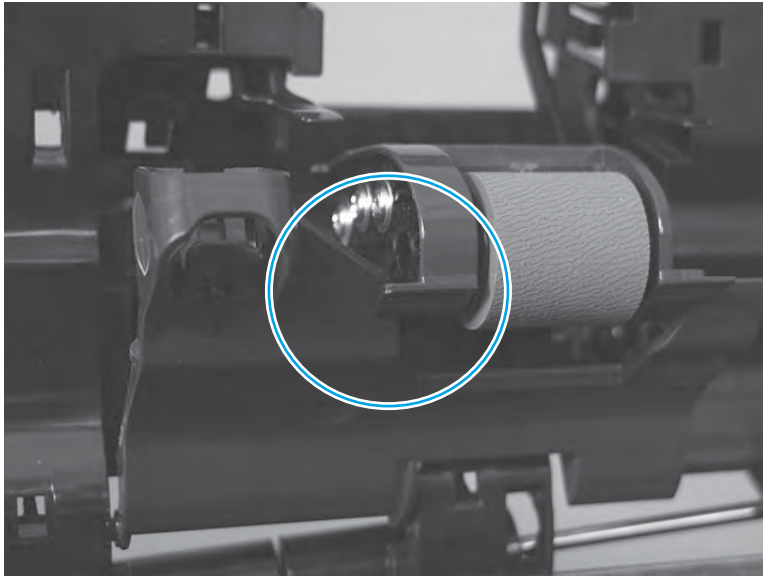
1. Make sure that the end of the roller shaft (callout 1) is correctly installed.

**Figure 1-251** Check the roller shaft



2. Make sure the document-feeder roller cover and document-feeder roller assembly are correctly positioned before trying to close the cover.

**Figure 1-252** Check the document-feeder roller cover and document-feeder roller assembly



## Scanner rear cover

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover](#)
- [Step 2: Install the scanner rear cover](#)
- [Step 3: Turn the product power on](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the scanner rear cover.

### Before servicing

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

---

**⚠ WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

---

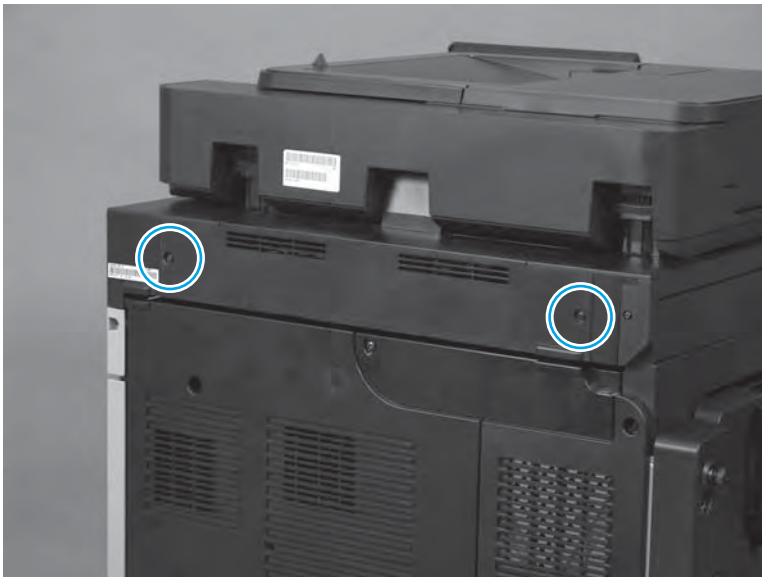
### Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover

1. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-253** Remove two screws



2. Remove the cover.

**Figure 1-254** Remove the cover



## Step 2: Install the scanner rear cover

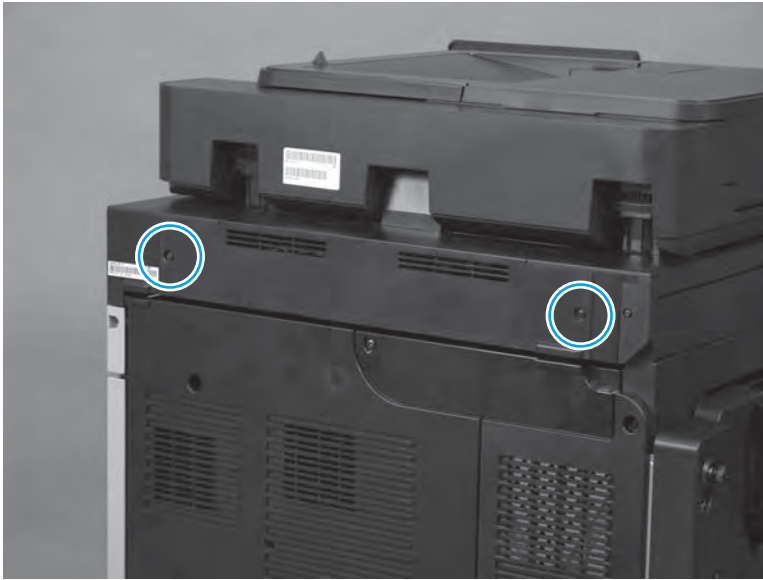
1. Install the cover.

**Figure 1-255** Install the cover



2. Install two screws.

**Figure 1-256** Install two screws



### **Step 3: Turn the product power on**

#### **After servicing**

Do the following steps:

- Connect the power cable.

- Turn on the product.

## Scanner control board (SCB)

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the SCB](#)
- [Step 4: Unpack the replacement SCB](#)
- [Step 4: Install the SCB](#)
- [Step 5: Install the scanner rear cover](#)
- [Step 6: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the scanner control board (SCB).

### Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

SCB kit part number	
<b>B3G86-67904</b>	SCB kit with instruction guide

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

**⚠ WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

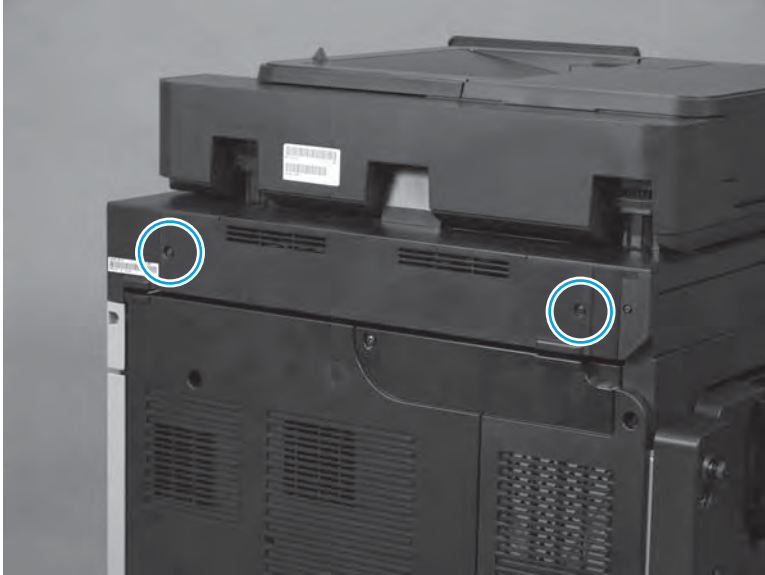
### Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover

1. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-257** Remove two screws



2. Remove the cover.

**Figure 1-258** Remove the cover

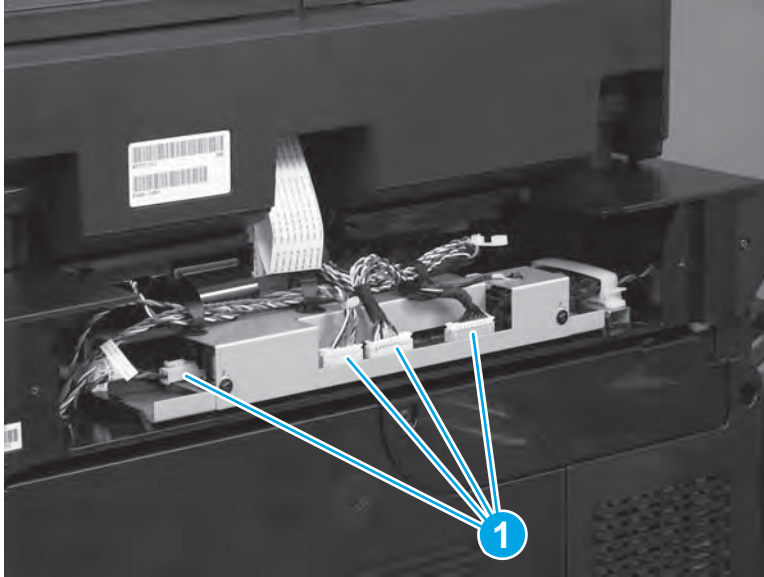


## Step 2: Remove the SCB

1. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1).

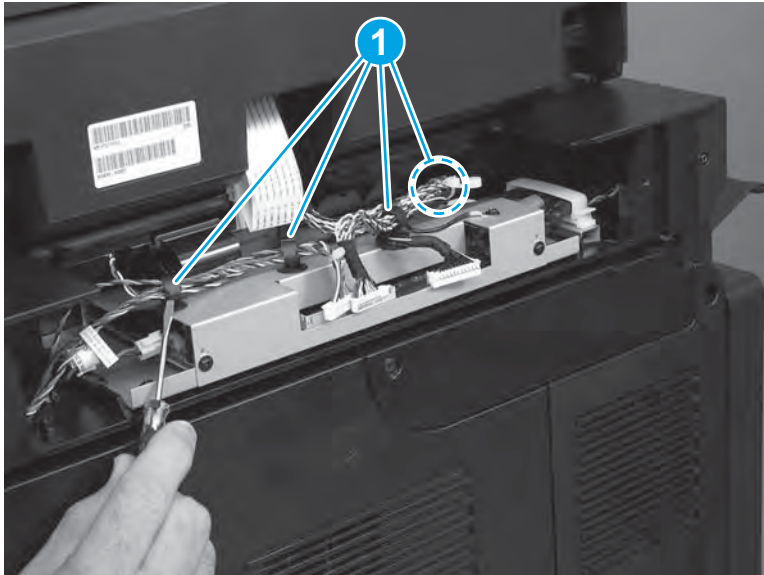


**Figure 1-259** Disconnect four connectors



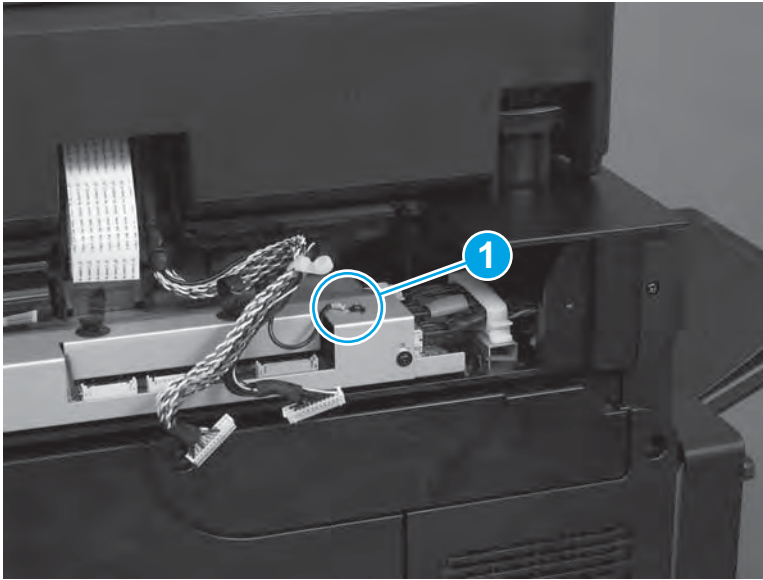
2. Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release four retainers (callout 1), and then remove the wire harnesses from the retainers.

**Figure 1-260** Release four retainers



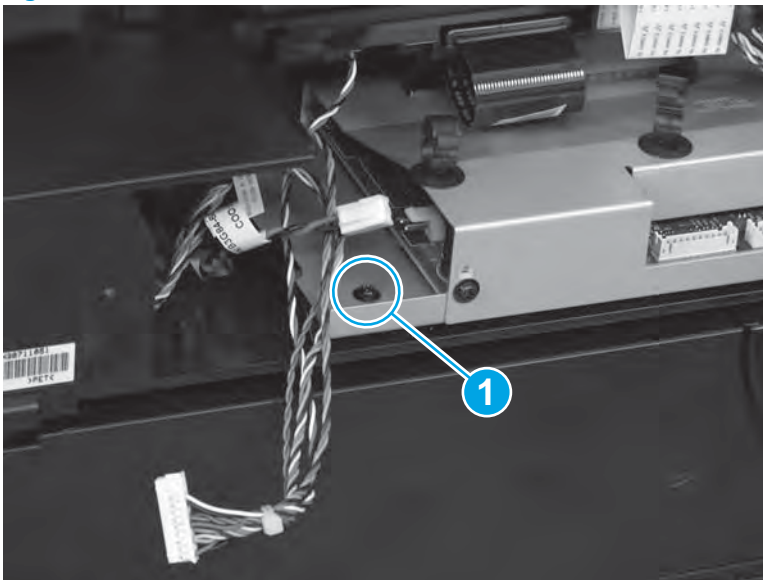
3. On the right side of the SCB, remove one ground screw (callout 1) to release the ground wire.

**Figure 1-261** Remove one screw and the ground wire



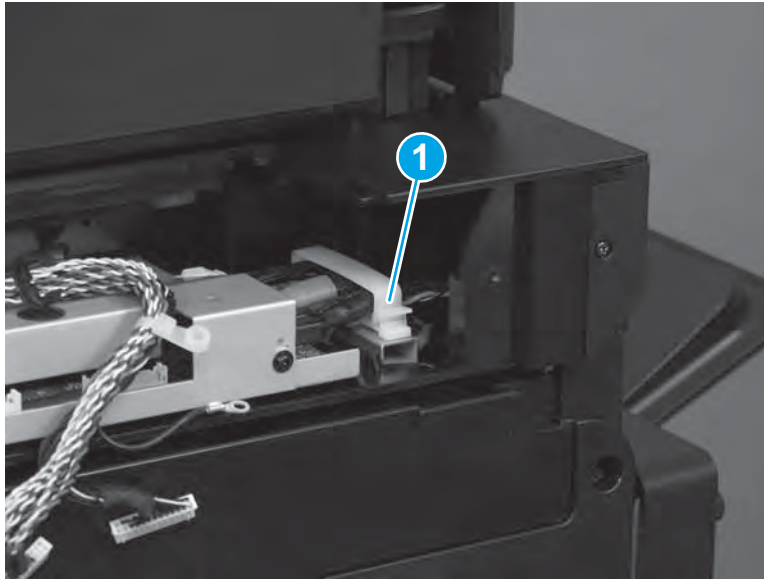
4. On the left side of the SCB, remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-262** Remove one screw



5. At the right side of the SCB, press down on the retainer (callout 1) to release it.

**Figure 1-263** Release one retainer



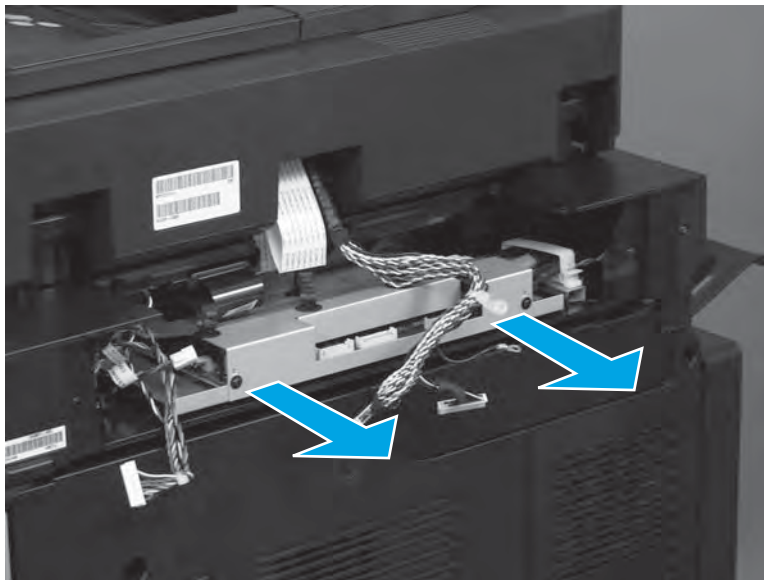
6. Partially slide the SCB out of the product.

---

**⚠ CAUTION:** The SCB is still attached to the product by two FFCs. Do not attempt to completely remove the SCB.

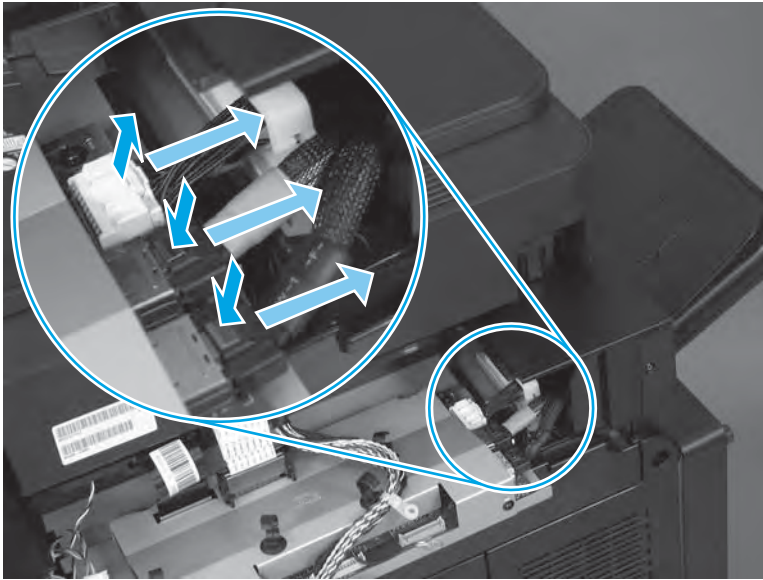
---

**Figure 1-264** Partially slide the SCB out



7. Use a small flat-blade screw driver to release three connectors (callout 1).

**Figure 1-265** Release three connectors



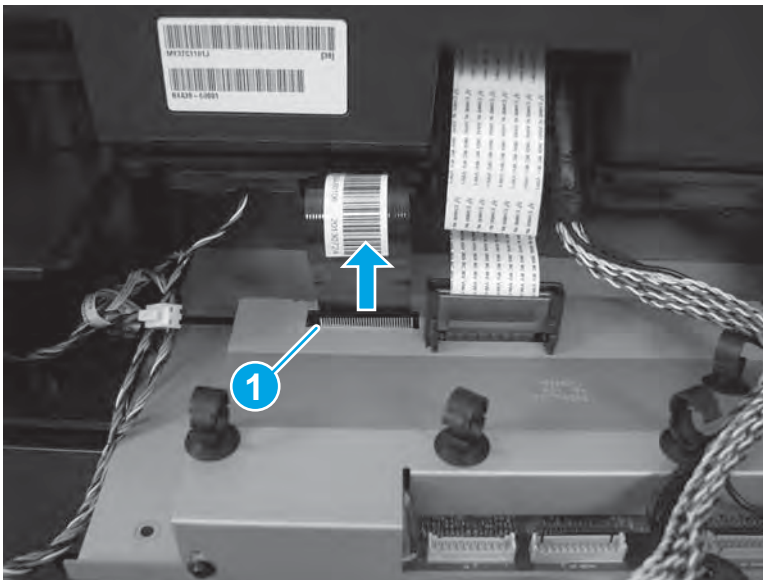
8. Pull straight up on the black scanner FFC (callout 1) to disconnect it.

---

**CAUTION:** Be careful. The FFC must be pulled straight up and out of the connector to prevent damaging it.

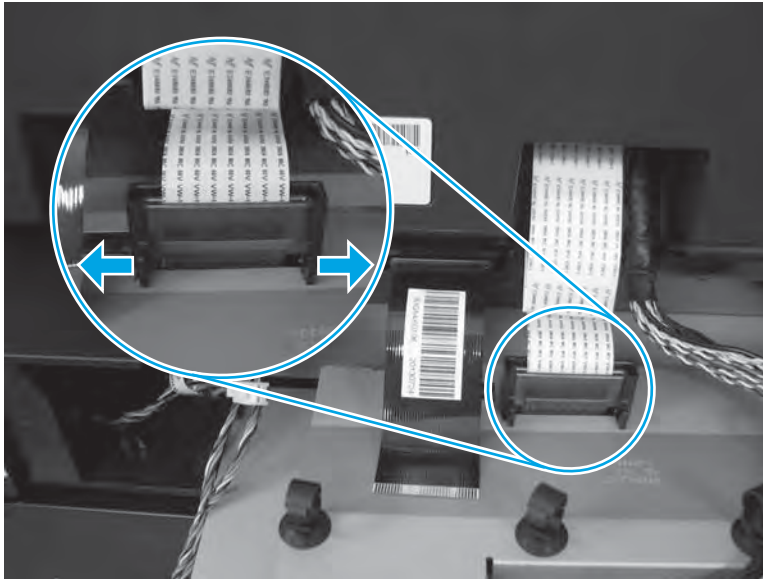
---

**Figure 1-266** Remove the FFC



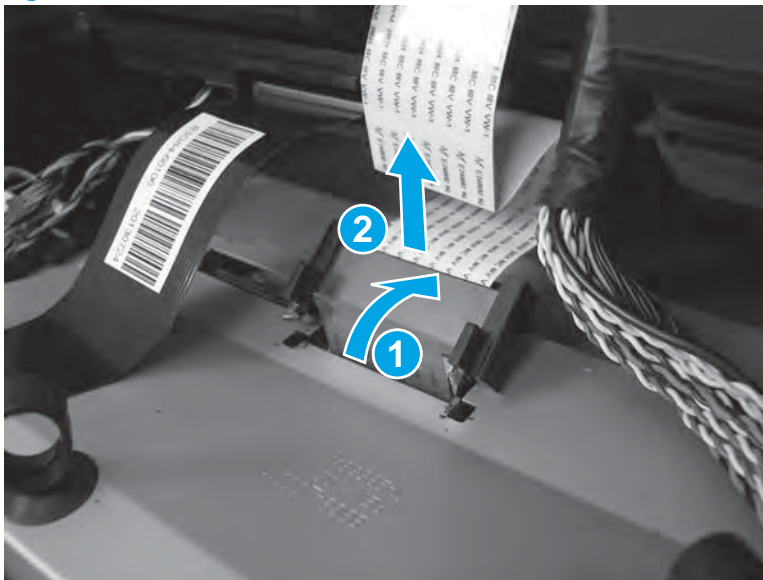
- Carefully push the tabs on the ferrite holder outward to release them.

**Figure 1-267** Release two tabs



- Rotate the holder backward (callout 1), and then remove it (callout 2). Slide the holder up the FFC.

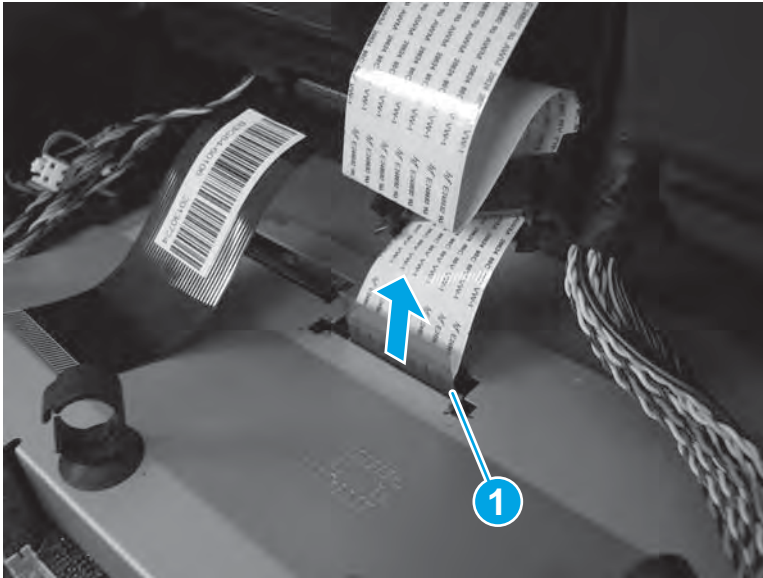
**Figure 1-268** Remove the ferrite and holder



11. Pull straight up on the white document-feeder FFC (callout 1) to disconnect it.

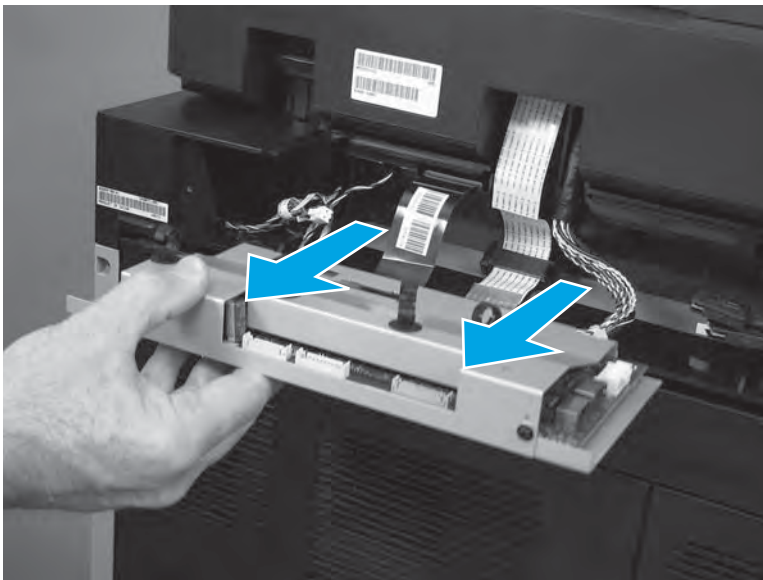
**CAUTION:** Be careful. The FFC must be pulled straight up and out of the connector to prevent damaging it.

**Figure 1-269** Remove the FFC



12. Slide the SCB out of the product to remove it.

**Figure 1-270** Remove the SCB

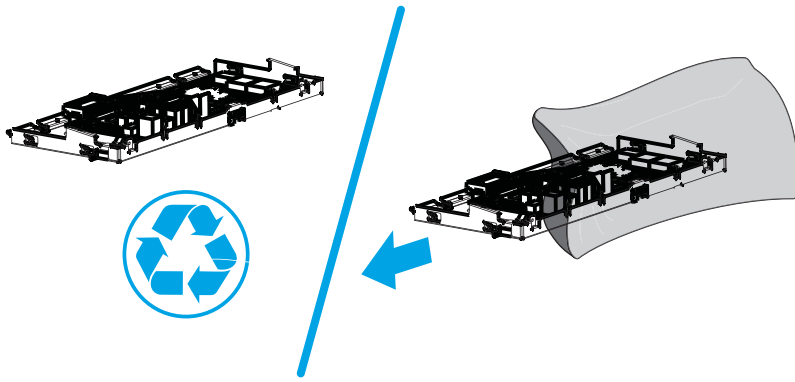


#### Step 4: Unpack the replacement SCB

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling)

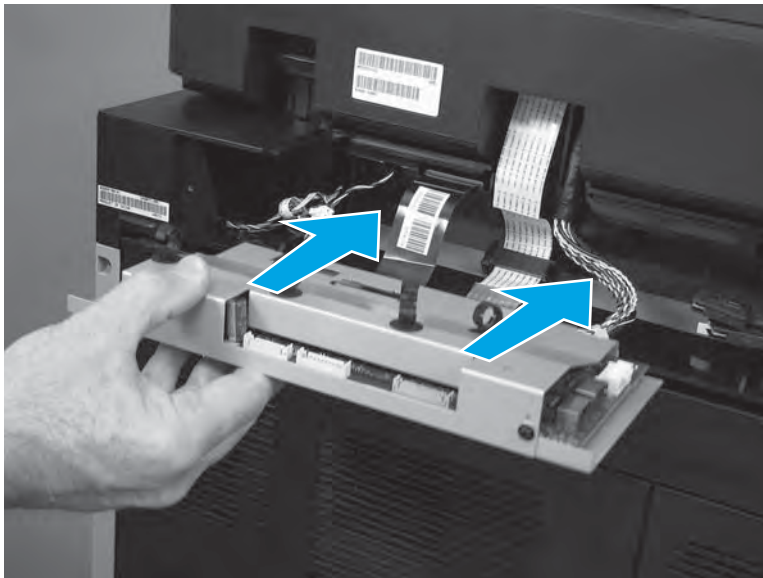
**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



#### Step 4: Install the SCB

1. Partially slide the SCB into the product—make sure that the sides of the SCB engage the black plastic rails inside the product.

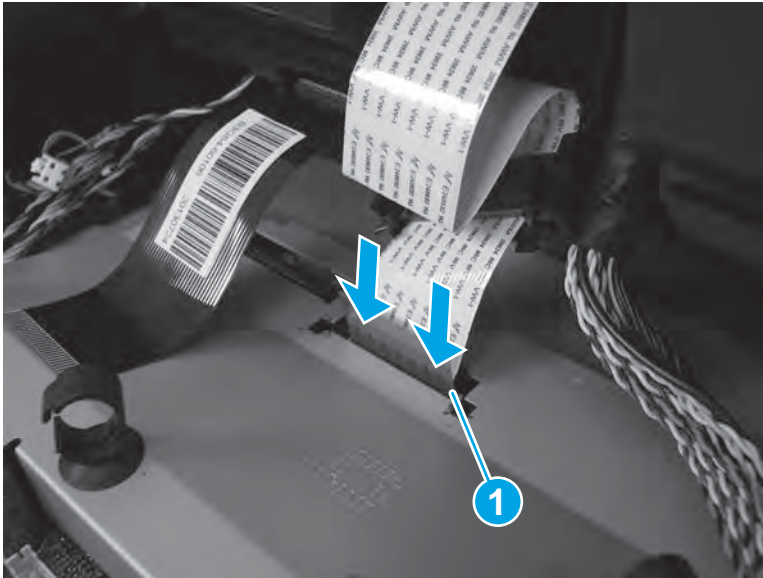
**Figure 1-271** Install the SCB



2. Push straight down on the white document-feeder FFC (callout 1) to connect it.

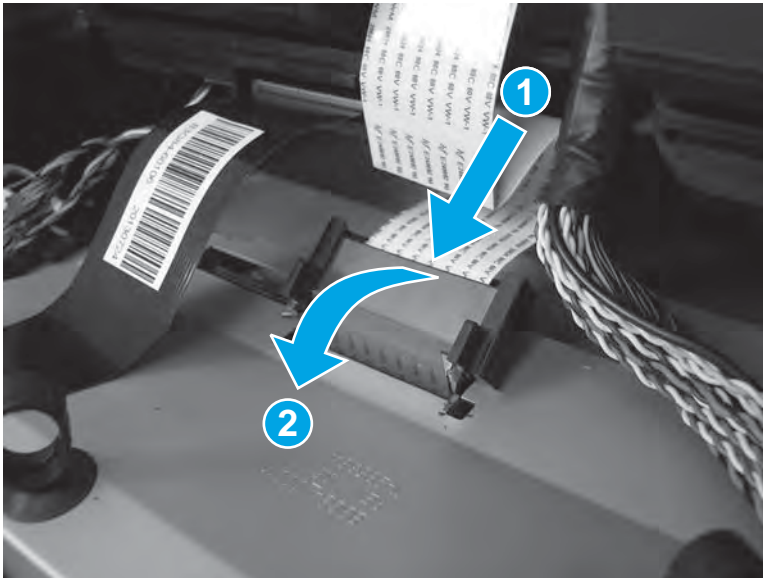
**⚠ CAUTION:** Be careful. The FFC must be pushed straight down and into the connector to prevent damaging it.

**Figure 1-272** Connect the FFC




3. Insert the tabs at the back edge of the ferrite holder in the slot on the SCB chassis (callout 1), and then rotate (callout 2) the holder forward to install it.

**Figure 1-273** Install the ferrite and holder

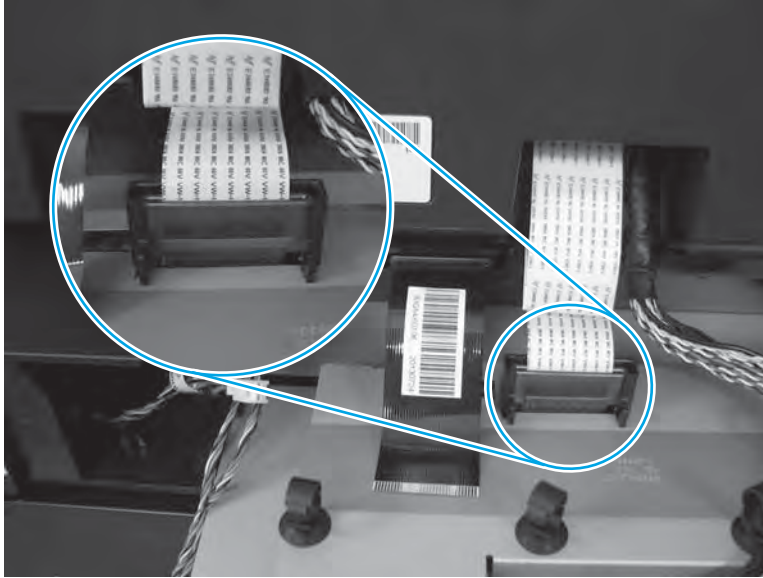





4. Make sure that the tabs on the ferrite holder snap into the SCB chassis.

 **NOTE:** When correctly installed, the ferrite holder is flat against the SCB chassis and securely fastened.

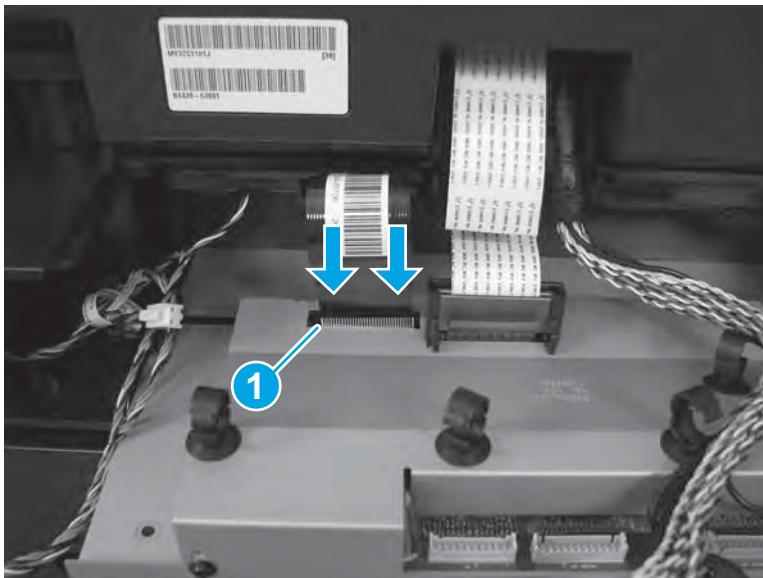
**Figure 1-274** Check the two tabs




5. Push straight down on the black scanner FFC (callout 1) to connect it.

 **CAUTION:** Be careful. The FFC must be pushed straight down and into the connector to prevent damaging it.

**Figure 1-275** Connect the FFC

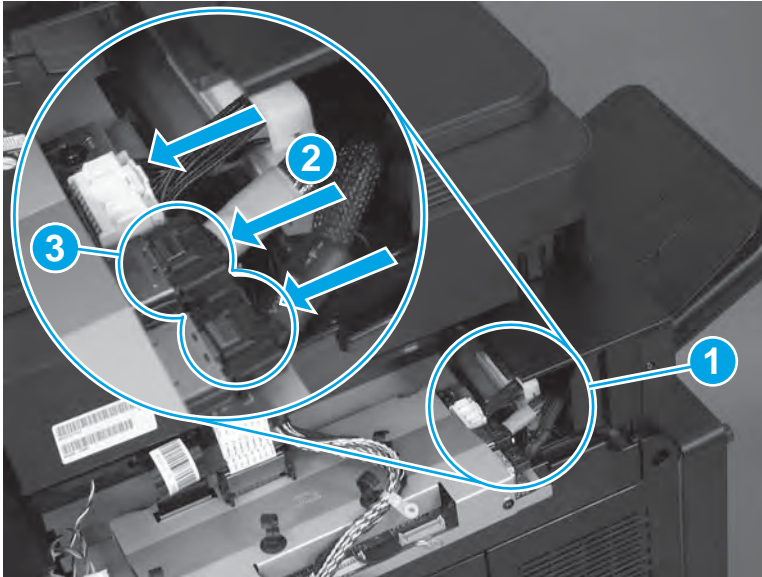


6. Connect three connectors (callout 1).

 **Reinstallation tip:** The wire harness with the blue band (callout 2) connects to the inner connector on the SCB when reinstalled.

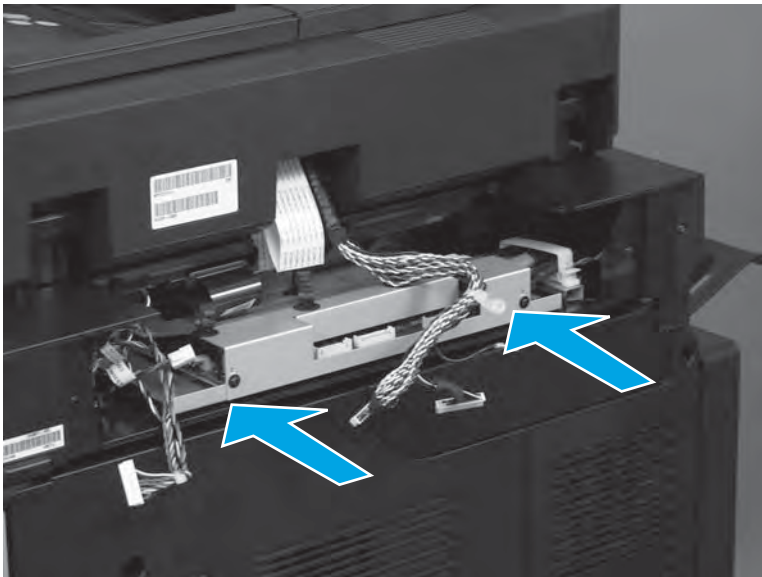
When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callout 3) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

**Figure 1-276** Connect three connectors



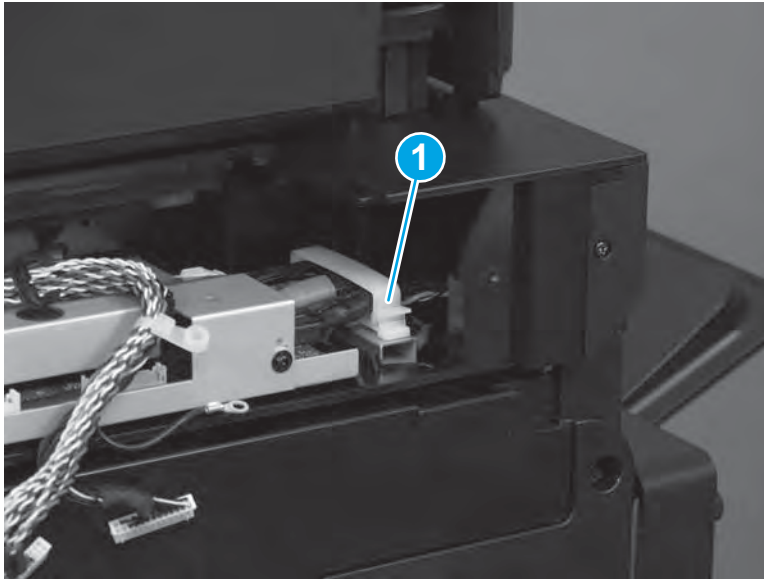
7. Slide the SCB into the product.

**Figure 1-277** Slide the SCB in



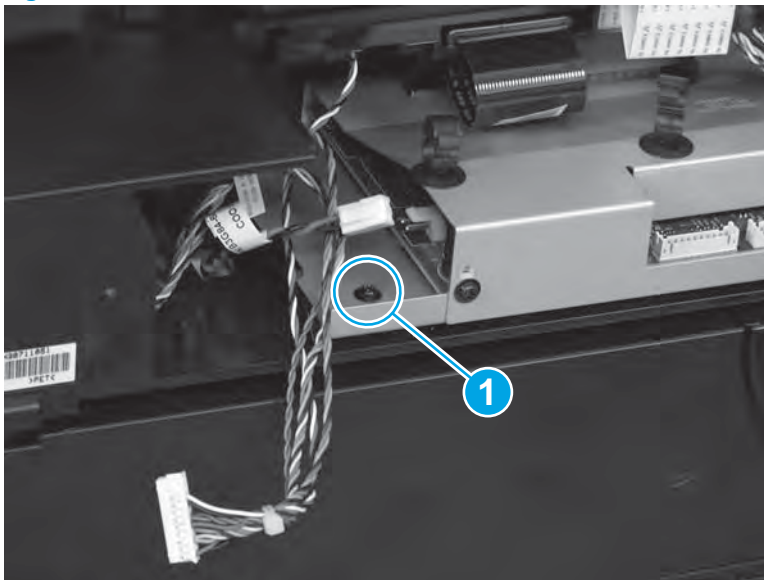
8. At the right side of the SCB, fasten one retainer (callout 1).

**Figure 1-278** Fasten one retainer



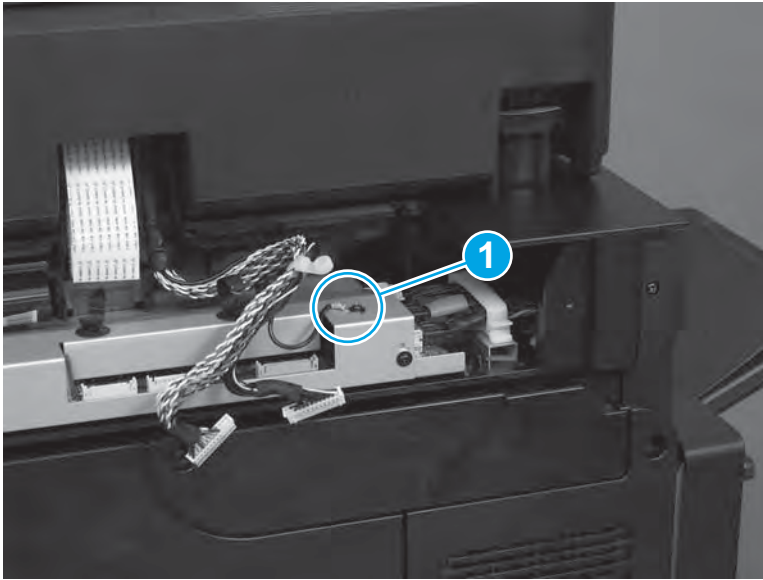
9. At the left side of the SCB, install one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-279** Install one screw



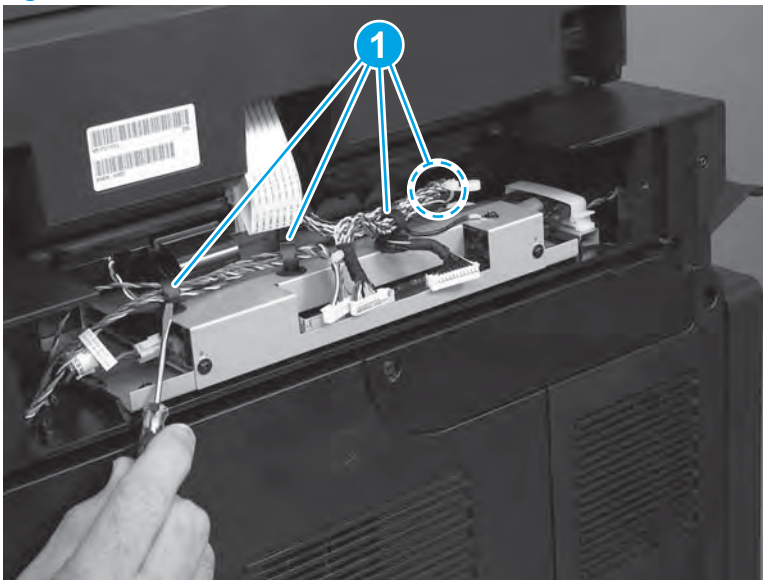
10. At the right side of the SCB, Install the ground wire and one ground screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-280** Install the ground wire and one screw



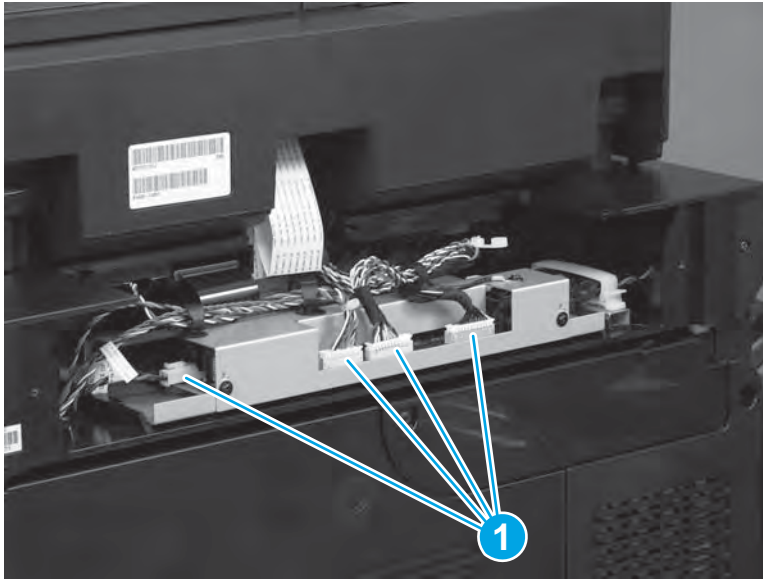
11. Install the wire harnesses in the four retainers (callout 1).

**Figure 1-281** Install the wire harnesses



12. Connect four connectors (callout 1).

**Figure 1-282** Connect four connectors



### Step 5: Install the scanner rear cover

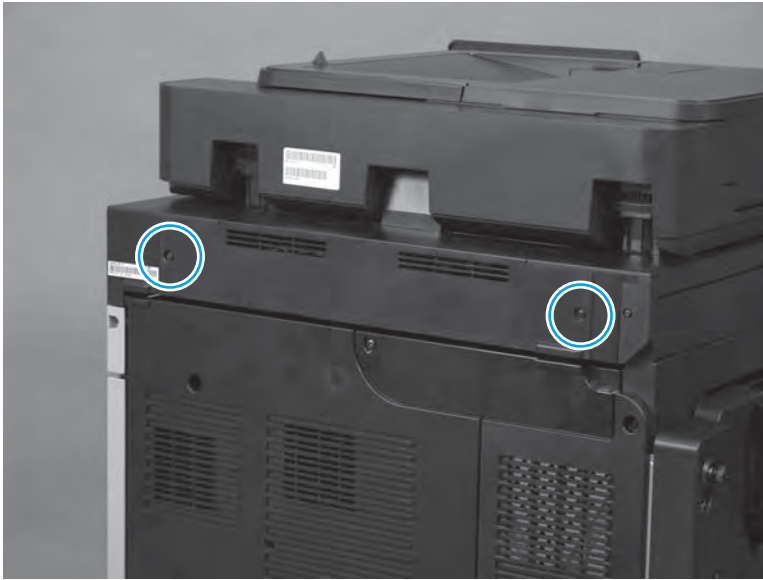
1. Install the cover.

**Figure 1-283** Install the cover



2. Install two screws.

**Figure 1-284** Install two screws



## Step 6: Turn the product power on

### After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

### Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling.)

## Document feeder

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the backside background selector](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the scanner rear cover](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the SCB](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the document feeder](#)
- [Step 5: Unpack the replacement document feeder](#)
- [Step 6: Install the document feeder](#)
- [Step 7: Install the SCB](#)
- [Step 8: Install the scanner rear cover](#)
- [Step 9: Install the backside background selector](#)
- [Step 10: Install the document feeder white backing](#)
- [Step 11: Reset the supplies counters and calibrate the scanner](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the document feeder.

### Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

---

Document feeder kit part number	
---------------------------------	--

---

<b>B3G86-67901</b>
--------------------

Document feeder with instruction guide
--


**NOTE:** The document feeder kit includes the document feeder white backing kit.

---

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

---

### Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## Step 1: Remove the backside background selector

 **Reinstallation tip:** Set the backside background selector selector aside to install it on the replacement document feeder.

---

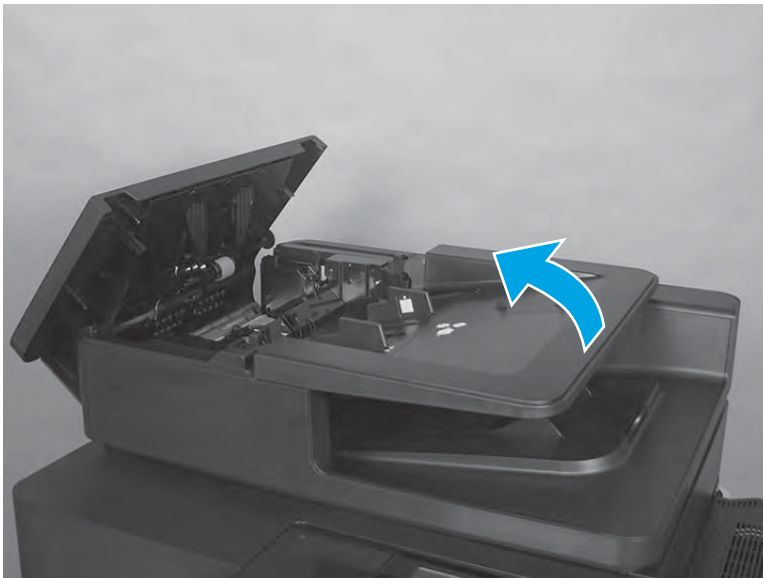
1. Open the document-feeder door.

**Figure 1-285** Open the document-feeder door



2. Rotate the input tray up.

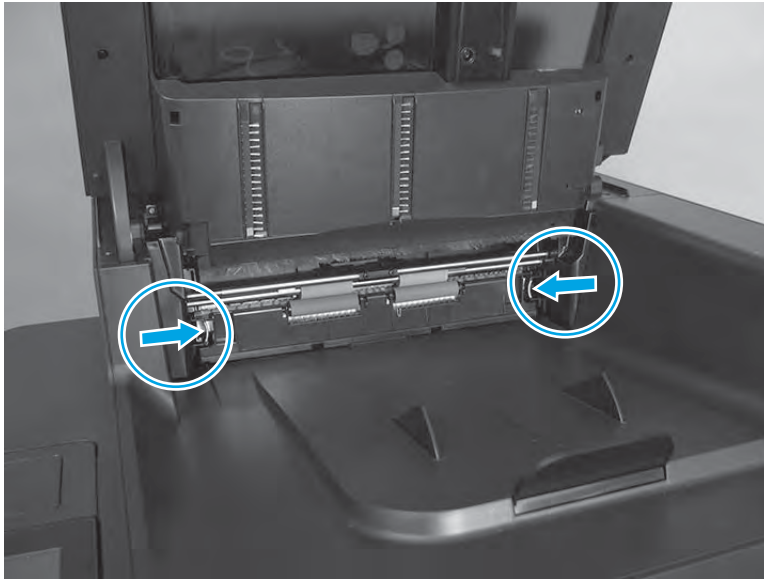
**Figure 1-286** Rotate the input tray up





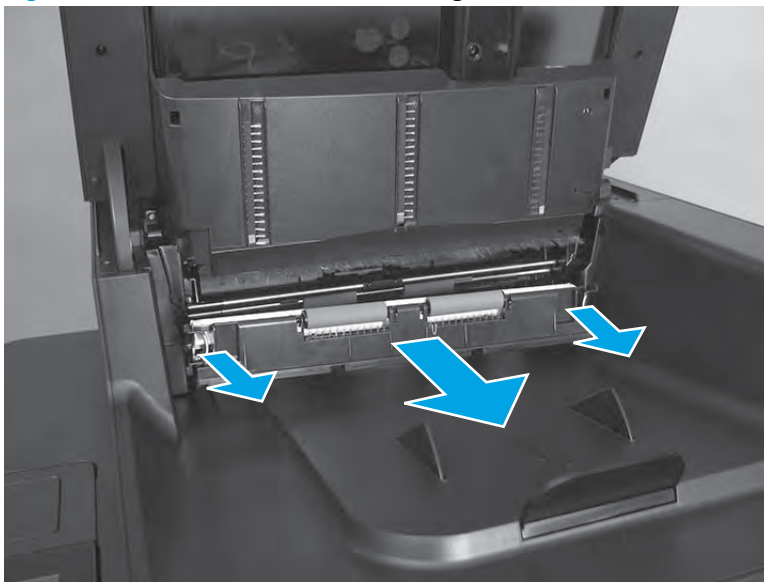
3. Release two tabs.

**Figure 1-287** Release two tabs



4. Slide the backside background selector away from the product to remove it.

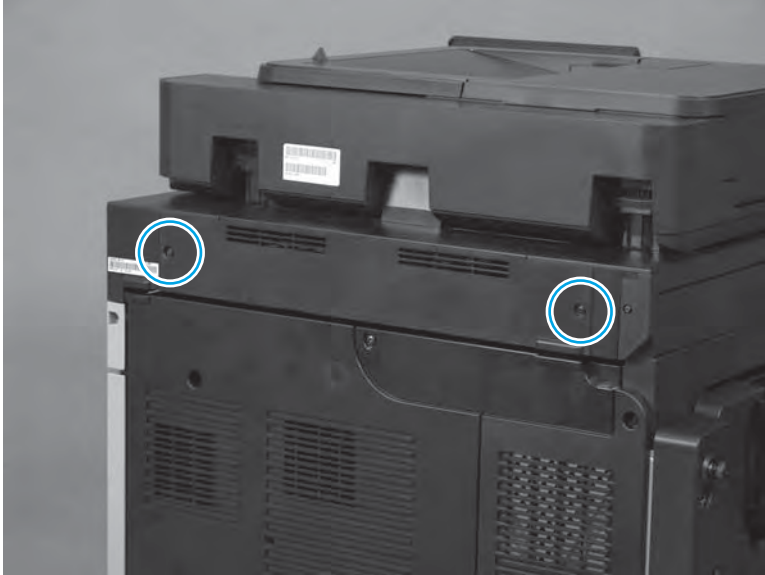
**Figure 1-288** Remove the backside background selector



## Step 2: Remove the scanner rear cover

1. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-289** Remove two screws



2. Remove the cover.

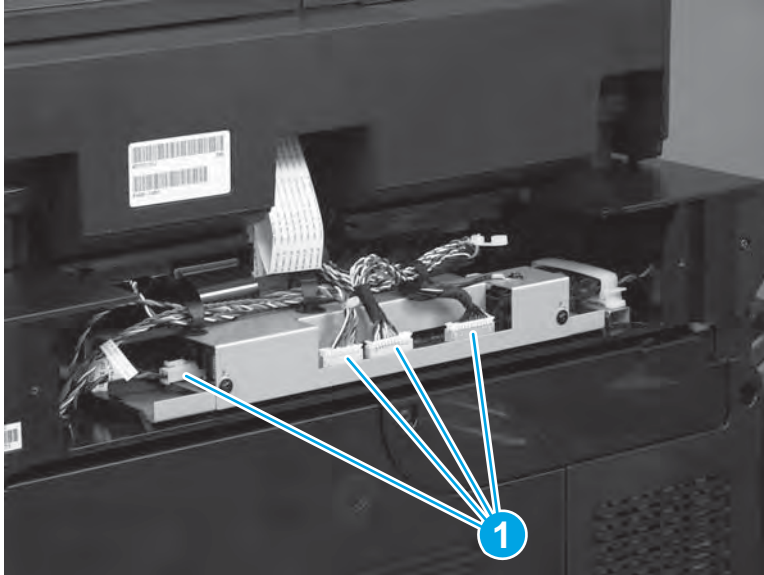
**Figure 1-290** Remove the cover



### Step 3: Remove the SCB

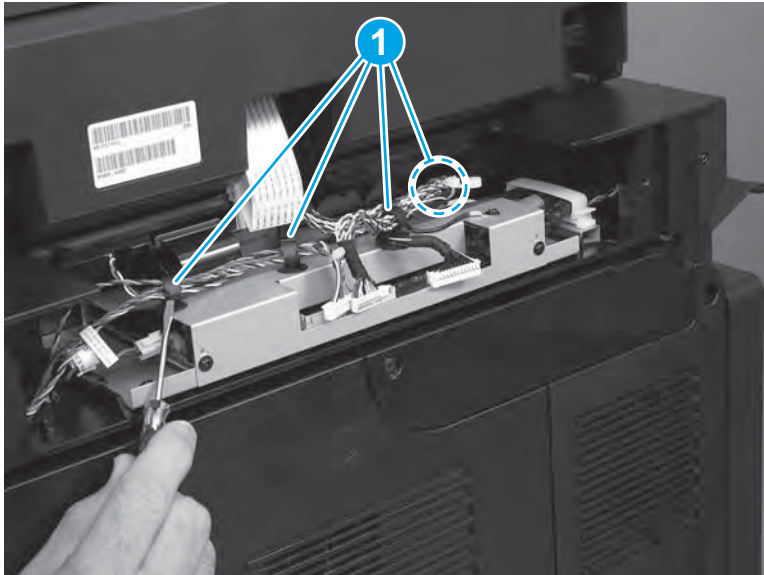
1. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1).

**Figure 1-291** Disconnect four connectors



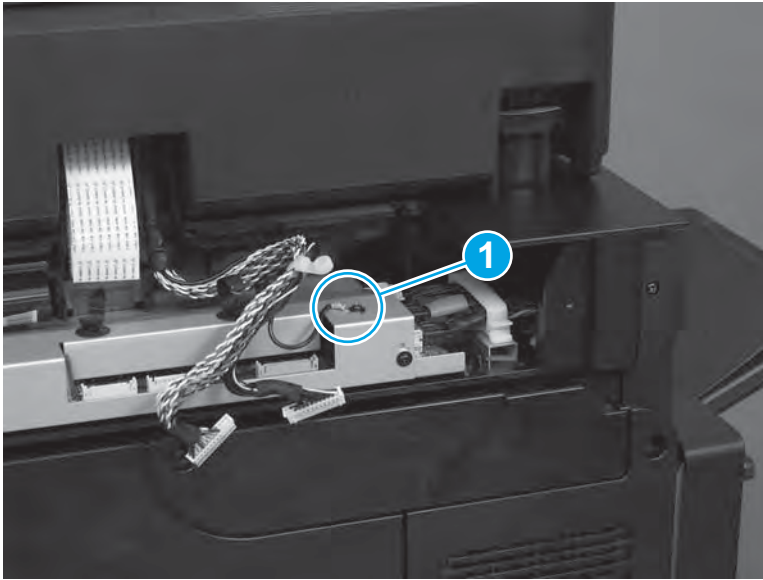
2. Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release four retainers (callout 1), and then remove the wire harnesses from the retainers.

**Figure 1-292** Release four retainers



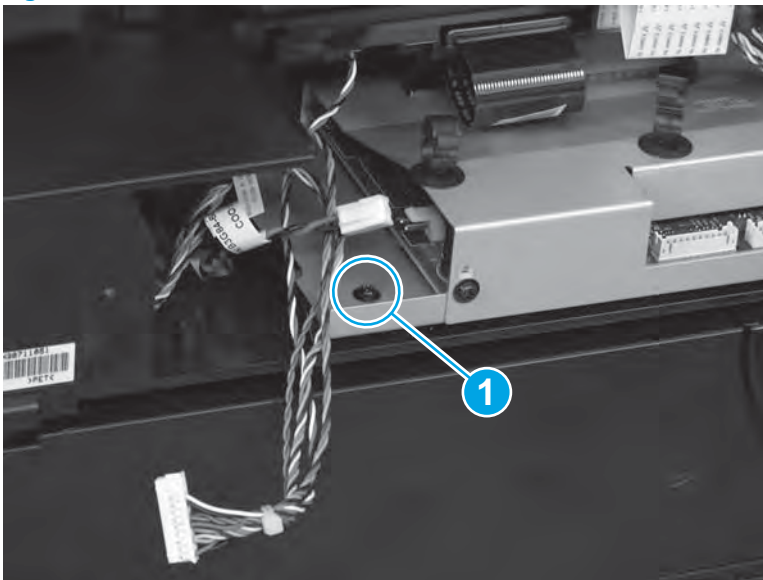
3. On the right side of the SCB, remove one ground screw (callout 1) to release the ground wire.

**Figure 1-293** Remove one screw and the ground wire



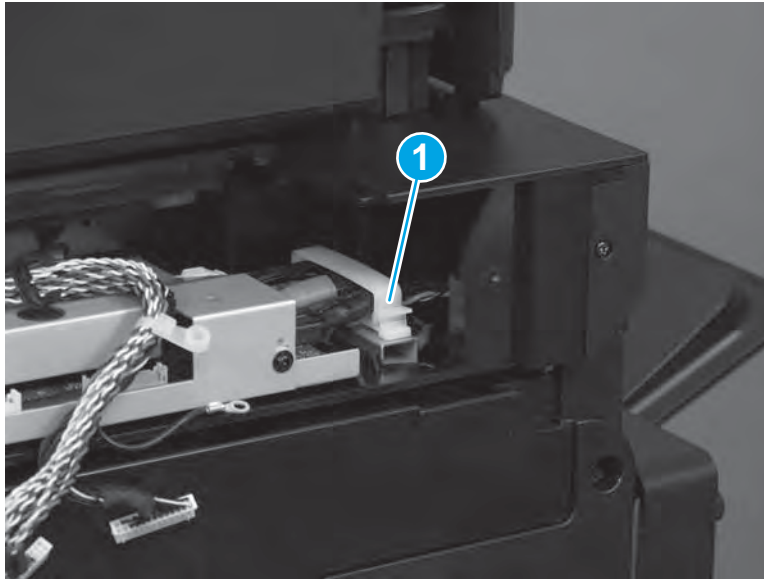
4. On the left side of the SCB, remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-294** Remove one screw



5. At the right side of the SCB, press down on the retainer (callout 1) to release it.

**Figure 1-295** Release one retainer



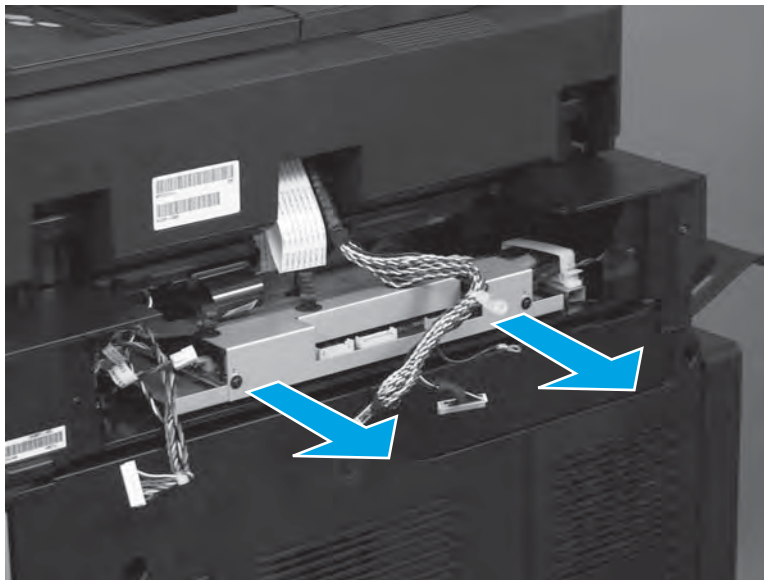
6. Partially slide the SCB out of the product.

---

**⚠ CAUTION:** The SCB is still attached to the product by two FFCs. Do not attempt to completely remove the SCB.

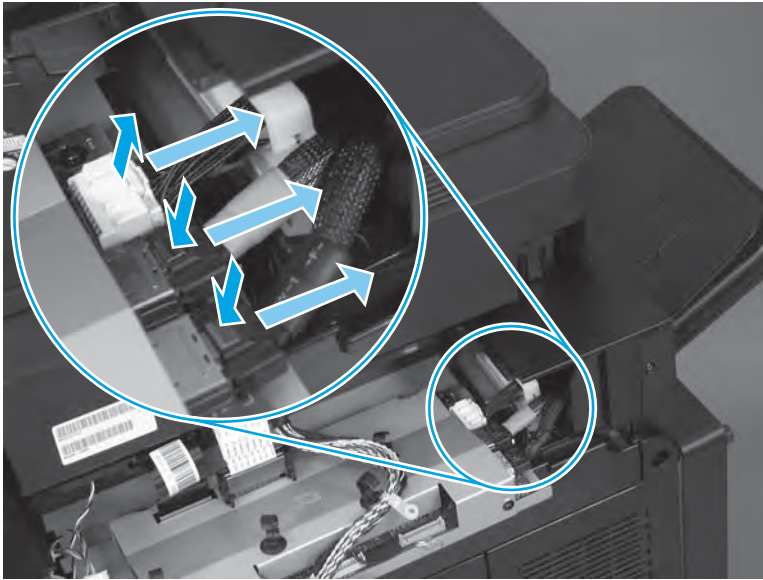
---

**Figure 1-296** Partially slide the SCB out



7. Use a small flat-blade screw driver to release three connectors (callout 1).

**Figure 1-297** Release three connectors



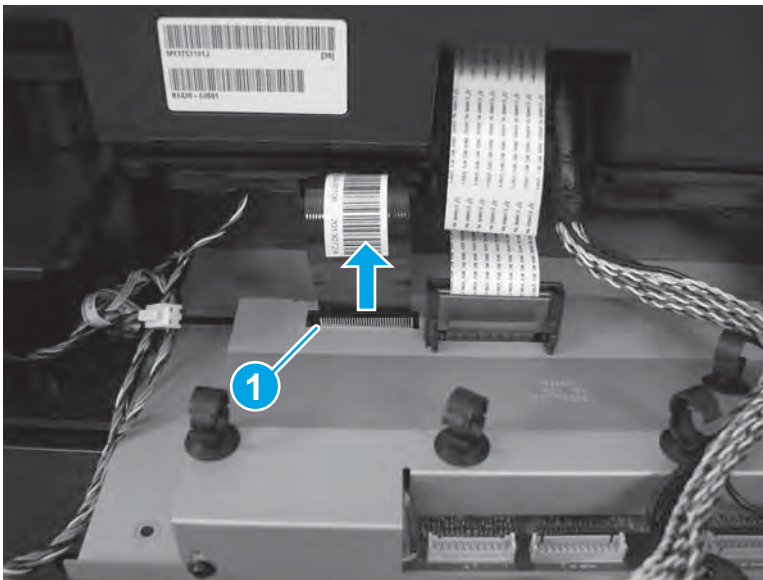
8. Pull straight up on the black scanner FFC (callout 1) to disconnect it.

---

**CAUTION:** Be careful. The FFC must be pulled straight up and out of the connector to prevent damaging it.

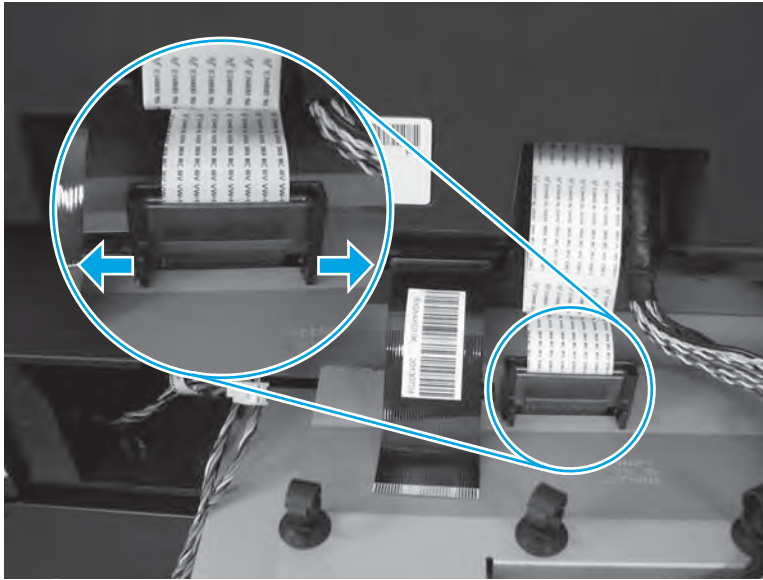
---

**Figure 1-298** Remove the FFC



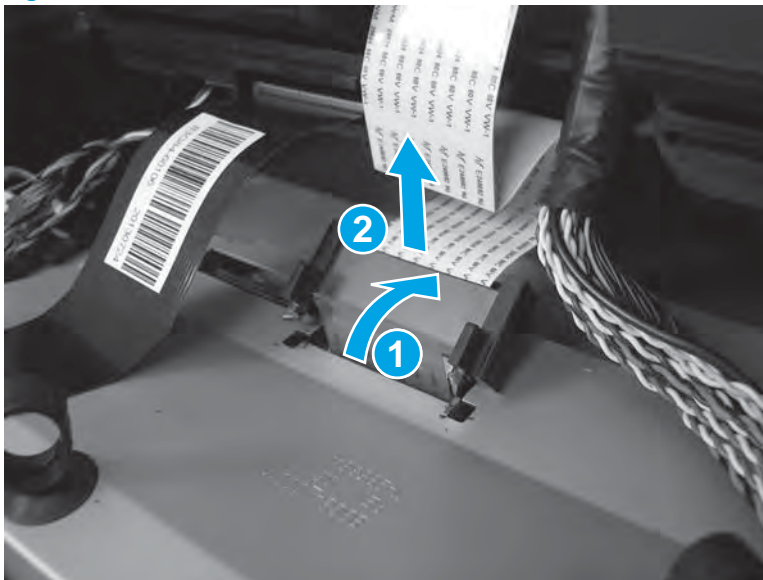
- Carefully push the tabs on the ferrite holder outward to release them.

**Figure 1-299** Release two tabs



- Rotate the holder backward (callout 1), and then remove it (callout 2). Slide the holder up the FFC.

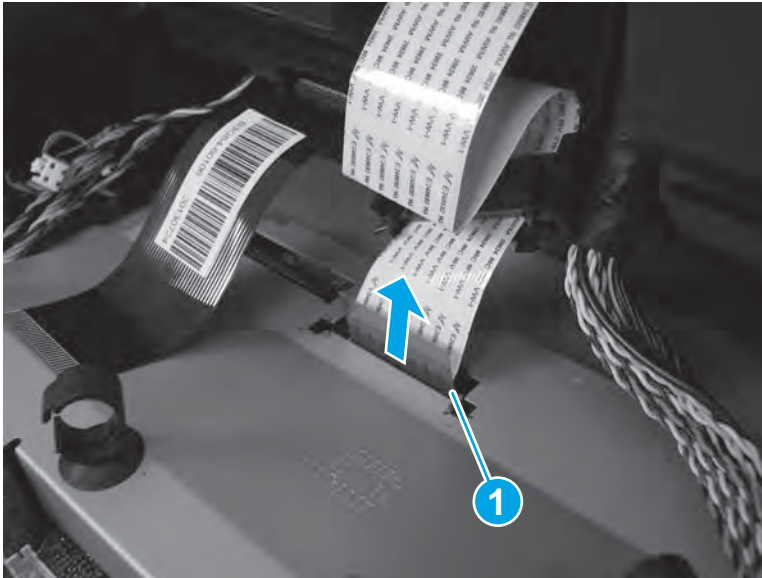
**Figure 1-300** Remove the ferrite and holder



11. Pull straight up on the white document-feeder FFC (callout 1) to disconnect it.

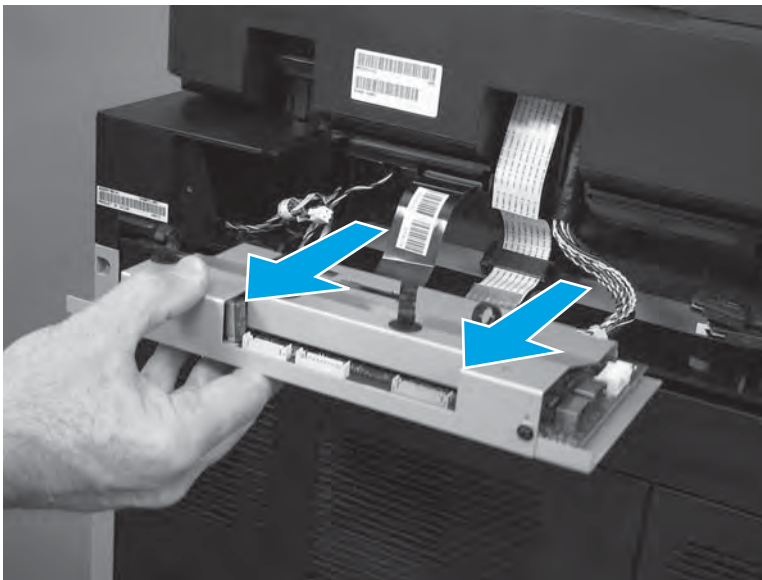
**CAUTION:** Be careful. The FFC must be pulled straight up and out of the connector to prevent damaging it.

**Figure 1-301** Remove the FFC



12. Slide the SCB out of the product to remove it.

**Figure 1-302** Remove the SCB



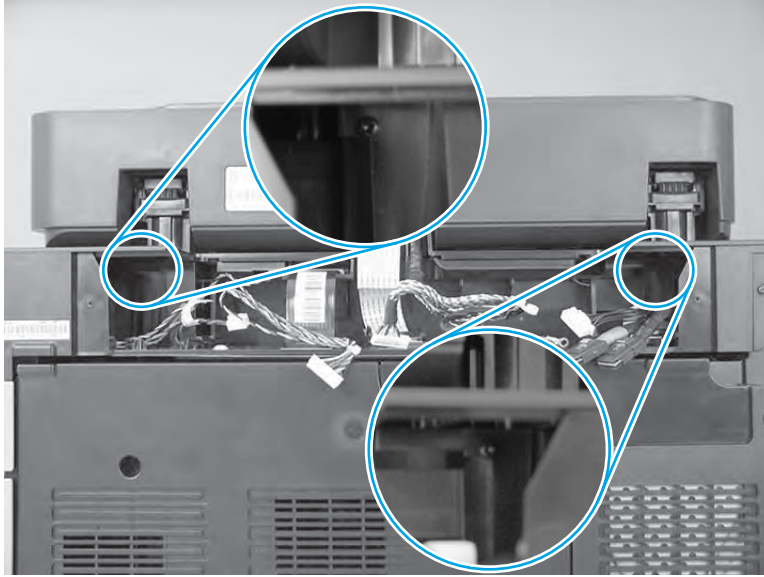
#### Step 4: Remove the document feeder

1. Loosen, but do not remove, two document-feeder hinge-locking screws. Back them out about 13 mm (0.5 in).

**NOTE:** Do not remove these screws. They are difficult to reinstall.



**Figure 1-303** Loosen two screws



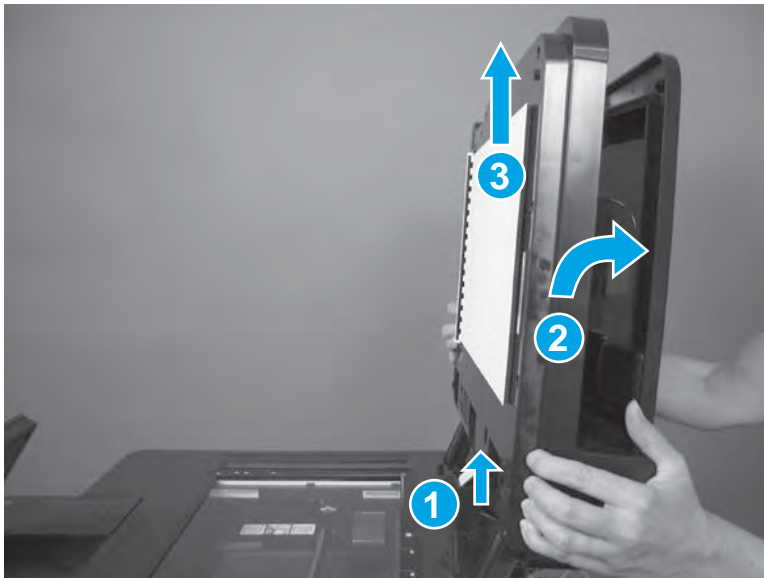
2. Open the document feeder, lift it up until it stops (callout 1), tilt it back (callout 2), and then pull it straight up (callout 3) to remove it.

---

**CAUTION:** The document feeder weighs 5.6 kg (12.3 lb).

---

**Figure 1-304** Remove the document feeder



### Step 5: Unpack the replacement document feeder

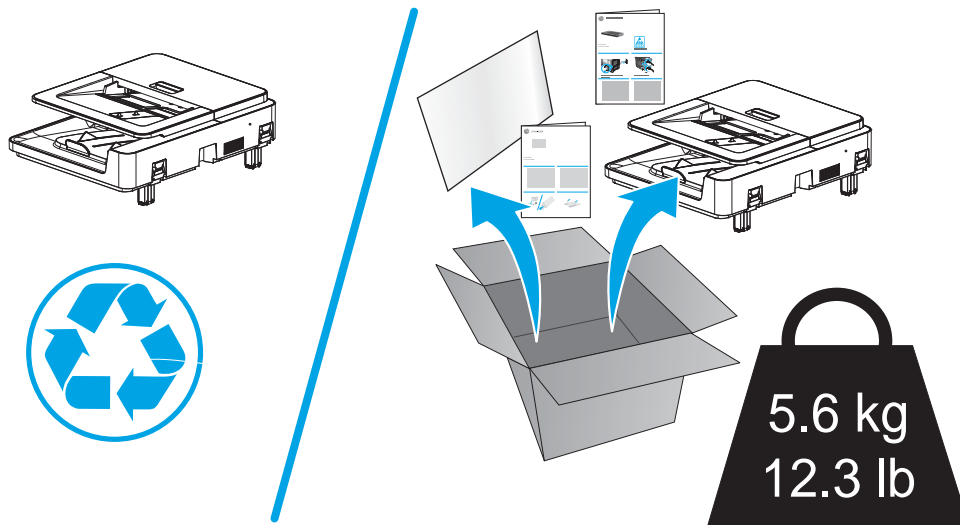
Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling)

---

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the assembly.

---



## Step 6: Install the document feeder

1. Before reinstalling the document feeder, make sure that the FFC and the wire harness is correctly routed through the openings in the cover.

**⚠ CAUTION:** If the FFC and wire harness are not correctly routed, they will be damaged when the document feeder is installed.

**Figure 1-305** Route the document feeder FFC and cables

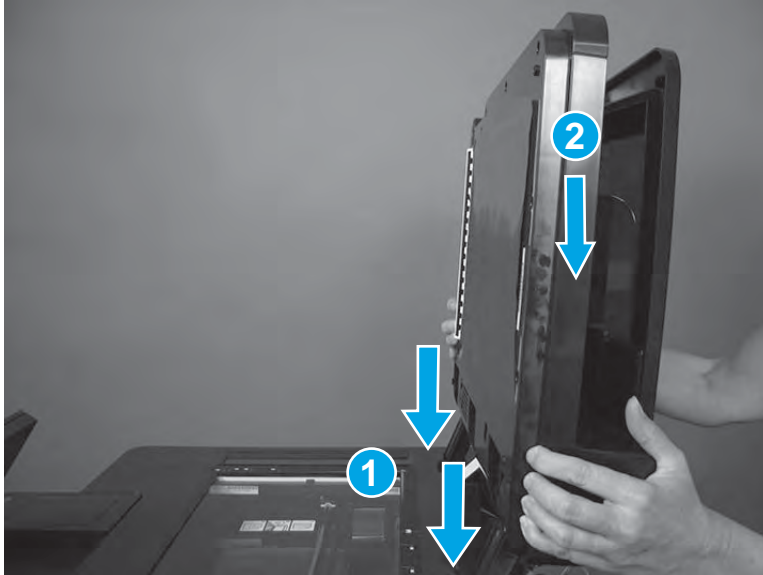


2. Position the document feeder hinges in the holes provided (callout 1), and then lower the hinges into the holes (callout 2).

**CAUTION:** The document feeder weighs 5.6 kg (12.3 lb).

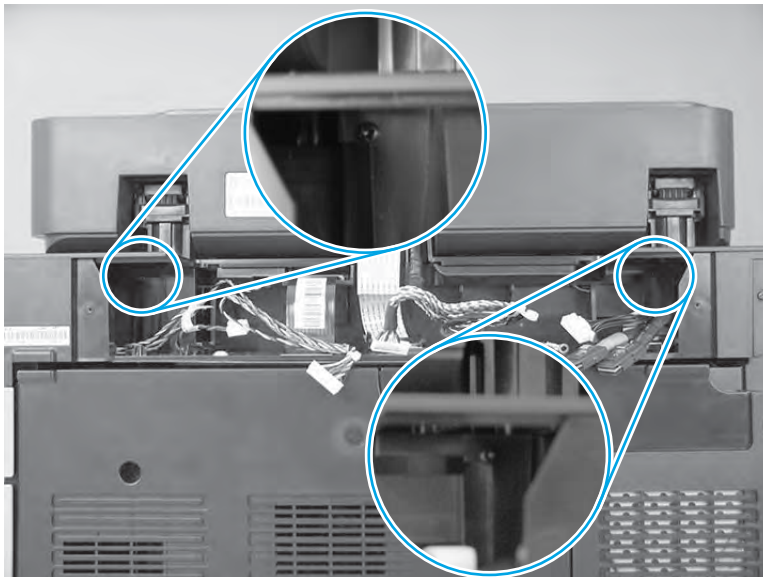
**IMPORTANT:** Make sure that the document feeder wire harness and FFC are correctly routed at the back of the product before lowering the document feeder into place.

**Figure 1-306** Install the document feeder



3. Close the document feeder, and then tighten the two document-feeder hinge-locking screws.

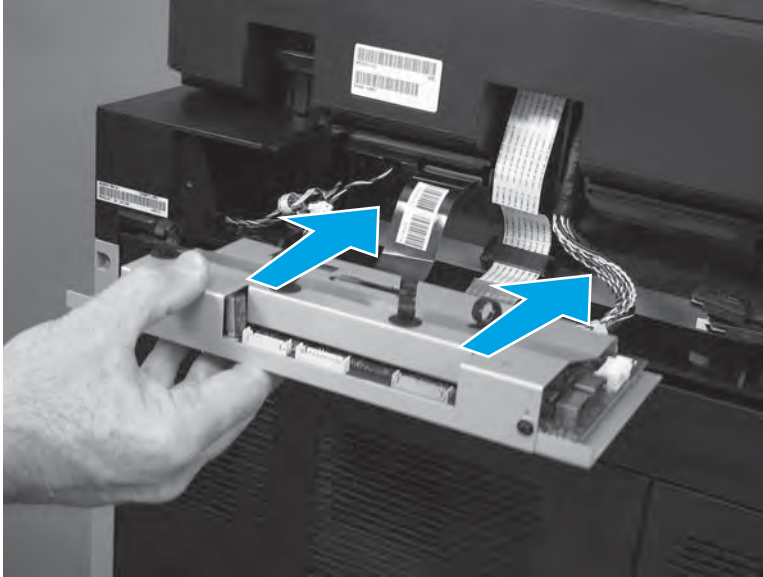
**Figure 1-307** Tighten two screws



## Step 7: Install the SCB

1. Partially slide the SCB into the product—make sure that the sides of the SCB engage the black plastic rails inside the product.

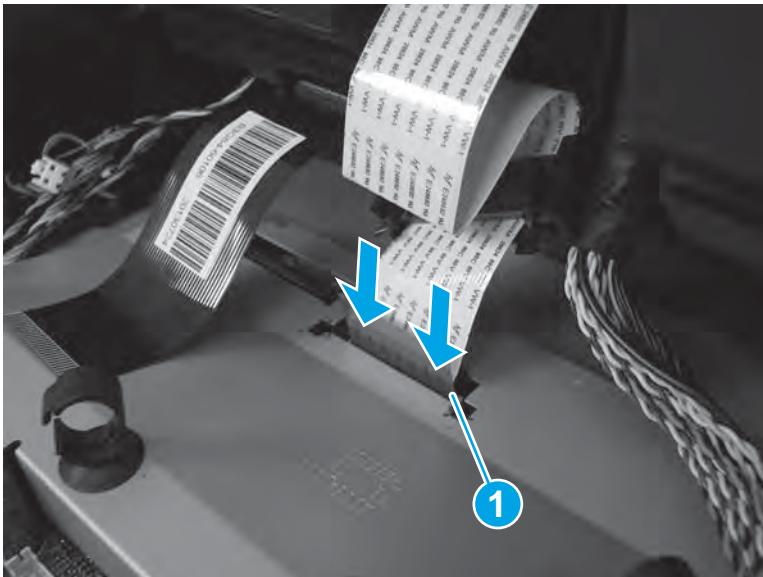
**Figure 1-308** Install the SCB



2. Push straight down on the white document-feeder FFC (callout 1) to connect it.

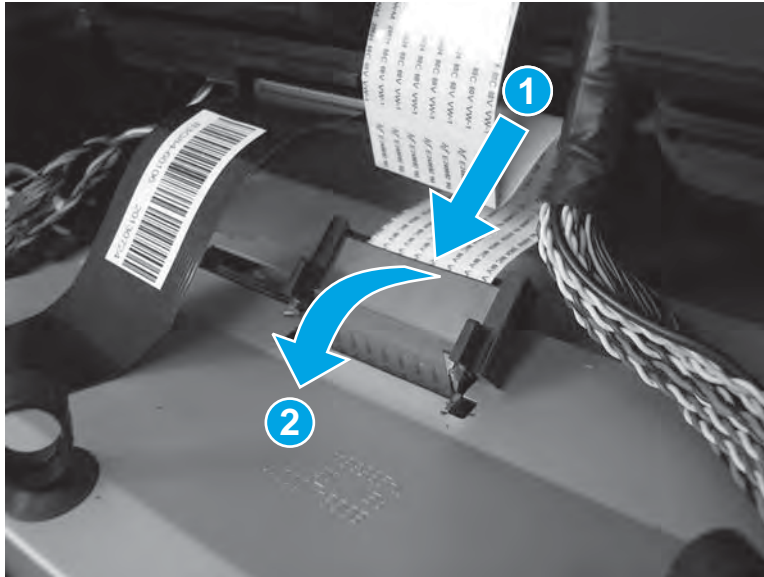
**⚠ CAUTION:** Be careful. The FFC must be pushed straight down and into the connector to prevent damaging it.

**Figure 1-309** Connect the FFC



3. Insert the tabs at the back edge of the ferrite holder in the slot on the SCB chassis (callout 1), and then rotate (callout 2) the holder forward to install it.

**Figure 1-310** Install the ferrite and holder

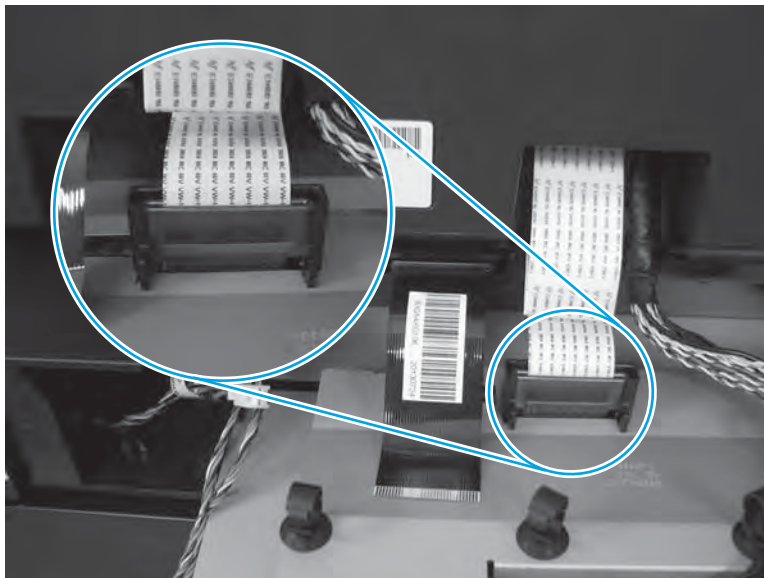


4. Make sure that the tabs on the ferrite holder snap into the SCB chassis.



**NOTE:** When correctly installed, the ferrite holder is flat against the SCB chassis and securely fastened.

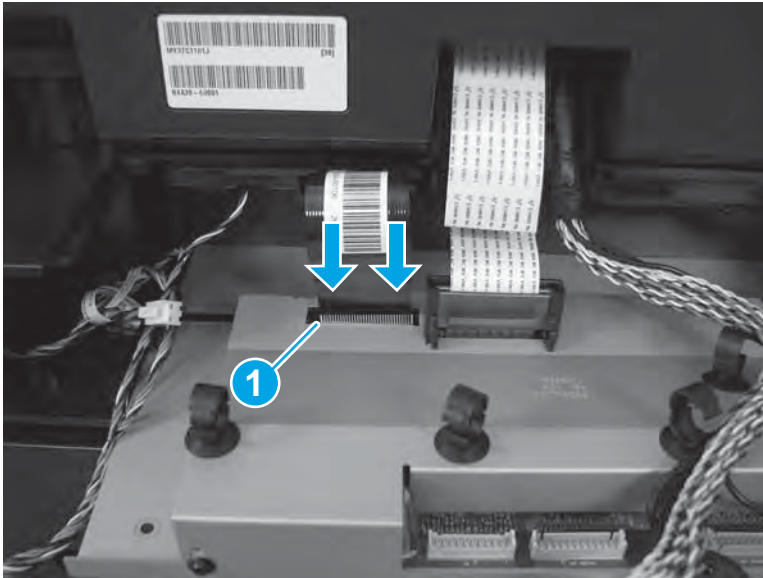
**Figure 1-311** Check the two tabs



5. Push straight down on the black scanner FFC (callout 1) to connect it.

**⚠ CAUTION:** Be careful. The FFC must be pushed straight down and into the connector to prevent damaging it.

**Figure 1-312** Connect the FFC

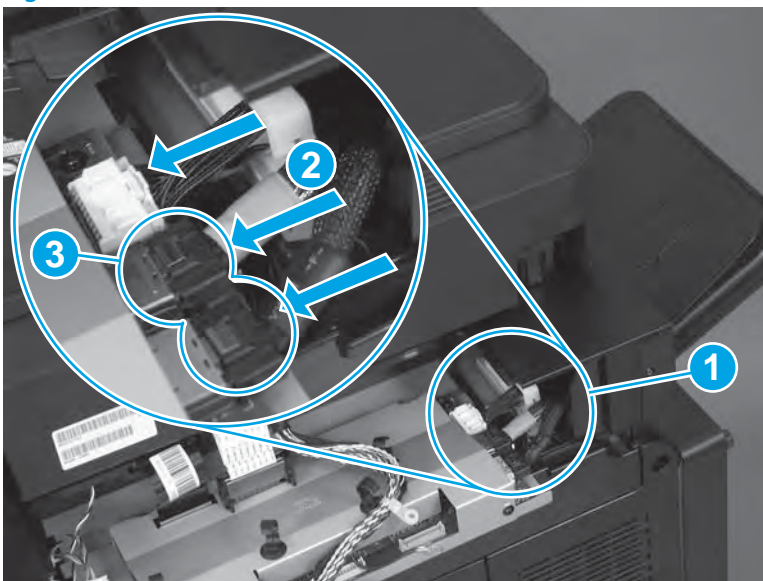


6. Connect three connectors (callout 1).

**💡 Reinstallation tip:** The wire harness with the blue band (callout 2) connects to the inner connector on the SCB when reinstalled.

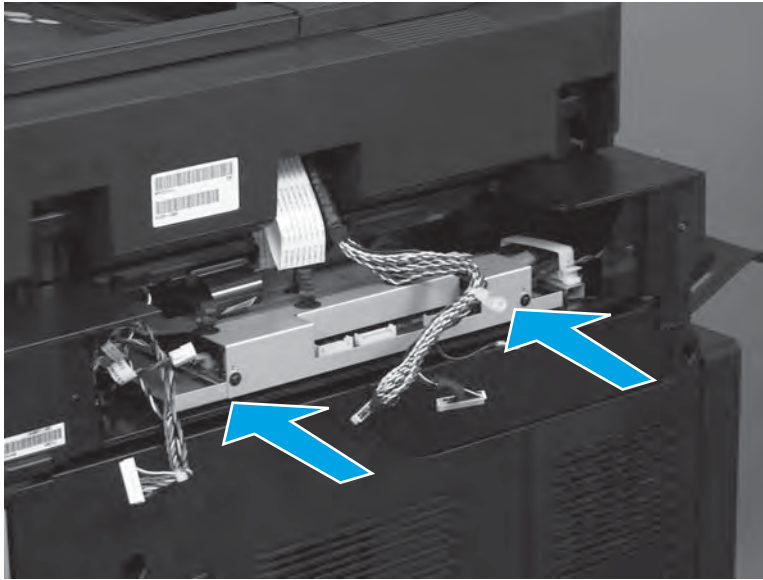
When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callout 3) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

**Figure 1-313** Connect three connectors



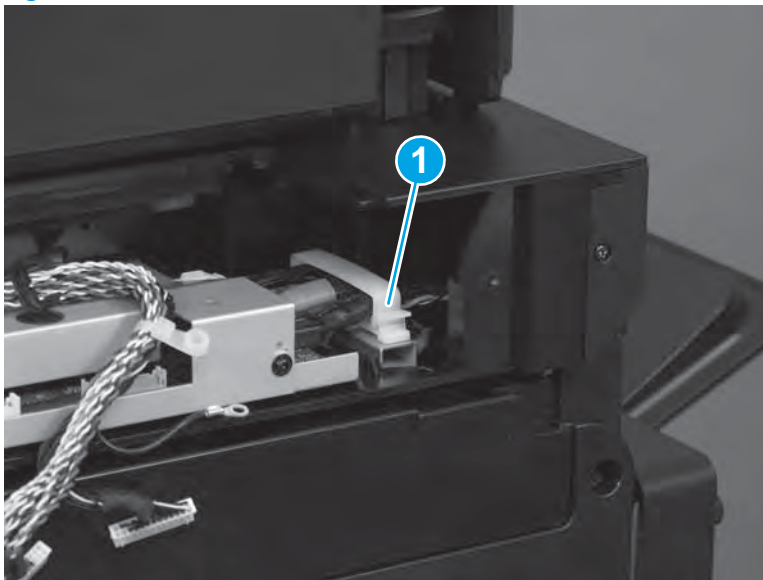
7. Slide the SCB into the product.

**Figure 1-314** Slide the SCB in



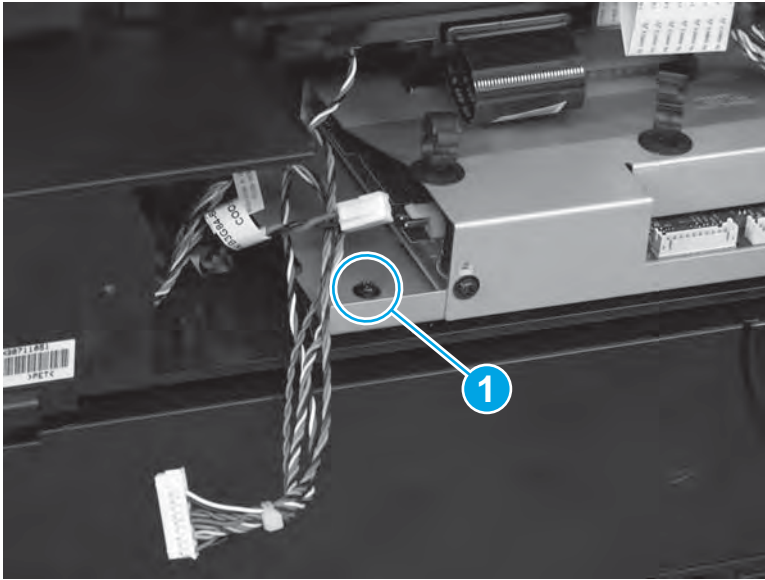
8. At the right side of the SCB, fasten one retainer (callout 1).

**Figure 1-315** Fasten one retainer



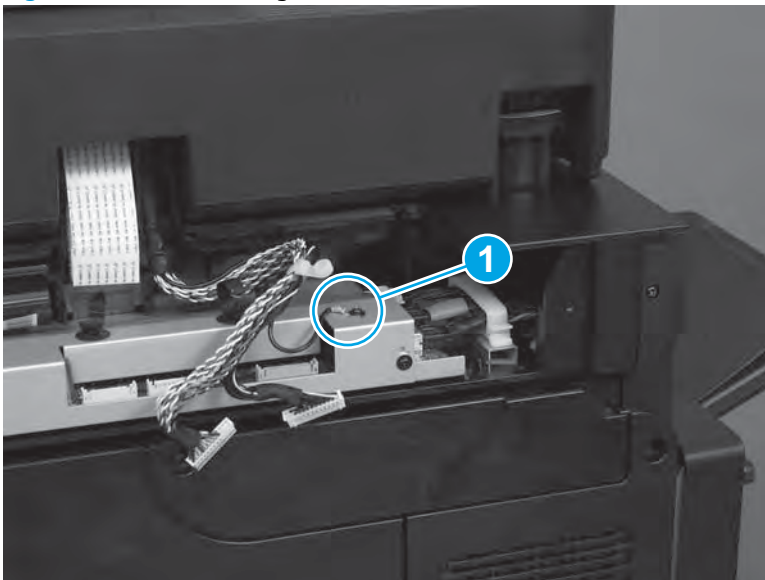
9. At the left side of the SCB, install one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-316** Install one screw



10. At the right side of the SCB, install the ground wire and one ground screw (callout 1).

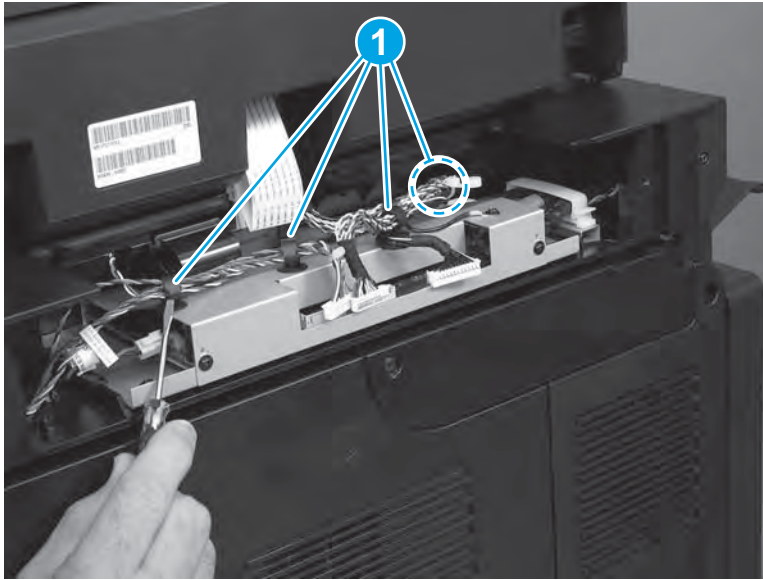
**Figure 1-317** Install the ground wire and one screw





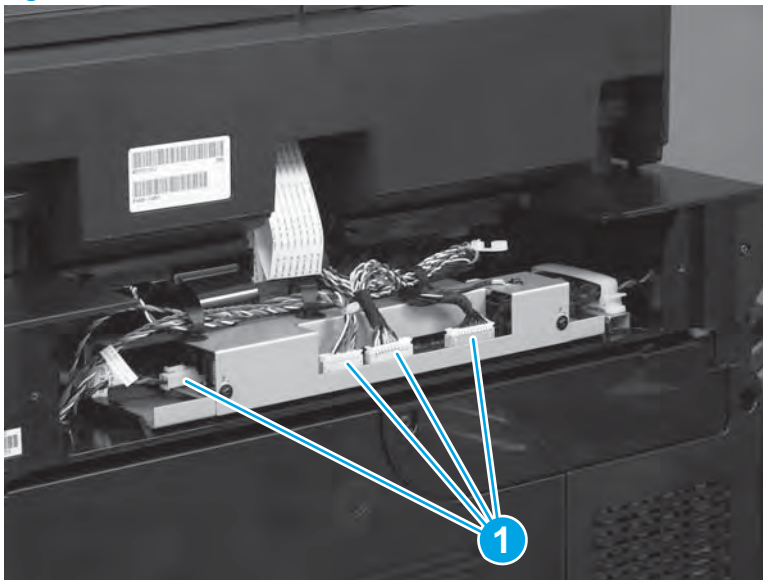
11. Install the wire harnesses in the four retainers (callout 1).

**Figure 1-318** Install the wire harnesses



12. Connect four connectors (callout 1).

**Figure 1-319** Connect four connectors



## Step 8: Install the scanner rear cover

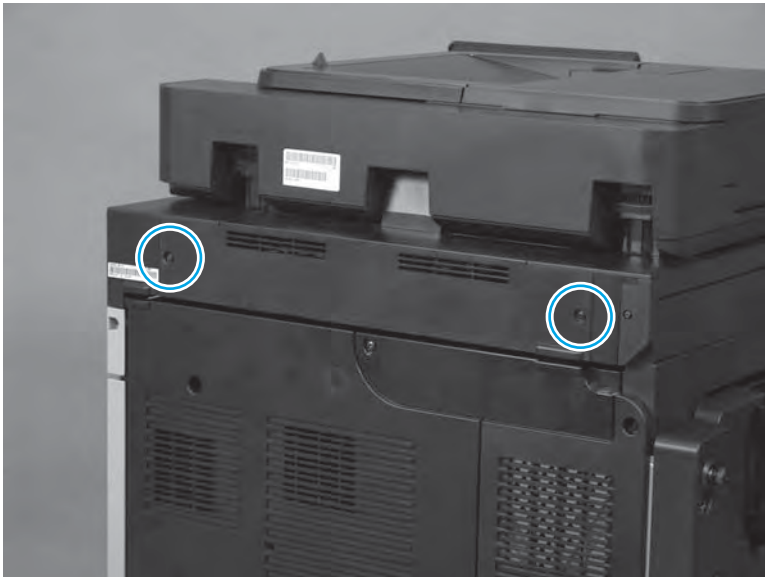
1. Install the cover.

**Figure 1-320** Install the cover




2. Install two screws.

**Figure 1-321** Install two screws

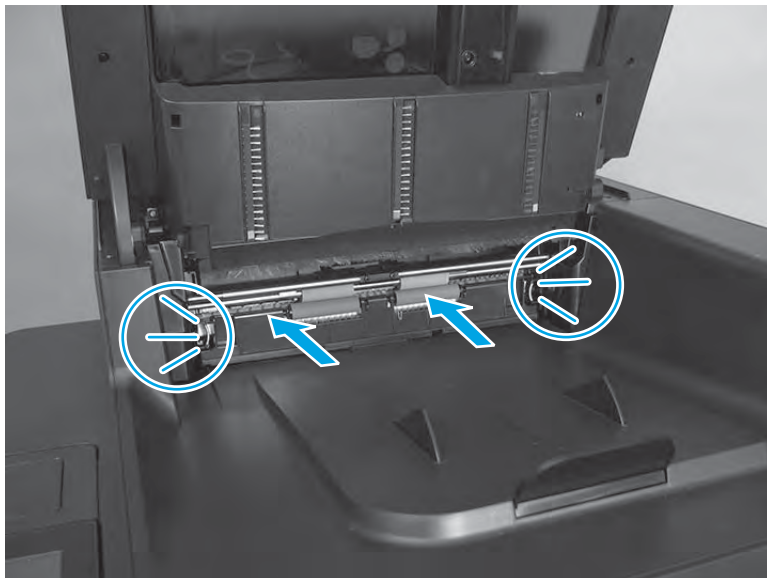


## Step 9: Install the backside background selector

1. Push in on the background selector until the tabs snap into place.

 **Reinstallation tip:** If jams occur after the assembly is installed, make sure that the assembly is fully seated.

**Figure 1-322** Install the background selector



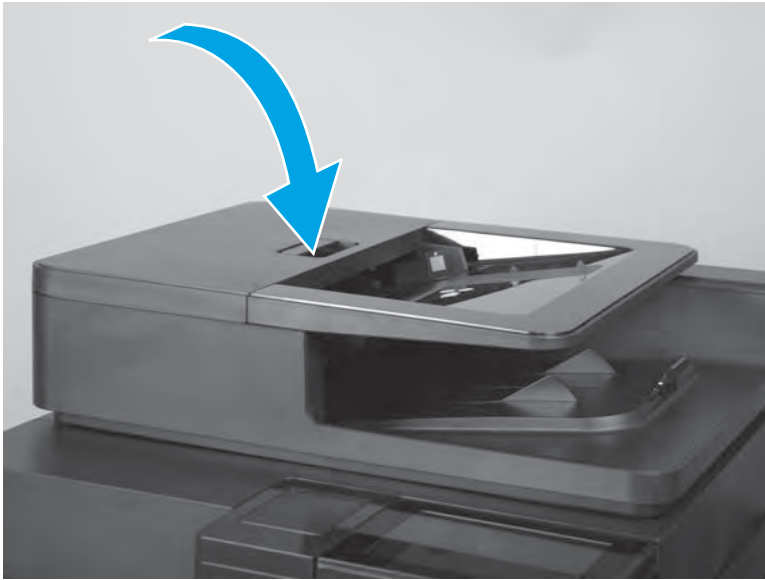
2. Rotate the input tray down.

**Figure 1-323** Rotate the input tray down



3. Close the document-feeder door.

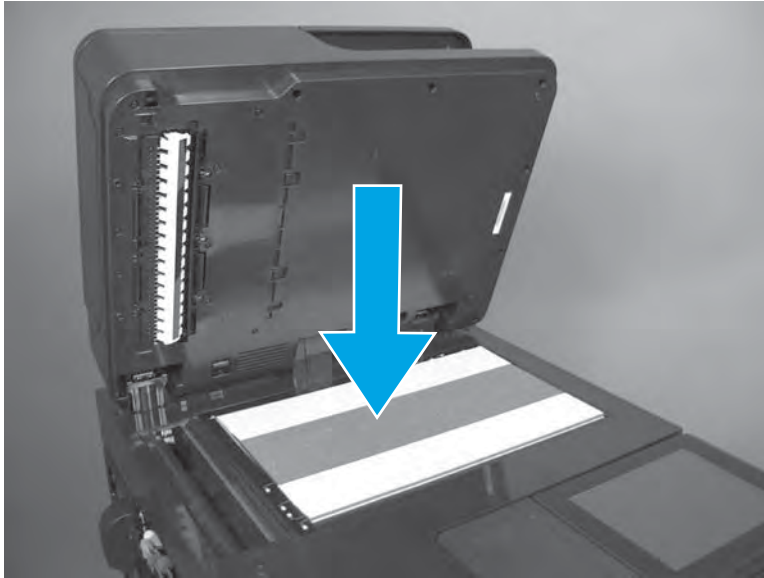
**Figure 1-324** Close the document-feeder door



## Step 10: Install the document feeder white backing

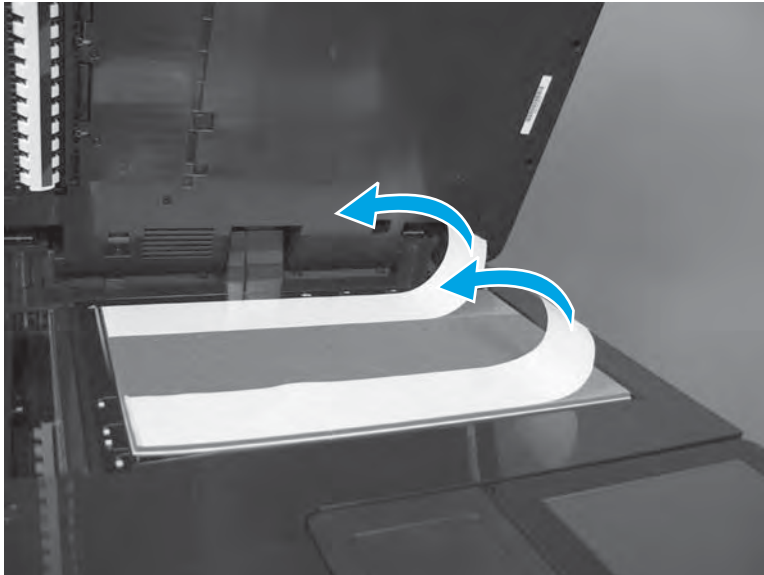
1. Place the white backing on the scanner glass.

**Figure 1-325** Place the white backing on the scanner




2. Peel off the two strips of adhesive backing.

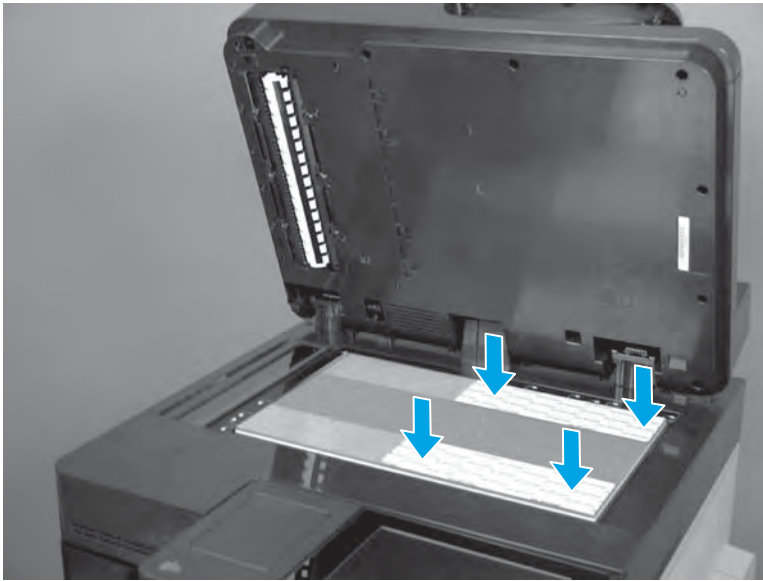
**Figure 1-326** Peel off the adhesive backing



3. Place the two mylar-spacer strips (included with the kit) onto the adhesive, as shown.

 **IMPORTANT:** Align the mylar with the edges of the adhesive on the white backing.

**Figure 1-327** Place the two mylar-spacer strips onto the adhesive



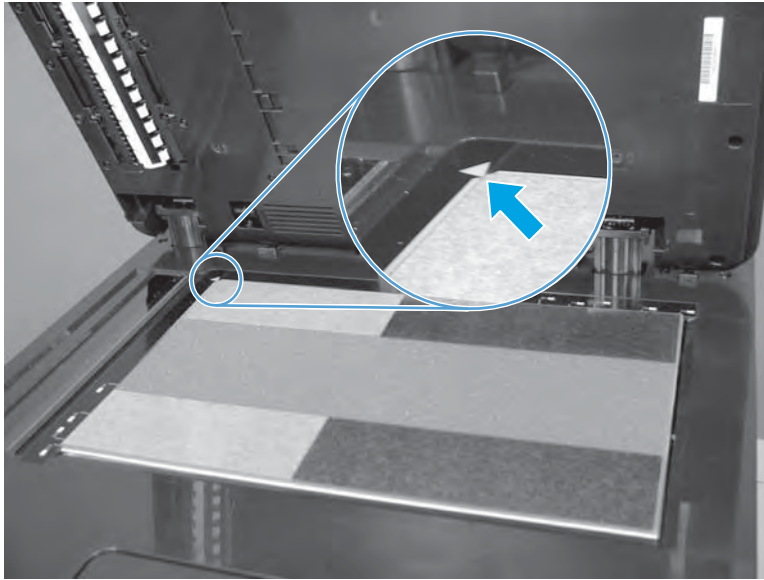
4. Peel off the two strips of adhesive backing.

**Figure 1-328** Peel off the adhesive backing



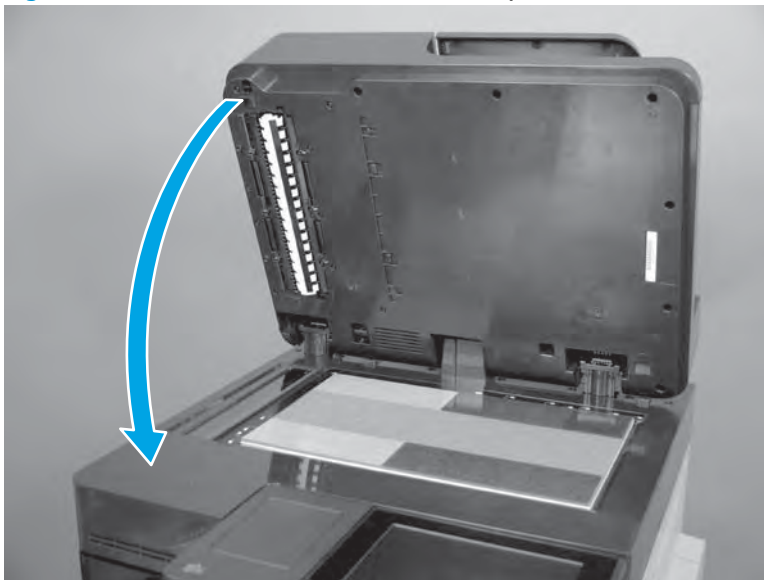
5. Verify that the white backing is aligned with the left rear corner of the scanner glass.

**Figure 1-329** Verify that the white backing is correctly aligned



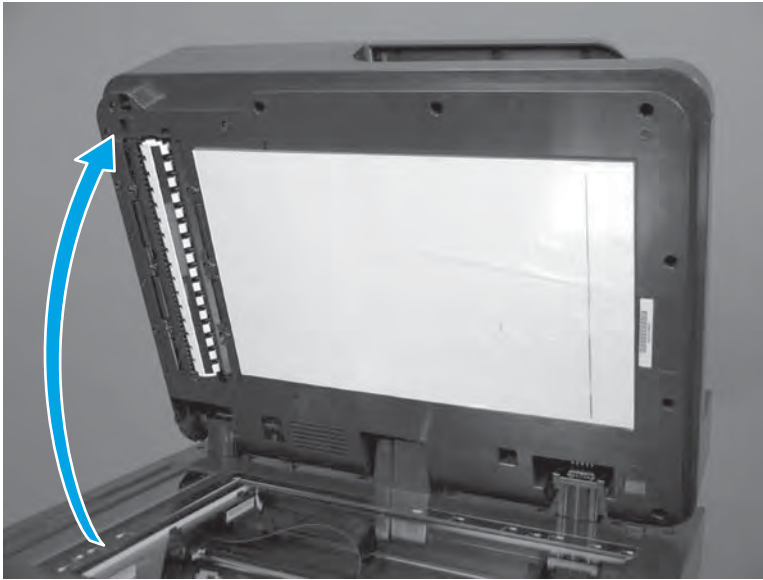
6. Close the document feeder. Press down firmly to adhere the white backing.

**Figure 1-330** Close the document feeder and press down



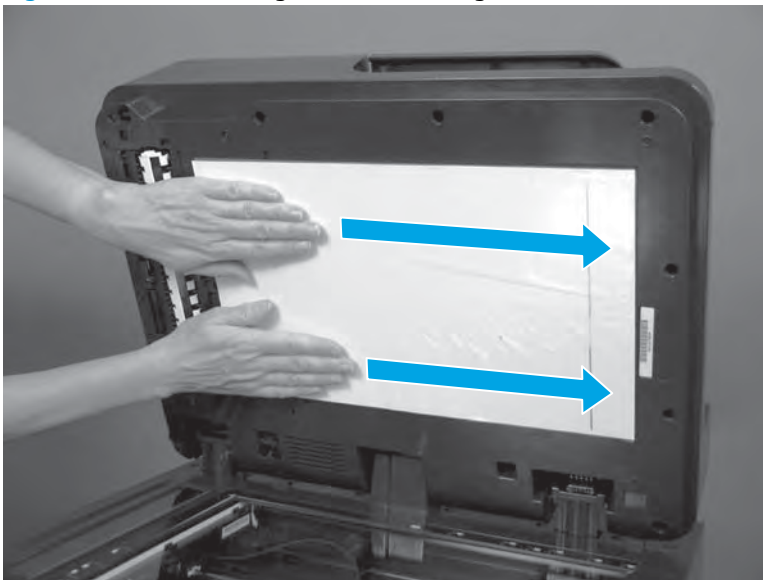
7. Open the document feeder.

**Figure 1-331** Open the document feeder



8. Press along the top and bottom of the white backing, over the areas with adhesive.

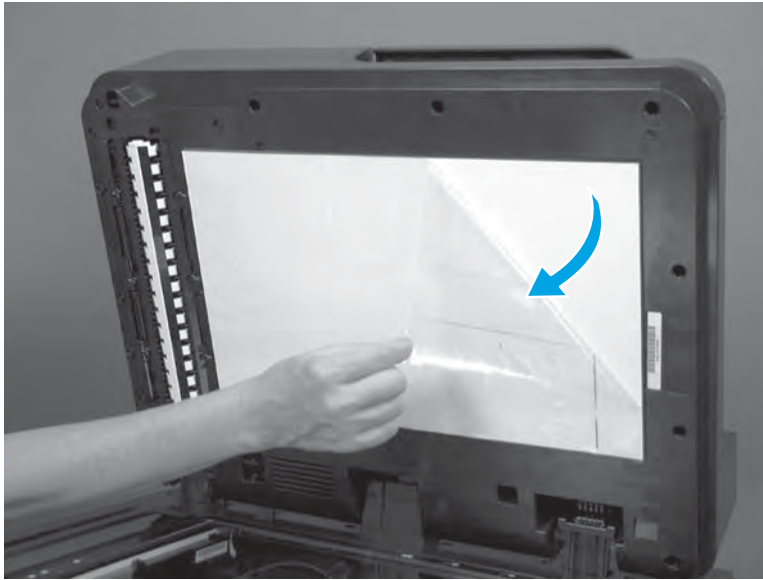
**Figure 1-332** Press along the white backing





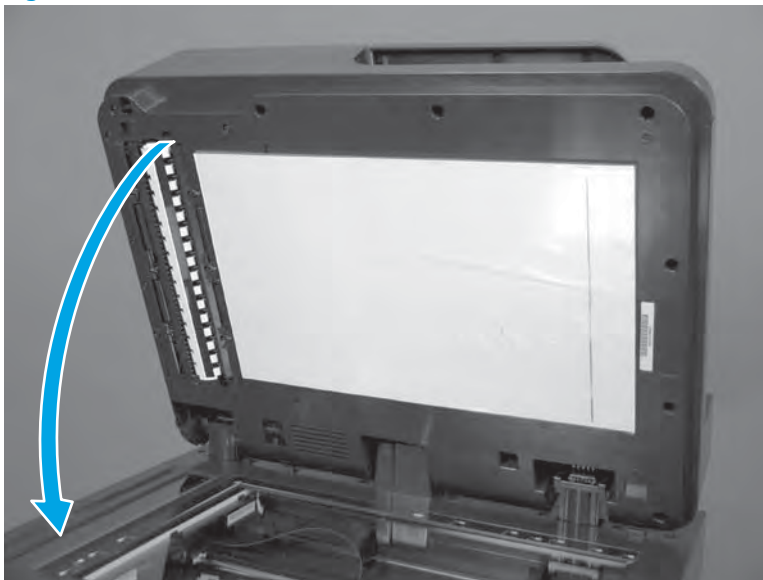
9. Peel off the protective plastic sheet.

**Figure 1-333** Peel off the protective sheet



10. Close the document feeder.

**Figure 1-334** Close the document feeder



### Step 11: Reset the supplies counters and calibrate the scanner

If a replacement document feeder is installed, perform the following task after reassembling the product:

Turn the product on.

1. Use the [Service](#) menu to reset the [Document Feeder Kit Interval](#) and [ADF Count](#) firmware counters.
  - a. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the [Device Maintenance](#) button.
  - b. Open the [Service](#) menu.

- c. On the sign-in screen, select the [Service Access Code](#) option from the drop-down list.
        - d. Enter the following service access code for this product: 09063014.
        - e. Reset the following values:
          - [Document Feeder Kit Interval](#); set to zero
          - [ADF Count](#); set to zero
2. Use the [Manage Supplies](#) menu to reset the [New Document Feeder Kit](#) supplies counter.
  - a. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the [Supplies](#) button.
  - b. Open the following menus:
    - [Manage Supplies](#)
    - [Reset Supplies](#)
    - [New Document Feeder Kit](#)
  - c. Select the [Reset](#) item.
3. Use the [Calibration/Cleaning](#) menu to calibrate the scanner.
  - a. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the [Device Maintenance](#) button.
  - b. Open the following menus:
    - [Calibration/Cleaning](#)
    - [Calibrate Scanner](#)
  - c. Touch the [Next](#) button to start the calibration process. Follow the on-screen prompts.
  - d. Wait while the product calibrates the scanner.

## Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

## Document-feeder hinge assembly

### Remove the following assemblies:

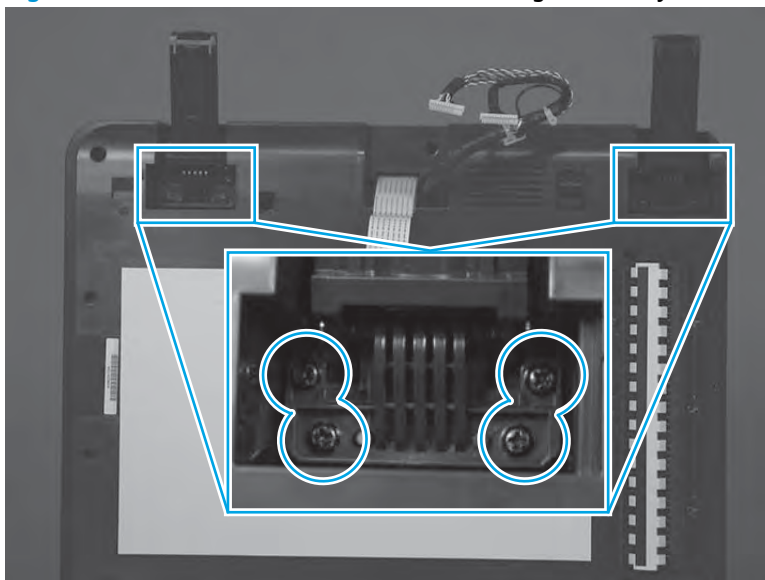
- Scanner rear cover. See [Scanner rear cover on page 182](#).
- Scanner control board (SCB). See [Scanner control board \(SCB\) on page 185](#).
- Document feeder. See [Document feeder on page 201](#).

### Remove the document-feeder hinge assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

For each hinge, remove four screws and then remove the hinge assembly.

**Figure 1-335** Remove the document-feeder hinge assembly



## Image scanner assembly

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the SCB](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the document feeder](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the image scanner assembly](#)
- [Step 5: Unpack the replacement image scanner assembly](#)
- [Step 6: Install the image scanner assembly](#)
- [Step 7: Install the document feeder](#)
- [Step 8: Install the SCB](#)
- [Step 9: Install the scanner rear cover](#)
- [Step 10: Install the replacement document feeder white backing](#)
- [Step 11: Reset the supplies counters and calibrate the scanner](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the image scanner assembly.

### Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

image scanner assembly kit part number	
<b>B3G86-67905</b>	Image scanner assembly kit with instruction guide
<b>NOTE:</b> The image scanner kit includes the document feeder white backing kit.	

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

**⚠ WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

If installed, remove the optional stapler mailbox.

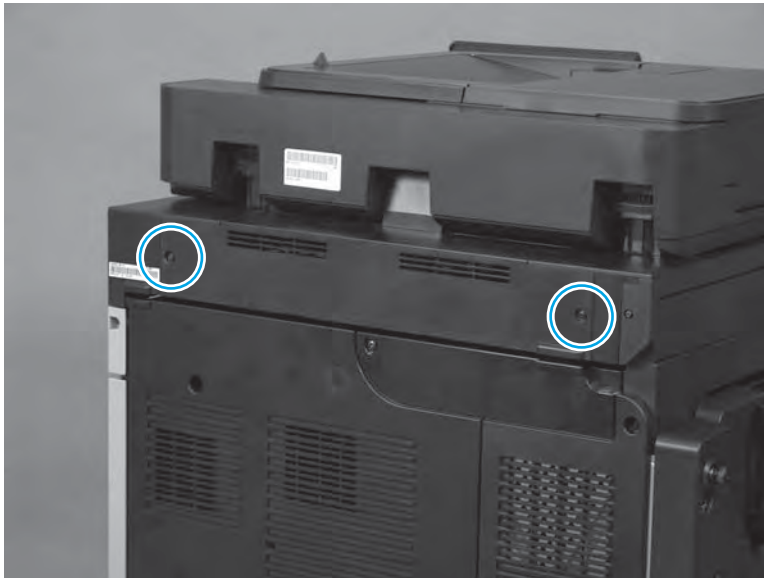
### Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover

1. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-336** Remove two screws



2. Remove the cover.

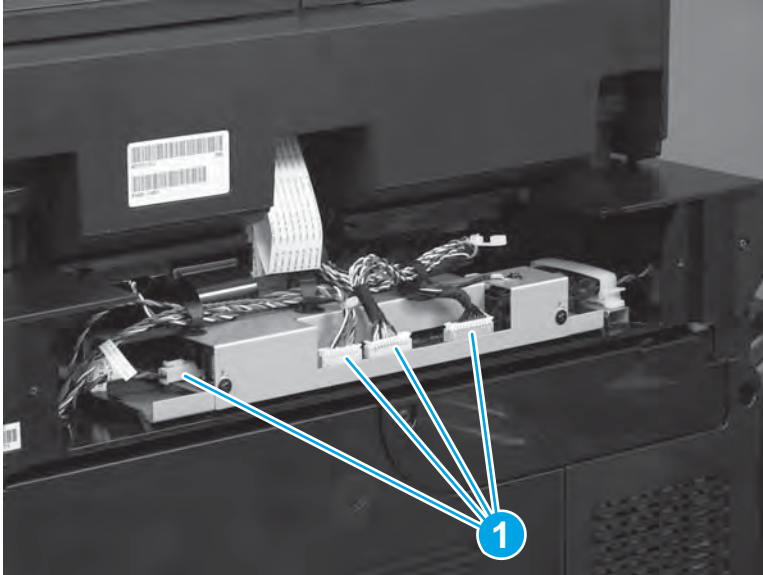
**Figure 1-337** Remove the cover



## Step 2: Remove the SCB

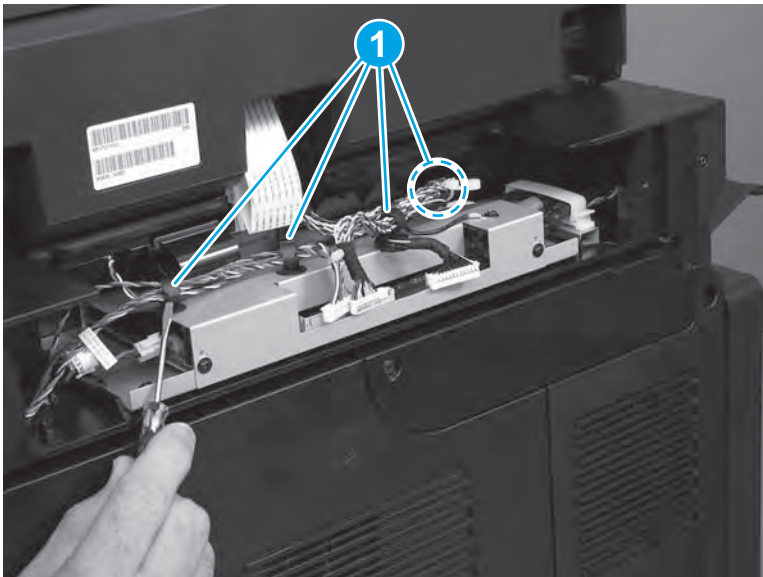
1. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1).

**Figure 1-338** Disconnect four connectors



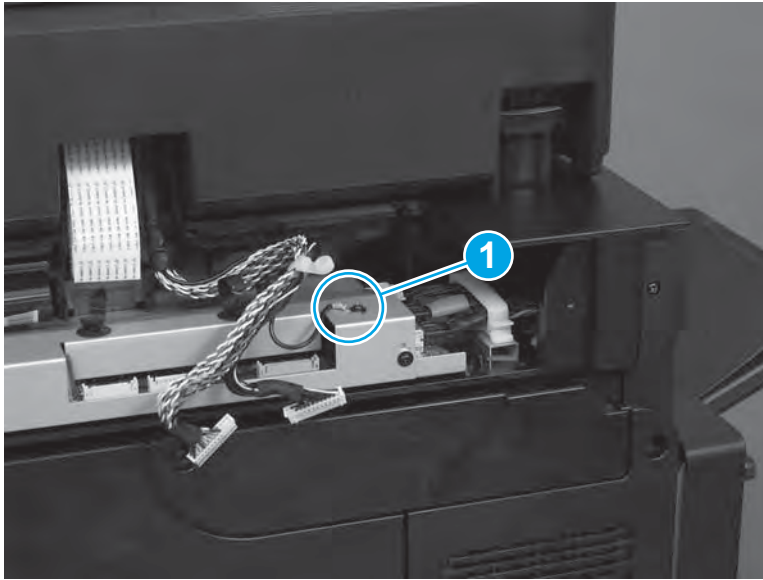
2. Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release four retainers (callout 1), and then remove the wire harnesses from the retainers.

**Figure 1-339** Release four retainers



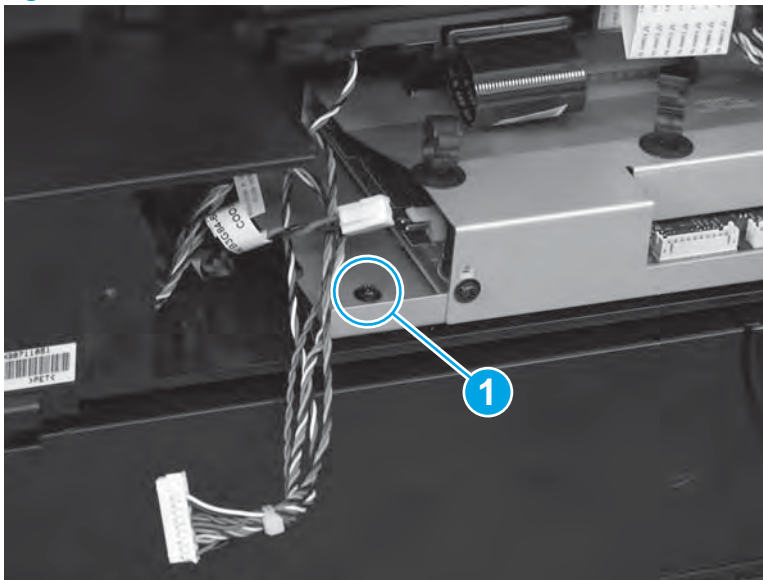
3. On the right side of the SCB, remove one ground screw (callout 1) to release the ground wire.

**Figure 1-340** Remove one screw and the ground wire



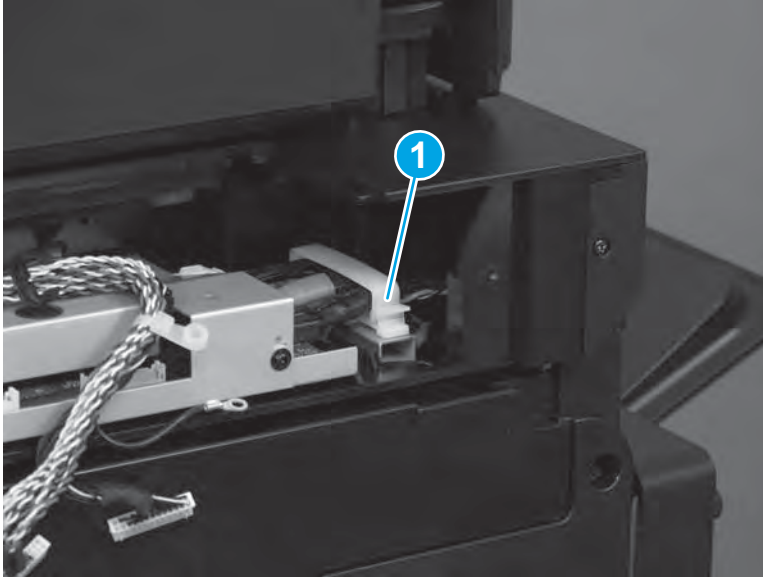
4. On the left side of the SCB, remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-341** Remove one screw



5. At the right side of the SCB, press down on the retainer (callout 1) to release it.

**Figure 1-342** Release one retainer



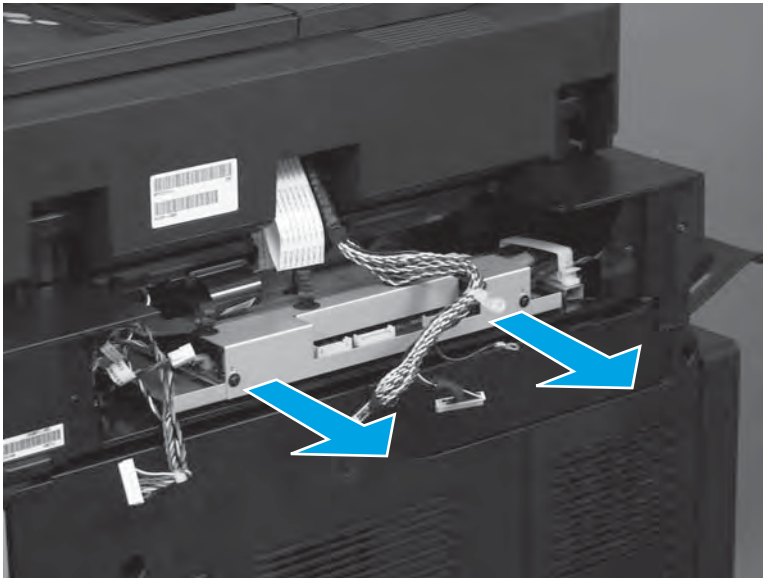
6. Partially slide the SCB out of the product.

---

**CAUTION:** The SCB is still attached to the product by two FFCs. Do not attempt to completely remove the SCB.

---

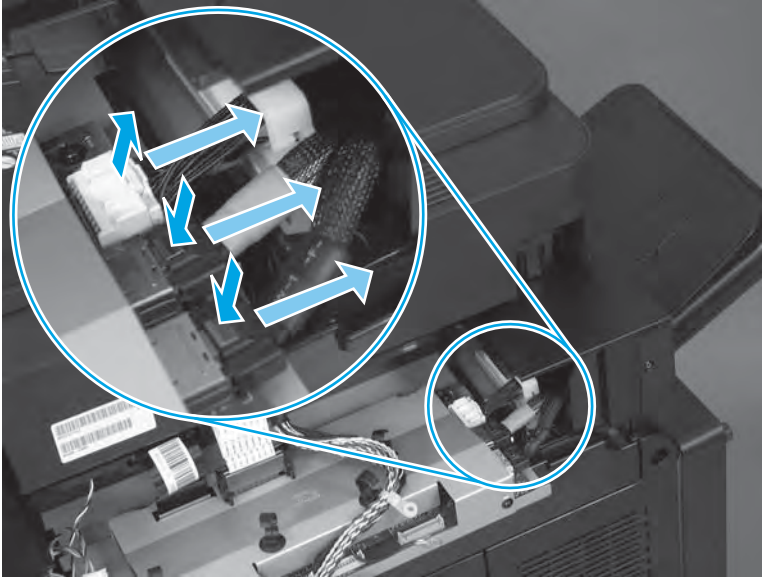
**Figure 1-343** Partially slide the SCB out





7. Use a small flat-blade screw driver to release three connectors (callout 1).

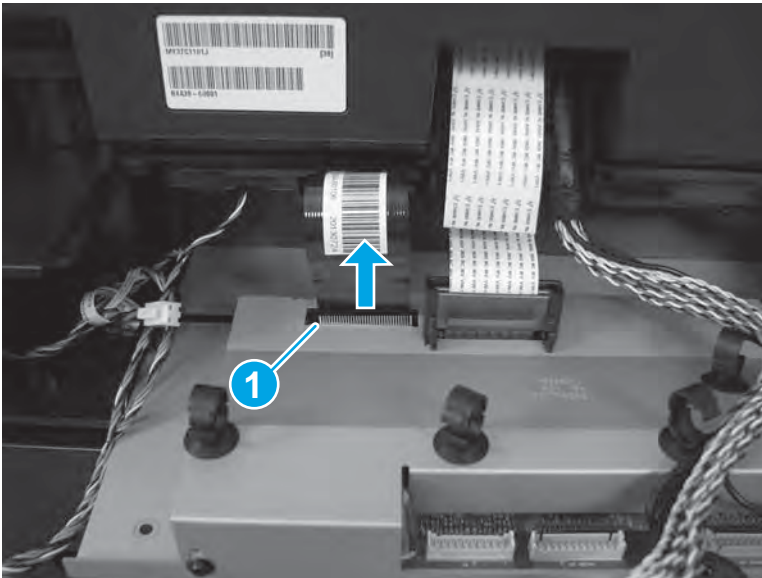
**Figure 1-344** Release three connectors



8. Pull straight up on the black scanner FFC (callout 1) to disconnect it.

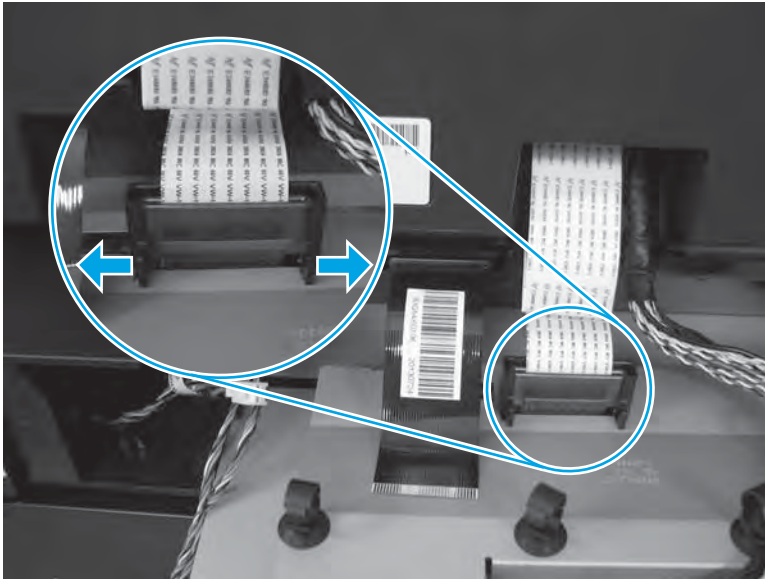
**⚠ CAUTION:** Be careful. The FFC must be pulled straight up and out of the connector to prevent damaging it.

**Figure 1-345** Remove the FFC



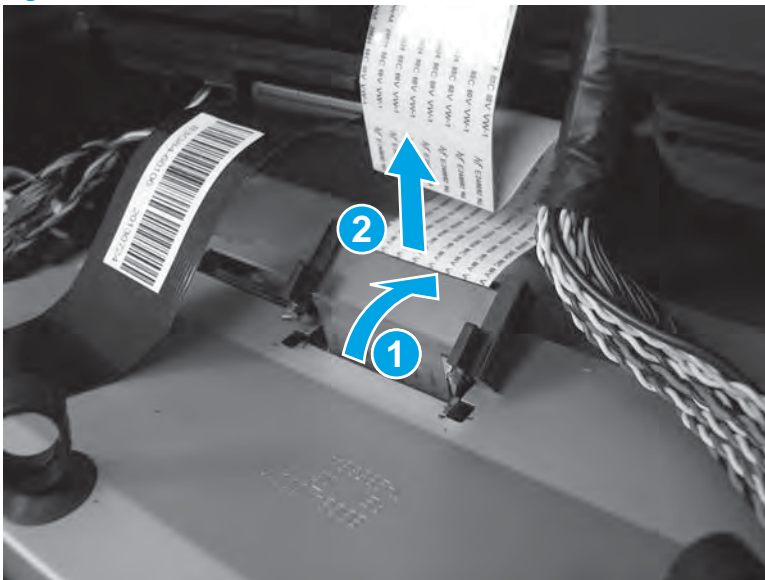
- Carefully push the tabs on the ferrite holder outward to release them.

**Figure 1-346** Release two tabs



- Rotate the holder backward (callout 1), and then remove it (callout 2). Slide the holder up the FFC.

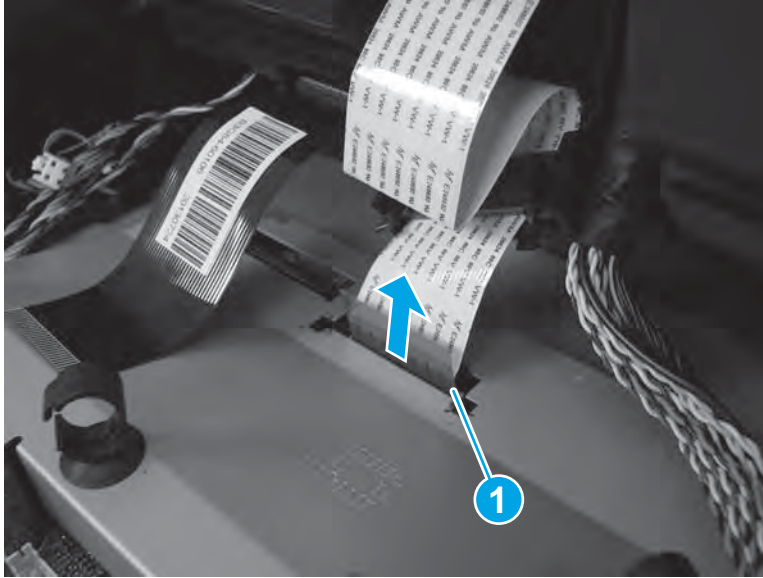
**Figure 1-347** Remove the ferrite and holder



11. Pull straight up on the white document-feeder FFC (callout 1) to disconnect it.

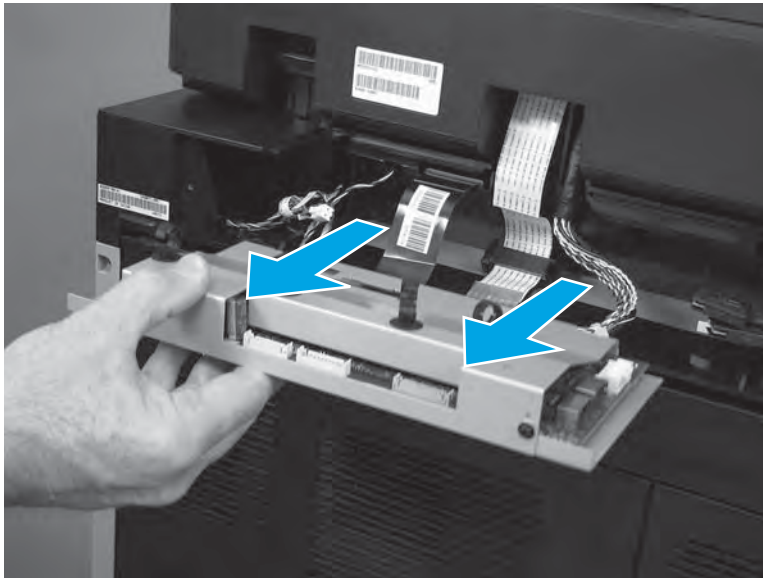
**CAUTION:** Be careful. The FFC must be pulled straight up and out of the connector to prevent damaging it.

**Figure 1-348** Remove the FFC



12. Slide the SCB out of the product to remove it.

**Figure 1-349** Remove the SCB

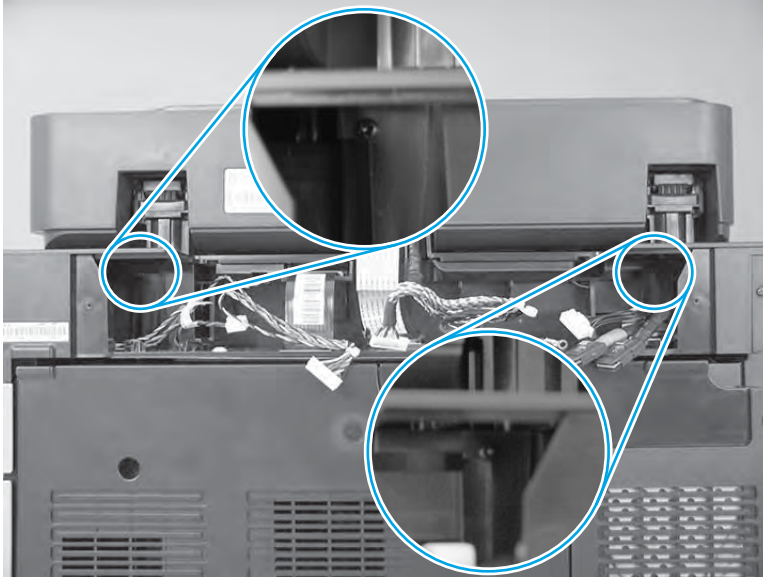


### Step 3: Remove the document feeder

1. Loosen, but do not remove, two document-feeder hinge-locking screws. Back them out about 13 mm (0.5 in).

**NOTE:** Do not remove these screws. They are difficult to reinstall.

**Figure 1-350** Loosen two screws



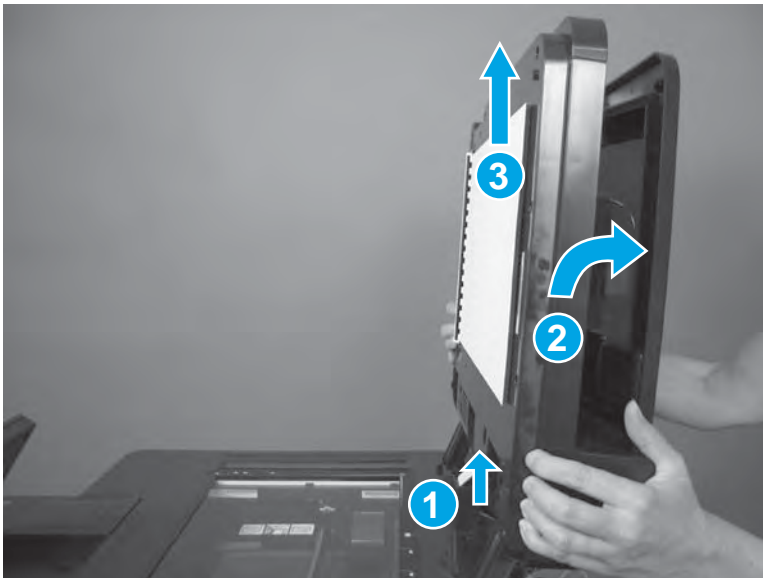
2. Open the document feeder, lift it up until it stops (callout 1), tilt it back (callout 2), and then pull it straight up (callout 3) to remove it.

---

**⚠ CAUTION:** The document feeder weighs 5.6 kg (12.3 lb).

---

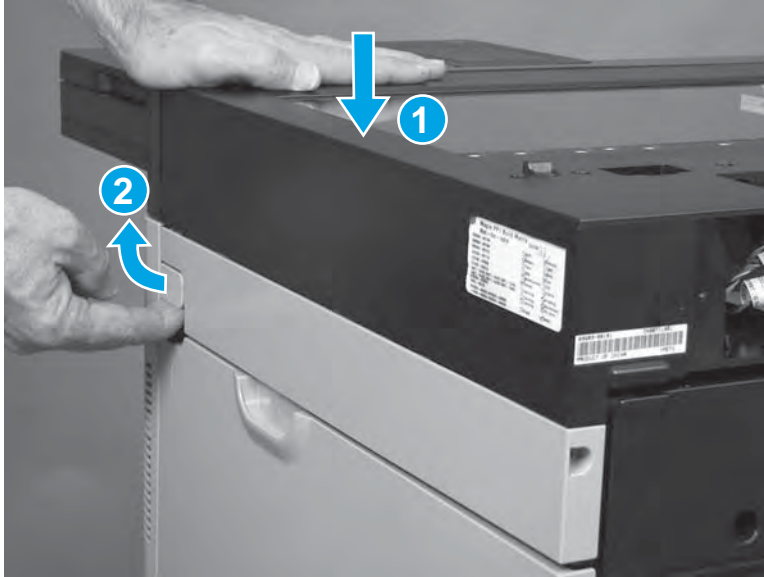
**Figure 1-351** Remove the document feeder



#### **Step 4: Remove the image scanner assembly**

1. Firmly hold down the top of the scanner (callout 1), and then release the top cover latch (callout 2).

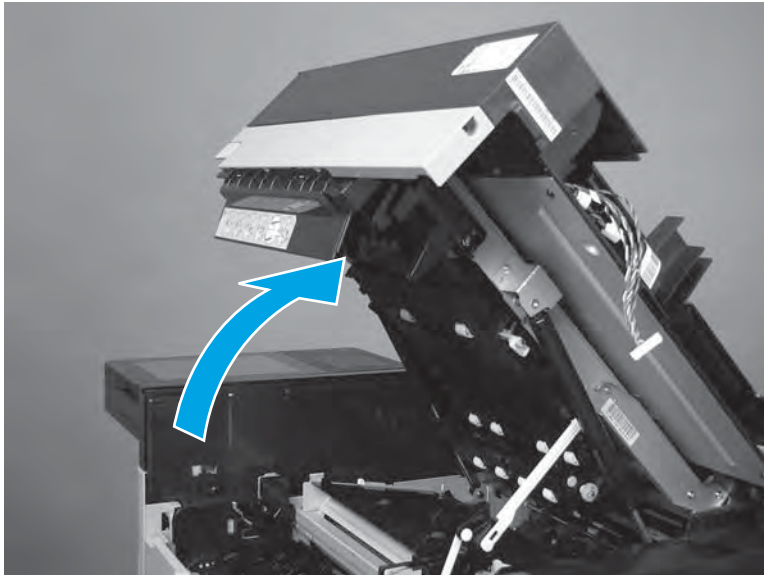
**Figure 1-352** Release the scanner latch



2. Carefully open the image top cover.

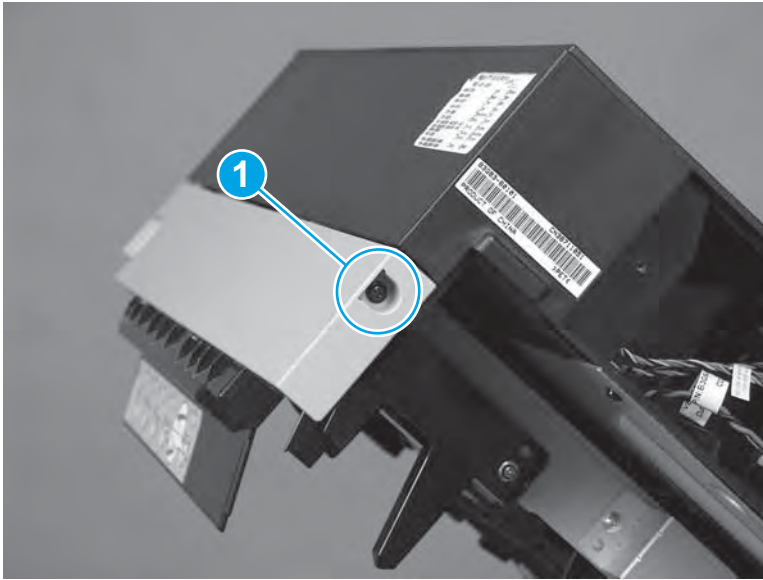
**CAUTION:** The image scanner assembly is mounted on pneumatic pistons that can cause the scanner to open uncontrollably quick when the document feeder is not installed.

**Figure 1-353** Open the image scanner assembly



3. Remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-354** Remove one screw



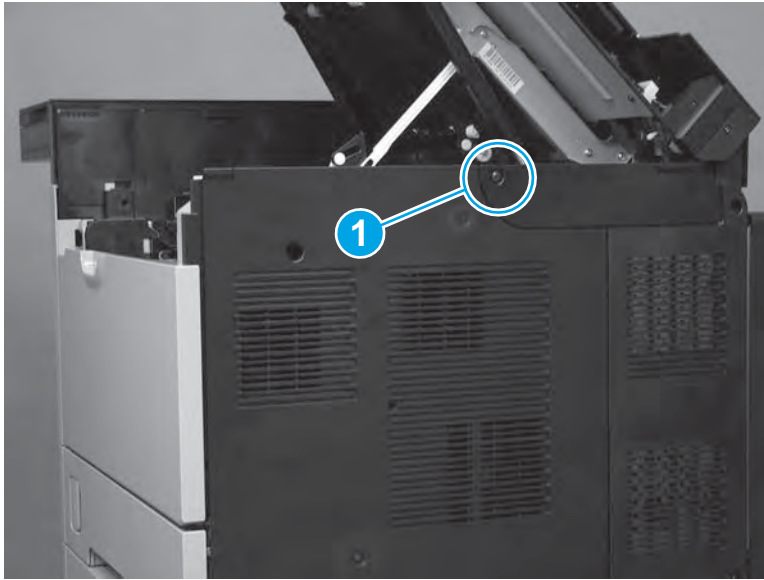
4. Carefully flex the corner of the scanner front-lower cover to release one tab.

**Figure 1-355** Release one tab



5. Remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-356** Remove one screw



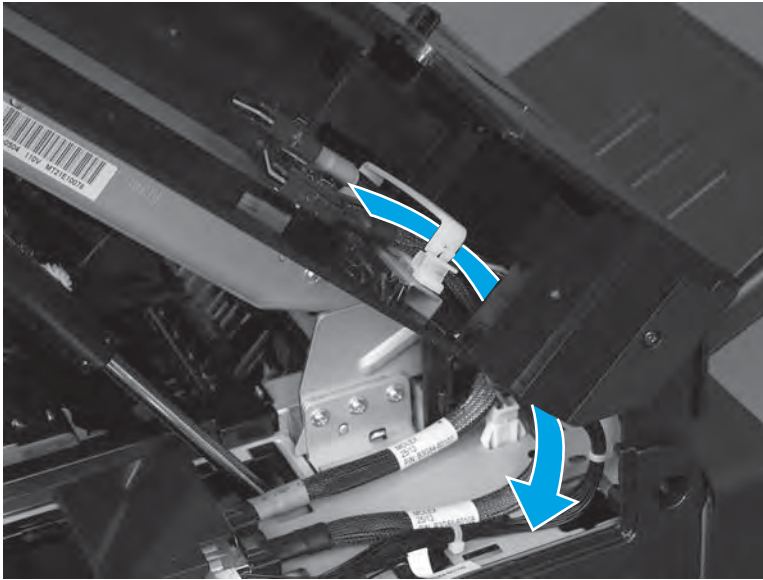
6. Remove the scanner cable cover.

**Figure 1-357** Remove the scanner cable cover



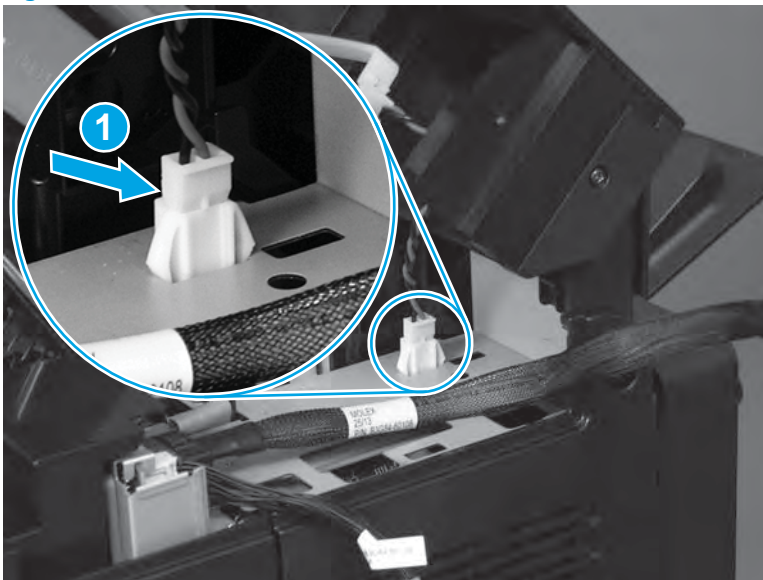
7. Carefully feed three cables through the opening in the image scanner assembly.

**Figure 1-358** Feed the cables through the opening



8. Push in on one connector (callout 1) to release it, and then disconnect the connector.

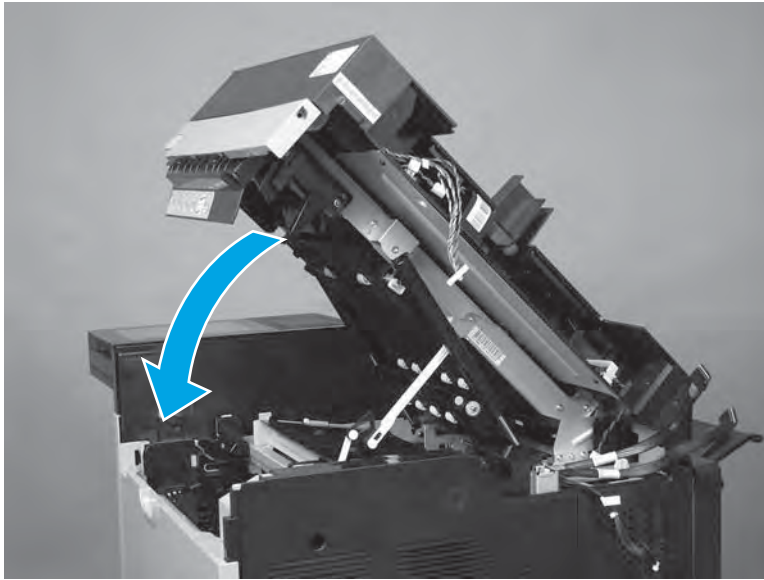
**Figure 1-359** Disconnect one connector





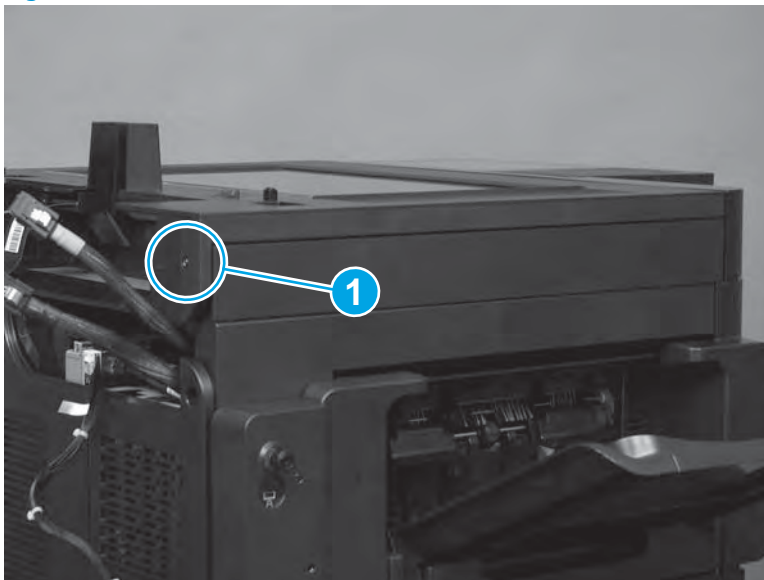
- Carefully close the top cover.

**Figure 1-360** Close the image scanner assembly



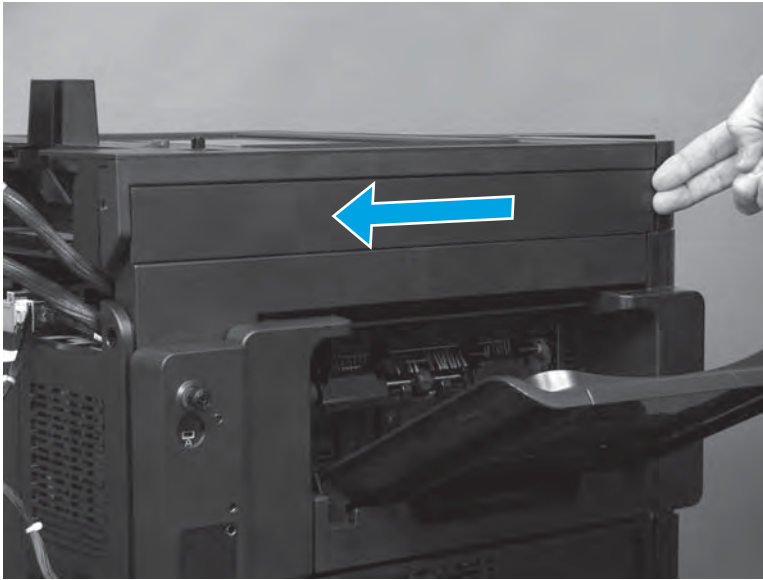
- Remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-361** Remove one screw



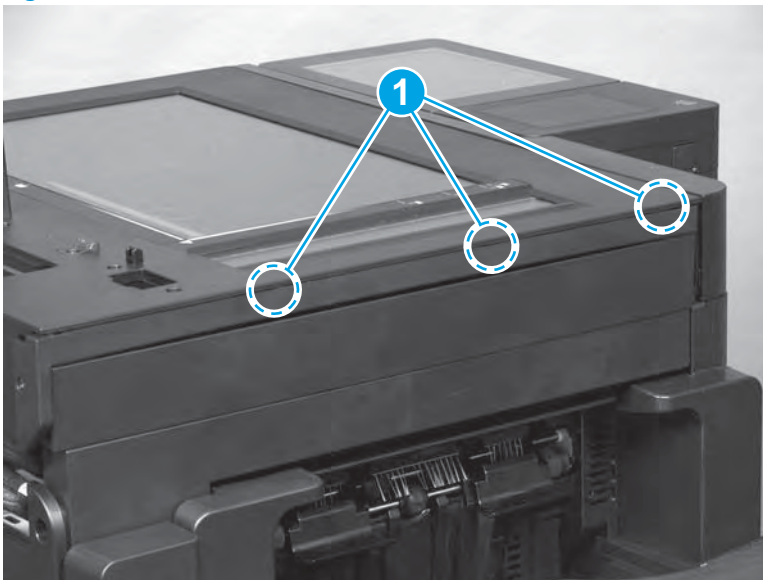
11. Slide the hinge cover to the left to release it.

**Figure 1-362** Release the cover



12. Release three tabs (callout 1).

**Figure 1-363** Release three tabs



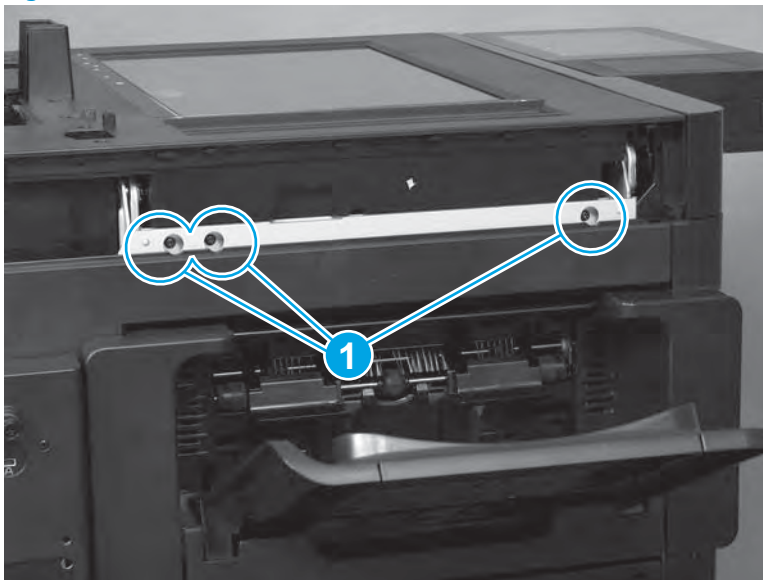
13. Remove the hinge cover.

**Figure 1-364** Remove the cover



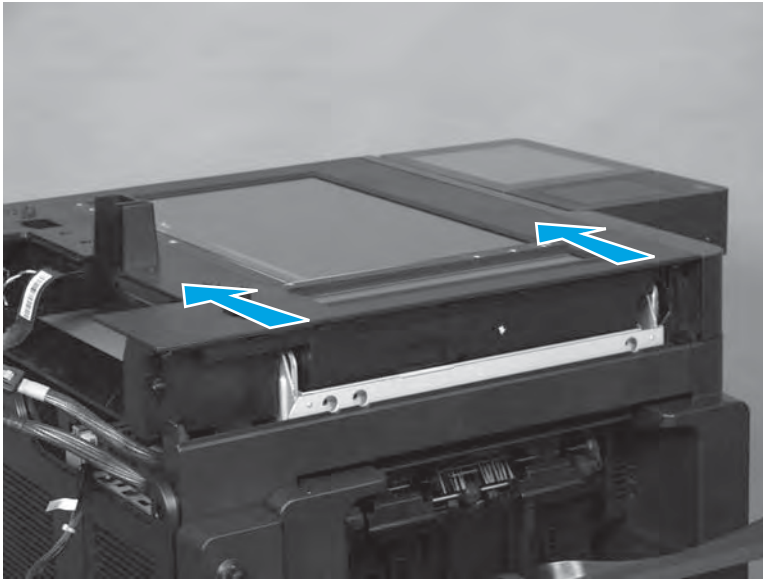
14. Remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-365** Remove three screws



15. Slide the image scanner assembly towards the right side of the product until it stops.

**Figure 1-366** Slide the image scanner assembly until it stops



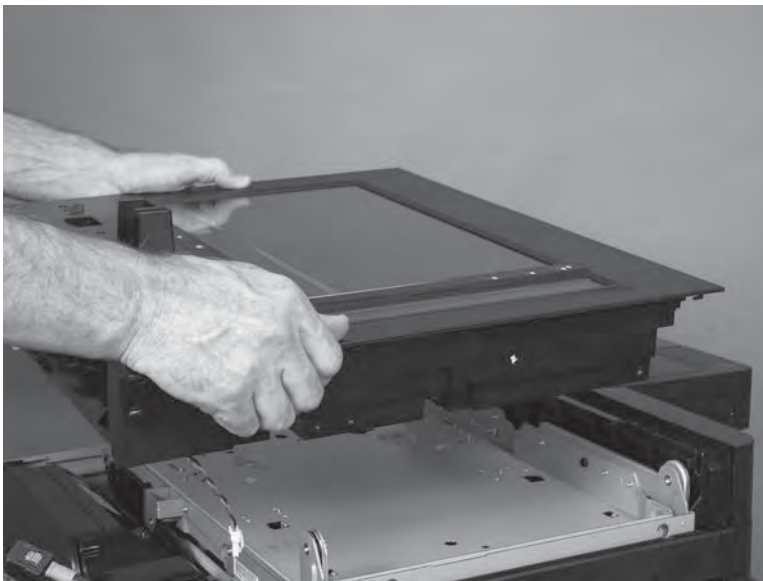
16. Carefully lift the image scanner assembly up and off of the product.

---

**CAUTION:** The image scanner assembly scanner weighs 6.2 kg (11.4lb).

---

**Figure 1-367** Remove the scanner assembly



- 17.

### Step 5: Unpack the replacement image scanner assembly

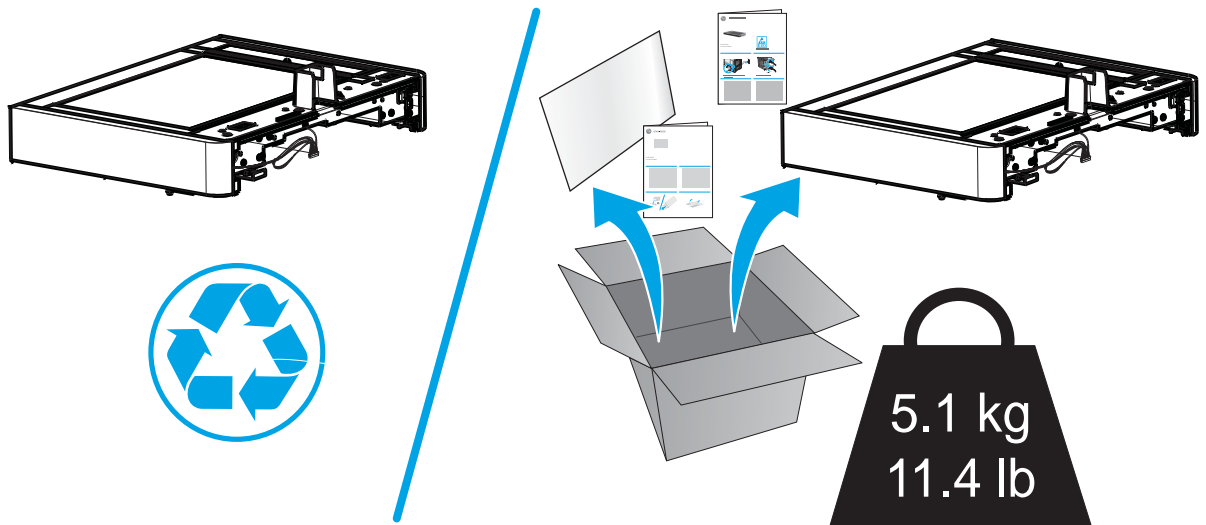
Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling)

---


**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

---

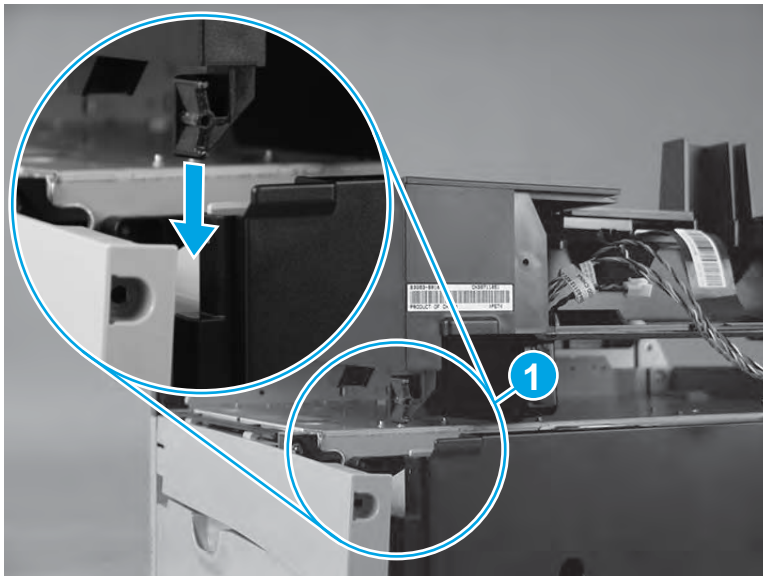


### Step 6: Install the image scanner assembly

1. When the replacement image scanner assembly is installed on the product, make sure that the tab on the assembly fits behind the corner of the lower scanner cover (callout 1).

 **IMPORTANT:** Do not dislodge this cover when installing the replacement image scanner assembly.

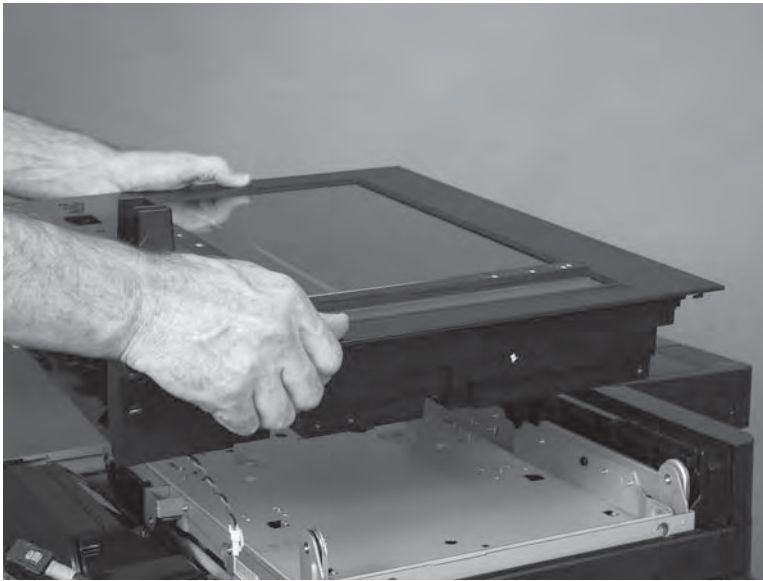
**Figure 1-368** Install the lower scanner cover tab



- Carefully position the image scanner assembly on the product.

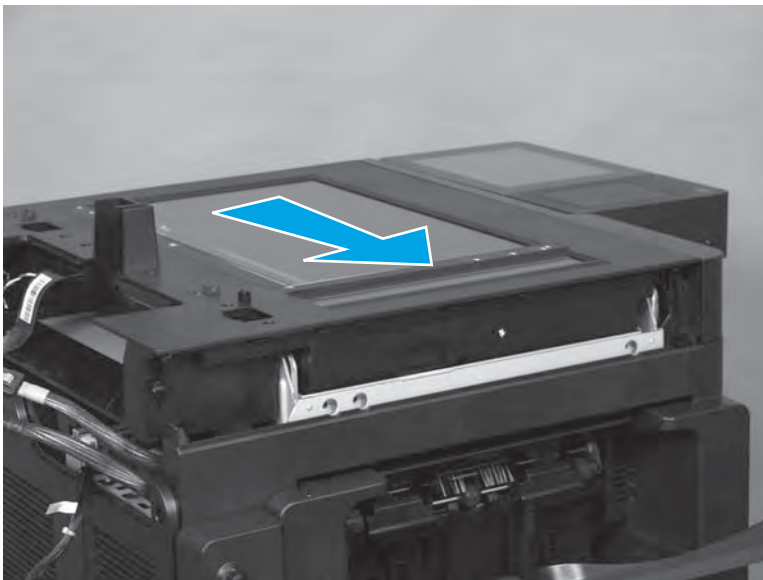
**⚠ CAUTION:** The image scanner assembly scanner weighs 6.2 kg (11.4lb).

**Figure 1-369** Install the scanner assembly



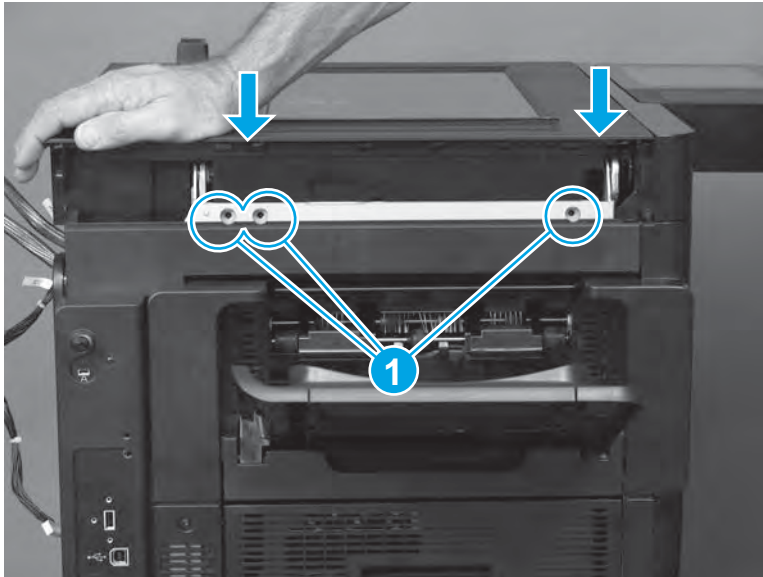
- Slide the image scanner assembly toward the left side of the product until it is tight up against the sheet-metal bracket.

**Figure 1-370** Slide the image scanner assembly as shown



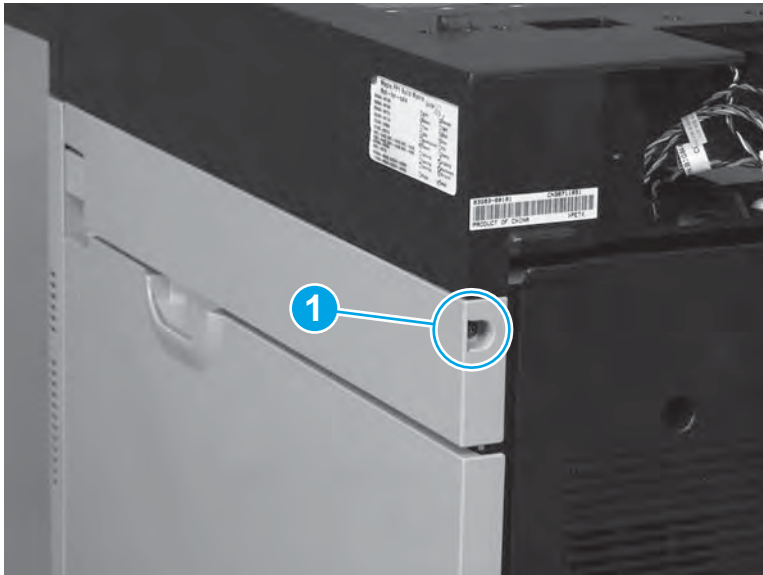
4. Push down on the assembly to align the mounting screw holes with the sheet-metal bracket, and then install three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-371** Install three screws



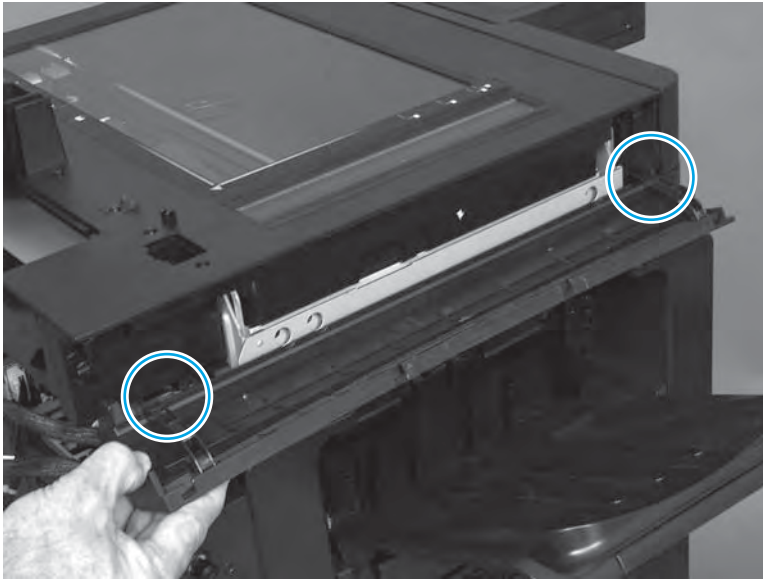
5. Install one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-372** Install one screw



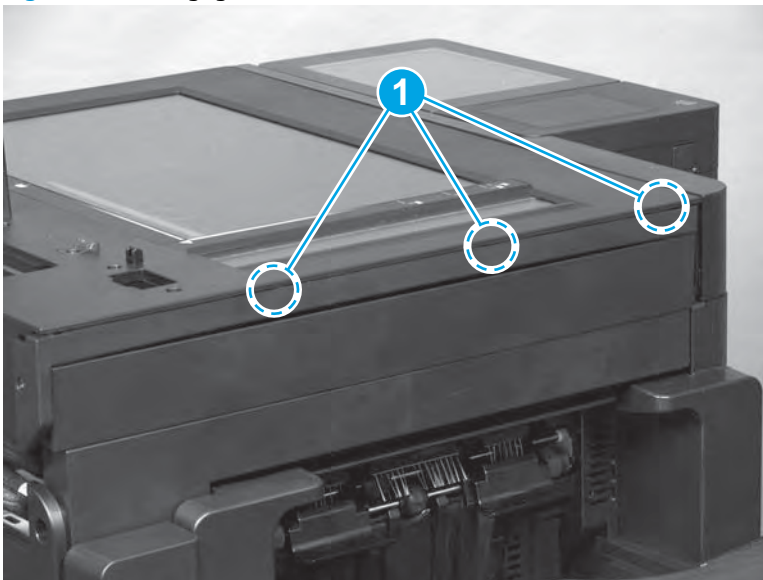
- Engage the tabs on the hinge cover with the product as it is installed.

**Figure 1-373** Engage the tabs



- Make sure to engage the three tabs (callout 1) at the top of the cover.

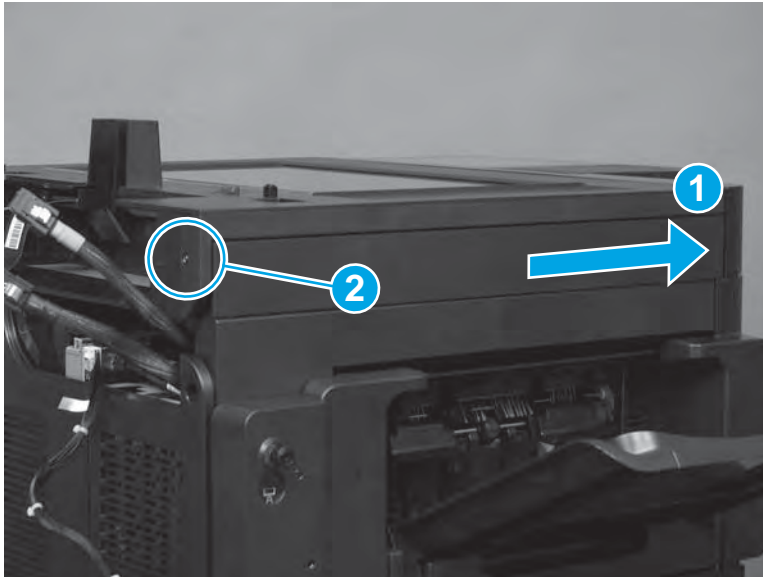
**Figure 1-374** Engage three tabs





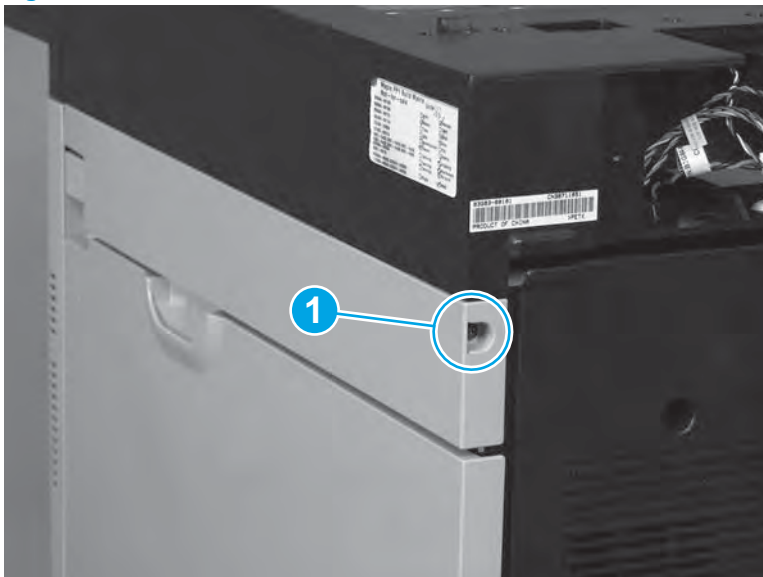
8. Slide the cover to the right to the (callout 1) to engage the corner of the cover with the product, and then install one screw (callout 2).

**Figure 1-375** Install one screw



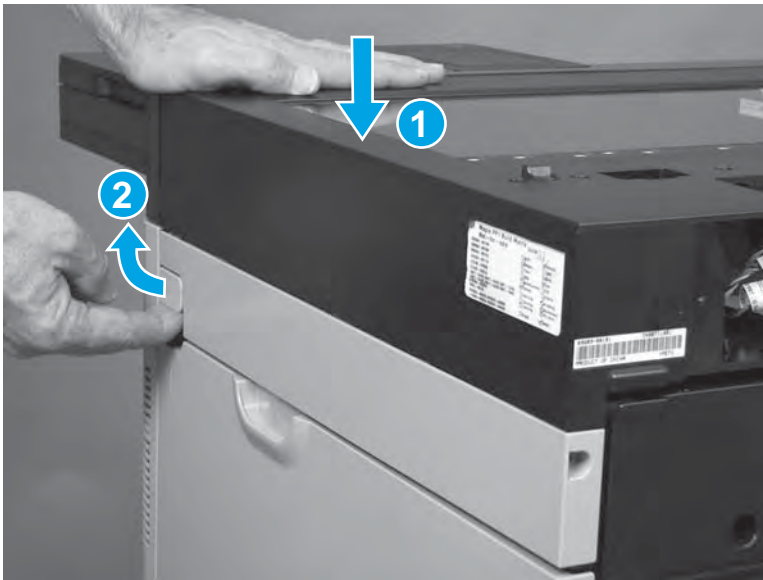
9. Install one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-376** Install one screw



10. Hold down the top of the scanner firmly and release the top cover latch.

**Figure 1-377** Release the scanner latch



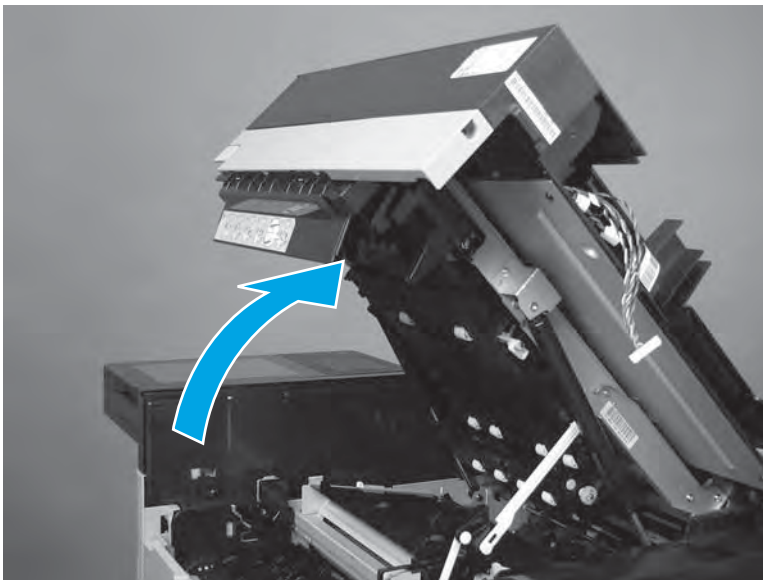
11. Carefully open the top cover.

---

**CAUTION:** The image scanner assembly is mounted on pneumatic pistons that can cause the scanner to open uncontrollably quick when the document feeder is not installed.

---

**Figure 1-378** Open the image scanner assembly



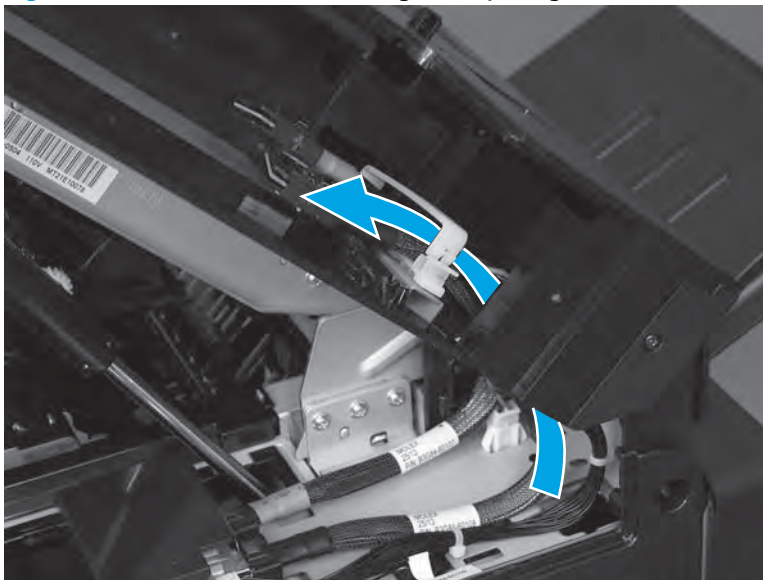
12. Connect one connector (callout 1).

**Figure 1-379** Connect one connector



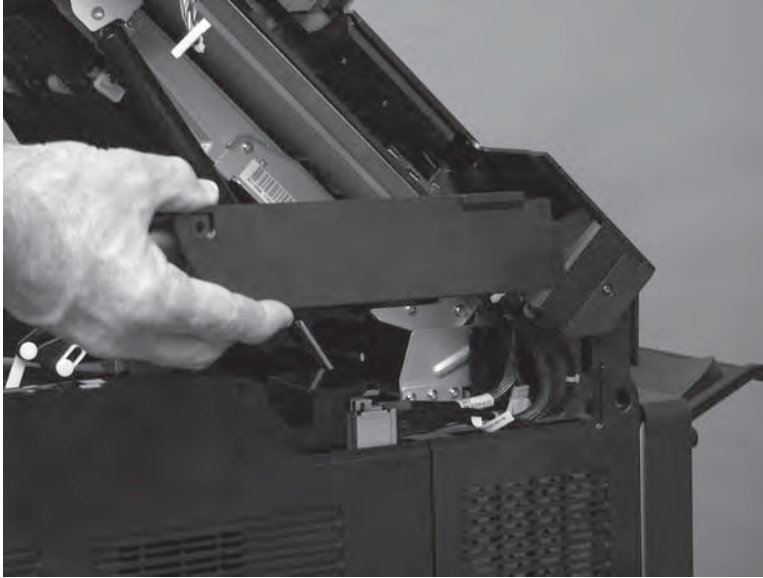
13. Carefully feed three cables through the opening in the image scanner assembly.

**Figure 1-380** Feed the cables through the opening



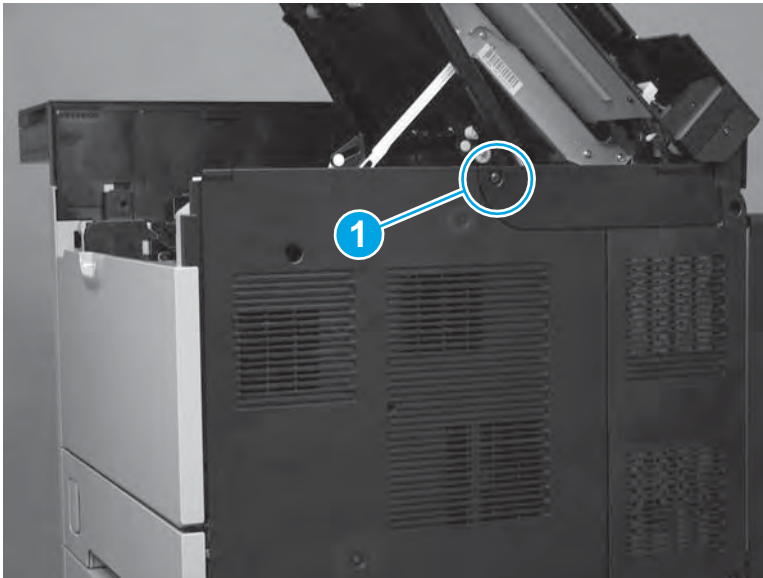
14. Install the scanner cable cover.

**Figure 1-381** Install the scanner cable cover



15. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

**Figure 1-382** Install one screw



## Step 7: Install the document feeder

1. Before reinstalling the document feeder, make sure that the FFC and the wire harness is correctly routed through the openings in the cover.

---

**CAUTION:** If the FFC and wire harness are not correctly routed, they will be damaged when the document feeder is installed.

---

**Figure 1-383** Route the document feeder FFC and cables



2. Position the document feeder hinges in the holes provided (callout 1), and then lower the hinges into the holes (callout 2).

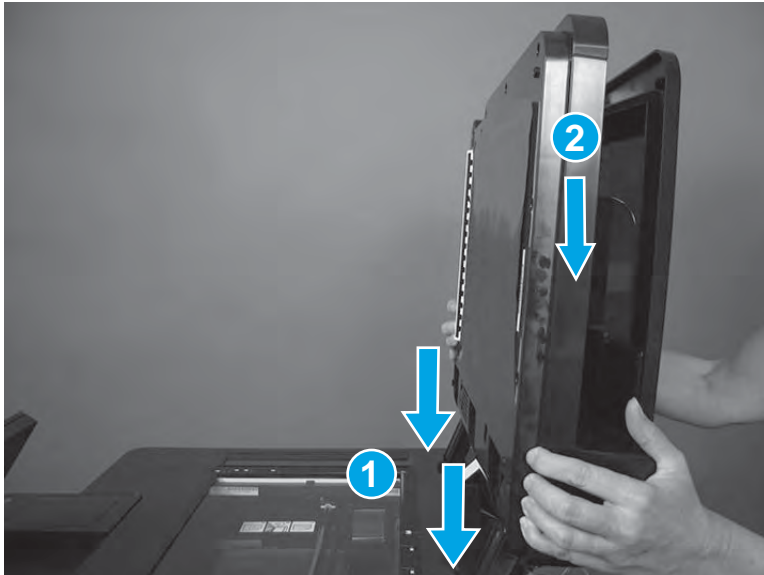
---

**⚠ CAUTION:** The document feeder weighs 5.6 kg (12.3 lb).

**📌 IMPORTANT:** Make sure that the document feeder wire harness and FFC are correctly routed at the back of the product before lowering the document feeder into place.

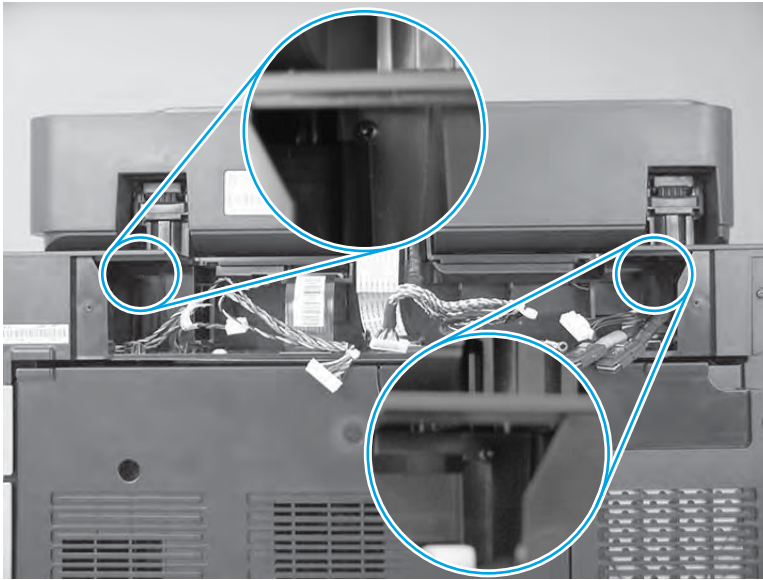
---

**Figure 1-384** Install the document feeder



3. Close the document feeder, and then tighten the two document-feeder hinge-locking screws.

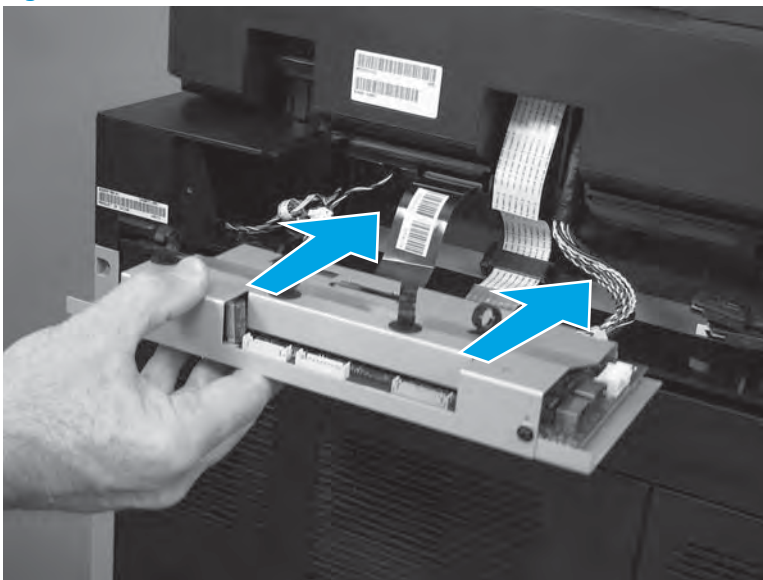
**Figure 1-385** Tighten two screws



### Step 8: Install the SCB

1. Partially slide the SCB into the product—make sure that the sides of the SCB engage the black plastic rails inside the product.

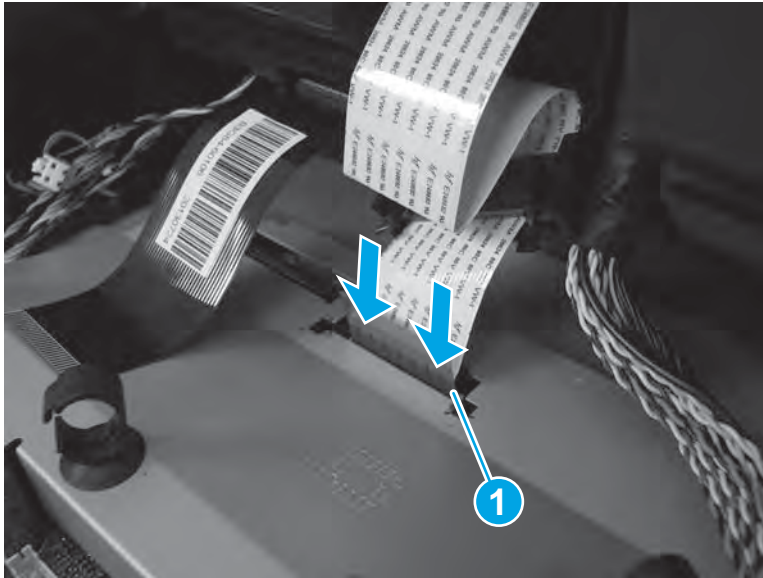
**Figure 1-386** Install the SCB



2. Push straight down on the white document-feeder FFC (callout 1) to connect it.

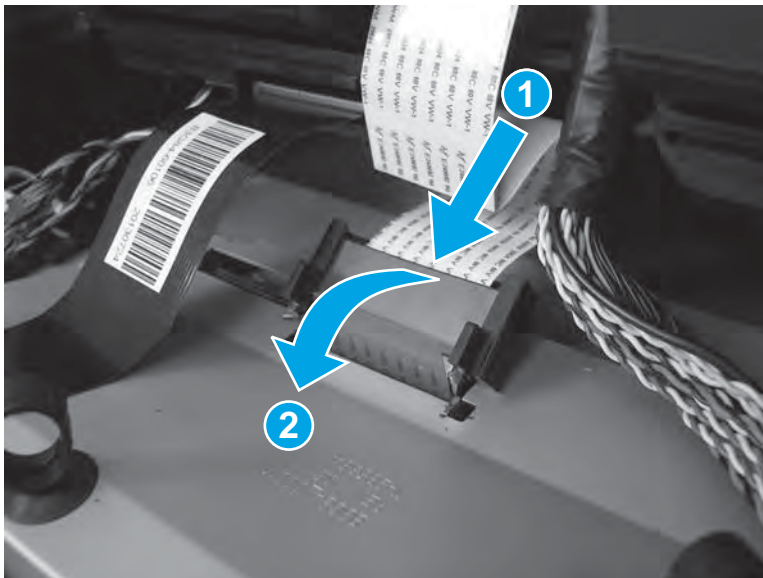
**CAUTION:** Be careful. The FFC must be pushed straight down and into the connector to prevent damaging it.

**Figure 1-387** Connect the FFC




3. Insert the tabs at the back edge of the ferrite holder in the slot on the SCB chassis (callout 1), and then rotate (callout 2) the holder forward to install it.

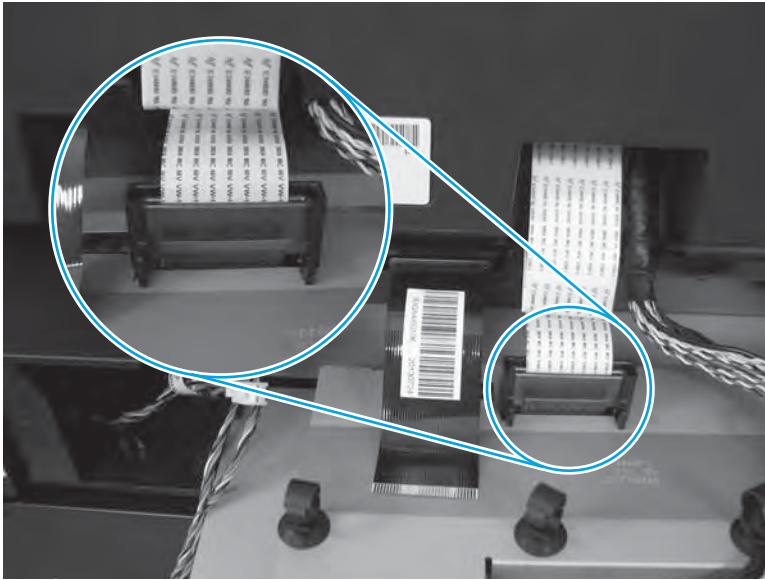
**Figure 1-388** Install the ferrite and holder



4. Make sure that the tabs on the ferrite holder snap into the SCB chassis.

 **NOTE:** When correctly installed, the ferrite holder is flat against the SCB chassis and securely fastened.

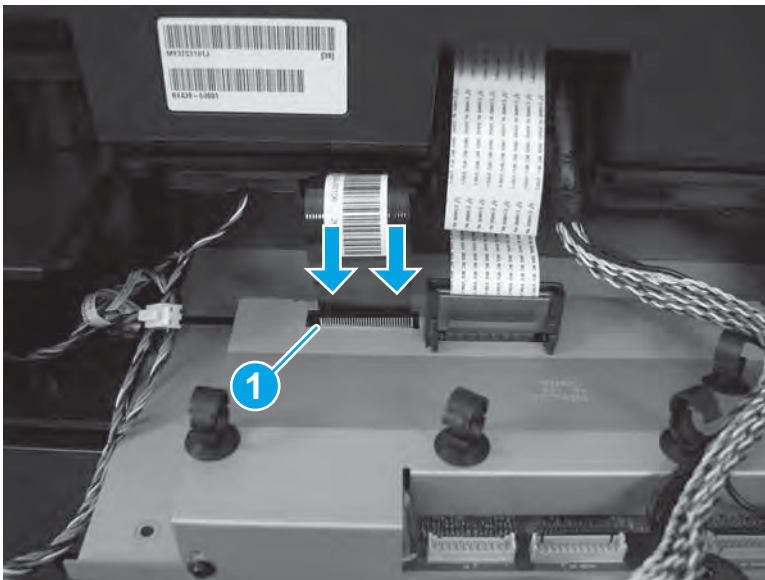
**Figure 1-389** Check the two tabs



5. Push straight down on the black scanner FFC (callout 1) to connect it.


 **CAUTION:** Be careful. The FFC must be pushed straight down and into the connector to prevent damaging it.

**Figure 1-390** Connect the FFC



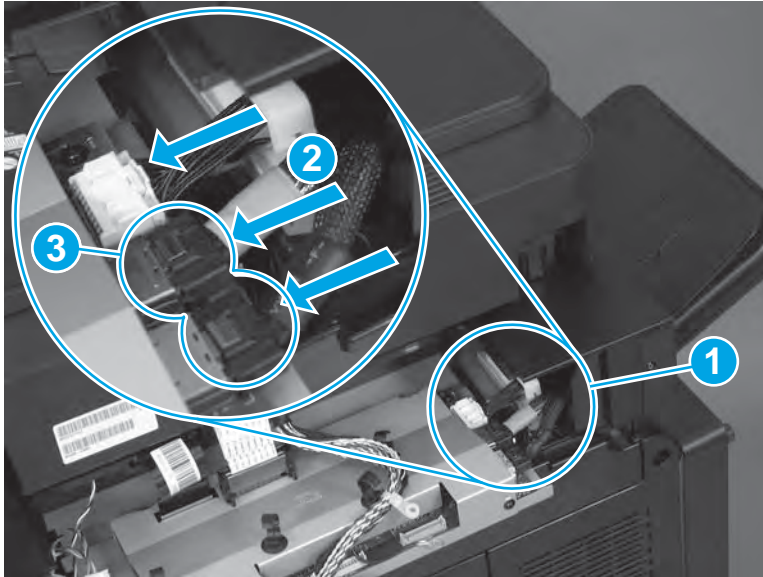


6. Connect three connectors (callout 1).

 **Reinstallation tip:** The wire harness with the blue band (callout 2) connects to the inner connector on the SCB when reinstalled.

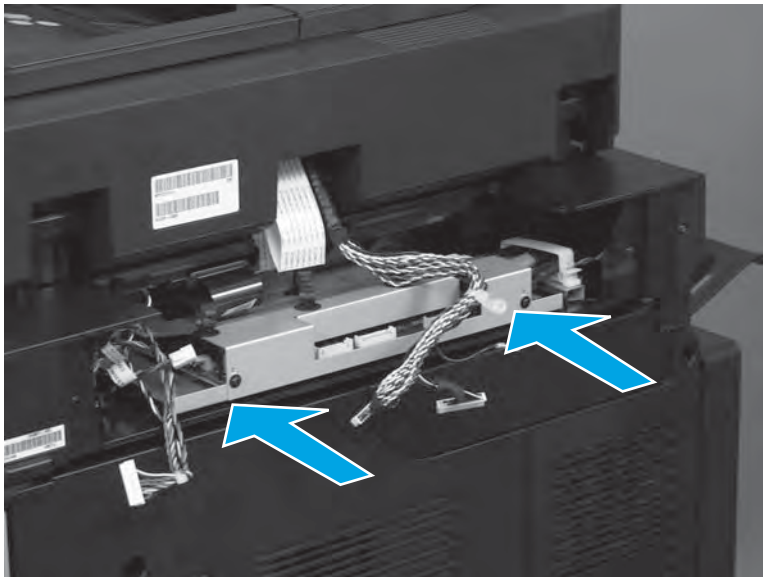
When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callout 3) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

**Figure 1-391** Connect three connectors



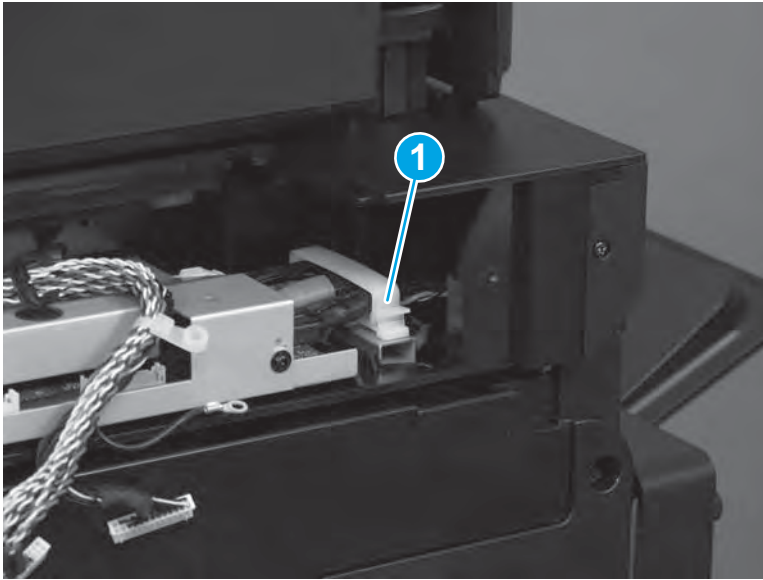
7. Slide the SCB into the product.

**Figure 1-392** Slide the SCB in



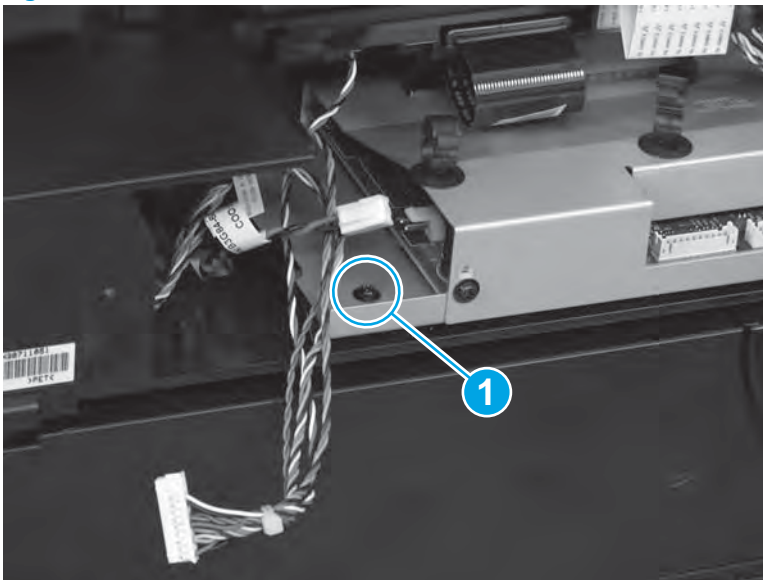
8. At the right side of the SCB, fasten one retainer (callout 1).

**Figure 1-393** Fasten one retainer



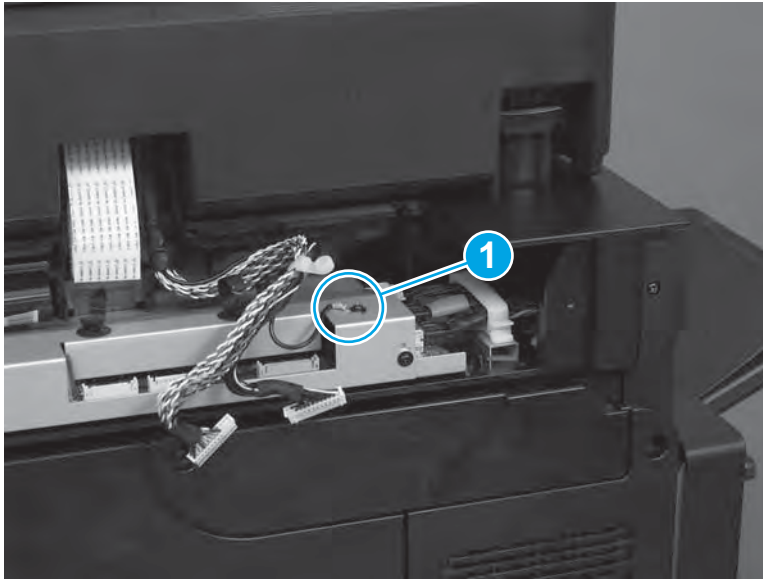
9. At the left side of the SCB, install one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-394** Install one screw



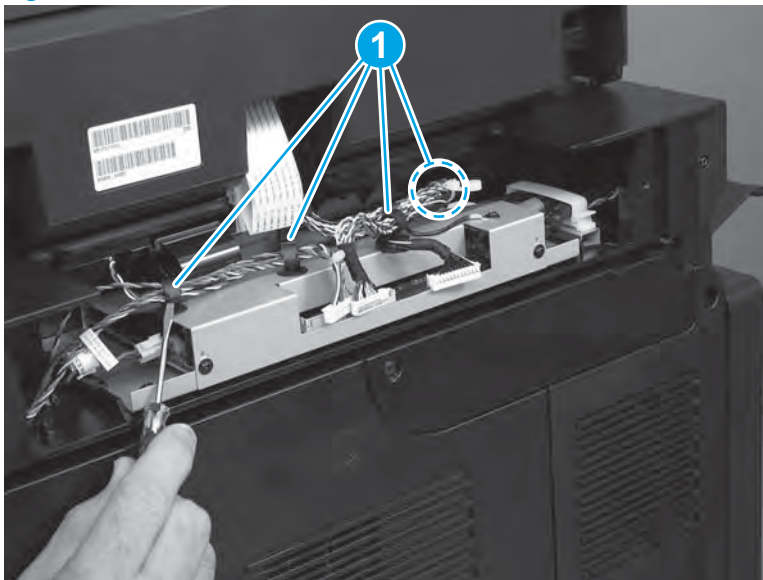
10. At the right side of the SCB, install the ground wire and one ground screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-395** Install the ground wire and one screw



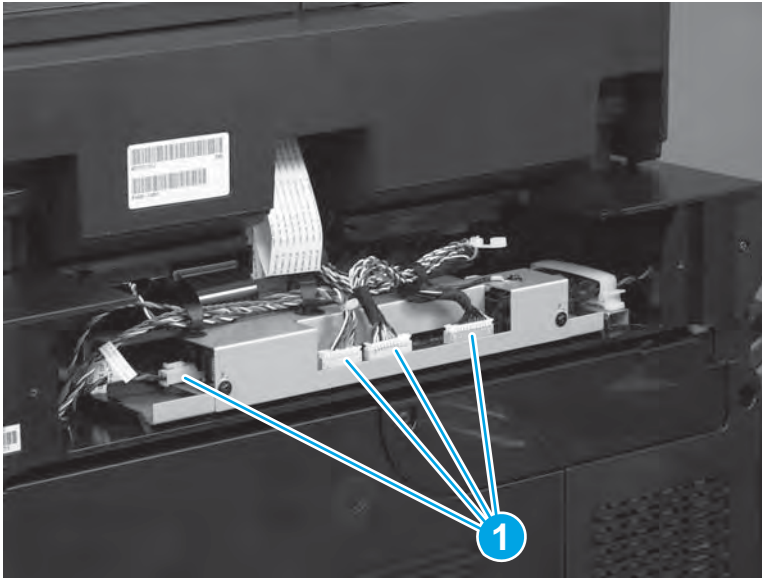
11. Install the wire harnesses in the four retainers (callout 1).

**Figure 1-396** Install the wire harnesses



12. Connect four connectors (callout 1).

**Figure 1-397** Connect four connectors



### Step 9: Install the scanner rear cover

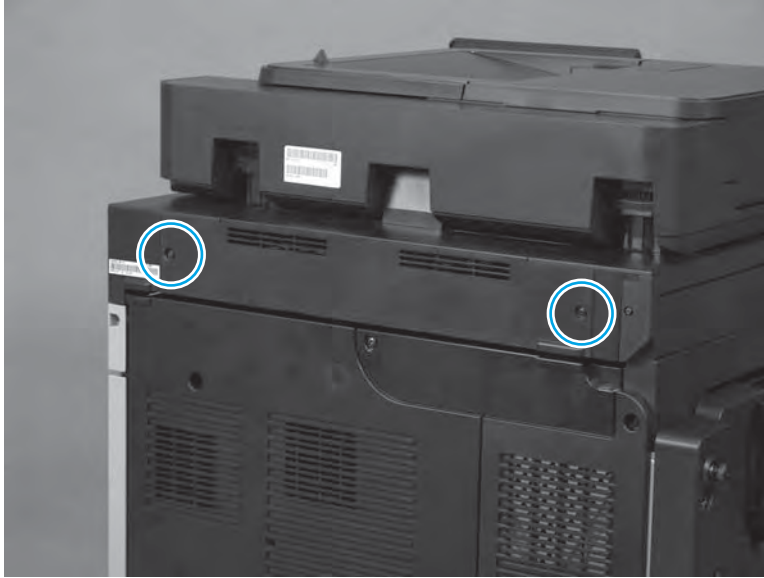
1. Install the cover.

**Figure 1-398** Install the cover




2. Install two screws.

**Figure 1-399** Install two screws



## Step 10: Install the replacement document feeder white backing

 **IMPORTANT:** When a replacement image scanner assembly is installed, the document feeder white backing must also be replaced.

1. Open the document feeder.

**Figure 1-400** Open the document feeder



2. Carefully remove the white backing.

**Figure 1-401** Remove the white backing



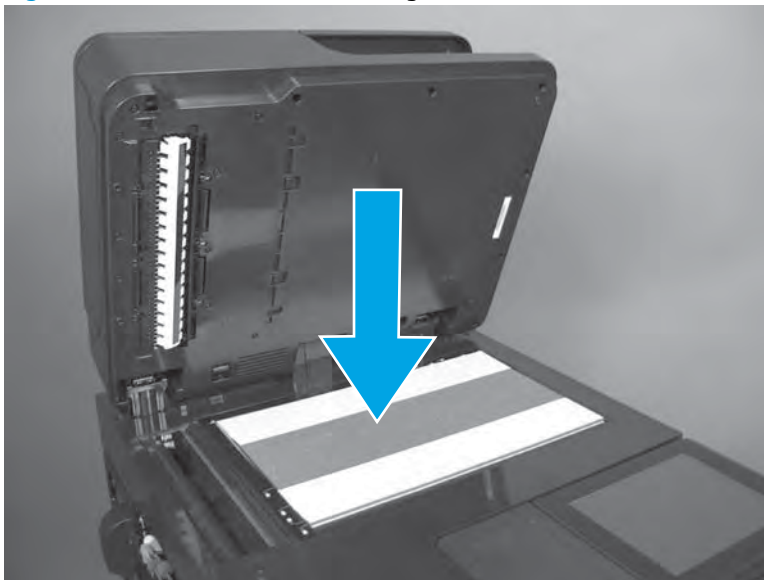
3. Remove any remaining adhesive.

**Figure 1-402** Remove remaining adhesive



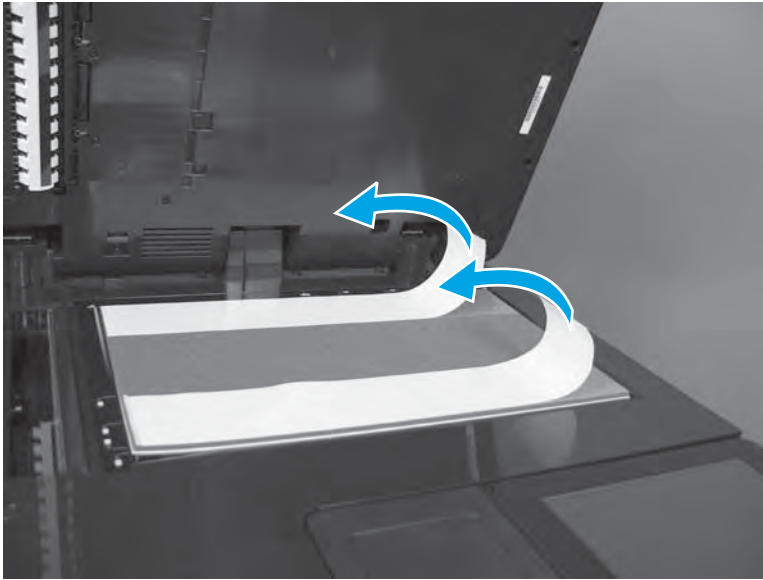
1. Place the white backing on the scanner glass.

**Figure 1-403** Place the white backing on the scanner




2. Peel off the two strips of adhesive backing.

**Figure 1-404** Peel off the adhesive backing



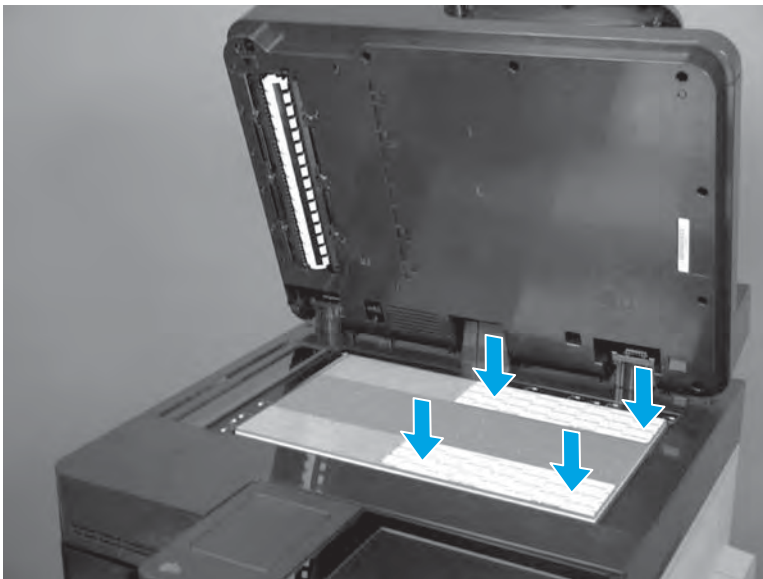
3. Place the two mylar-spacer strips (included with the kit) onto the adhesive, as shown.

---

 **IMPORTANT:** Align the mylar with the edges of the adhesive on the white backing.

---

**Figure 1-405** Place the two mylar-spacer strips onto the adhesive





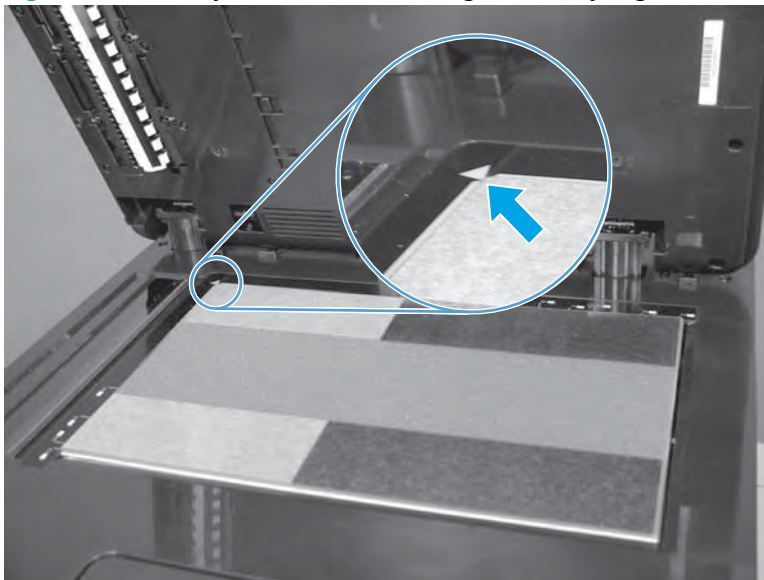
4. Peel off the two strips of adhesive backing.

**Figure 1-406** Peel off the adhesive backing



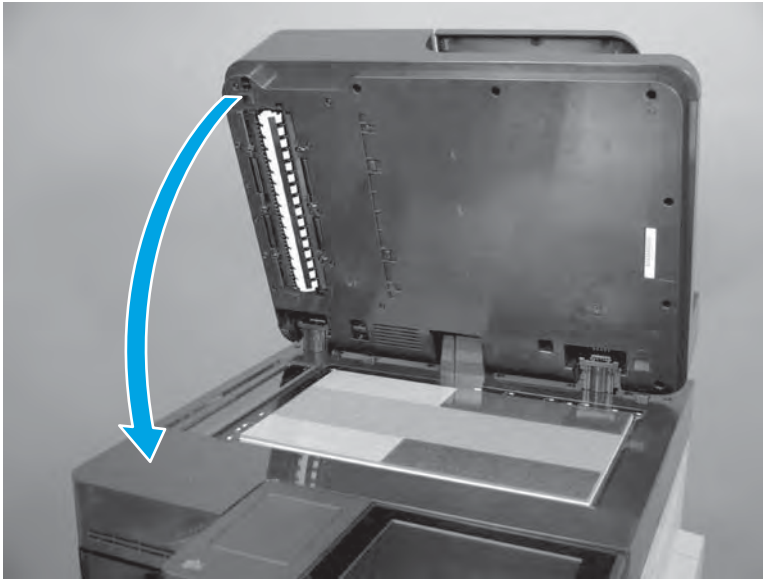
5. Verify that the white backing is aligned with the left rear corner of the scanner glass.

**Figure 1-407** Verify that the white backing is correctly aligned



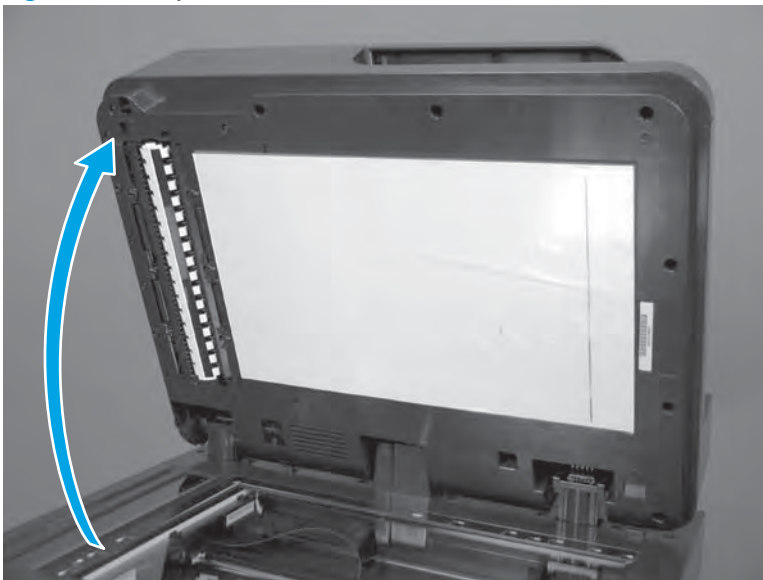
6. Close the document feeder. Press down firmly to adhere the white backing.

**Figure 1-408** Close the document feeder and press down



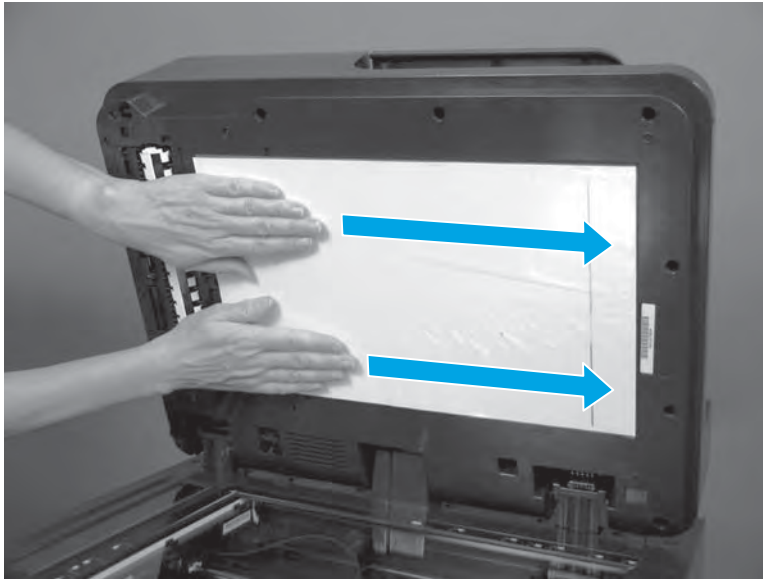
7. Open the document feeder.

**Figure 1-409** Open the document feeder



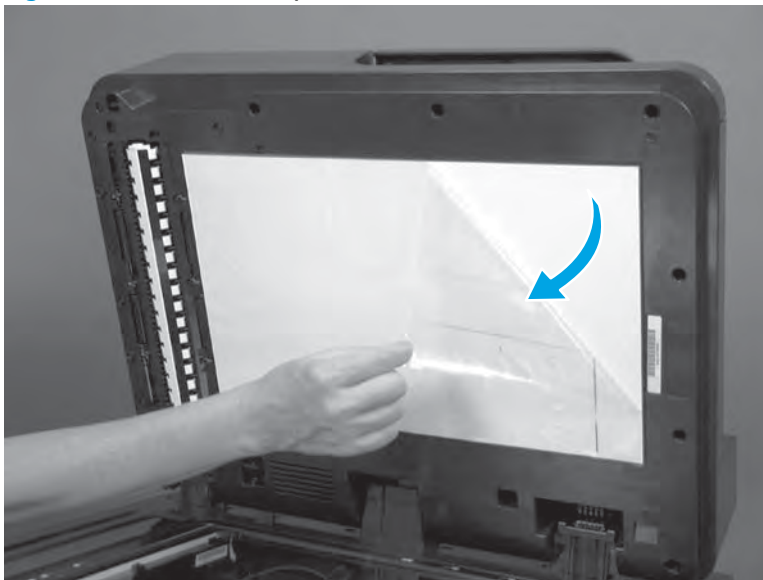
8. Press along the top and bottom of the white backing, over the areas with adhesive.

**Figure 1-410** Press along the white backing



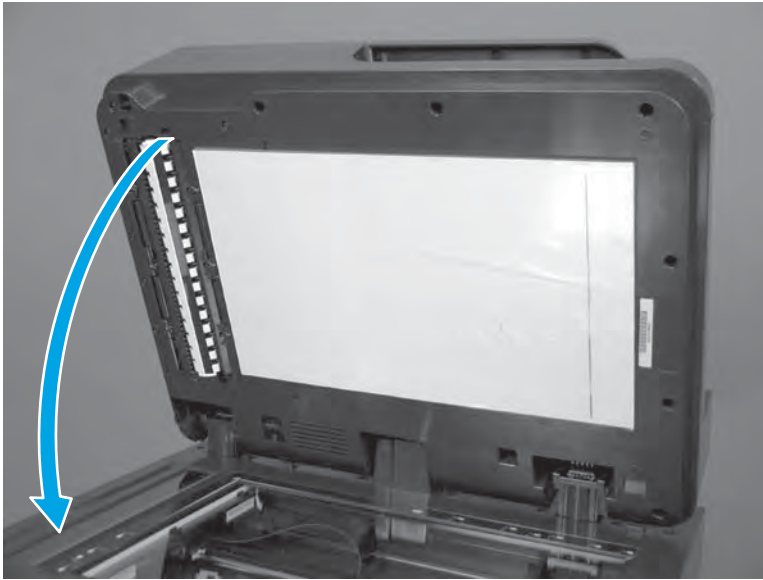
9. Peel off the protective plastic sheet.

**Figure 1-411** Peel off the protective sheet



10. Close the document feeder.

**Figure 1-412** Close the document feeder



## Step 11: Reset the supplies counters and calibrate the scanner

If a replacement scanner is installed, perform the following tasks after reassembling the product:

Turn the product on.

1. Use the **Service** menu to reset the **Flatbed Count** firmware counter.
  - a. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the **Device Maintenance** button.
  - b. Open the **Service** menu.
  - c. On the sign-in screen, select the **Service Access Code** option from the drop-down list.
  - d. Enter the following service access code for this product: 09063014.
  - e. Reset the **Flatbed Count** to zero.
2. Use the **Calibration/Cleaning** menu to calibrate the scanner.
  - a. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the **Device Maintenance** button.
  - b. Open the following menus:
    - **Calibration/Cleaning**
    - **Calibrate Scanner**
  - c. Touch the **Next** button to start the calibration process. Follow the on-screen prompts.
  - d. Wait while the product calibrates the scanner.

## Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

## Covers, doors, tray, and external panels (product base)

- [Identification and location \(product base\)](#)
- [Front cover](#)
- [Envelope feeder cover](#)
- [Image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Tray](#)
- [Side-rear cover](#)
- [Front-left cover and logo panel assembly](#)
- [Power-switch assembly](#)
- [Rear-right cover](#)
- [Rear-left cover](#)
- [Rear-top cover](#)
- [Right-lower door](#)
- [Document-feeder hinge cover](#)

## Identification and location (product base)

Figure 1-413 Identification and location (product base)

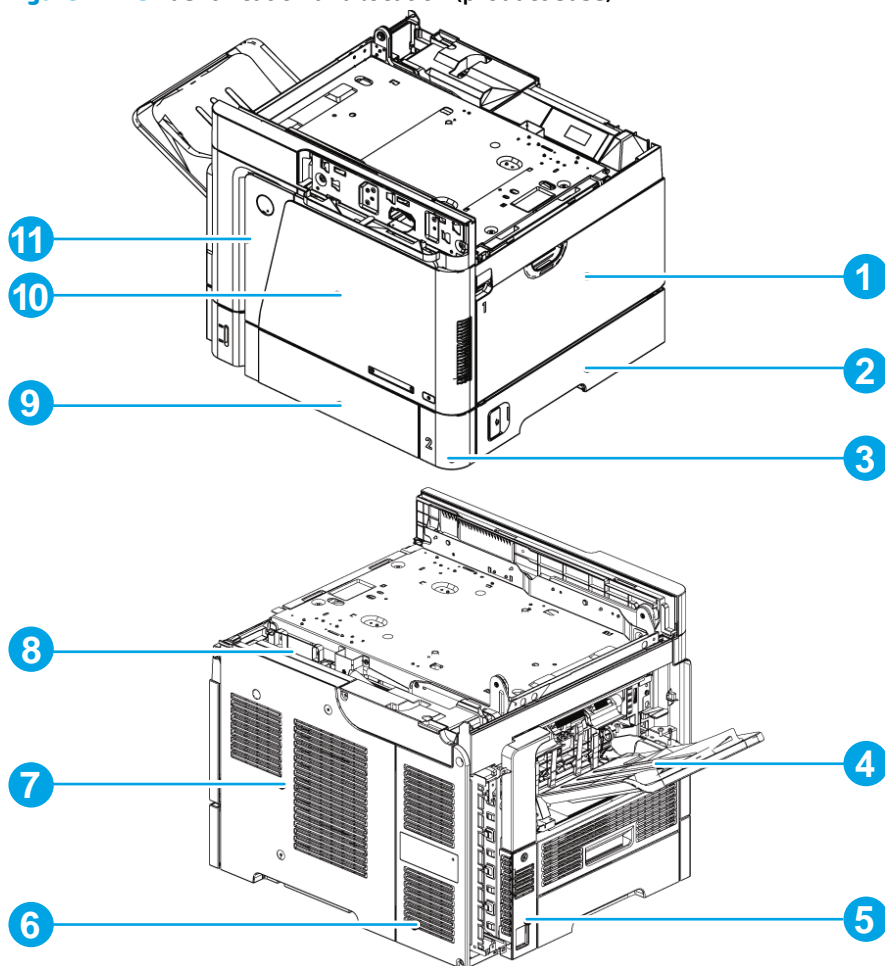


Table 1-1 Identification and location (product base)

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Tray 1 (multipurpose tray) cover	7	Right rear cover
2	Lower-right cover	8	Rear top cover
3	Power-switch assembly	9	Tray 2 (cassette)
4	Tray 1 base assembly	10	Front cover
5	Rear-left corner cover	11	Left cover
6	Left-rear cover		

## Front cover

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the front cover](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement front cover](#)
- [Step 3: Install the front cover](#)
- [Step 4: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front cover.

### Before servicing


Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

Front cover kit part number	
<b>B3G85-67905</b>	Front cover assembly with instruction guide

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

### Required tools

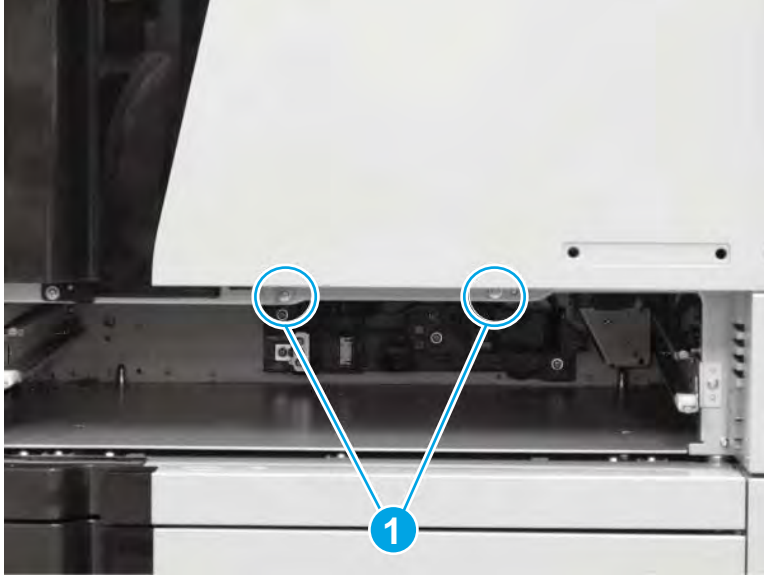
#2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## Step 1: Remove the front cover

1. Remove Tray 2, and then remove two screws (callout 1).



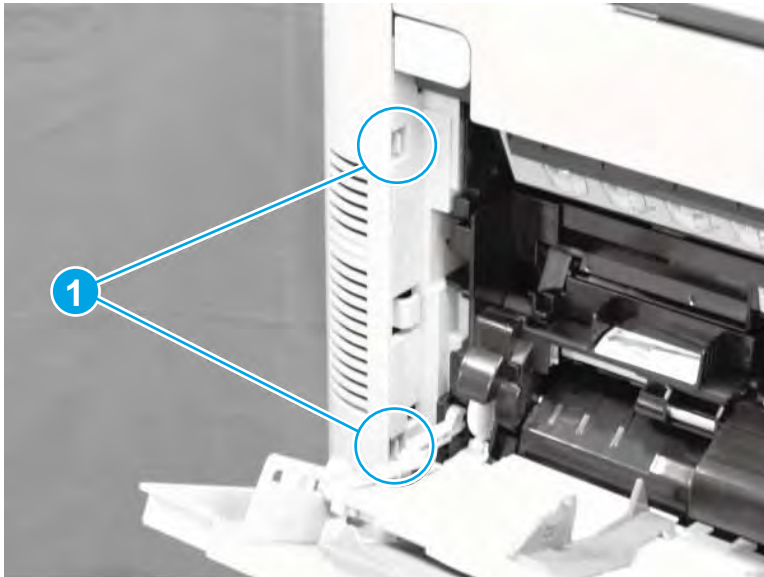
**Figure 1-414** Remove two screws



2. Open Tray 1, and then push in on two tabs (callout 1) to release them.

 **TIP:** Release the lower tab first, and then release the upper tab.

**Figure 1-415** Release two tabs



- Carefully flex the right-upper corner of the cover away from the product to release one locking pin.

**Figure 1-416** Release the right-upper corner



- Slide the cover towards the right side of the product to release it.

**Figure 1-417** Slide the cover to the right



5. Remove the cover.

**Figure 1-418** Remove the cover



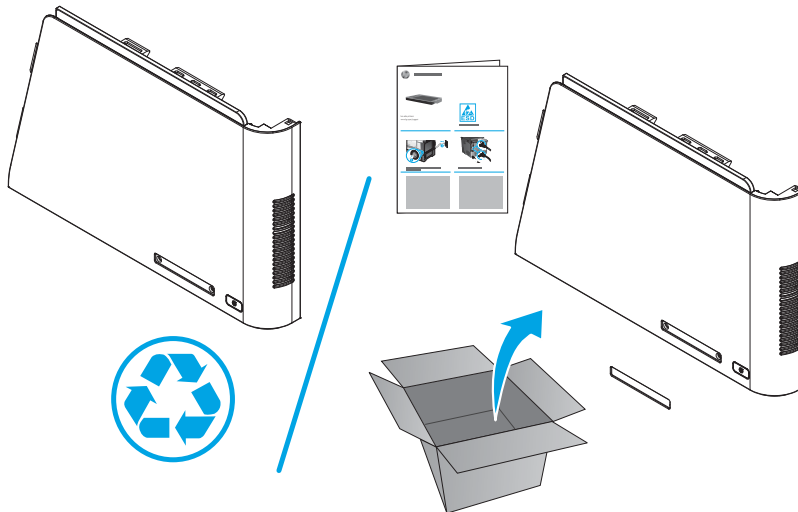
## Step 2: Unpack the replacement front cover

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

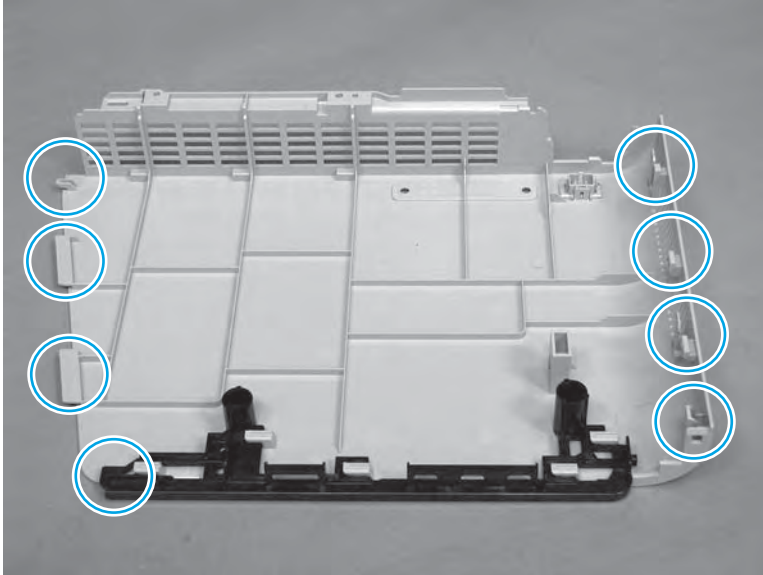
 **TIP:** Do not forget to unpack the product name plate.



## Step 3: Install the front cover

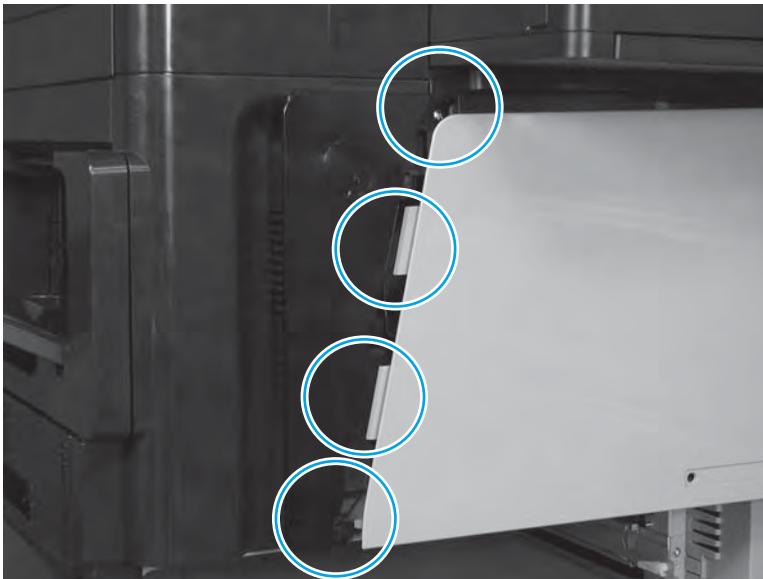
1. Take note of the location of all of the tabs on the back of the cover.

**Figure 1-419** Note of the location of the tabs



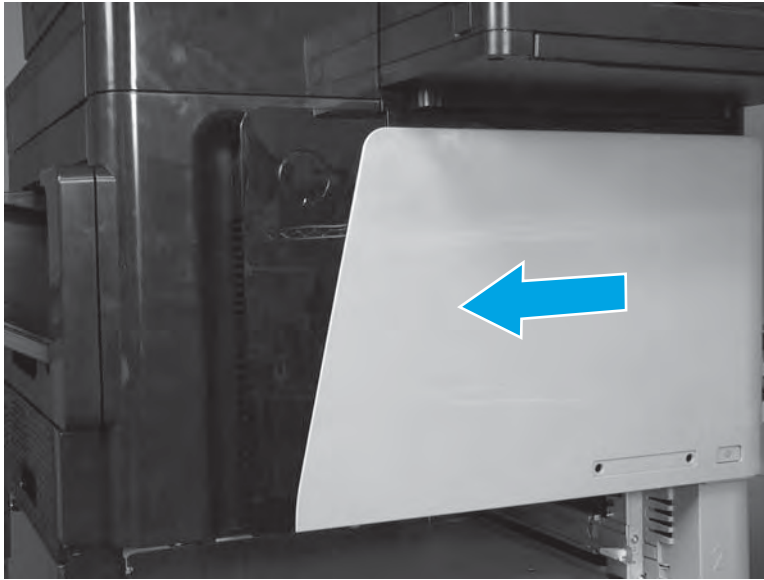
2. Align the four tabs (callout 1) on the cover with the slots (callout 2) on the logo panel.

**Figure 1-420** Align four tabs



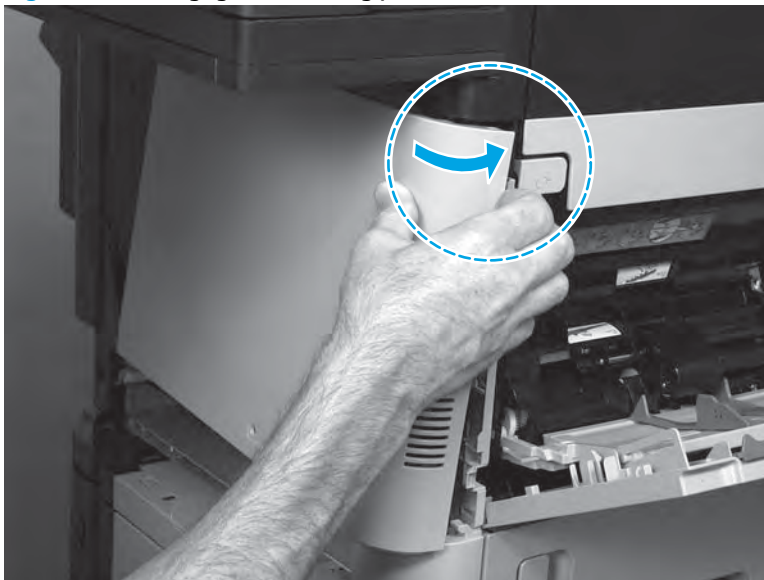
3. Slightly slide the cover toward the left side of the product to engage the tabs in the slots.

**Figure 1-421** Slide the cover to the left



4. Carefully flex the right-upper corner of the cover toward from the product to engage one locking pin.

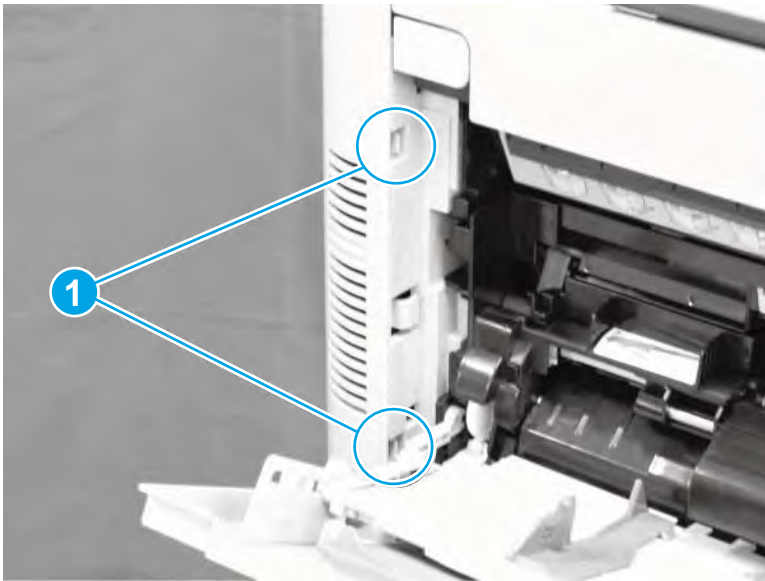
**Figure 1-422** Engage one locking pin



- Engage two tabs (callout 1).

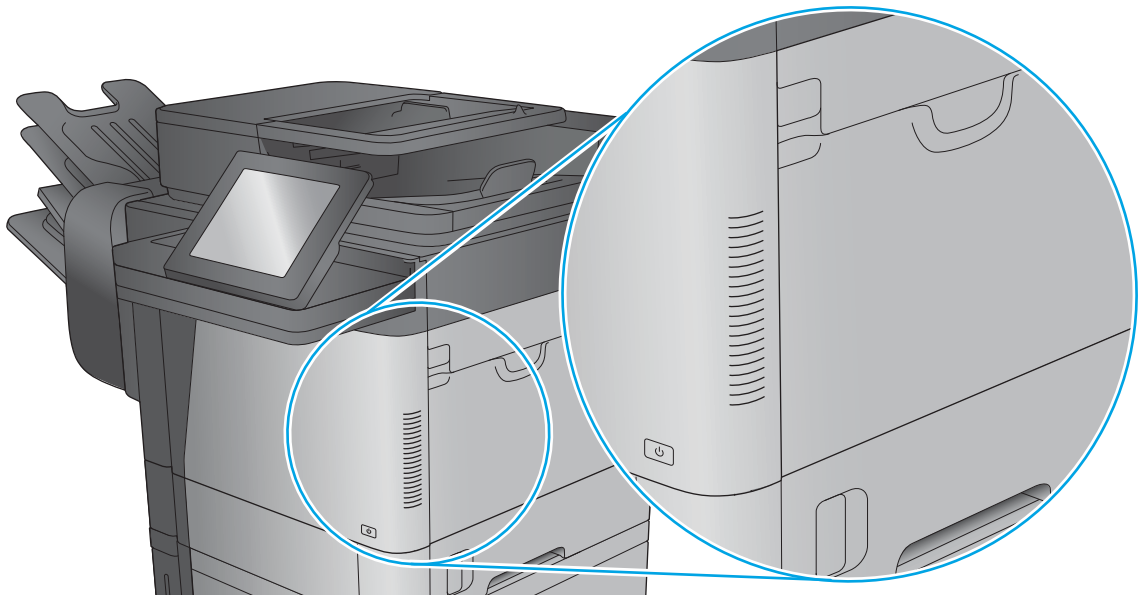
 **TIP:** Engage the upper tab first, and then engage the lower tab.

**Figure 1-423** Engage two tabs




- Close Tray 1, and verify that the gap between the edge of the front cover and the tray is even. If it is uneven, the tabs are not correctly engaged.

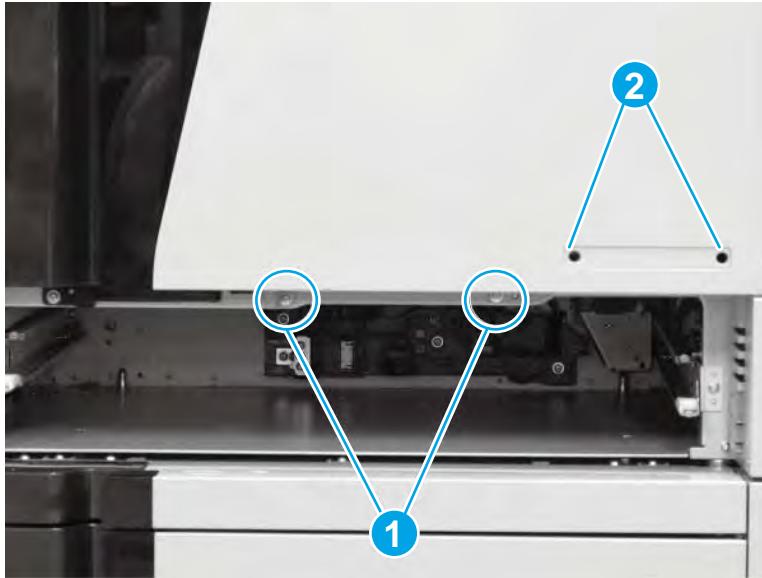
**Figure 1-424** Check cover installation



7. Install two screws (callout 1), and then reinstall Tray 2.

 **Reinstallation tip:** To install the product nameplate on the front cover, align the pins on the back side of the nameplate with the holes in the cover (callout 2), and then push in on the nameplate until it snaps in place.

**Figure 1-425** Install two screws



#### Step 4: Turn the product power on

##### After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

##### Parts Return

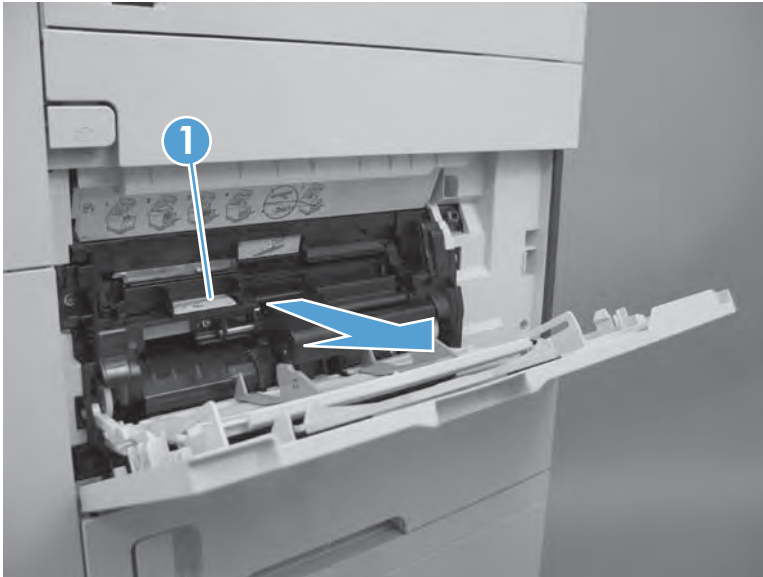
[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

## Envelope feeder cover

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Open Tray 1.
2. Pull the envelope feeder cover (callout 1) straight out of the product to remove it.

**Figure 1-426** Remove the envelope feeder cover





## Image scanner cable cover

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 3: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 4: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the image scanner cable cover.

### Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

Image scanner cable cover part number	
RM2-5816-000CN	Image scanner cable cover

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

**⚠ WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

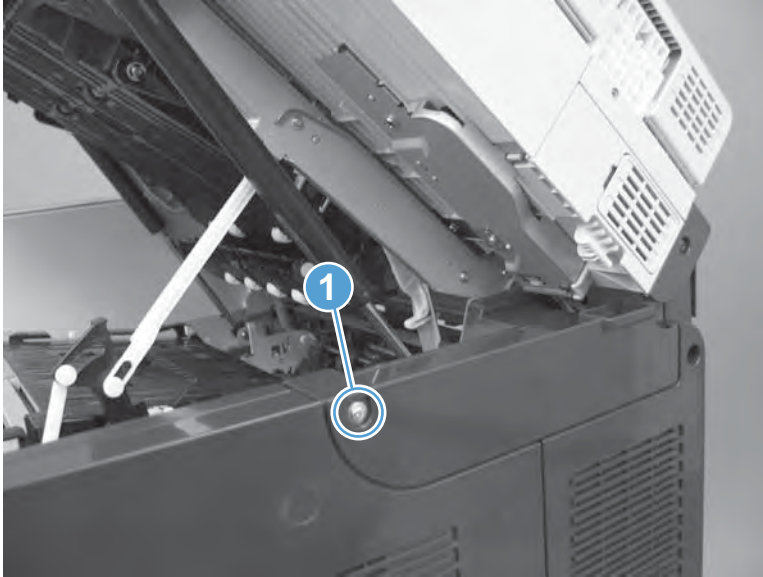
### Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover

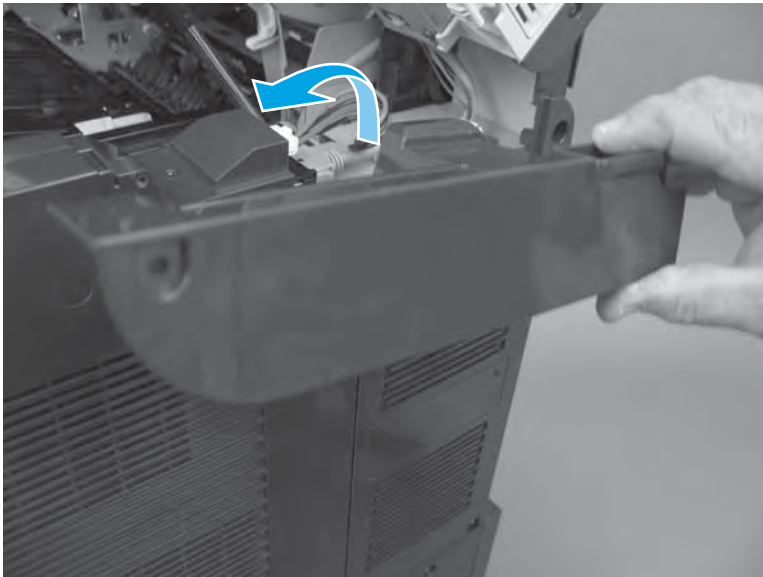
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-427** Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

**Figure 1-428** Remove the cover



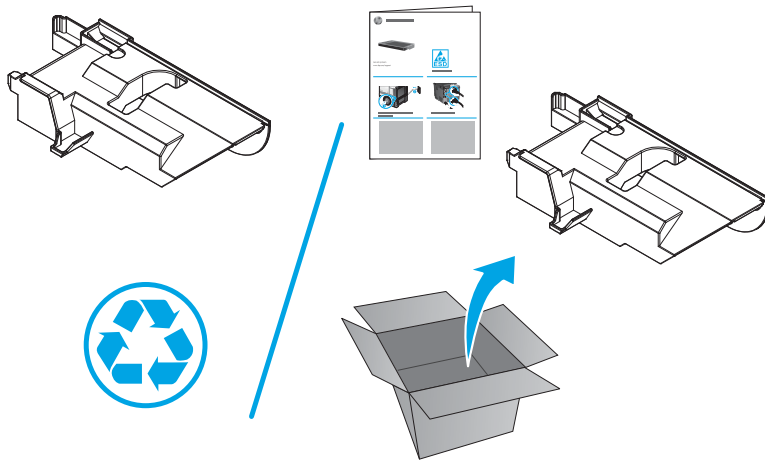
## Step 2: Unpack the replacement image scanner cable cover

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling)



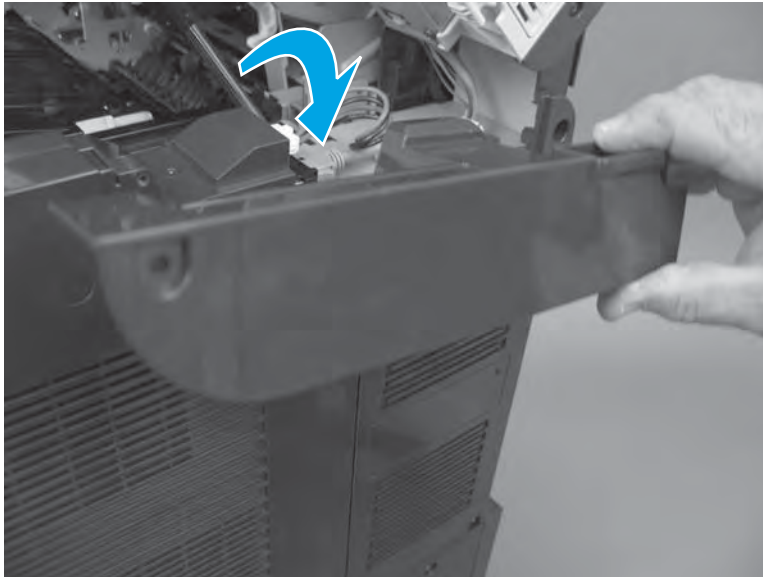
**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



### Step 3: Install the image scanner cable cover

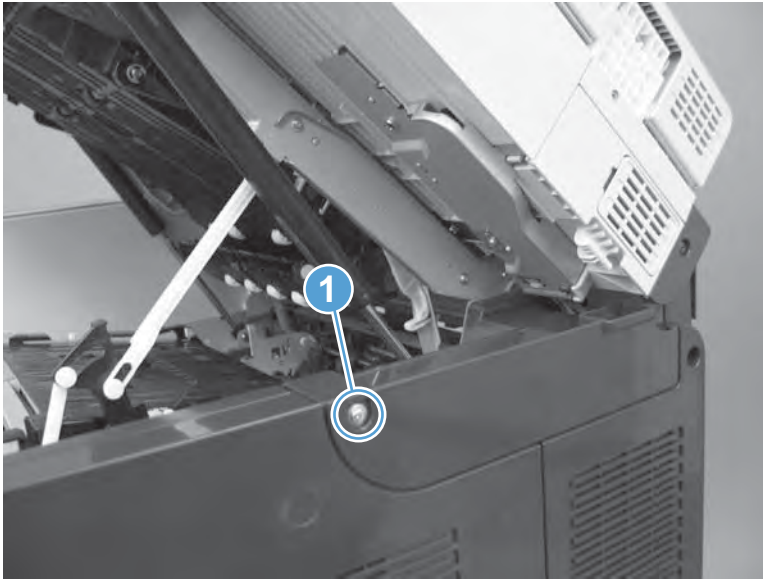
1. Install the cover on the product.

**Figure 1-429** Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

**Figure 1-430** Install one screw



#### **Step 4: Turn the product power on**

##### **After servicing**

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

##### **Parts Return**

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling)

## Tray 1 cover

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Step 3: Install the Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Step 4: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the Tray 1 cover.

### Before servicing


Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

Tray 1 cover part number	
RM2-5816-000CN	Tray 1 cover

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

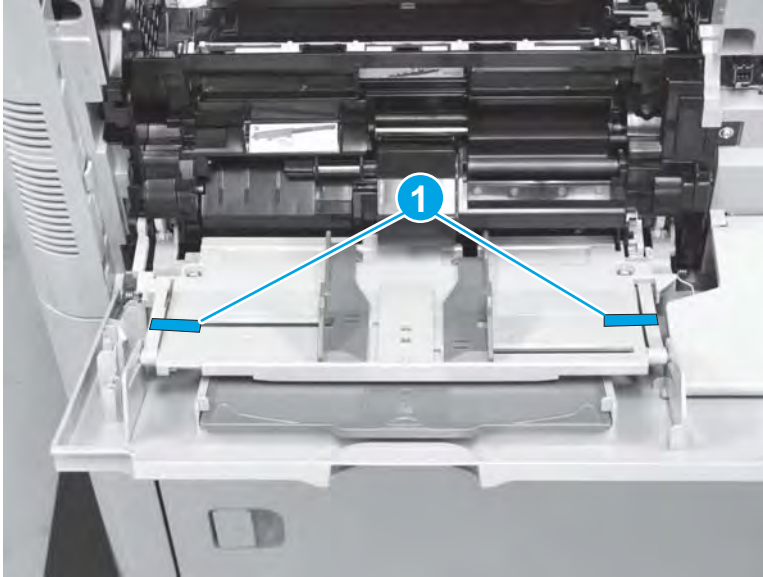
### Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

### Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 cover

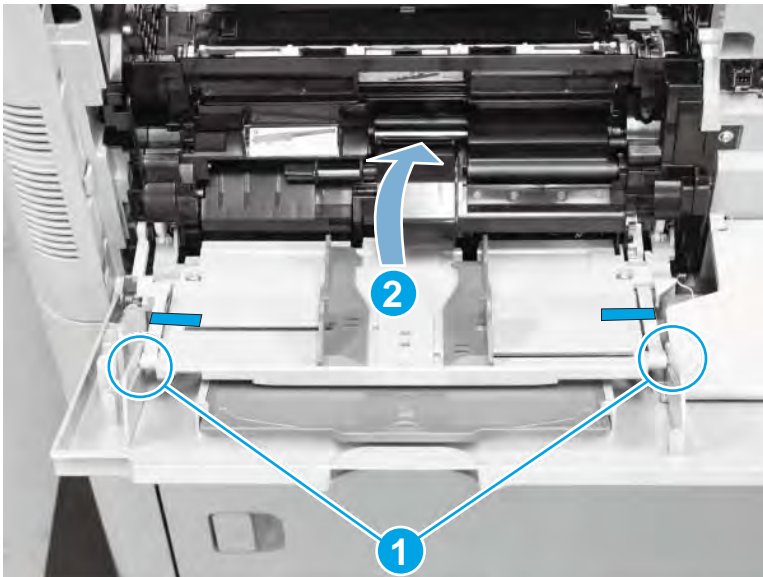
1. Use low adhesive tape to secure the outer retaining pins (callout 1) to the inner tray.

**Figure 1-431** Secure the outer retaining pins



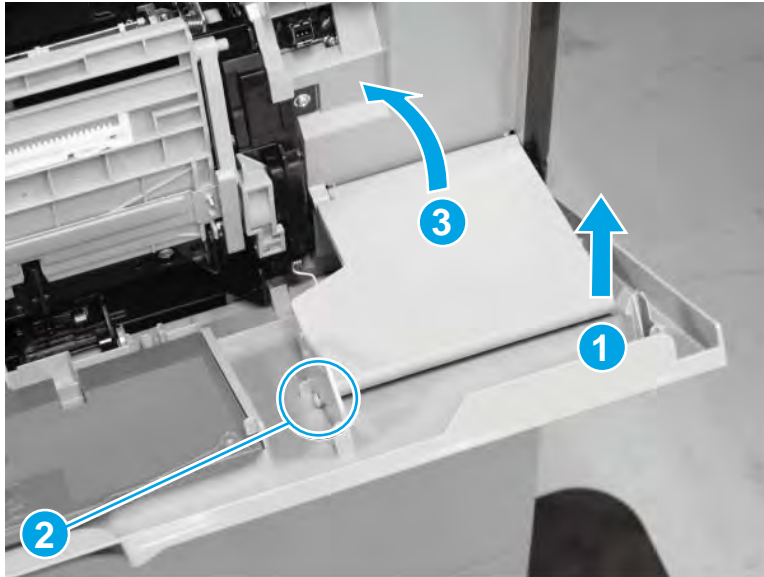
2. Open Tray 1, release the two outer retaining pins (callout 1) on the cover, and then carefully fold the inner tray up (callout 2) and into the product to protect it.

**Figure 1-432** Release two outer retaining pins



- Carefully lift on the outer corner of the tray inner cover (callout 1) to release one pin (callout 2) from the guide, and then fold the inner cover up (callout 3) and into the product.

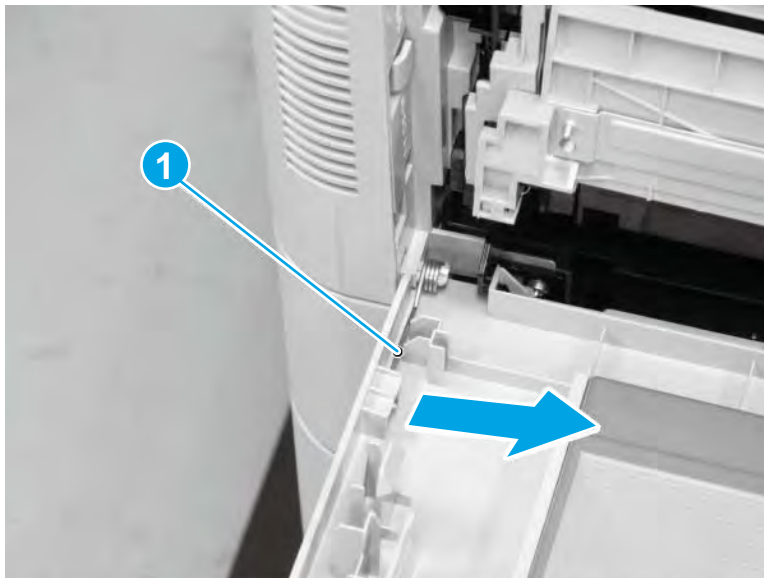
**Figure 1-433** Release one pin



- Release the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

**CAUTION:** The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

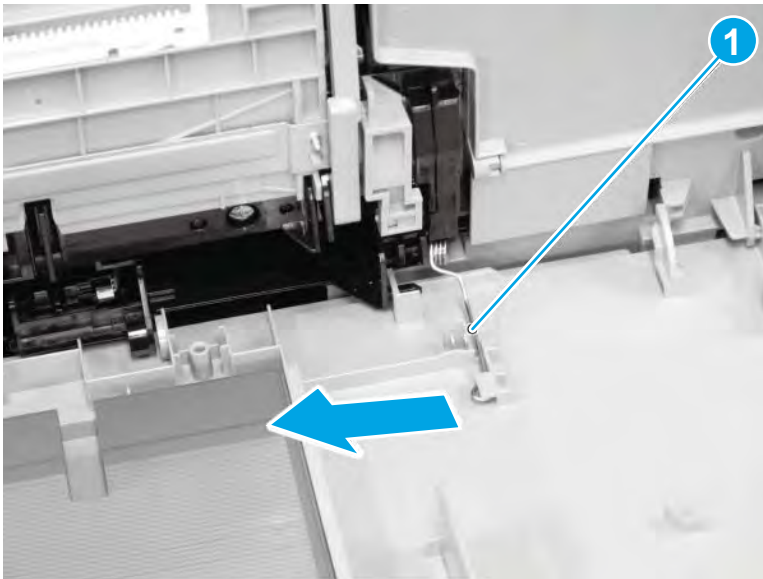
**Figure 1-434** Release the left-side spring



5. Release the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

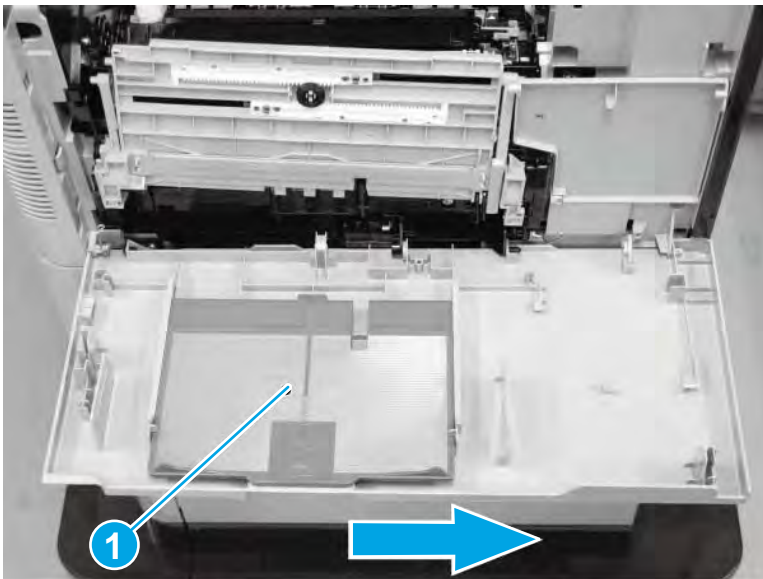
**⚠ CAUTION:** The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

**Figure 1-435** Release the right-side spring



6. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the back of the product to release it, and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-436** Remove the cover



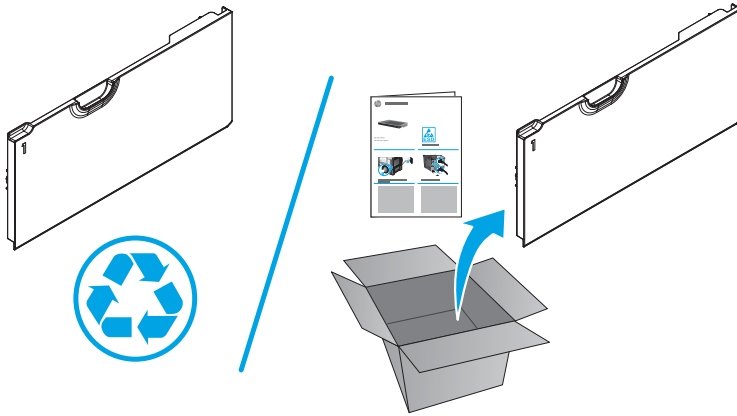
## Step 2: Unpack the replacement Tray 1 cover

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

**📄 NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

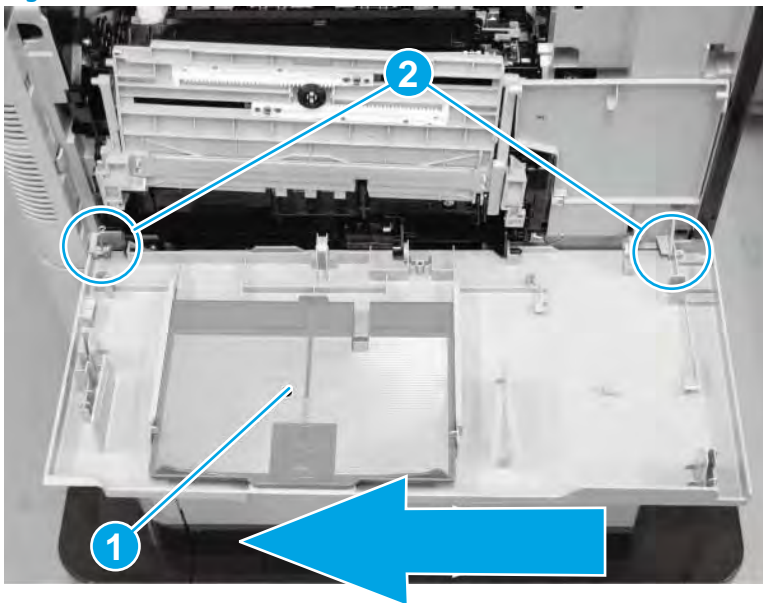




### Step 3: Install the Tray 1 cover

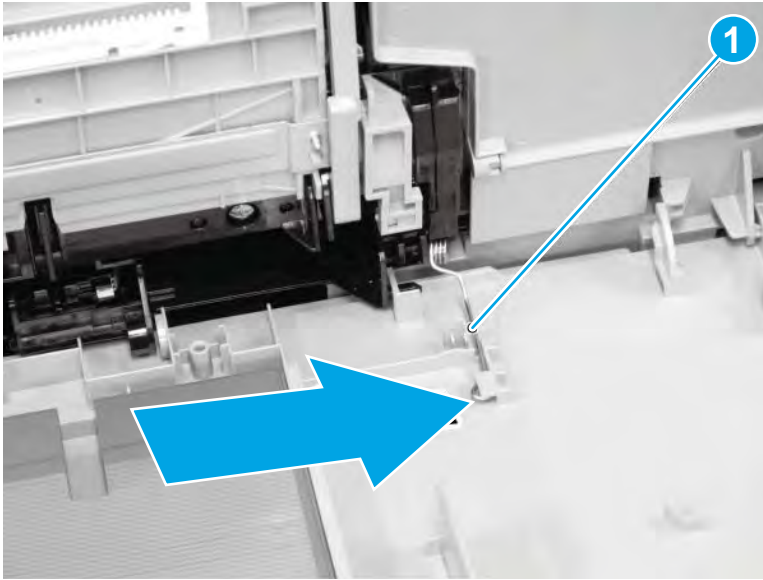
1. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the front of the product to install it on the hinge pins (callout 2).

**Figure 1-437** Install the cover



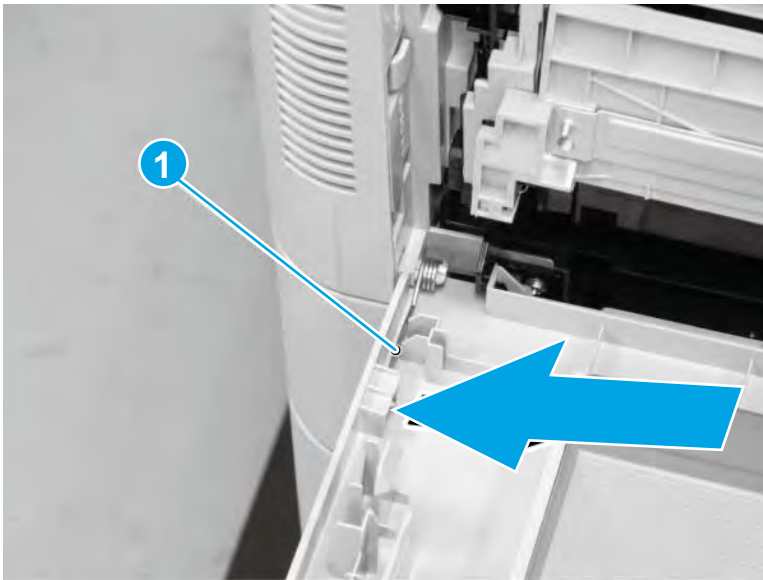
2. Engage the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

**Figure 1-438** Engage the right-side spring



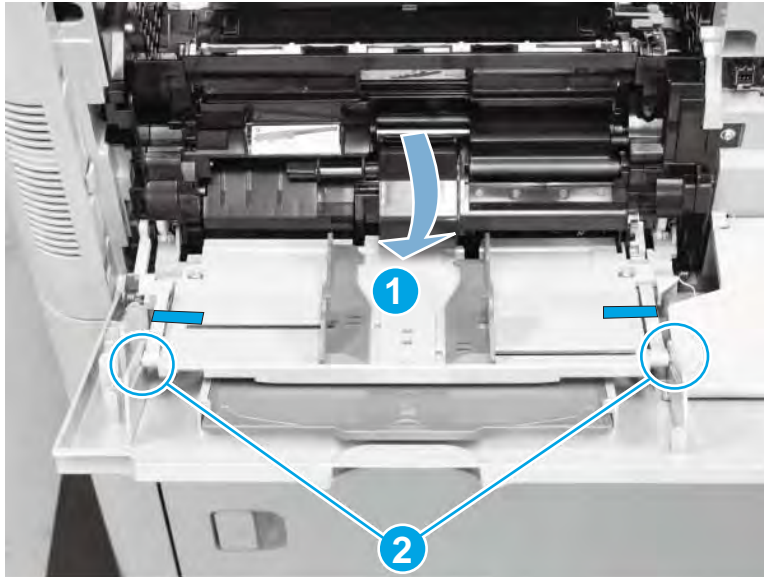
3. Engage the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

**Figure 1-439** Engage the left-side spring



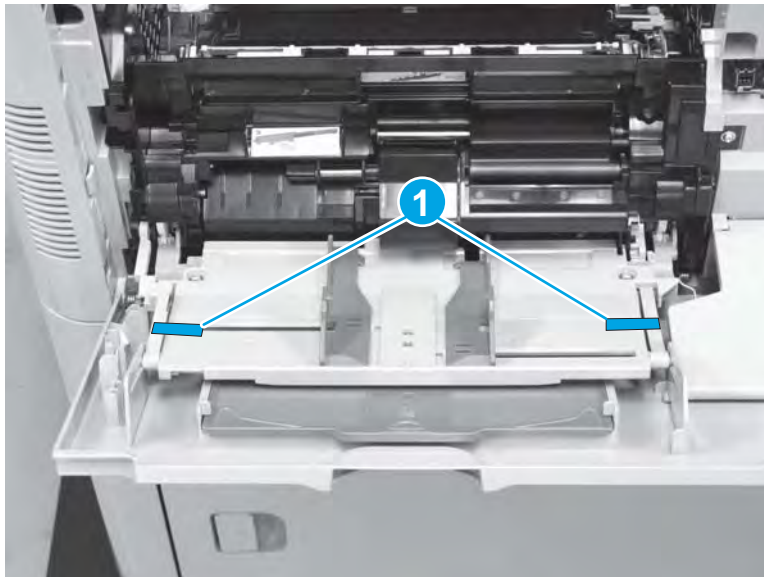
4. Lower the inner tray assembly (callout 1), and then engage the two outer retaining pins (callout 2) on the cover.

**Figure 1-440** Engage two outer retaining pins



5. Remove the low adhesive tape (callout 1), and then close the tray.

**Figure 1-441** Remove the low adhesive tape



## Step 4: Turn the product power on

### After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

## Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling.)

## Tray

Use this procedure to remove any of the 1x500-sheet trays.

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

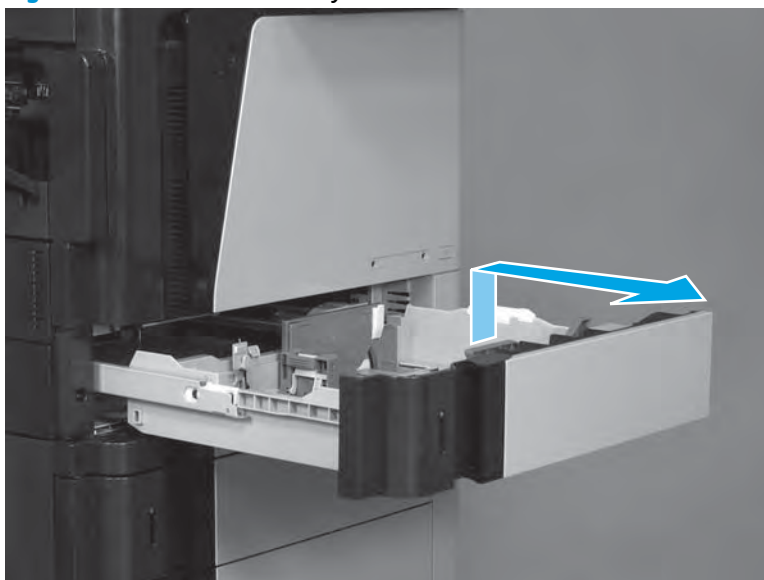
1. Pull the tray straight out of the product until it stops.

**Figure 1-442** Open the tray



2. Carefully lift up the tray to release it, and then remove the tray.

**Figure 1-443** Remove the tray



## Side-rear cover

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the formatter](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the side-rear cover](#)
- [Step 5: Unpack the replacement side-rear cover](#)
- [Step 6: Install the side-rear cover](#)
- [Step 7: Install the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 8: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 9: Install the formatter](#)
- [Step 10: Test the installation](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the side-rear cover for the HP LaserJet Enterprise M630.

### Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct assembly part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the assembly.

Side-rear cover part number	
RC4-5716-000CN	Side-rear cover


### Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### Step 1: Remove the formatter

1. Do the following steps:

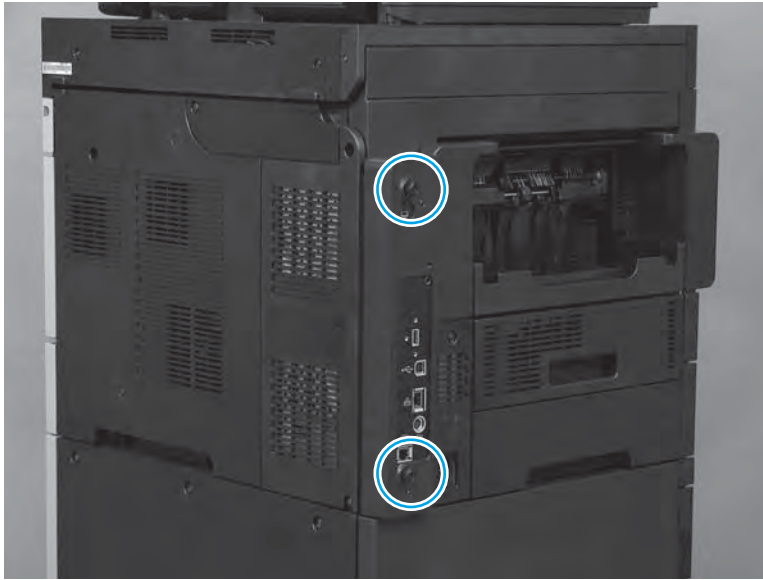
- a. Turn off the product.
- b. Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

- c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.

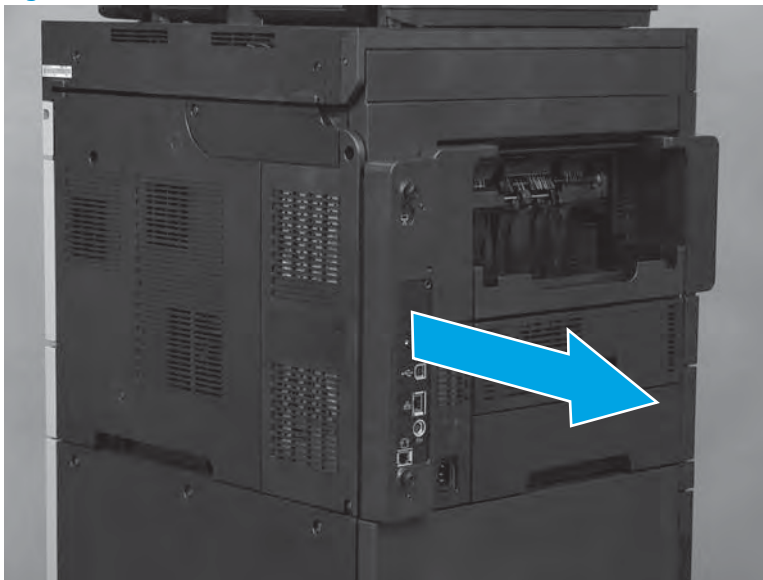
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

**Figure 1-444** Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

**Figure 1-445** Remove the formatter

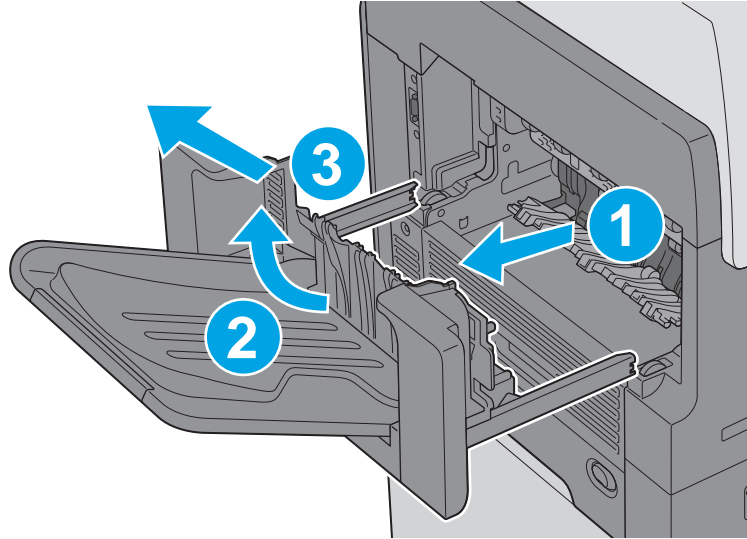


## Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

- ▲ Do one of the following steps:

- a. **M630dn and M630f:** Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

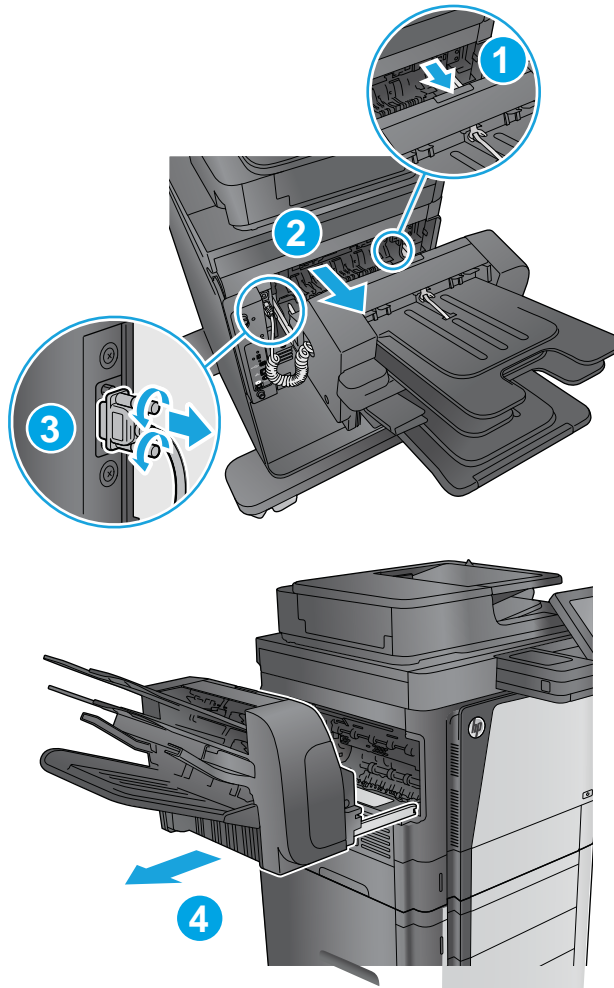
**Figure 1-446** Remove the output bin






- b. **M630z:** Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

**Figure 1-447** Remove the stapling mailbox

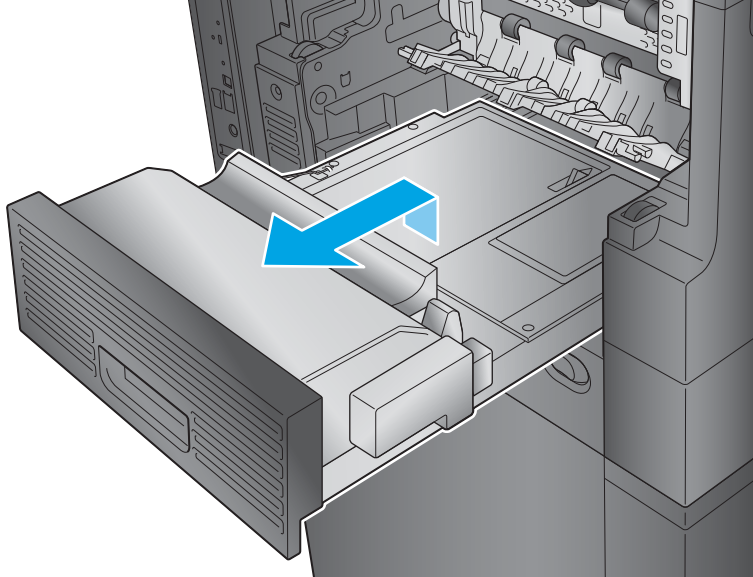


### Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory

- ▲ Slide the duplex assembly away from the product, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails, and then remove it.

 **NOTE:** Locate the duplexer at the left-hand side of the product.

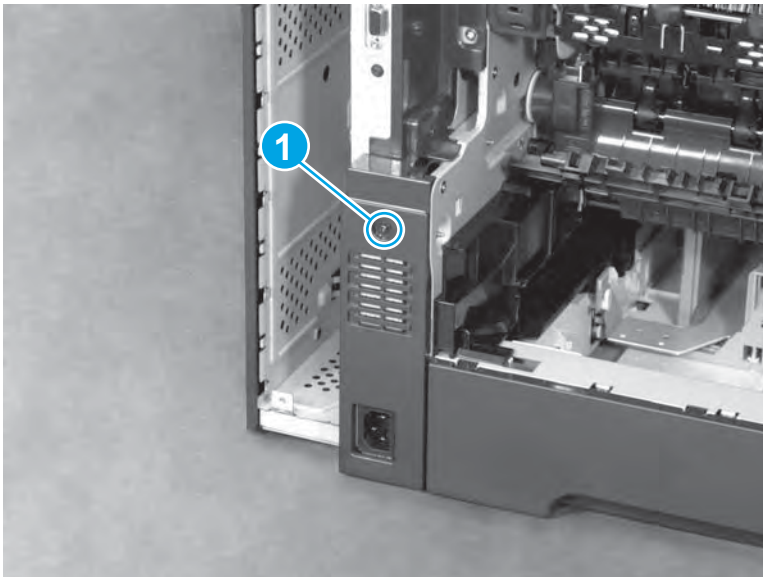
**Figure 1-448** Remove the duplex accessory



**Step 4: Remove the side-rear cover**

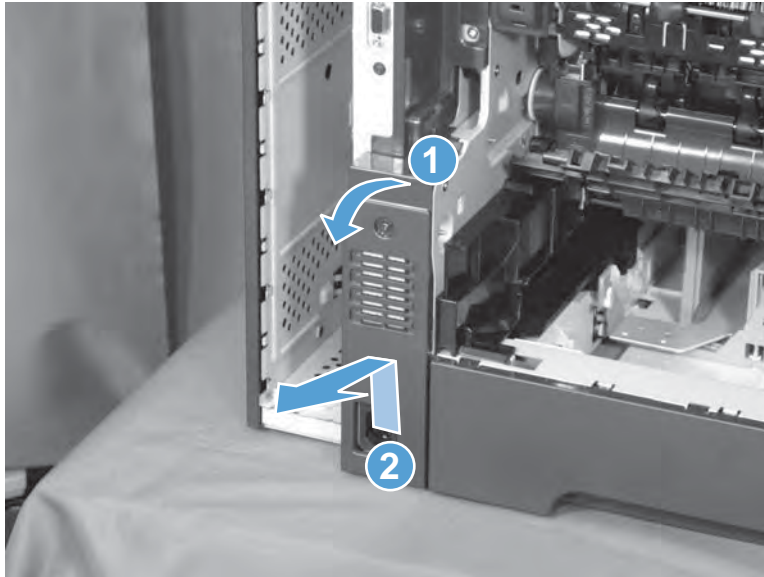
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-449** Remove one screw



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the product (callout 1), slightly raise the cover to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-450** Remove the side-rear cover



### Step 5: Unpack the replacement side-rear cover

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

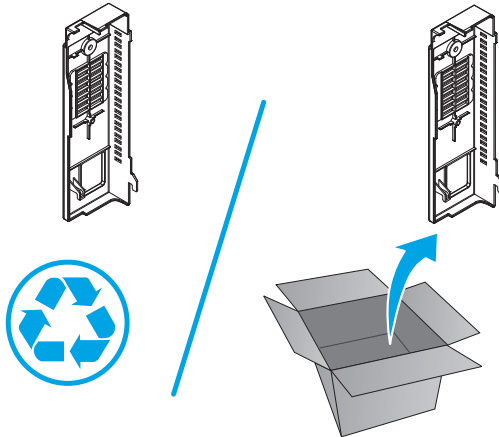
[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

---

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the assembly.

---

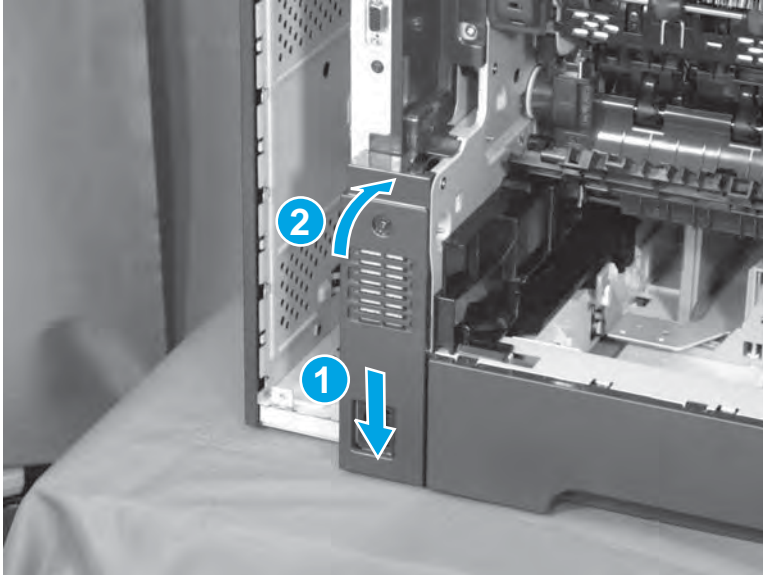
**Figure 1-451** Recycle and unpack



### Step 6: Install the side-rear cover

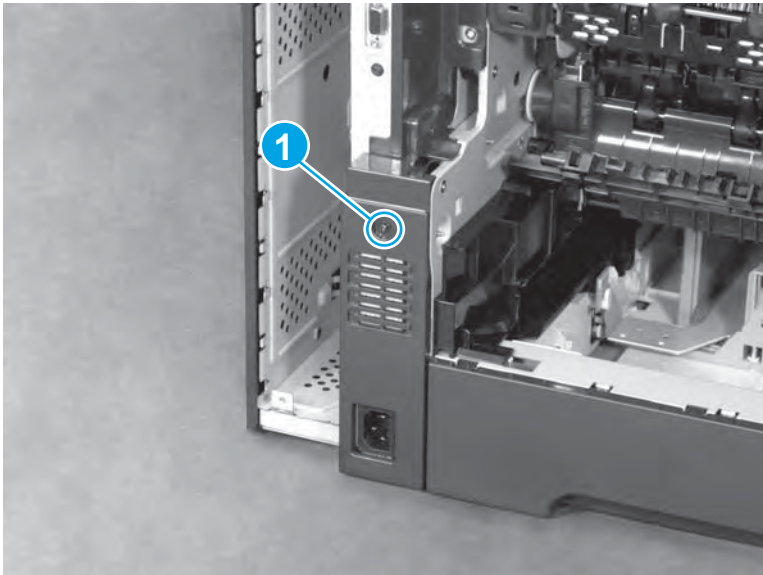
1. Position the bottom of the cover on the product (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the cover toward the product (callout 2) to install it.

**Figure 1-452** Install the side-rear cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1).


**Figure 1-453** Install one screw




## Step 7: Install the duplex accessory

- ▲ Position the duplex assembly on the product at a slight angle, engage the slide rails, and then slide the duplex assembly all of the way into the product to install it.

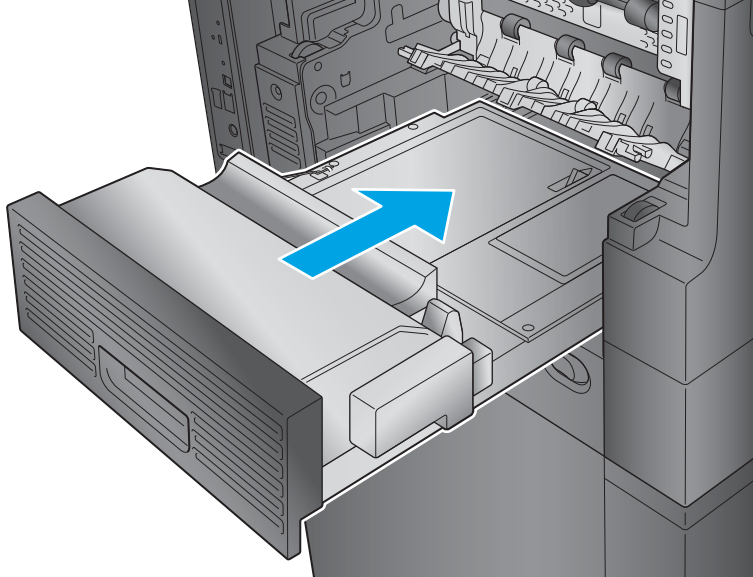
---

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that the duplex accessory is full installed.

 **NOTE:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed duplex accessory.

---

**Figure 1-454** Install the duplex accessory

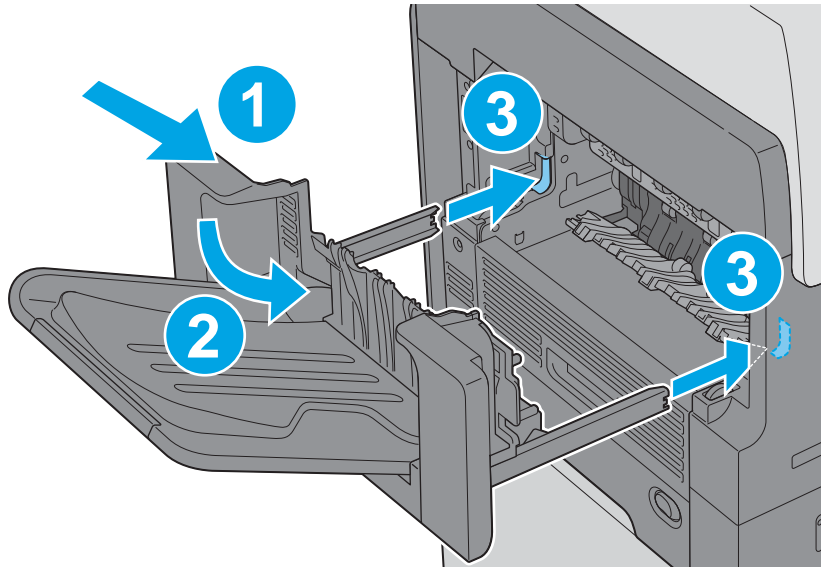


**Step 8: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox**


▲ Do one of the following:

- a. **M630dn and M630f:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

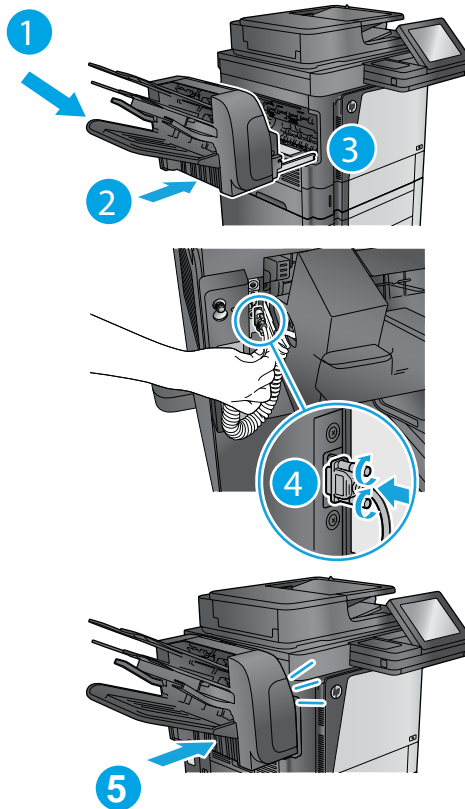
**Figure 1-455** Install the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4), and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.

 **TIP:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

**Figure 1-456** Install the stapling mailbox

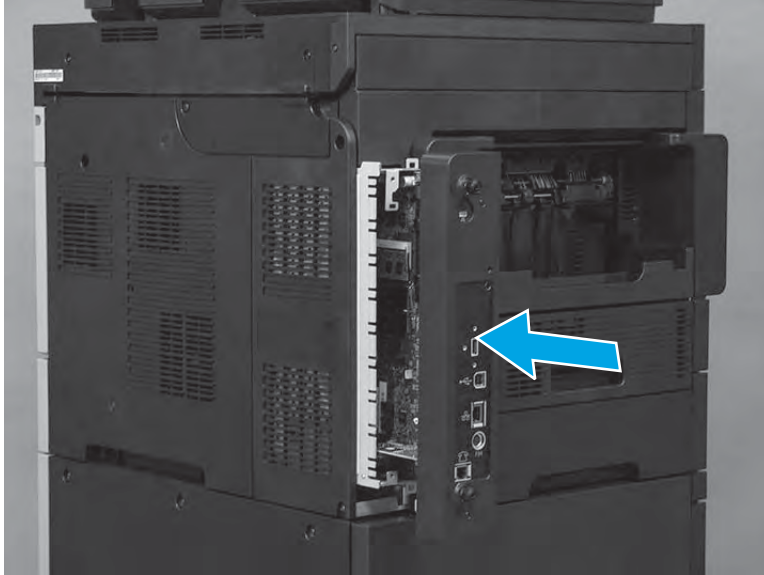


## Step 9: Install the formatter

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

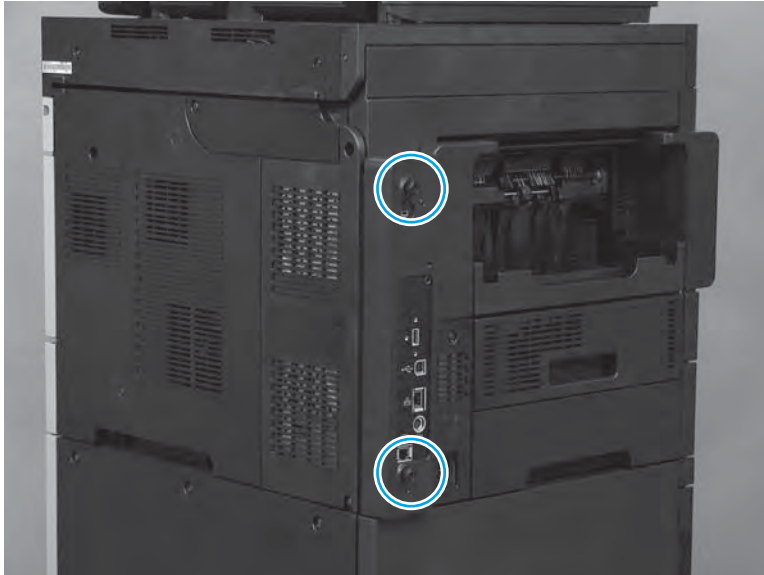
1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

**Figure 1-457** Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot



2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.


**Figure 1-458** Tighten the two thumbscrews



## Step 10: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:
  - a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.
  - b. Plug in the power cord.
2. Turn on the product.

---

 **TIP:** If the product does not initialize when the power is turned on, make sure that the memory DIMM is correctly installed.

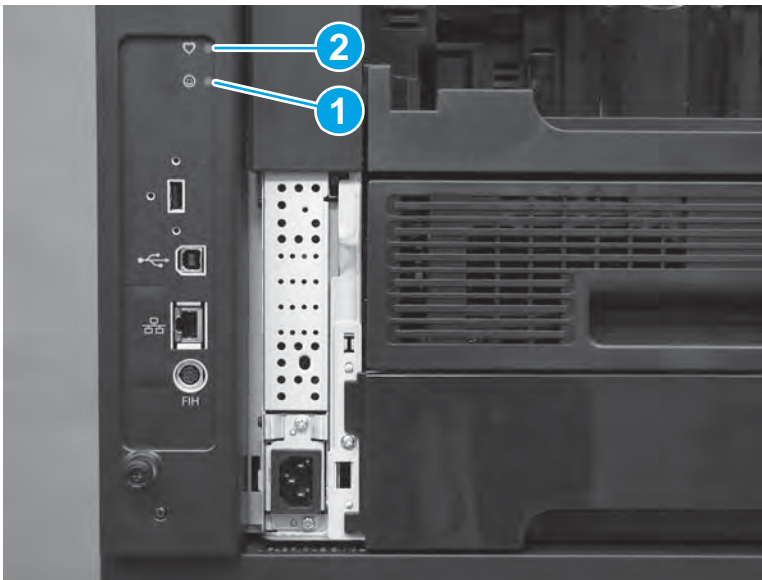
---

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter:

- The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is functioning correctly.
  - While the product is initializing, the heartbeat LED illuminates solid red for about one second, and then turns solid green for about twenty seconds.
  - After the initialization sequence is complete, the heartbeat LED blinks continuously if the printer is functioning correctly.
- The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LEDs do not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).

**Figure 1-459** Verify that the formatter is functioning



## Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).



## Front-left cover and logo panel assembly

### Remove the following assemblies:

- Output bin and bin base assembly. See [Output bin and bin base assembly on page 68](#).
- Front cover. See [Front cover on page 274](#).

---

 **NOTE:** If Tray 2 was not previously removed, remove it now.


---

### Remove the front-left cover and logo panel assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

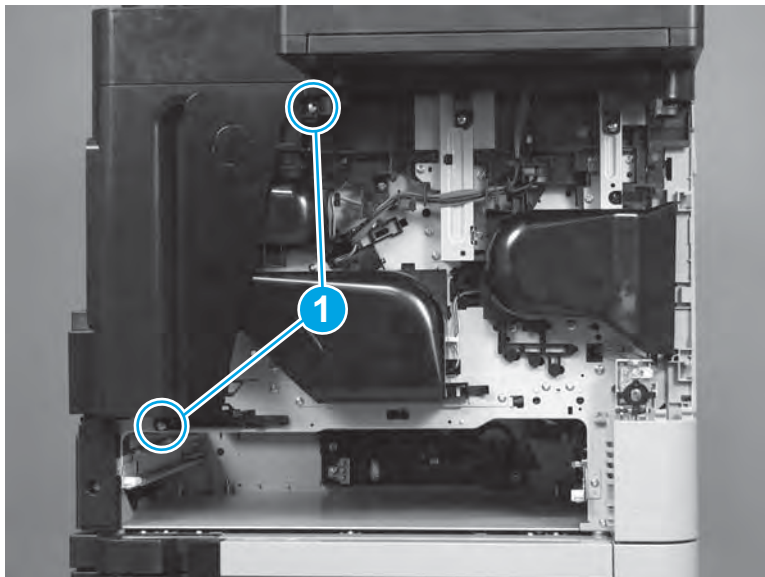
1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

---

 **NOTE:** The upper screw is a M4 screw. The lower screw is a M3 screw.

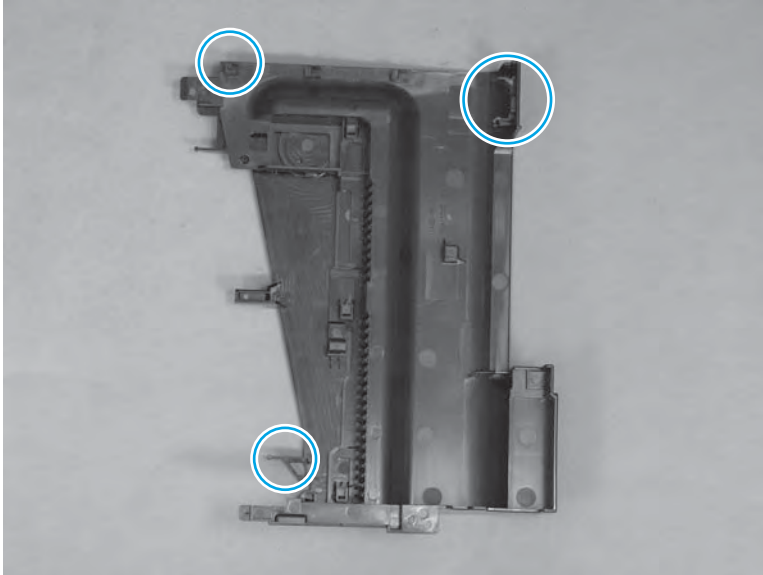
---

**Figure 1-460** Remove two screws




2. Before removing the assembly, note the locations of the tabs on the backside of the assembly shown in the figure.

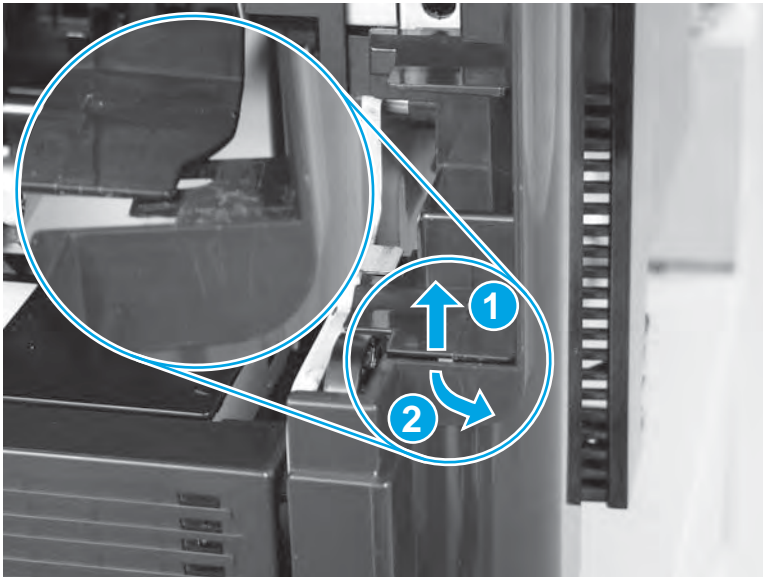
**Figure 1-461** Note the locations of the tabs and pins



3. At the left side of the assembly, use a small flat blade screwdriver to release one tab (callout 1), and then flex the bottom of the assembly away from the product (callout 2).

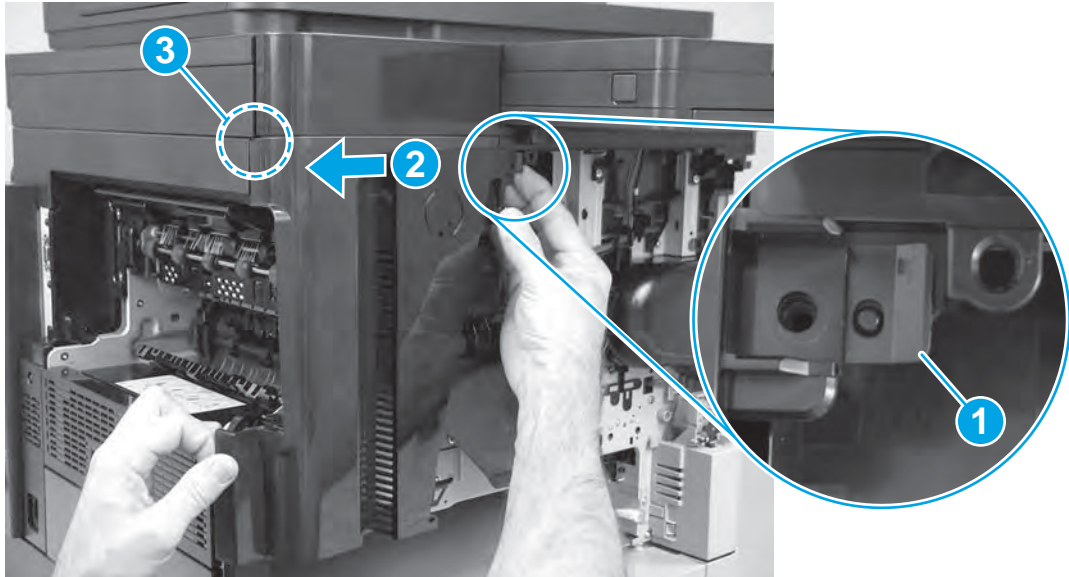
 **NOTE:** The assembly is not embossed to show the location of the tab.

**Figure 1-462** Release one tab




4. Keep the lower-left corner of the assembly released, release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the assembly to the left (callout 2) to release a second tab (callout 3).

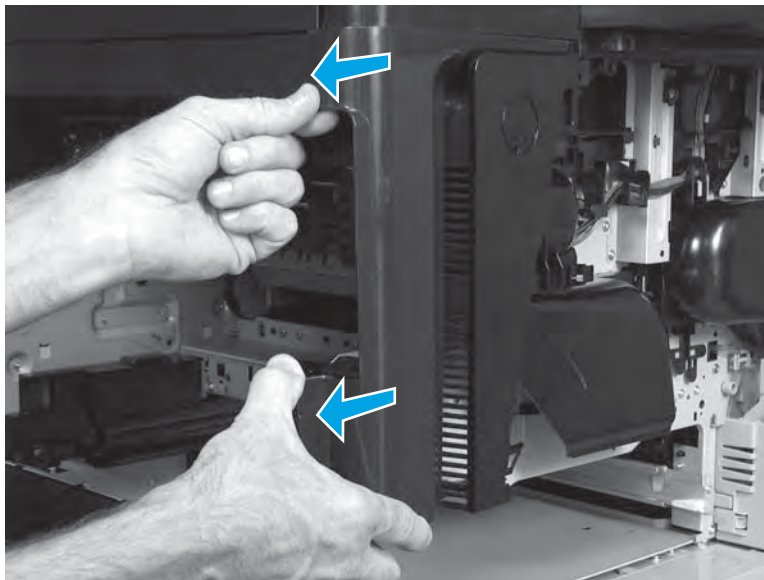
**Figure 1-463** Release two tabs



5. Continue to slide the assembly to the left to release it.

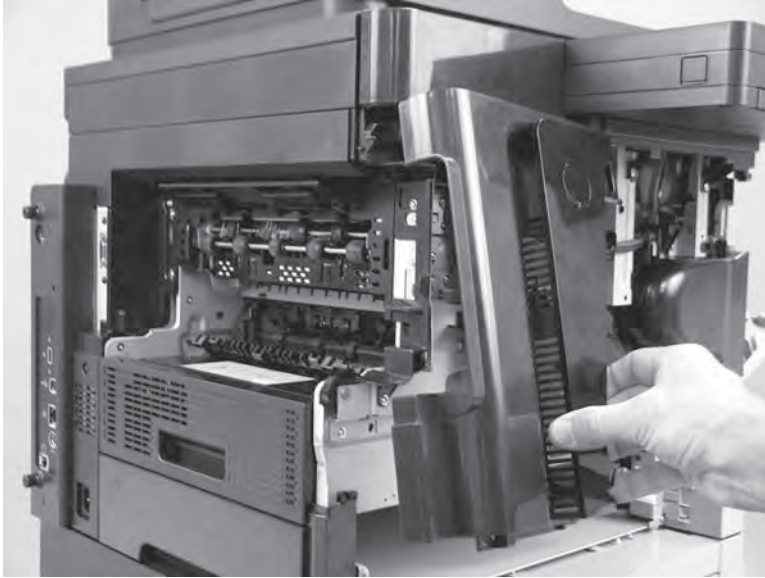
 **TIP:** Slightly flex the bottom of assembly away from the product.

**Figure 1-464** Release the assembly



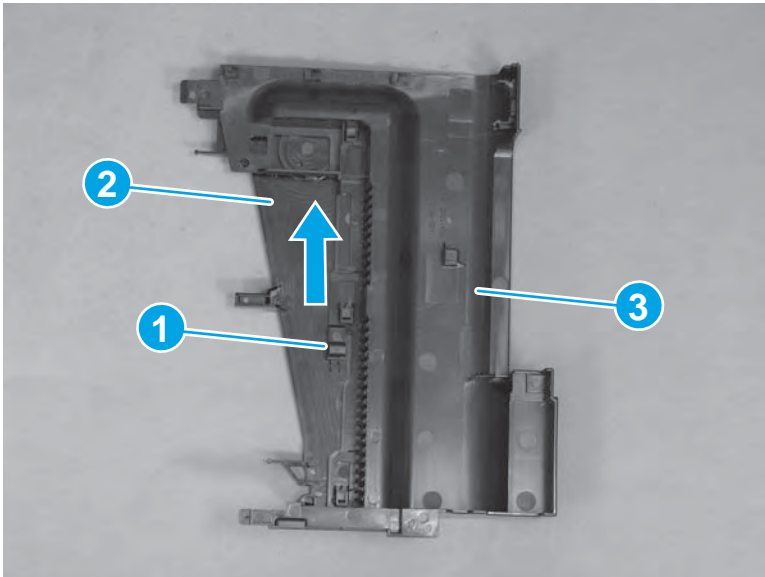
6. Remove the assembly.

**Figure 1-465** Remove the assembly



7. **Optional step:** Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the logo panel (callout 2) off of the front-left cover (callout 3).

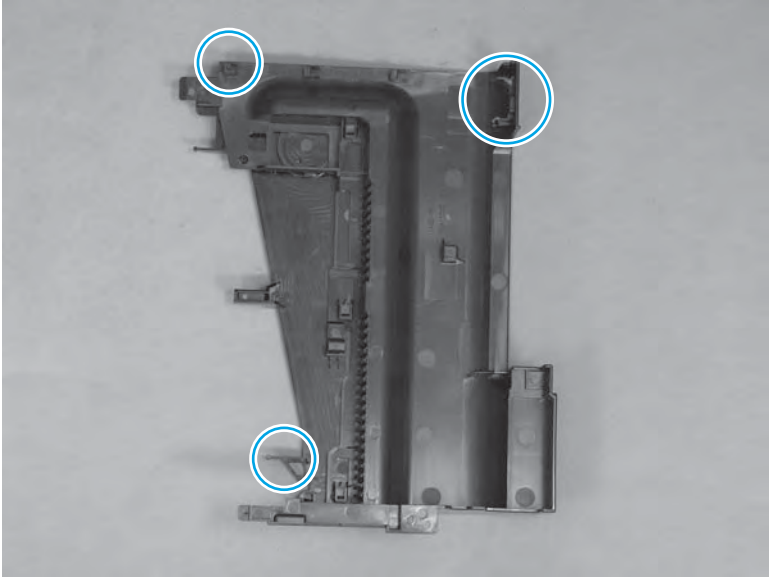
**Figure 1-466** Separate the logo panel and front-left cover



### Install the front-left cover and logo panel assembly

1. Before proceeding, note the locations of the tabs on the backside of the assembly shown in the figure.

**Figure 1-467** Note the locations of the tabs and pins



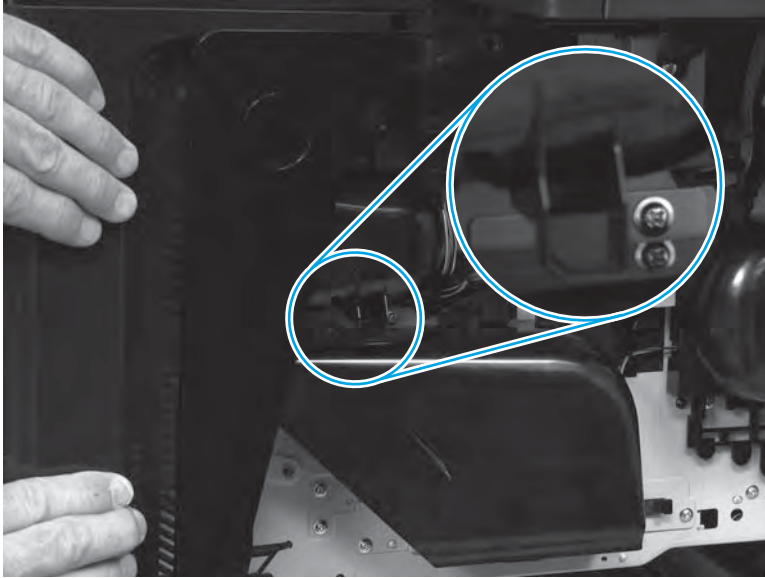
- 2. Align the hook tabs on the top of the assembly with the slots in the product.

**Figure 1-468** Align the hook tabs on the top of the assembly



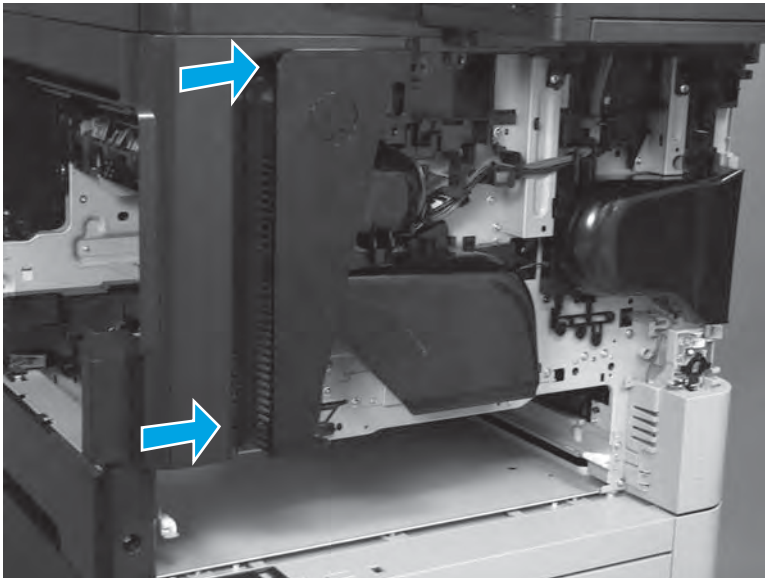
3. Position the tab on the right side of the assembly behind the fan duct.

**Figure 1-469** Position the tab on the assembly behind the fan duct




4. Slide the assembly to the right to install it.

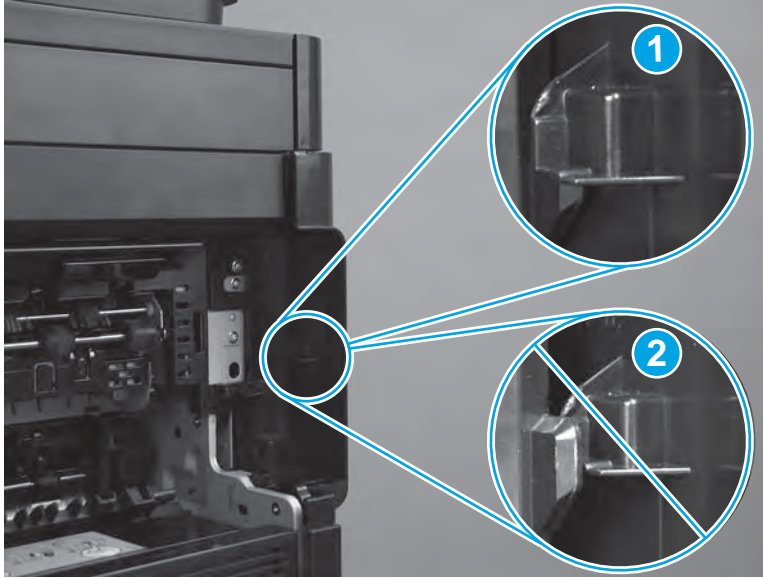
**Figure 1-470** Install the assembly




5. Verify that the tab on the left side of the assembly is correctly installed.

 **NOTE:** When the assembly is correctly installed, the left-side tab is installed over the protrusion on the product (callout 1). When the cover is incorrectly installed, the left-side tab is installed on top of the protrusion on the product (callout 2).

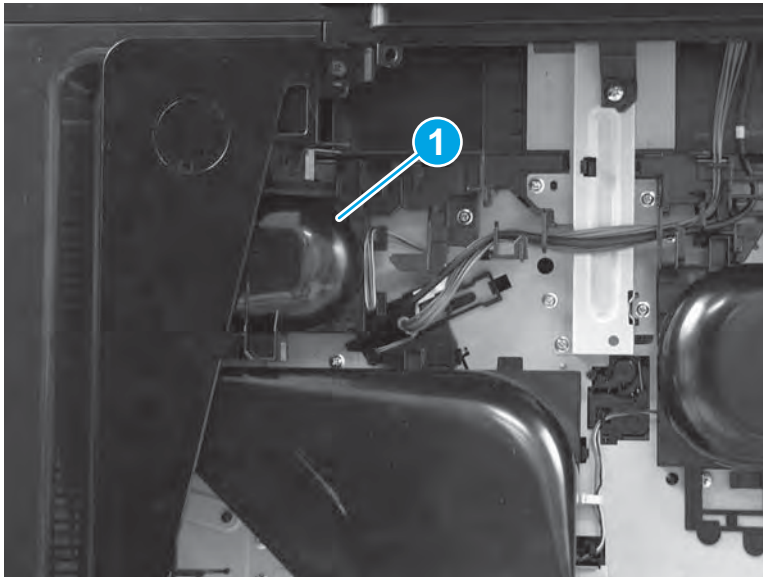
**Figure 1-471** Verify that the left-side tab is correctly installed



6. Verify that the reverse assembly fan (callout 1) is correctly installed.

 **NOTE:** The reverse assembly fan (callout 1) is easily dislodged when the front-left cover and logo panel assembly is installed.

**Figure 1-472** Verify that the reverse assembly fan is correctly installed



## Power-switch assembly

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the front cover](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the power-switch assembly](#)
- [Step 3: Unpack the replacement power-switch assembly](#)
- [Step 4: Install the power-switch assembly](#)
- [Step 5: Install the front cover](#)
- [Step 6: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the power-switch assembly.

### Before servicing


Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

Power-switch assembly part number	
RM2-5818-000CN	Power-switch assembly

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

### Required tools

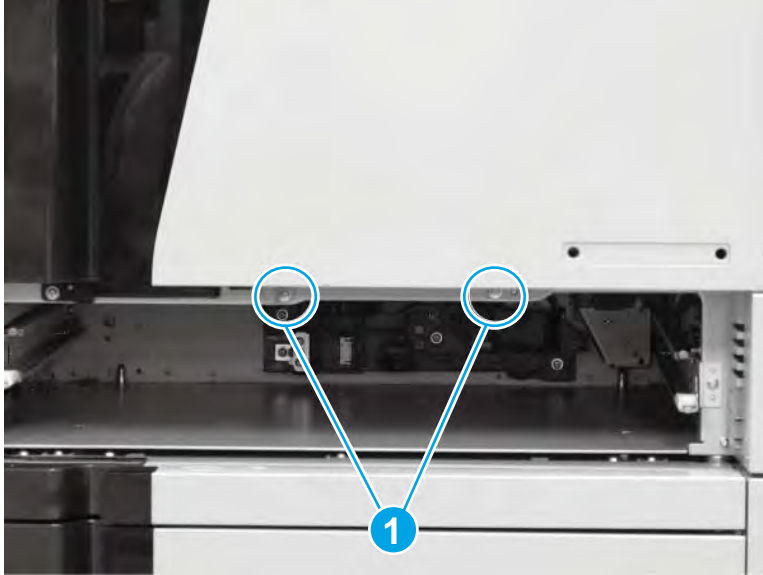
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### Step 1: Remove the front cover

1. Remove Tray 2, and then remove two screws (callout 1).



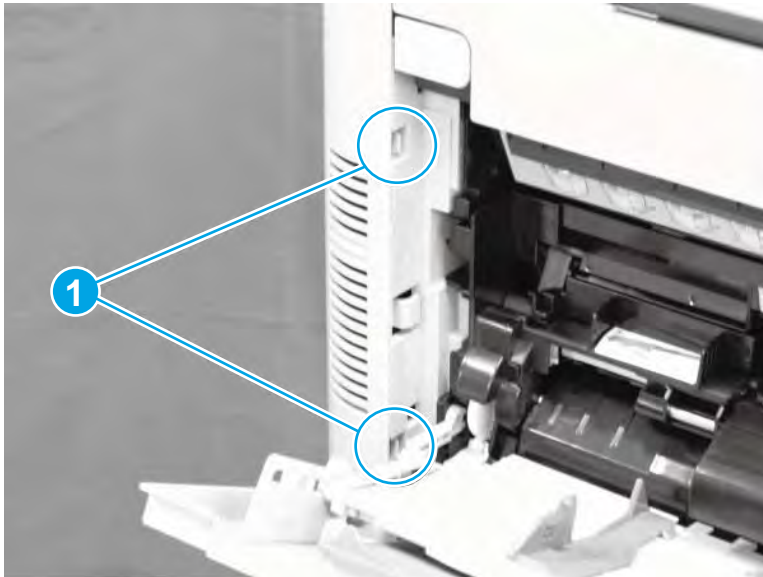
**Figure 1-473** Remove two screws



2. Open Tray 1, and then push in on two tabs (callout 1) to release them.

 **TIP:** Release the lower tab first, and then release the upper tab.

**Figure 1-474** Release two tabs



- Carefully flex the right-upper corner of the cover away from the product to release one locking pin.

**Figure 1-475** Release the right-upper corner



- Slide the cover towards the right side of the product to release it.

**Figure 1-476** Slide the cover to the right




5. Remove the cover.

**Figure 1-477** Remove the cover

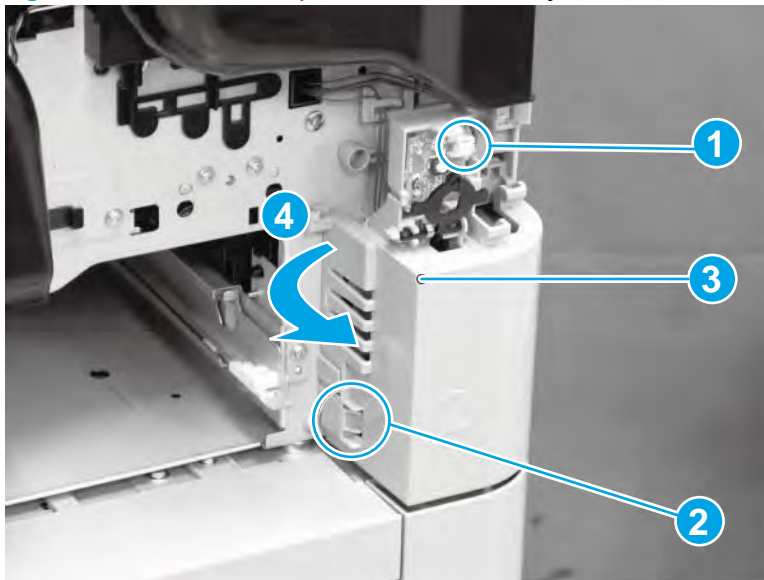


## Step 2: Remove the power-switch assembly

 **NOTE:** If Tray 2 is installed, remove it now.

- ▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release one tab, and then rotate the assembly (callout 3) away from the product (callout 4) to remove it.

**Figure 1-478** Remove the power-switch assembly

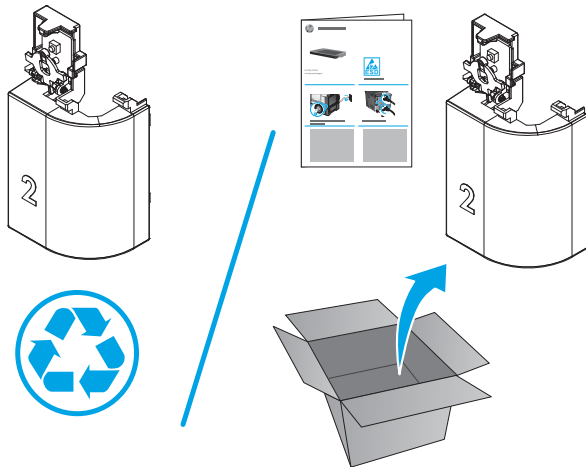


## Step 3: Unpack the replacement power-switch assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

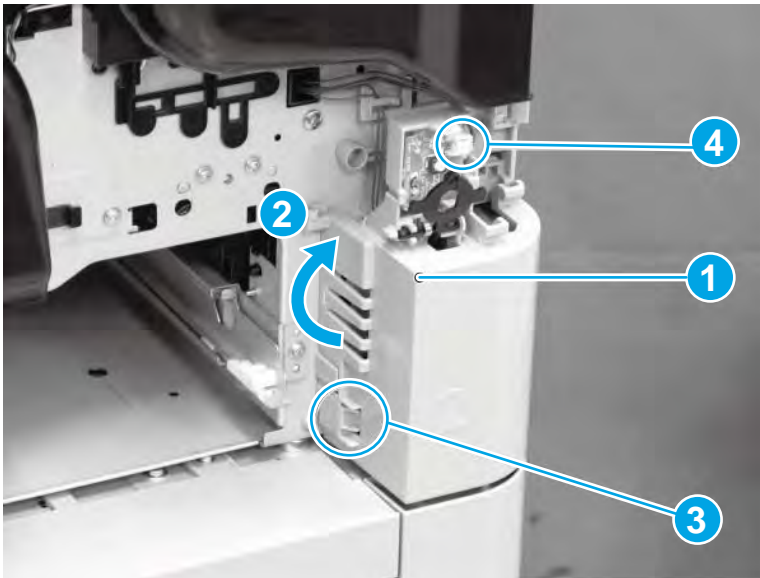


#### Step 4: Install the power-switch assembly

- ▲ Position the right corner of the assembly (callout 1) on the product, rotate the assembly toward the Tray 2 cavity (callout 2), and then engage one tab (callout 3).

Connect one connector (callout 4).

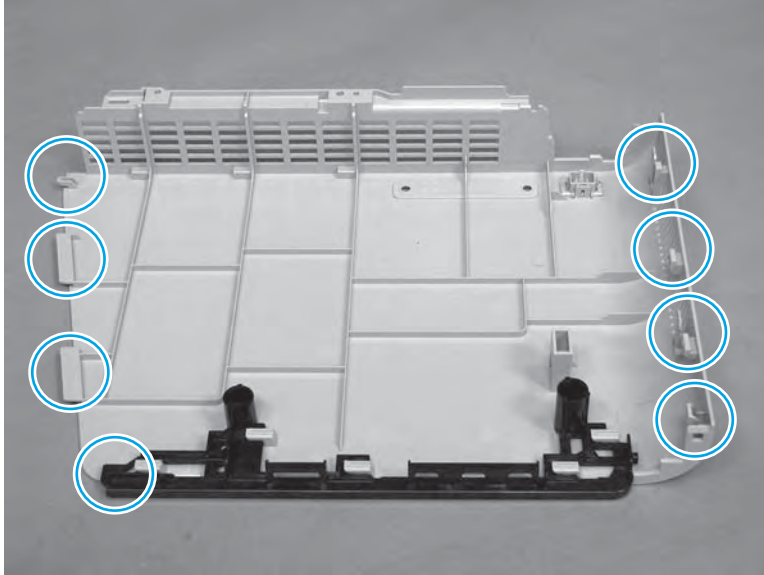
**Figure 1-479** Install the power-switch assembly



#### Step 5: Install the front cover

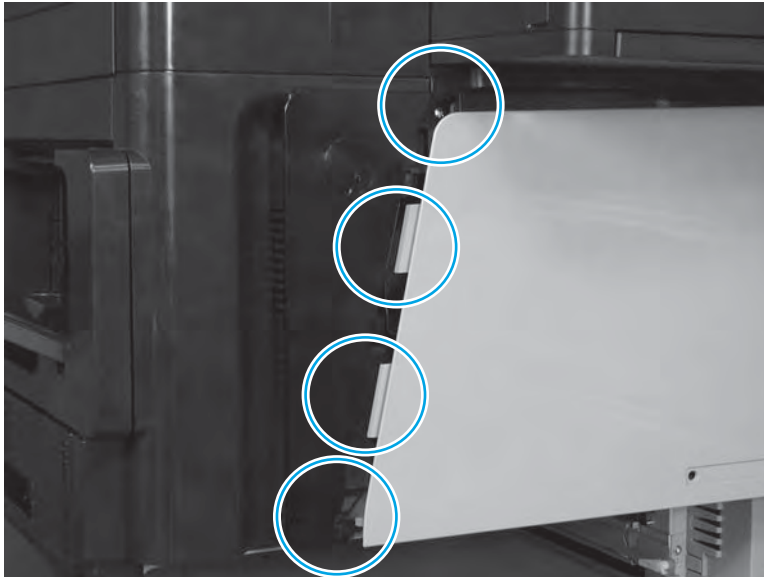
1. Take note of the location of all of the tabs on the back of the cover.

**Figure 1-480** Note of the location of the tabs



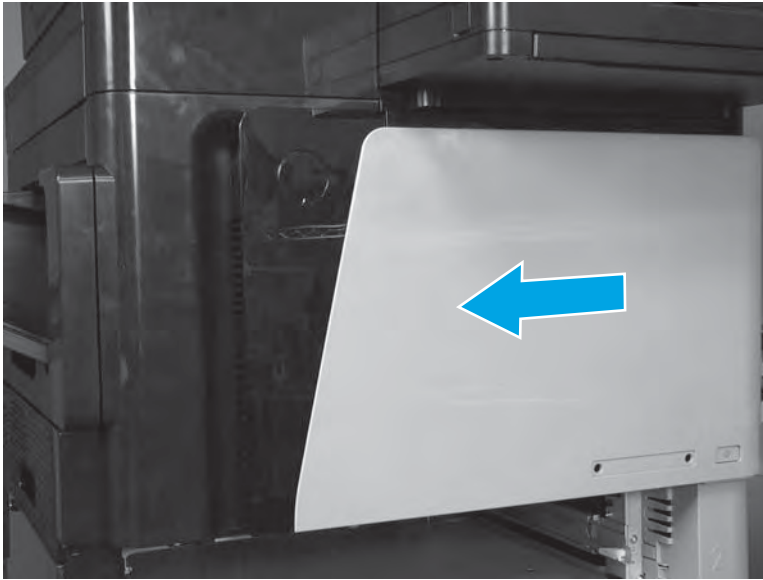
2. Align the four tabs (callout 1) on the cover with the slots (callout 2) on the logo panel.

**Figure 1-481** Align four tabs



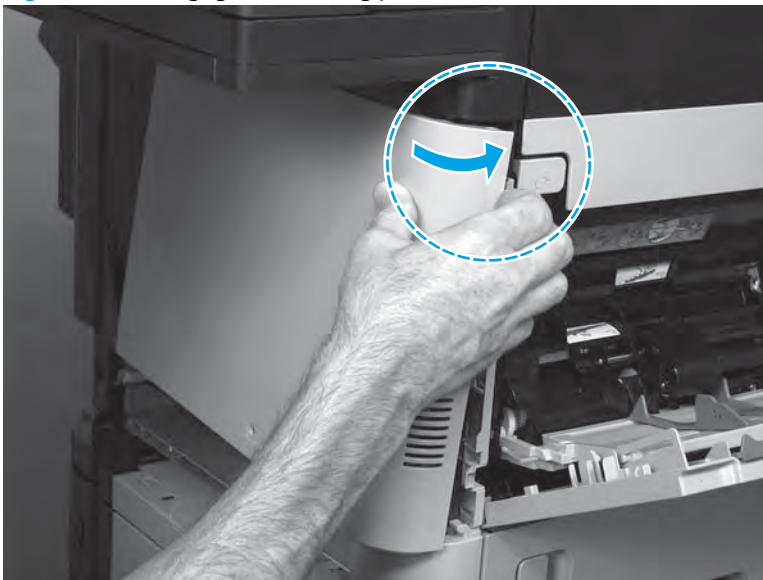
3. Slightly slide the cover toward the left side of the product to engage the tabs in the slots.

**Figure 1-482** Slide the cover to the left



4. Carefully flex the right-upper corner of the cover toward from the product to engage one locking pin.

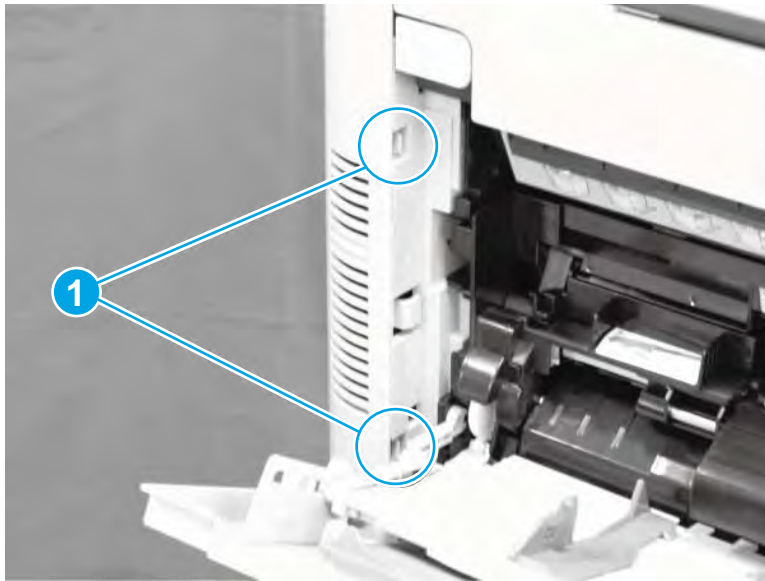
**Figure 1-483** Engage one locking pin



- Engage two tabs (callout 1).

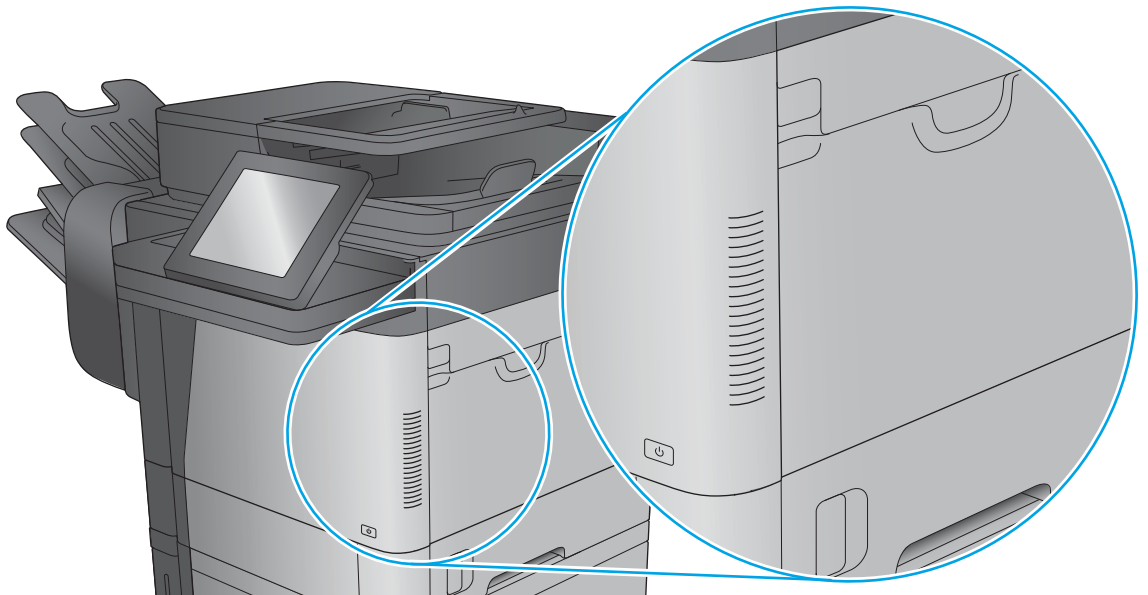
 **TIP:** Engage the upper tab first, and then engage the lower tab.

**Figure 1-484** Engage two tabs




- Close Tray 1, and verify that the gap between the edge of the front cover and the tray is even. If it is uneven, the tabs are not correctly engaged.

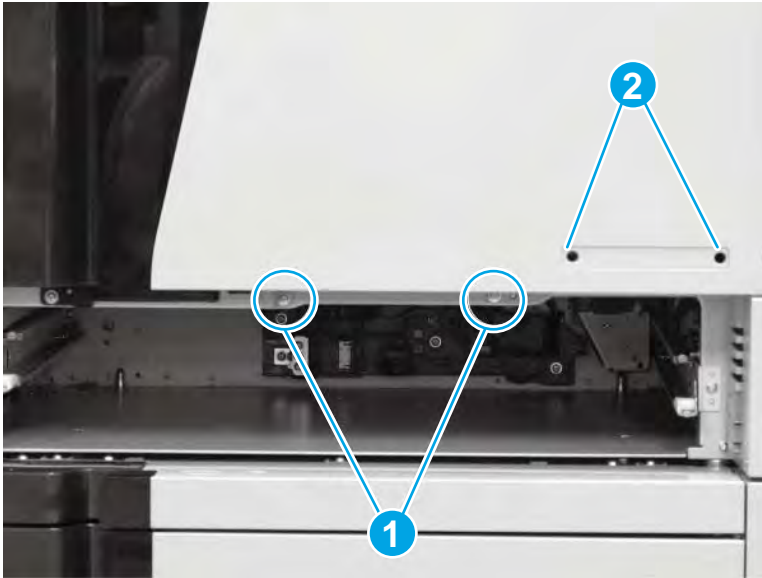
**Figure 1-485** Check cover installation



7. Install two screws (callout 1), and then reinstall Tray 2.

 **Reinstallation tip:** To install the product nameplate on the front cover, align the pins on the back side of the nameplate with the holes in the cover (callout 2), and then push in on the nameplate until it snaps in place.

**Figure 1-486** Install two screws



## Step 6: Turn the product power on

### After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

### Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling.)



## Rear-right cover

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 3: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 4: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear-right cover.

### Before servicing


Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

Rear-right cover part number	
RL2-0999-000CN	Rear-right cover

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

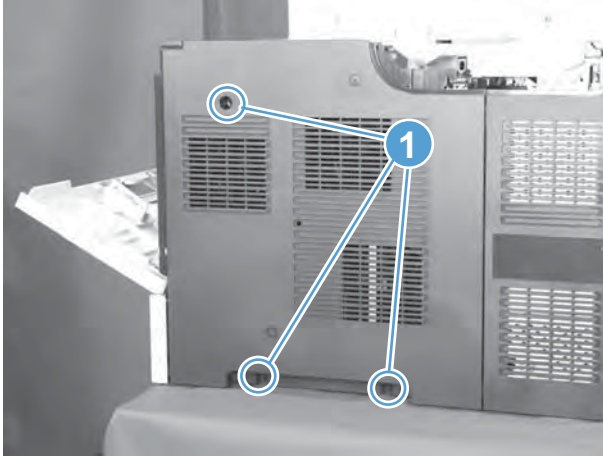
### Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### Step 1: Remove the rear-right cover

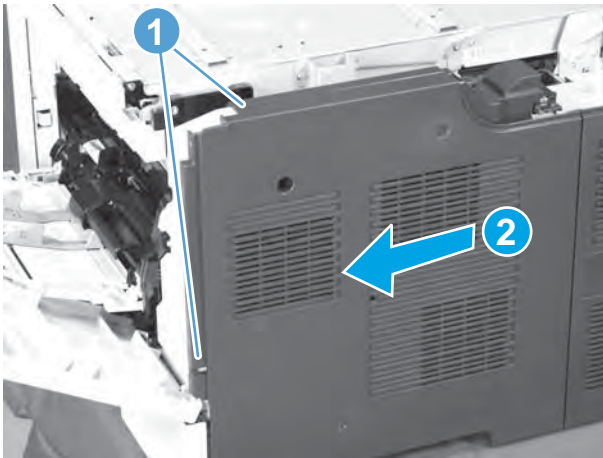
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-487** Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-488** Remove the cover



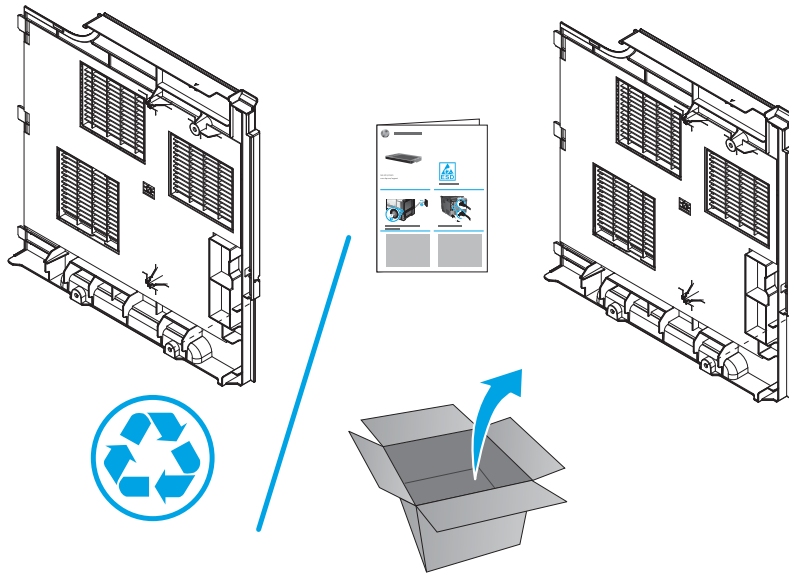
## Step 2: Unpack the replacement rear-right cover

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).



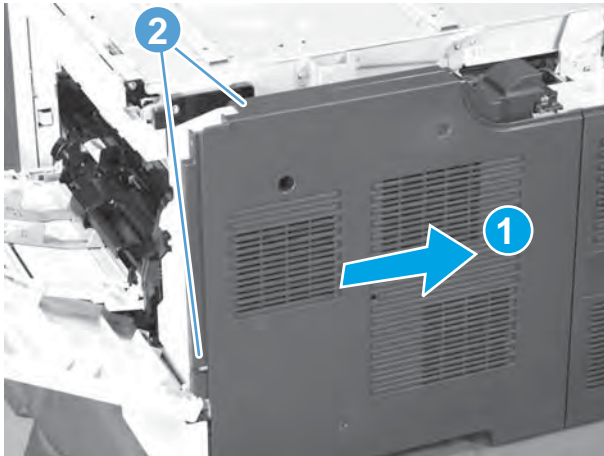
**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



### Step 3: Install the rear-right cover

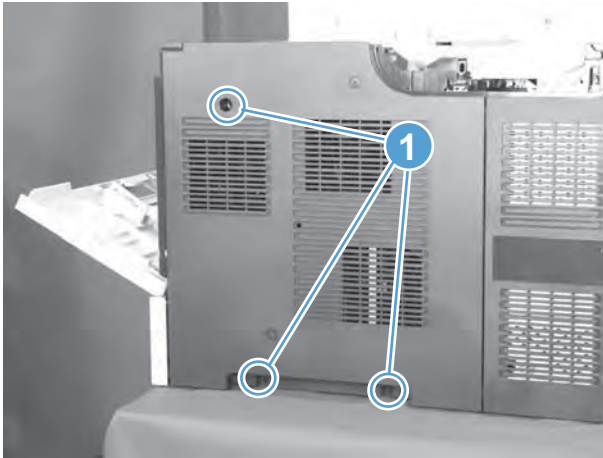
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

**Figure 1-489** Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

**Figure 1-490** Install three screws



#### **Step 4: Turn the product power on**

##### **After servicing**

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

##### **Parts Return**

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling.)

## Rear-left cover

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 4: Unpack the replacement rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 5: Install the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 6: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 7: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 8: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear-left cover.

### Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

Rear-left cover part number	
RC4-5692-000CN	Rear-left cover

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

**⚠ WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

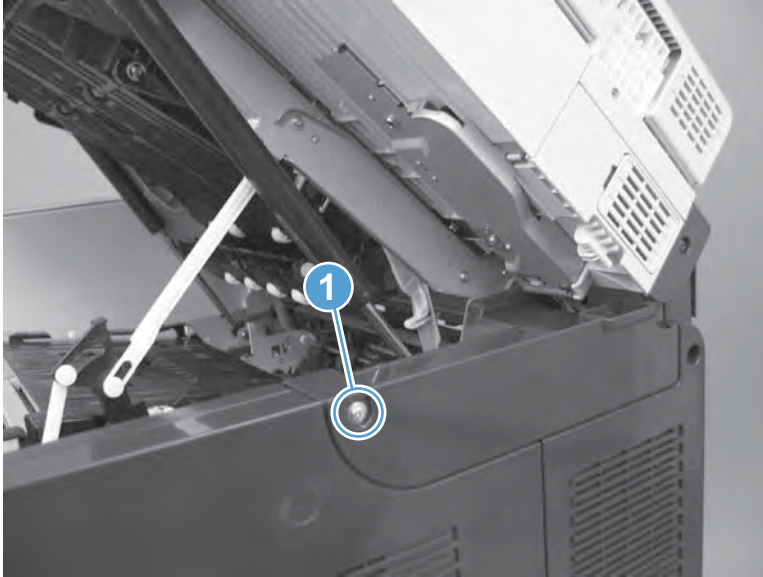
### Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover

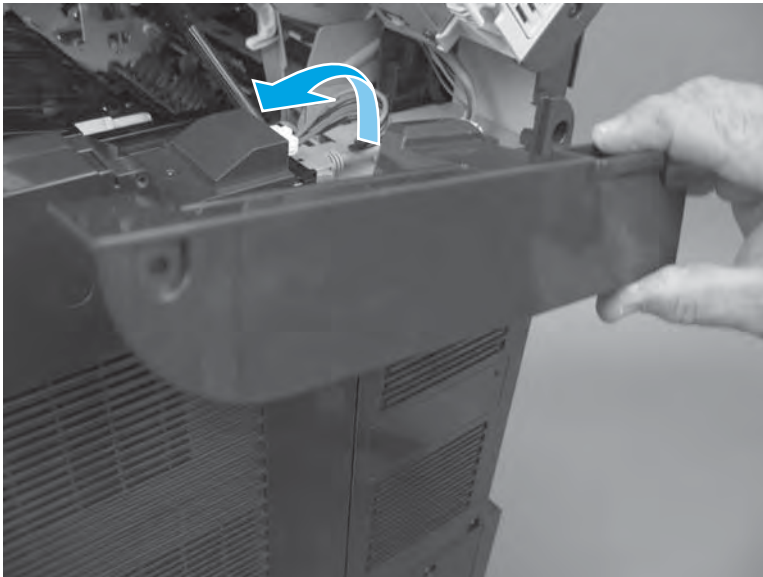
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-491** Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

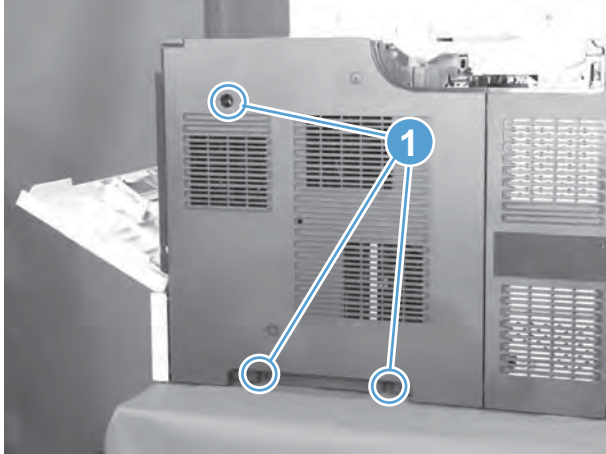
**Figure 1-492** Remove the cover



## **Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover**

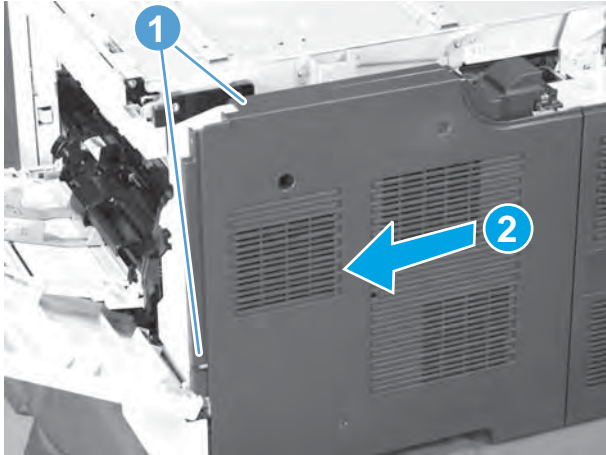
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-493** Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

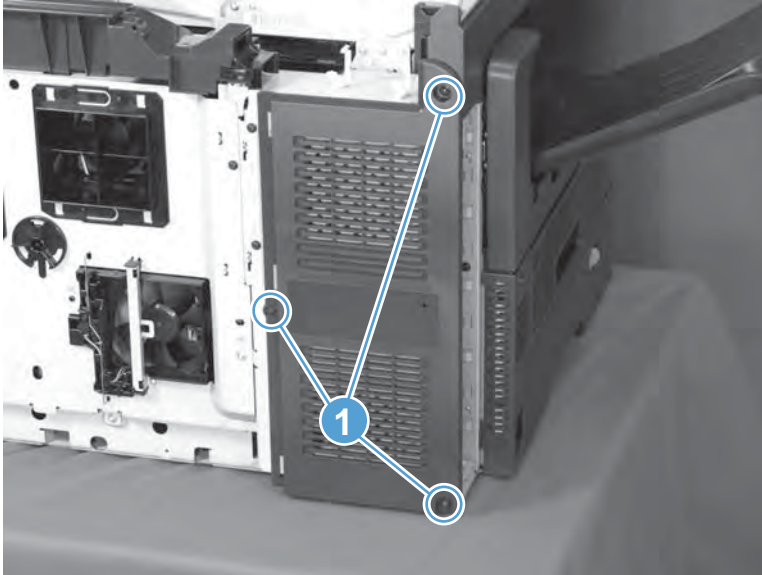
**Figure 1-494** Remove the cover



### **Step 3: Remove the rear-left cover**

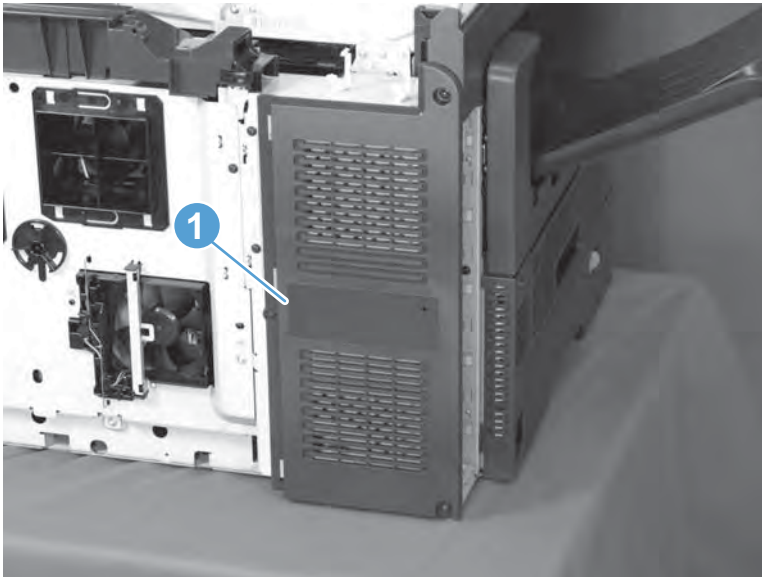
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-495** Remove three screws



2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

**Figure 1-496** Remove the cover




#### **Step 4: Unpack the replacement rear-left cover**

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

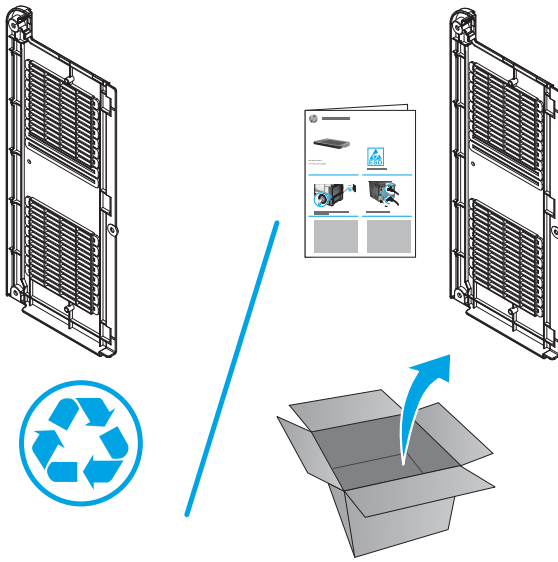
[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

---

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

---

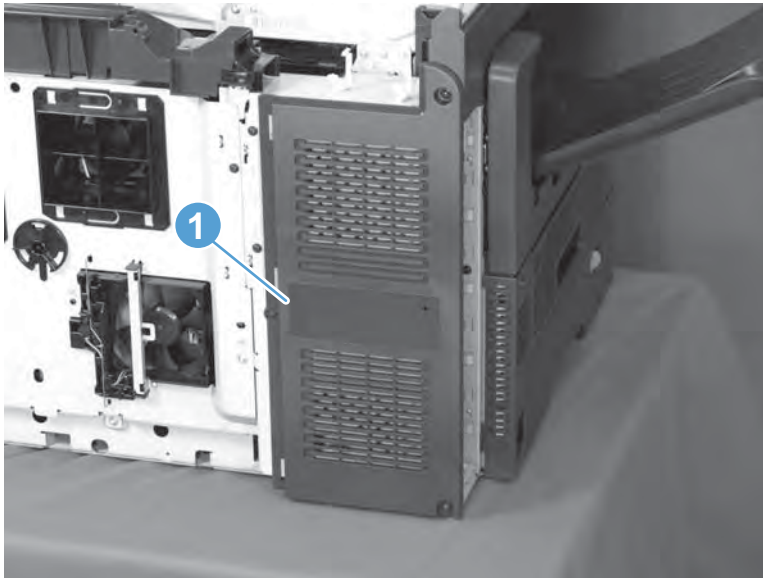




### Step 5: Install the rear-left cover

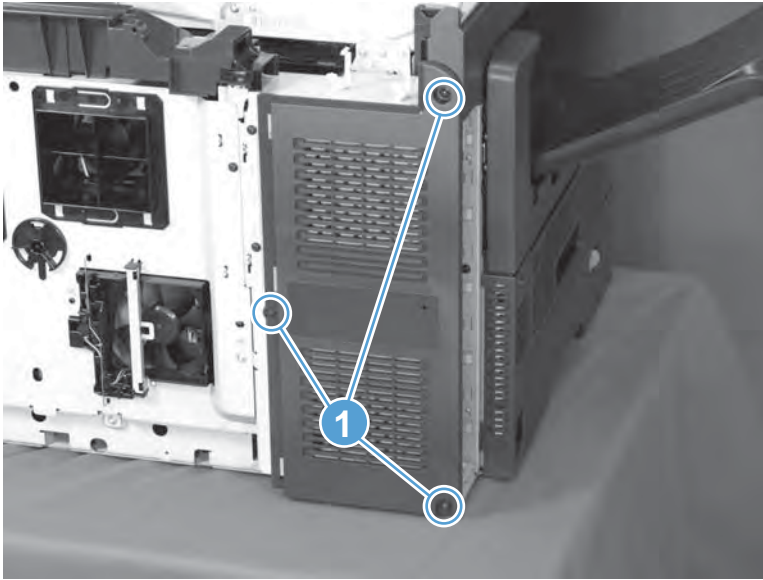
1. Position the cover (callout 1) on the product.

**Figure 1-497** Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1).

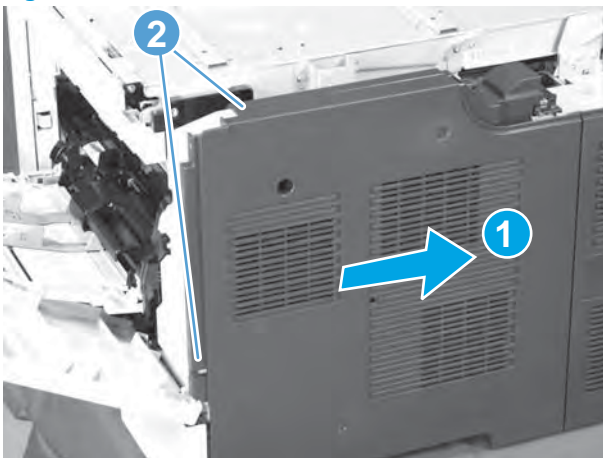
**Figure 1-498** Install three screws



### Step 6: Install the rear-right cover

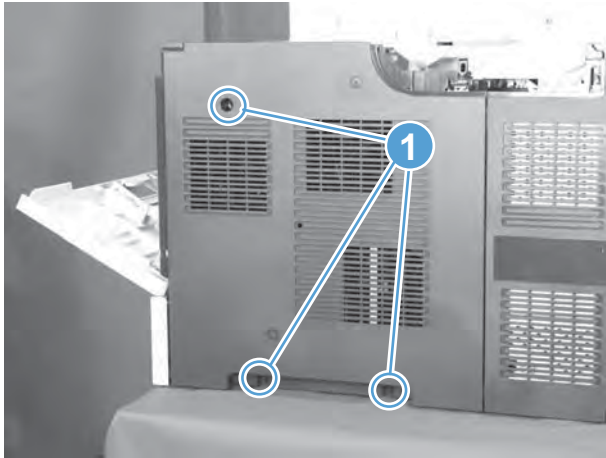
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

**Figure 1-499** Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

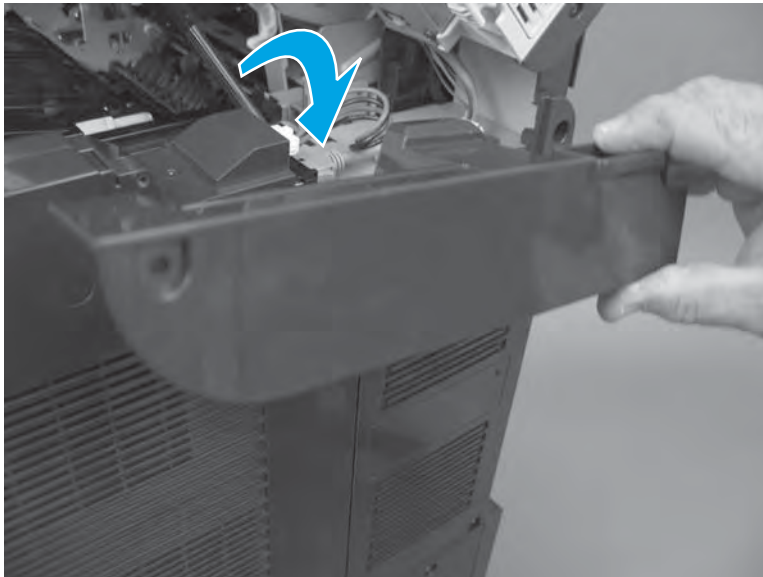
**Figure 1-500** Install three screws



### Step 7: Install the image scanner cable cover

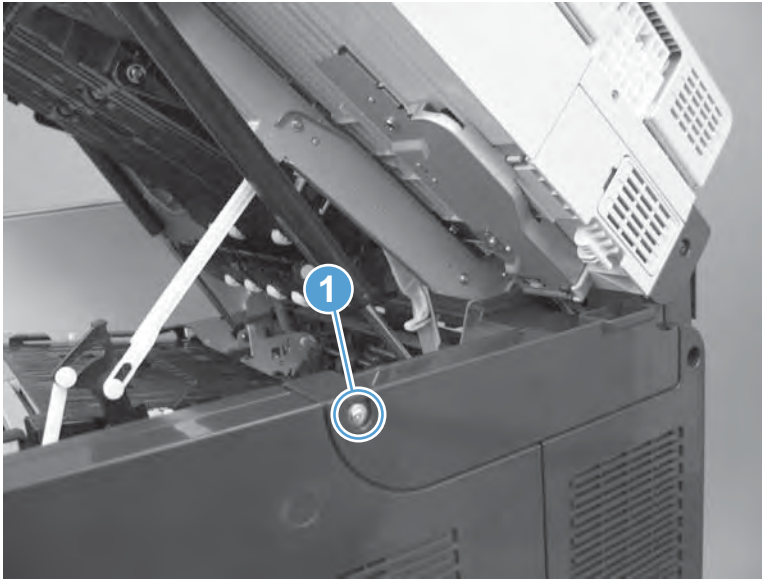
1. Install the cover on the product.

**Figure 1-501** Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

**Figure 1-502** Install one screw



## Step 8: Turn the product power on

### After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

### Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling.)

## Rear-top cover

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 5: Unpack the replacement rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 6: Install the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 7: Install the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 8: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 9: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 10: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear-top cover.

### Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

Rear-top cover part number	
RC4-1574-000CN	Rear-top cover

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

**⚠ WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

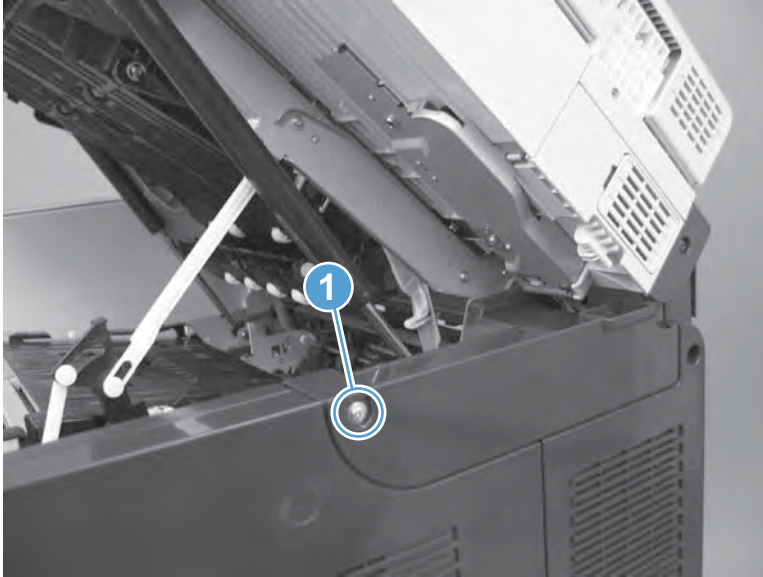
### Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover

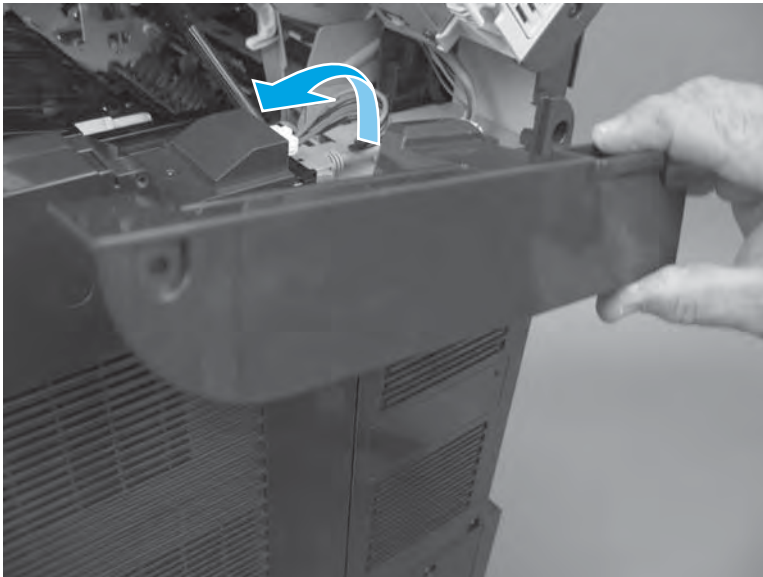
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-503** Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

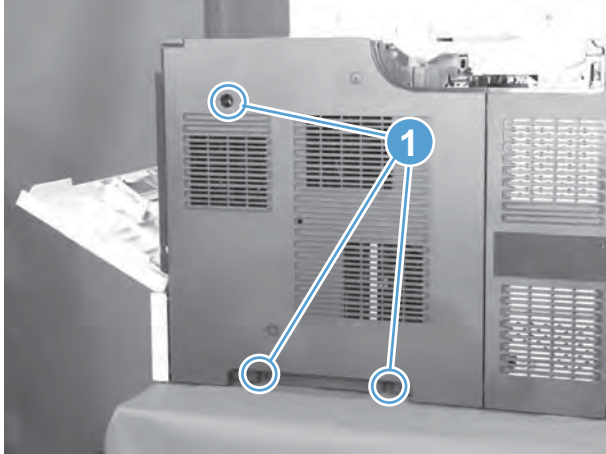
**Figure 1-504** Remove the cover



## **Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover**

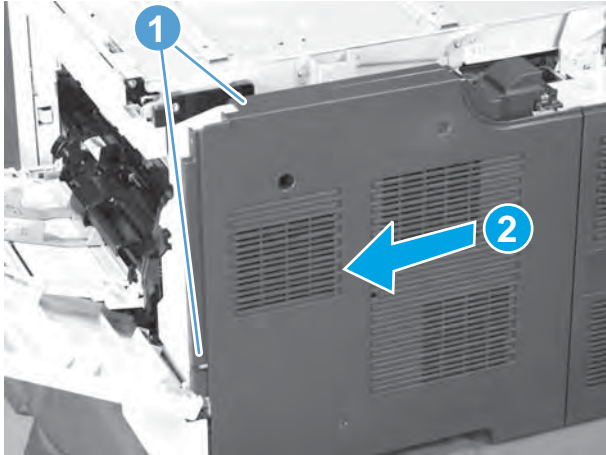
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-505** Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

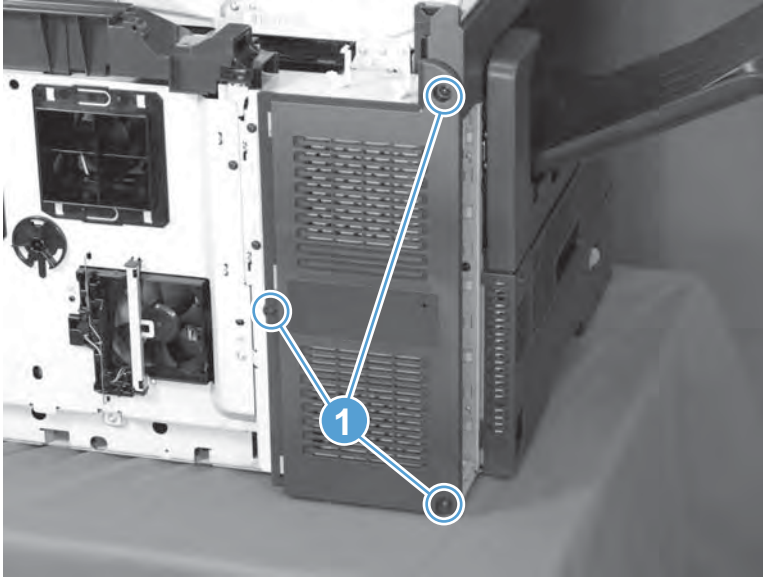
**Figure 1-506** Remove the cover



### **Step 3: Remove the rear-left cover**

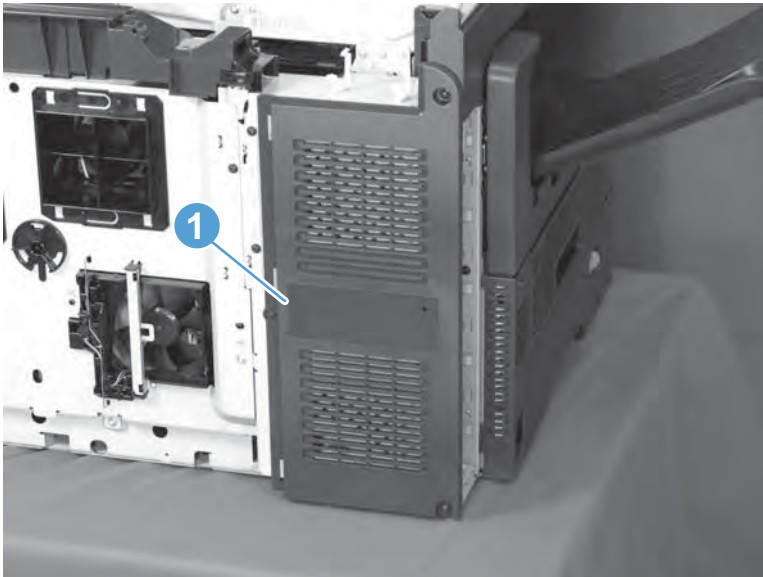
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-507** Remove three screws



2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

**Figure 1-508** Remove the cover



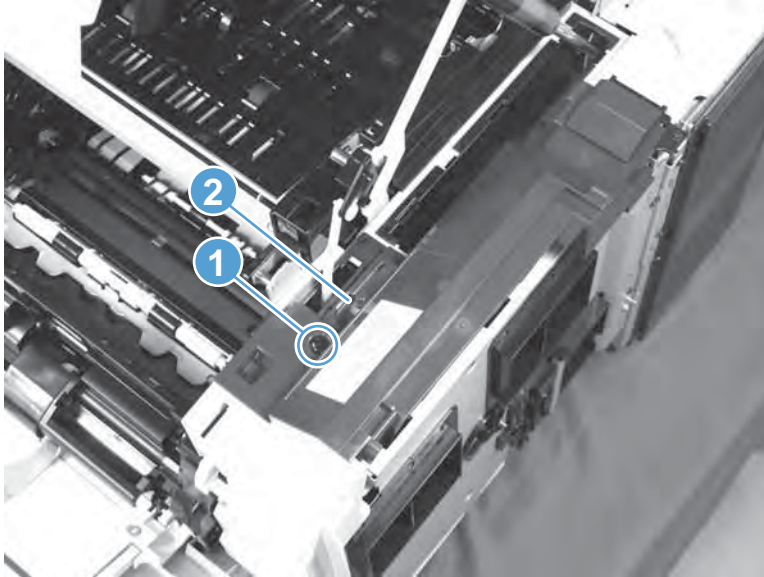
#### Step 4: Remove the rear-top cover

 **NOTE:** If the top cover is closed, open it now.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

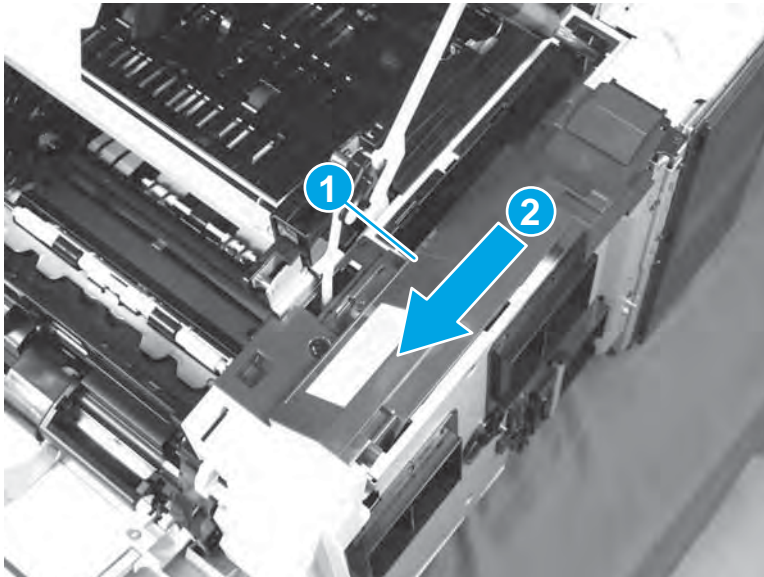


**Figure 1-509** Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-510** Remove the cover



### Step 5: Unpack the replacement rear-top cover

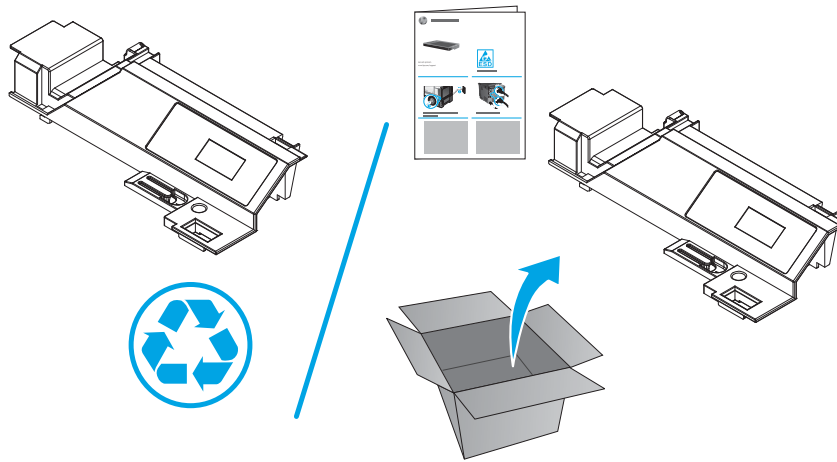
Unpack the replacement rear-top assembly from the packaging.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

---

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

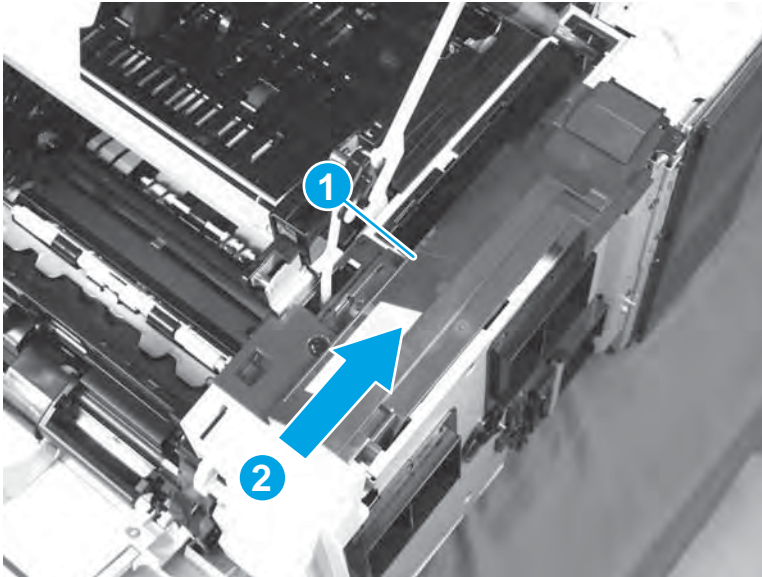
---



### Step 6: Install the rear-top cover

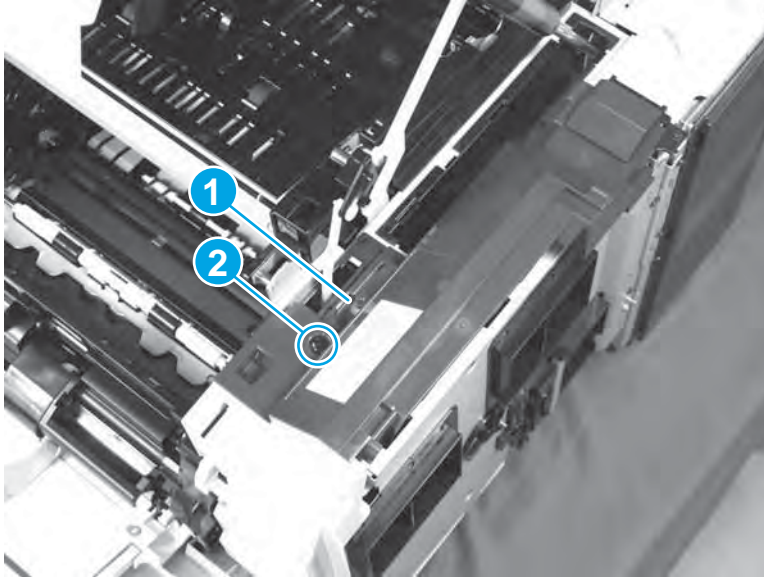
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

**Figure 1-511** Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

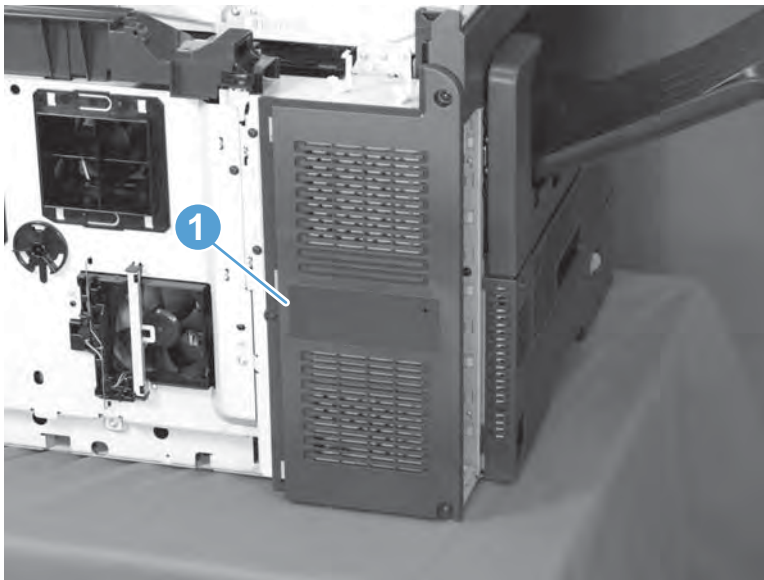
**Figure 1-512** Install one screw



### Step 7: Install the rear-left cover

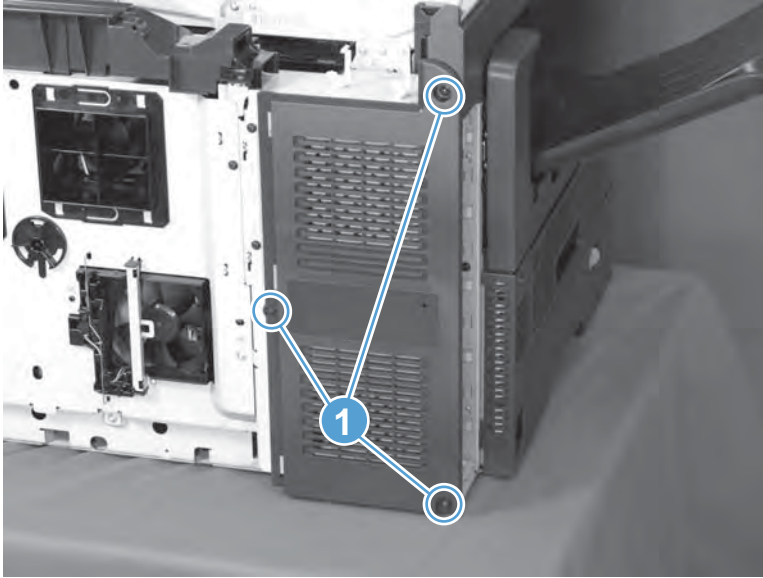
1. Position the cover (callout 1) on the product.

**Figure 1-513** Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1).

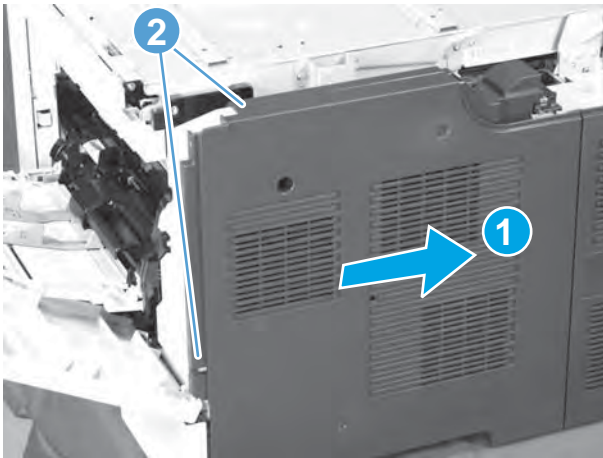
**Figure 1-514** Install three screws



### Step 8: Install the rear-right cover

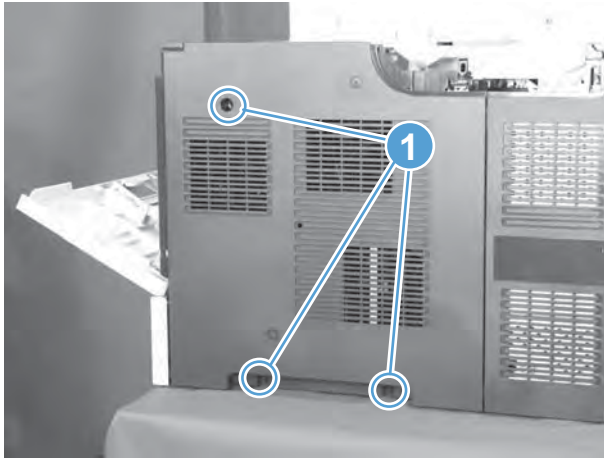
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

**Figure 1-515** Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

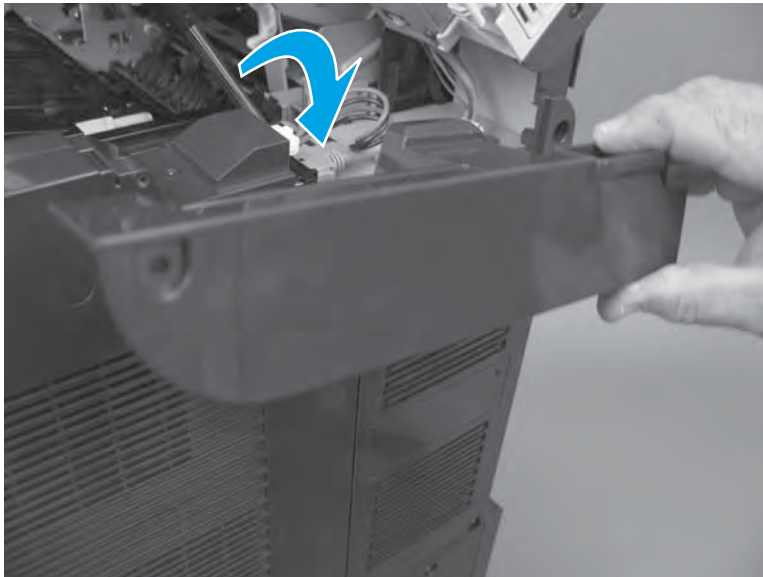
**Figure 1-516** Install three screws



### Step 9: Install the image scanner cable cover

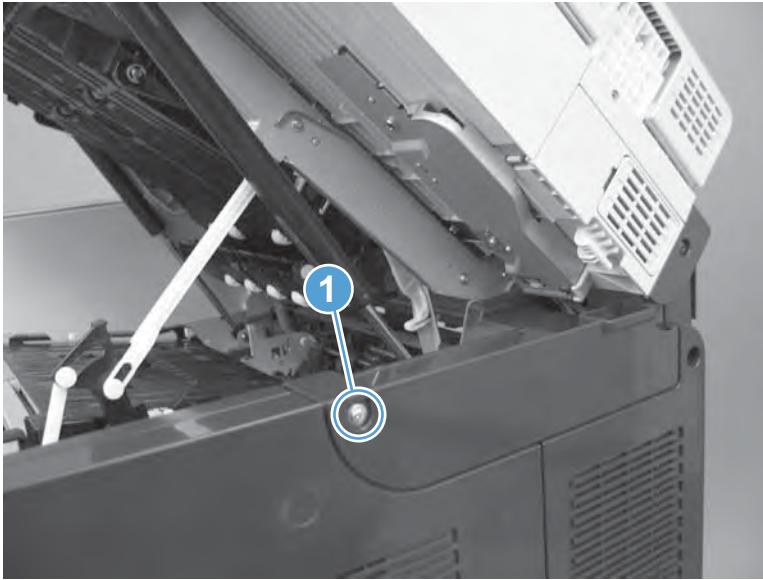
1. Install the cover on the product.

**Figure 1-517** Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

**Figure 1-518** Install one screw



## Step 10: Turn the product power on

### After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

### Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling.)

## Right-lower door

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the right-lower door](#)
- [Step 4: Unpack the replacement right-lower door](#)
- [Step 5: Install the right-lower door](#)
- [Step 6: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 7: Install the Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Step 8: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the right-lower door.

### Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

Right-lower door part number	
RM2-5820-000CN	Right-lower door

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

**⚠ WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

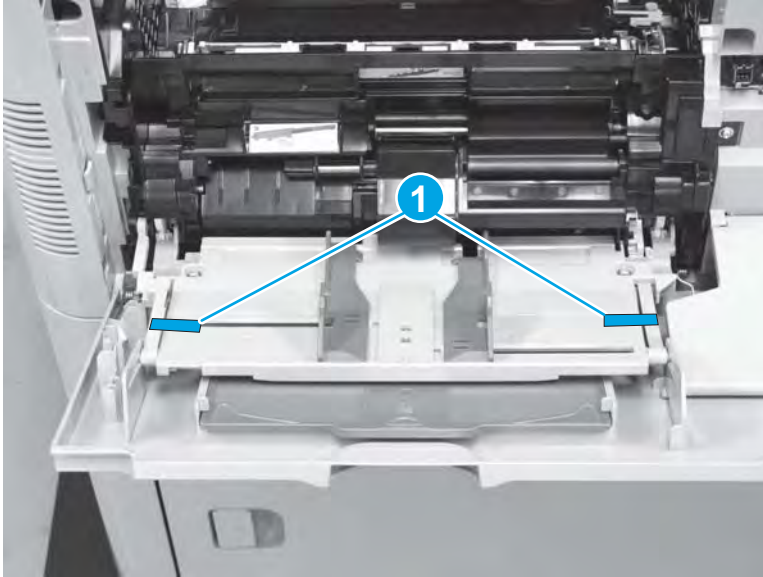
### Required tools

- No special tools are required to install this kit.

### Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 cover

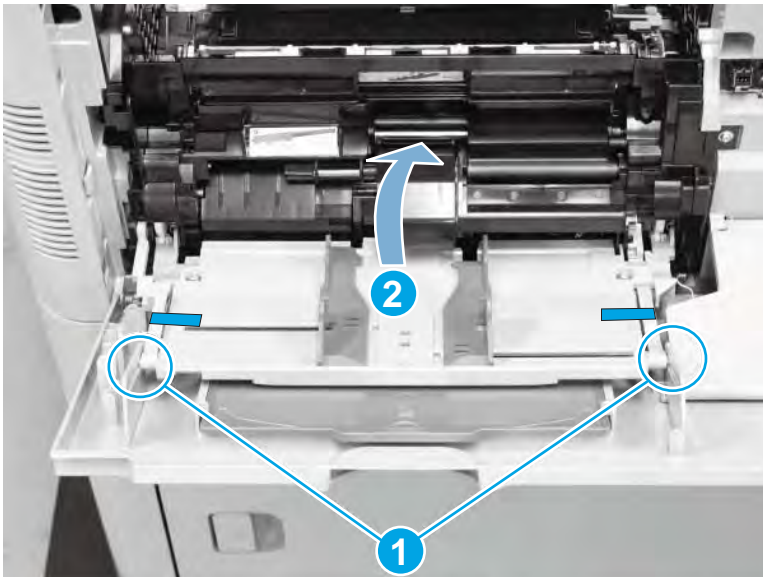
1. Use low adhesive tape to secure the outer retaining pins (callout 1) to the inner tray.

**Figure 1-519** Secure the outer retaining pins



2. Open Tray 1, release the two outer retaining pins (callout 1) on the cover, and then carefully fold the inner tray up (callout 2) and into the product to protect it.

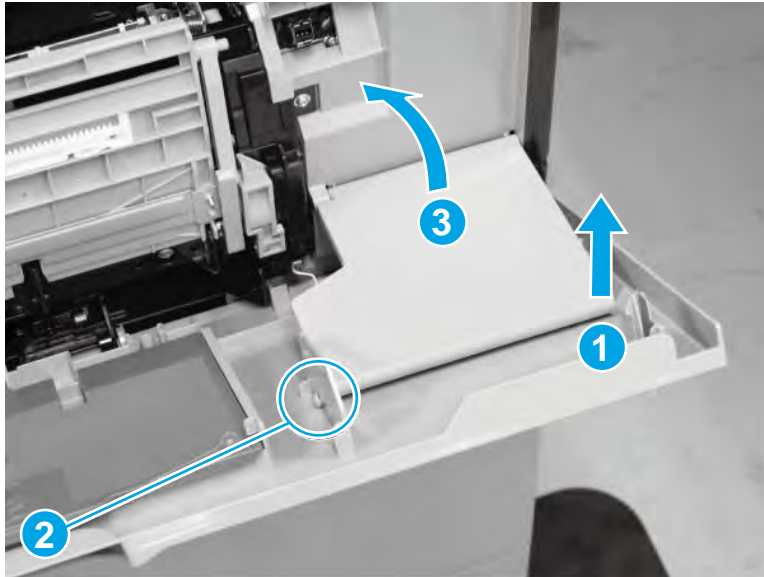
**Figure 1-520** Release two outer retaining pins





- Carefully lift on the outer corner of the tray inner cover (callout 1) to release one pin (callout 2) from the guide, and then fold the inner cover up (callout 3) and into the product.

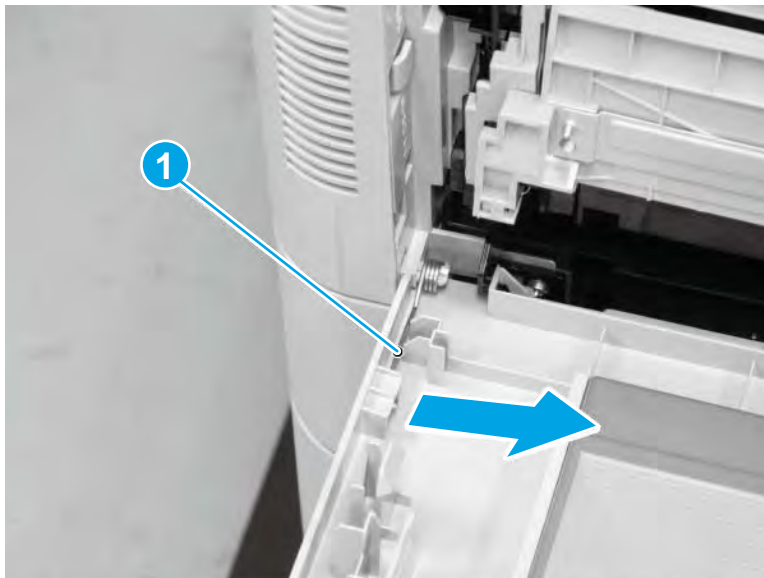
**Figure 1-521** Release one pin



- Release the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

**⚠ CAUTION:** The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

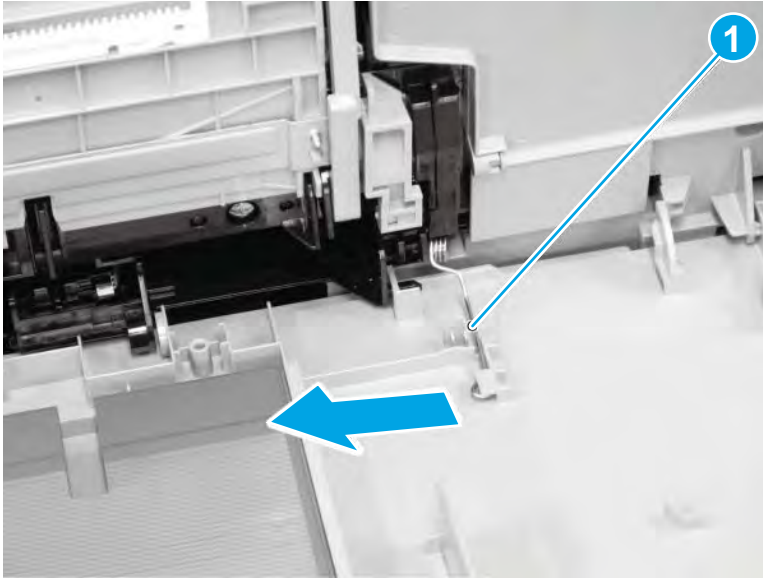
**Figure 1-522** Release the left-side spring



5. Release the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

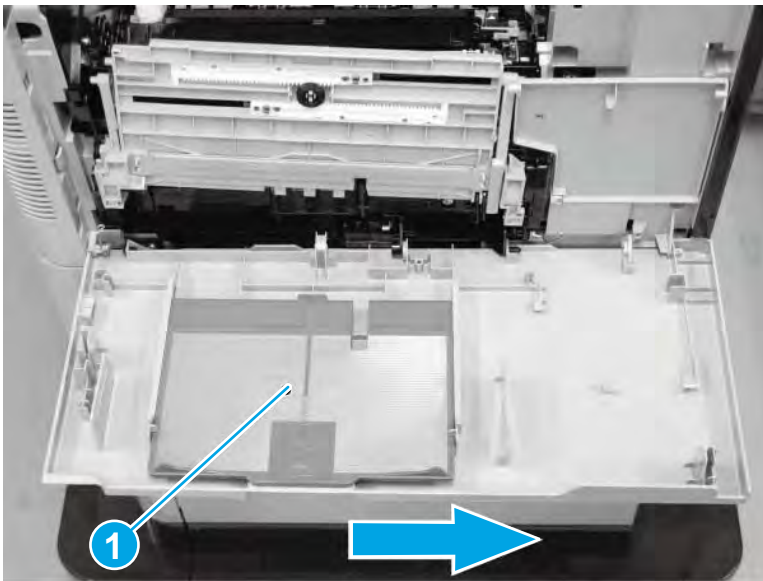
**⚠ CAUTION:** The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

**Figure 1-523** Release the right-side spring



6. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the back of the product to release it, and then remove the cover.

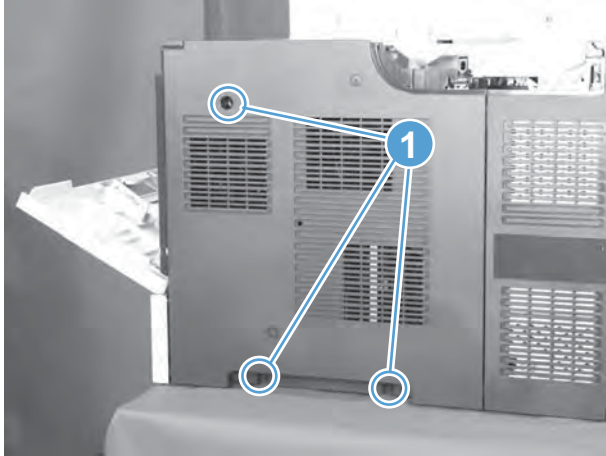
**Figure 1-524** Remove the cover



## Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover

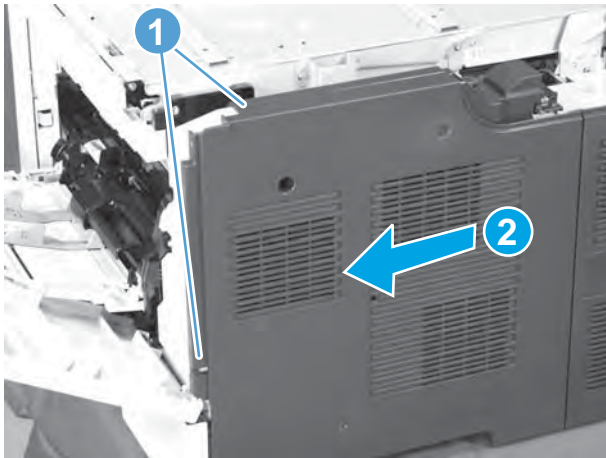
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-525** Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

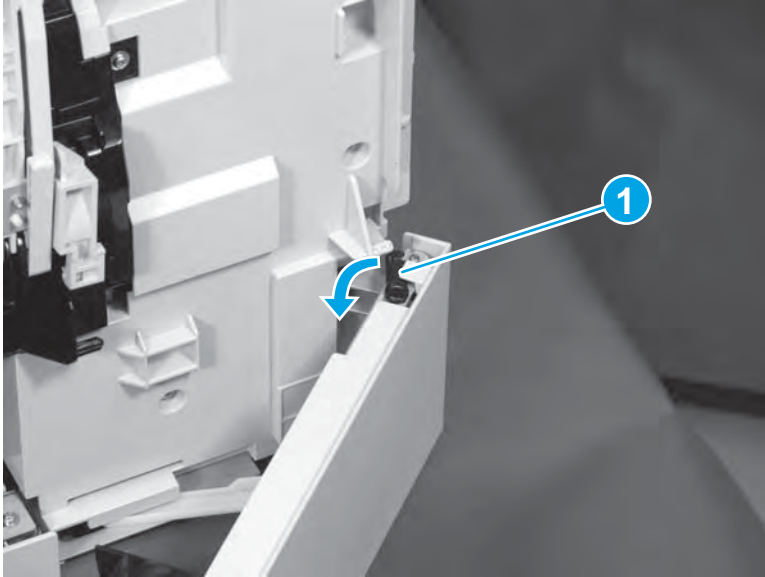
**Figure 1-526** Remove the cover



### **Step 3: Remove the right-lower door**

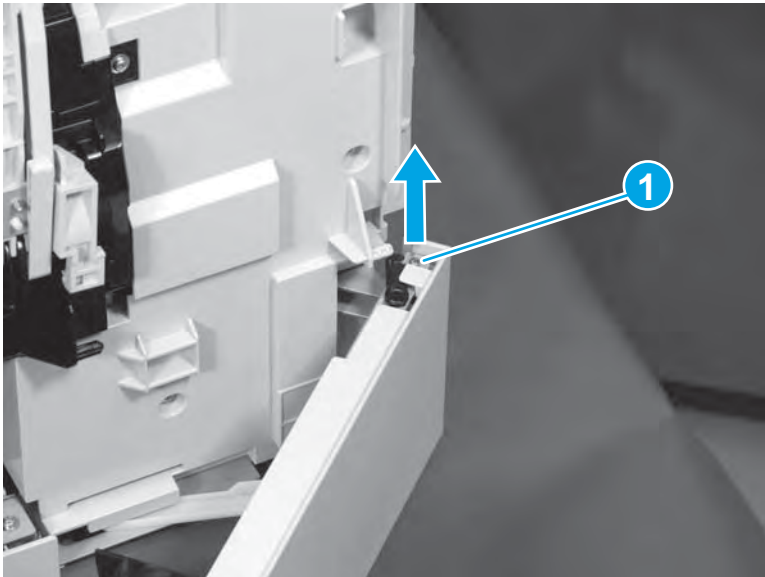
1. Open the right-lower door, and then rotate the stopper (callout 1) to release it.

**Figure 1-527** Rotate the stopper



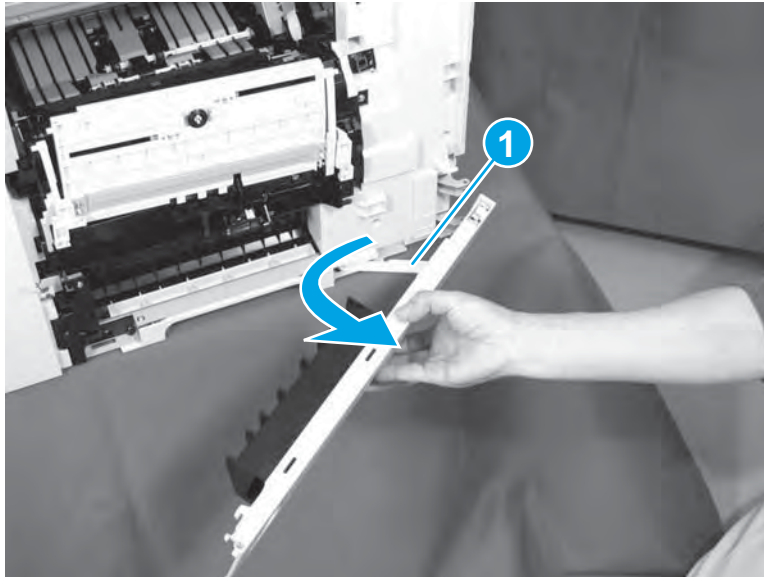
2. Support the door, and then remove the shaft (callout 1).

**Figure 1-528** Remove the shaft



3. Release the door-retainer arm (callout 1) by sliding it toward the front of the product, and then remove the door.

**Figure 1-529** Remove the door

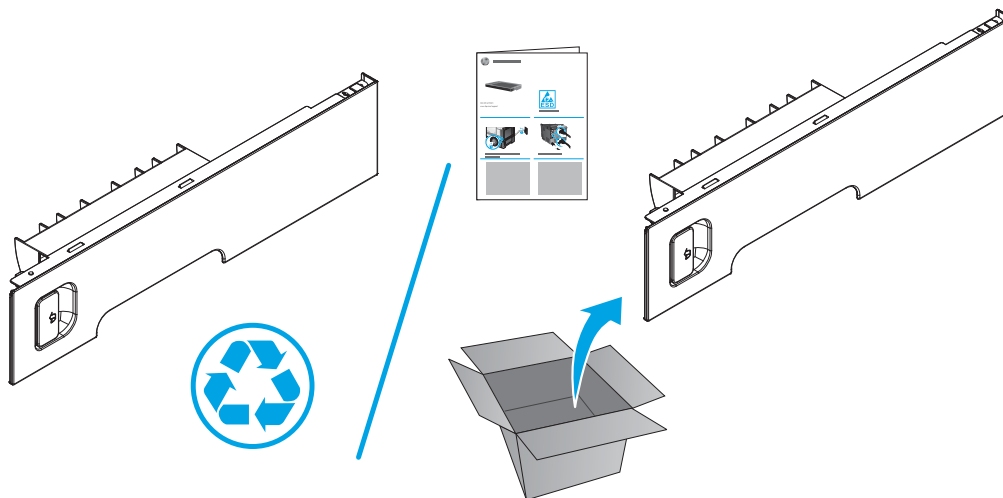


#### Step 4: Unpack the replacement right-lower door

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

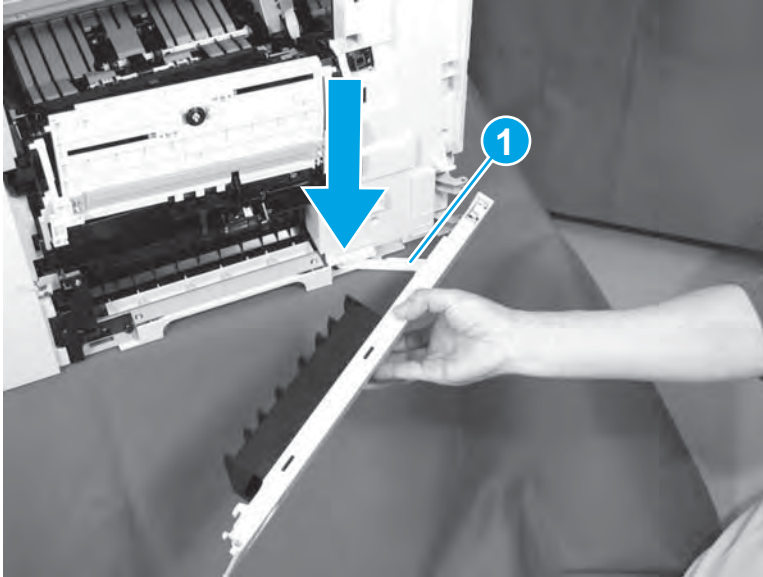
 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



#### Step 5: Install the right-lower door

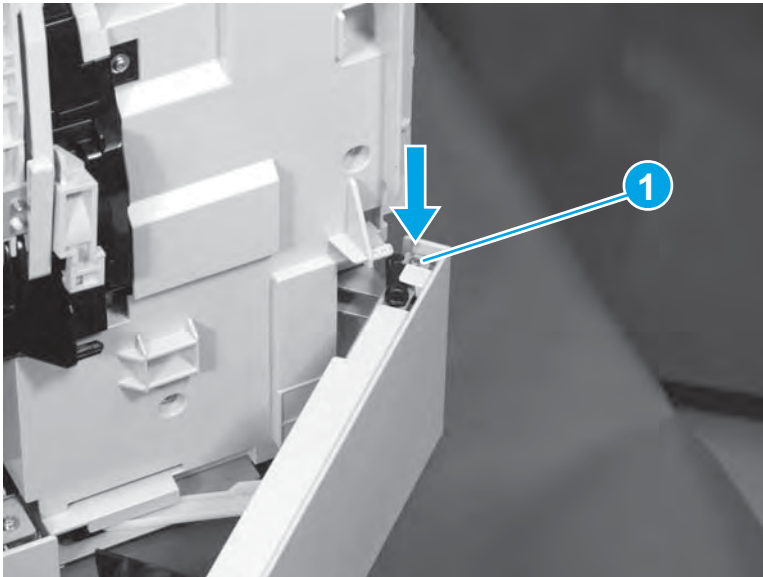
1. Install the door-retainer arm (callout 1) in the slot, and then position the right edge of the door on the product.

**Figure 1-530** Install the door



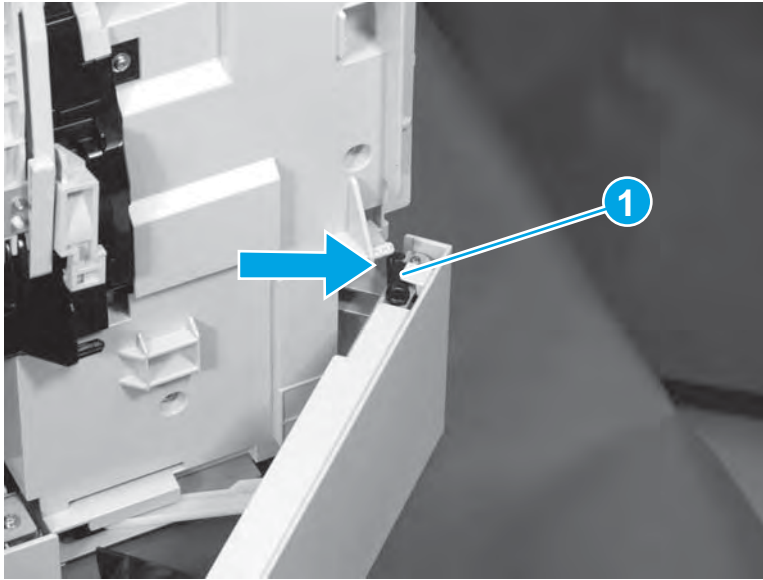
2. Install the shaft (callout 1).

**Figure 1-531** Install the shaft



3. Rotate the stopper (callout 1) to until it locks in place.

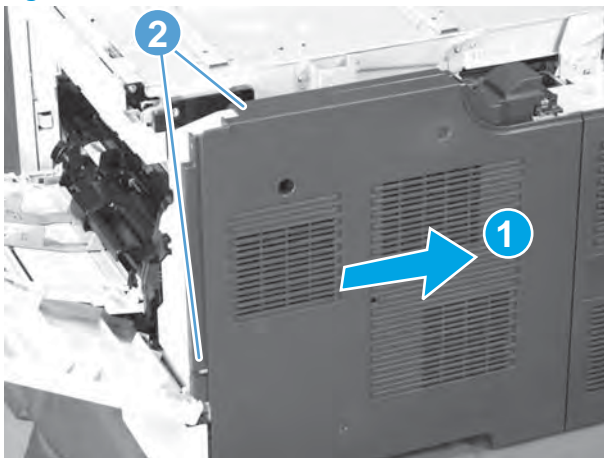
**Figure 1-532** Rotate the stopper



### Step 6: Install the rear-right cover

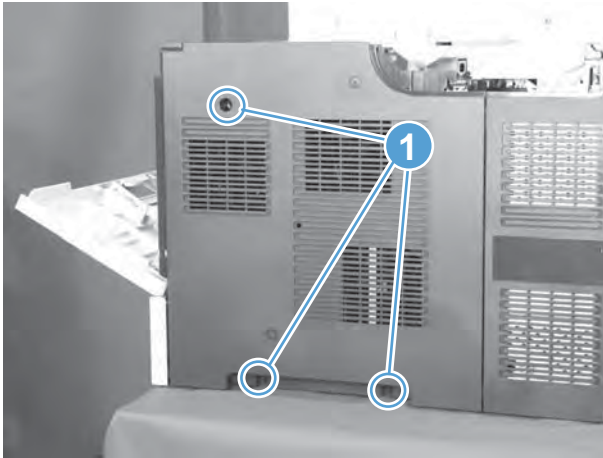
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

**Figure 1-533** Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

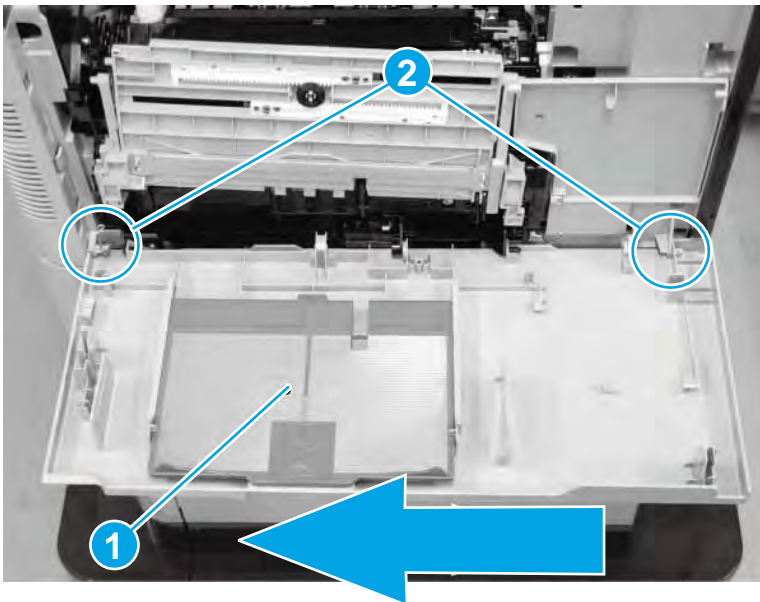
**Figure 1-534** Install three screws



### Step 7: Install the Tray 1 cover

1. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the front of the product to install it on the hinge pins (callout 2).

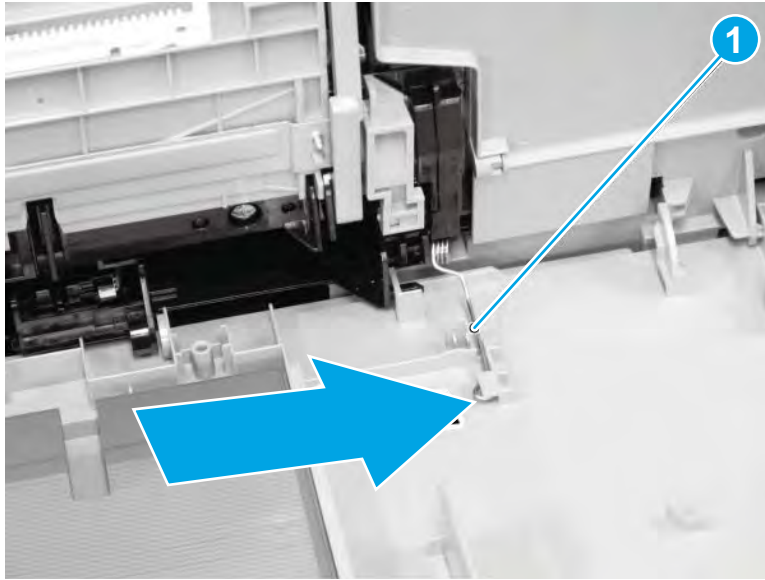
**Figure 1-535** Install the cover





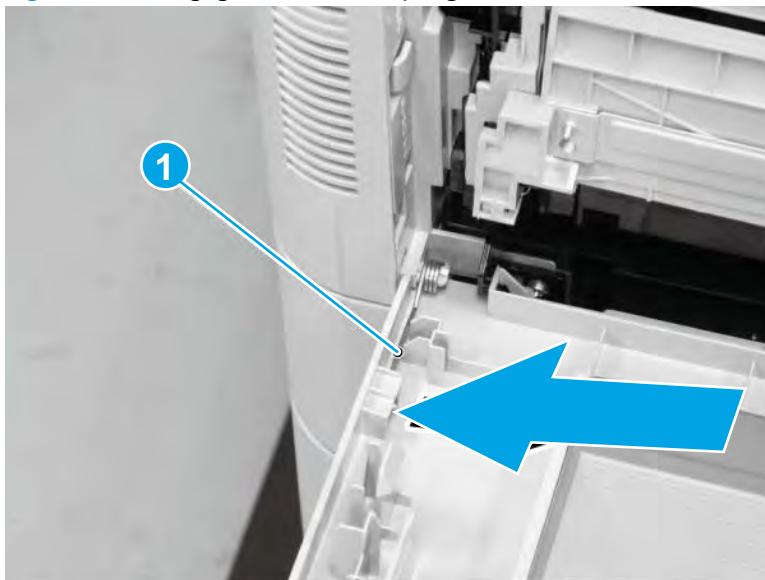
2. Engage the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

**Figure 1-536** Engage the right-side spring



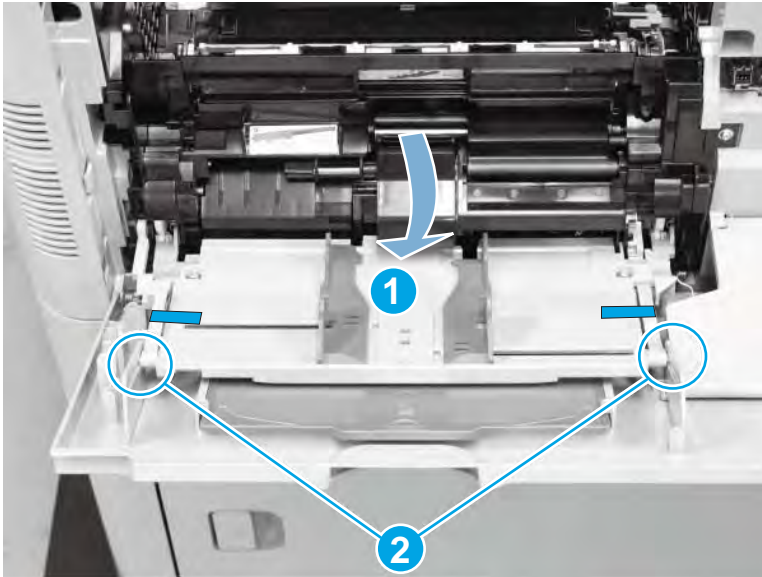
3. Engage the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

**Figure 1-537** Engage the left-side spring



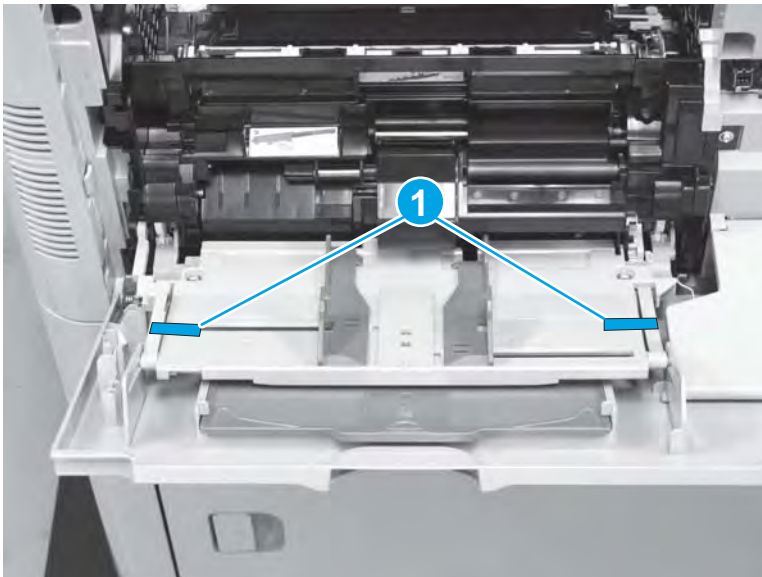
4. Lower the inner tray assembly (callout 1), and then engage the two outer retaining pins (callout 2) on the cover.

**Figure 1-538** Engage two outer retaining pins



5. Remove the low adhesive tape (callout 1), and then close the tray.

**Figure 1-539** Remove the low adhesive tape



## Step 8: Turn the product power on

### After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

## Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling)

## Document-feeder hinge cover

### Remove the following assemblies:

- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).
- Rear-left cover. See [Rear-left cover on page 327](#).

### Remove the document-feeder hinge cover

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

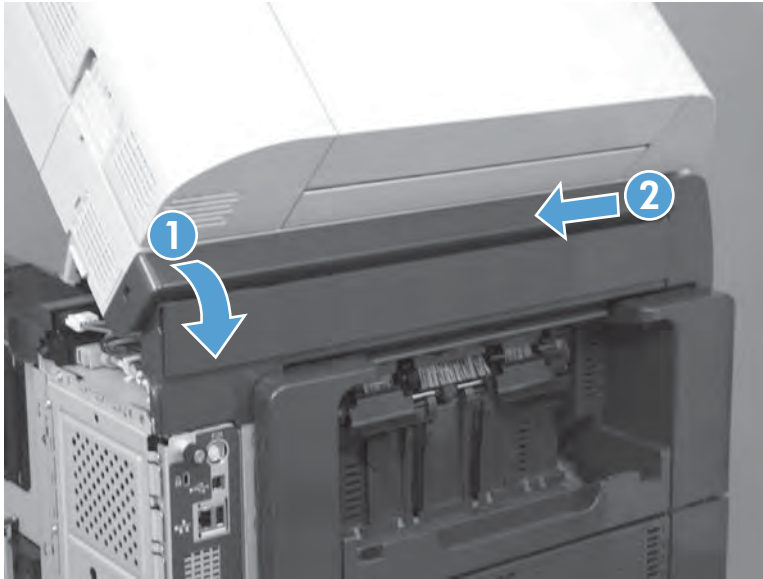
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-540** Remove one screw




2. Release the corner of the cover (callout 1), and then slide the cover (callout 2) toward the rear of the product.

**Figure 1-541** Release the corner of the cover



3. Remove the cover.

---

 **NOTE:** The document-feeder hinge cover consists of two separate covers. It will likely come apart when removed.

---

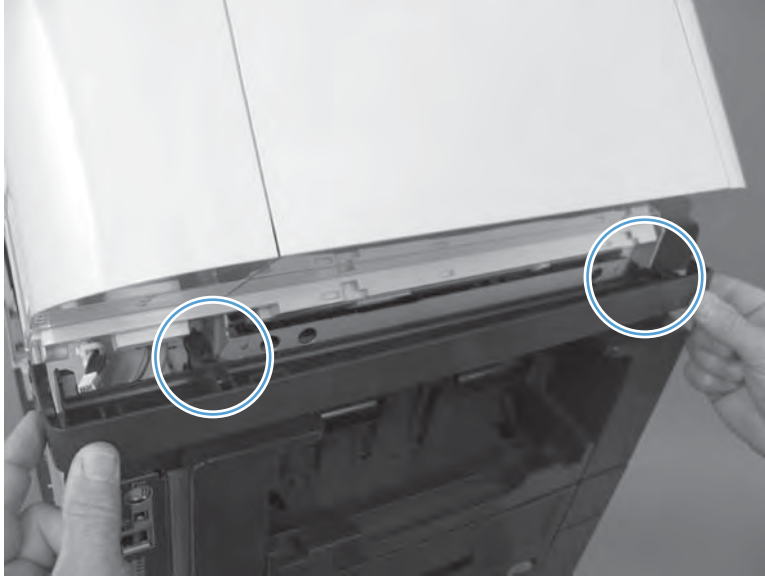
**Figure 1-542** Remove the document feeder hinge cover



## Install the document-feeder hinge cover

When the cover is reinstalled, make sure that the flanges on the cover are correctly positioned behind the Image scanner left cover.

**Figure 1-543** Install the document-feeder hinge cover



# Main assemblies

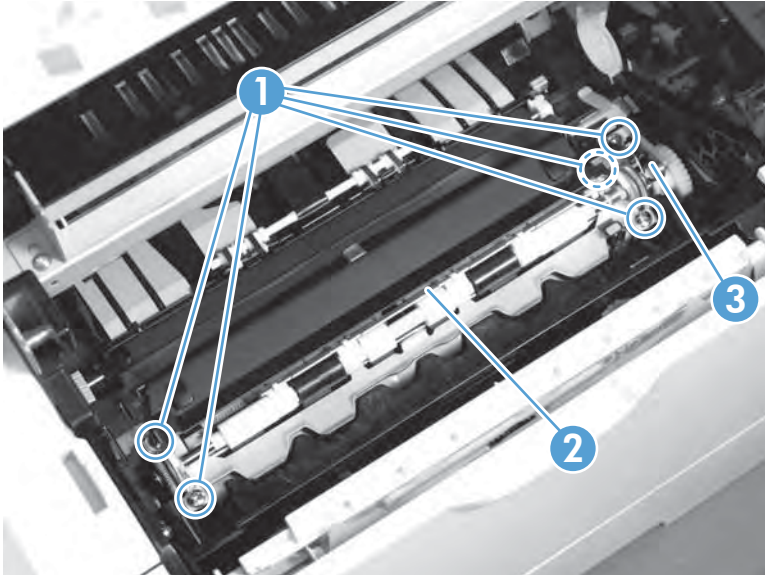
- [Registration assembly](#)
- [Cassette-door-open detection switch \(SW105\)](#)
- [Reverse assembly upper guide assembly](#)
- [Reverse assembly](#)
- [Laser/scanner assembly](#)
- [Cartridge sensor assembly](#)
- [Temperature sensor](#)
- [DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [DC controller](#)
- [Tray 1 pickup assembly](#)
- [Interconnect board \(ICB\)](#)
- [Feed motor \(M101\)](#)
- [Drum motor \(M102\)](#)
- [Fuser motor \(M299\)](#)
- [Main fan \(FN101\)](#)
- [Laser/scanner fan \(FN102\)](#)
- [Cartridge front-side fan \(FN103\)](#)
- [Low-voltage power supply fan \(FN104\)](#)
- [Reverse assembly fan \(FN105\)](#)
- [Cartridge fan \(FN301\)](#)
- [Interlock switch assembly \(SW101 and SW106\)](#)
- [Output accessory detection switch \(SW104\)](#)
- [Low-voltage power supply \(LVPS\)](#)
- [Lifter base assembly](#)
- [Lifter assembly](#)
- [High-voltage power supply \(HVPS\)](#)
- [Feed roller assembly](#)
- [Pickup drive assembly](#)
- [Cassette pickup assembly](#)

## Registration assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

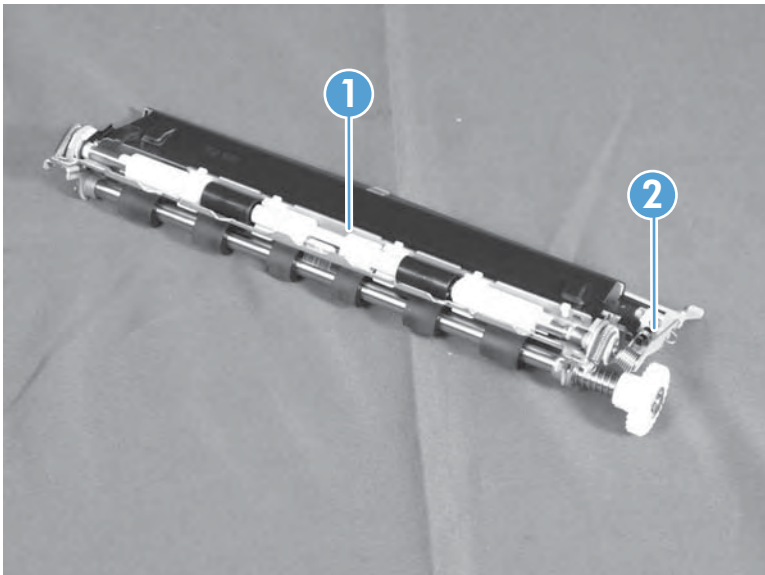
1. Pull the top cover release lever to open the top cover.
2. Open the jam access flap, remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the registration assembly (callout 2) and grounding plate (callout 3) together.

**Figure 1-544** Remove the registration assembly and grounding plate



3. If necessary, separate the registration assembly (callout 1) from the grounding plate (callout 2).

**Figure 1-545** Remove the registration assembly





## Cassette-door-open detection switch (SW105)

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the cassette-door-open detection switch](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement switch assembly](#)
- [Step 3: Install the cassette-door-open detection switch](#)
- [Step 4: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the cassette-door-open detection switch.

### Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

---

**Cassette-door-open detection switch part number**

---

**RM1-1045-000CN**

Cassette-door-open detection switch


**NOTE:** This switch is also called the right-door sensor assembly.

---

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

---

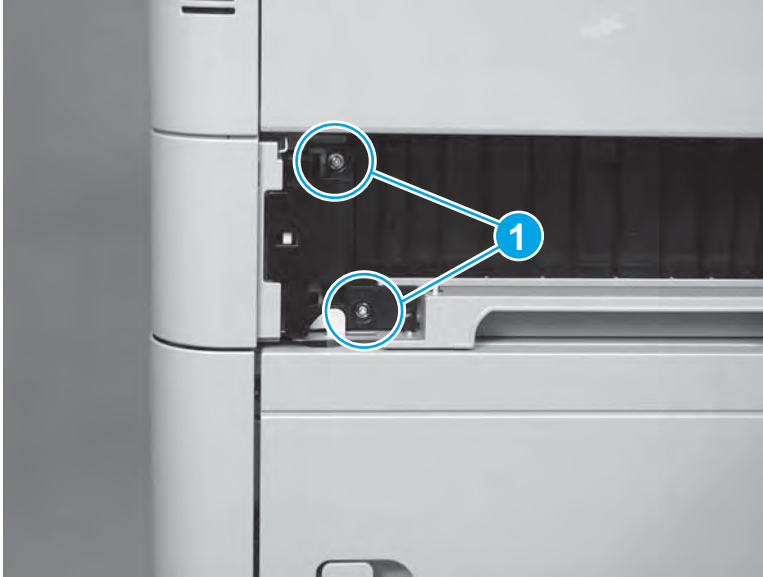
### Required tools

#2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152-mm (6-in) shaft length


### Step 1: Remove the cassette-door-open detection switch

1. Open the right-lower door, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

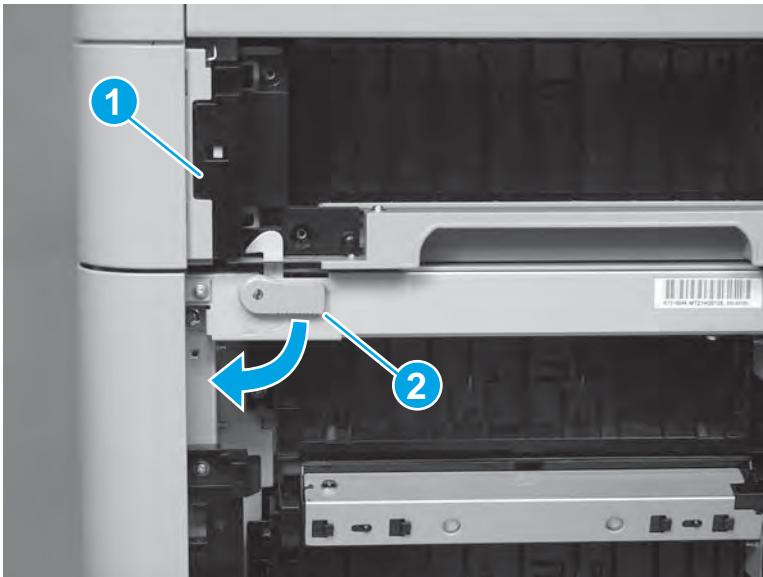
**Figure 1-546** Remove two screws



2. Remove the switch cover (callout 1).

 **TIP:** If the product is installed on an optional input accessory, open the accessory right door, and then release the blue lever (callout 2) to lower the locking latch to make removing the cover easier.

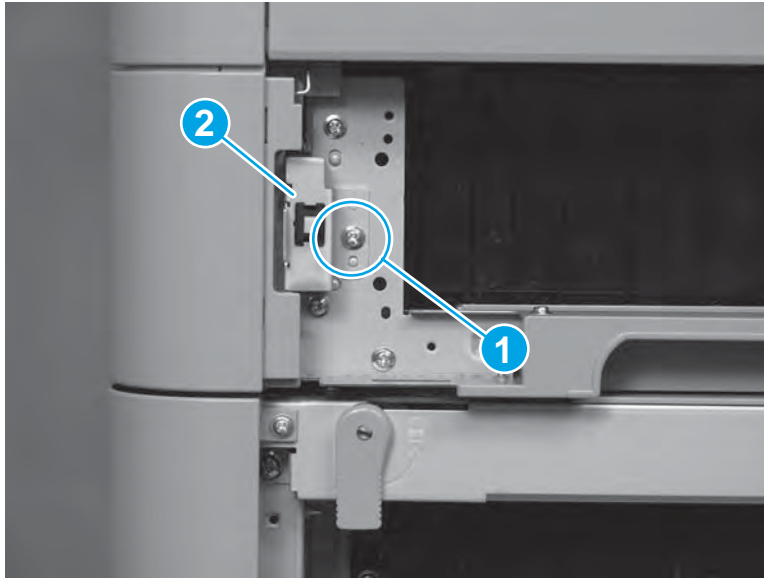
**Figure 1-547** Remove the cover



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then separate the switch assembly (callout 2) from the product.

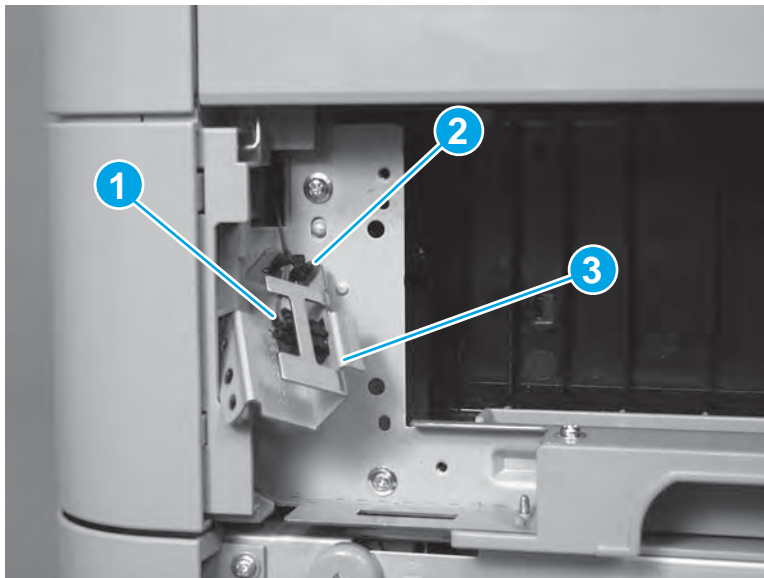
**CAUTION:** A wire harness connects the switch assembly to the product. Do not attempt to completely remove the switch assembly.

**Figure 1-548** Remove one screw



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 2), and then remove the switch assembly (callout 3).

**Figure 1-549** Remove the switch

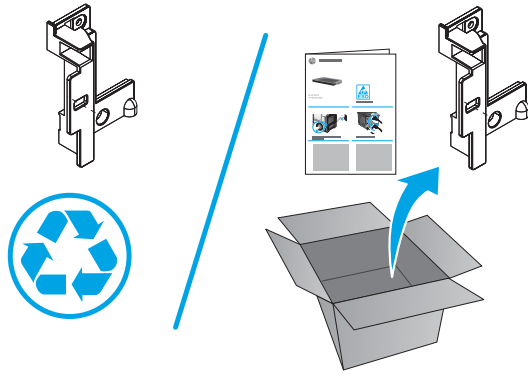


## Step 2: Unpack the replacement switch assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.


[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

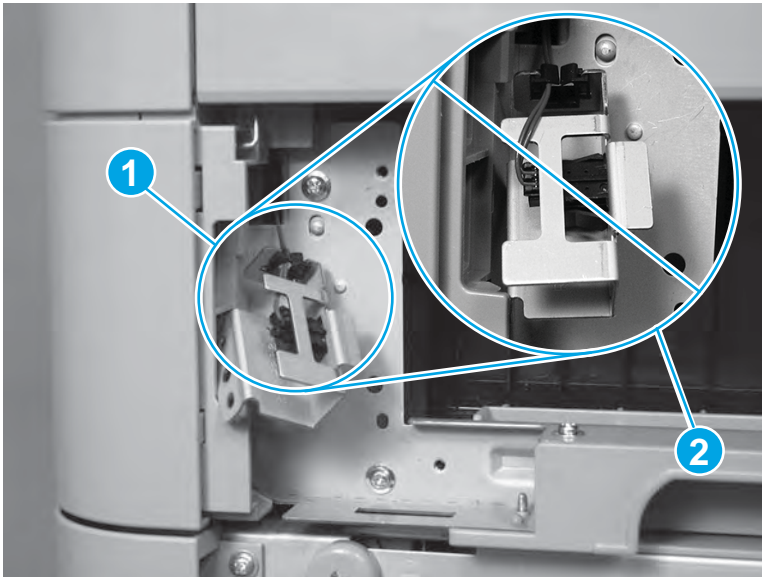


### Step 3: Install the cassette-door-open detection switch

1. Connect one connector, and then install the wire harness in the retainer (callout 1).

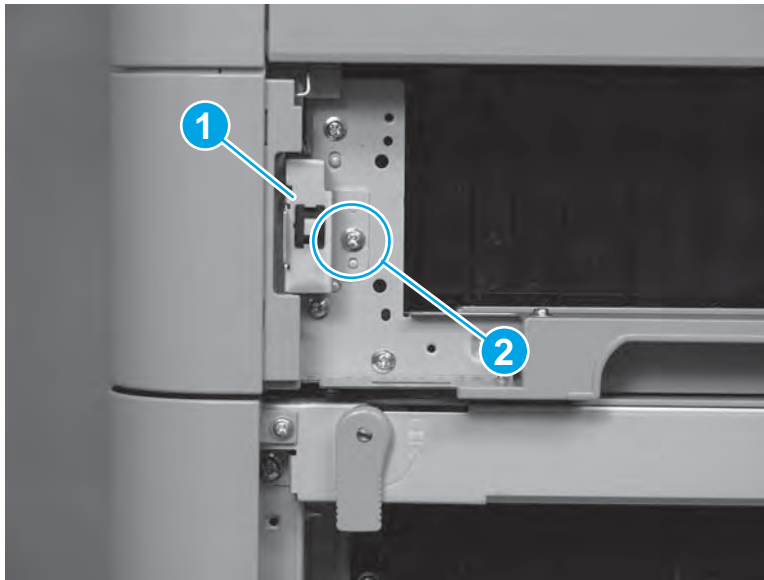
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that the wire harness is routed *inside* the bracket. It must not be routed outside of the bracket (callout 2).

**Figure 1-550** Connect one connector




2. Position the switch assembly (callout 1) on the product, and then install one screw (callout 2).

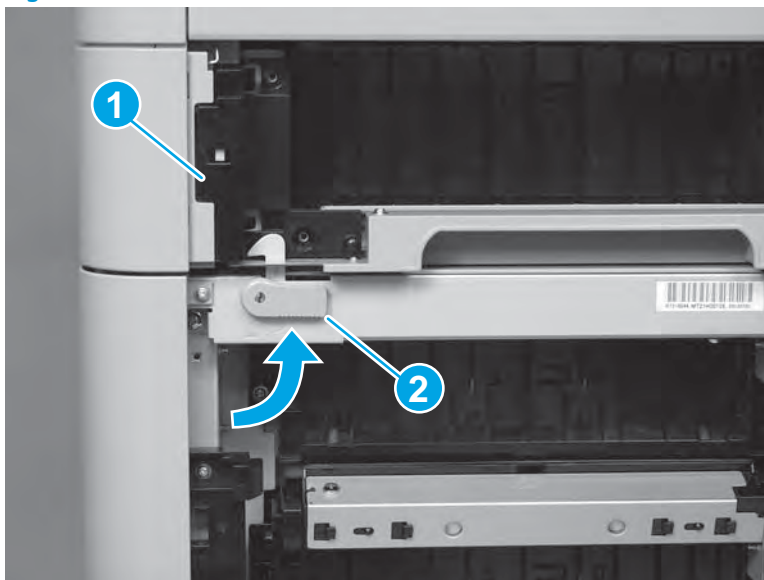
**Figure 1-551** Install one screw



3. Install the switch cover (callout 1).

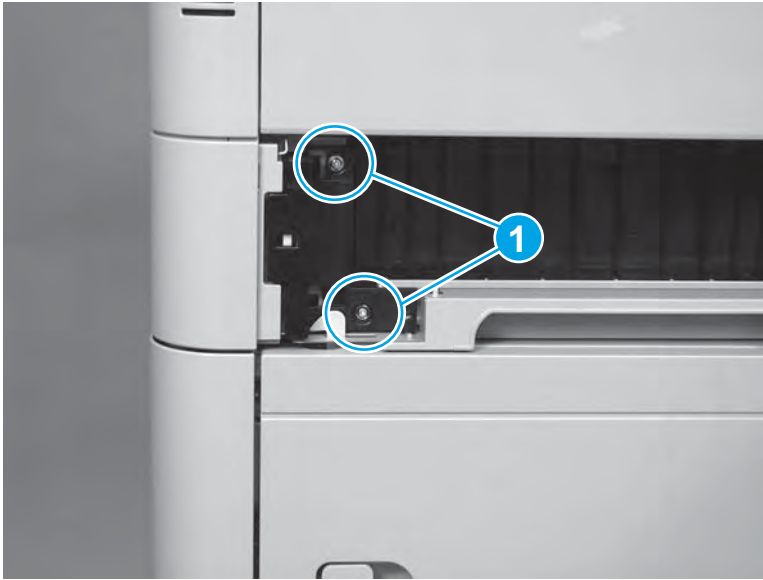
 **NOTE:** If the product is installed on an optional input accessory, make sure to rotate the blue lever (callout 2) to lock the latch.

**Figure 1-552** Install the cover



4. Install two screws (callout 1), and then close all of the doors.

**Figure 1-553** Install two screws



#### **Step 4: Turn the product power on**

##### **After servicing**

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

##### **Parts Return**

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling.)

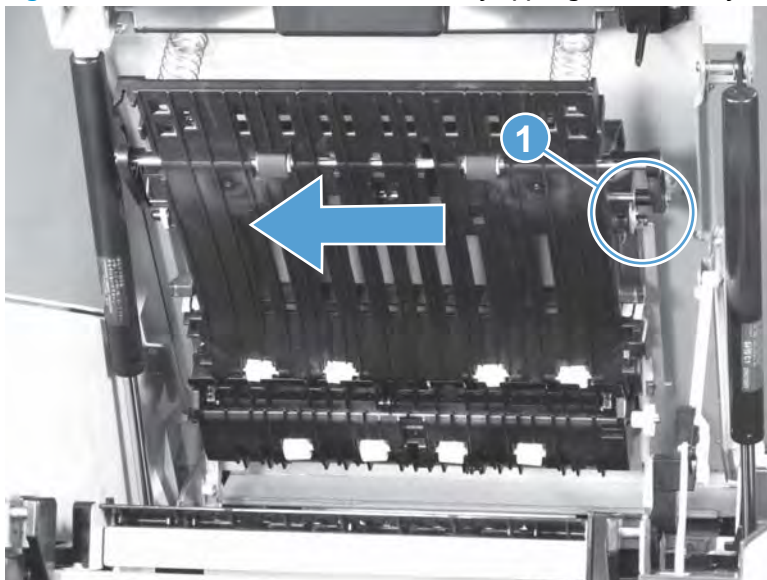
## Reverse assembly upper guide assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Pull the top cover release lever to open the top cover.
2. Carefully flex the bushing (callout 1) and then slide the assembly toward the front of the product to remove it.

**⚠ CAUTION:** Be careful when handling the assembly after removal. There are springs attached to the assembly that can be easily dislodged and lost.

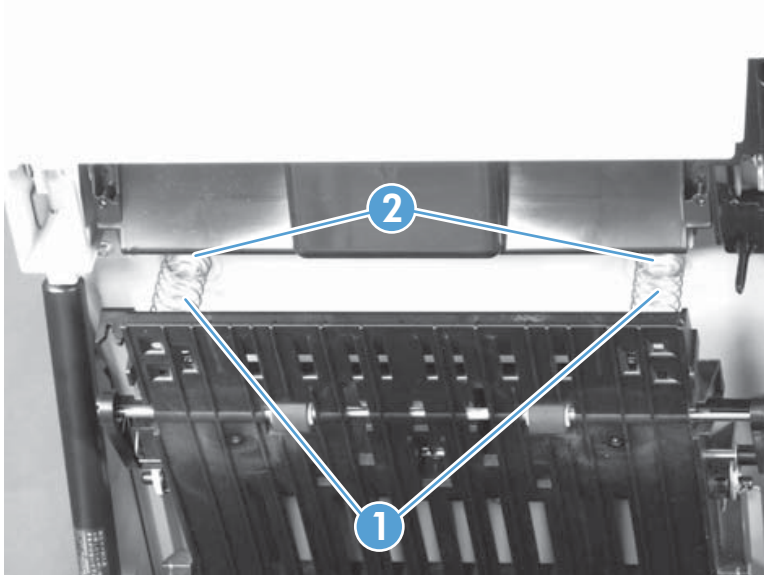
**Figure 1-554** Remove the reverse assembly upper guide assembly



## Install the reverse assembly upper guide assembly

When the assembly is reinstalled, make sure that two springs (callout 1) are correctly positioned on the sheet-metal bosses (callout 2).

**Figure 1-555** Install the reverse assembly upper guide assembly



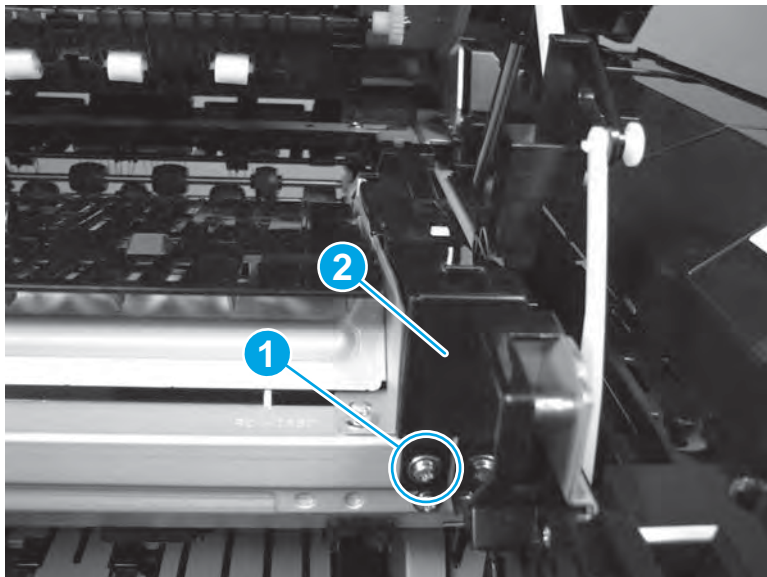


## Reverse assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

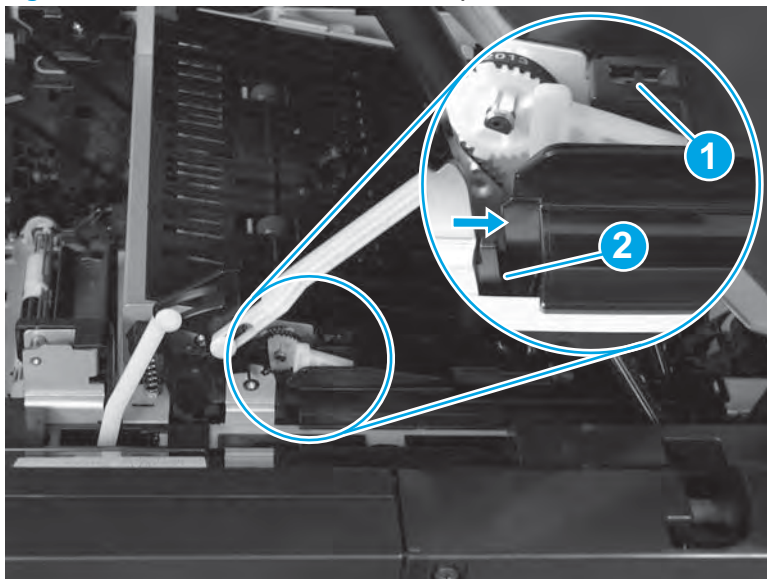
1. Open the top cover, remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

**Figure 1-556** Remove one screw and the cover



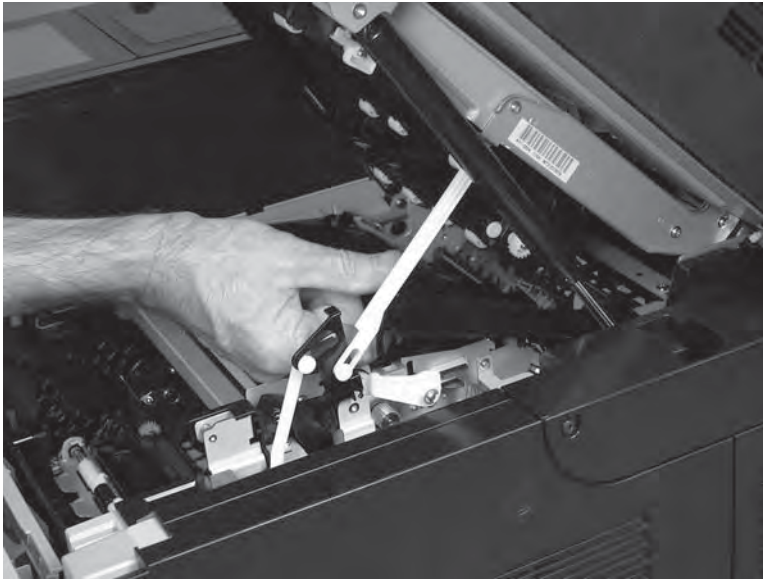
2. Release one tab (callout 1) and then push in on one clip (callout 2) to release it.

**Figure 1-557** Release one tab and one clip



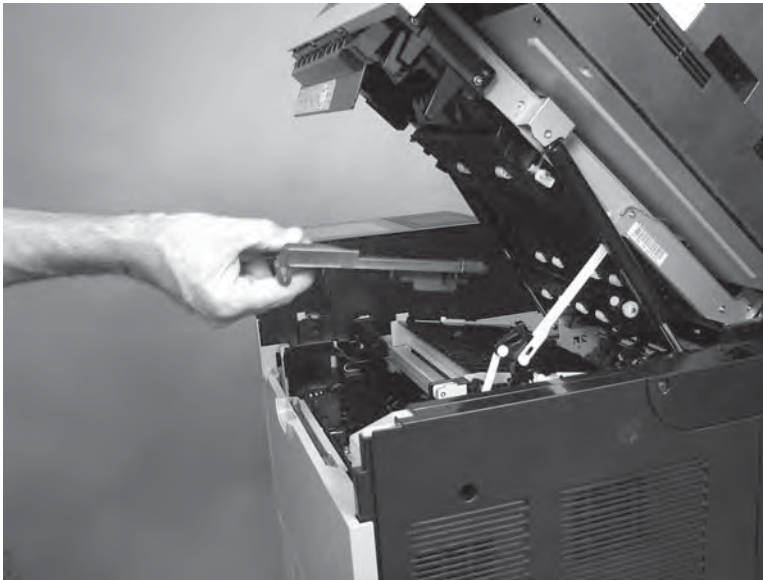
3. Rotate the front of the cover up.

**Figure 1-558** Rotate the cover



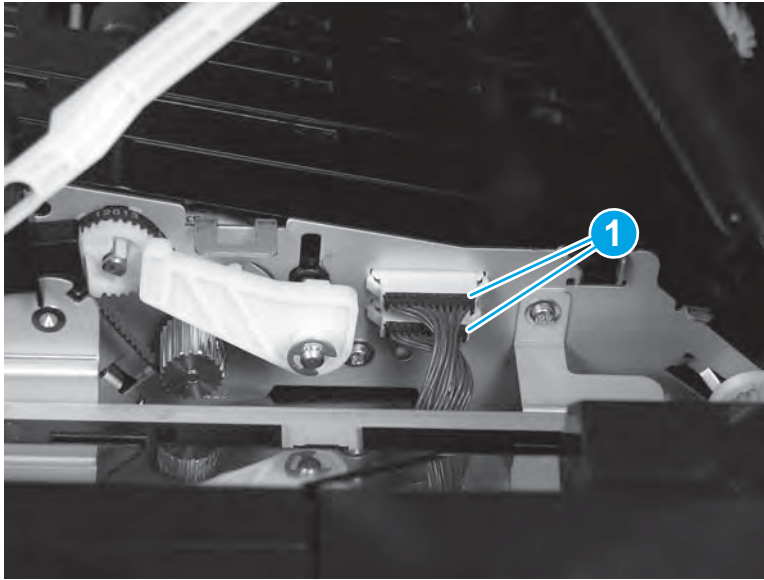
4. Remove the cover.

**Figure 1-559** Remove the cover



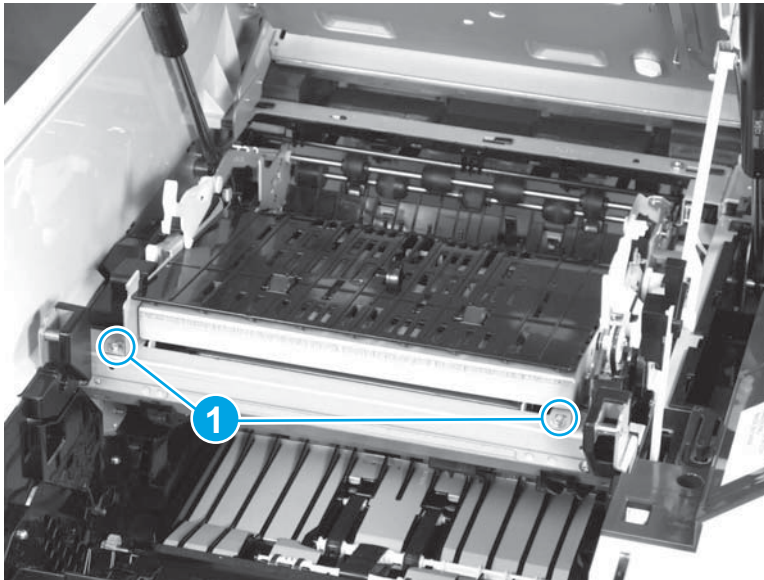
5. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).

**Figure 1-560** Disconnect two connectors



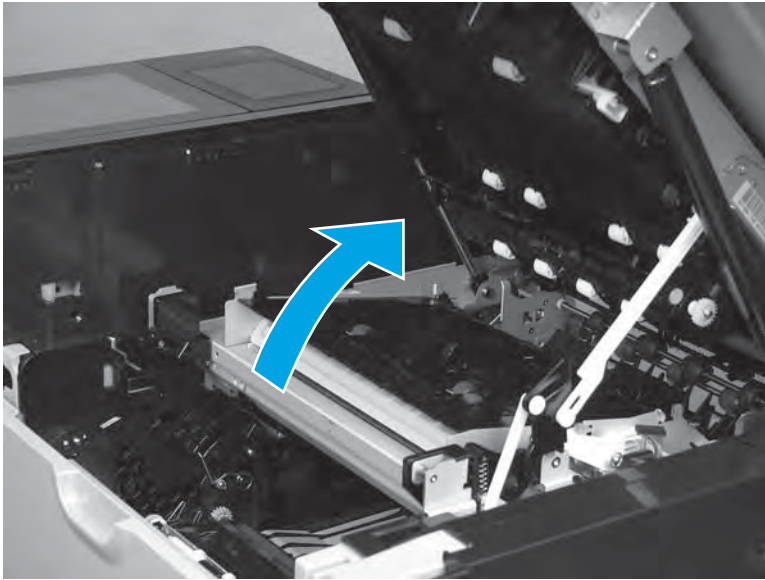
6. Remove two screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-561** Remove two screws



7. Lift up the front of the reverse assembly to release it.

**Figure 1-562** Lift up the front of the assembly



8. Remove the reverse assembly.

**Figure 1-563** Remove the reverse assembly



## Laser/scanner assembly

### Remove the following assemblies:

- Reverse assembly. See [Reverse assembly on page 371](#).

### Remove the laser/scanner assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

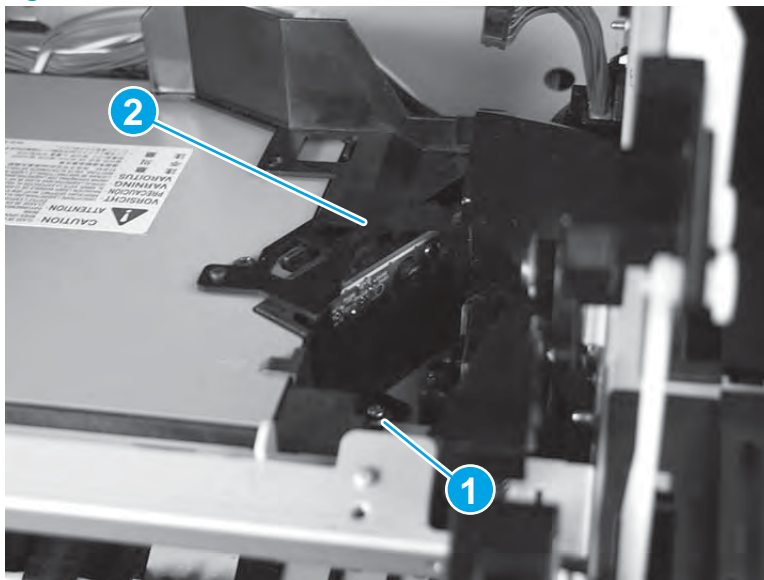
1. At the right side of the laser/scanner assembly, remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

---

 **TIP:** Use a short-barrel screw driver to remove this screw.

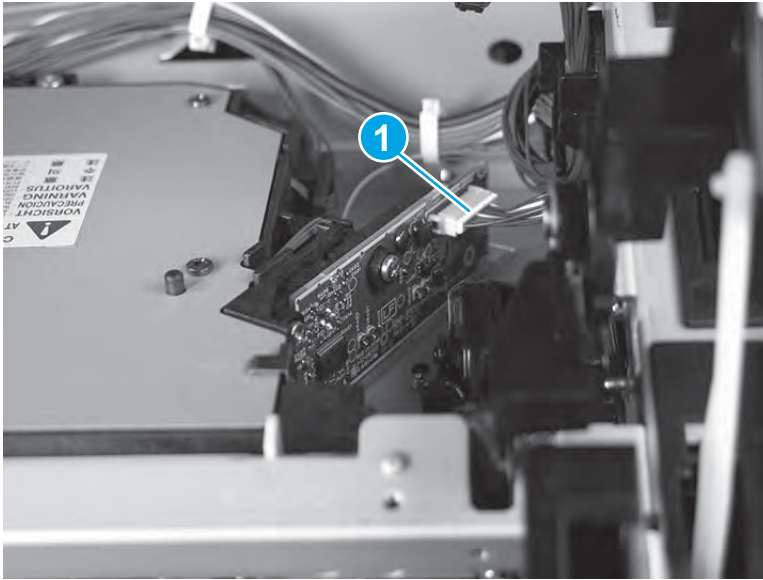
---

**Figure 1-564** Remove the cover



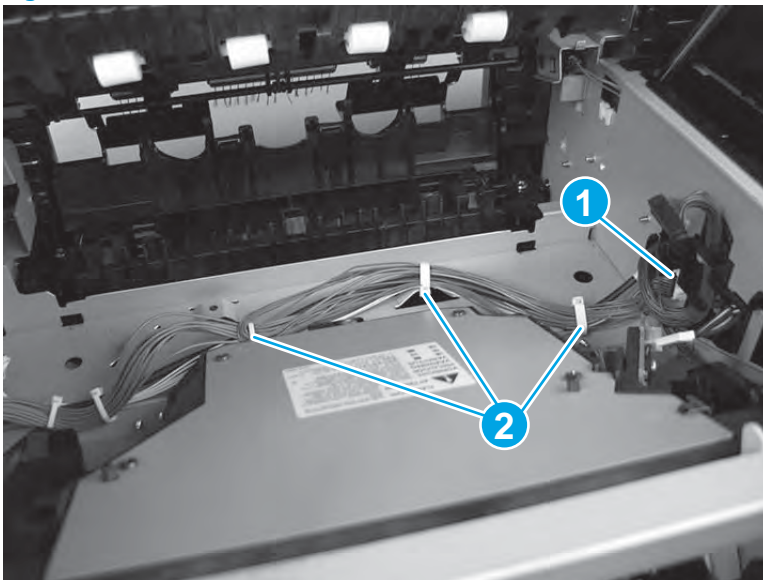
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

**Figure 1-565** Disconnect one connector




3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from three retainers (callout 2).

**Figure 1-566** Disconnect one connector

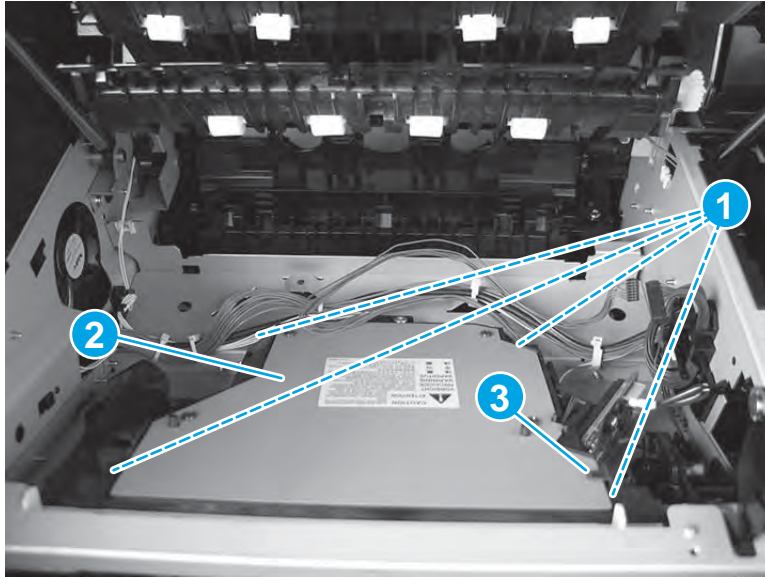


4. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the laser/scanner assembly (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** The grounding clip (callout 3) is not captive. Do not lose the clip.

 **TIP:** Use a short-barrel screw driver to remove the screws.

**Figure 1-567** Remove the laser/scanner assembly



## Cartridge sensor assembly

### Remove the following assemblies:


- Reverse assembly. See [Reverse assembly on page 371](#).

### Remove the cartridge sensor assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

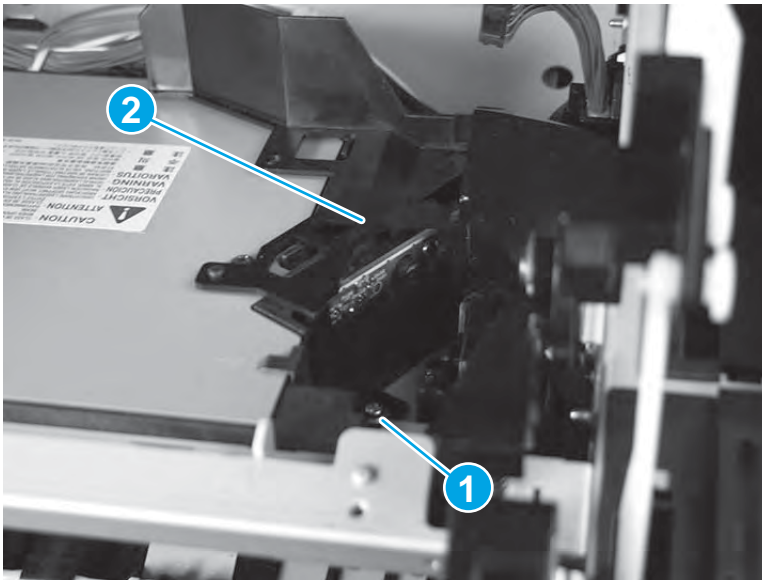
1. At the right side of the laser/scanner assembly, remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

---

 **TIP:** Use a short-barrel screw driver to remove this screw.

---

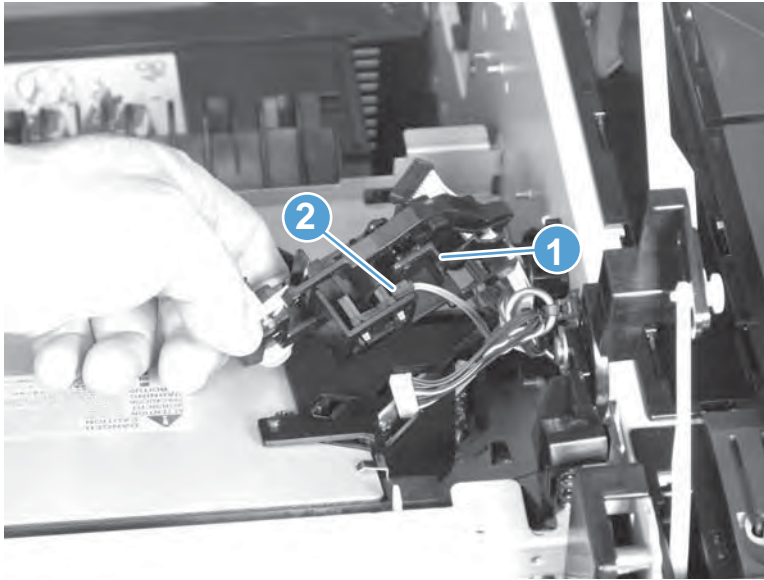
**Figure 1-568** Remove the cover





2. Remove the sensor assembly (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

**Figure 1-569** Remove the cartridge sensor assembly



## Temperature sensor

### Remove the following assemblies:

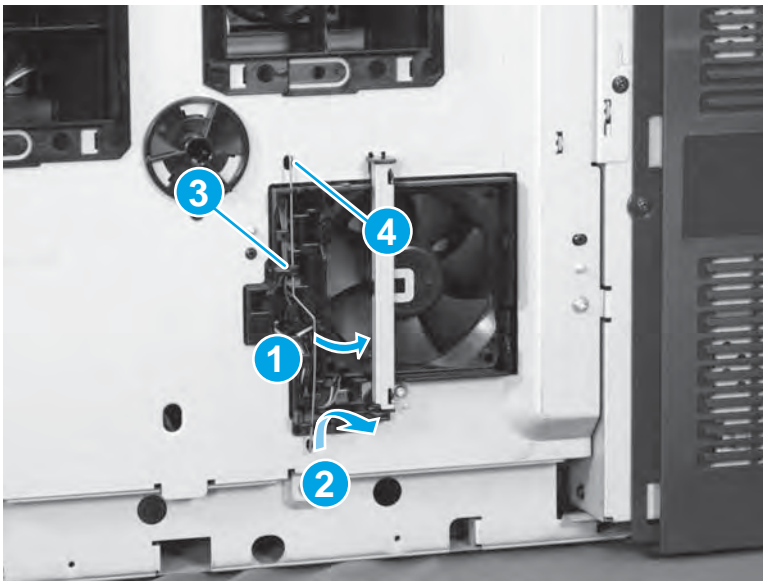
- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).

### Remove the temperature sensor


Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Carefully flex the middle of the spring away from the fan (callout 1), push up on the bottom of the spring (callout 2) to release it, release the spring from one tab (callout 3), and then release the top of the spring (callout 3) to remove it.

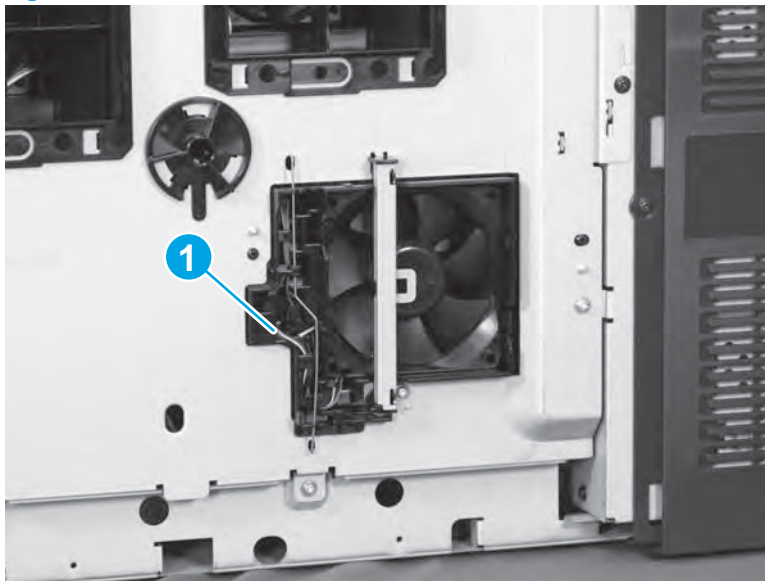
**Figure 1-570** Remove the antistatic spring



2. Disconnect one inline connector (callout 1).

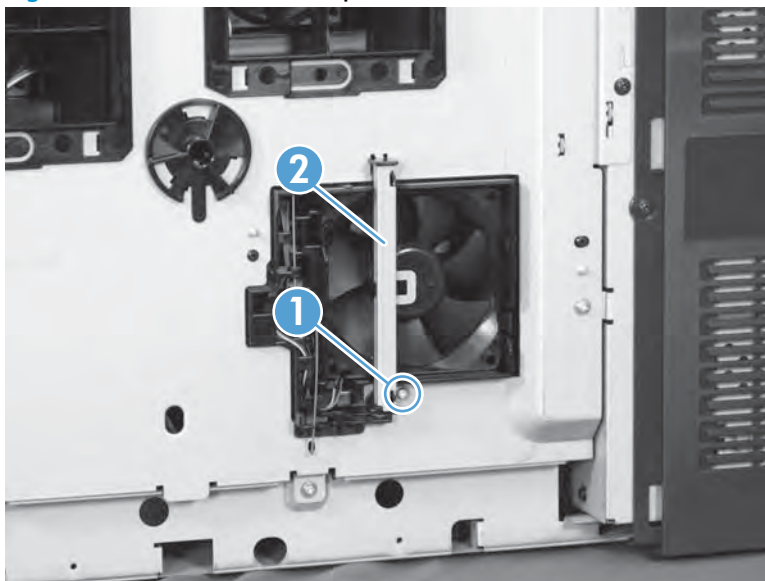
 **TIP:** The correct connector to disconnect is the one attached to the black two-wire harness.

**Figure 1-571** Disconnect one connector



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the sensor (callout 2).

**Figure 1-572** Remove the temperature sensor



## DC controller shield-plate assembly

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 5: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 6: Install the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 7: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 8: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 9: Turn the product power on](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the DC controller shield-plate assembly.


### Before servicing

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

---

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

---

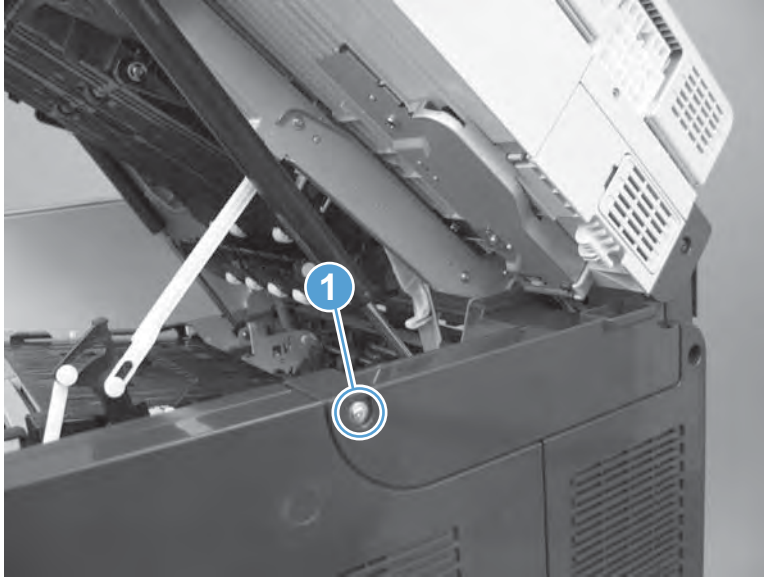
### Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover

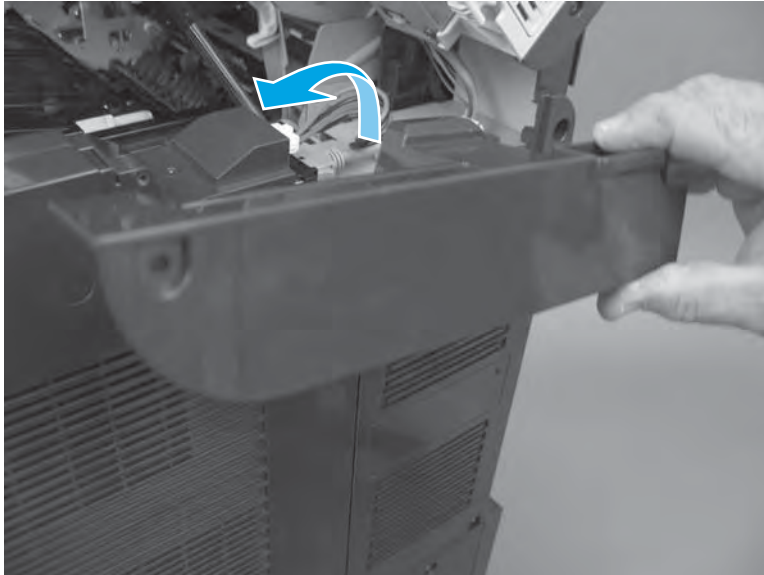
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-573** Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

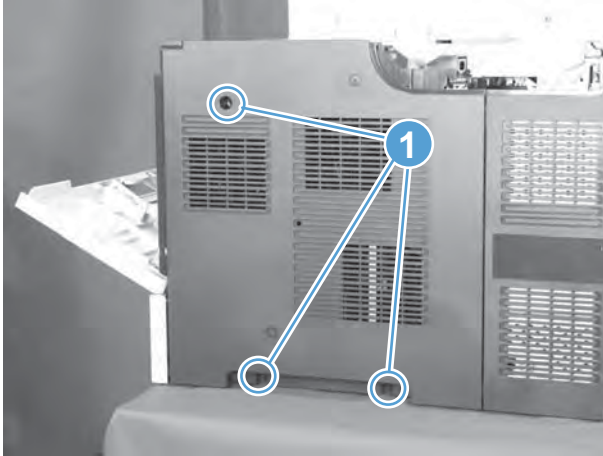
**Figure 1-574** Remove the cover



## **Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover**

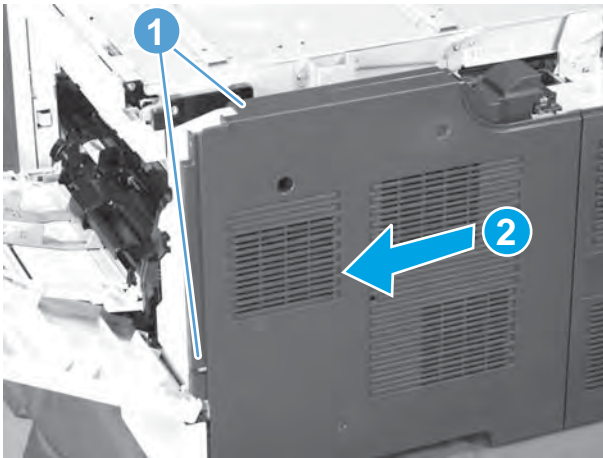
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-575** Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-576** Remove the cover



### Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover

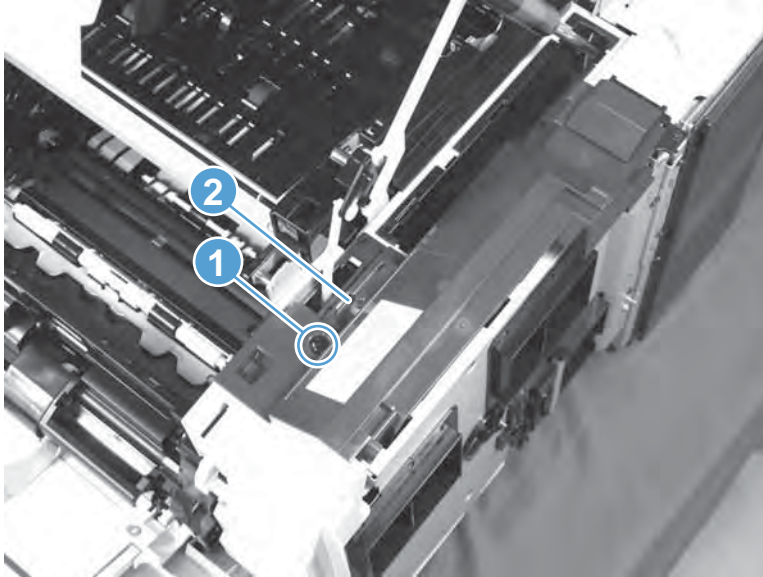
---

 **NOTE:** If the top cover is closed, open it now.

---

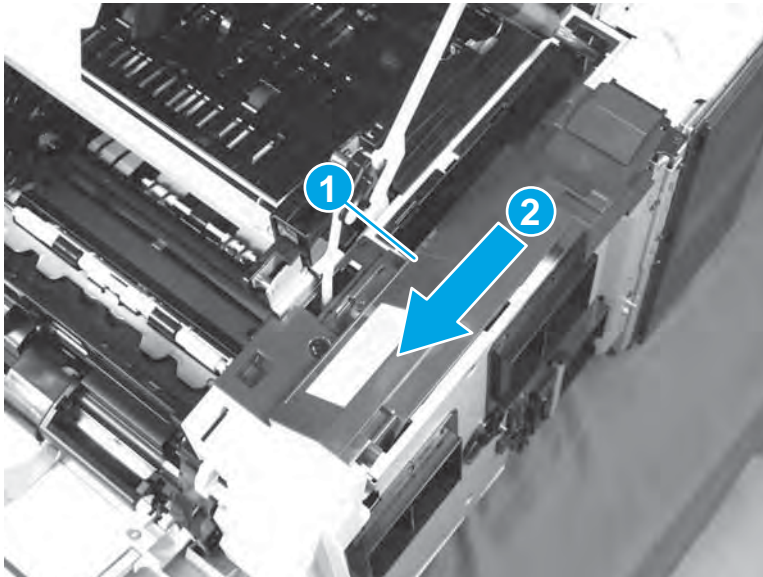
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

**Figure 1-577** Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-578** Remove the cover

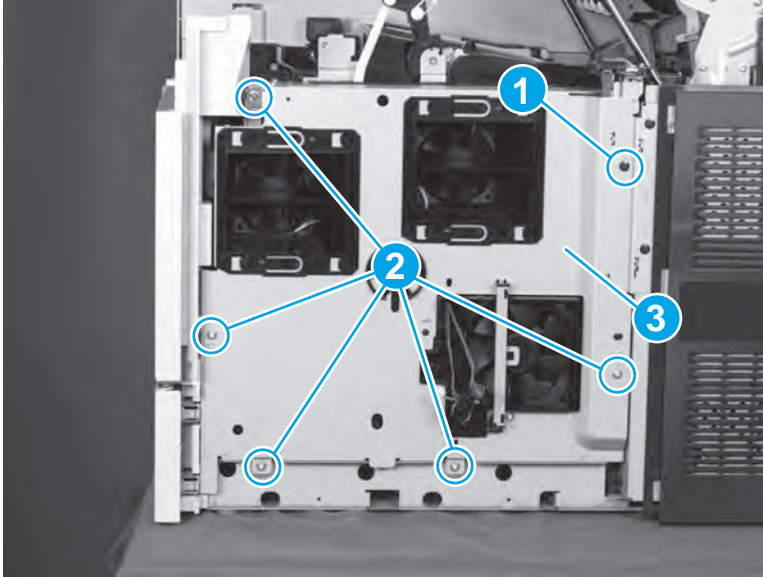


#### **Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly**

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

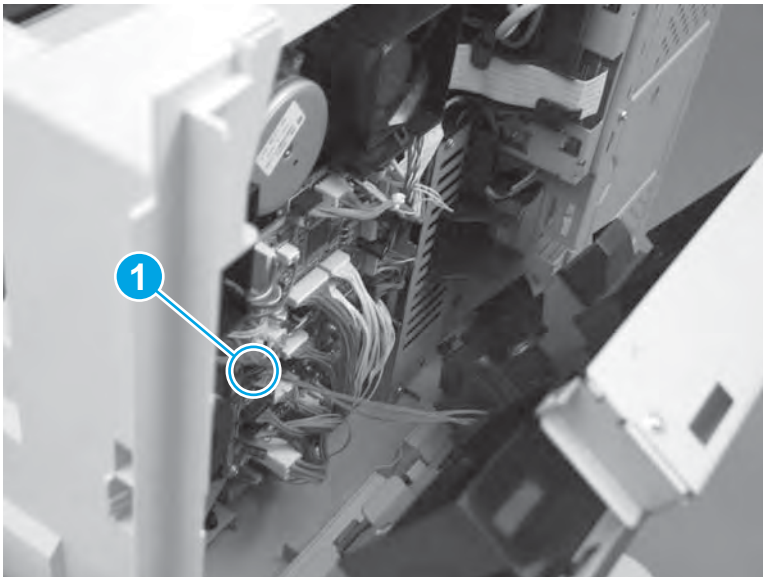
**CAUTION:** The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

**Figure 1-579** Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

**Figure 1-580** Disconnect one connector and remove the shield

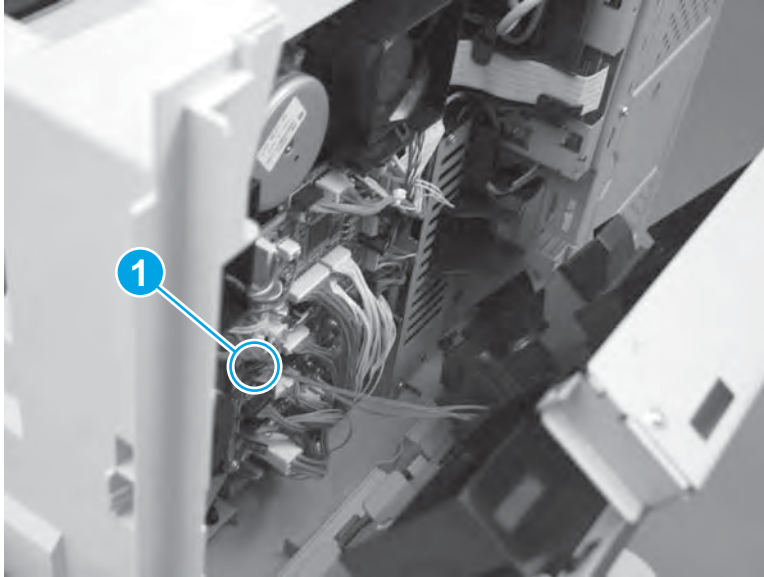


### **Step 5: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly**

1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

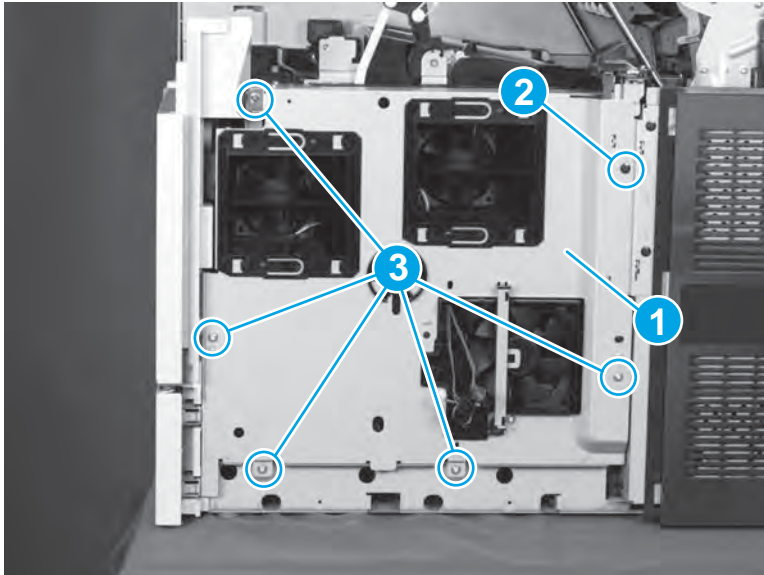


**Figure 1-581** Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

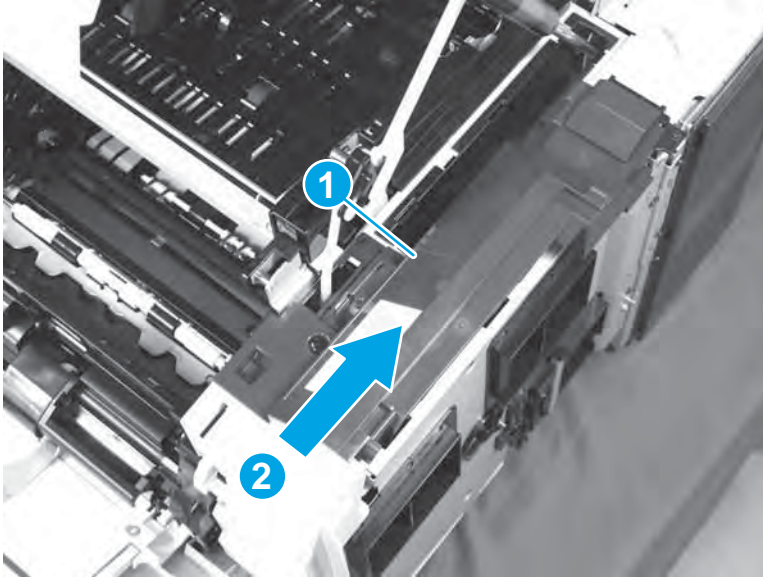
**Figure 1-582** Remove six screws



### Step 6: Install the rear-top cover

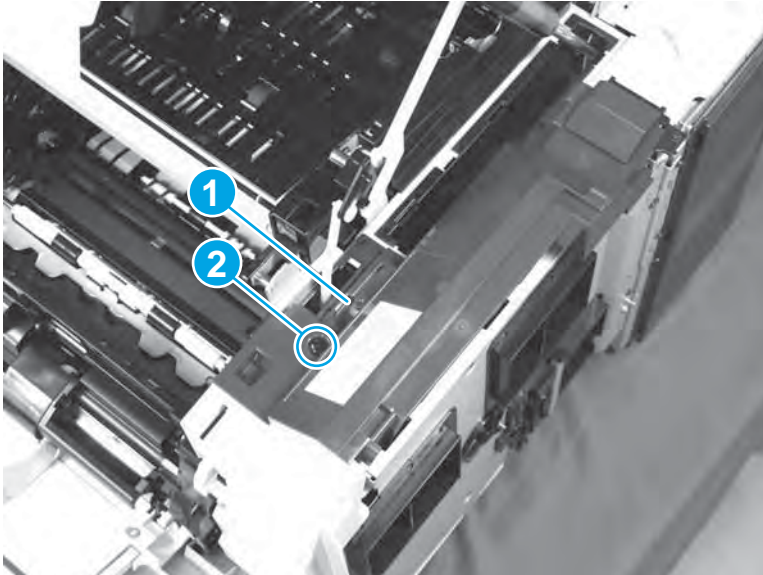
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

**Figure 1-583** Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

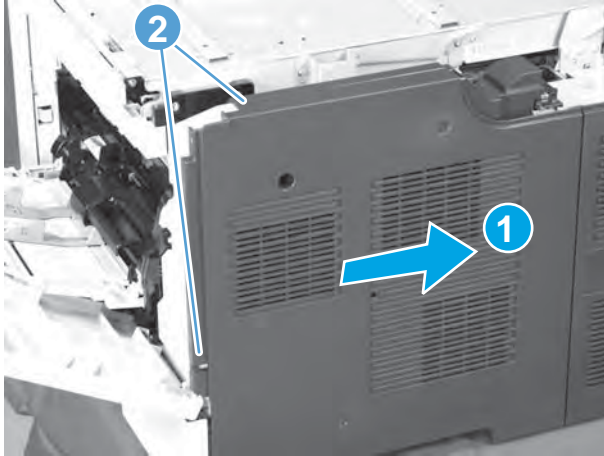
**Figure 1-584** Install one screw



### **Step 7: Install the rear-right cover**

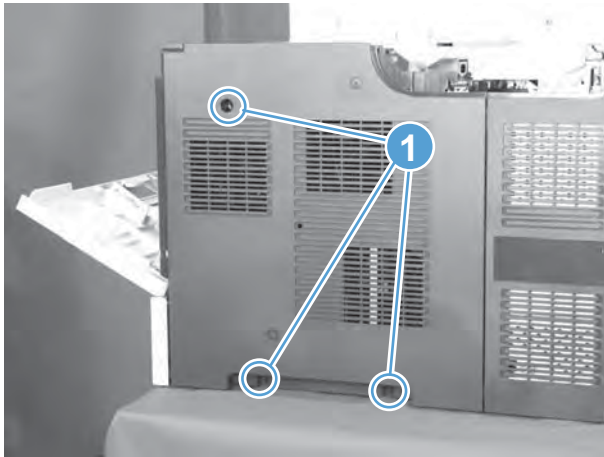
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

**Figure 1-585** Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

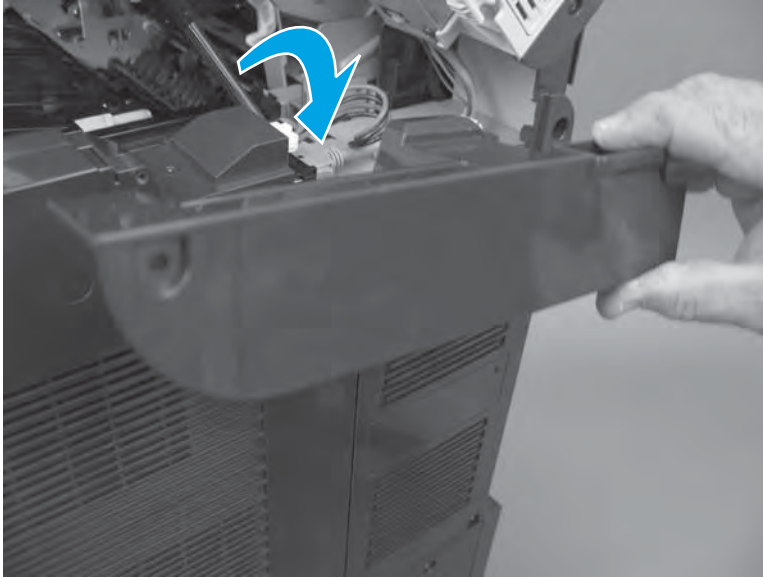
**Figure 1-586** Install three screws



## **Step 8: Install the image scanner cable cover**

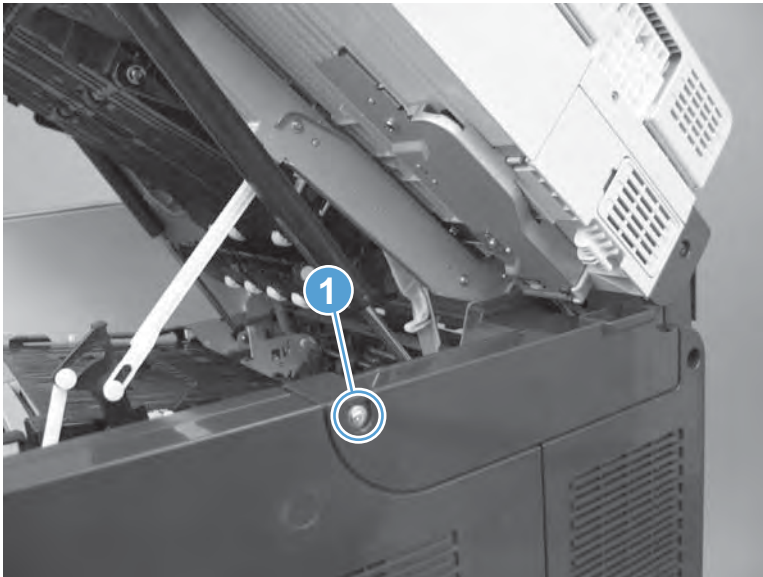
1. Install the cover on the product.

**Figure 1-587** Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

**Figure 1-588** Install one screw



## Step 9: Turn the product power on

### After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

## DC controller

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 5: Remove the DC controller](#)
- [Step 6: Unpack the replacement DC controller](#)
- [Step 7: Install the DC controller](#)
- [Step 8: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 9: Install the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 10: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 11: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 12: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the DC controller.

## Before servicing


Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

DC controller part number	
RM2-7458-000CN	DC controller


Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

 **IMPORTANT:** Do not replace the formatter, DC controller, and hard-disk drive/solid-state memory simultaneously during a single product servicing. Doing so might cause the product to become unstable or inoperable.

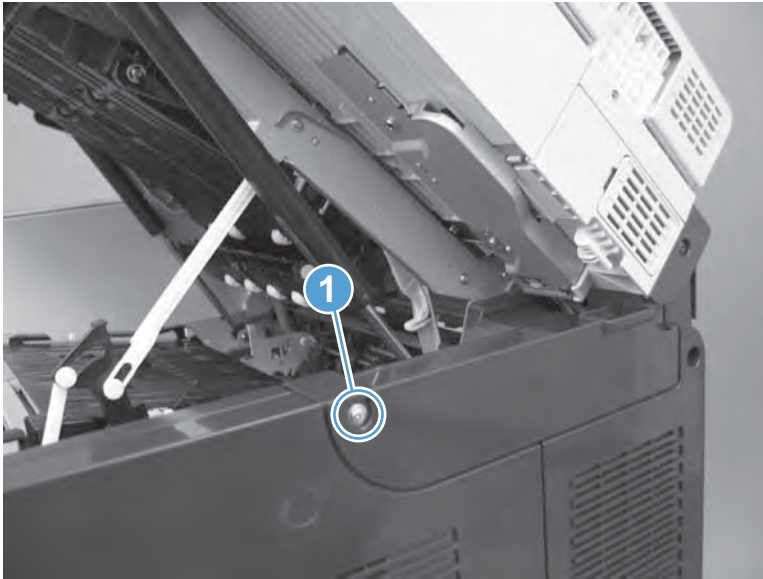
## Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover

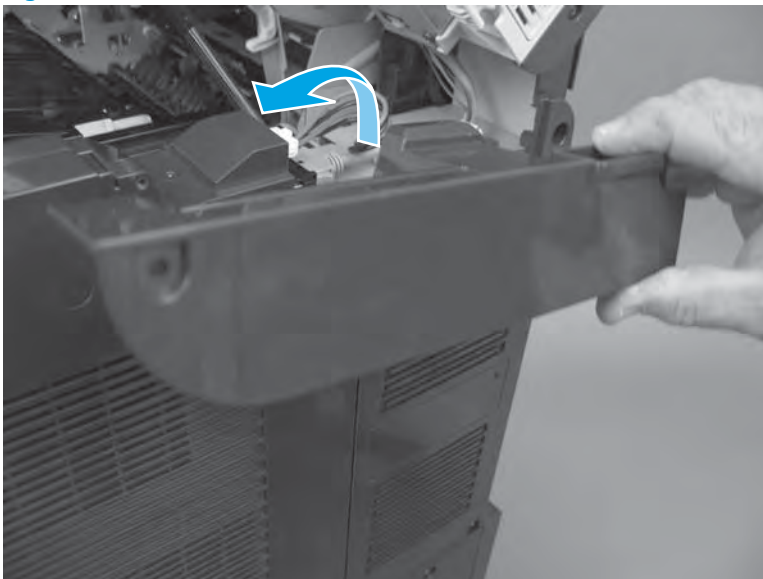
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-589** Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

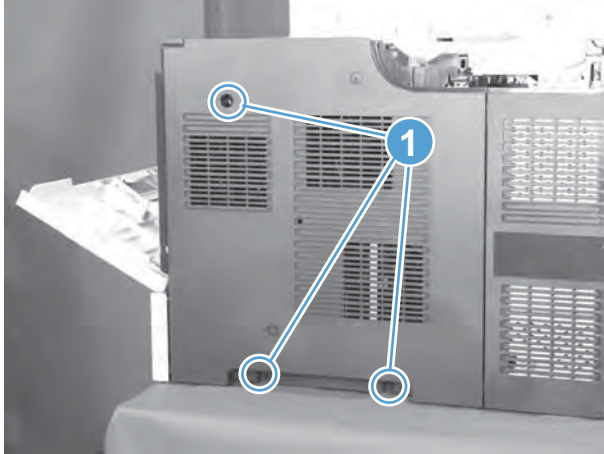
**Figure 1-590** Remove the cover



## Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover

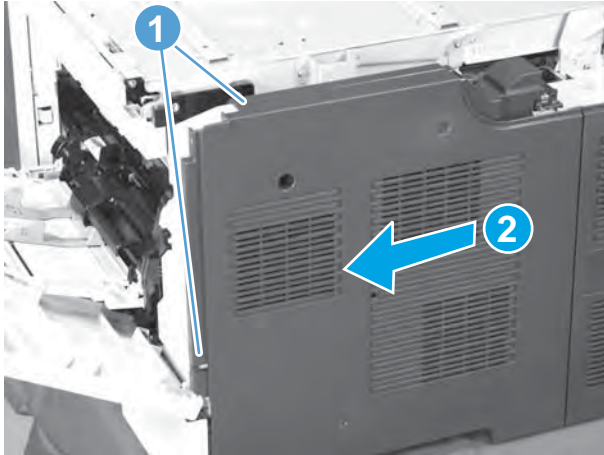
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-591** Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-592** Remove the cover



### Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover

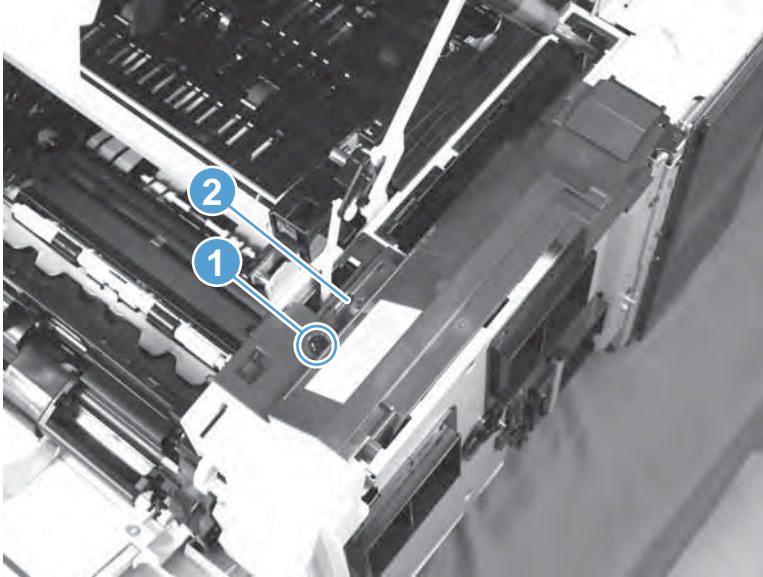
---

 **NOTE:** If the top cover is closed, open it now.

---

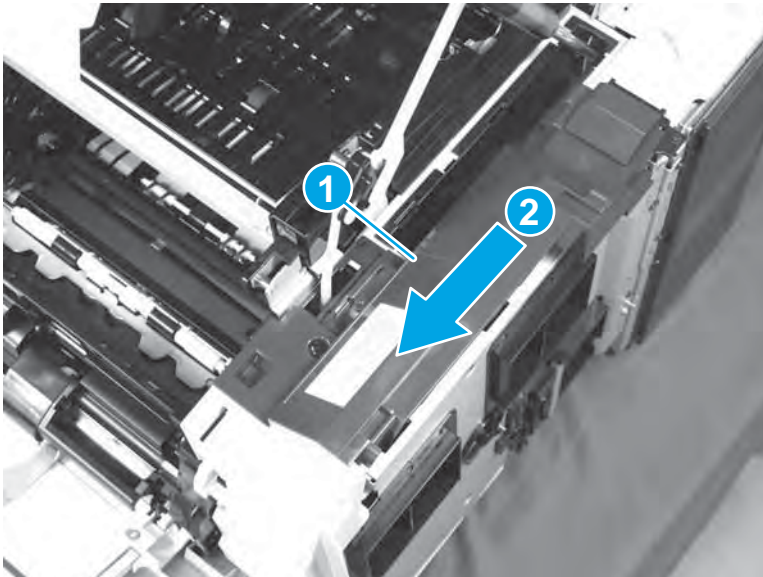
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

**Figure 1-593** Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-594** Remove the cover



#### **Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly**

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

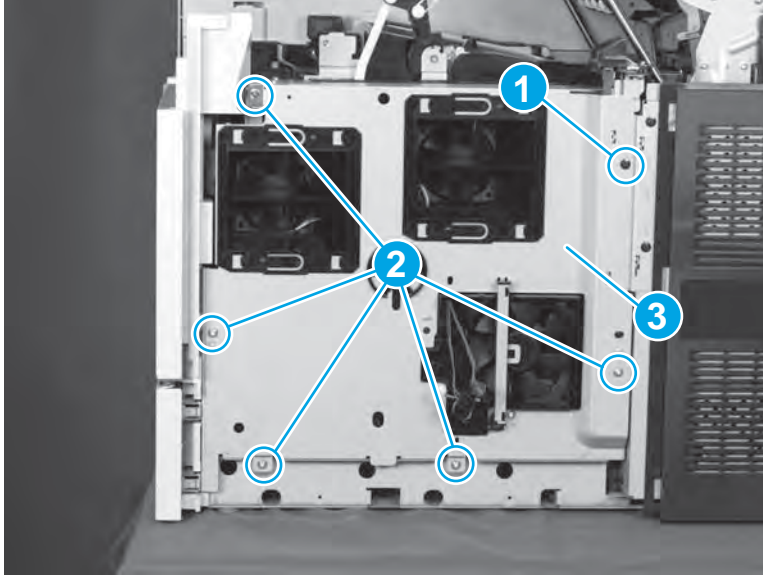
---

**⚠ CAUTION:** The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

---

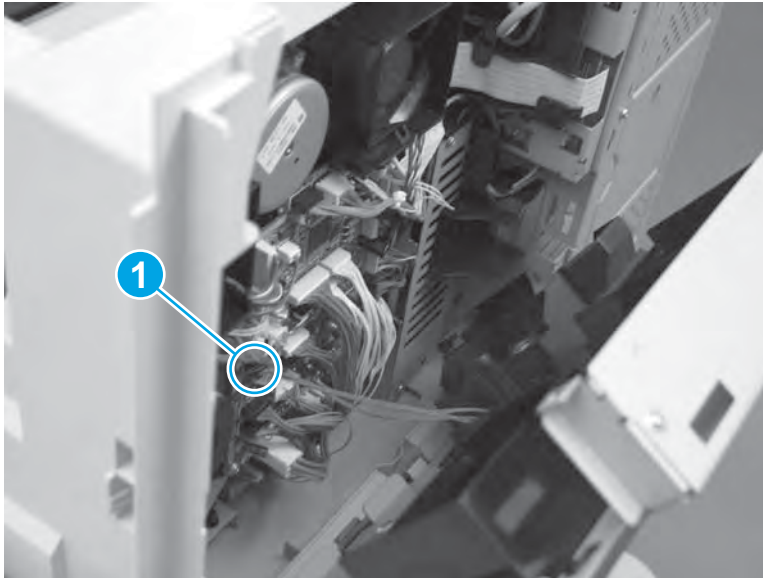


**Figure 1-595** Remove six screws




2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

**Figure 1-596** Disconnect one connector and remove the shield

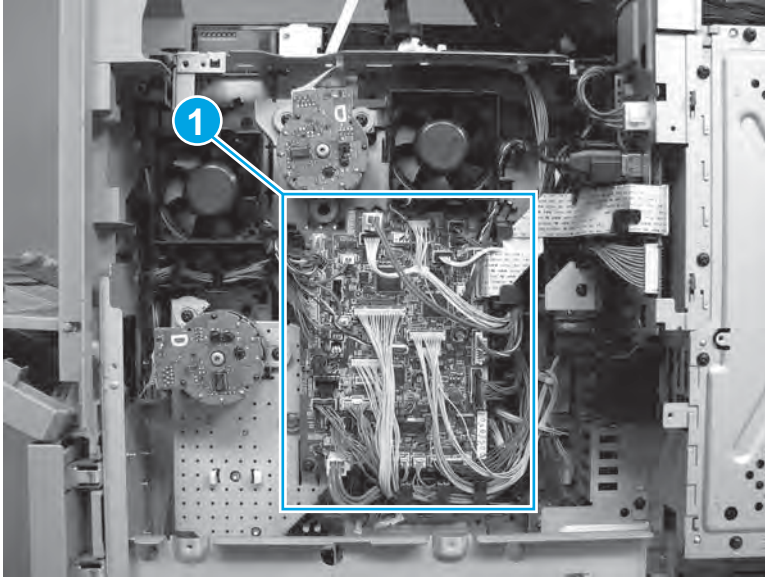


### Step 5: Remove the DC controller

1. Disconnect all of the connectors (callout 1) on the DC controller.
  - 34 wire-harness connectors
  - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

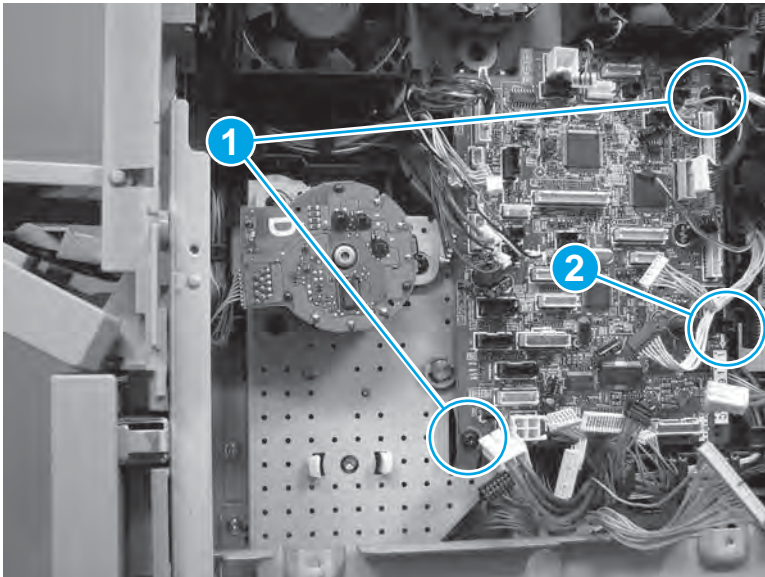
 **Reinstallation tip:** When the DC controller is reinstalled, connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

**Figure 1-597** Disconnect all of the connectors



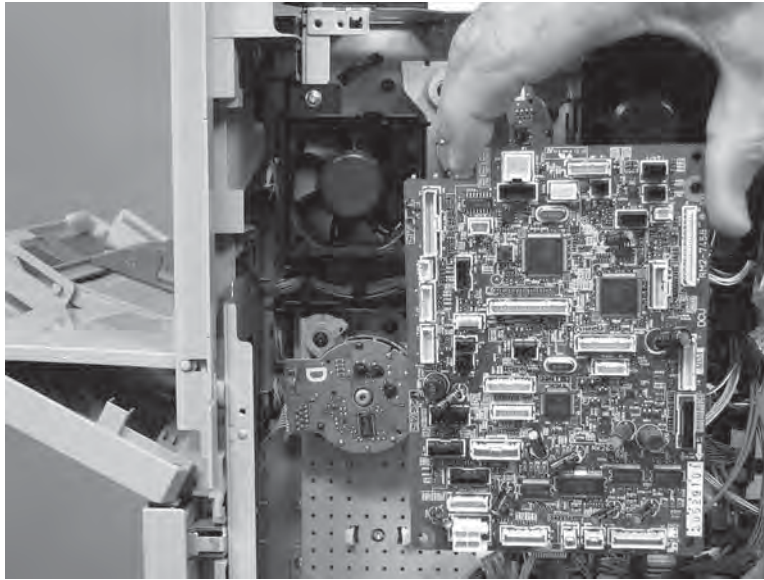
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2).

**Figure 1-598** Remove two screws and release one tab



3. Remove the DC controller.

**Figure 1-599** Remove the DC controller



### Step 6: Unpack the replacement DC controller


Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

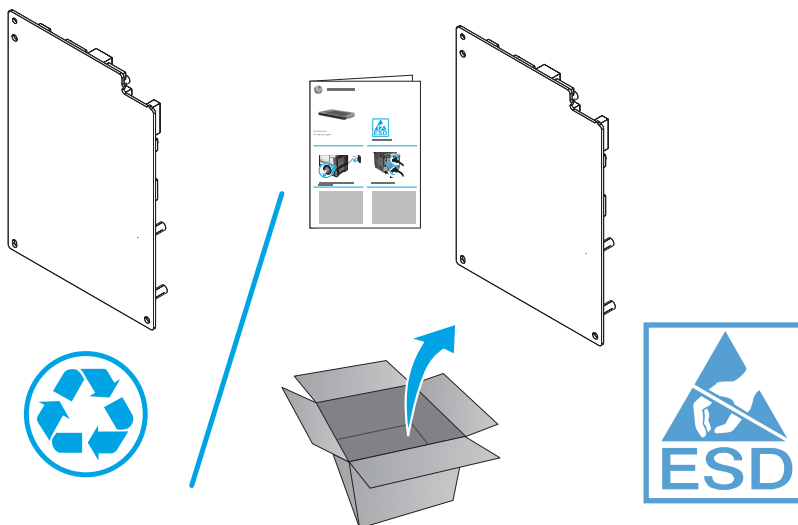
[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

Discharge body static before handling the replacement assembly.

Handle the replacement assembly by the edges. Avoid direct contact with the circuit portion of the assembly.

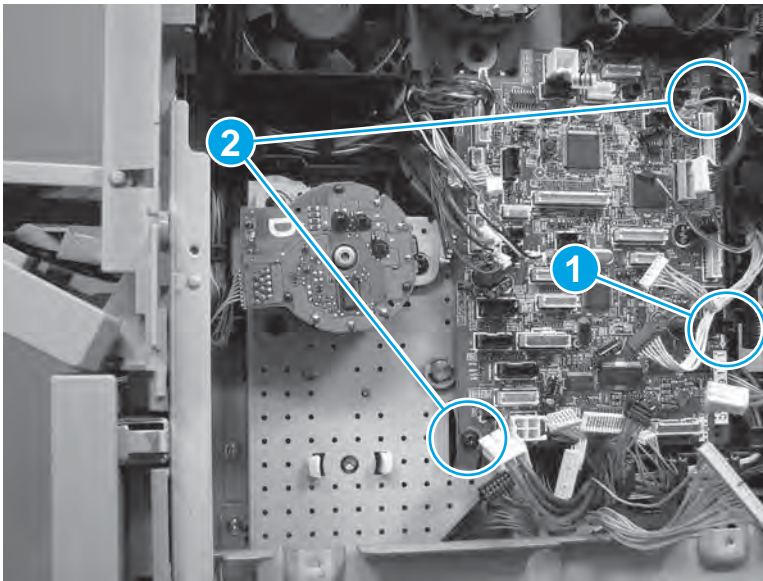
 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



## Step 7: Install the DC controller

1. Position the DC controller on the product, engage one tab (callout 1), and then install two screws (callout 2).

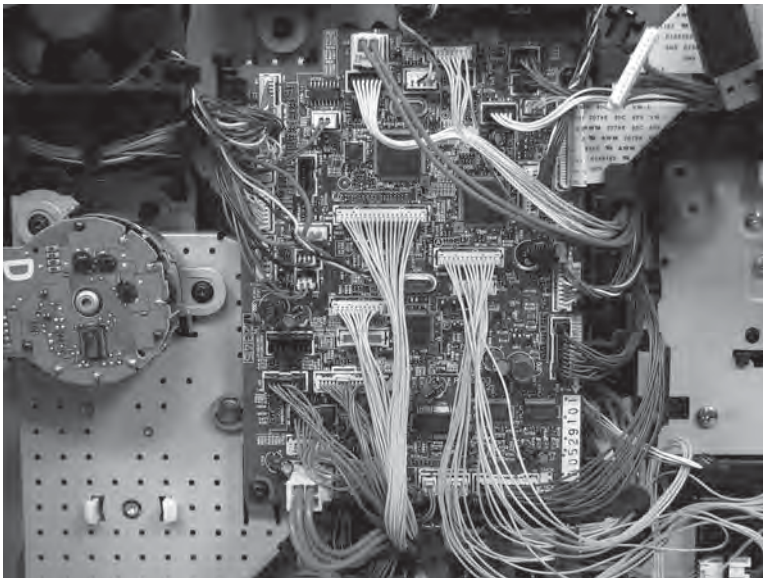
**Figure 1-600** Install the DC controller



2. Connect all of the connectors on the DC controller.
  - 34 wire-harness connectors
  - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

 **Reinstallation tip:** Connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

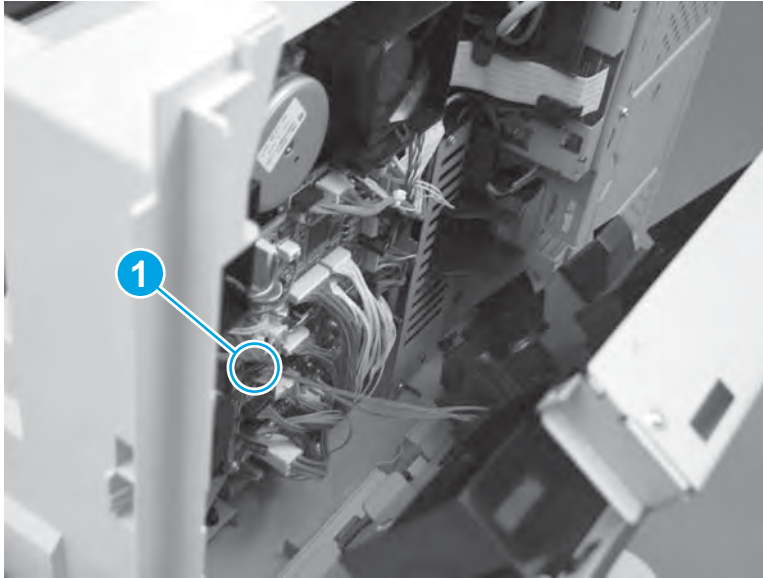
**Figure 1-601** Connect all of the connectors



## Step 8: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

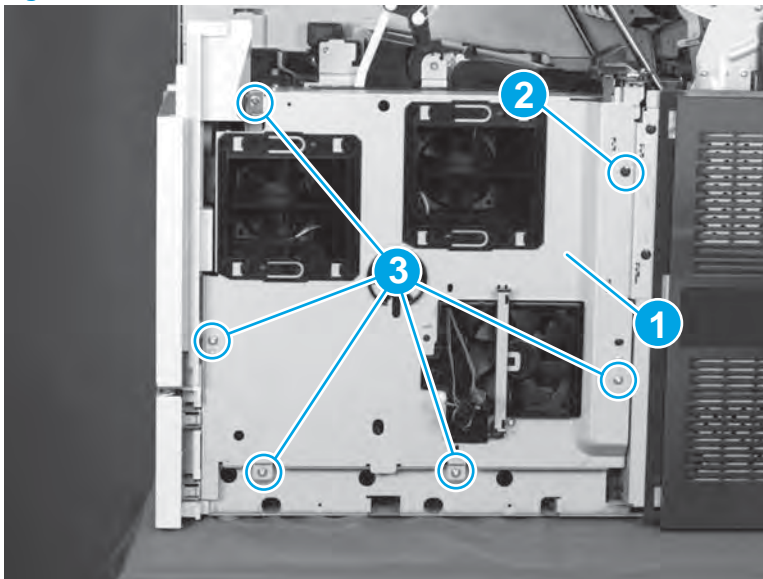
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

**Figure 1-602** Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

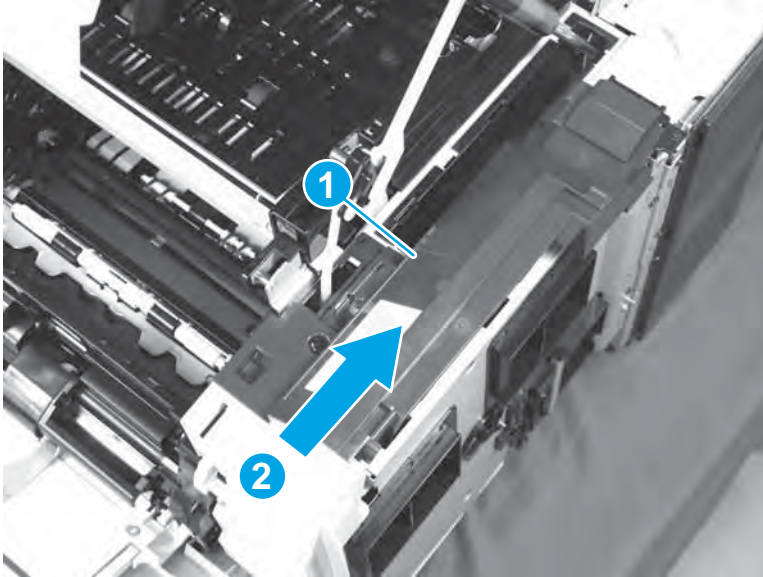
**Figure 1-603** Remove six screws



## Step 9: Install the rear-top cover

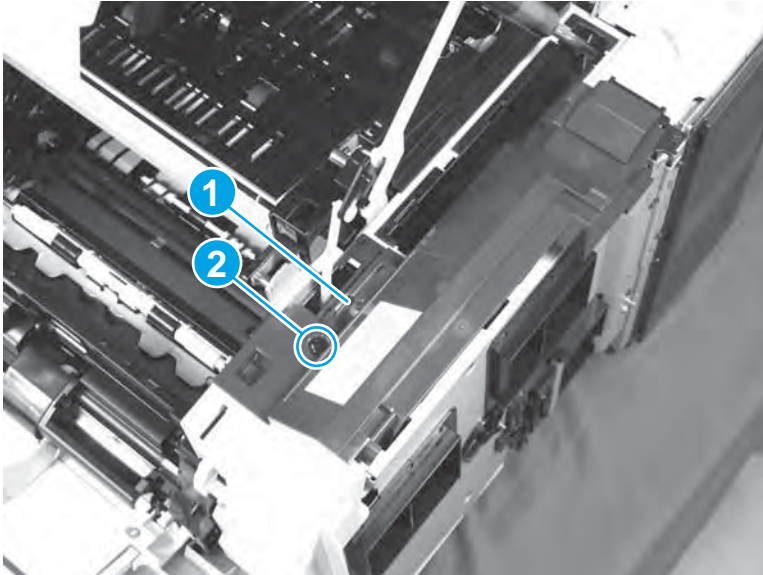
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

**Figure 1-604** Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

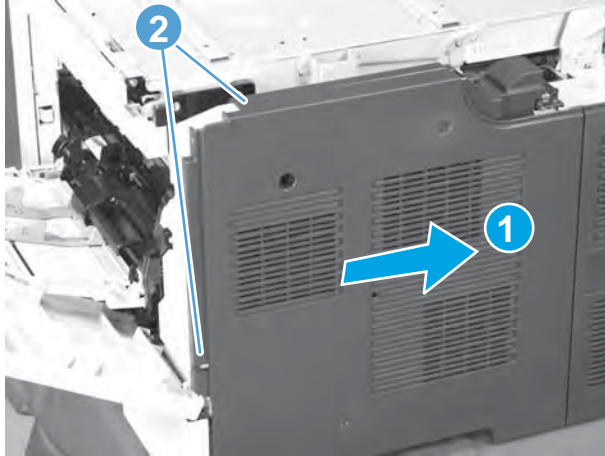
**Figure 1-605** Install one screw



### Step 10: Install the rear-right cover

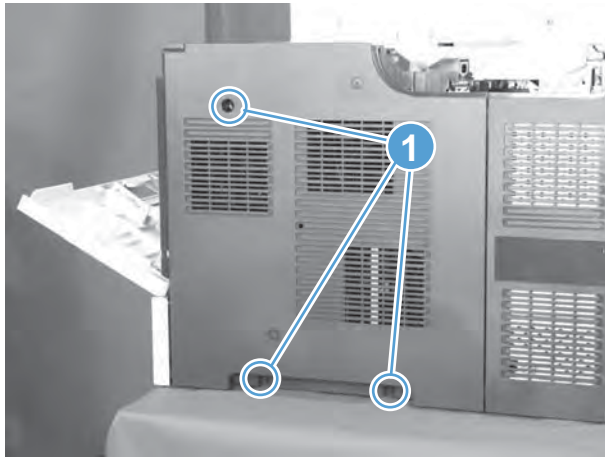
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

**Figure 1-606** Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

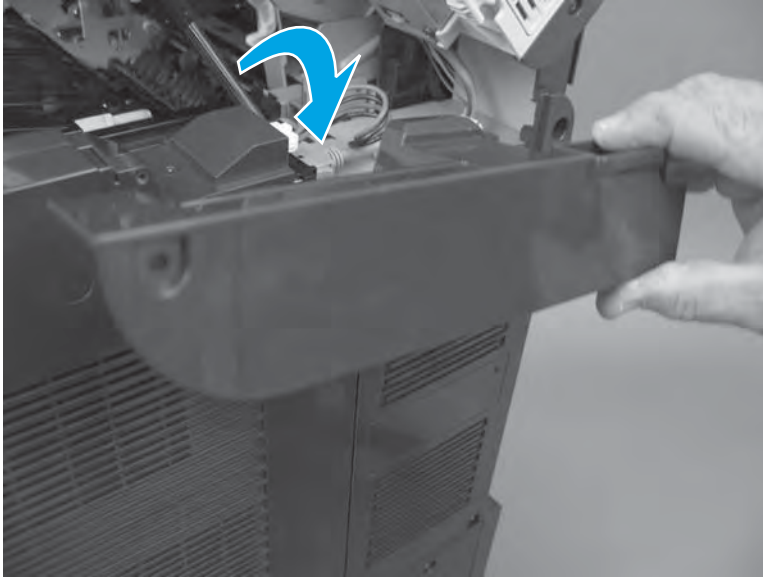
**Figure 1-607** Install three screws



### **Step 11: Install the image scanner cable cover**

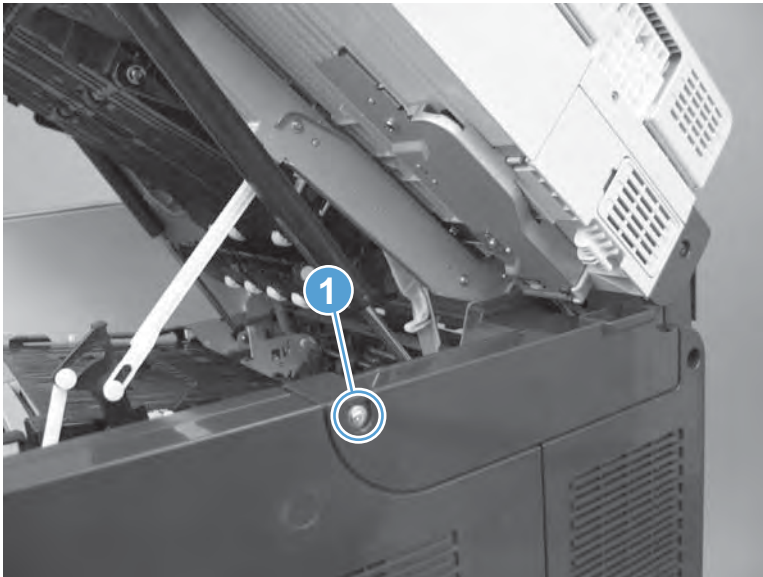
1. Install the cover on the product.

**Figure 1-608** Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

**Figure 1-609** Install one screw



## Step 12: Turn the product power on

### After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

### Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling)



## Tray 1 pickup assembly

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 5: Remove the right-lower door](#)
- [Step 6: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 7: Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly](#)
- [Step 8: Unpack the replacement Tray 1 pickup assembly](#)
- [Step 9: Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly](#)
- [Step 10: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 11: Install the right-lower door](#)
- [Step 12: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 13: Install the Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Step 14: Install the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 15: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 16: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the Tray 1 pickup assembly.

### Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

Tray 1 pickup assembly part number	
RM2-5822-000CN	Tray 1 pickup assembly

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

**⚠ WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

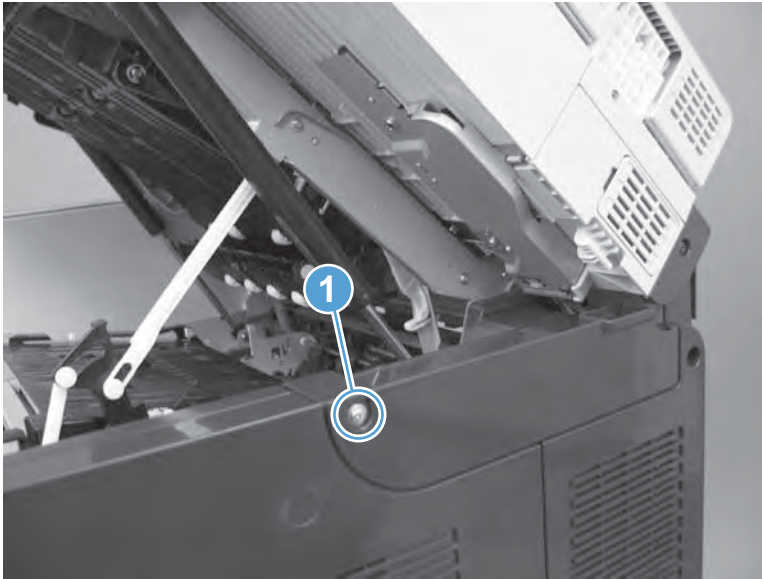
## Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

## Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover

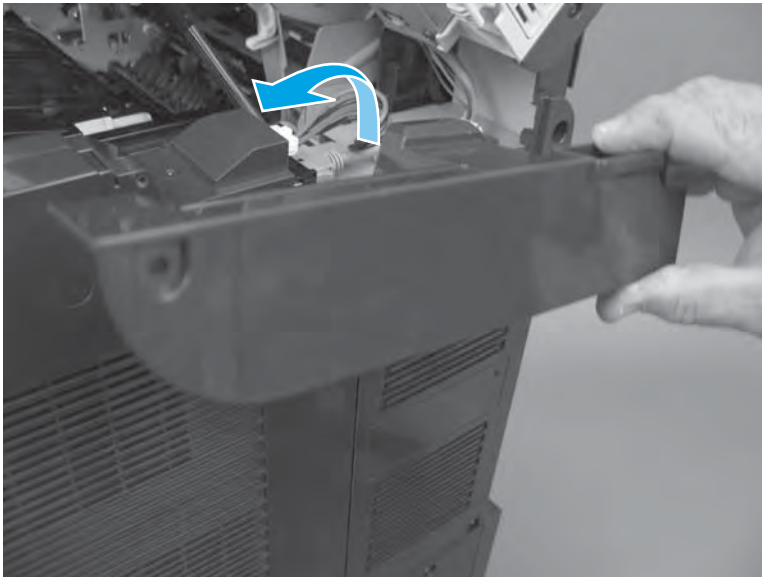
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-610** Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

**Figure 1-611** Remove the cover



## Step 2: Remove the rear-top cover

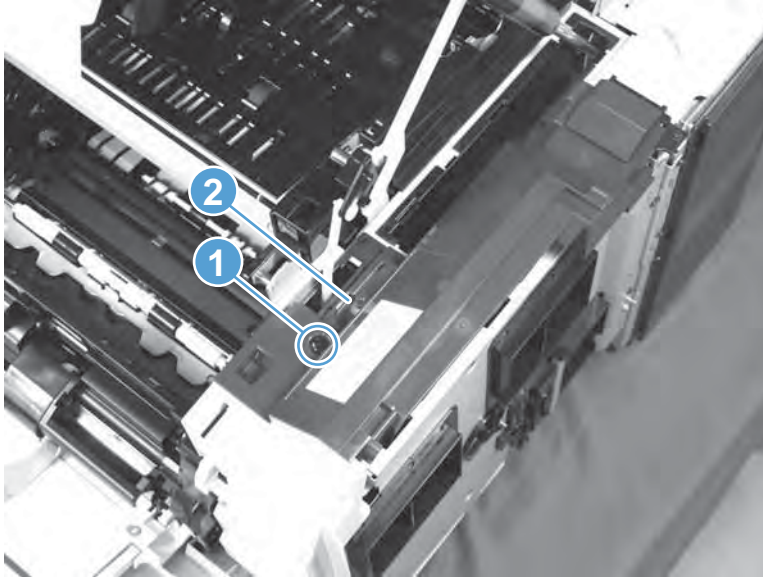
---

 **NOTE:** If the top cover is closed, open it now.

---

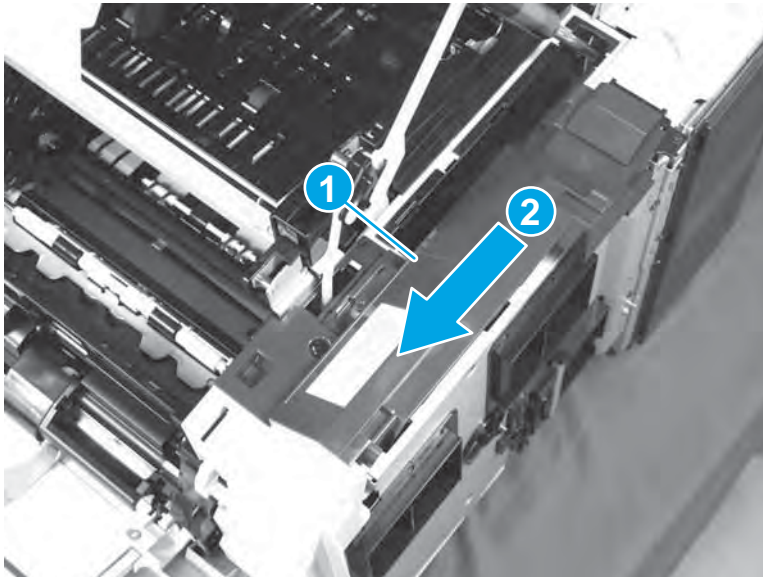
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

**Figure 1-612** Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

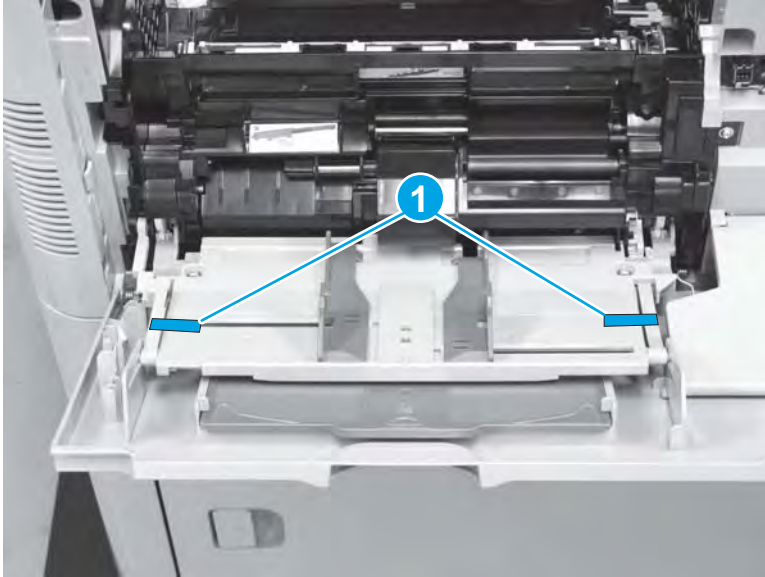
**Figure 1-613** Remove the cover



### **Step 3: Remove the Tray 1 cover**

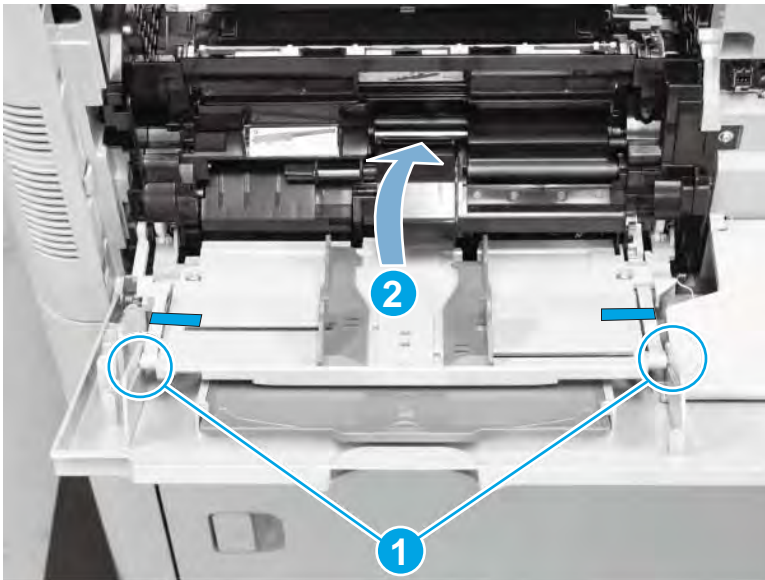
1. Use low adhesive tape to secure the outer retaining pins (callout 1) to the inner tray.

**Figure 1-614** Secure the outer retaining pins



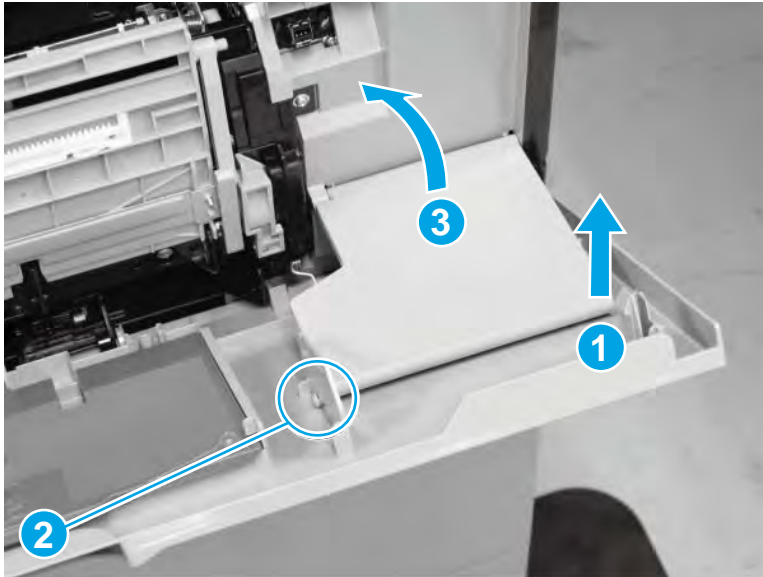
2. Open Tray 1, release the two outer retaining pins (callout 1) on the cover, and then carefully fold the inner tray up (callout 2) and into the product to protect it.

**Figure 1-615** Release two outer retaining pins



- Carefully lift on the outer corner of the tray inner cover (callout 1) to release one pin (callout 2) from the guide, and then fold the inner cover up (callout 3) and into the product.

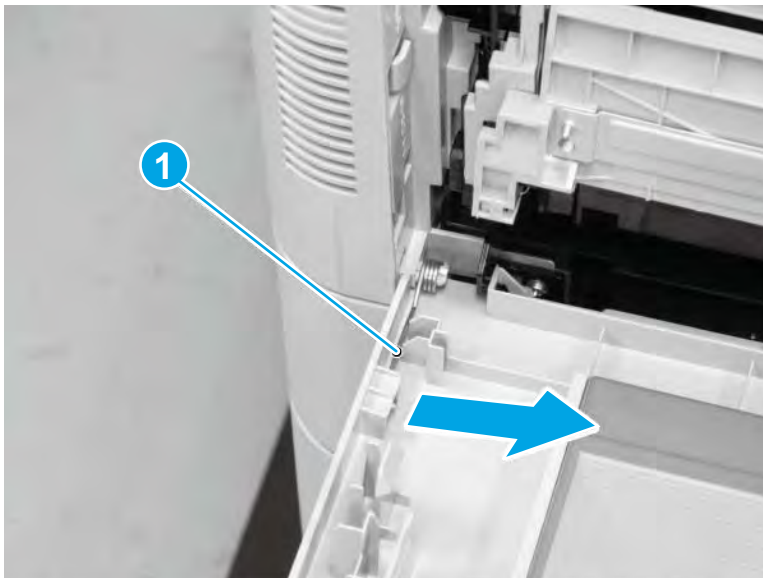
**Figure 1-616** Release one pin



- Release the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

**⚠ CAUTION:** The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

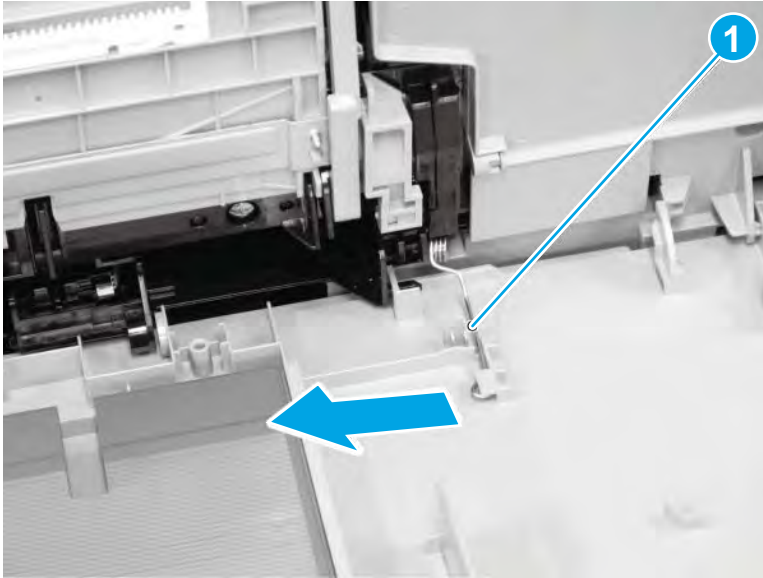
**Figure 1-617** Release the left-side spring



5. Release the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

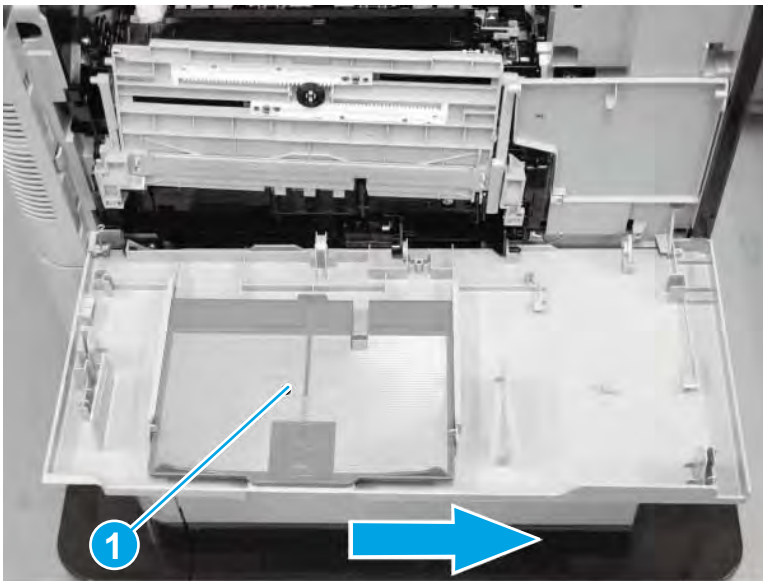
**⚠ CAUTION:** The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

**Figure 1-618** Release the right-side spring



6. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the back of the product to release it, and then remove the cover.

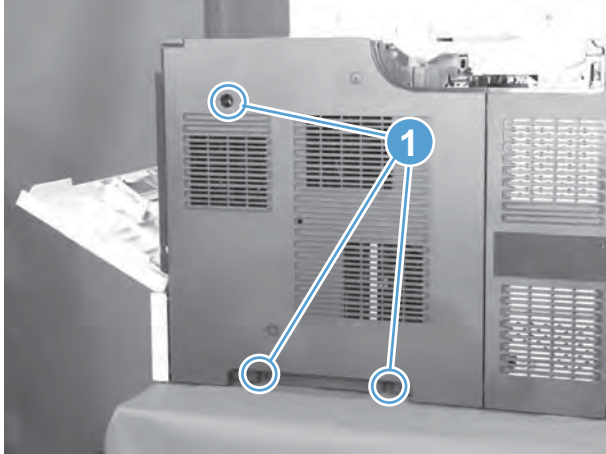
**Figure 1-619** Remove the cover



#### Step 4: Remove the rear-right cover

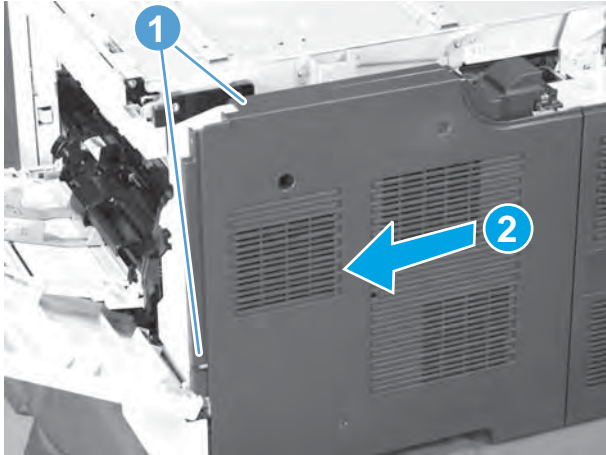
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-620** Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

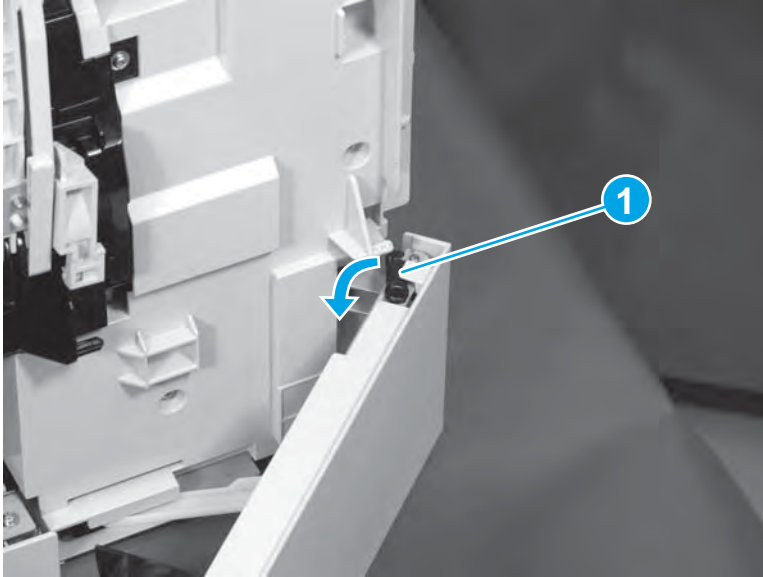
**Figure 1-621** Remove the cover



### **Step 5: Remove the right-lower door**

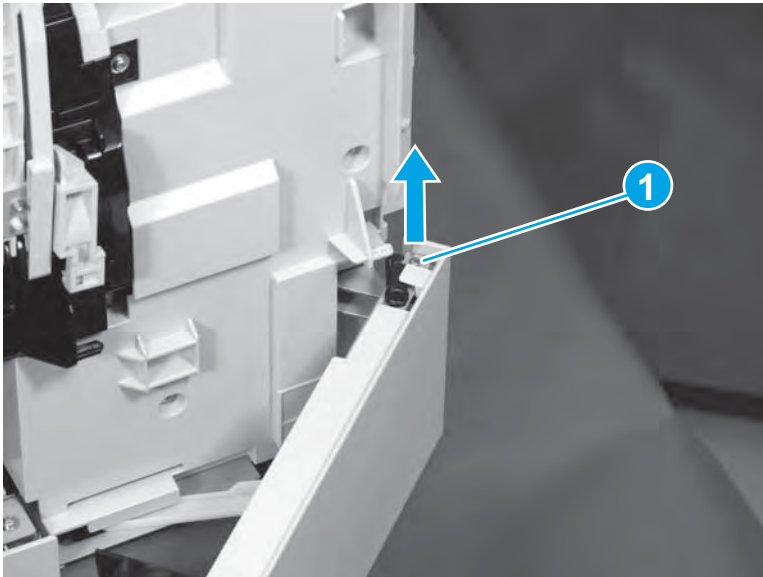
1. Open the right-lower door, and then rotate the stopper (callout 1) to release it.

**Figure 1-622** Rotate the stopper



2. Support the door, and then remove the shaft (callout 1).

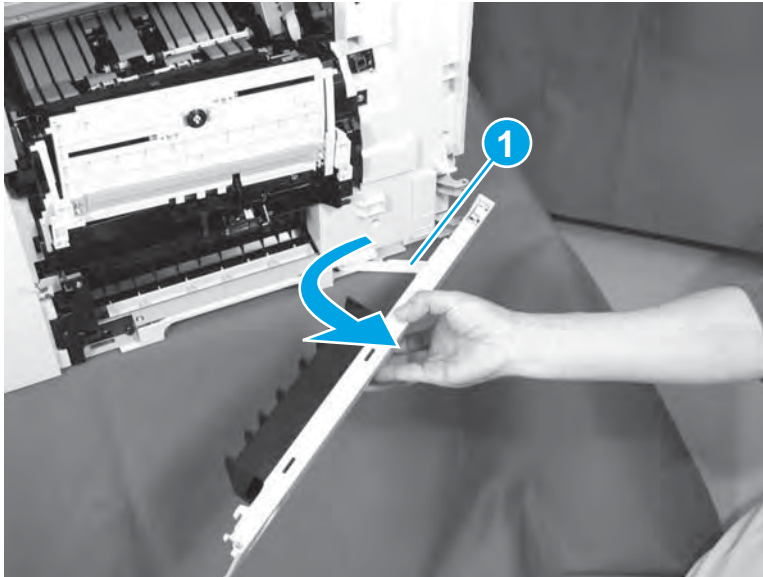
**Figure 1-623** Remove the shaft





3. Release the door-retainer arm (callout 1) by sliding it toward the front of the product, and then remove the door.

**Figure 1-624** Remove the door

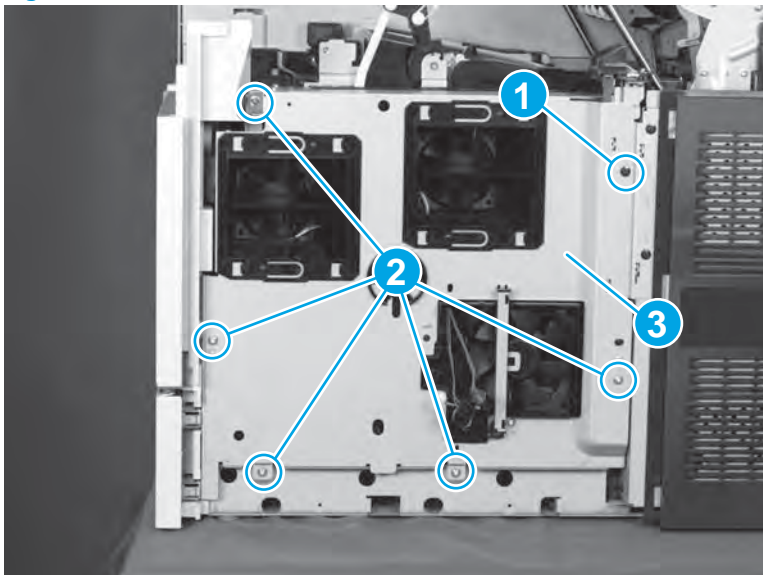


### Step 6: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

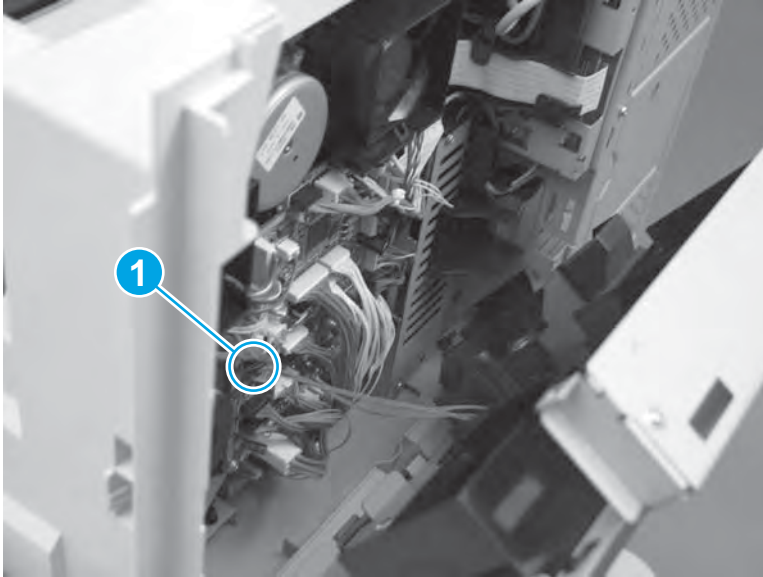
**CAUTION:** The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

**Figure 1-625** Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

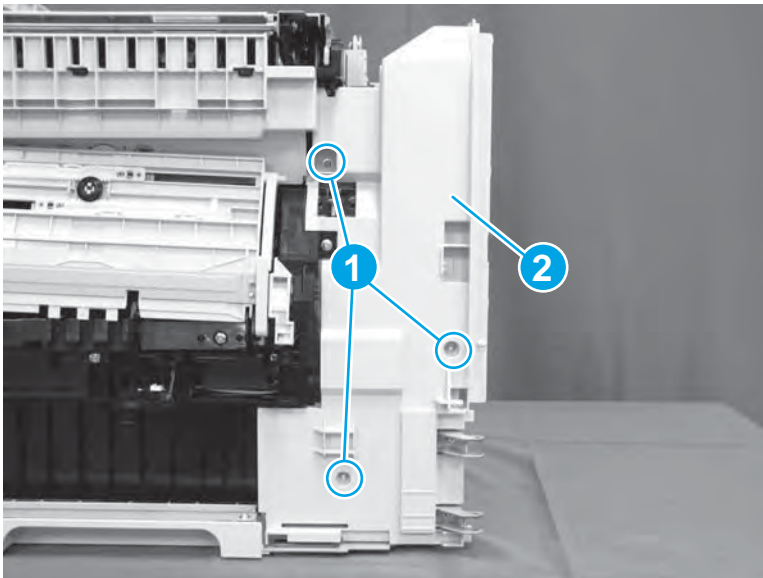
**Figure 1-626** Disconnect one connector and remove the shield




### Step 7: Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly

1. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the Tray 1 gear cover (callout 2).

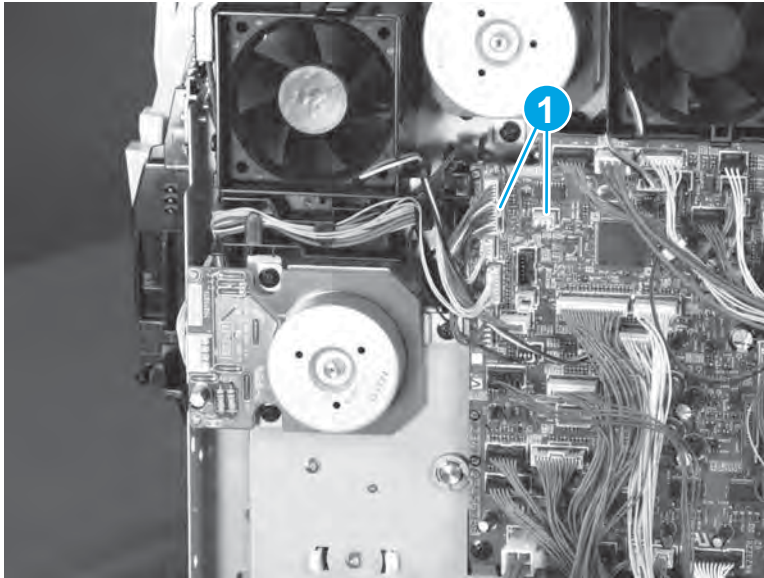
**Figure 1-627** Remove three screws and the Tray 1 gear cover



2. Disconnect two connectors (J71 and J81; callout 1).

 **NOTE:** The feed motor is shown installed in the figure below, but it has been removed earlier in this procedure.

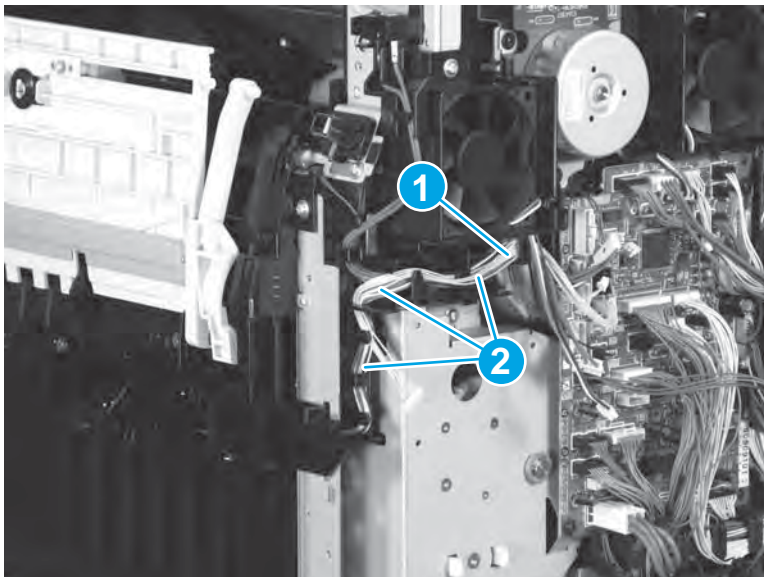
**Figure 1-628** Disconnect two connectors



3. Release the wire harnesses (callout 1) from the guide (callout 2).

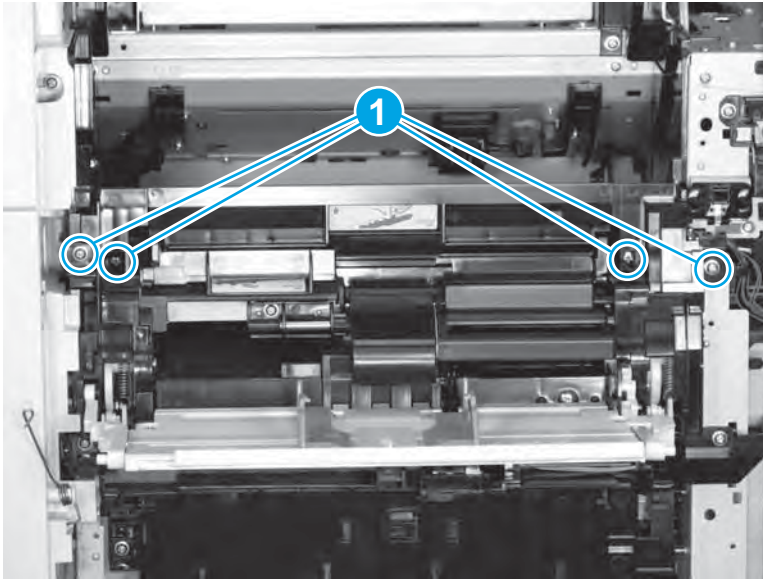
 **NOTE:** The feed motor is shown removed in the figure below, but it does not need to be removed.

**Figure 1-629** Release the wire harnesses



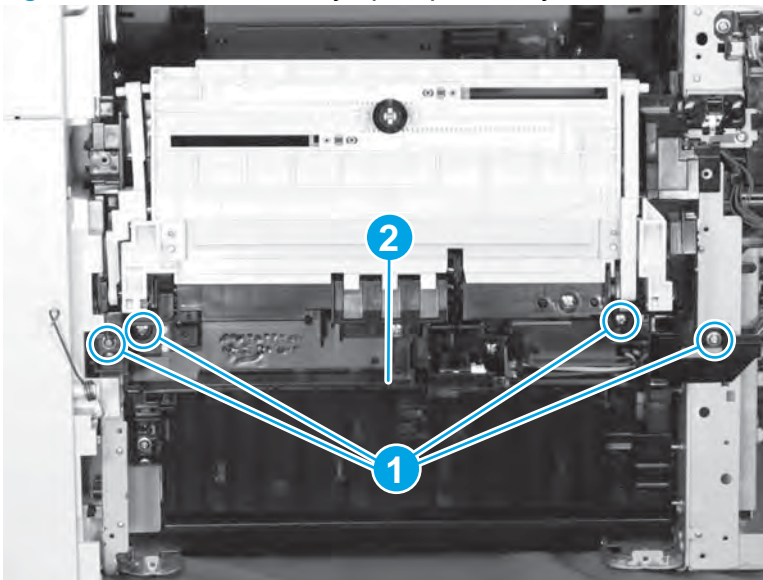
4. Remove four screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-630** Remove four screws



5. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly (callout 2).

**Figure 1-631** Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly



### Step 8: Unpack the replacement Tray 1 pickup assembly

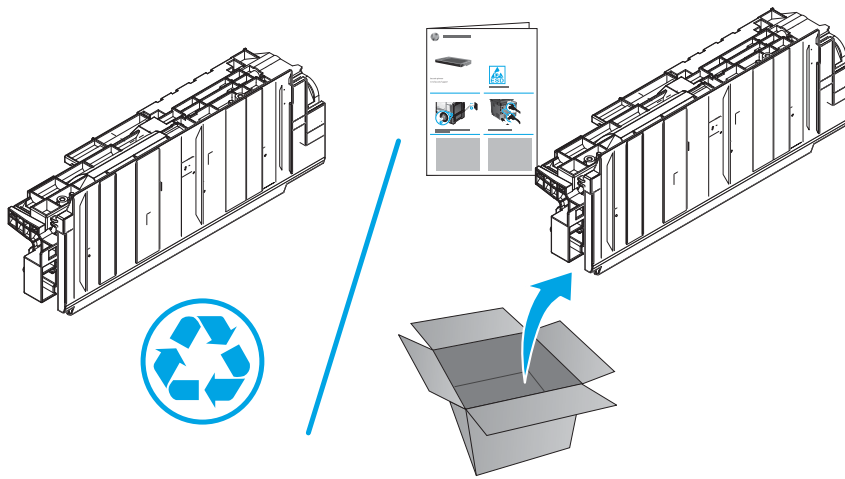
Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

---

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

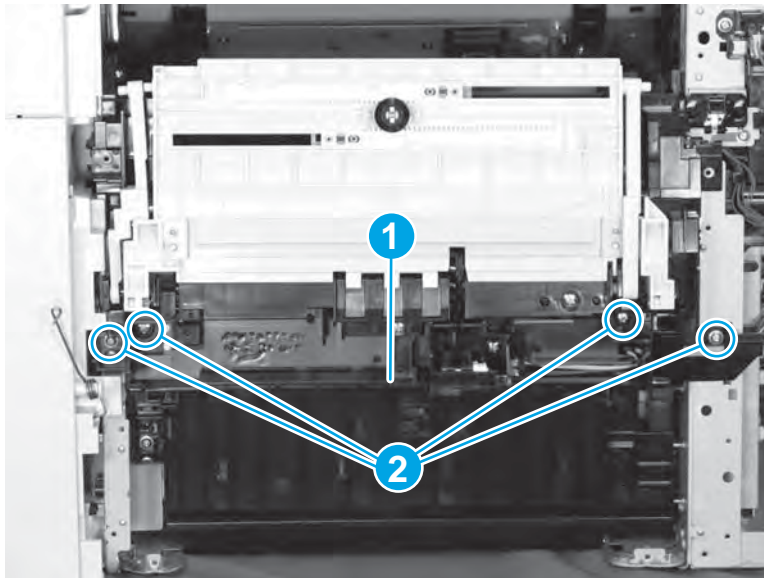
---



### Step 9: Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly

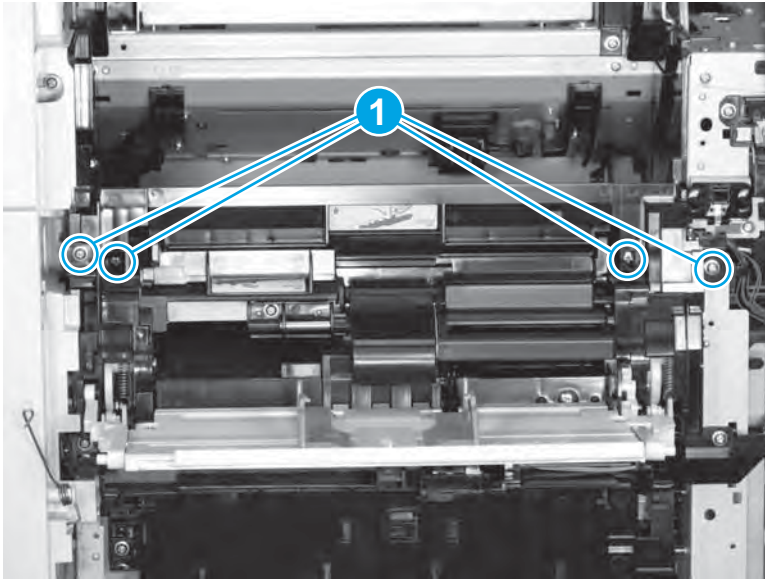
1. Position the Tray 1 pickup assembly (callout 1) on the product, and then install four screws (callout 2).

**Figure 1-632** Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly



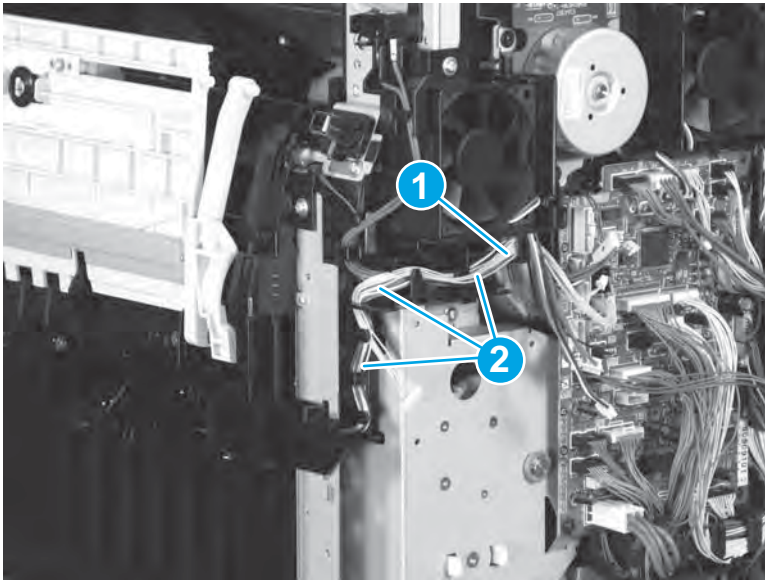
2. Install four screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-633** Install four screws



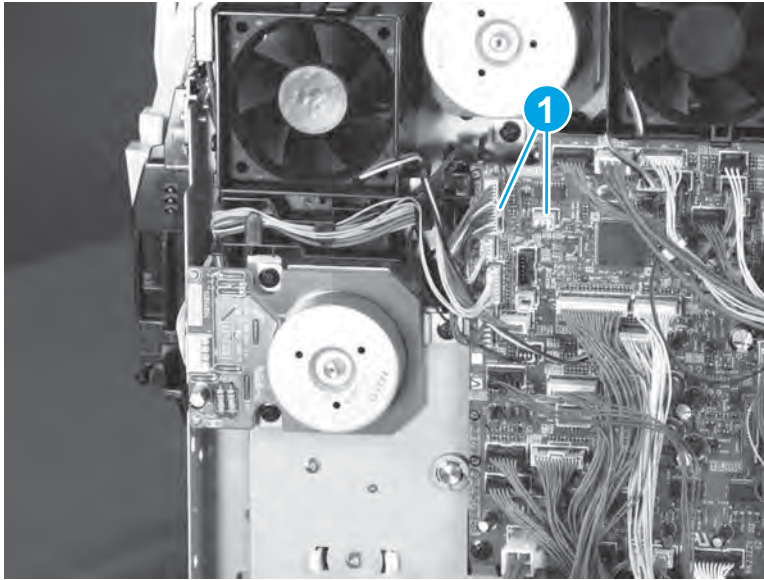
3. Install the wire harnesses (callout 1) in the guide (callout 2).

**Figure 1-634** Install the wire harnesses in the guide



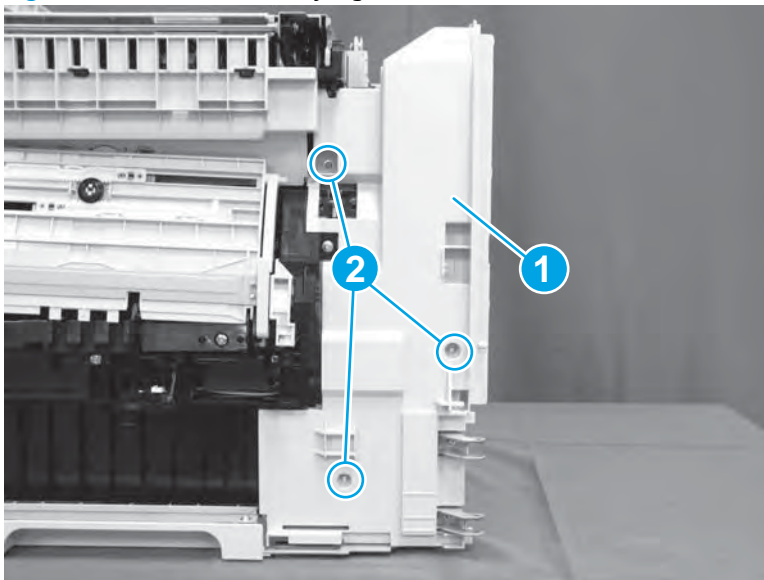
4. Connect two connectors (J71 and J81; callout 1).

**Figure 1-635** Connect two connectors



5. Position the Tray 1 gear cover (callout 1) on the product, and then install three screws (callout 2).

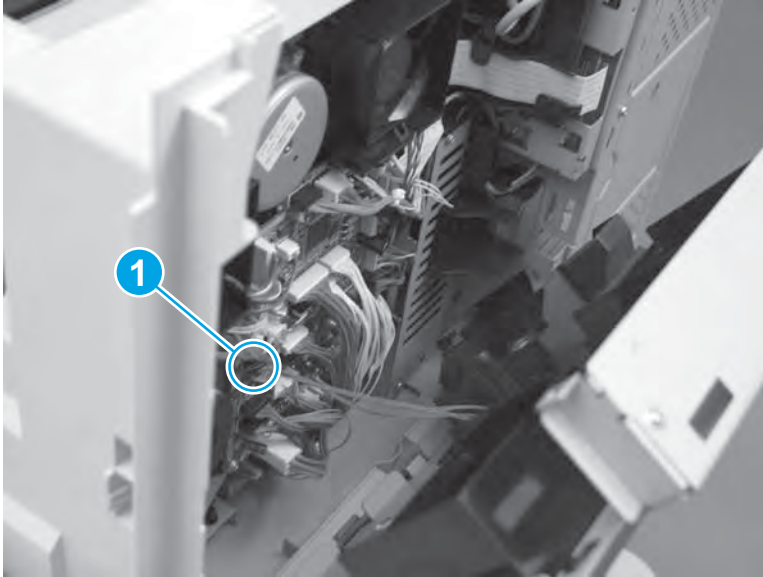
**Figure 1-636** Install the Tray 1 gear cover



### **Step 10: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly**

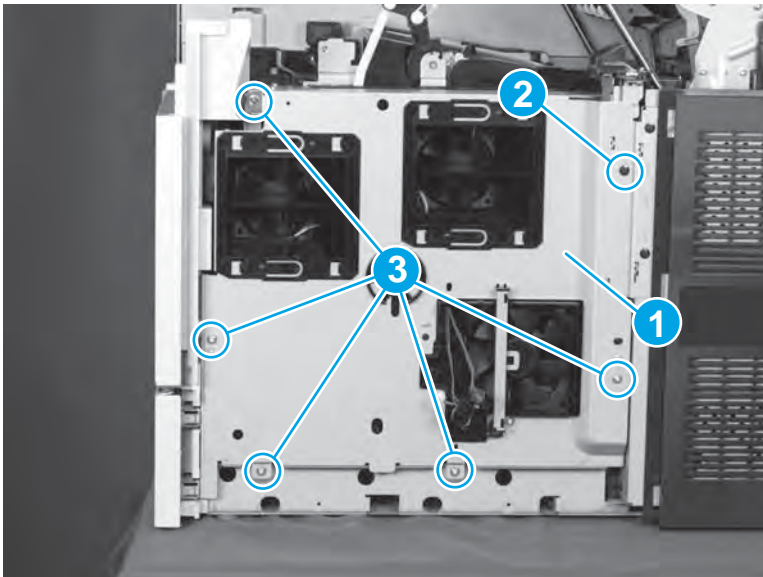
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

**Figure 1-637** Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

**Figure 1-638** Remove six screws

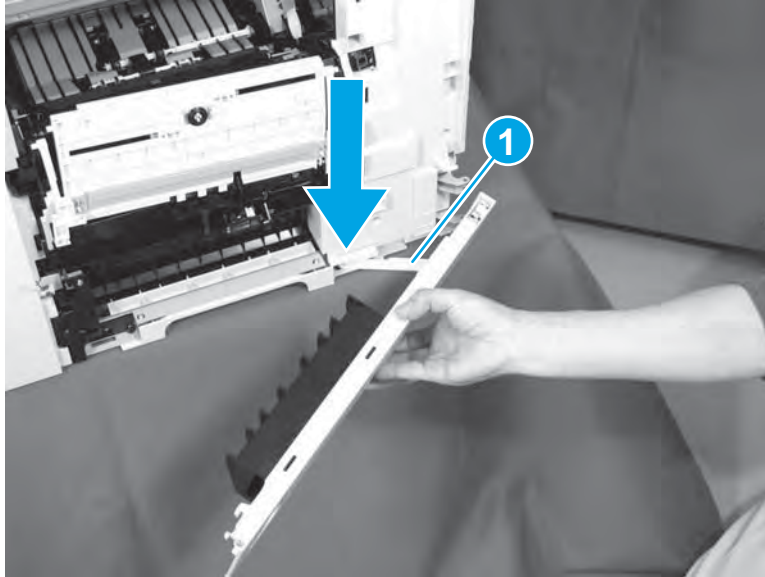


### Step 11: Install the right-lower door

1. Install the door-retainer arm (callout 1) in the slot, and then position the right edge of the door on the product.

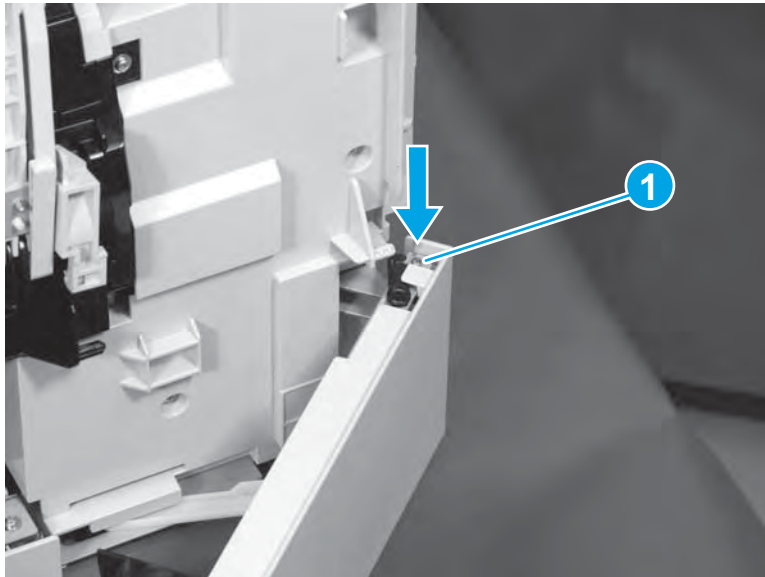


**Figure 1-639** Install the door



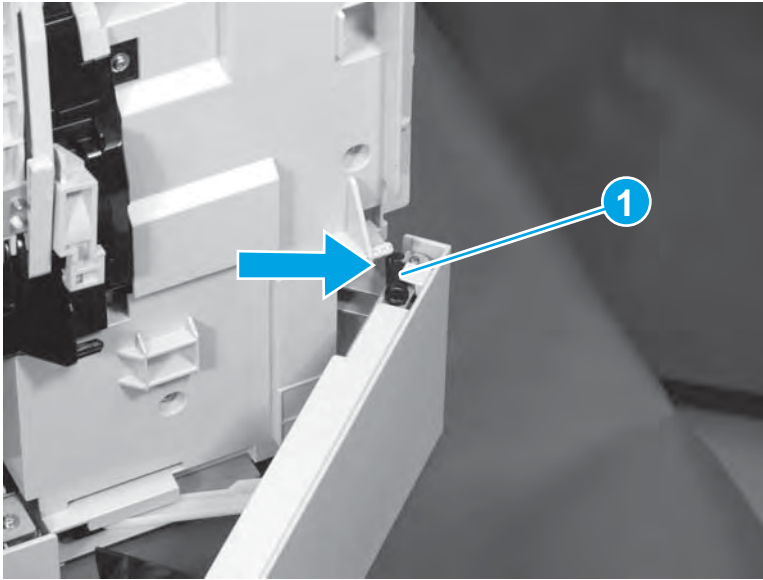
2. Install the shaft (callout 1).

**Figure 1-640** Install the shaft



3. Rotate the stopper (callout 1) to until it locks in place.

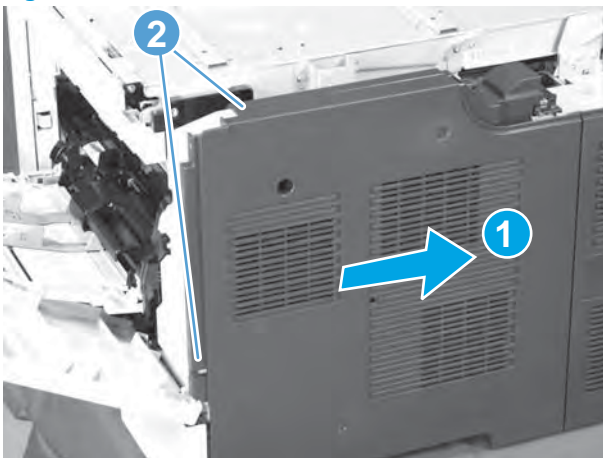
**Figure 1-641** Rotate the stopper



### Step 12: Install the rear-right cover

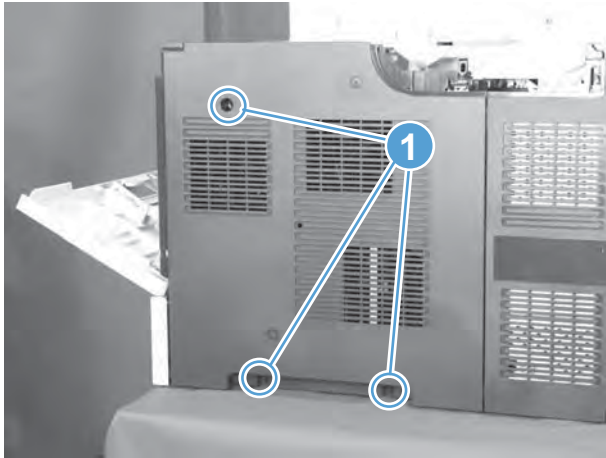
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

**Figure 1-642** Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

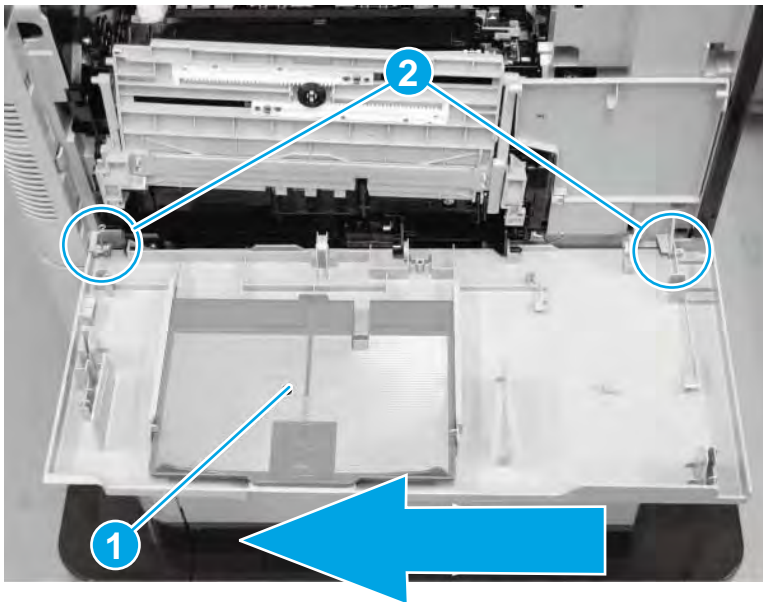
**Figure 1-643** Install three screws



### Step 13: Install the Tray 1 cover

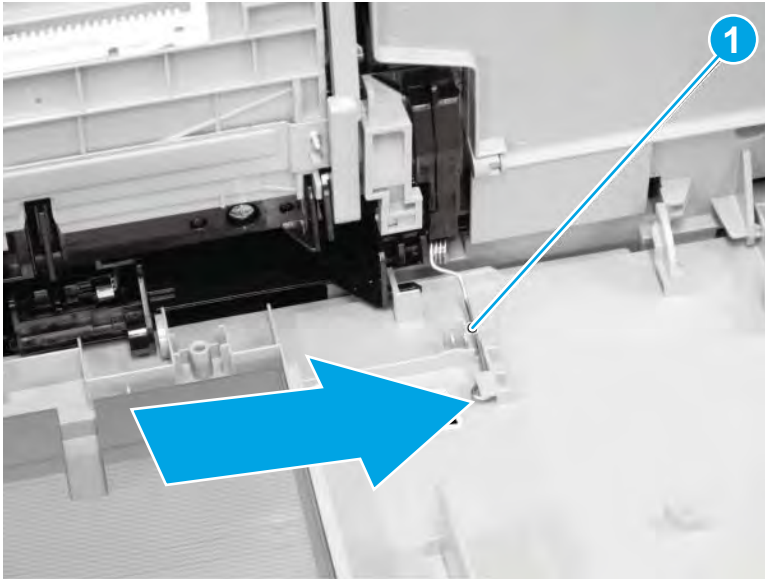
1. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the front of the product to install it on the hinge pins (callout 2).

**Figure 1-644** Install the cover



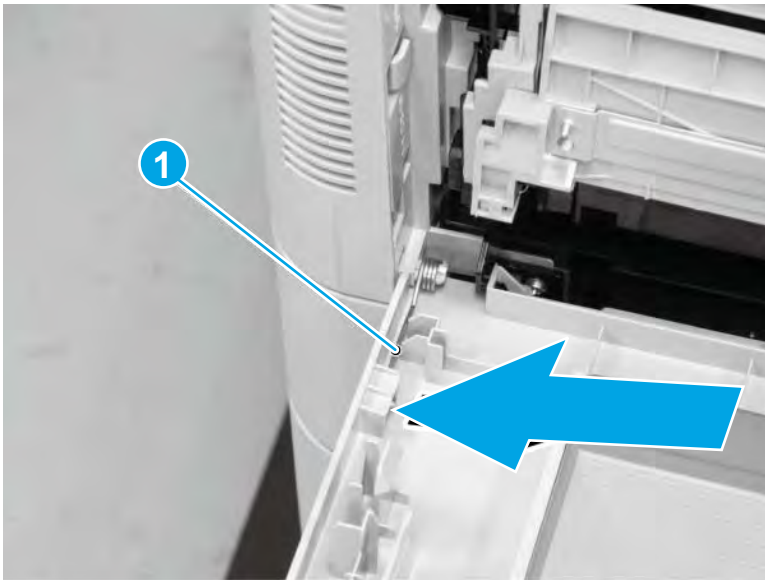
2. Engage the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

**Figure 1-645** Engage the right-side spring



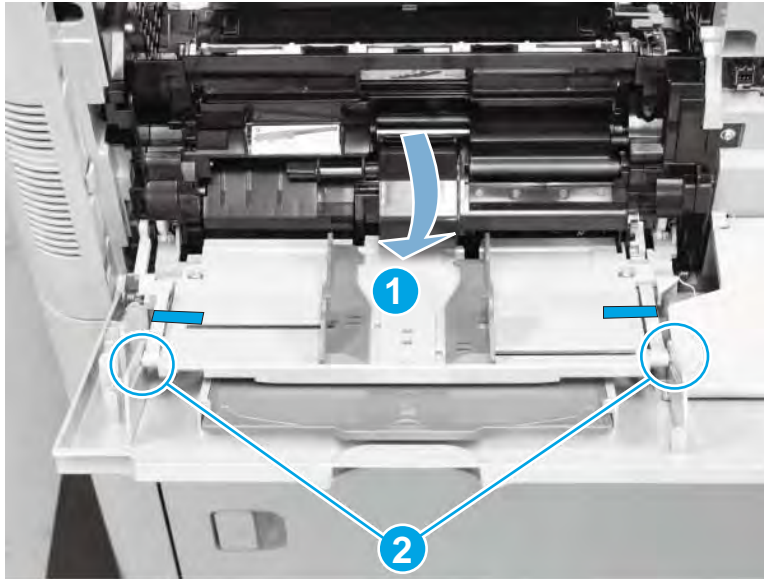
3. Engage the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

**Figure 1-646** Engage the left-side spring



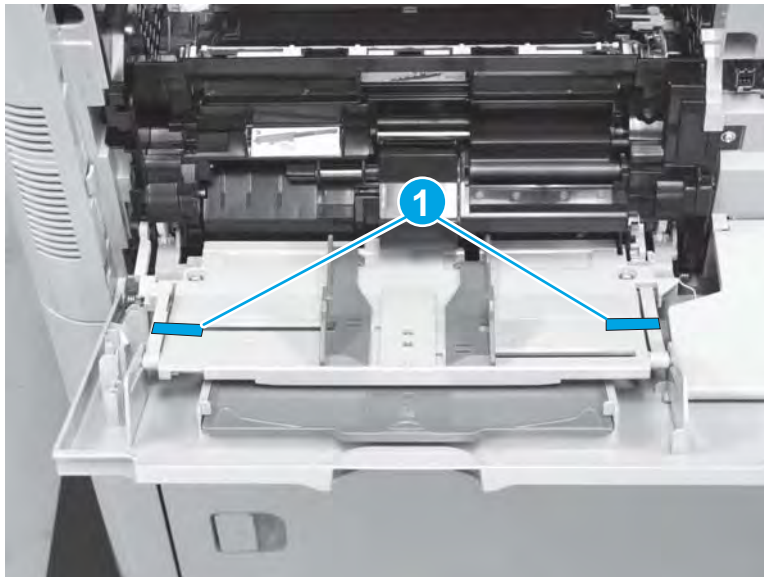
4. Lower the inner tray assembly (callout 1), and then engage the two outer retaining pins (callout 2) on the cover.

**Figure 1-647** Engage two outer retaining pins



5. Remove the low adhesive tape (callout 1), and then close the tray.

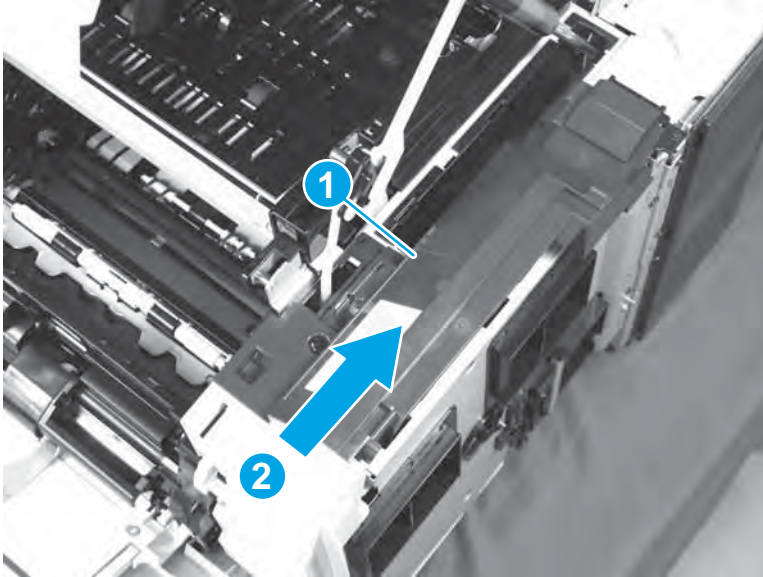
**Figure 1-648** Remove the low adhesive tape



## Step 14: Install the rear-top cover

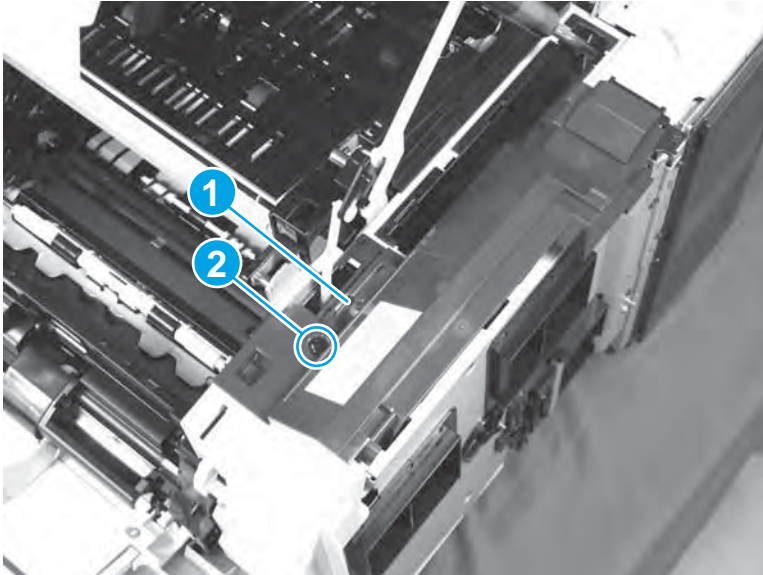
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

**Figure 1-649** Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

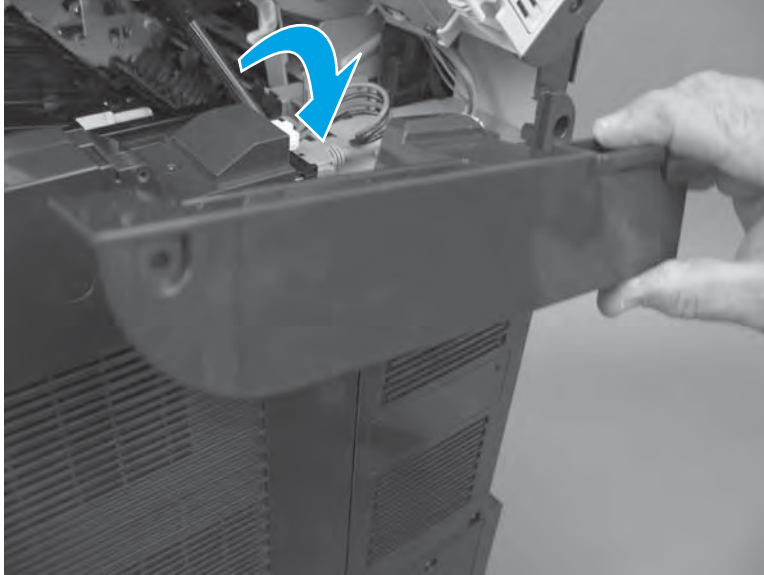
**Figure 1-650** Install one screw



### **Step 15: Install the image scanner cable cover**

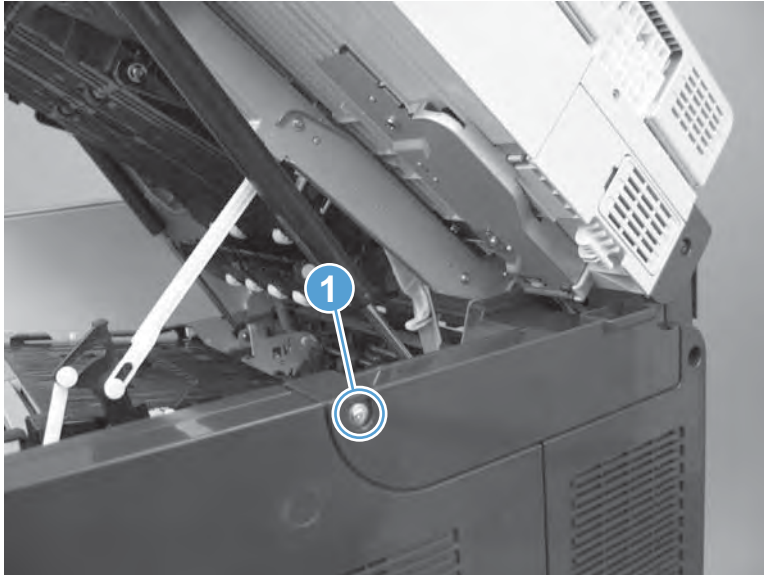
1. Install the cover on the product.

**Figure 1-651** Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

**Figure 1-652** Install one screw



## Step 16: Turn the product power on

### After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

### Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

## Interconnect board (ICB)

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the formatter](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 5: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 6: Remove the ICB](#)
- [Step 7: Unpack the replacement interconnect board](#)
- [Step 8: Install the ICB](#)
- [Step 9: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 10: Install the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 11: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 12: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 13: Install the formatter](#)
- [Step 14: Test the installation](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction


This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the interconnect board for the HP LaserJet Enterprise M630.

### Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct assembly part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the assembly.

Interconnect board part number	
B3G86-67904	Interconnect board



**CAUTION:**  This product contains components that can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). To reduce the chance of ESD damage, place the product on an ESD mat (if available), and wear an ESD wrist strap connected to a grounded surface. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis before touching an ESD-sensitive part.

### Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip



## Step 1: Remove the formatter

1. Do the following steps:

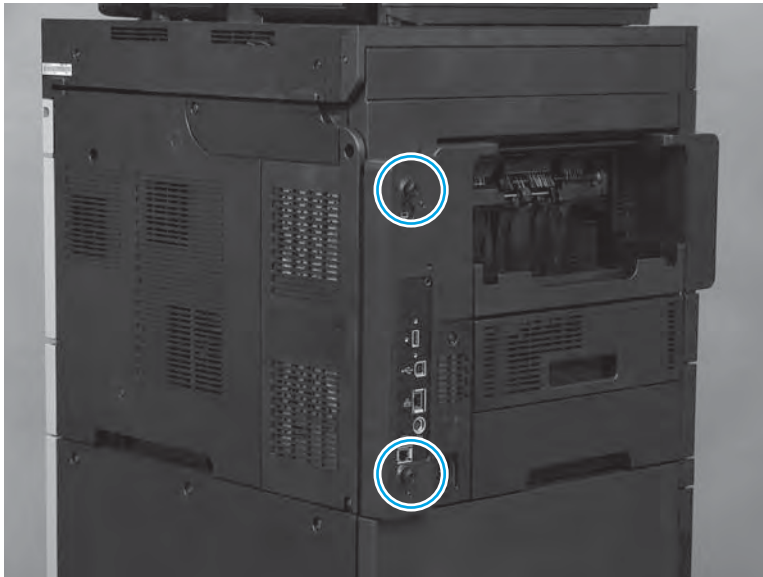
- a. Turn off the product.
- b. Disconnect the power cable.

**⚠ WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.

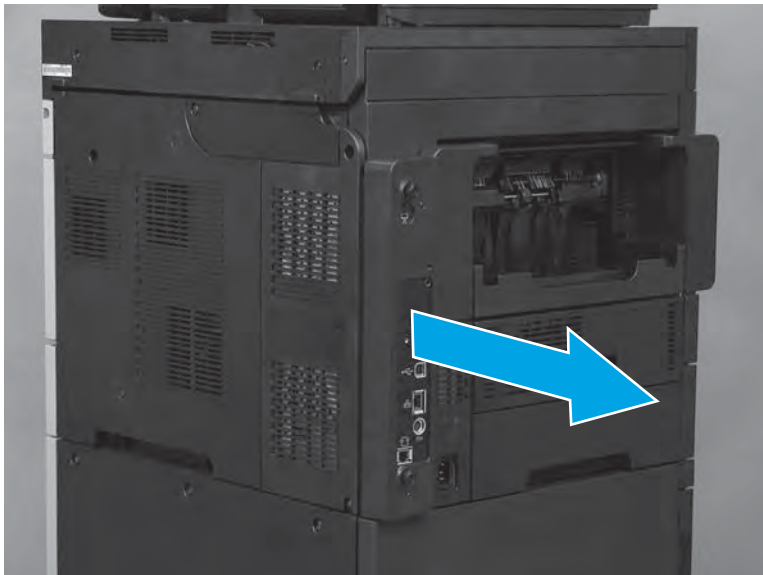
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

**Figure 1-653** Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

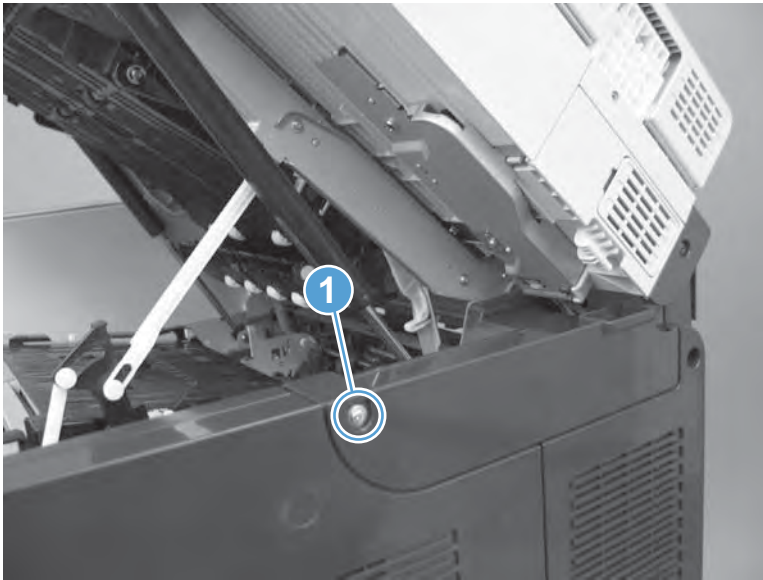
**Figure 1-654** Remove the formatter



## Step 2: Remove the image scanner cable cover

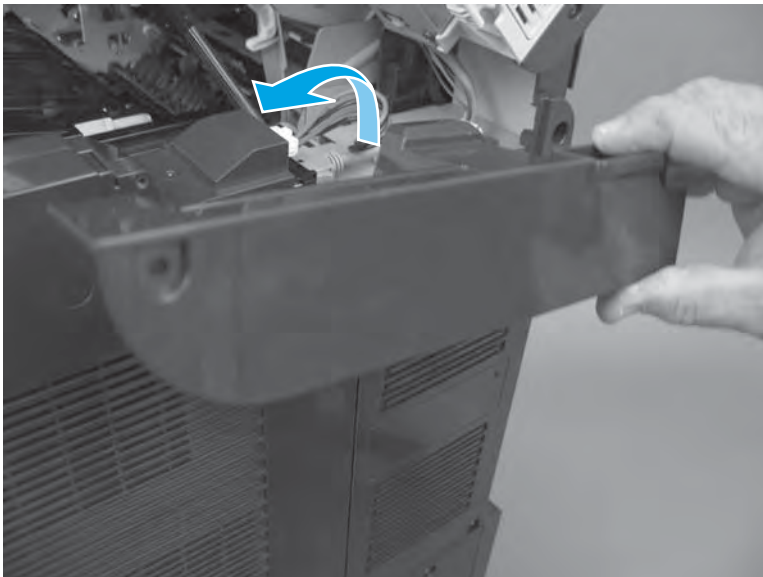
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-655** Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

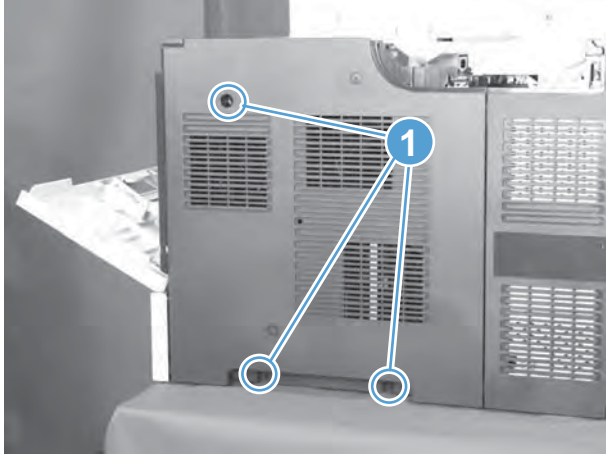
**Figure 1-656** Remove the cover



## Step 3: Remove the rear-right cover

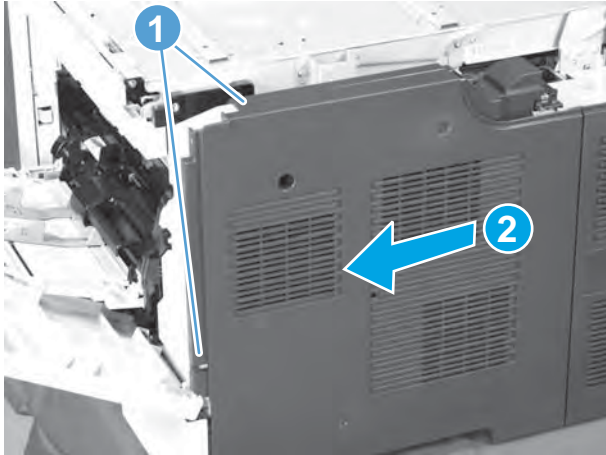
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-657** Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-658** Remove the cover



#### Step 4: Remove the rear-top cover

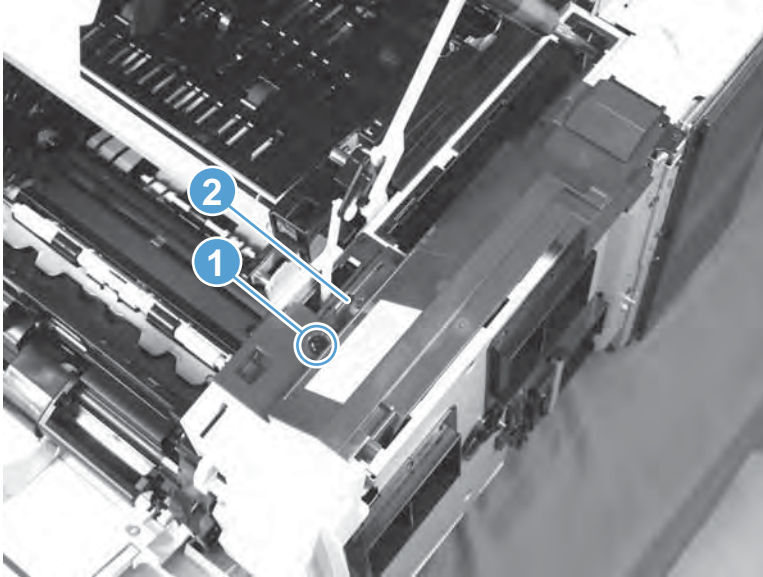
---

 **NOTE:** If the top cover is closed, open it now.

---

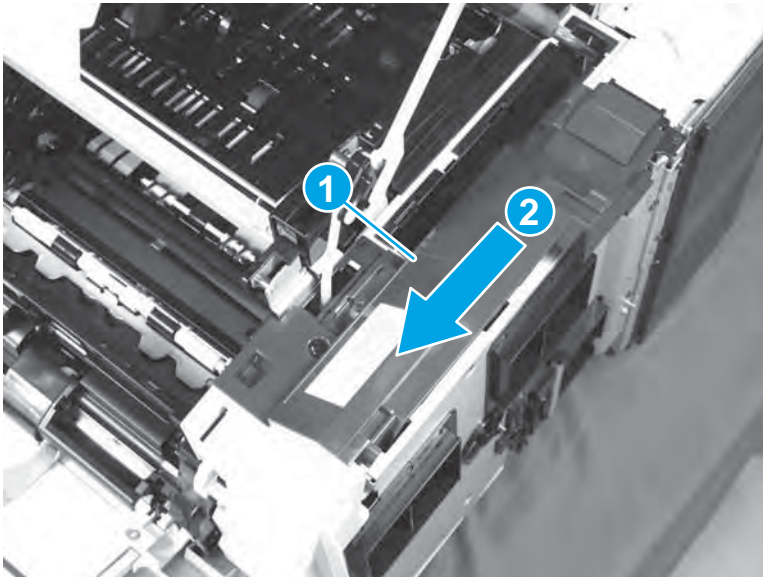
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

**Figure 1-659** Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-660** Remove the cover

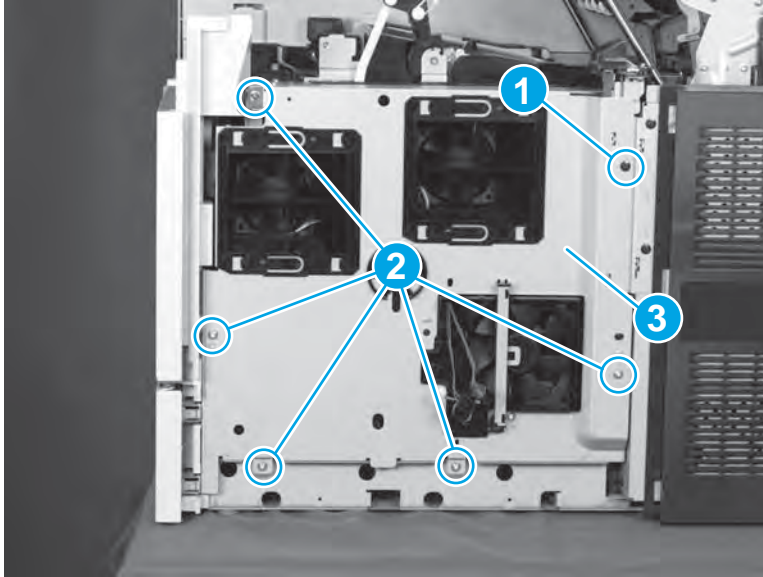


### Step 5: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

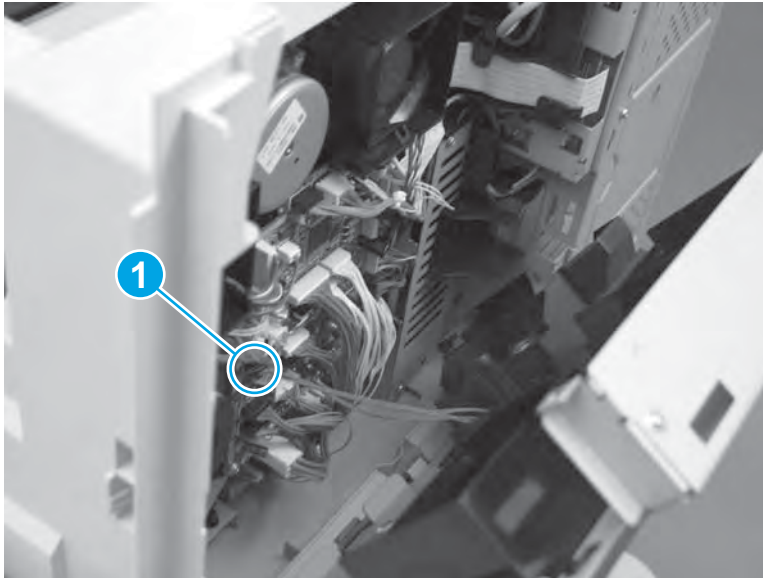
**CAUTION:** The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

**Figure 1-661** Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

**Figure 1-662** Disconnect one connector and remove the shield

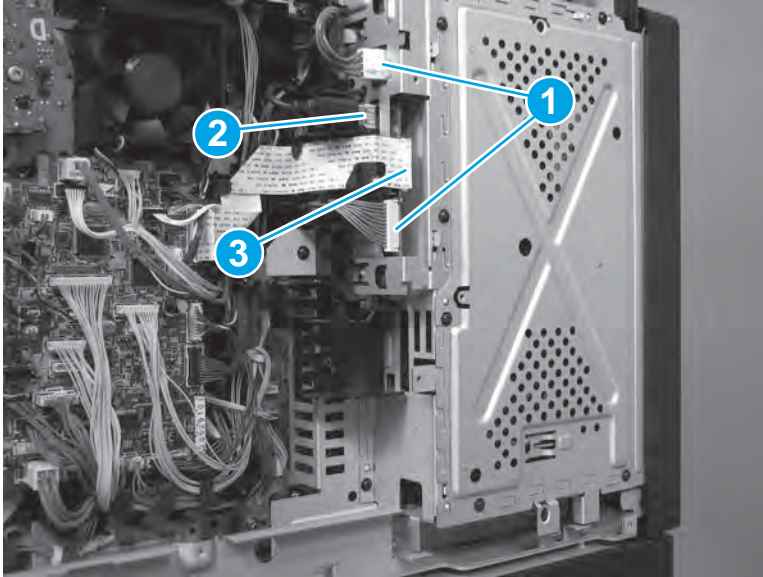


## Step 6: Remove the ICB


 ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), one USB connector (callout 2), and then disconnect one FFC (callout 3).

**Figure 1-663** Disconnect four connectors

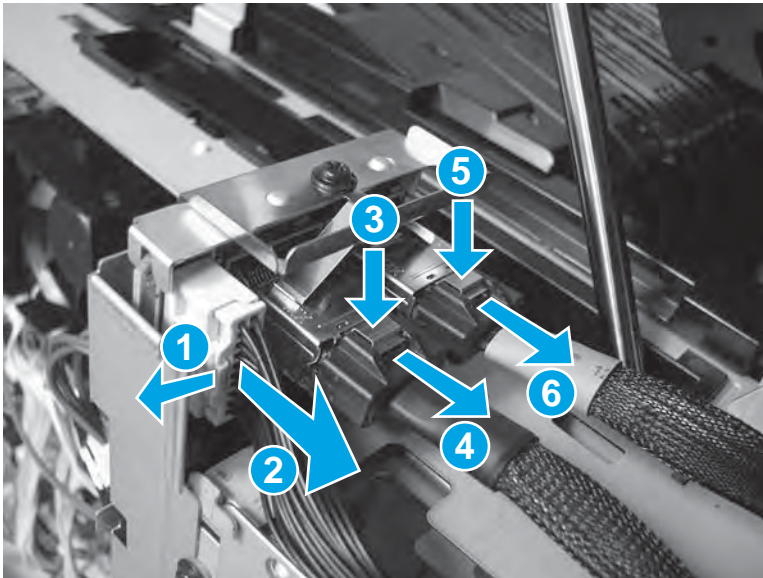


2. Use a small flat-blade screw driver to release three connectors.

 **TIP:** When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callouts 3/4/5/6) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

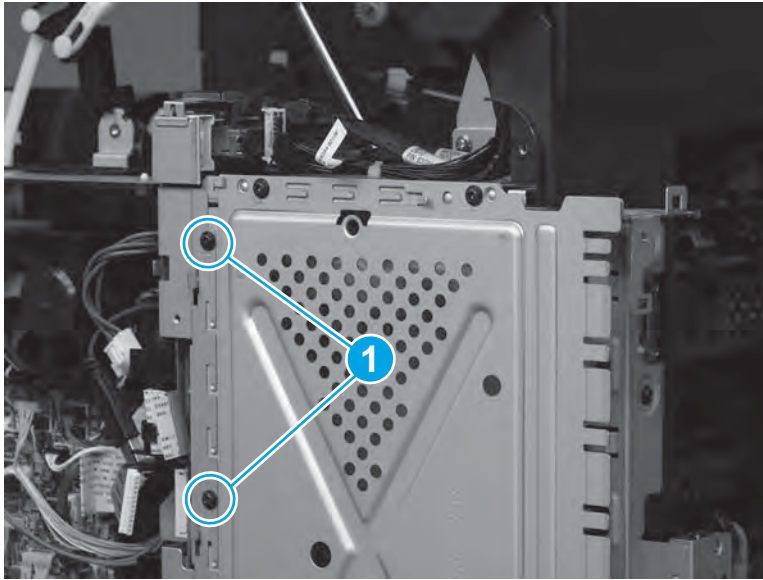
The wire harness with the blue band (callouts 5/6) connects to the inner connector on the ICB when reinstalled.

**Figure 1-664** Disconnect three connectors



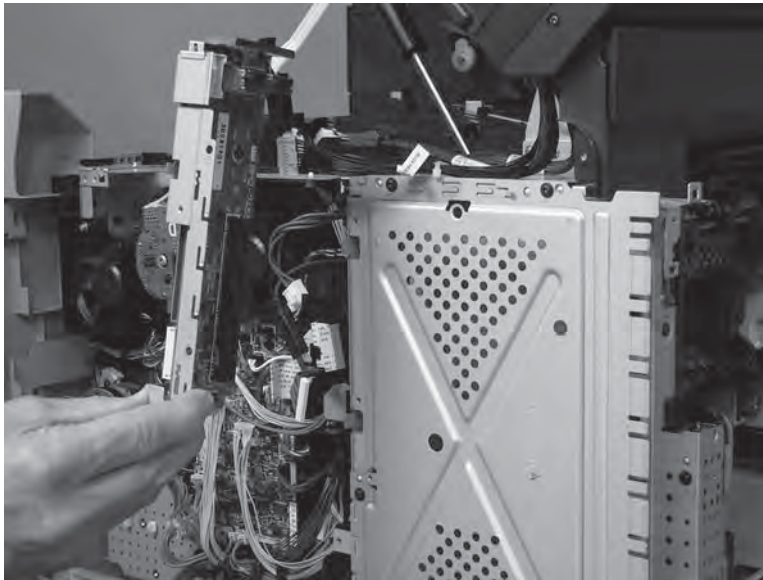
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-665** Remove two screws



4. Remove the ICB.

**Figure 1-666** Remove the ICB



### Step 7: Unpack the replacement interconnect board

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

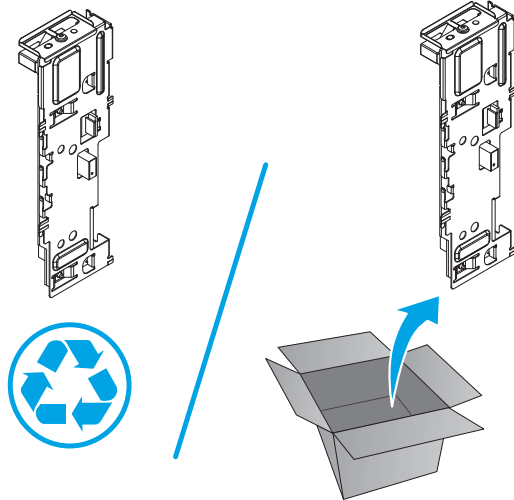
[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

---

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the assembly.

---

**Figure 1-667** Recycle and unpack

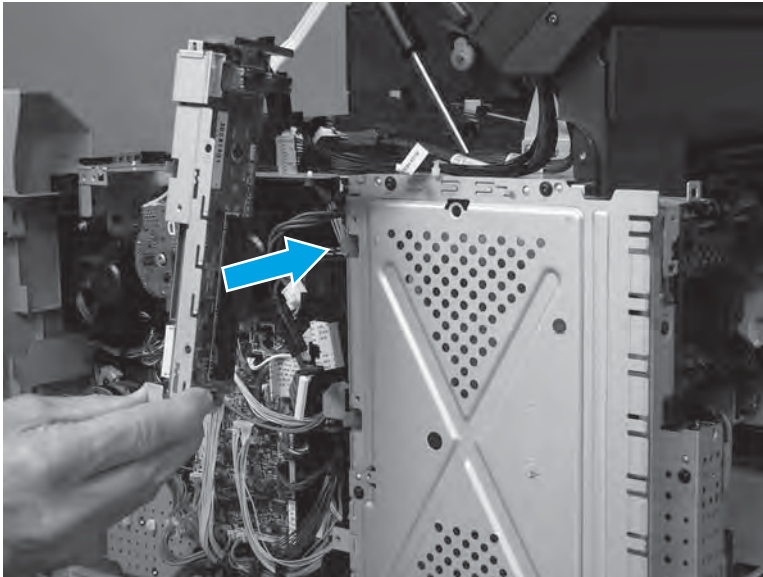


## Step 8: Install the ICB

 ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Install the ICB on the product.

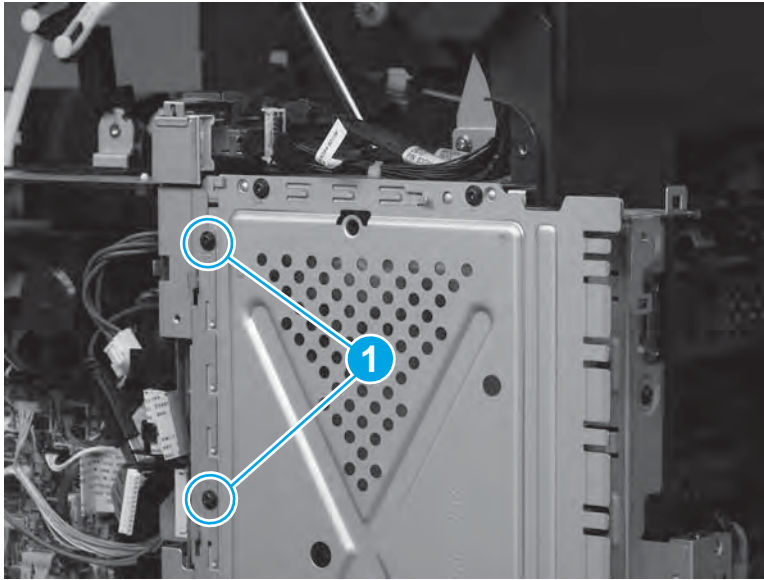
**Figure 1-668** Install the ICB





2. Install two screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-669** Install two screws

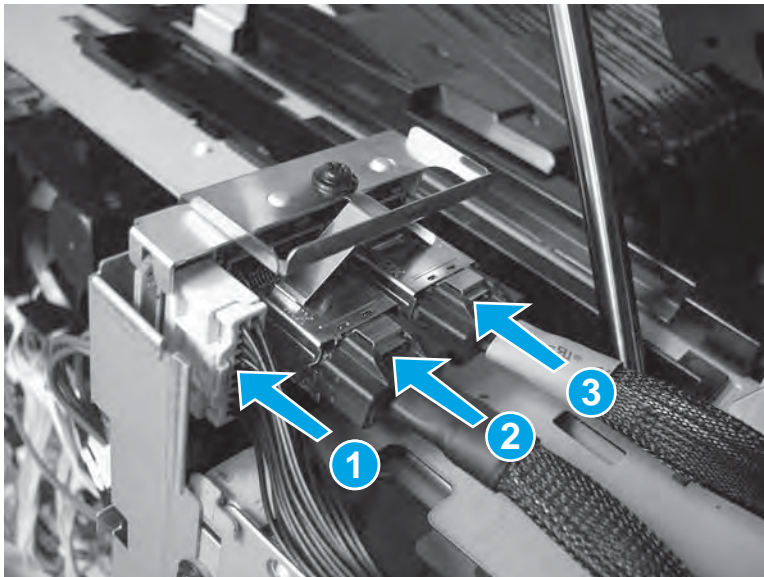


3. At the top of the ICB, connect three connectors.

**TIP:** When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callouts 2/3) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

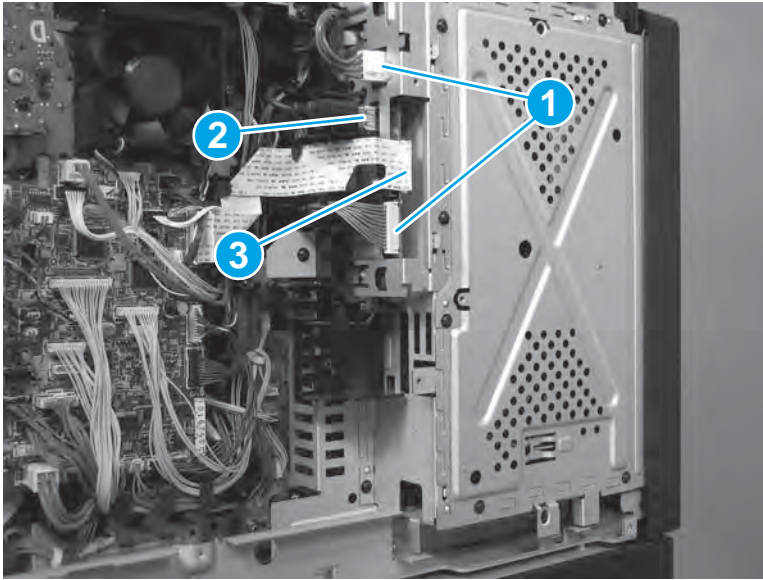
The wire harness with the blue band (callouts 3) connects to the inner connector on the ICB when reinstalled.

**Figure 1-670** Connect three connectors



4. Connect two connectors (callout 1), one USB connector (callout 2), and then connect one FFC (callout 3).

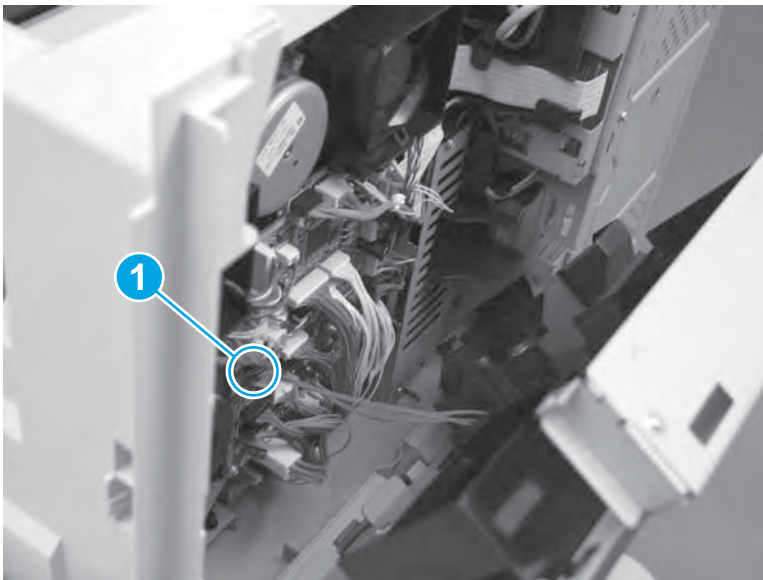
**Figure 1-671** Connect four connectors



### Step 9: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

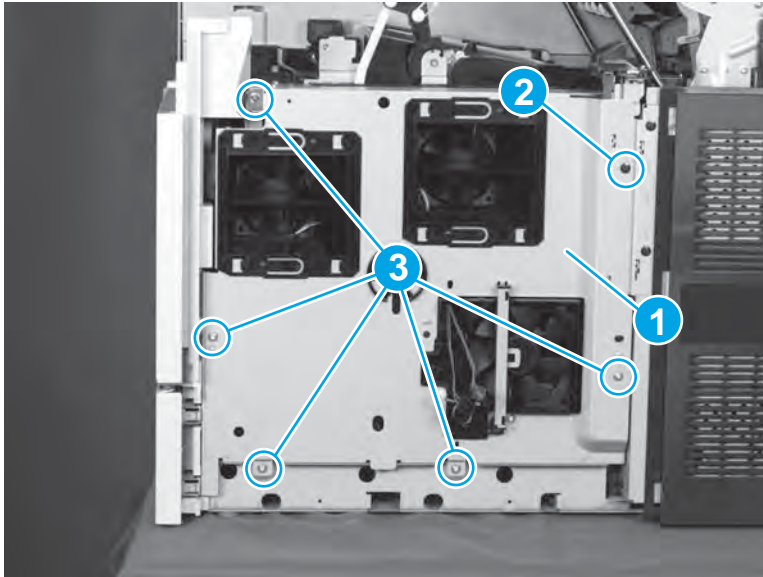
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

**Figure 1-672** Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

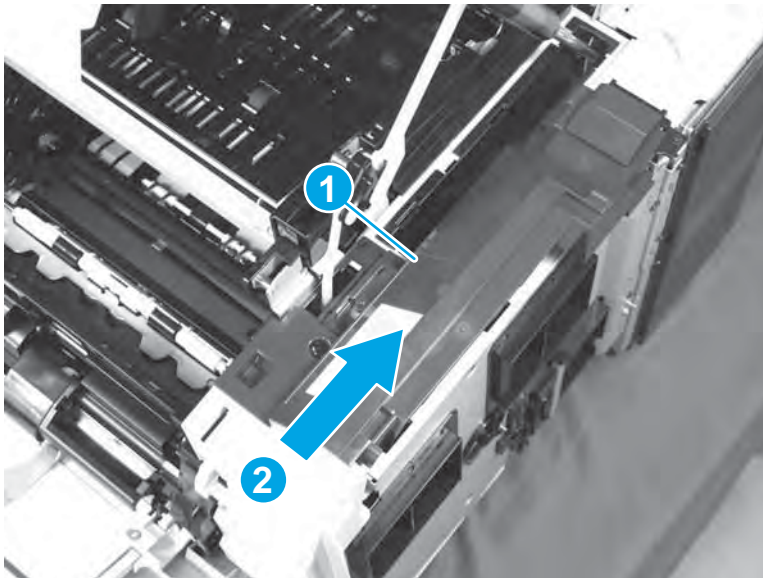
**Figure 1-673** Remove six screws



### Step 10: Install the rear-top cover

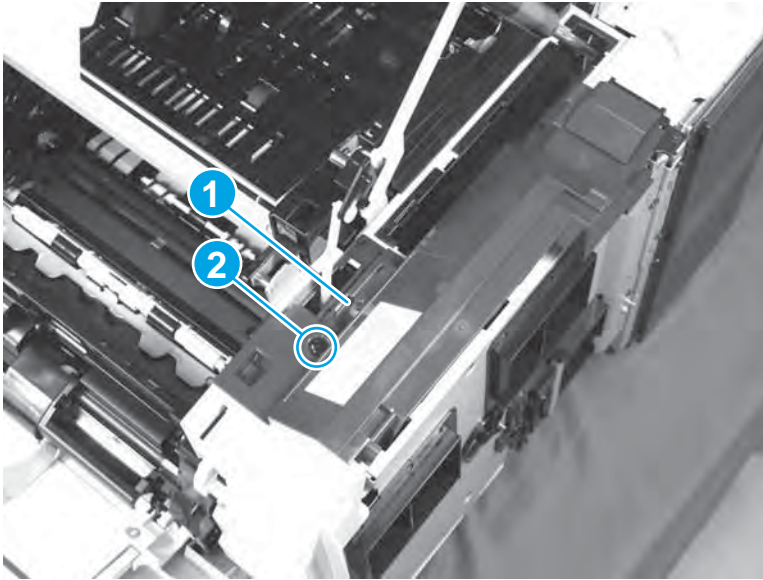
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

**Figure 1-674** Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

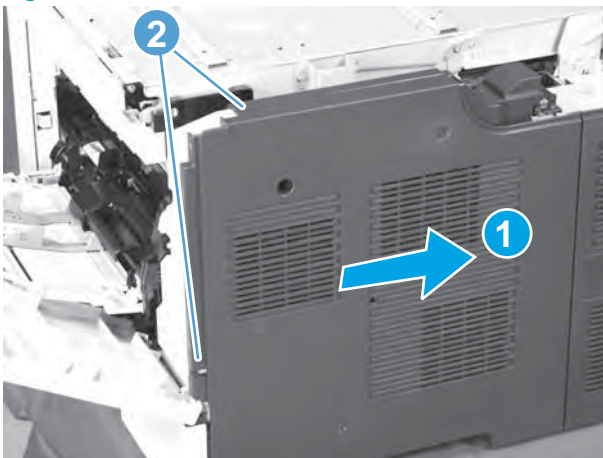
**Figure 1-675** Install one screw



### Step 11: Install the rear-right cover

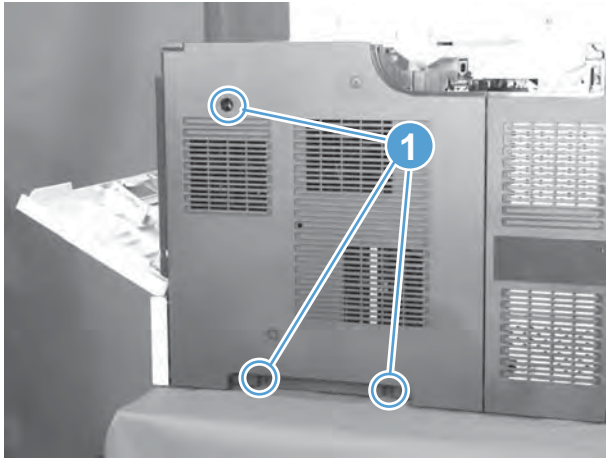
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

**Figure 1-676** Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

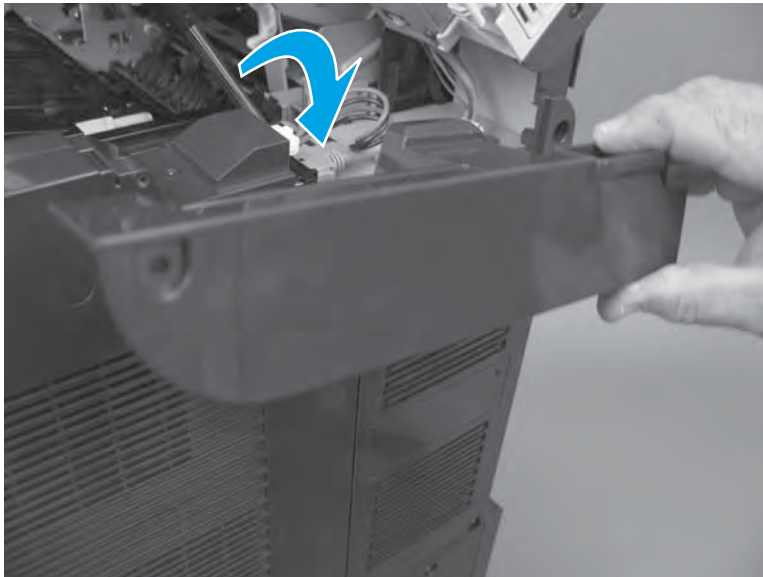
**Figure 1-677** Install three screws



### Step 12: Install the image scanner cable cover

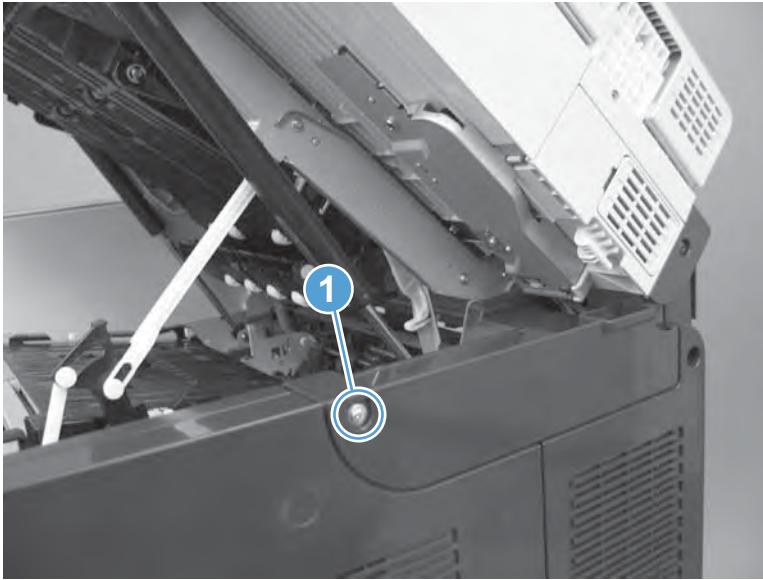
1. Install the cover on the product.

**Figure 1-678** Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

**Figure 1-679** Install one screw

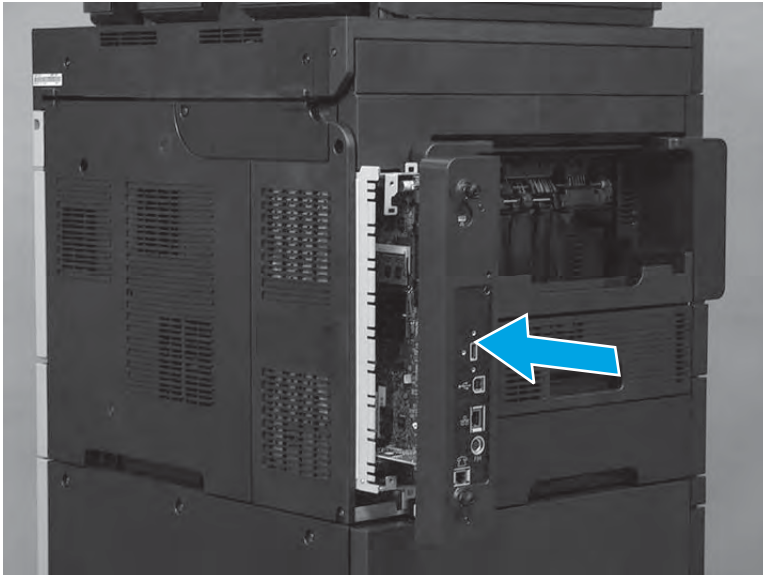


### Step 13: Install the formatter

**CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

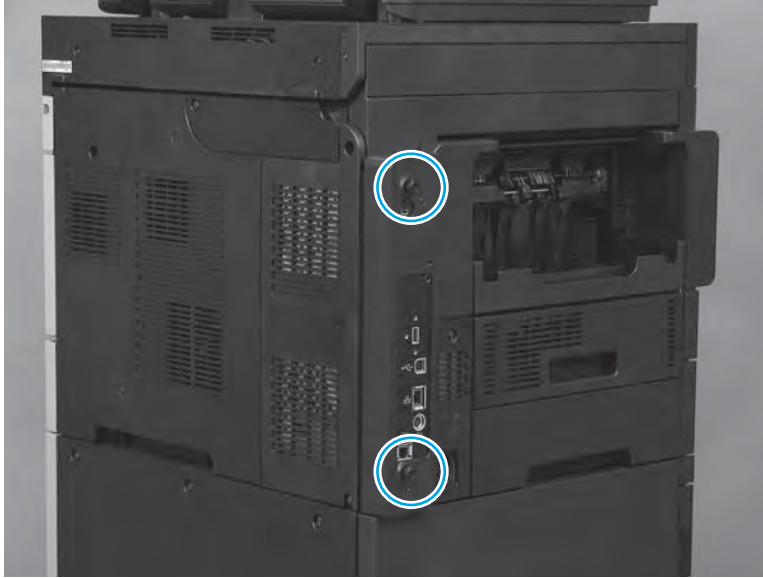
1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

**Figure 1-680** Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot



2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.


**Figure 1-681** Tighten the two thumbscrews



### Step 14: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:
  - a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.
  - b. Plug in the power cord.
2. Turn on the product.

---

 **TIP:** If the product does not initialize when the power is turned on, make sure that the memory DIMM is correctly installed.

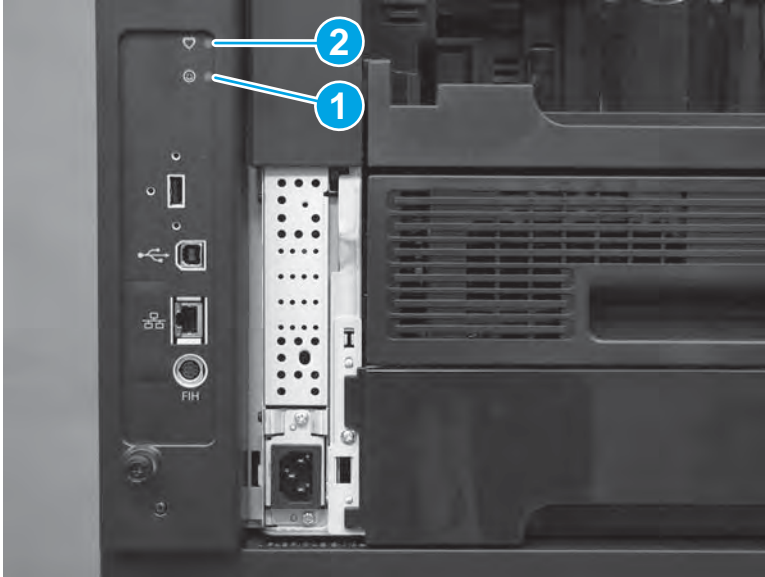
---

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter:

- The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is functioning correctly.
  - While the product is initializing, the heartbeat LED illuminates solid red for about one second, and then turns solid green for about twenty seconds.
  - After the initialization sequence is complete, the heartbeat LED blinks continuously if the printer is functioning correctly.
- The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LEDs do not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).

**Figure 1-682** Verify that the formatter is functioning



## Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling.)



## Feed motor (M101)

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 5: Remove the feed motor](#)
- [Step 6: Unpack the replacement feed motor](#)
- [Step 7: Install the feed motor](#)
- [Step 8: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 9: Install the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 10: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 11: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 12: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the feed motor.

### Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

---

**Feed motor part number**

---

**RM1-8358-000CN**Feed motor

---

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

---

**⚠ WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

---

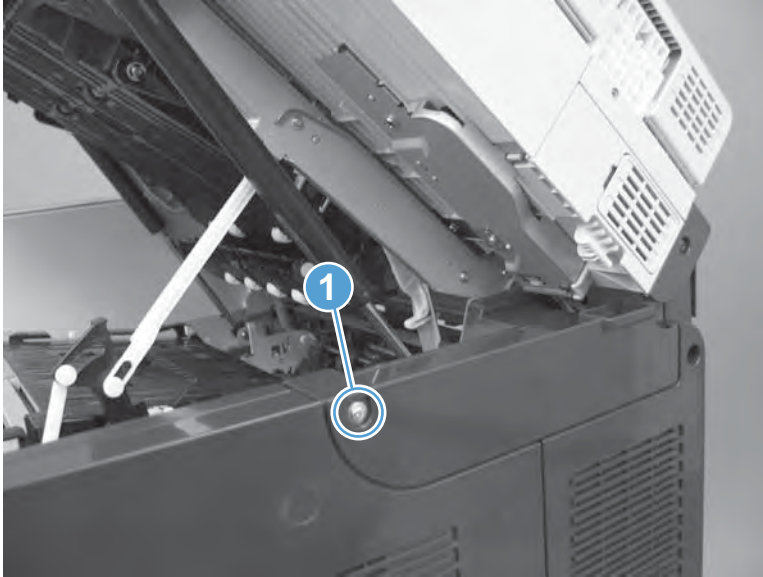
### Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

### Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover

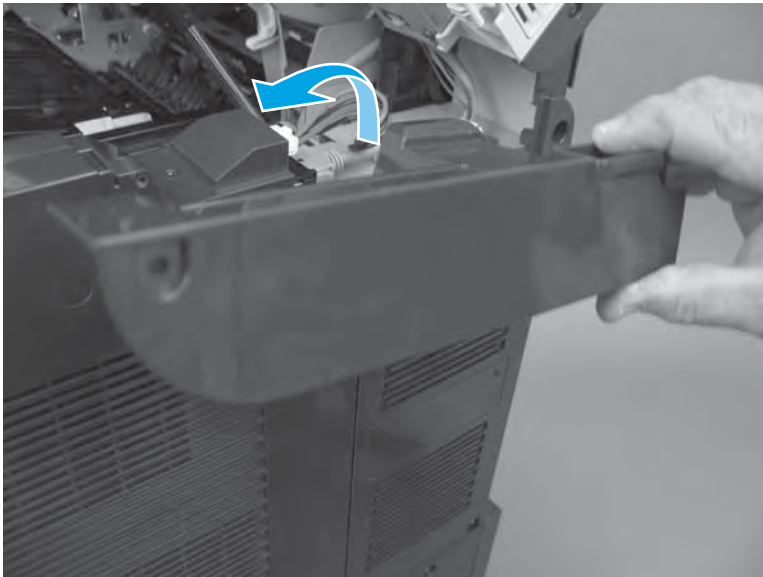
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-683** Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

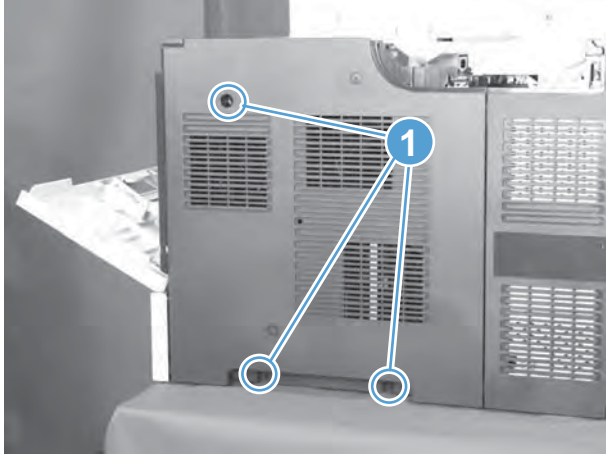
**Figure 1-684** Remove the cover



## **Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover**

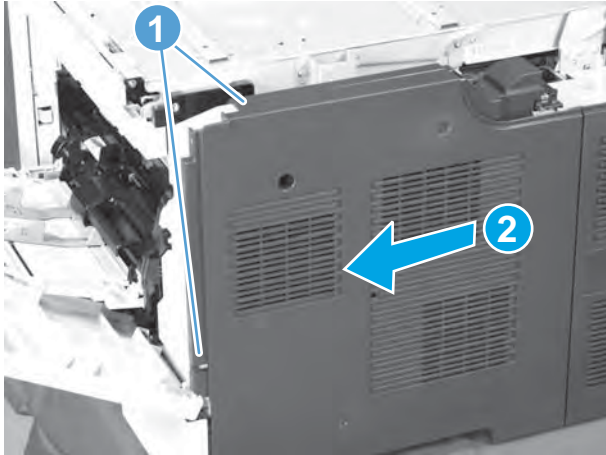
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-685** Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-686** Remove the cover



### Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover

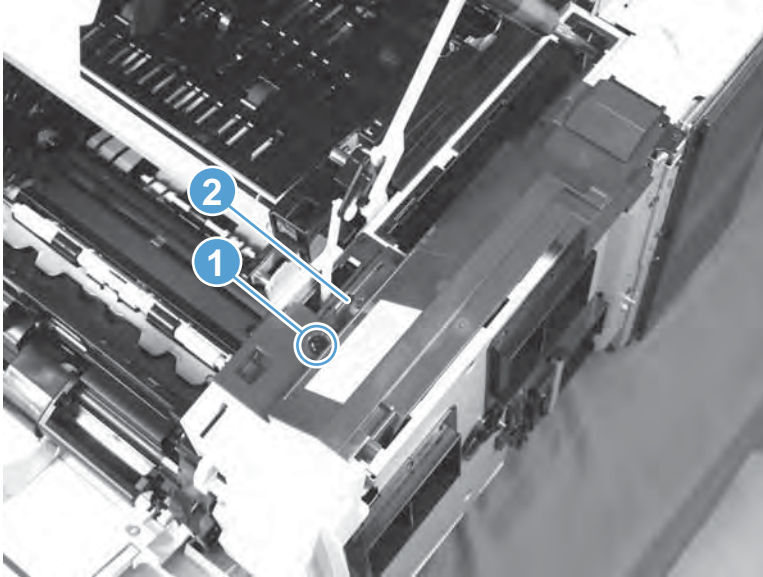
---

 **NOTE:** If the top cover is closed, open it now.

---

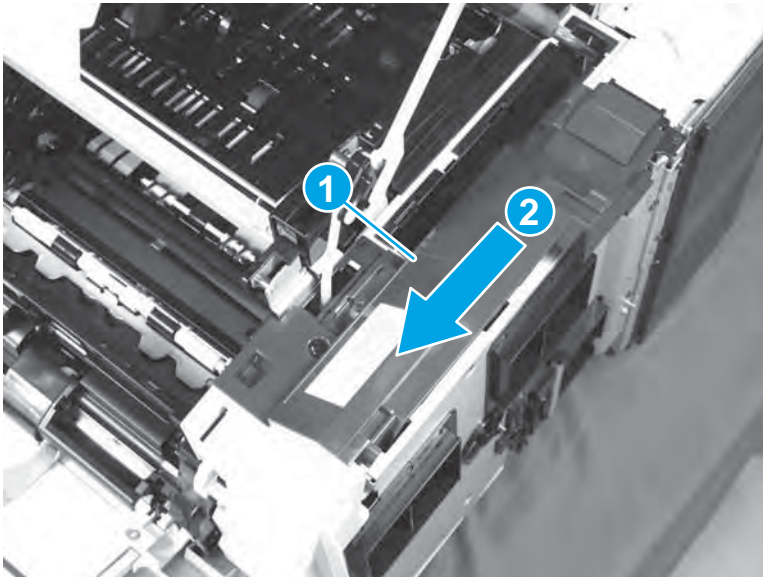
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

**Figure 1-687** Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-688** Remove the cover

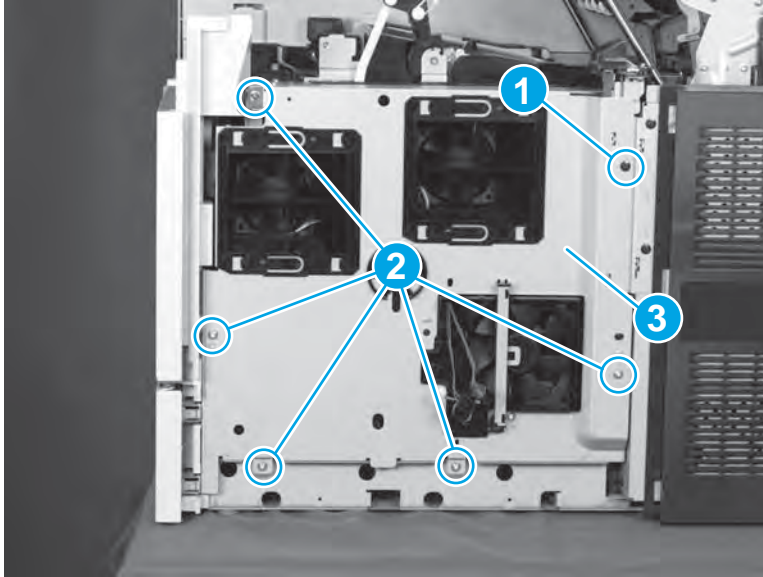


#### **Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly**

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

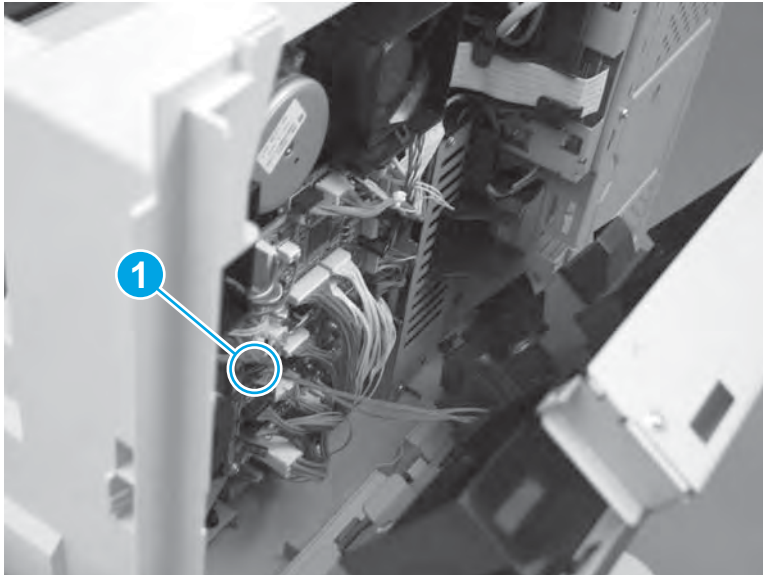
**CAUTION:** The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

**Figure 1-689** Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

**Figure 1-690** Disconnect one connector and remove the shield



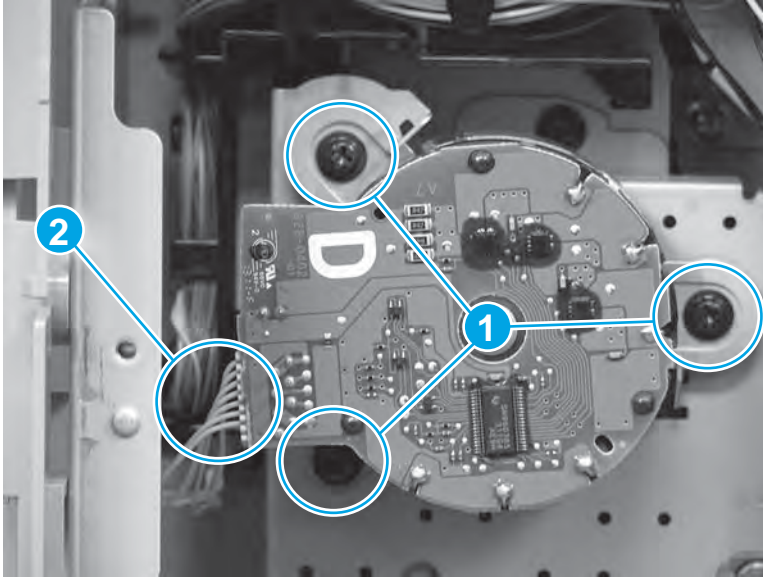
### Step 5: Remove the feed motor

- ▲ At the DC controller side of the product, remove three screws (callout 1), remove the feed motor, and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** The feed motor is located at the left-hand side of the DC controller.

 **TIP:** Slightly turn the motor counter clockwise to disengage it from the mounting bracket.

**Figure 1-691** Remove the feed motor

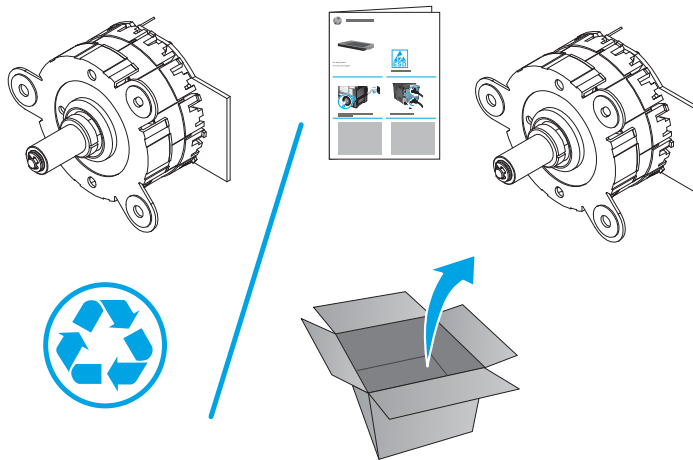


### Step 6: Unpack the replacement feed motor

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.


[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

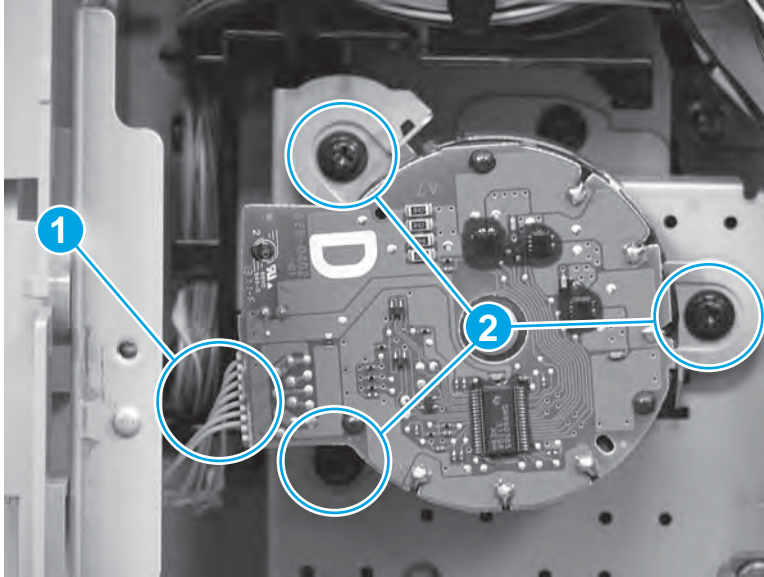


### Step 7: Install the feed motor

▲ Connect one connector (callout 1), and then install three screws (callout 2).

 **TIP:** It is easier to connect the connector before mounting the motor to the chassis.

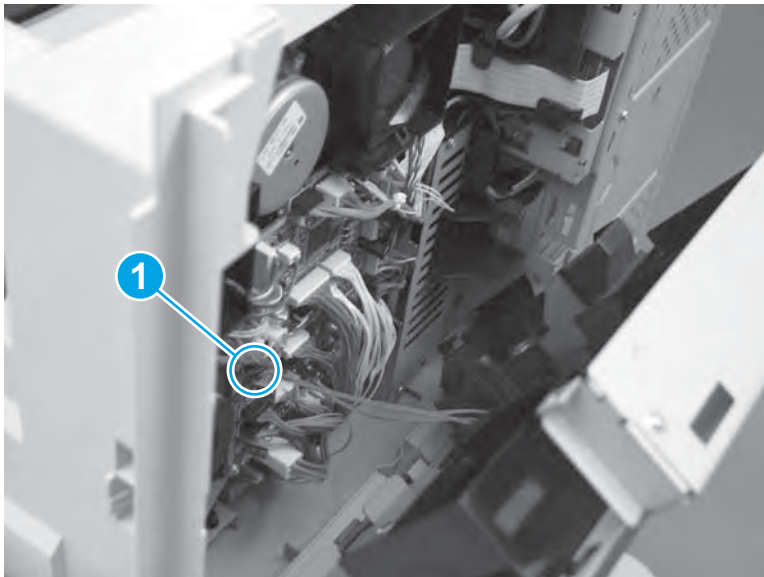
**Figure 1-692** Install the feed motor



### **Step 8: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly**

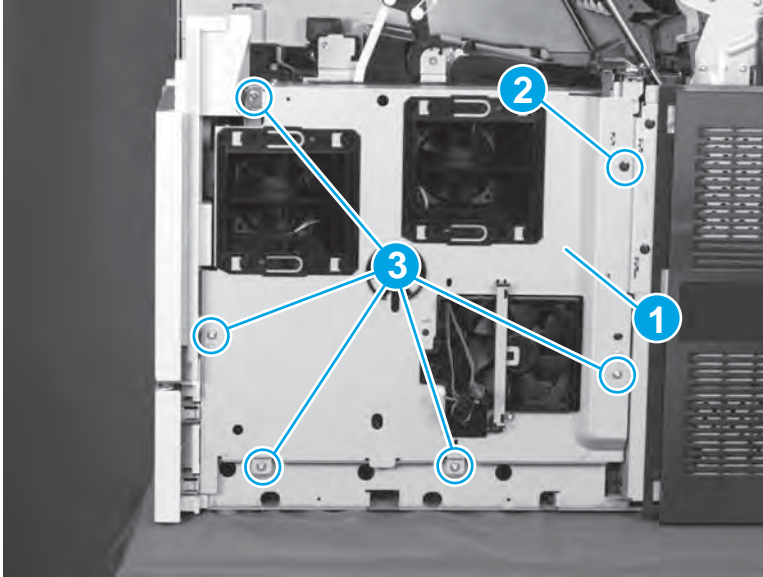
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

**Figure 1-693** Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

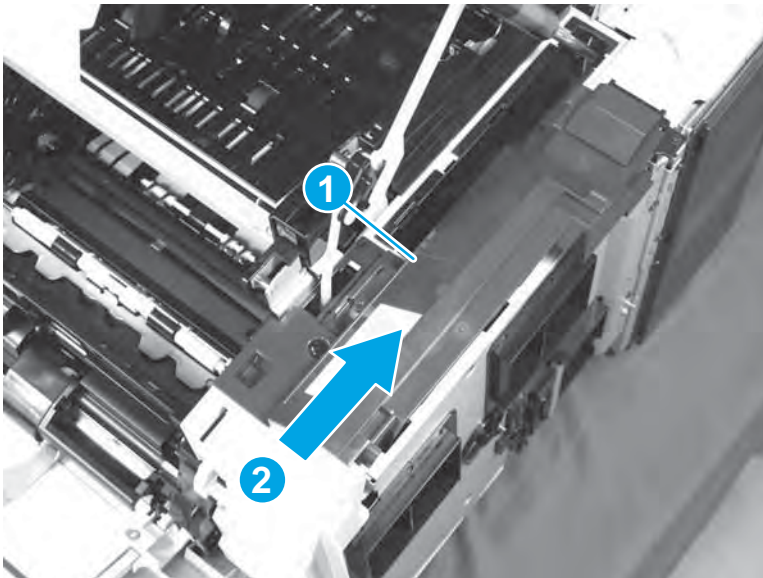
**Figure 1-694** Remove six screws



### Step 9: Install the rear-top cover

1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

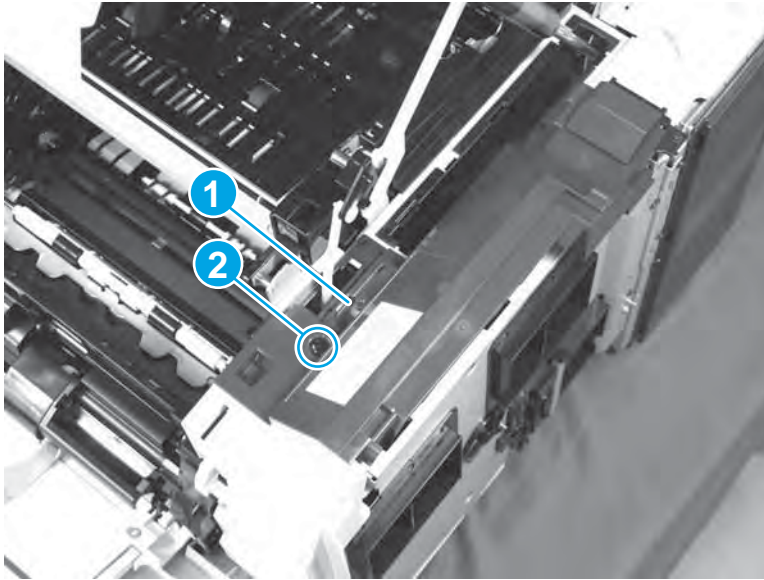
**Figure 1-695** Install the cover





2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

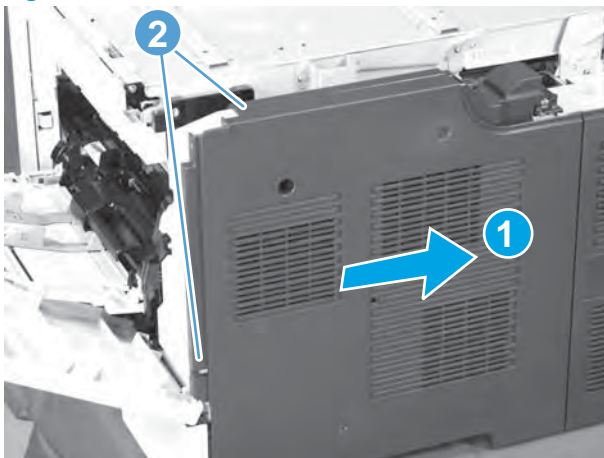
**Figure 1-696** Install one screw



### Step 10: Install the rear-right cover

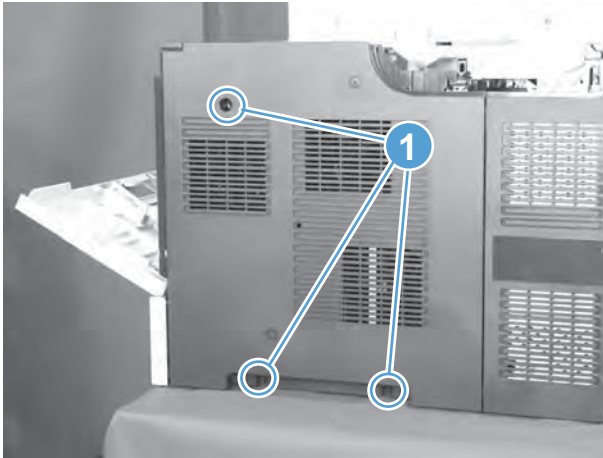
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

**Figure 1-697** Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

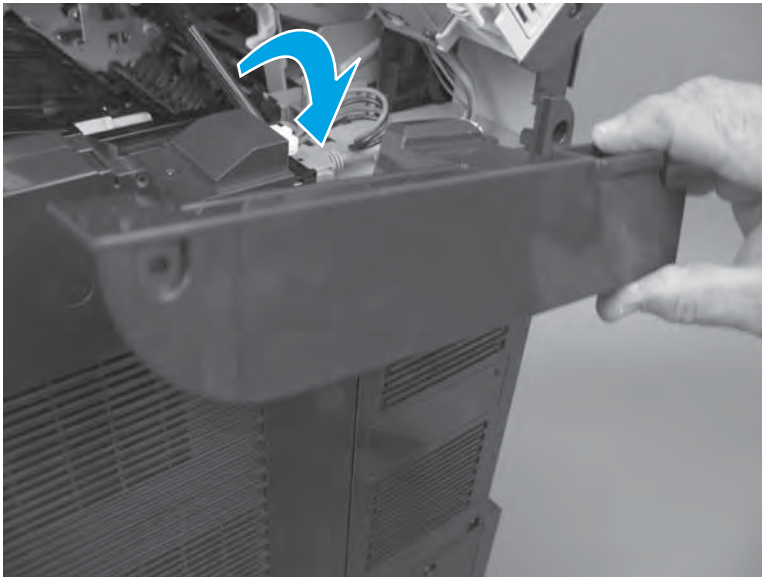
**Figure 1-698** Install three screws



### Step 11: Install the image scanner cable cover

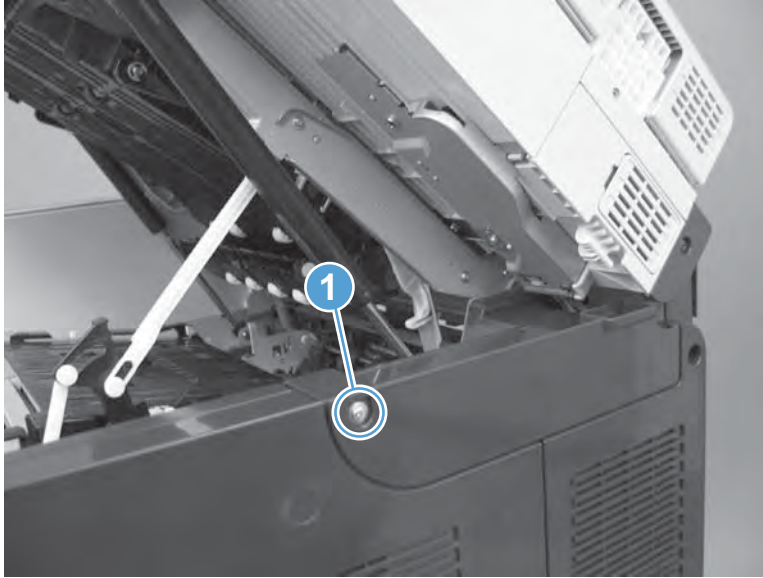
1. Install the cover on the product.

**Figure 1-699** Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

**Figure 1-700** Install one screw



## Step 12: Turn the product power on

### After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

### Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

## Drum motor (M102)

### Remove the following assemblies:

- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).
- Rear-top cover. See [Rear-top cover on page 335](#).
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See [DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382](#).

### Remove the drum motor

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

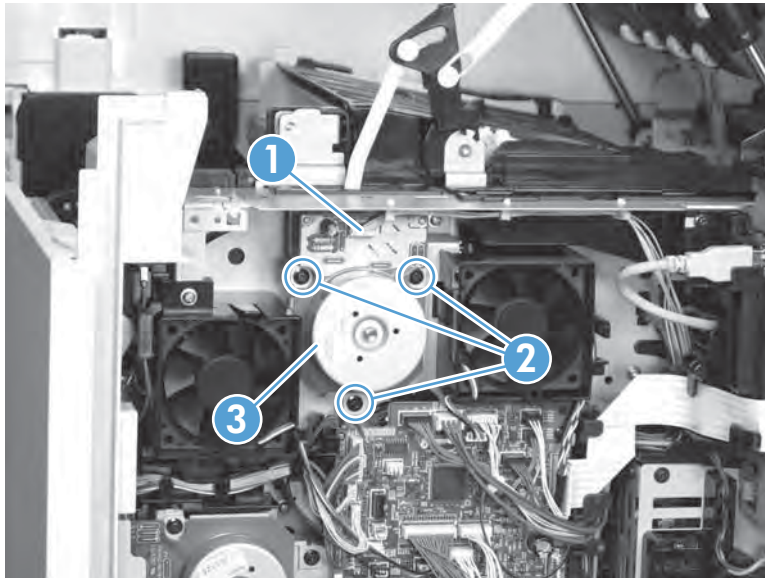
Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the drum motor (callout 3).

---

 **TIP:** Slightly turn the motor counter clockwise to disengage it from the mounting bracket.

---

**Figure 1-701** Remove the drum motor



## Fuser motor (M299)

### Remove the following assemblies:

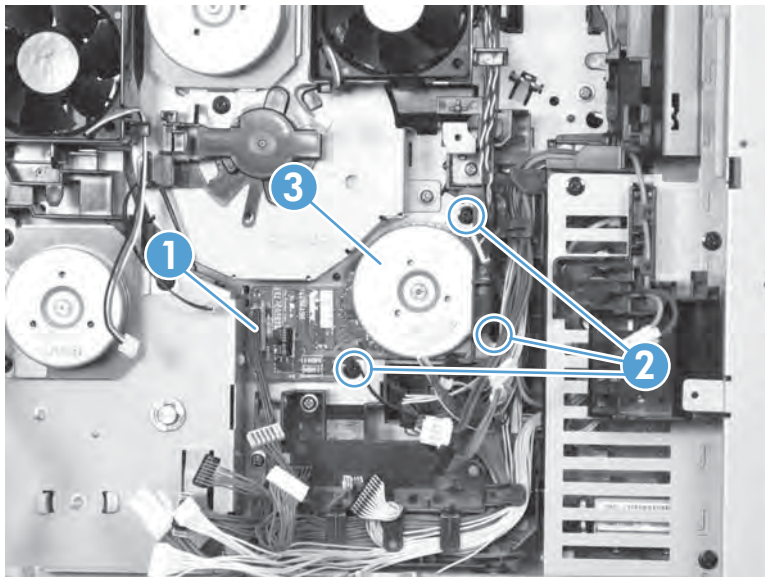
- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).
- Rear-top cover. See [Rear-top cover on page 335](#).
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See [DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382](#).
- DC controller. See [DC controller on page 391](#).

### Remove the fuser motor

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the fuser motor (callout 3).

**Figure 1-702** Remove the fuser motor



## Main fan (FN101)


### Remove the following assemblies:

- Front cover. See [Front cover on page 274](#).

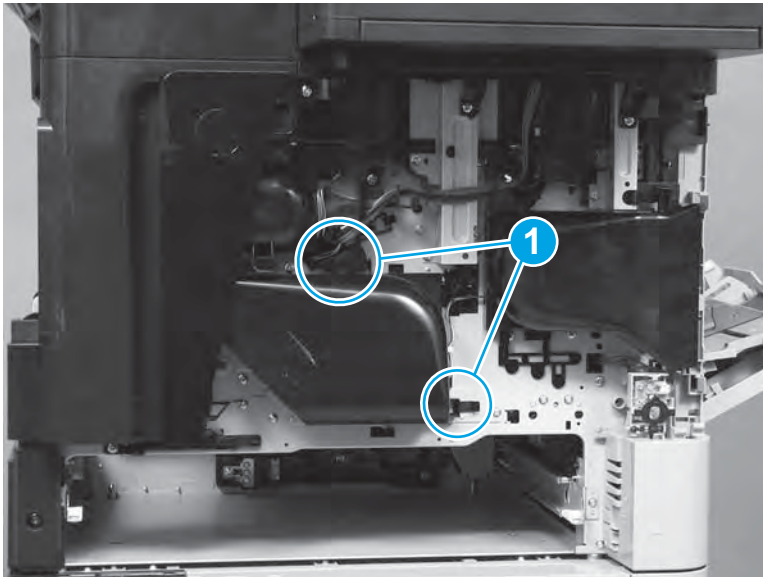
### Remove the main fan

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1).

 **TIP:** Pull the bottom most tab away from the chassis to release it.

**Figure 1-703** Release two tabs



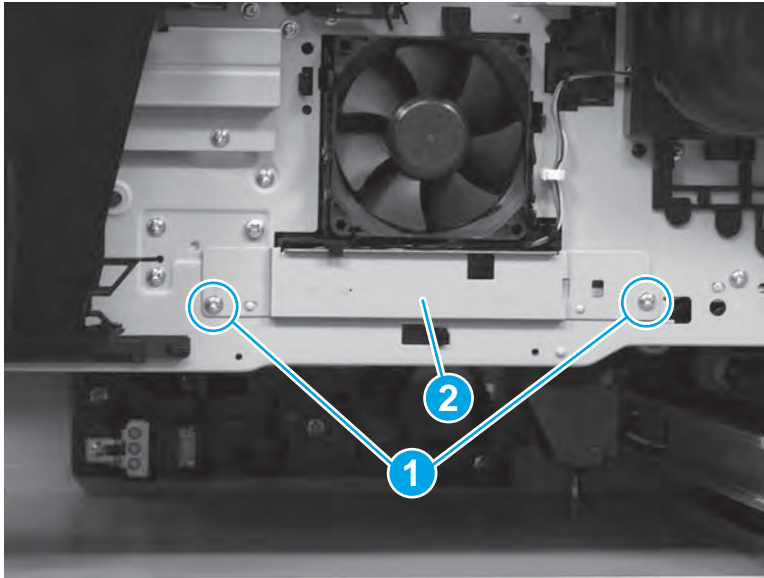
2. Remove the fan duct.

**Figure 1-704** Remove the fan duct




3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

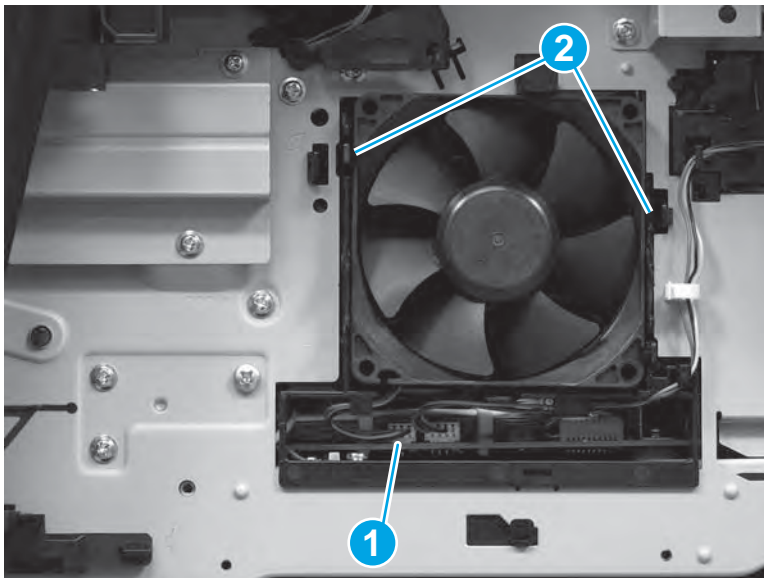
**Figure 1-705** Remove two screws and the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the main fan.

 **Reinstallation tip:** To effectively circulate air, the fan must be reinstalled correctly. The arrows embossed on the fan housing must point into the product, and the label on the fan must face inside the product.

**Figure 1-706** Remove the main fan



## Laser/scanner fan (FN102)

### Remove the following assemblies:

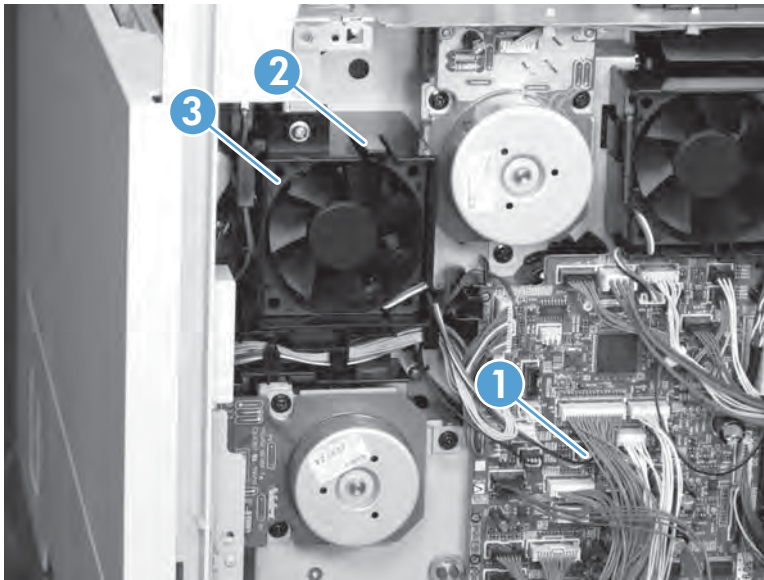
- Front cover. See [Front cover on page 274](#).
- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Front-left cover and logo panel assembly. See [Front-left cover and logo panel assembly on page 307](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).
- Rear-top cover. See [Rear-top cover on page 335](#).
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See [DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382](#).

### Remove the laser/scanner fan

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the laser/scanner fan (callout 3).

**Figure 1-707** Remove the laser/scanner fan



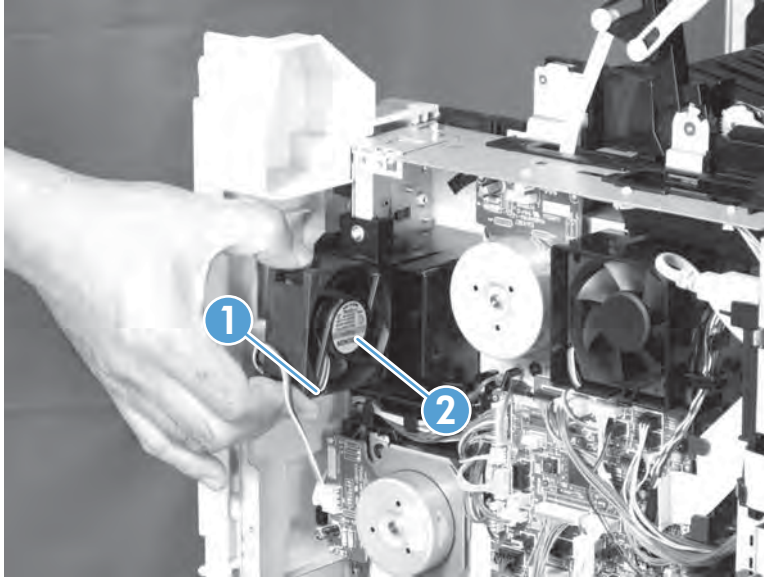


## Install the laser/scanner fan

When the laser/scanner fan is installed, make sure of the following:

- The fan wire harness (callout 1) is positioned as shown in the following figure.
- The label (callout 2) on the fan faces inside the product.

**Figure 1-708** Install the laser/scanner fan



## Cartridge front-side fan (FN103)

### Remove the following assemblies:

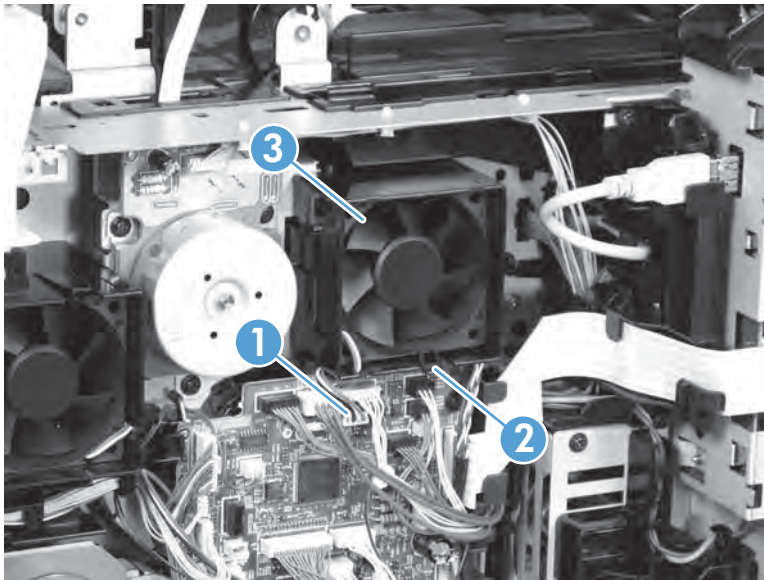
- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).
- Rear-top cover. See [Rear-top cover on page 335](#).
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See [DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382](#).

### Remove the cartridge front-side fan

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the cartridge front-side fan (callout 3).

**Figure 1-709** Remove the cartridge front-side fan

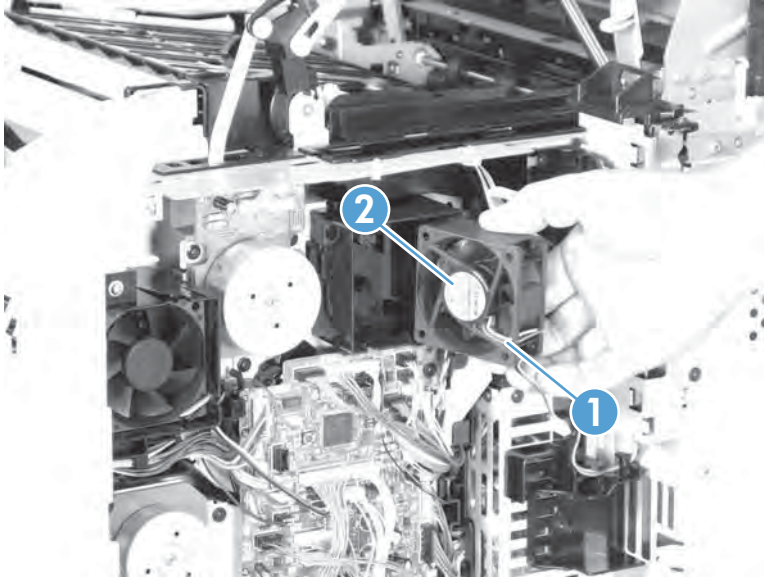


### Install the cartridge front-side fan

When the cartridge front-side fan is installed, make sure of the following:

- The fan wire harness (callout 1) is positioned as shown in the following figure.
- The label (callout 2) on the fan faces inside the product.

**Figure 1-710** Install the cartridge front-side fan



## Low-voltage power supply fan (FN104)

### Remove the following assemblies:

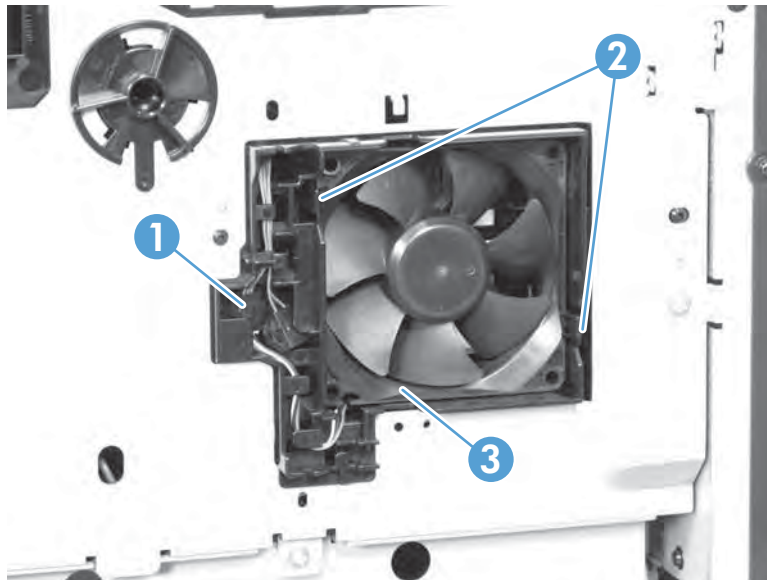
- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).
- Temperature sensor. See [Temperature sensor on page 380](#).

### Remove the low-voltage power supply fan

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the low-voltage power supply fan (callout 3).

**Figure 1-711** Remove the low-voltage power supply fan

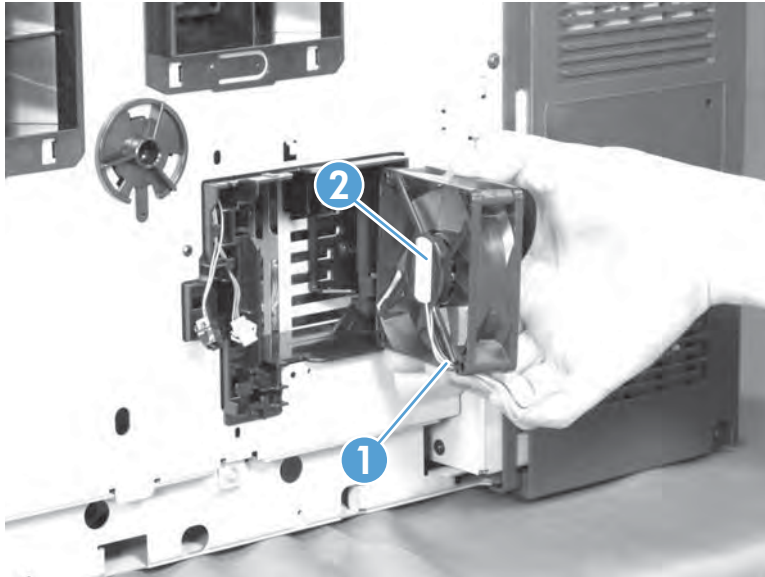


### Install the low-voltage power supply fan

When the low-voltage power supply fan is installed, make sure of the following:

- The fan wire harness (callout 1) is positioned as shown in the following figure.
- The label (callout 2) on the fan faces inside the product.

**Figure 1-712** Install the low-voltage power supply fan



## Reverse assembly fan (FN105)

### Remove the following assemblies:

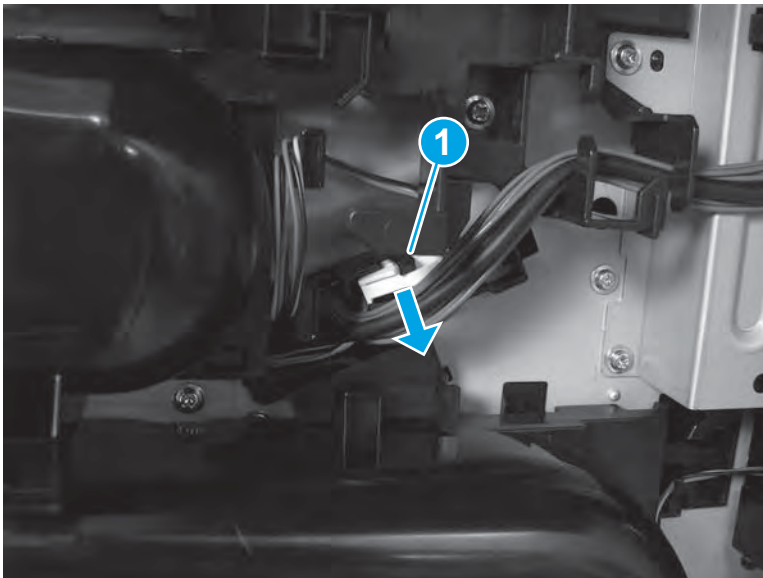
- Front cover. See [Front cover on page 274](#).
- Front-left cover and logo panel assembly. See [Front-left cover and logo panel assembly on page 307](#).

### Remove the reverse assembly fan

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

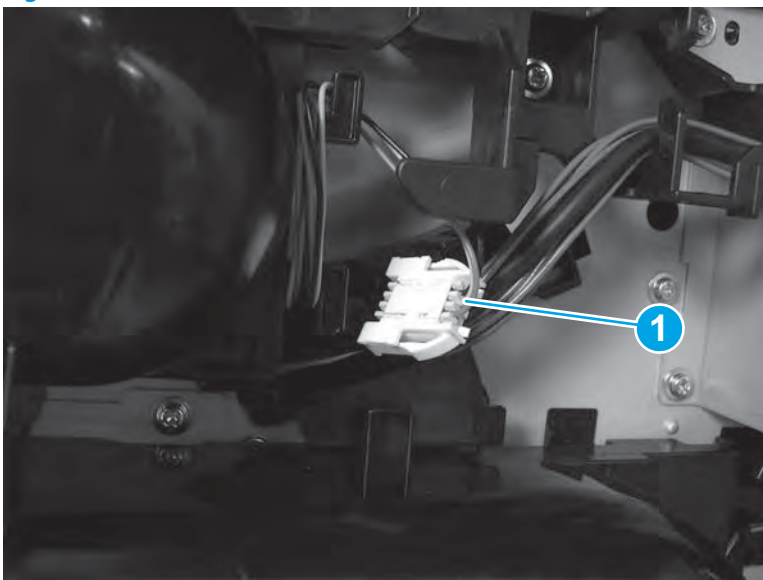
1. Remove one in-line connector (callout 1) from the wire harness.

**Figure 1-713** Remove one in-line connector



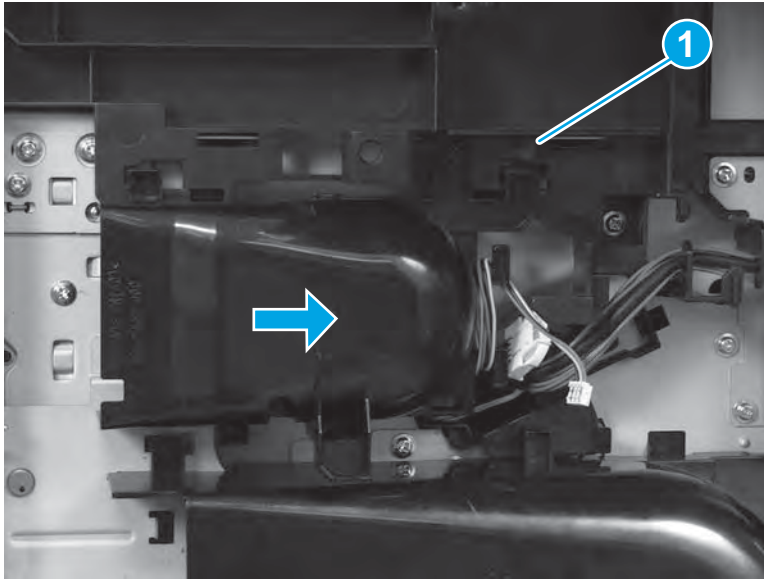
2. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1).

**Figure 1-714** Disconnect one in-line connector



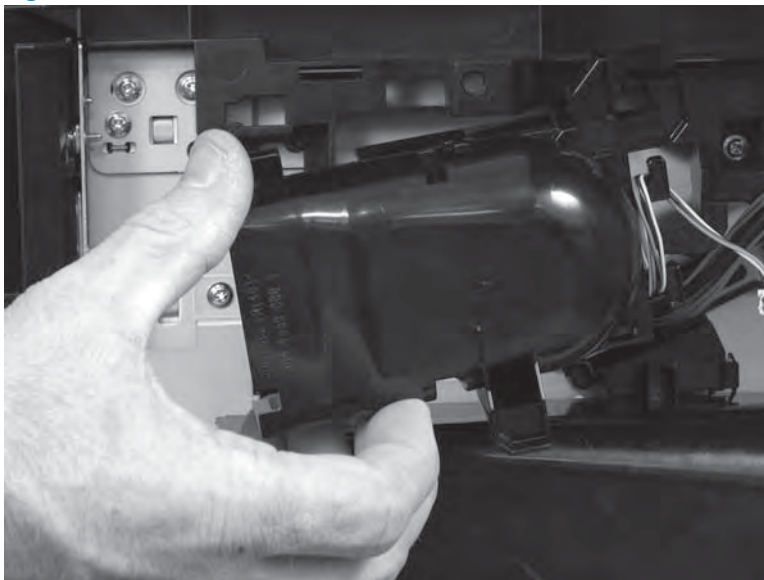
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the fan and duct to the right to release it.

**Figure 1-715** Release the fan and duct



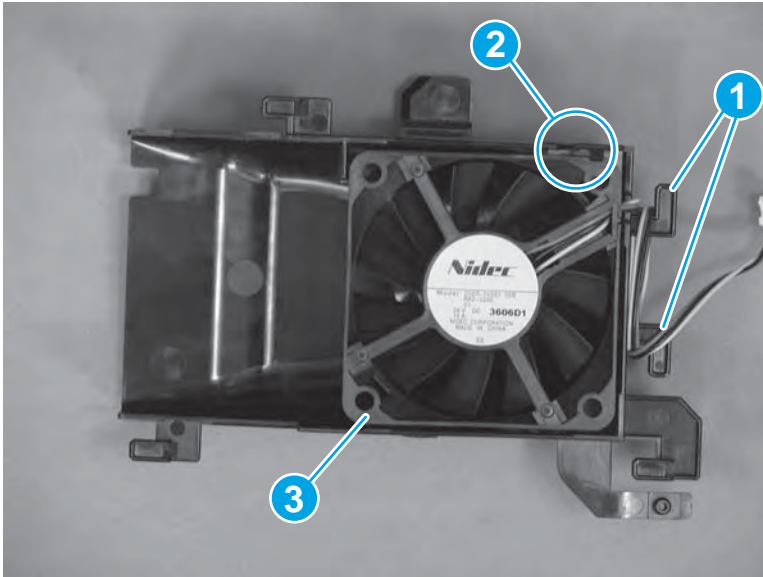
4. Remove the fan and duct.

**Figure 1-716** Remove the fan and duct



5. If necessary, release the wire harness from the retainers (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then separate the fan (callout 3) from the duct.

**Figure 1-717** Separate the fan from the duct





## Cartridge fan (FN301)


### Remove the following assemblies:

- Front cover. See [Front cover on page 274](#).

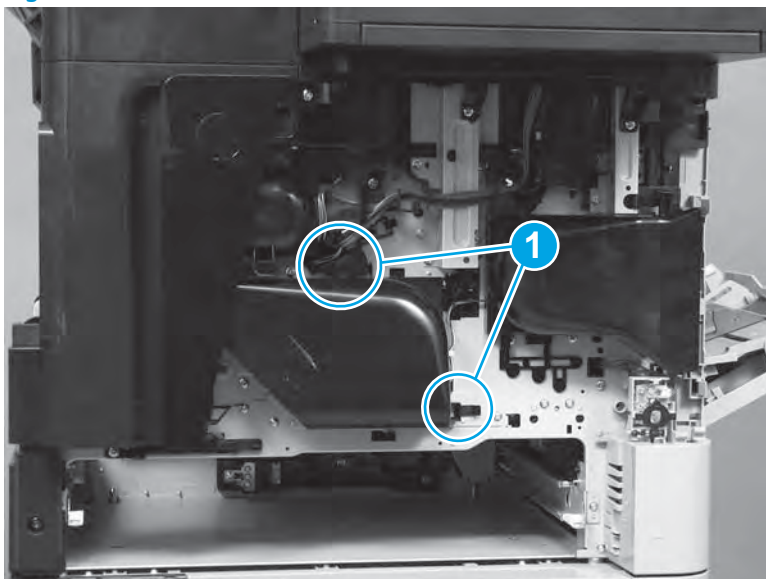
### Remove the cartridge fan

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1).

 **TIP:** Pull the bottom most tab away from the chassis to release it.

**Figure 1-718** Release two tabs



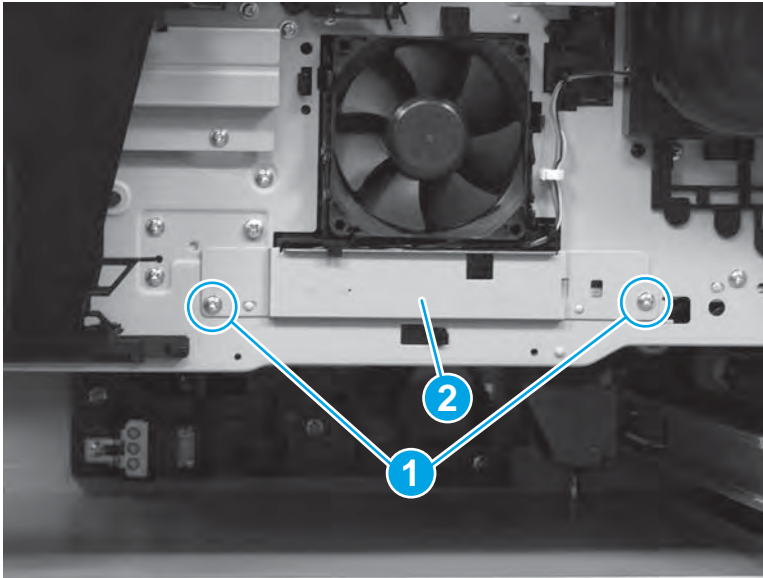
2. Remove the main fan duct.

**Figure 1-719** Remove the fan duct



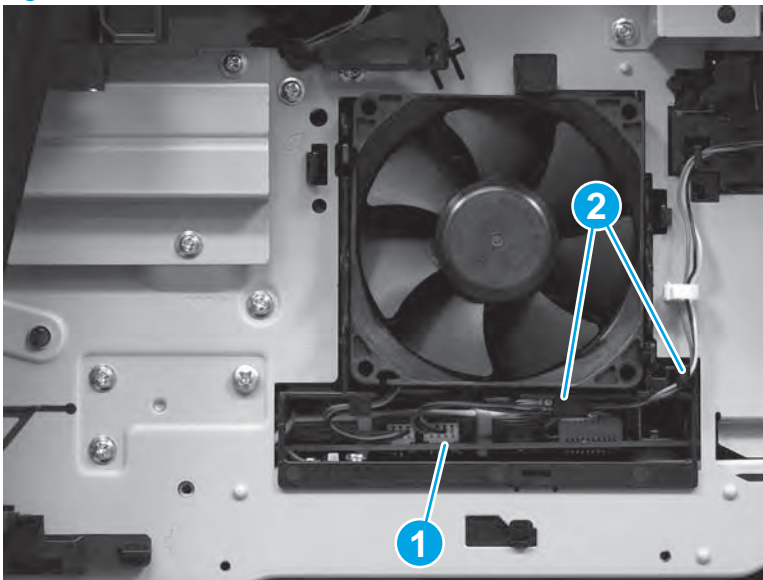
3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

**Figure 1-720** Remove two screws and the cover



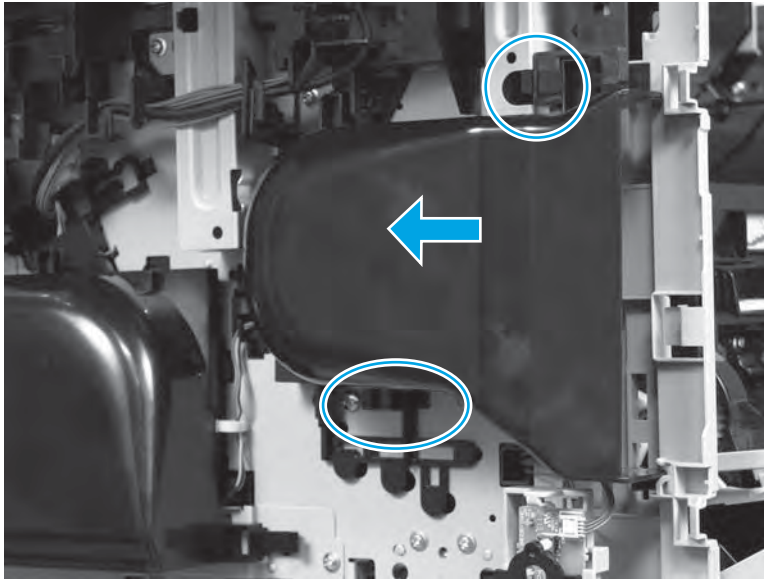
4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the retainers (callout 2).

**Figure 1-721** Disconnect one connector



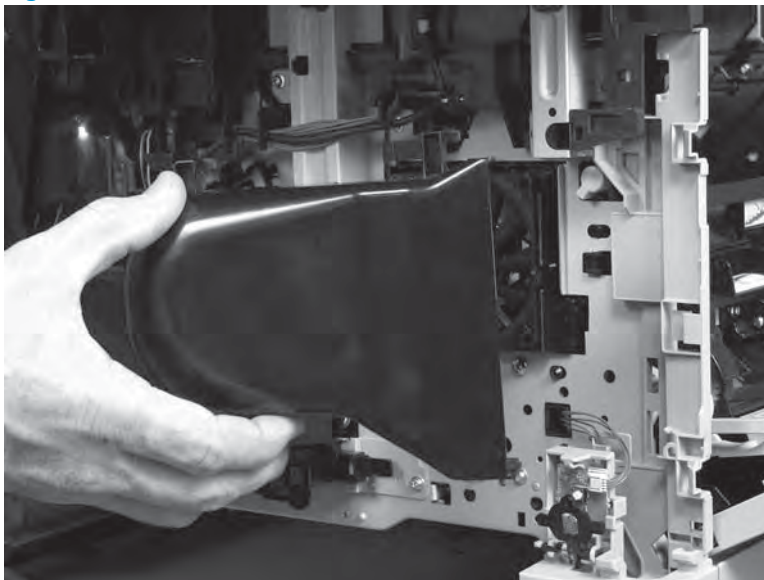
5. Release two tabs, and then slightly slide the cartridge fan duct to the left to release it.

**Figure 1-722** Release the fan duct



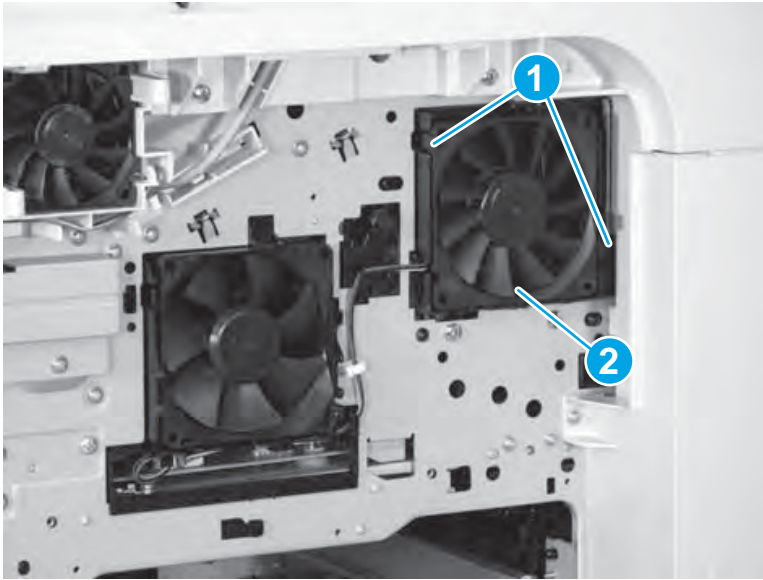
6. Remove the fan duct.

**Figure 1-723** Remove the fan duct



7. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the cartridge fan (callout 2).

**Figure 1-724** Remove the cartridge fan

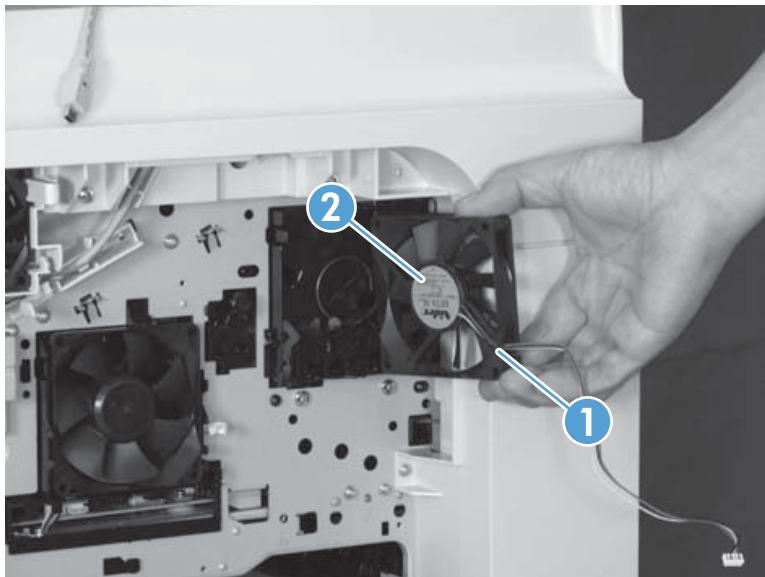


### Install the cartridge fan


When you install the main fan, make sure of the following:

- The fan wire harness (callout 1) is positioned as shown in the following figure.
- The label (callout 2) on the fan faces inside the product.

**Figure 1-725** Install the cartridge fan



## Interlock switch assembly (SW101 and SW106)

 **NOTE:** The interlock switch assembly includes the door switch and switch cable (SW101), and the door sensor and sensor cable (SW106).

### Remove the following assemblies:

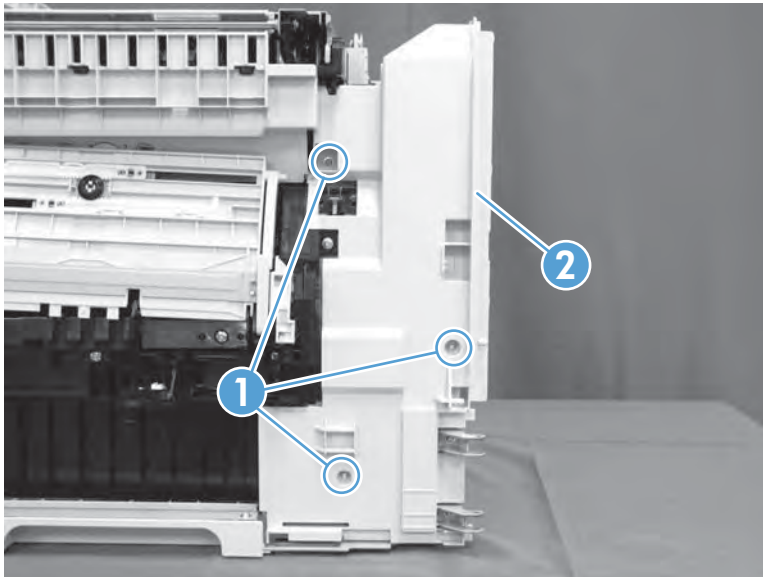
- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Tray 1 cover. See [Tray 1 cover on page 287](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).
- Rear-top cover. See [Rear-top cover on page 335](#).
- Right-lower door. See [Right-lower door on page 345](#).
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See [DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382](#).

### Remove the interlock switch assembly


Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the Tray 1 gear cover (callout 2).

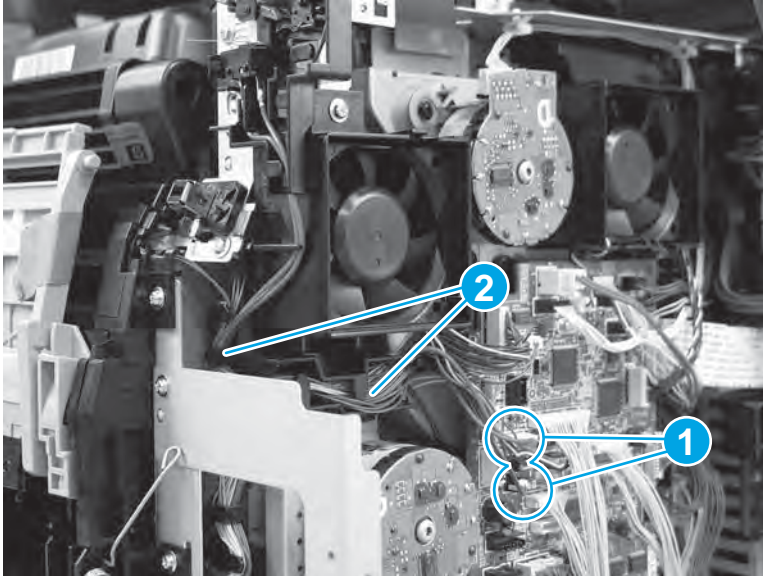
**Figure 1-726** Remove the Tray 1 gear cover



2. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1; J13 and J78) on the DC controller, and then release the wire harnesses from the guides (callout 2).

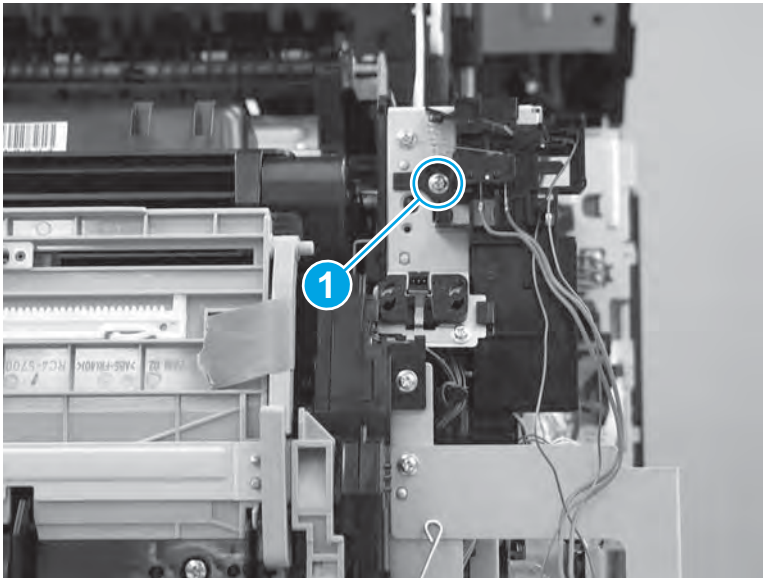
 **TIP:** It might be easier to release the wire harnesses from the guide by first disconnecting additional connectors and releasing additional wire harnesses from the guide.

**Figure 1-727** Disconnect two connectors



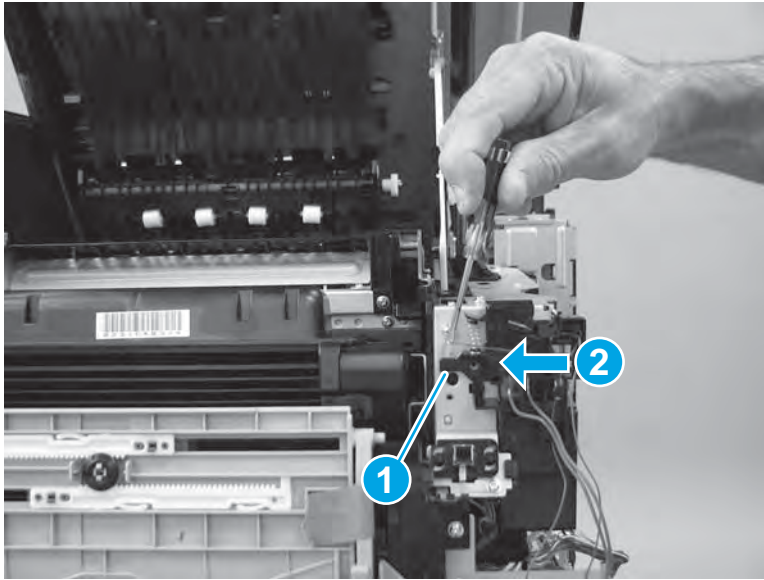
3. Remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-728** Remove one screw



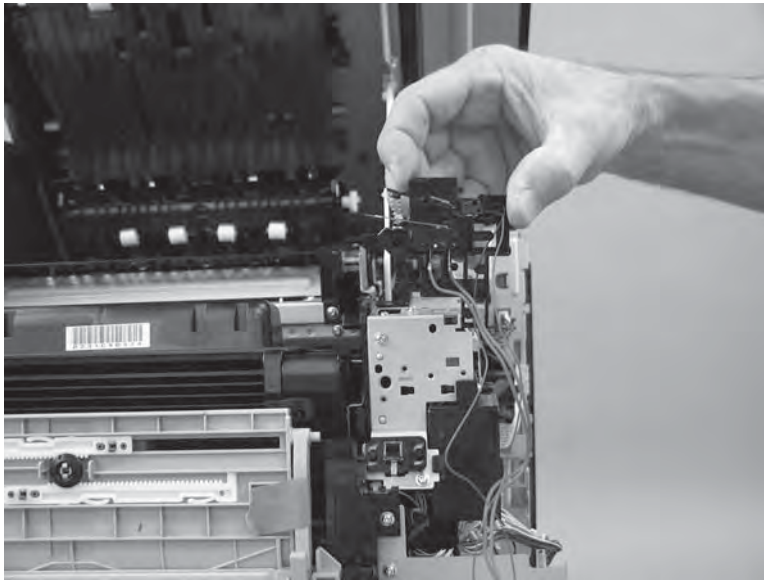
4. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the assembly toward Tray 1 to release it (callout 2).

**Figure 1-729** Release one tab



5. Remove the interlock switch assembly.

**Figure 1-730** Remove the assembly



## Output accessory detection switch (SW104)

### Remove the following assemblies:

- Formatter. See [Step 1: Remove the formatter on page 24](#).
- Output bin and bin base assembly. See [Output bin and bin base assembly on page 68](#).

 **NOTE:** If the optional HP Stapling Mailbox is installed, remove it.

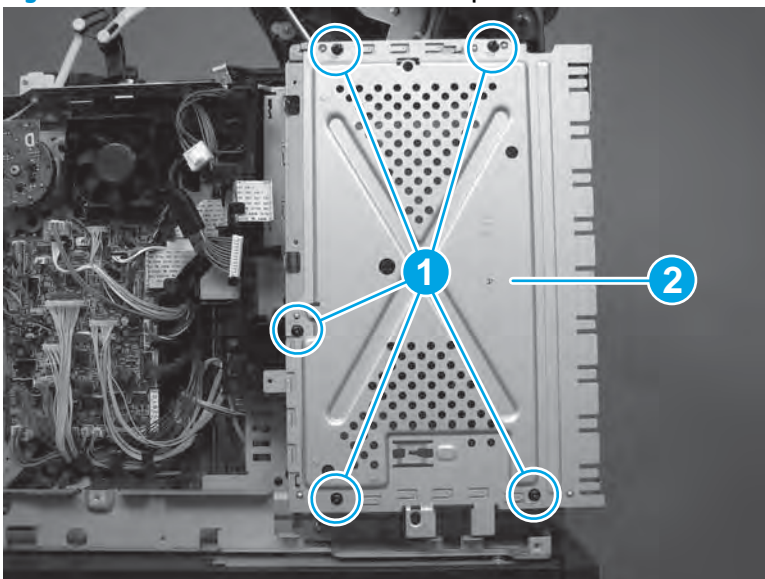
- Duplex accessory. See [Duplex accessory on page 70](#).
- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Side-rear cover. See [Side-rear cover on page 296](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).
- Rear-left cover. See [Rear-left cover on page 327](#).
- Rear-top cover. See [Rear-top cover on page 335](#).
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See [DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382](#).
- Interconnect board (ICB). See [Interconnect board \(ICB\) on page 426](#).

### Remove the output accessory detection switch

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Remove five screws (callout 1), and the sheet-metal plate (callout 2).

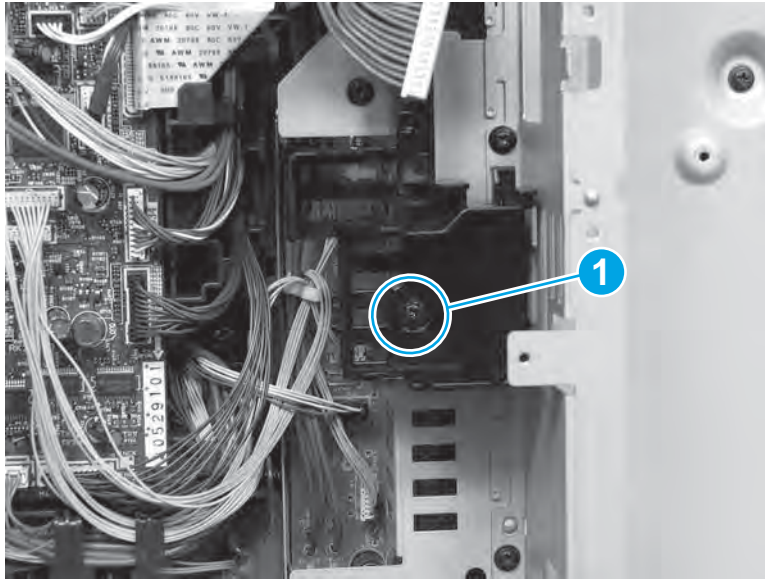
**Figure 1-731** Remove five screws and the plate





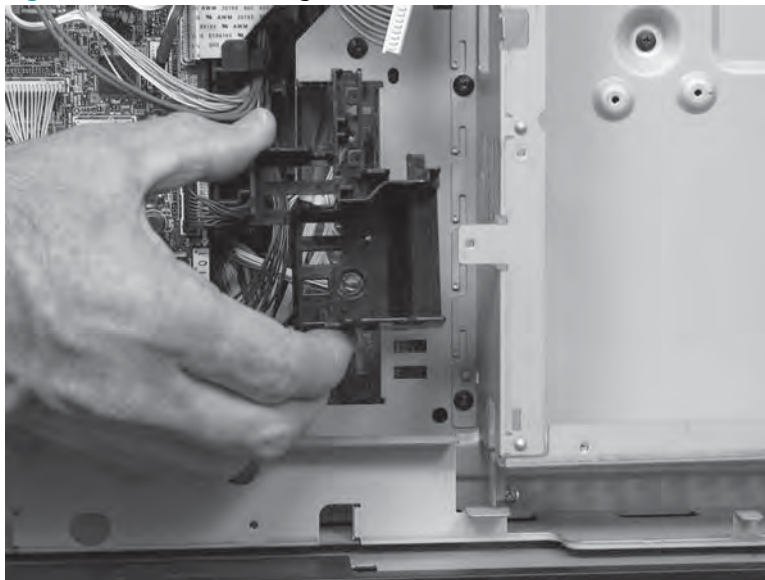
2. Remove one screw (callout 1) near the DC controller.

**Figure 1-732** Remove one screw



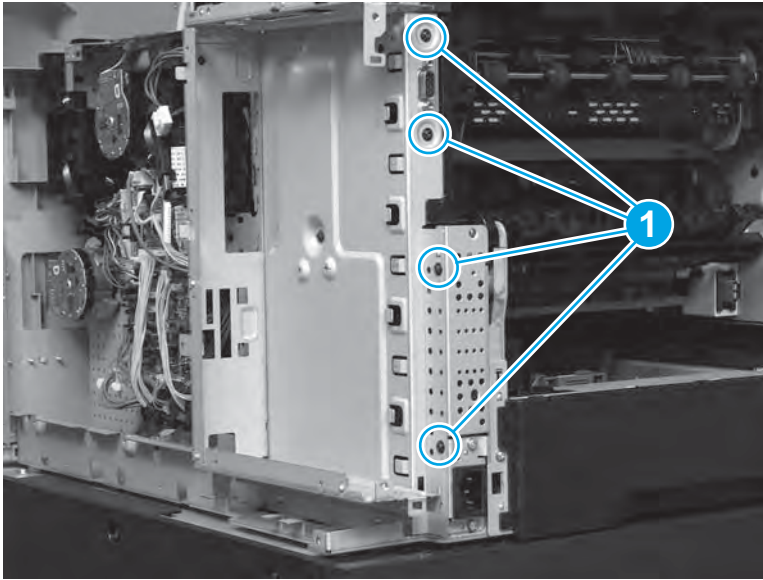
3. Remove the guide (callout 1).

**Figure 1-733** Remove the guide




4. Remove four black screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-734** Remove four screws



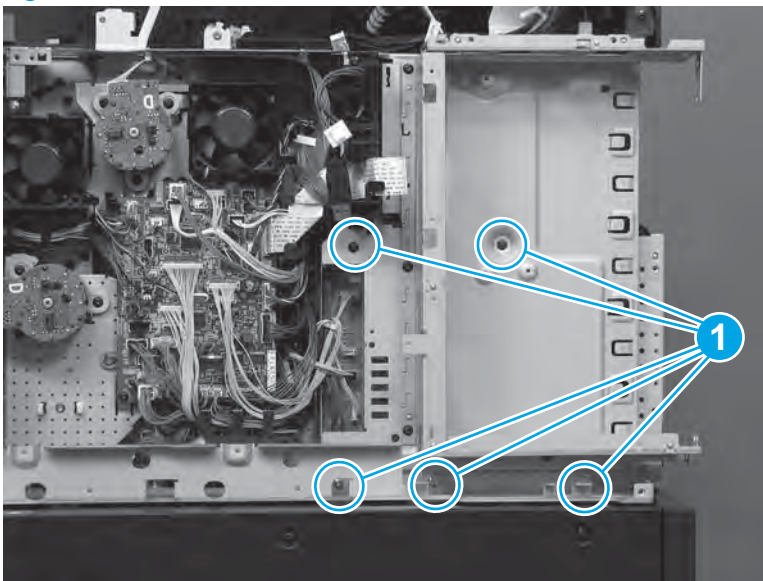
5. Remove five screws (callout 1).

---

 **NOTE:** The two upper screws are black, and the three screws across the bottom are silver.

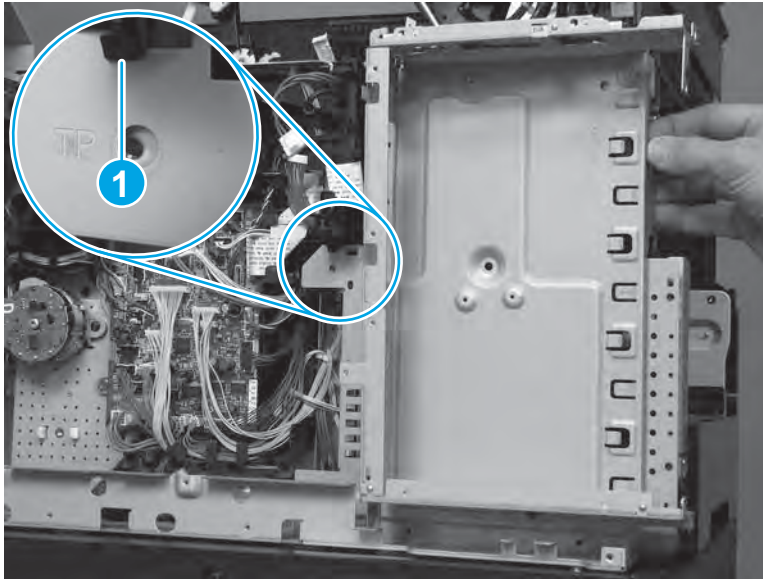
---

**Figure 1-735** Remove five screws



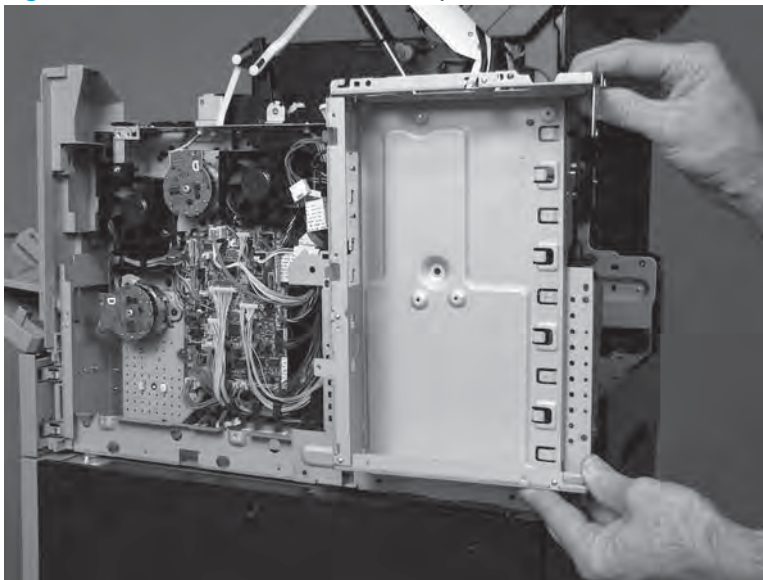
6. Slightly separate the sheet-metal plate from the product, and then release one tab (callout 1).

**Figure 1-736** Release one tab



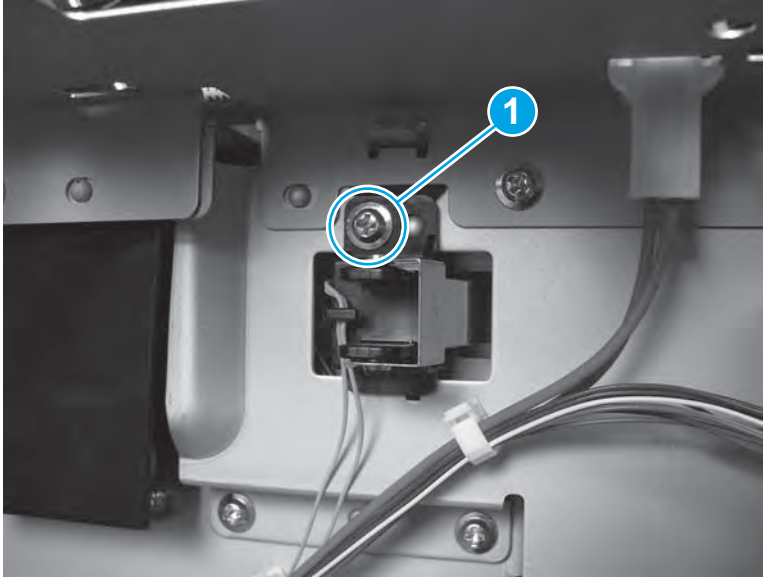
7. Remove the sheet-metal plate from the product.

**Figure 1-737** Remove the sheet-metal plate



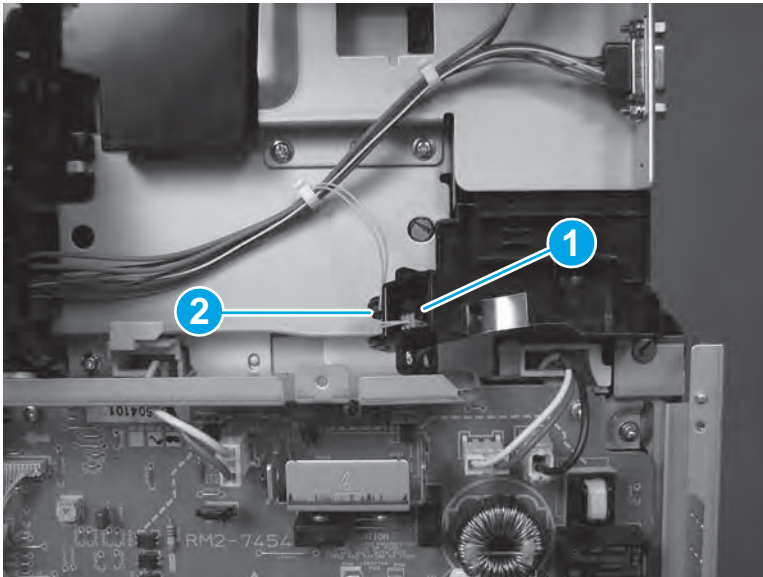
8. Locate the output detection switch (behind the plate removed in the previous step), and then remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-738** Remove one screw



9. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the switch (callout 2).

**Figure 1-739** Remove the output accessory detection switch



## Low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the formatter](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the side-rear cover](#)
- [Step 5: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 6: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 7: Remove the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 8: Remove the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 9: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step10: Remove the ICB](#)
- [Step 11: Remove the LVPS](#)
- [Step 12: Unpack the replacement LVPS](#)
- [Step 13: Install the LVPS](#)
- [Step 14: Install the ICB](#)
- [Step 15: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 16: Install the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 17: Install the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 18: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 19: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 20: Install the side-rear cover](#)
- [Step 21: Install the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 22: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 23: Install the formatter](#)
- [Step 24: Test the installation](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) for the HP LaserJet Enterprise M630.


## Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct assembly part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the assembly.

LVPS part number	
RM2-5792-000CN	LVPS (110V)
RM2-5793-000CN	LVPS (220)

## Required tools


- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

**CAUTION:**  This product contains components that can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). To reduce the chance of ESD damage, place the product on an ESD mat (if available), and wear an ESD wrist strap connected to a grounded surface. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis before touching an ESD-sensitive part.

## Step 1: Remove the formatter

1. Do the following steps:

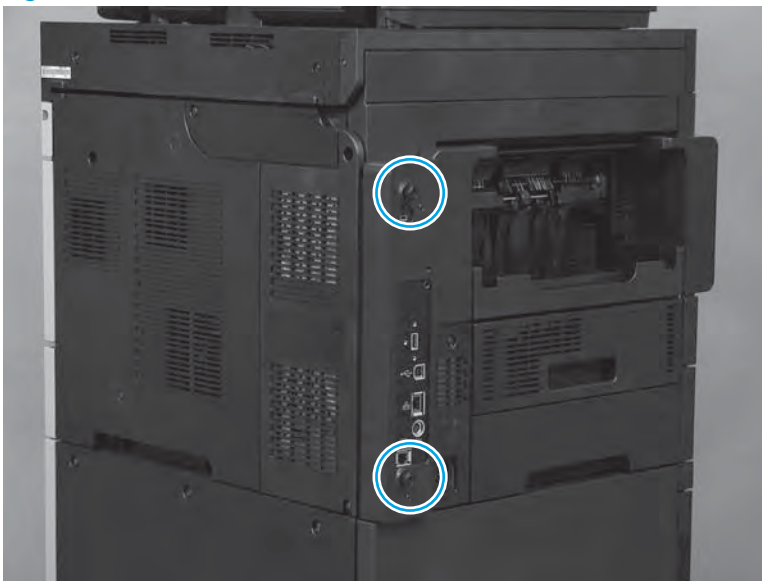
- a. Turn off the product.
- b. Disconnect the power cable.

**WARNING!**  To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

- c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.

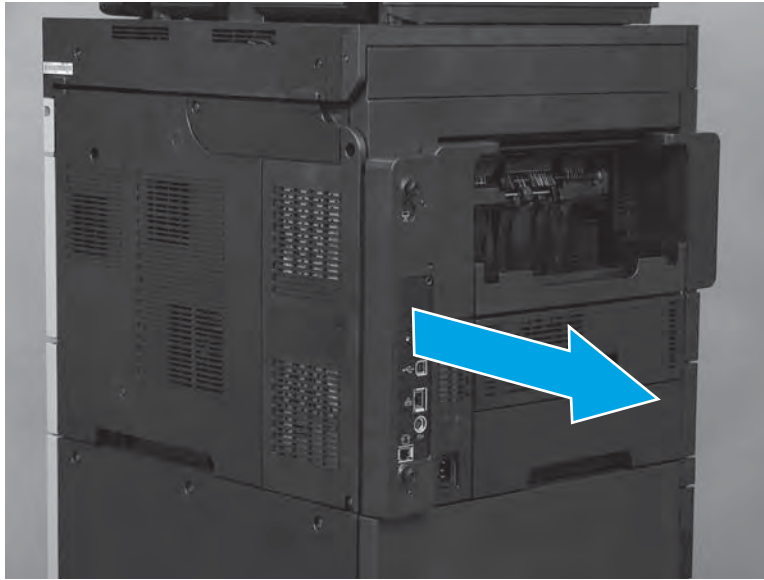
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

**Figure 1-740** Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

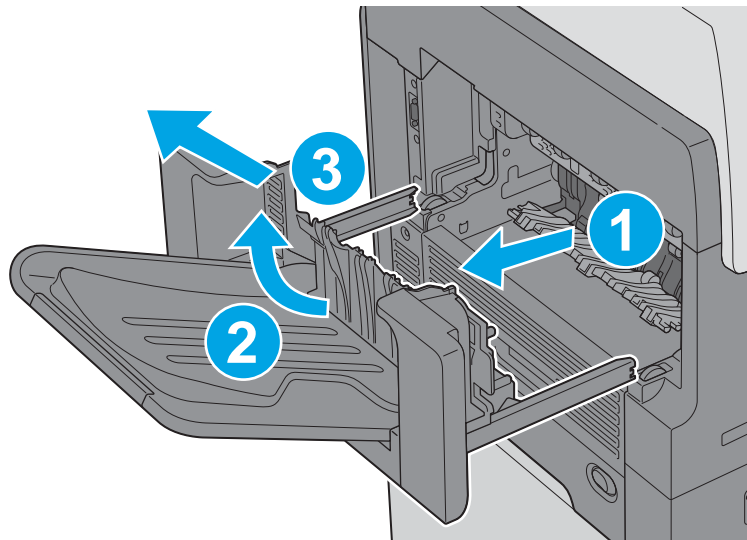
**Figure 1-741** Remove the formatter



## Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

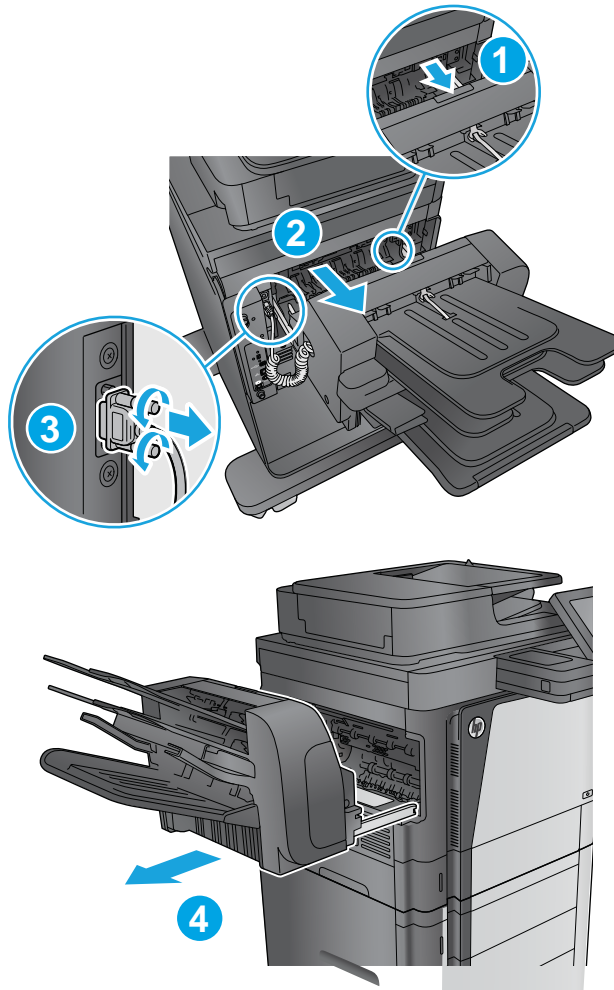
- ▲ Do one of the following steps:
  - a. **M630dn and M630f:** Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

**Figure 1-742** Remove the output bin




- b. **M630z:** Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

**Figure 1-743** Remove the stapling mailbox



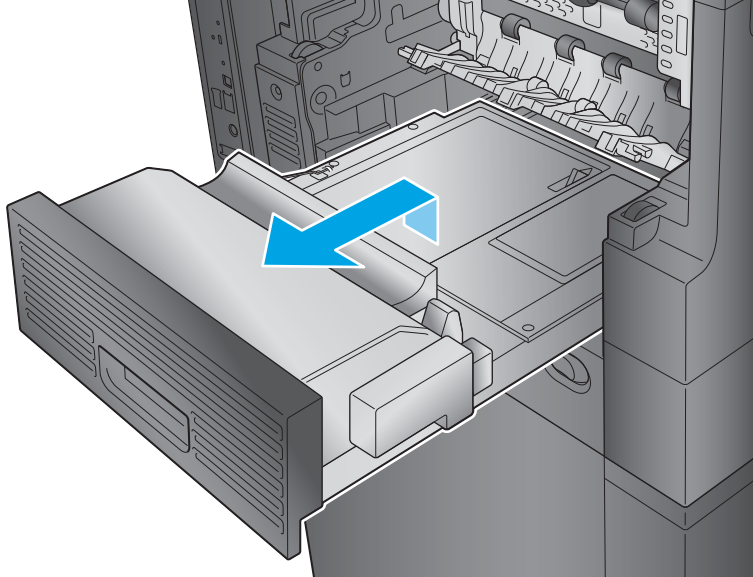
### Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory

- ▲ Slide the duplex assembly away from the product, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails, and then remove it.

 **NOTE:** Locate the duplexer at the left-hand side of the product.



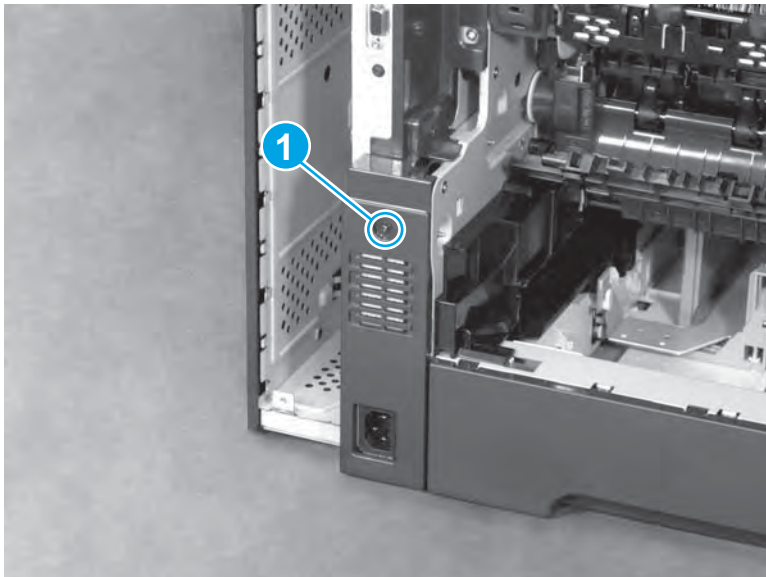
**Figure 1-744** Remove the duplex accessory



**Step 4: Remove the side-rear cover**

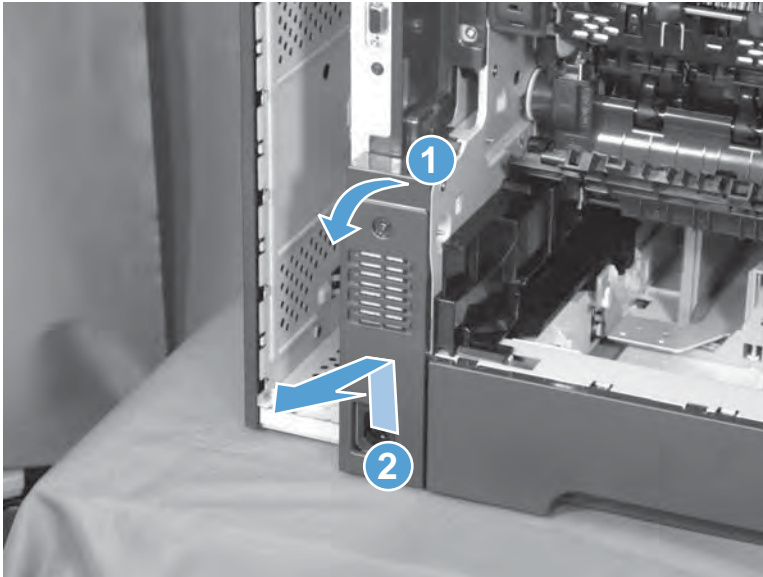
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-745** Remove one screw



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the product (callout 1), slightly raise the cover to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

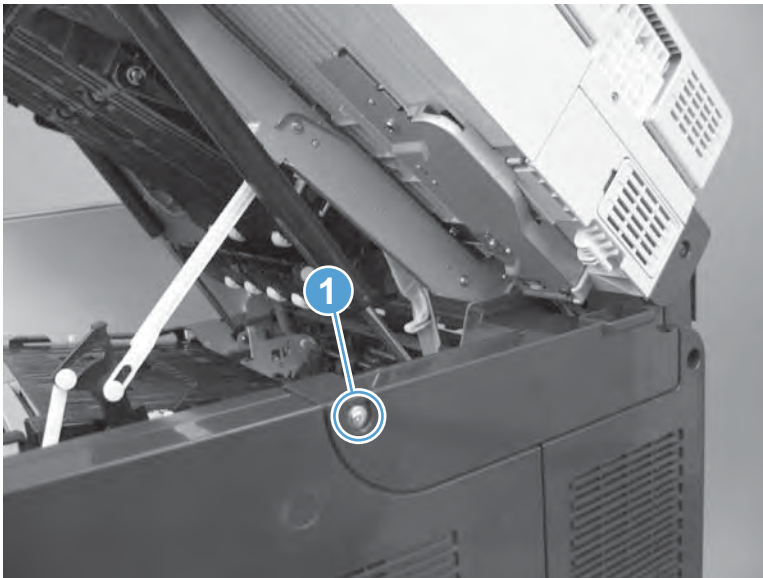
**Figure 1-746** Remove the side-rear cover



### Step 5: Remove the image scanner cable cover

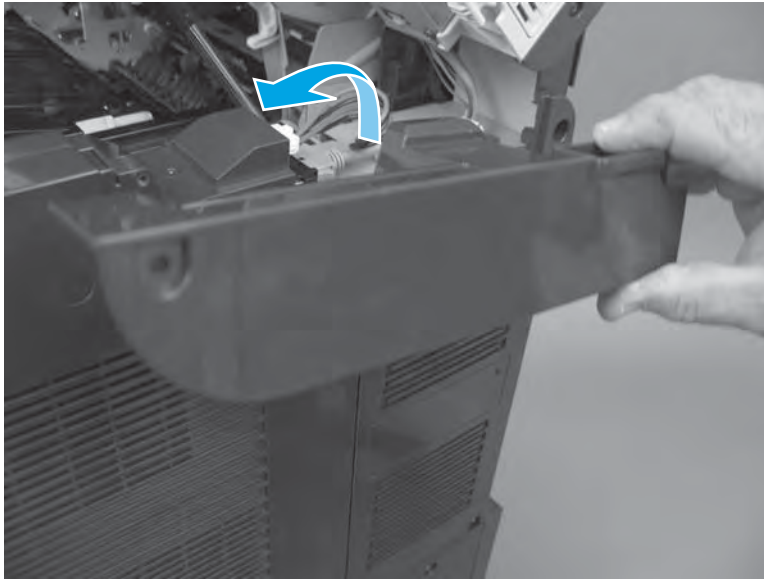
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-747** Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

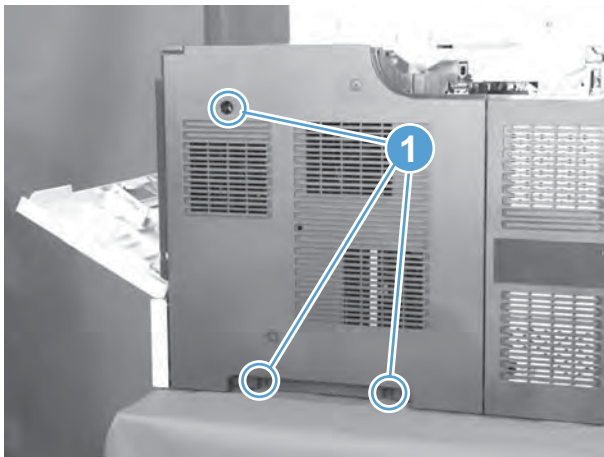
**Figure 1-748** Remove the cover



### Step 6: Remove the rear-right cover

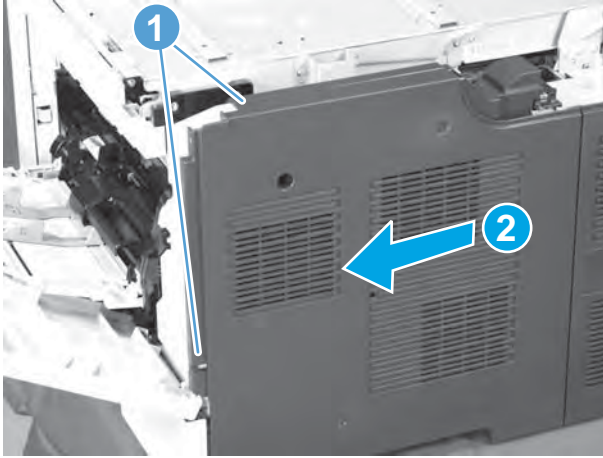
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-749** Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

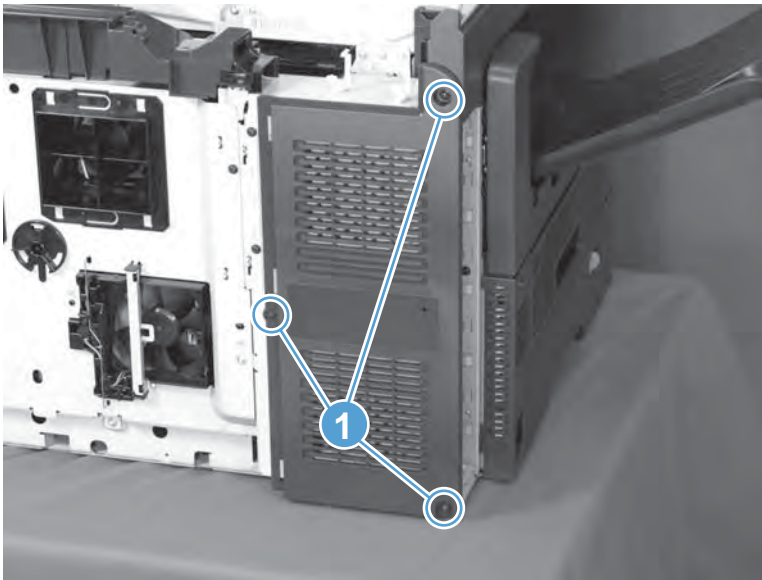
**Figure 1-750** Remove the cover



### Step 7: Remove the rear-left cover

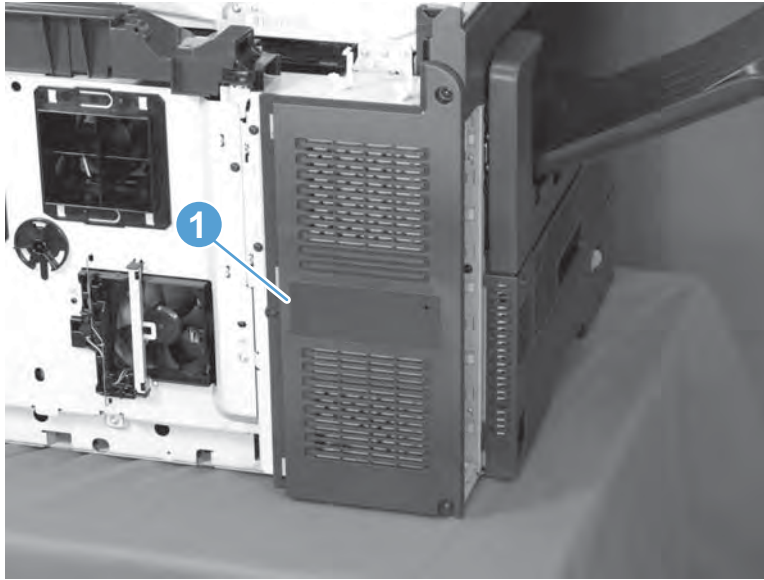
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-751** Remove three screws



2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

**Figure 1-752** Remove the cover

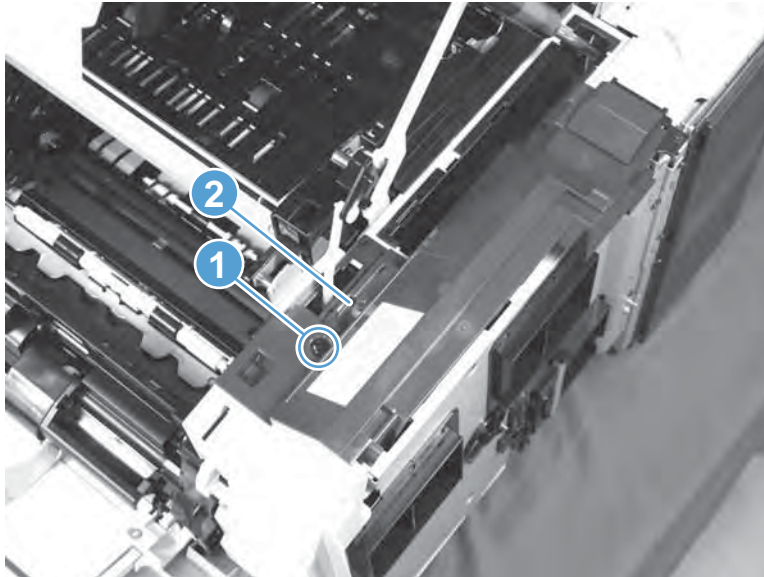


### Step 8: Remove the rear-top cover

 **NOTE:** If the top cover is closed, open it now.

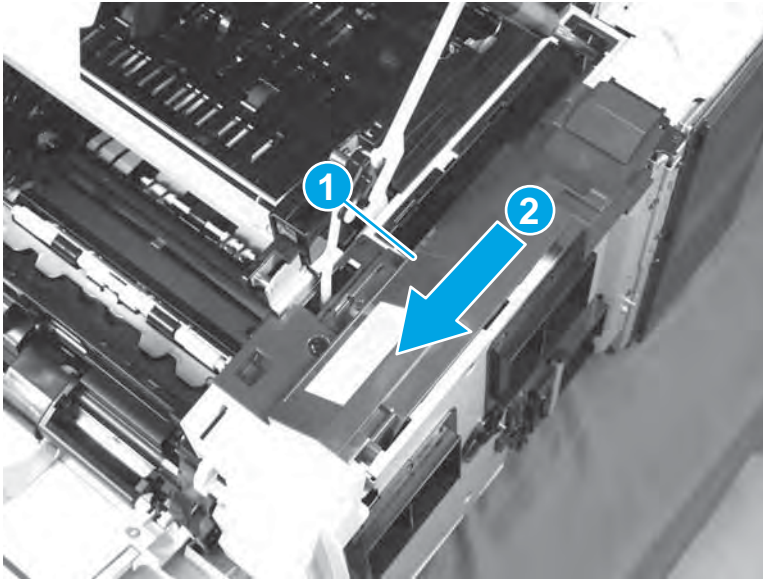
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

**Figure 1-753** Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-754** Remove the cover

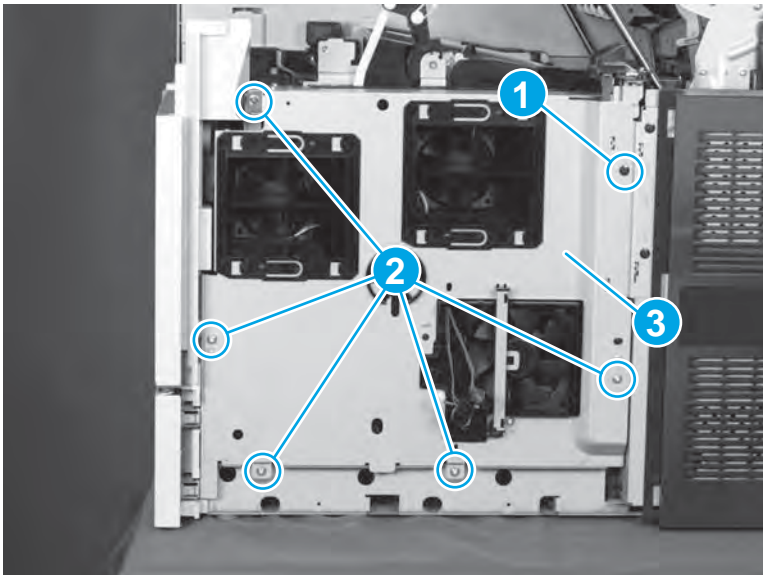


### Step 9: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

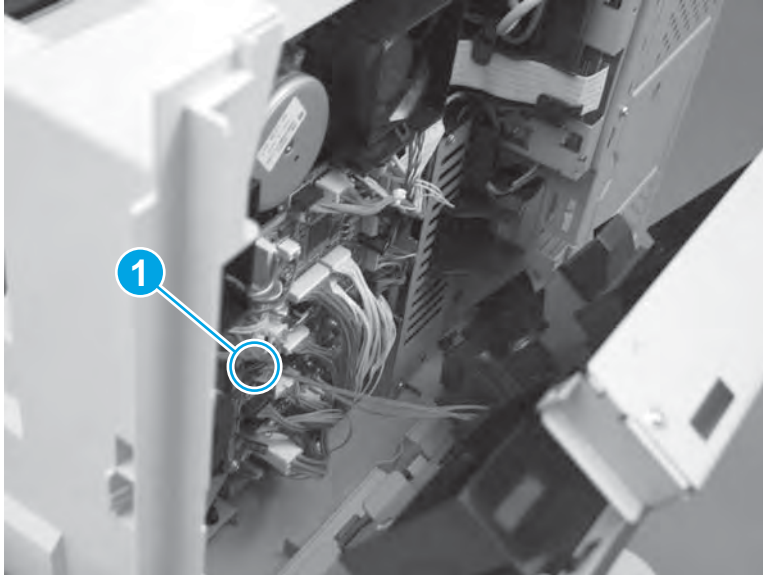
**CAUTION:** The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

**Figure 1-755** Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

**Figure 1-756** Disconnect one connector and remove the shield

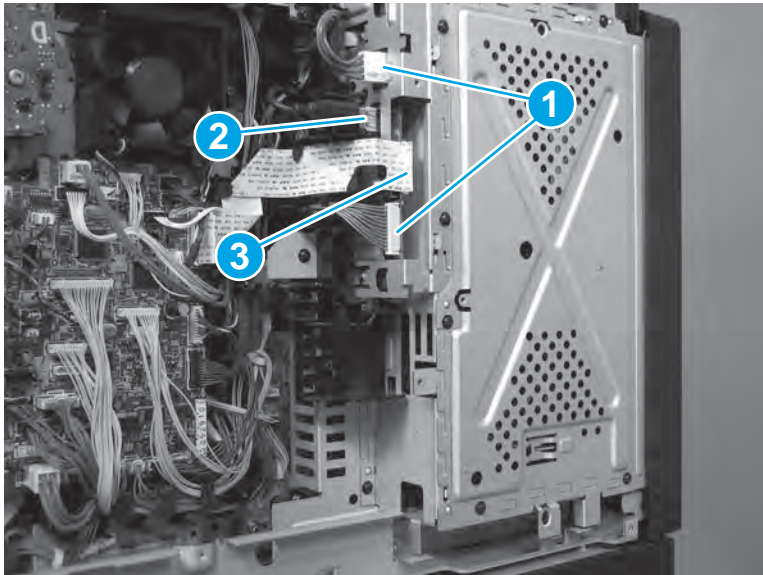


### Step10: Remove the ICB


 ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), one USB connector (callout 2), and then disconnect one FFC (callout 3).

**Figure 1-757** Disconnect four connectors

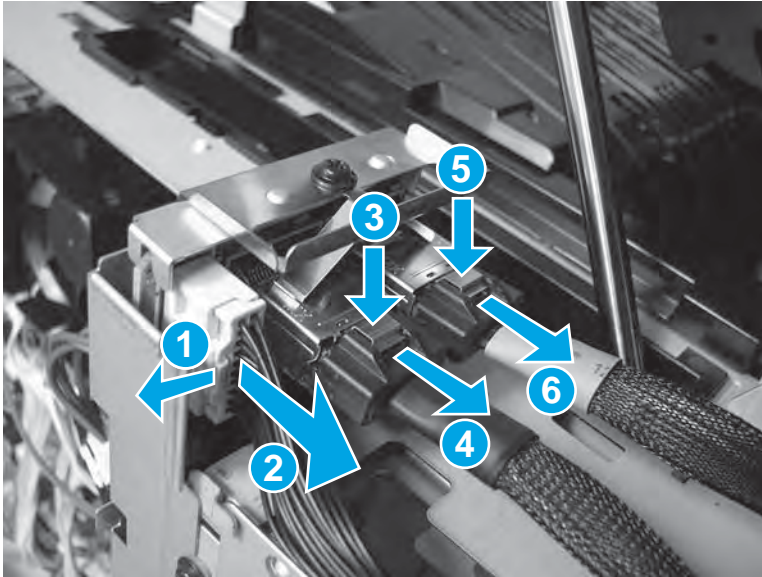


2. Use a small flat-blade screw driver to release three connectors.

 **TIP:** When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callouts 3/4/5/6) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

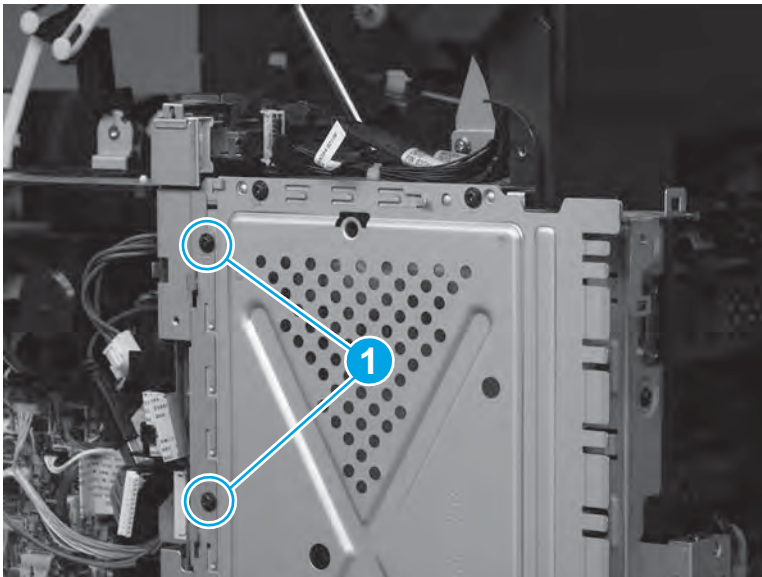
The wire harness with the blue band (callouts 5/6) connects to the inner connector on the ICB when reinstalled.

**Figure 1-758** Disconnect three connectors



3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

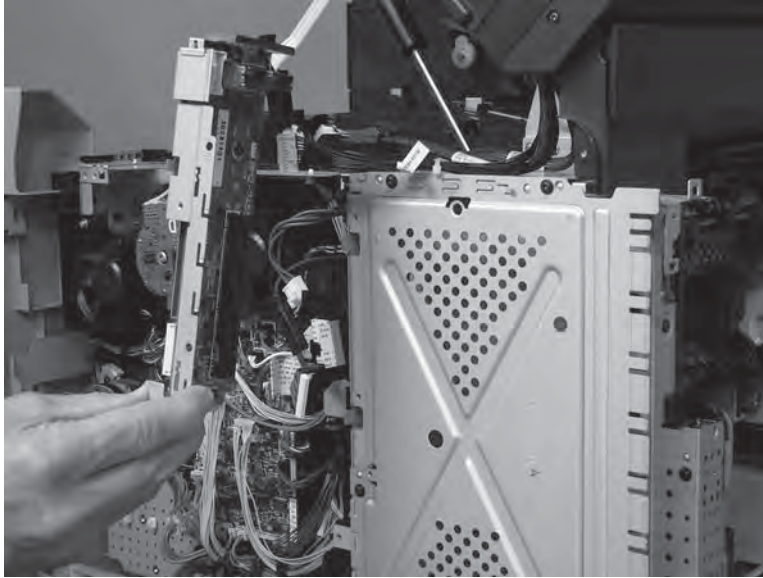
**Figure 1-759** Remove two screws





4. Remove the ICB.

**Figure 1-760** Remove the ICB

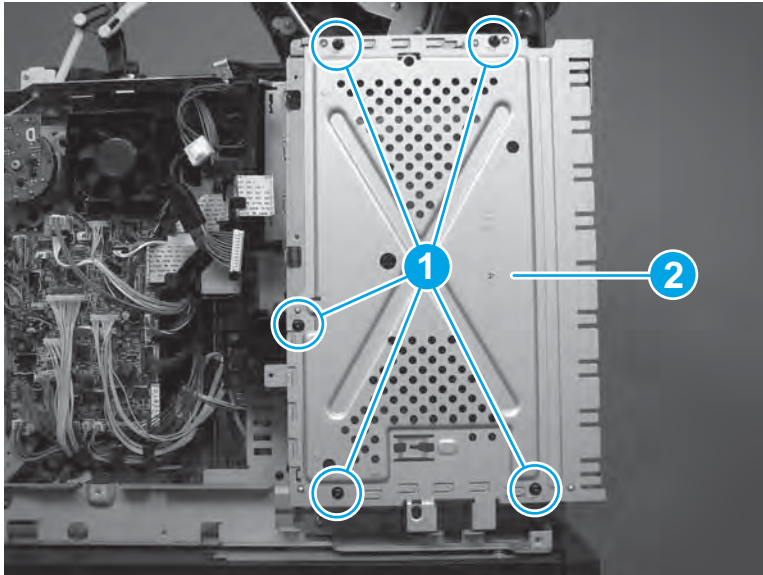


### Step 11: Remove the LVPS

 ESD sensitive assembly.

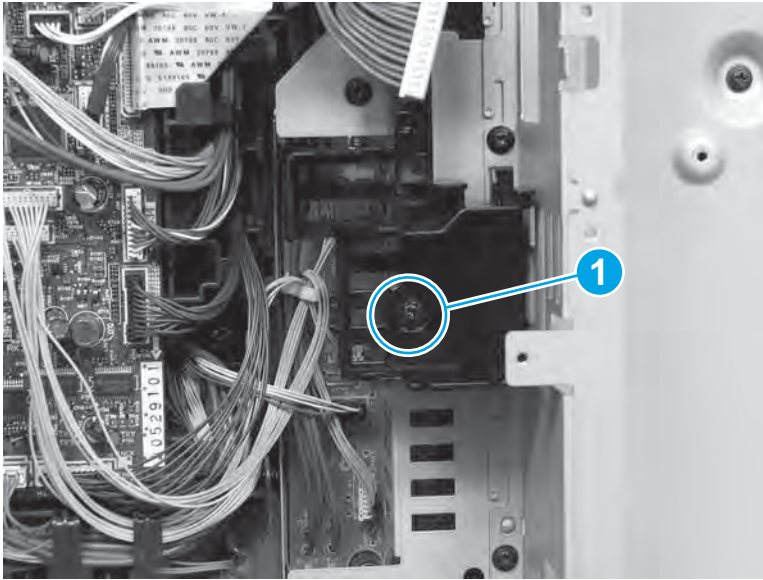
1. Remove five screws (callout 1), and the sheet-metal plate (callout 2).

**Figure 1-761** Remove the sheet-metal plate




2. Remove one screw (callout 1) near the DC controller.

**Figure 1-762** Remove one screw



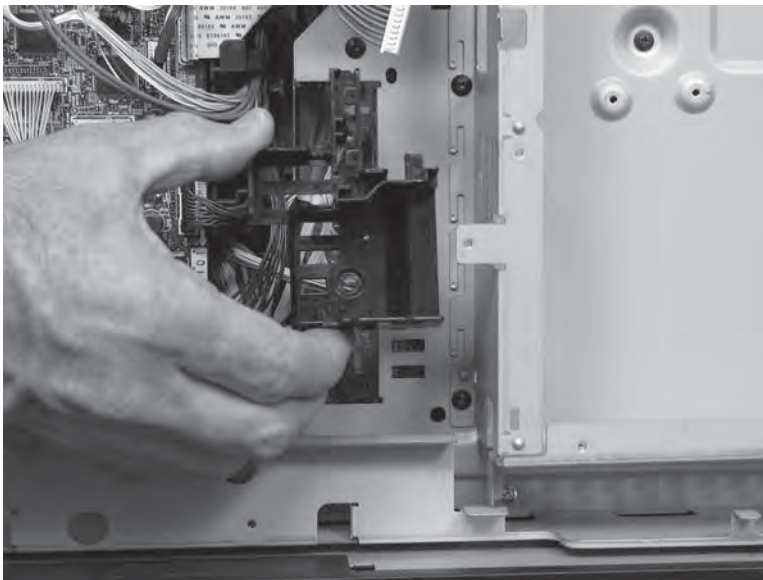
3. Remove the guide (callout 1).

---

 **Reinstallation tip:** Insert the hook at the top of the guide into the slot in the chassis, and then rotate the bottom of the guide into place.

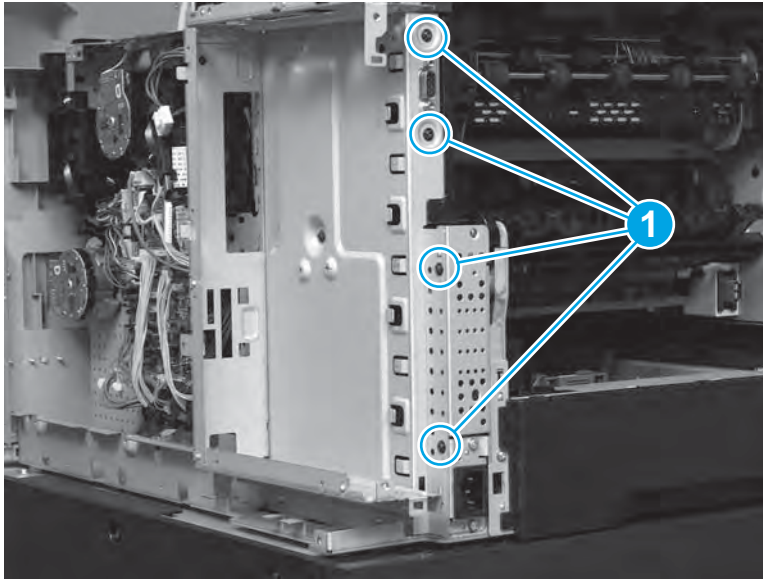
---

**Figure 1-763** Remove the guide




4. Remove four black screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-764** Remove four screws



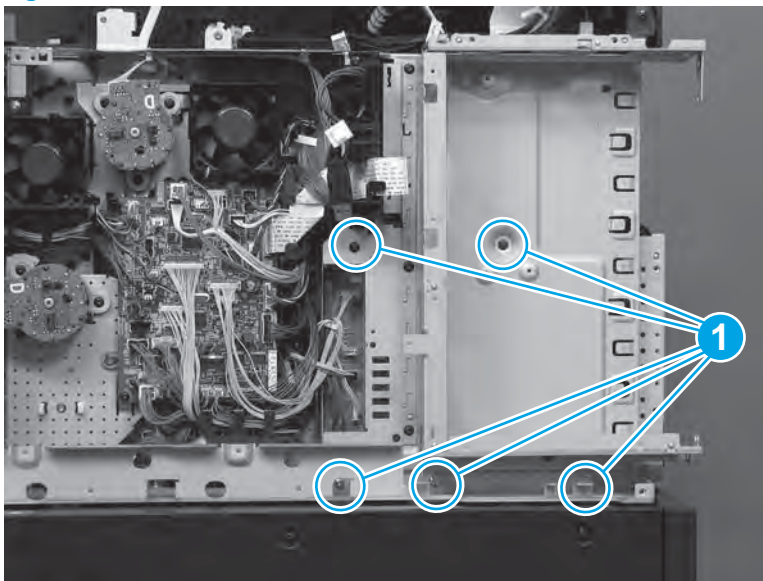
5. Remove five screws (callout 1).

---

 **NOTE:** The two upper screws are black, and the three screws across the bottom are silver.

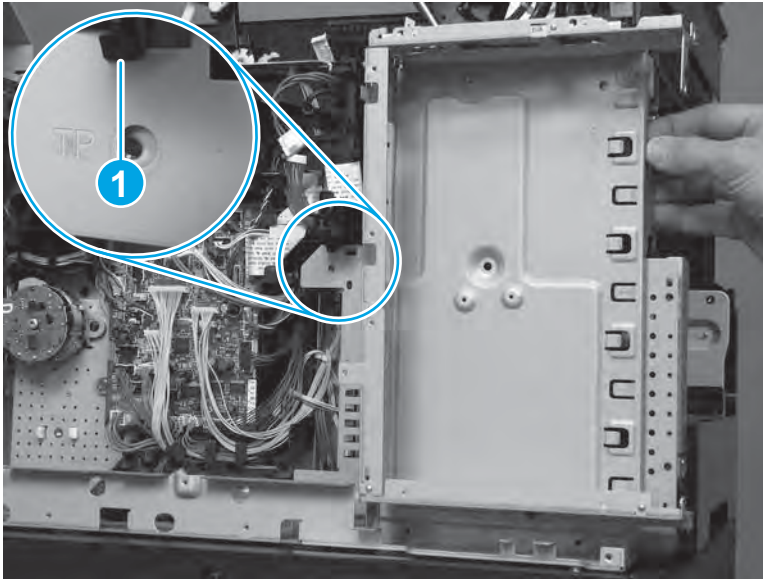
---

**Figure 1-765** Remove two screws



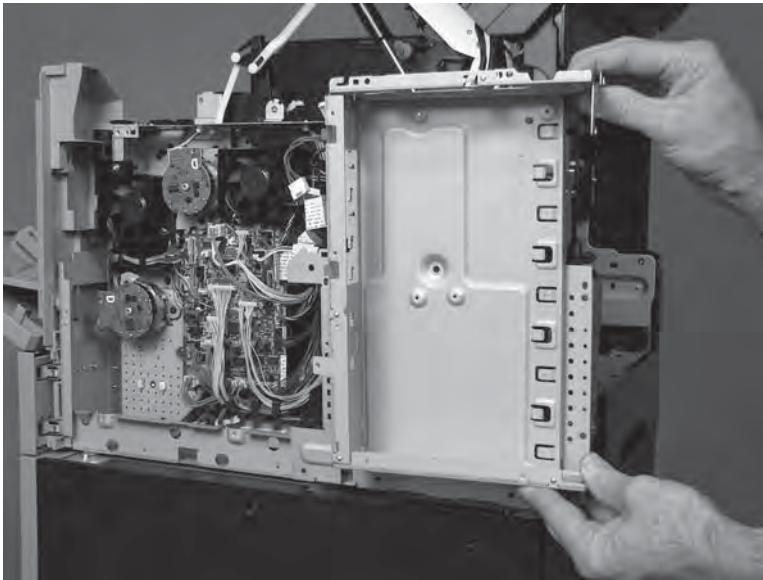
6. Slightly separate the sheet-metal plate from the product, and then release one tab (callout 1).

**Figure 1-766** Release one tab





7. Remove the sheet-metal plate from the product.

**Figure 1-767** Remove the sheet-metal plate

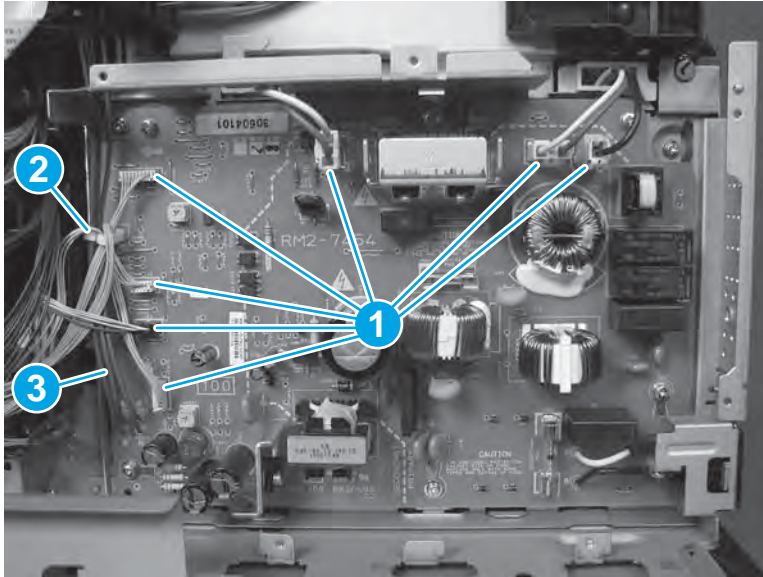


8. Disconnect seven connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** These wire-harnesses are stiff and can make the connectors difficult to disconnect.

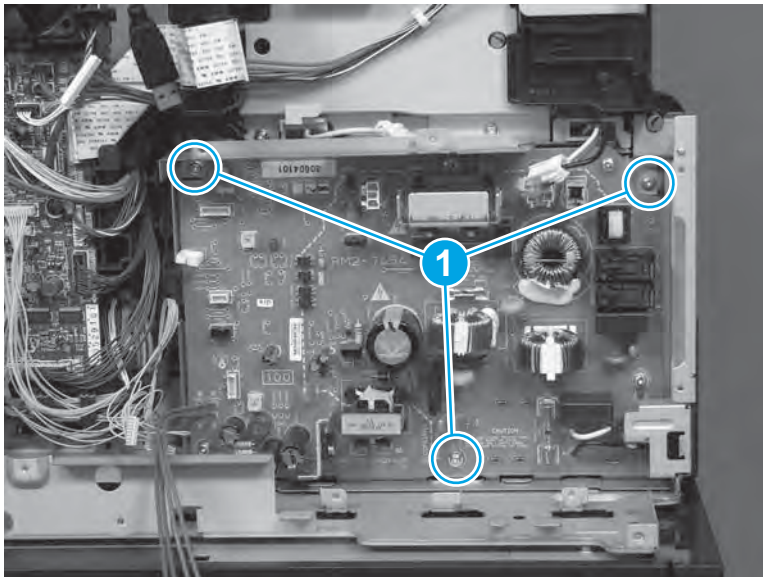
 **TIP:** The 4-wire wire harness (callout 3; two brown and 2 blue wires) cannot be disconnected from the LVPS, and does not need to be released from the retainer.

**Figure 1-768** Disconnect seven connectors



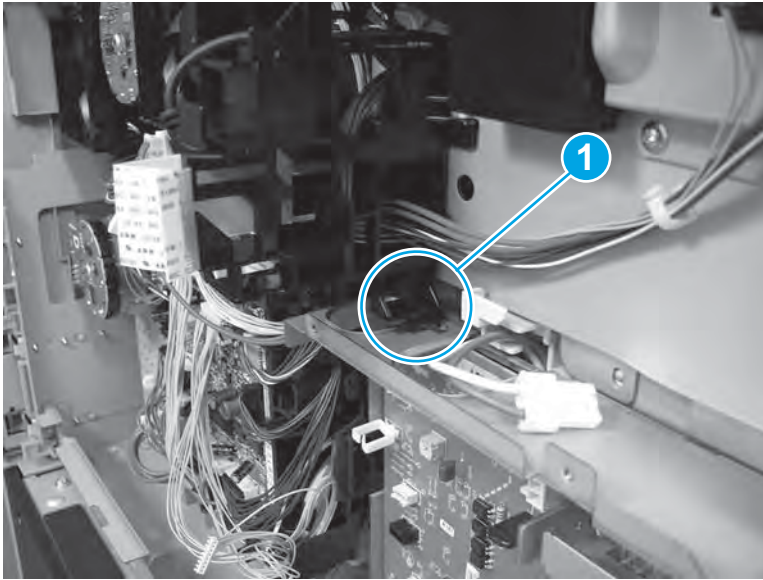
9. Remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-769** Remove three screws



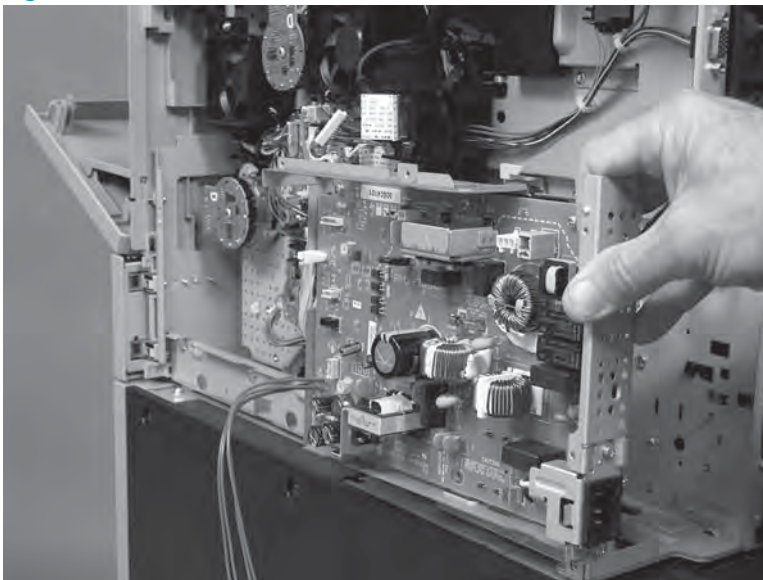
10. Release one tab (callout 1).

**Figure 1-770** Release one tab



11. Remove the LVPS.

**Figure 1-771** Remove the LVPS



## Step 12: Unpack the replacement LVPS

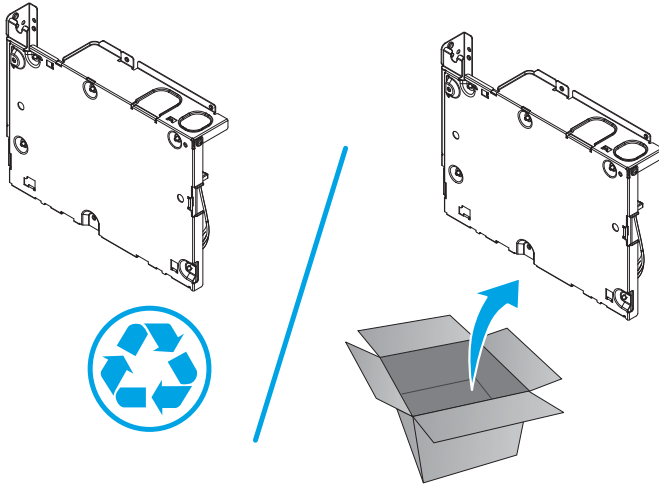
Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).



**NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.


**Figure 1-772** Recycle and unpack




## Step 13: Install the LVPS

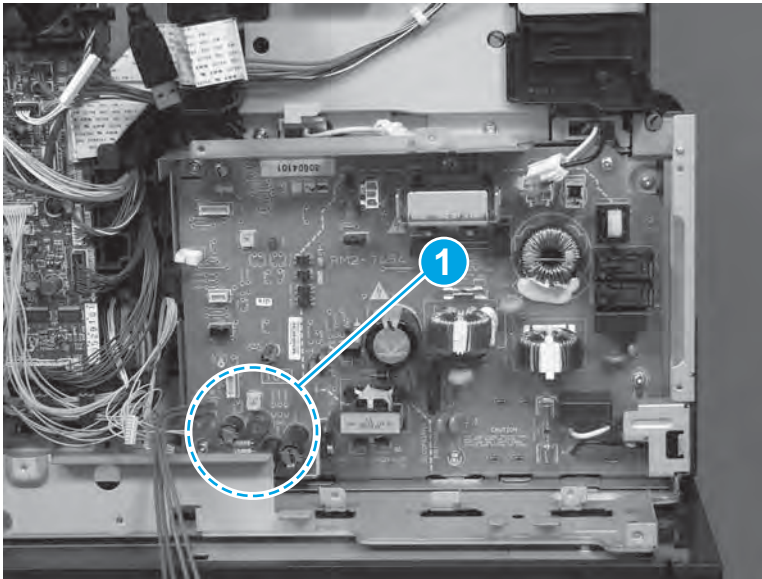
 ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Install the LVPS on the product.

 **IMPORTANT:** When installing the LVPS, make sure that the inline connector (callout 1; behind the LVPS) from the DC controller to the cassette media size switch (SW102) is fully seated. This connector is easily dislodged.

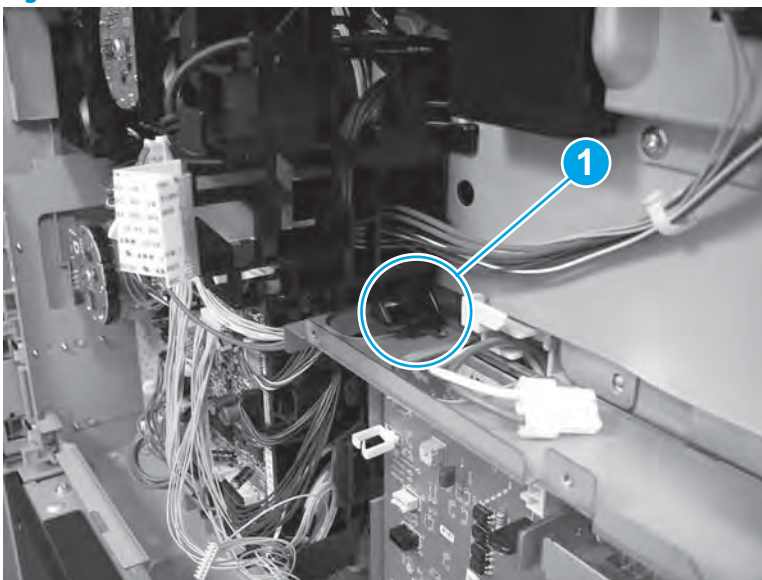
 **TIP:** If a Tray 2 removed error message appears on the control-panel display after servicing the product, check this connector.

**Figure 1-773** Install the LVPS



2. Make sure that the LVPS is installed behind one tab (callout 1).

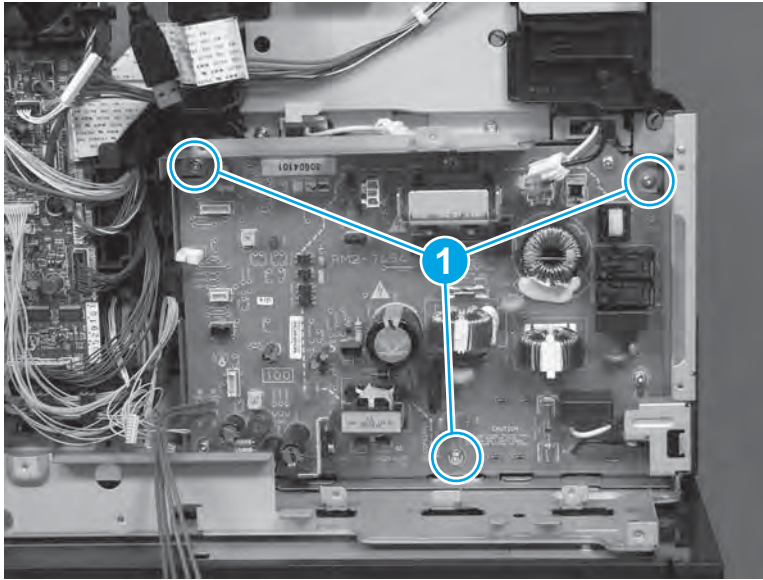
**Figure 1-774** Check one tab





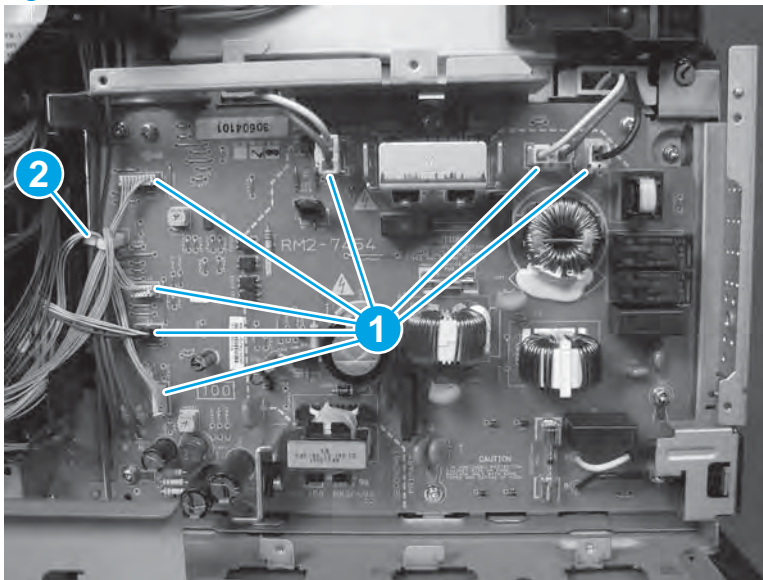
3. Install three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-775** Install three screws



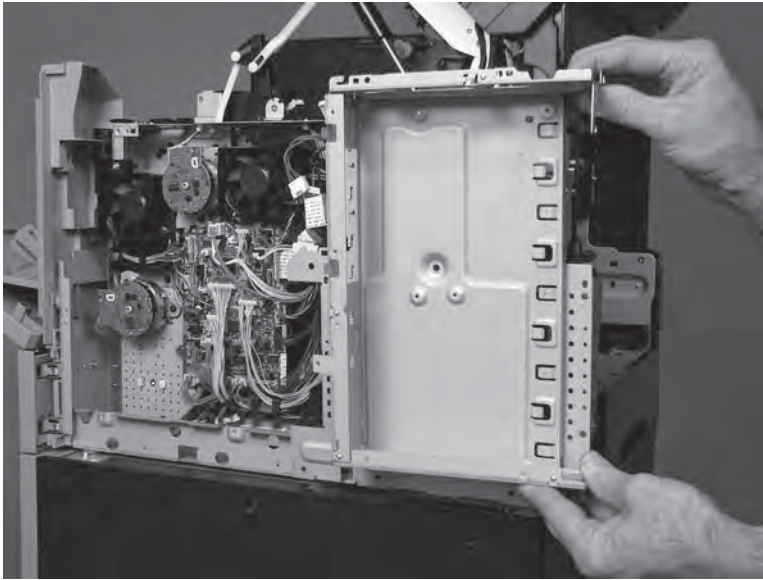
4. Connect seven connectors (callout 1), and then install the wire harness in the retainer (callout 2).

**Figure 1-776** Connect seven connectors



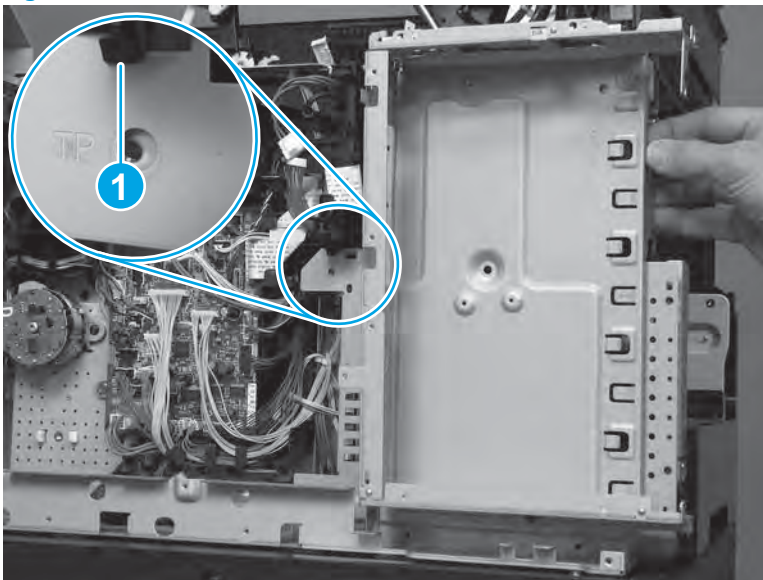
5. Install the sheet-metal plate on the product.

**Figure 1-777** Install the sheet-metal plate




6. Make sure that the sheet-metal plate is installed behind one tab (callout 1).

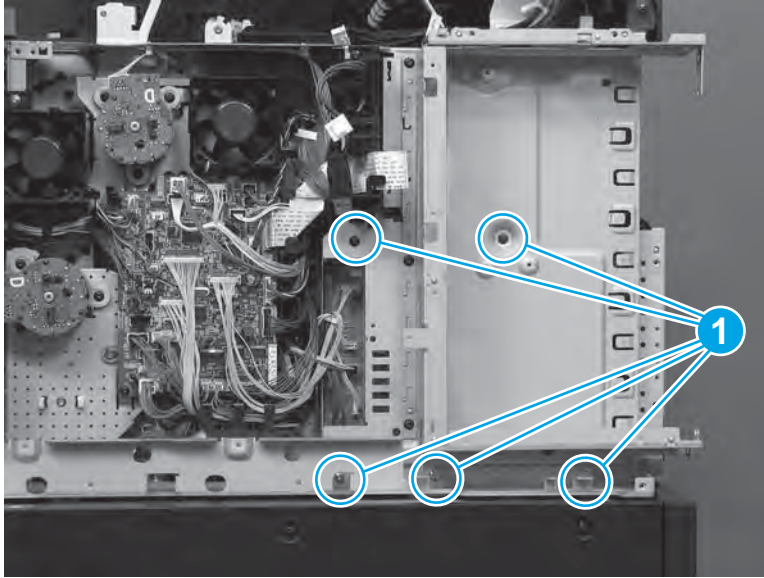
**Figure 1-778** Check one tab



7. Install five screws (callout 1).

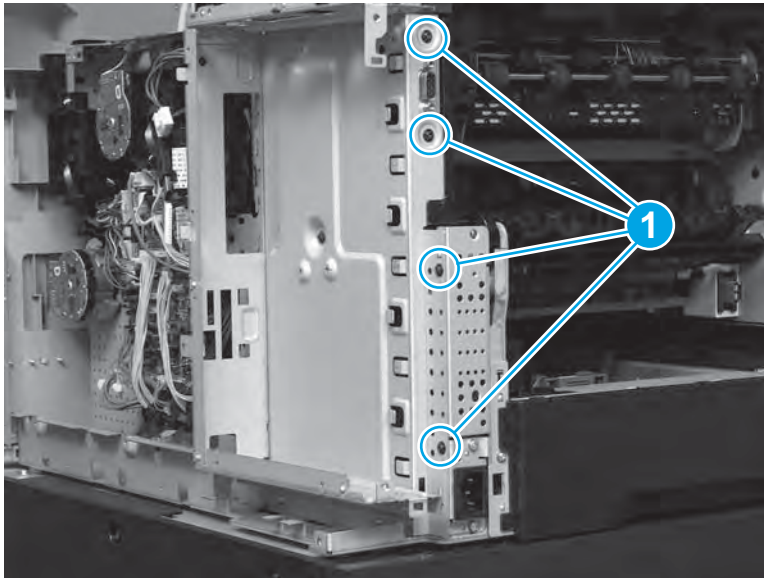
 **NOTE:** The two upper screws are black, and the three screws across the bottom are silver.

**Figure 1-779** Install five screws




8. Install four black screws (callout 1).

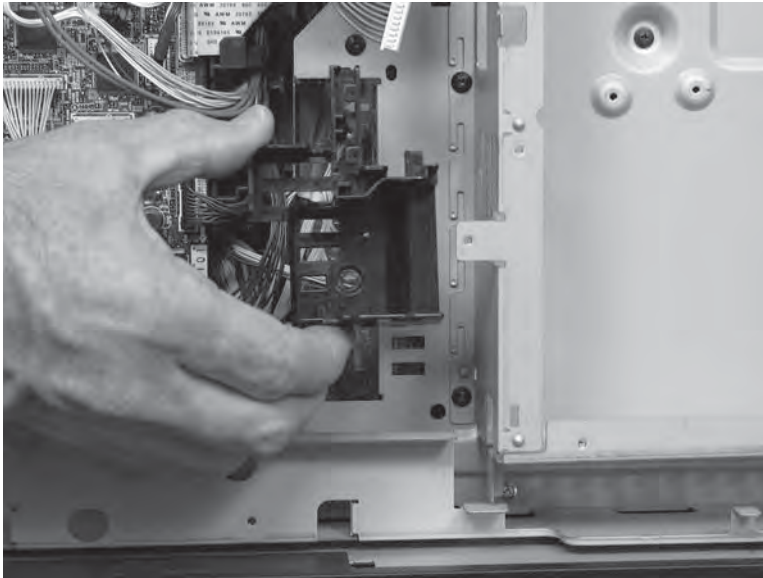
**Figure 1-780** Install four screws



9. Install the guide.

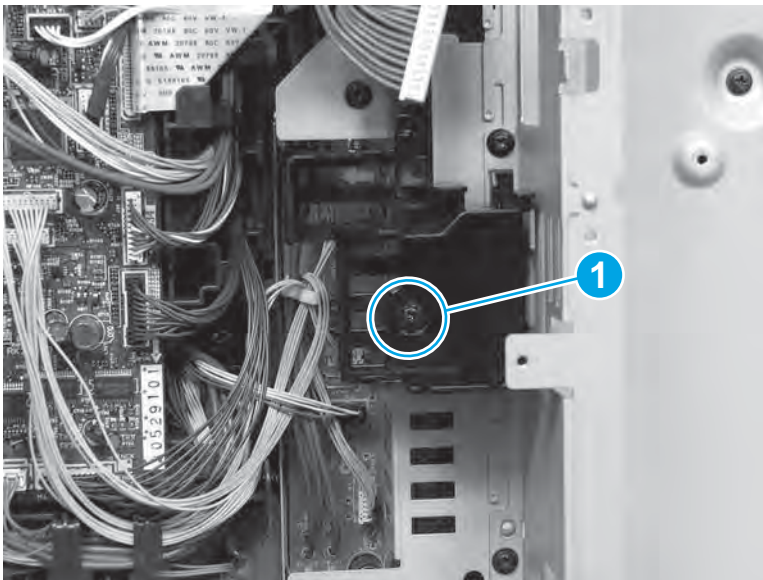
 **TIP:** Insert the hook at the top of the guide into the slot in the chassis, and then rotate the bottom of the guide into place.

**Figure 1-781** Install the guide



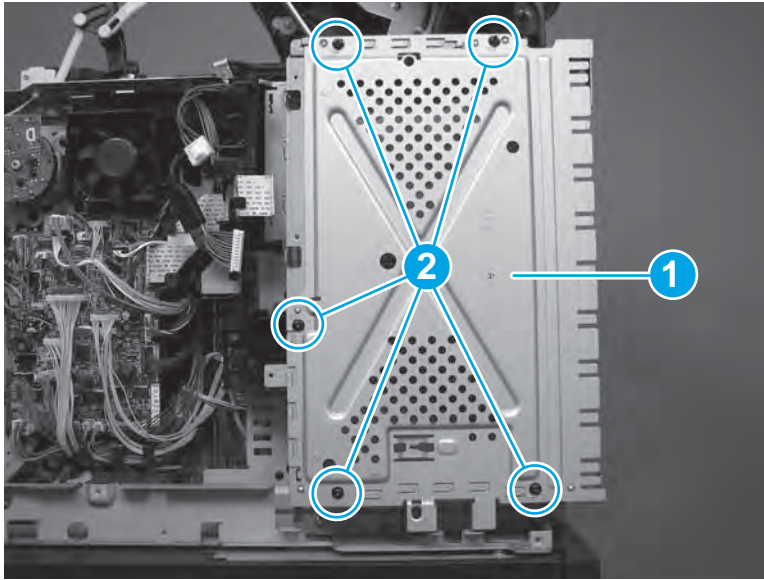
10. Install one screw (callout 1) near the DC controller.

**Figure 1-782** Install one screw



11. Install the sheet-metal plate (callout 1), and then install five screws (callout 2).

**Figure 1-783** Install the sheet-metal plate

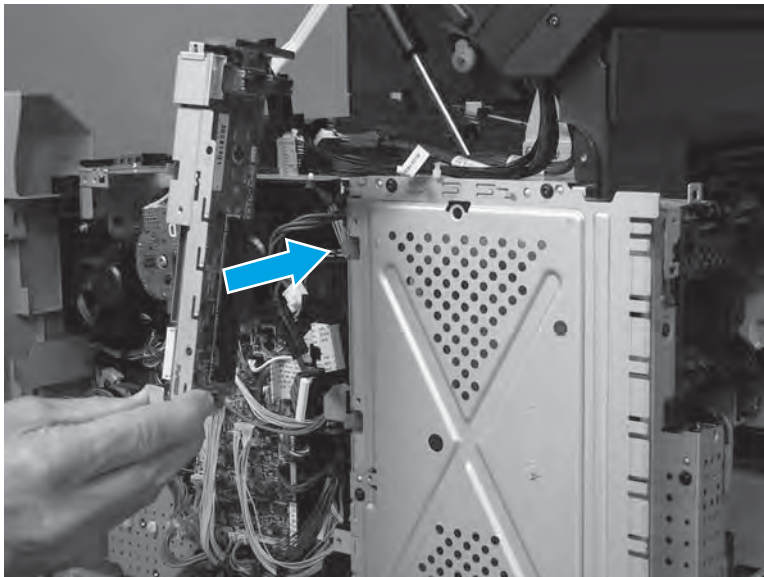


#### Step 14: Install the ICB

 ESD sensitive assembly.

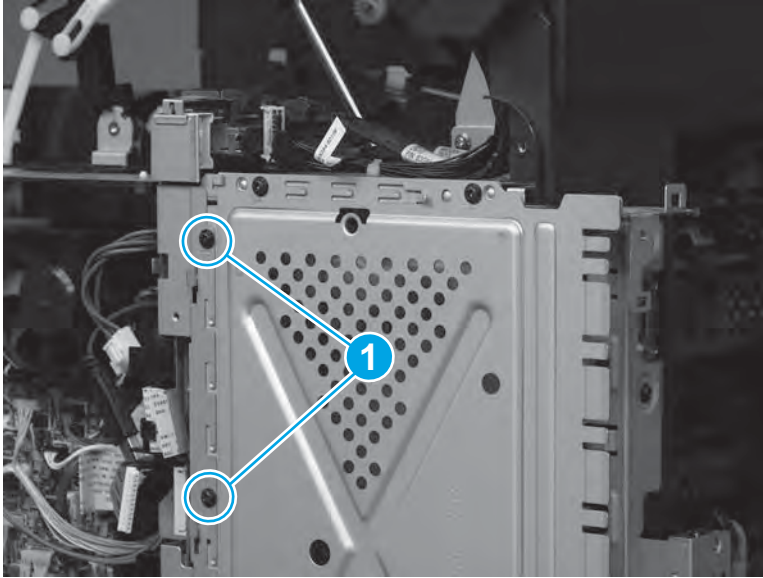
1. Install the ICB on the product.

**Figure 1-784** Install the ICB



2. Install two screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-785** Install two screws



3. At the top of the ICB, connect three connectors.

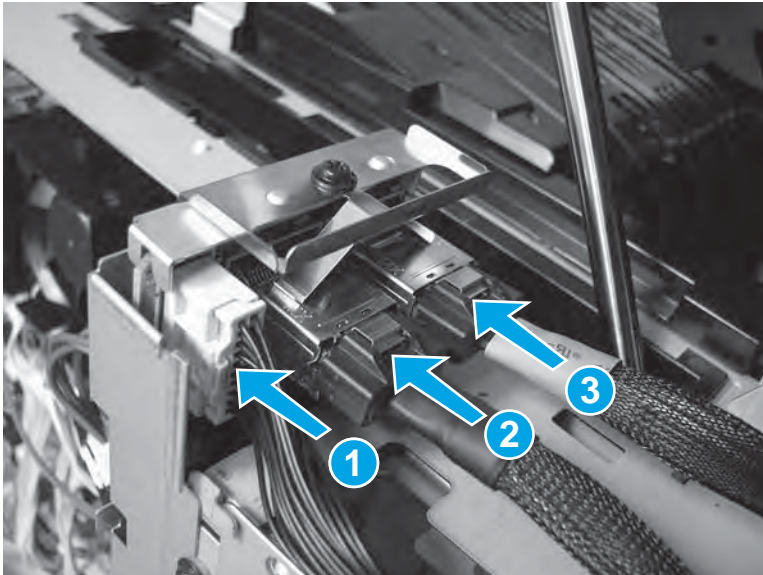
---

**TIP:** When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callouts 2/3) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

The wire harness with the blue band (callouts 3) connects to the inner connector on the ICB when reinstalled.

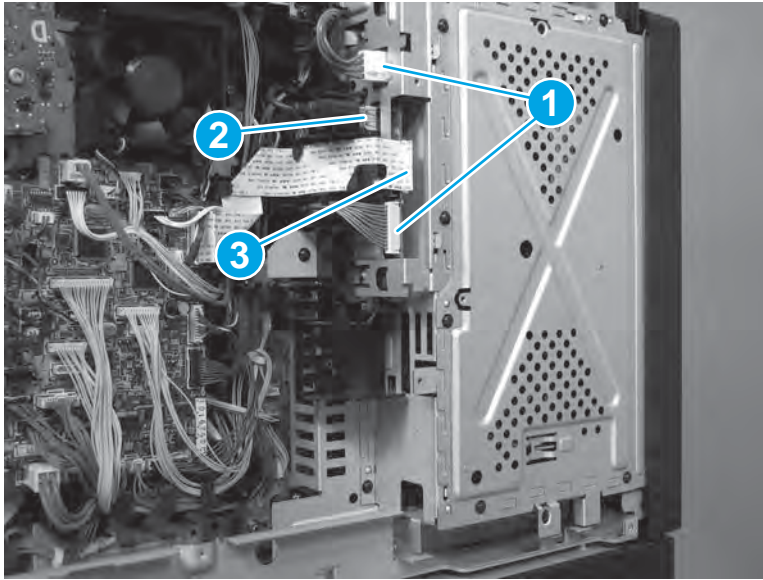
---

**Figure 1-786** Connect three connectors



4. Connect two connectors (callout 1), one USB connector (callout 2), and then connect one FFC (callout 3).

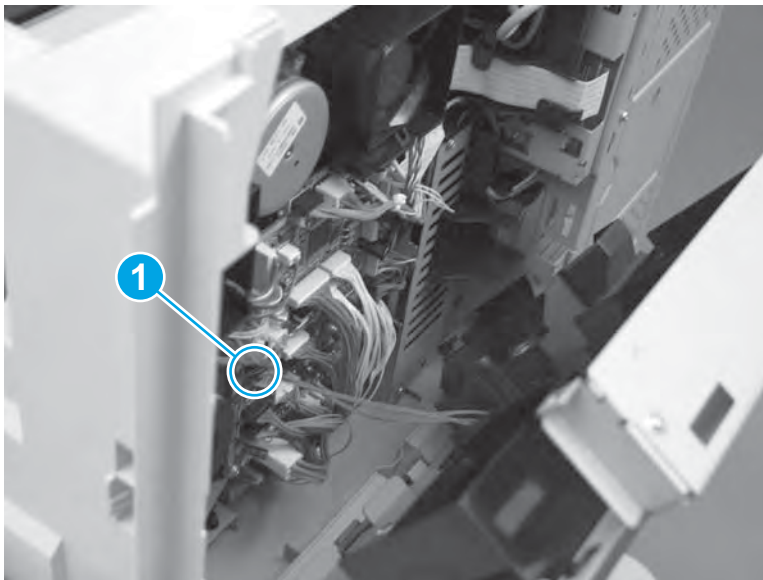
**Figure 1-787** Connect four connectors



### Step 15: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

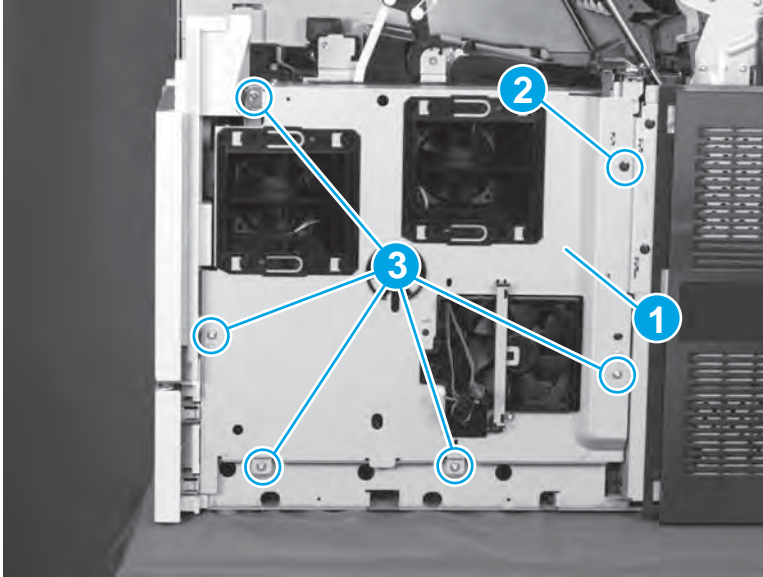
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

**Figure 1-788** Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

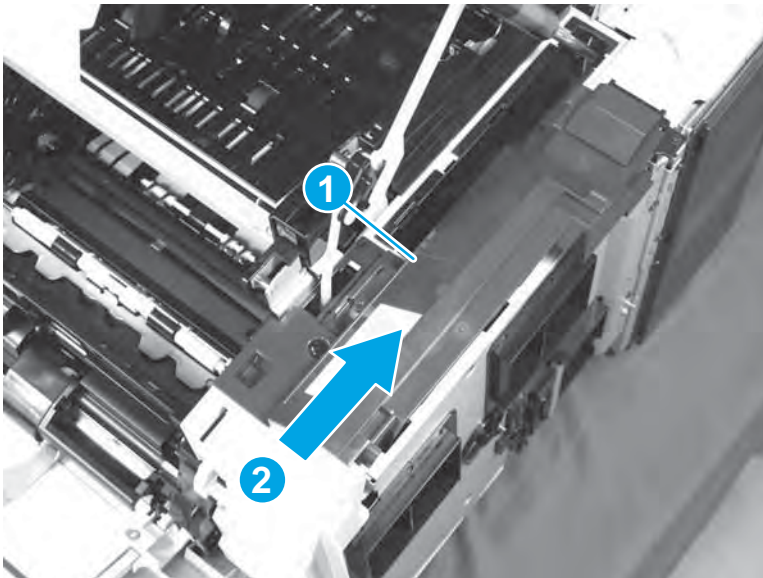
**Figure 1-789** Remove six screws



### Step 16: Install the rear-top cover

1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

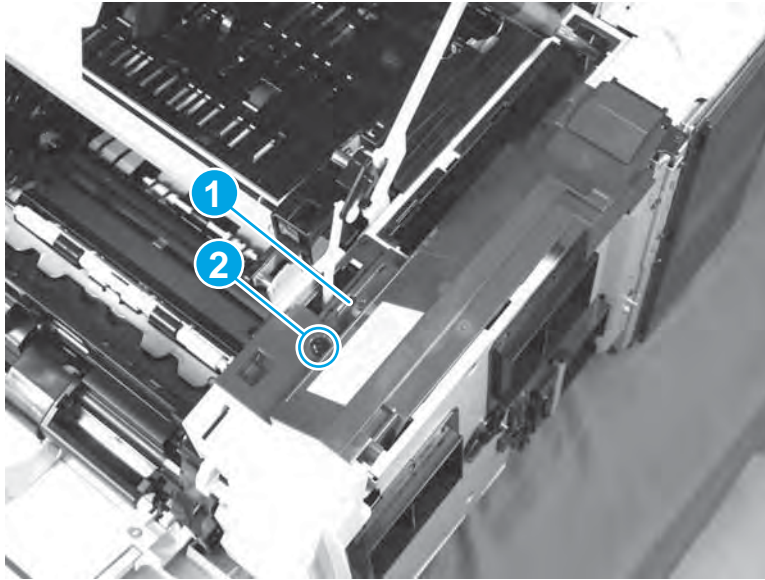
**Figure 1-790** Install the cover





2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

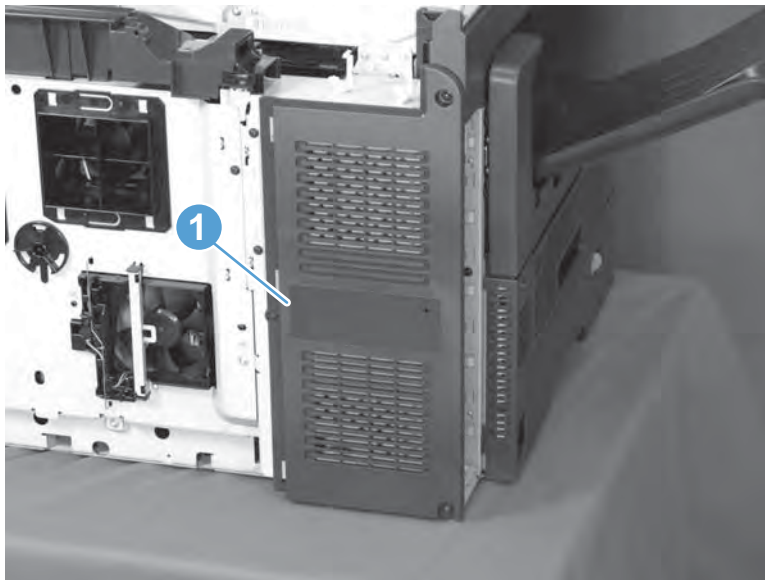
**Figure 1-791** Install one screw



### Step 17: Install the rear-left cover

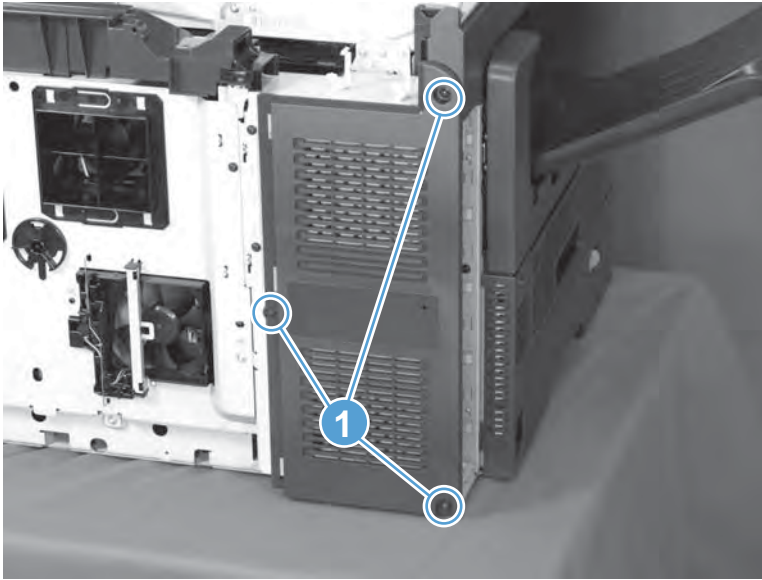
1. Position the cover (callout 1) on the product.

**Figure 1-792** Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1).

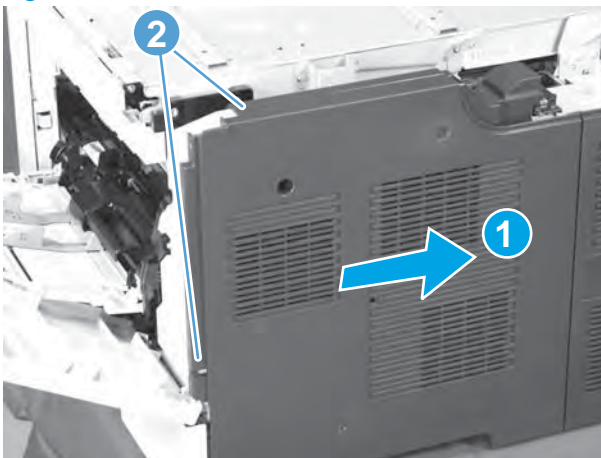
**Figure 1-793** Install three screws



### Step 18: Install the rear-right cover

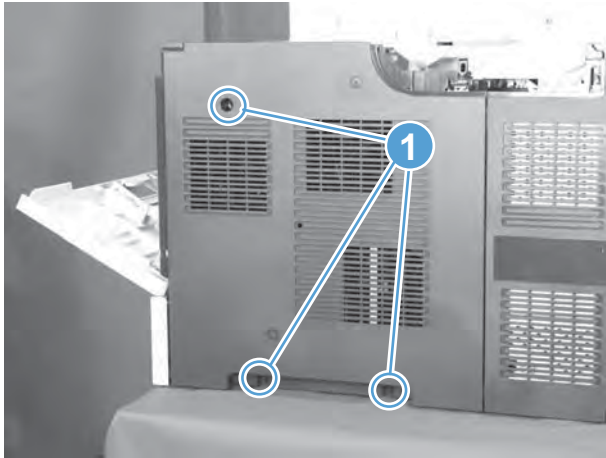
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

**Figure 1-794** Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

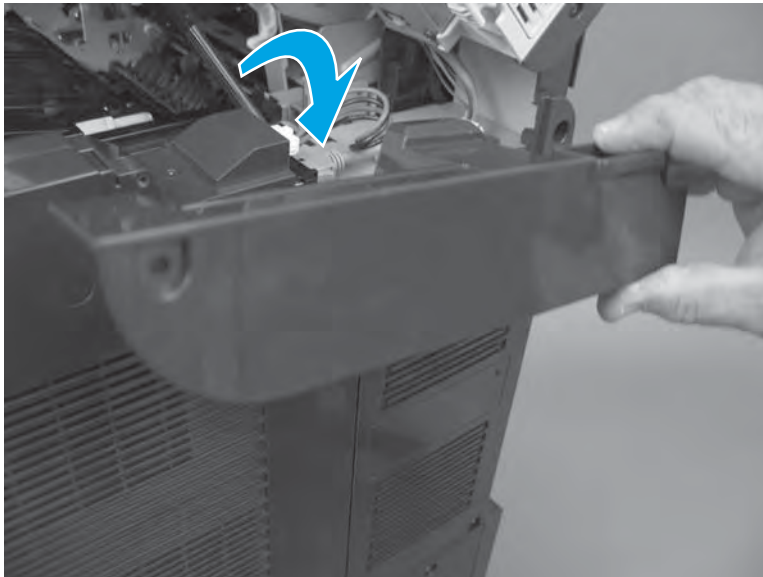
**Figure 1-795** Install three screws



### Step 19: Install the image scanner cable cover

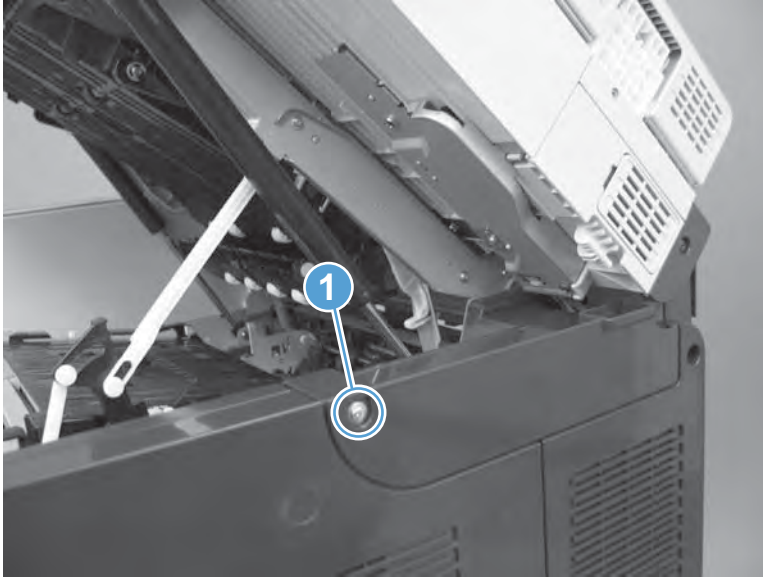
1. Install the cover on the product.

**Figure 1-796** Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

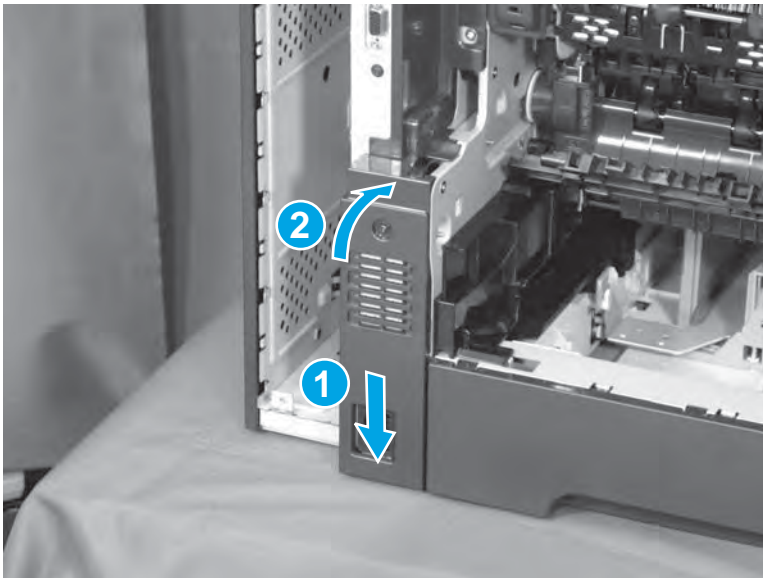
**Figure 1-797** Install one screw



### Step 20: Install the side-rear cover

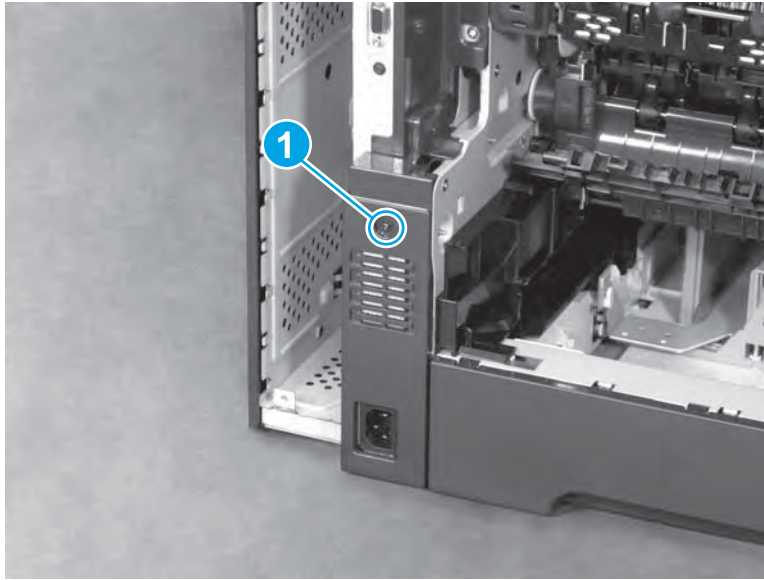
1. Position the bottom of the cover on the product (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the cover toward the product (callout 2) to install it.

**Figure 1-798** Install the side-rear cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1).


**Figure 1-799** Install one screw




### Step 21: Install the duplex accessory

- ▲ Position the duplex assembly on the product at a slight angle, engage the slide rails, and then slide the duplex assembly all of the way into the product to install it.

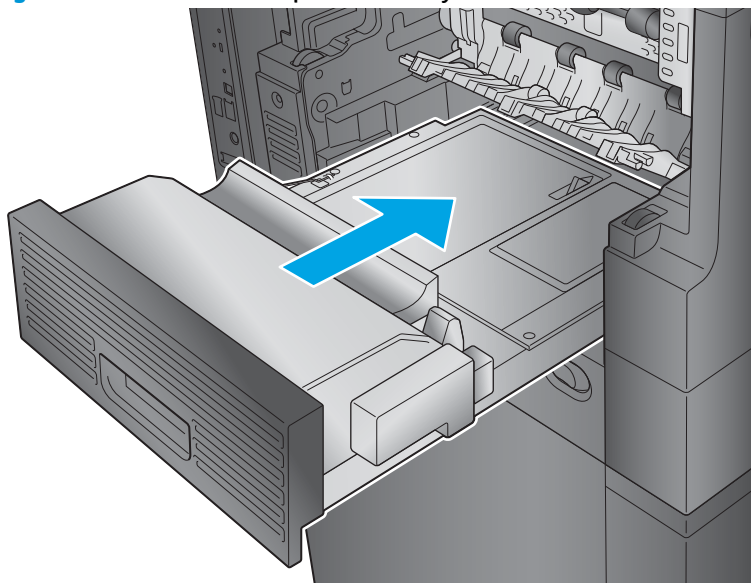
---

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that the duplex accessory is full installed.

 **NOTE:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed duplex accessory.

---

**Figure 1-800** Install the duplex accessory

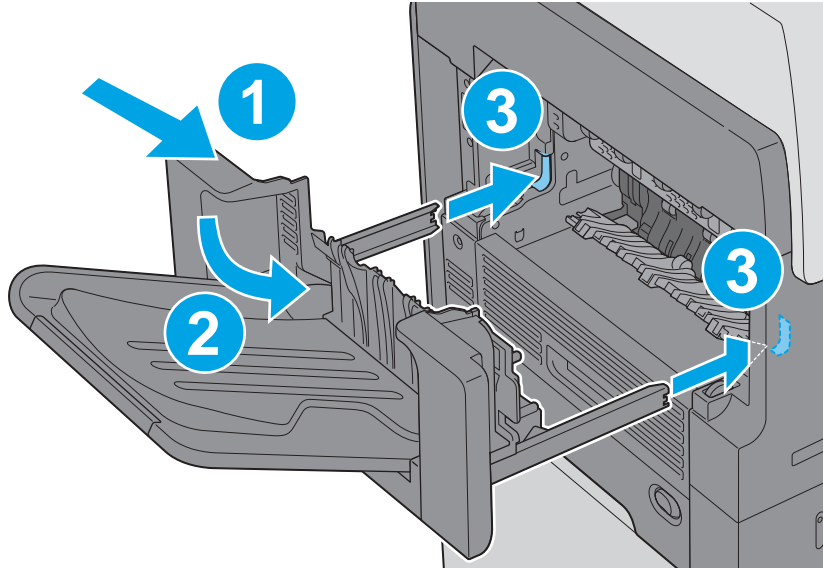


### Step 22: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox


- ▲ Do one of the following:

- a. **M630dn and M630f:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

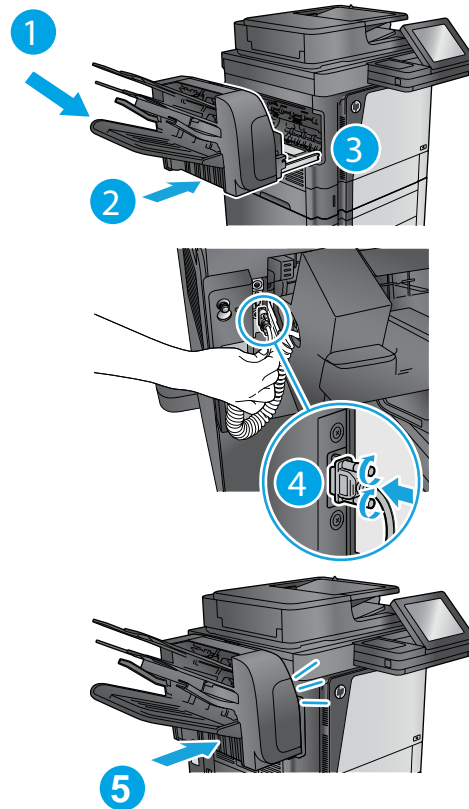
**Figure 1-801** Install the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4), and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.

 **TIP:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

**Figure 1-802** Install the stapling mailbox

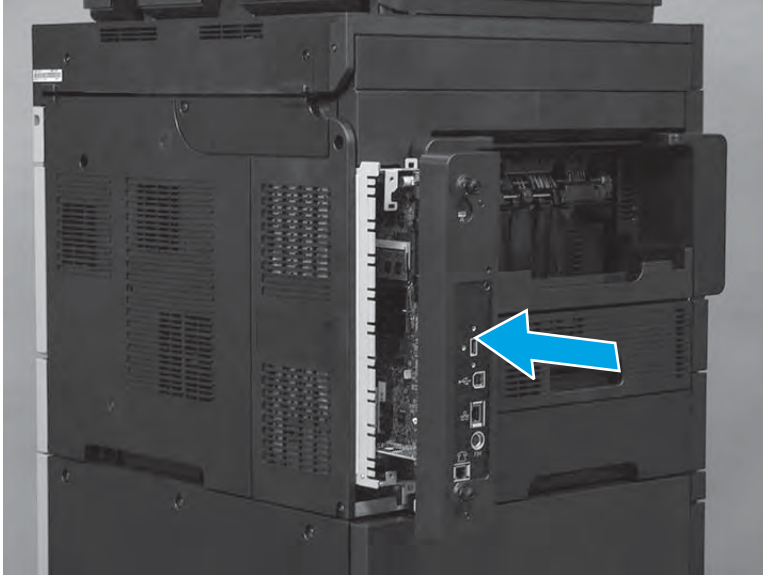


### Step 23: Install the formatter

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

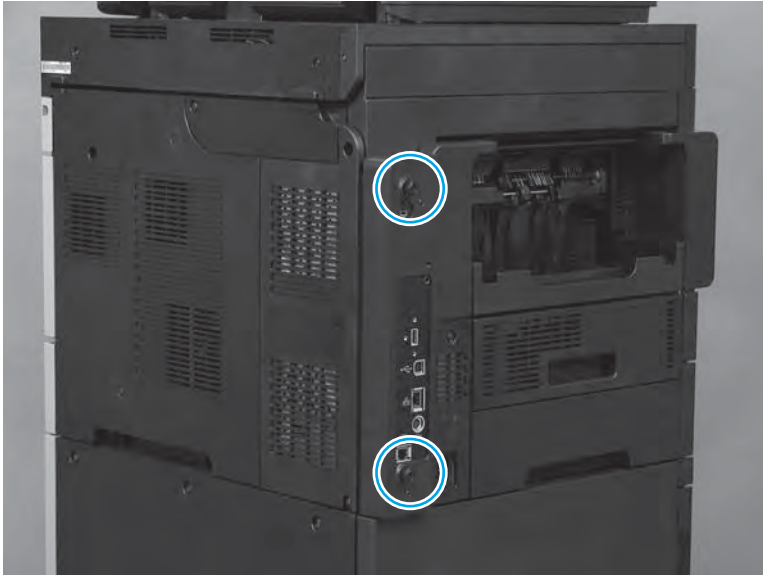
1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

**Figure 1-803** Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot



2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.


**Figure 1-804** Tighten the two thumbscrews



## Step 24: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:
  - a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.
  - b. Plug in the power cord.
2. Turn on the product.

---

 **TIP:** If the product does not initialize when the power is turned on, make sure that the memory DIMM is correctly installed.

---

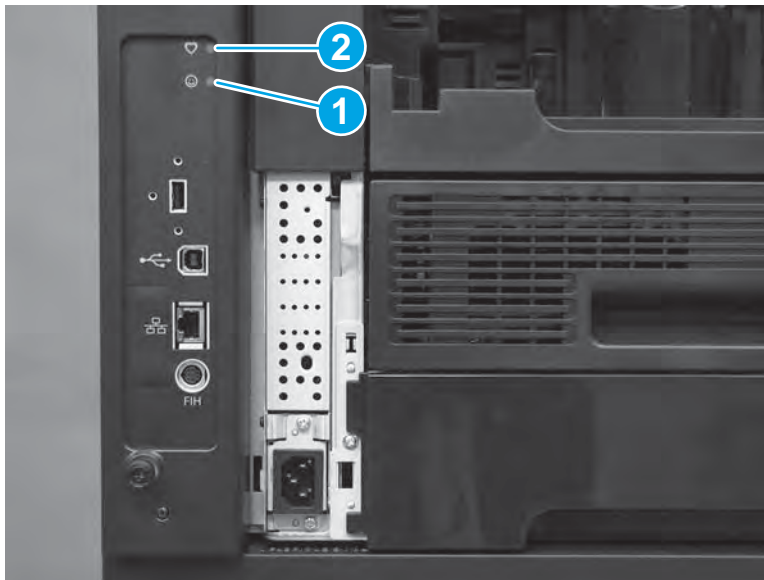


To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter:

- The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is functioning correctly.
  - While the product is initializing, the heartbeat LED illuminates solid red for about one second, and then turns solid green for about twenty seconds.
  - After the initialization sequence is complete, the heartbeat LED blinks continuously if the printer is functioning correctly.
- The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LEDs do not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).

**Figure 1-805** Verify that the formatter is functioning



## Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

## Lifter base assembly

### Remove the following assemblies:

- Formatter. See [Step 1: Remove the formatter on page 24](#).
- Output bin and bin base assembly. See [Output bin and bin base assembly on page 68](#).



**NOTE:** If the optional HP Stapling Mailbox is installed, remove it.

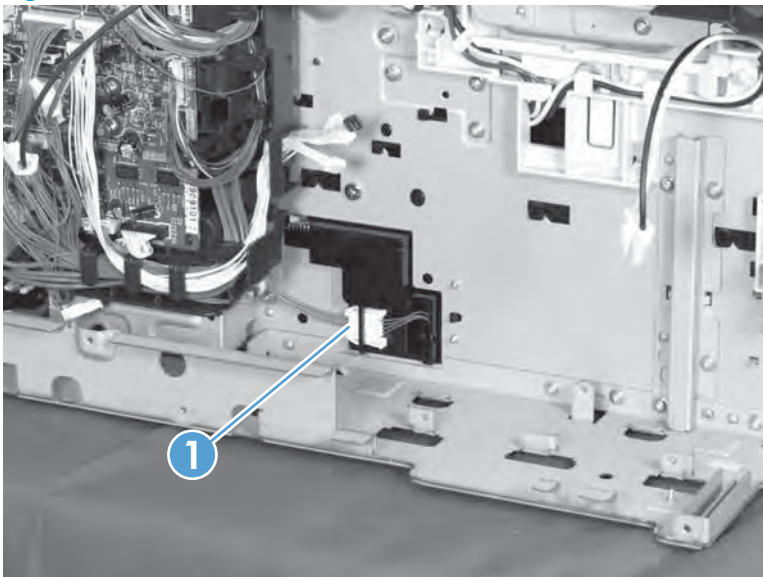
- Duplex accessory. See [Duplex accessory on page 70](#).
- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Side-rear cover. See [Side-rear cover on page 296](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).
- Rear-left cover. See [Rear-left cover on page 327](#).
- Rear-top cover. See [Rear-top cover on page 335](#).
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See [DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382](#).
- DC controller. See [DC controller on page 391](#).
- Interconnect board (ICB). See [Interconnect board \(ICB\) on page 426](#).
- Low-voltage power supply. See [Low-voltage power supply \(LVPS\) on page 479](#).

### Remove the lifter base assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

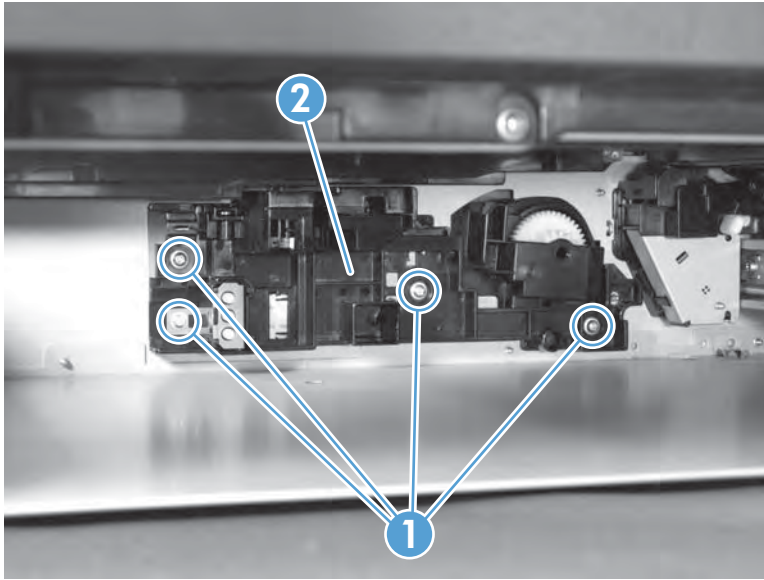
1. Disconnect the left side of one inline connector (callout 1).

**Figure 1-806** Disconnect one connector



2. Remove the cassette, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the lifter assembly.

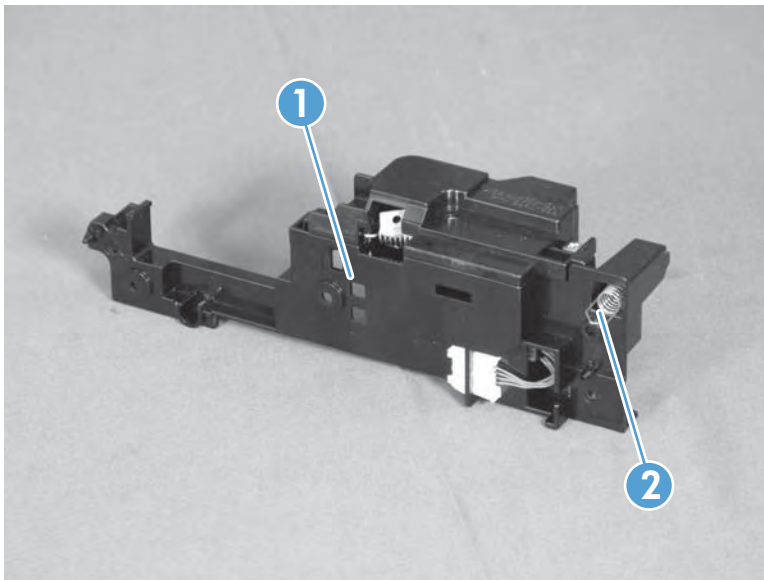
**Figure 1-807** Remove the lifter assembly



3. If necessary, remove one spring (callout 1) from the lifter assembly.

**⚠ CAUTION:** Be careful when handling the assembly. The spring is not captive and can be easily dislodged and lost.

**Figure 1-808** Remove one spring



## Lifter assembly

### Remove the following assemblies:

- Formatter. See [Step 1: Remove the formatter on page 24](#).
- Output bin and bin base assembly. See [Output bin and bin base assembly on page 68](#).



**NOTE:** If the optional HP Stapling Mailbox is installed, remove it.

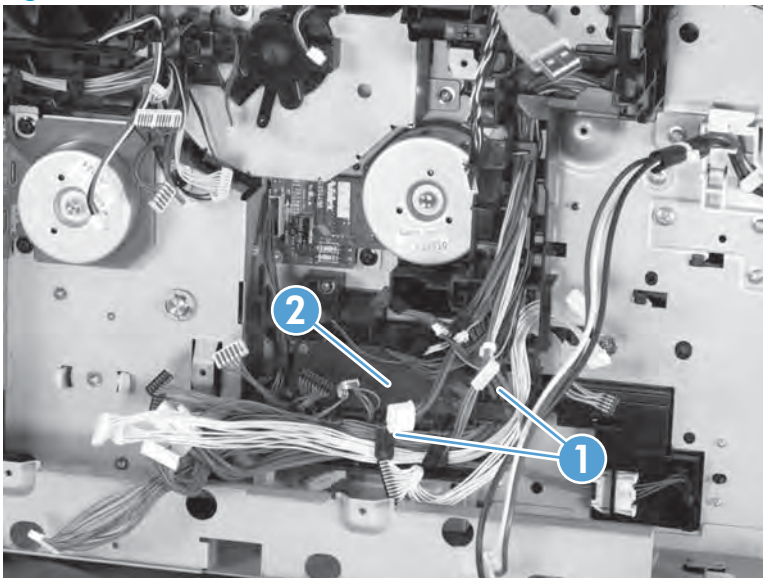
- Duplex accessory. See [Duplex accessory on page 70](#).
- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Side-rear cover. See [Side-rear cover on page 296](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).
- Rear-left cover. See [Rear-left cover on page 327](#).
- Rear-top cover. See [Rear-top cover on page 335](#).
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See [DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382](#).
- DC controller. See [DC controller on page 391](#).
- Interconnect board (ICB). See [Interconnect board \(ICB\) on page 426](#).

### Remove the lifter assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

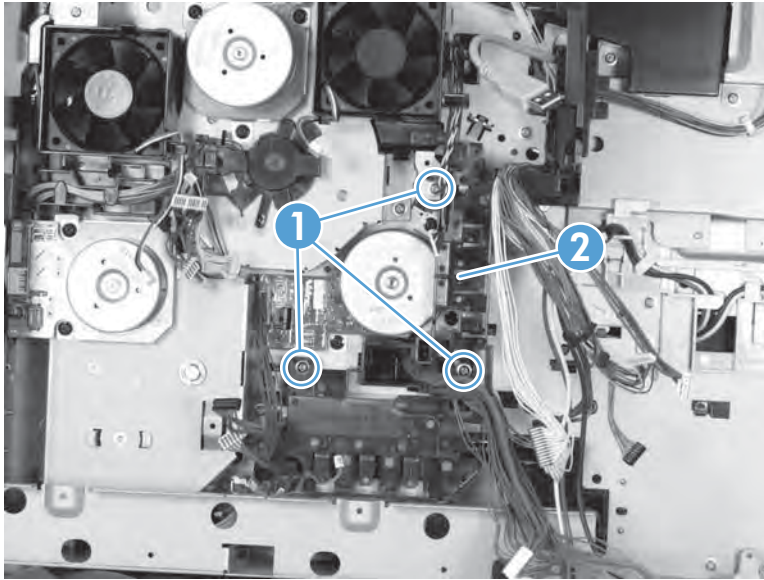
1. Release the wire harnesses (callout 1) from the guides (callout 2).

**Figure 1-809** Release the wire harnesses



2. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the guide (callout 2).

**Figure 1-810** Remove the the guide

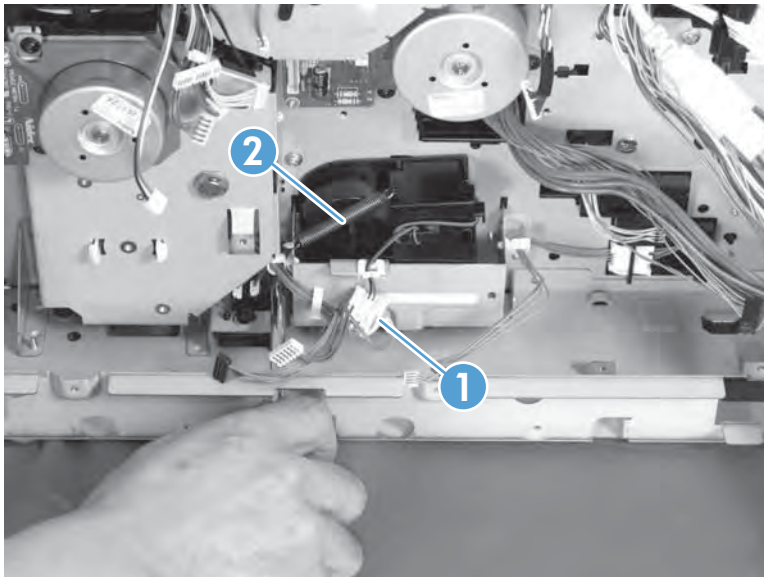


3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one spring (callout 2).

**⚠ CAUTION:** Be careful when handling the assembly. The spring is not captive and can be easily dislodged and lost.

HP recommends disconnecting the spring from the product chassis, and then leaving it connected to the assembly.

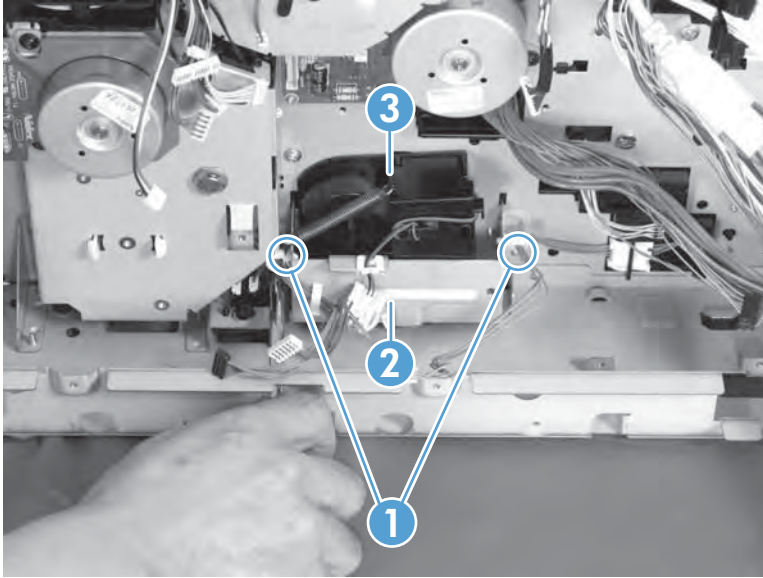
**Figure 1-811** Disconnect one connector and remove one spring



4. Remove two screws (callout 1), remove the holder (callout 2), and then remove the lifter assembly (callout 3).

**⚠ CAUTION:** To remove the assembly, two wire harness must be released from the retainers. One of these wire harnesses is not captive and can easily be lost.

**Figure 1-812** Remove the lifter assembly



## High-voltage power supply (HVPS)

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the formatter](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the fuser-entrance guide](#)
- [Step 5: Remove the fuser](#)
- [Step 6: Remove the front cover](#)
- [Step 7: Remove the side-rear cover](#)
- [Step 8: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 9: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 10: Remove the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 11: Remove the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 12: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 13: Remove the DC controller](#)
- [Step 14: Remove the ICB](#)
- [Step 15: Remove the LVPS](#)
- [Step 16: Remove the HVPS](#)
- [Step 17: Unpack the replacement HVPS](#)
- [Step 18: Install the HVPS](#)
- [Step 19: Install the LVPS](#)
- [Step 20: Install the ICB](#)
- [Step 21: Install the DC controller](#)
- [Step 22: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 23: Install the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 24: Install the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 25: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 26: Install the side-rear cover](#)
- [Step 27: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 28: Install the front cover](#)
- [Step 29: Install the fuser](#)

- [Step 30: Install the fuser-entrance guide](#)
- [Step 31: Install the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 32: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 33: Install the formatter](#)
- [Step 34: Test the installation](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the high-voltage power supply (HVPS) for the HP LaserJet Enterprise M630.

### Before servicing


Use the table below to identify the correct assembly part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the assembly.

HVPS part number	
RM2-5826-000CN	HVPS (110V)
RM2-5827-000CN	HVPS (220)

### Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip



**CAUTION:**  This product contains components that can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). To reduce the chance of ESD damage, place the product on an ESD mat (if available), and wear an ESD wrist strap connected to a grounded surface. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis before touching an ESD-sensitive part.

## Step 1: Remove the formatter

1. Do the following steps:

- a. Turn off the product.
- b. Disconnect the power cable.



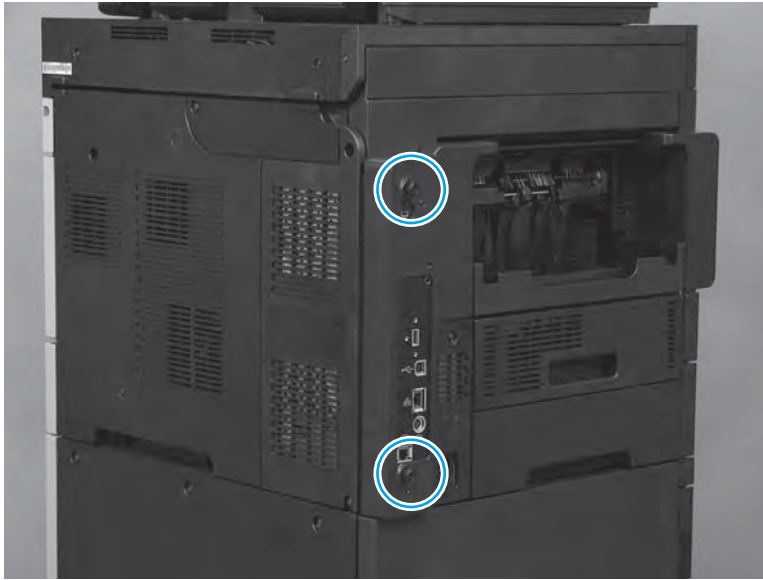
**WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

- c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.



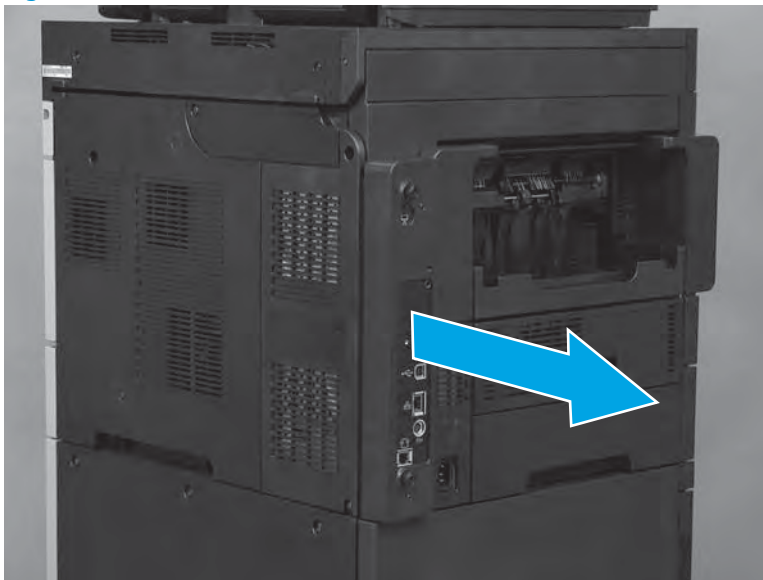
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

**Figure 1-813** Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

**Figure 1-814** Remove the formatter

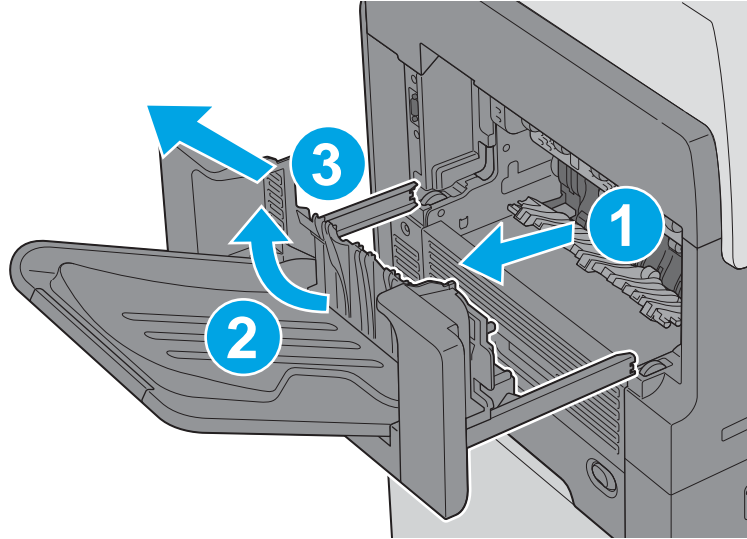


## Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

- ▲ Do one of the following steps:

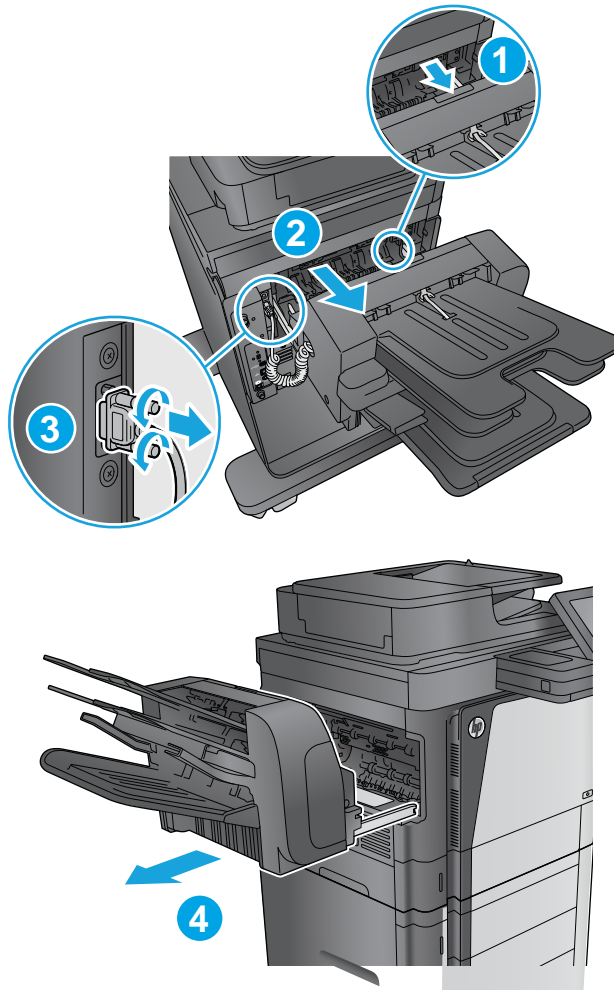
- a. **M630dn and M630f:** Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

**Figure 1-815** Remove the output bin




- b. **M630z:** Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

**Figure 1-816** Remove the stapling mailbox

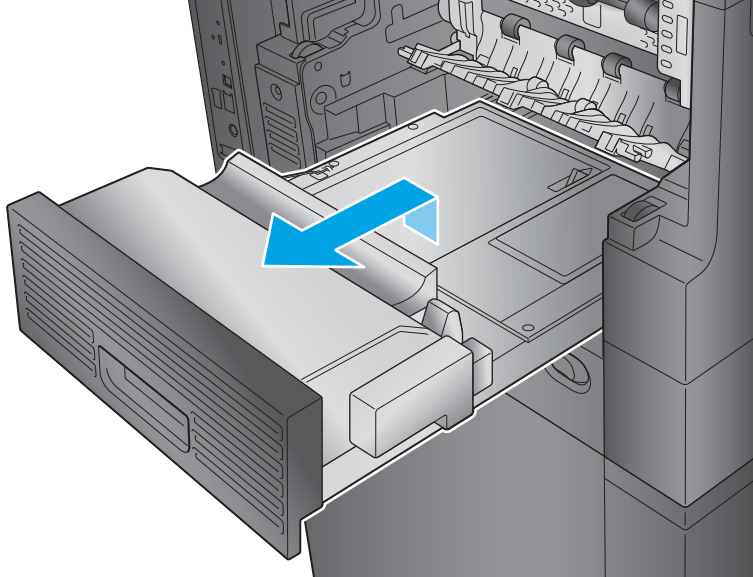


### Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory

- ▲ Slide the duplex assembly away from the product, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails, and then remove it.

 **NOTE:** Locate the duplexer at the left-hand side of the product.

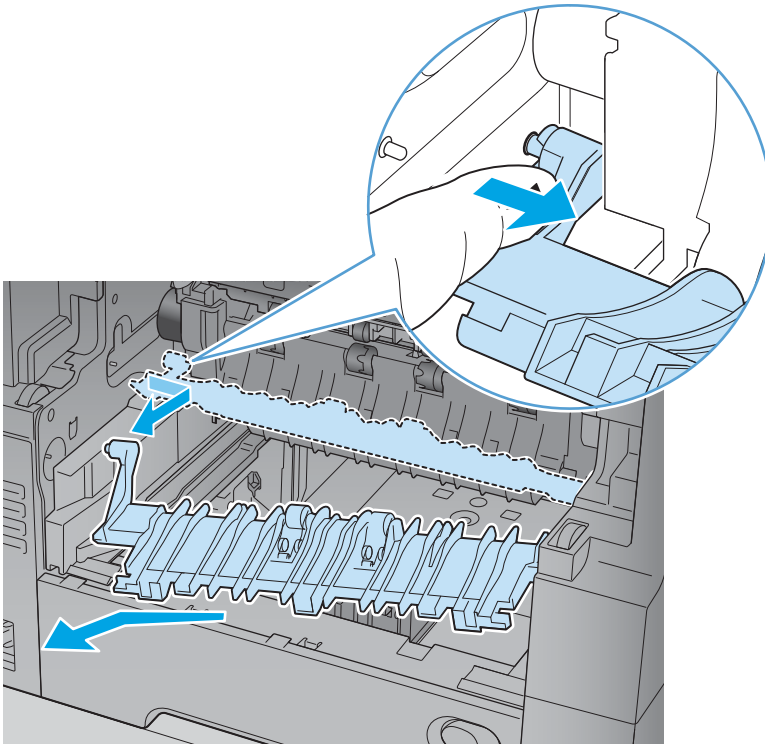
**Figure 1-817** Remove the duplex accessory



#### **Step 4: Remove the fuser-entrance guide**

1. Flex the rear hinge-pin of the fuser-entrance guide until it clears the mounting hole in the product chassis.
2. Rotate the rear of the guide away of the product and slide the guide to the left to release the front hinge-pin. Remove the fuser-entrance guide.

**Figure 1-818** Remove the fuser-entrance guide

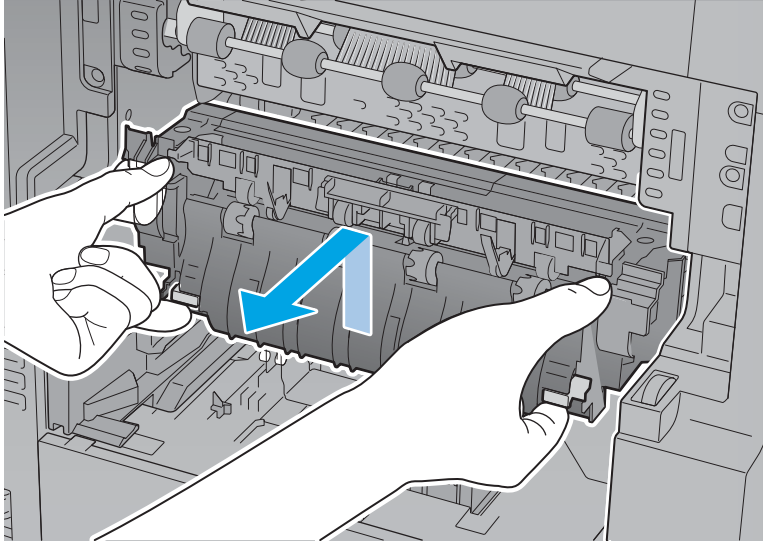


## Step 5: Remove the fuser

- ▲ Squeeze the two blue tabs on the fuser to release it, and then slide it out of the product.

**⚠ CAUTION:** The fuser is very hot. After turning the product power off, allow the fuser to cool for at least 30 minutes before removing it.

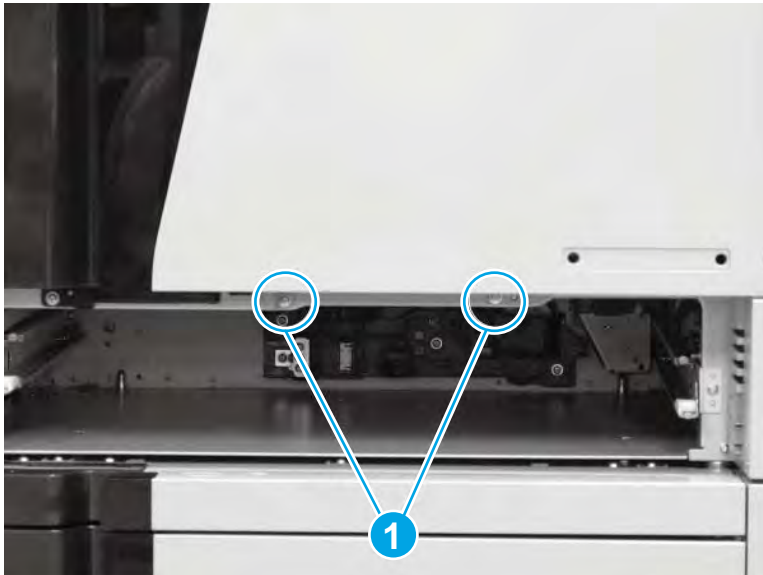
**Figure 1-819** Remove the fuser



## Step 6: Remove the front cover

1. Remove Tray 2, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

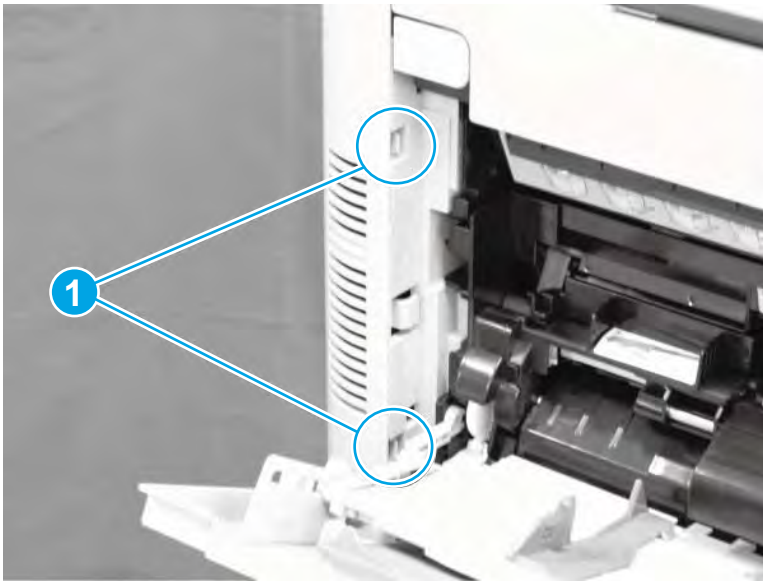
**Figure 1-820** Remove two screws



2. Open Tray 1, and then push in on two tabs (callout 1) to release them.

 **TIP:** Release the lower tab first, and then release the upper tab.

**Figure 1-821** Release two tabs



3. Carefully flex the right-upper corner of the cover away from the product to release one locking pin.

**Figure 1-822** Release the right-upper corner



4. Slide the cover towards the right side of the product to release it.

**Figure 1-823** Slide the cover to the right



5. Remove the cover.

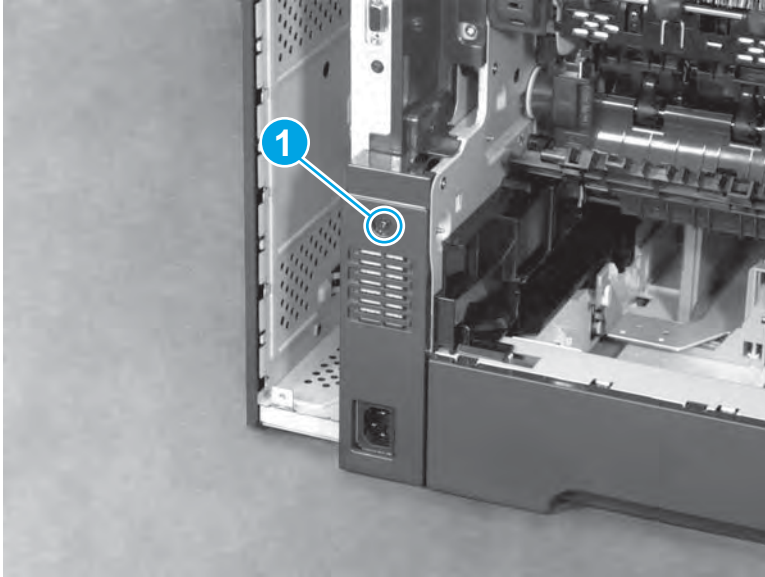
**Figure 1-824** Remove the cover



### **Step 7: Remove the side-rear cover**

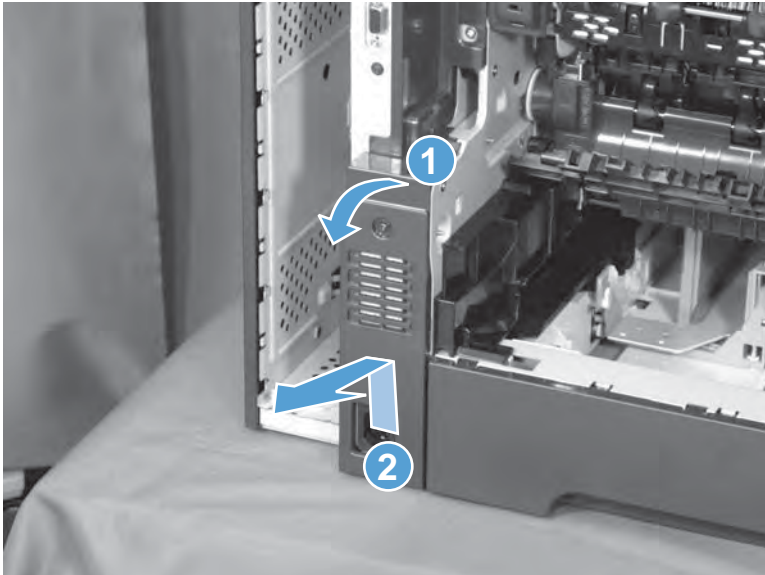
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-825** Remove one screw



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the product (callout 1), slightly raise the cover to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-826** Remove the side-rear cover

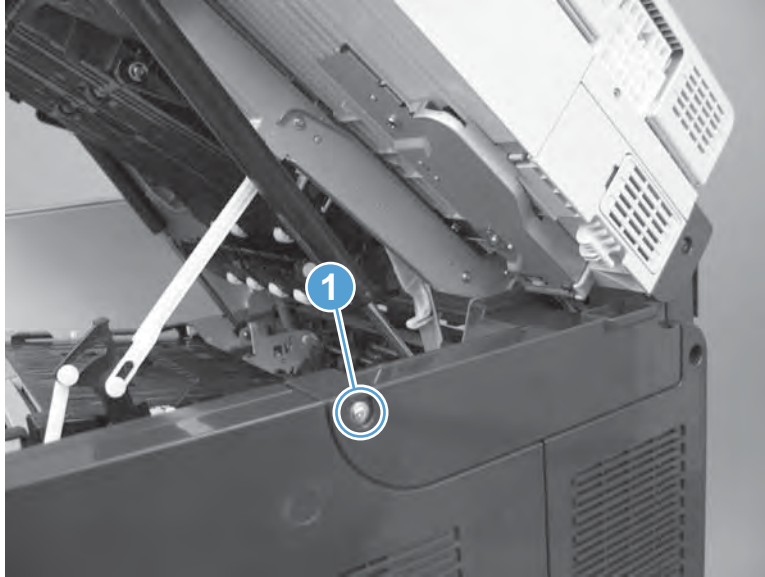


### **Step 8: Remove the image scanner cable cover**

1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

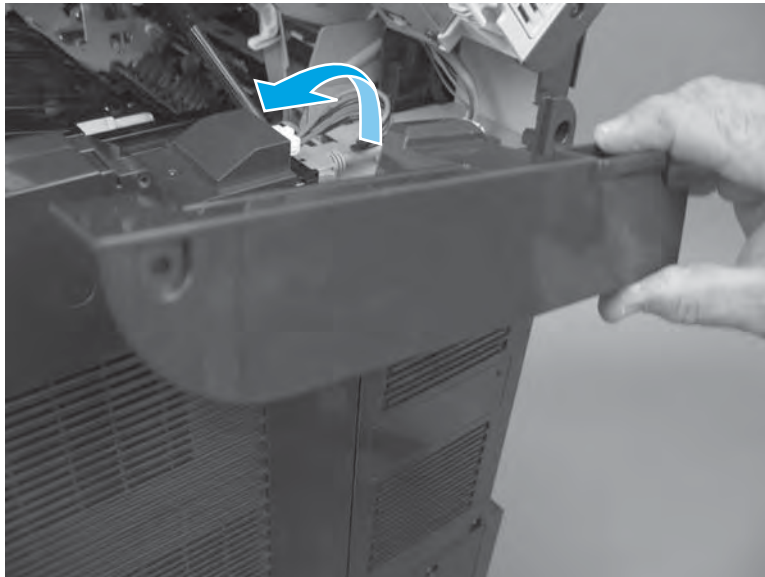


**Figure 1-827** Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

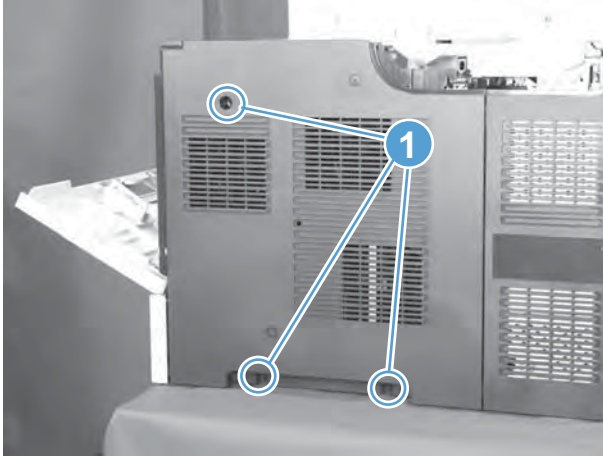
**Figure 1-828** Remove the cover



### **Step 9: Remove the rear-right cover**

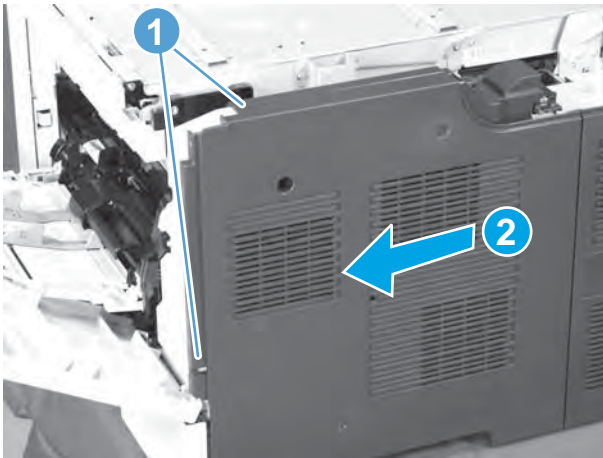
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-829** Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

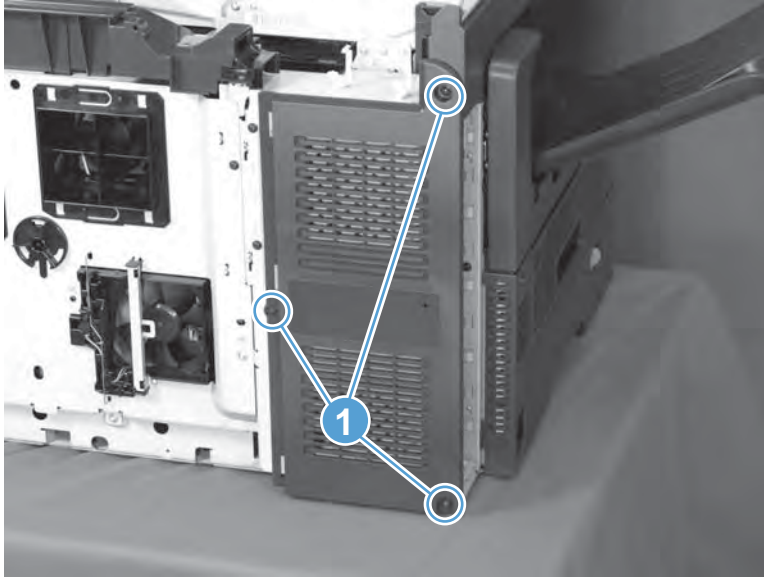
**Figure 1-830** Remove the cover



### **Step 10: Remove the rear-left cover**

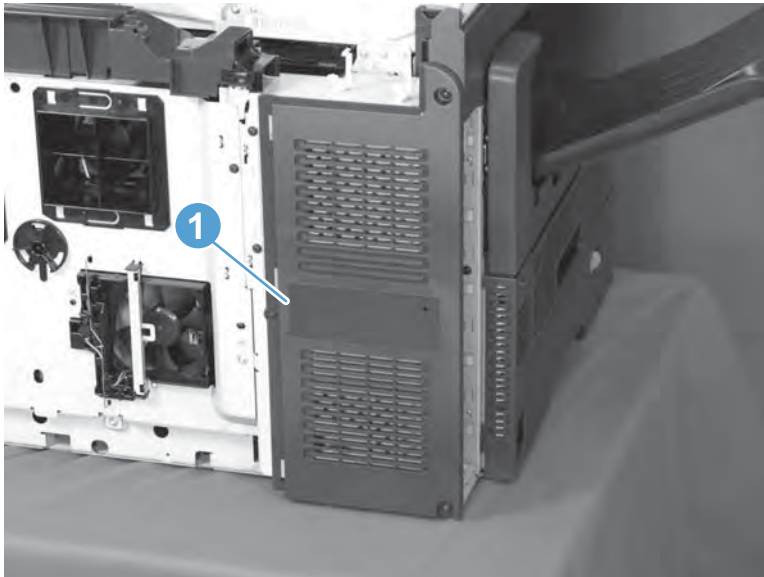
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-831** Remove three screws



2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

**Figure 1-832** Remove the cover

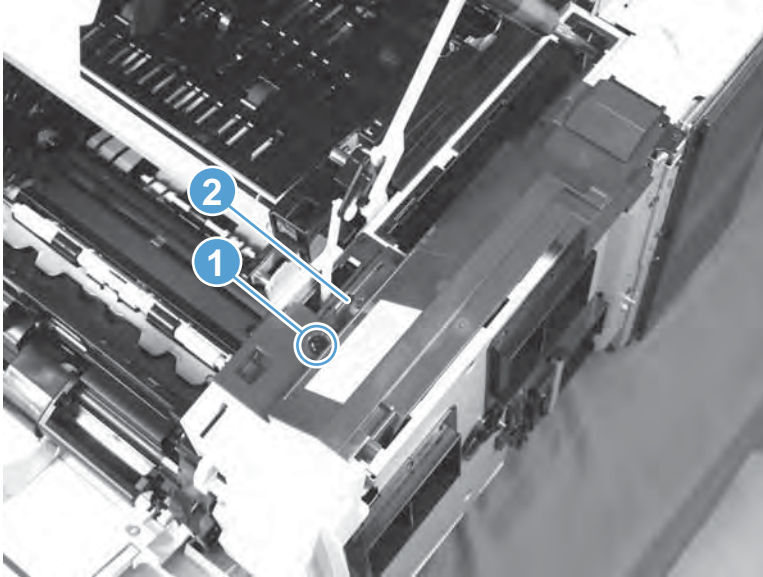


## Step 11: Remove the rear-top cover

 **NOTE:** If the top cover is closed, open it now.

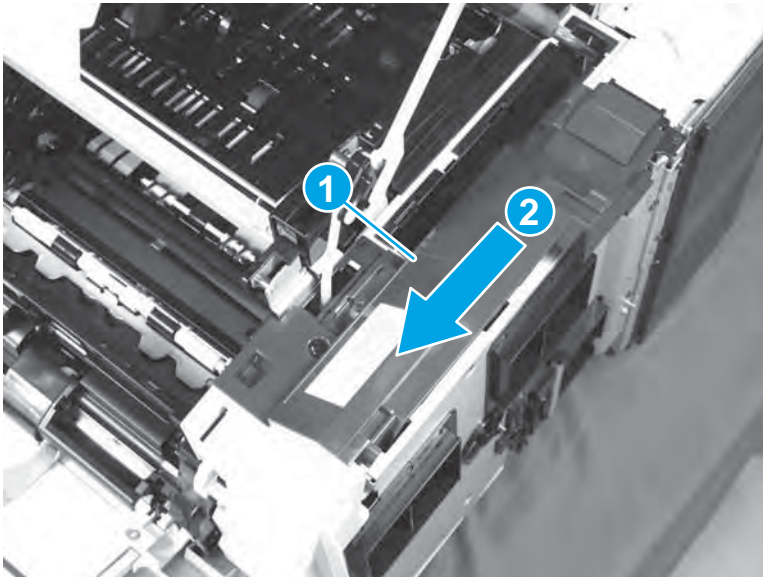
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

**Figure 1-833** Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-834** Remove the cover

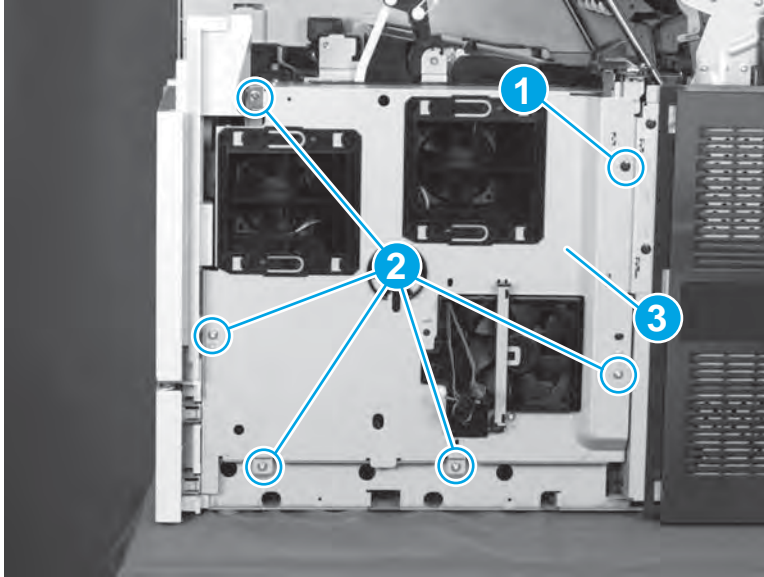


### Step 12: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

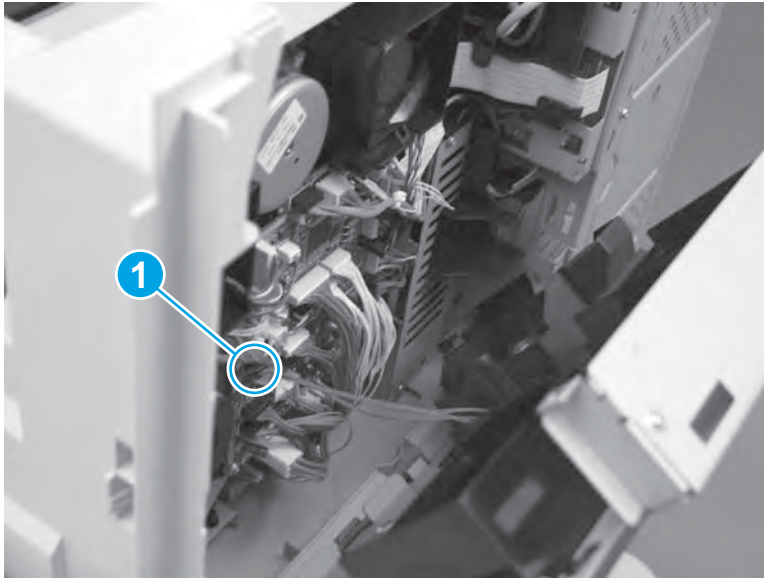
**CAUTION:** The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

**Figure 1-835** Remove six screws




2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

**Figure 1-836** Disconnect one connector and remove the shield

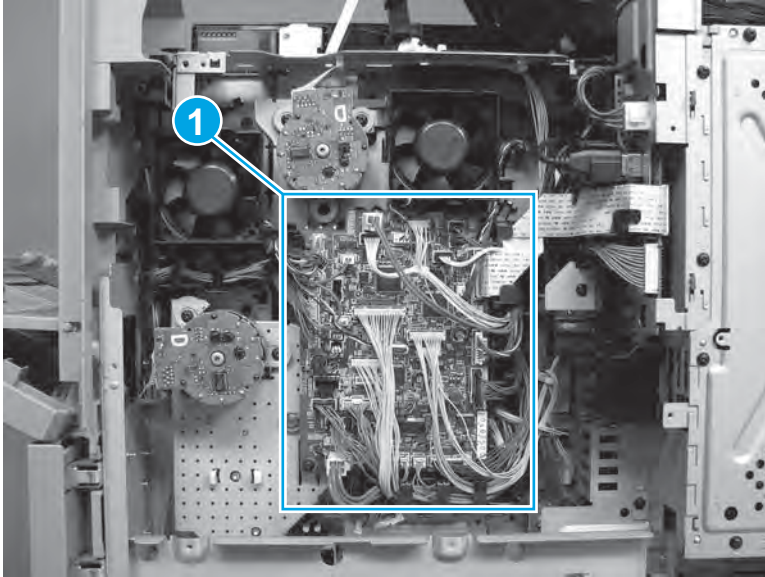


### Step 13: Remove the DC controller

1. Disconnect all of the connectors (callout 1) on the DC controller.
  - 34 wire-harness connectors
  - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

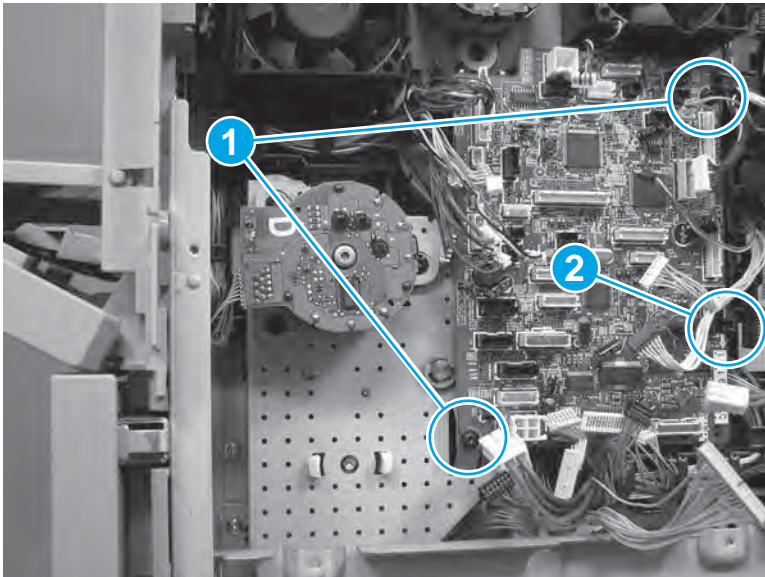
 **Reinstallation tip:** When the DC controller is reinstalled, connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

**Figure 1-837** Disconnect all of the connectors



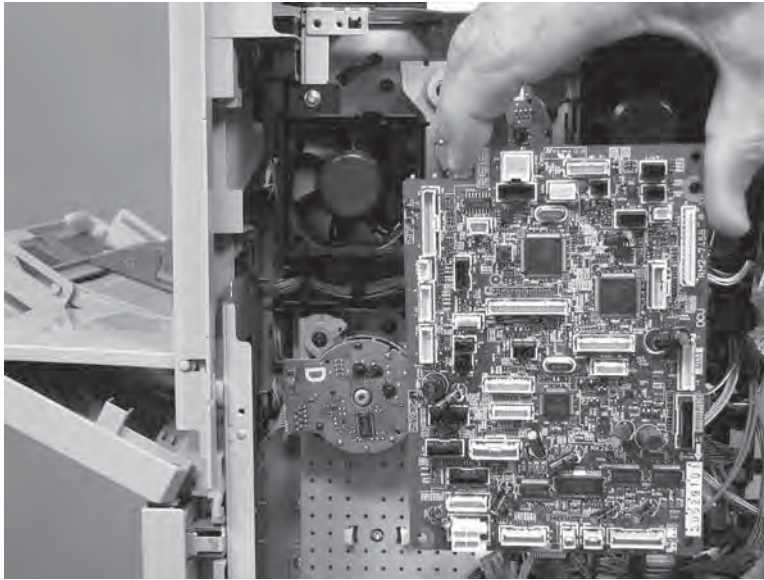
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2).

**Figure 1-838** Remove two screws and release one tab




3. Remove the DC controller.

**Figure 1-839** Remove the DC controller

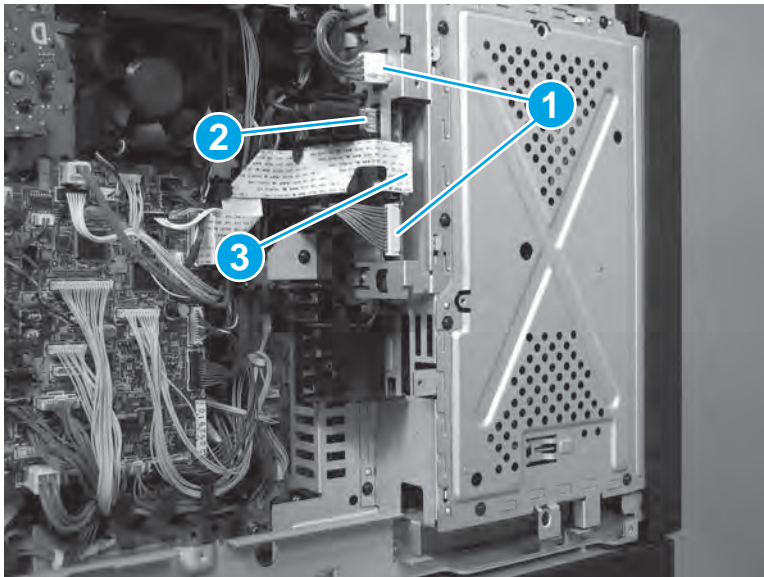


#### Step 14: Remove the ICB


 ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), one USB connector (callout 2), and then disconnect one FFC (callout 3).

**Figure 1-840** Disconnect four connectors

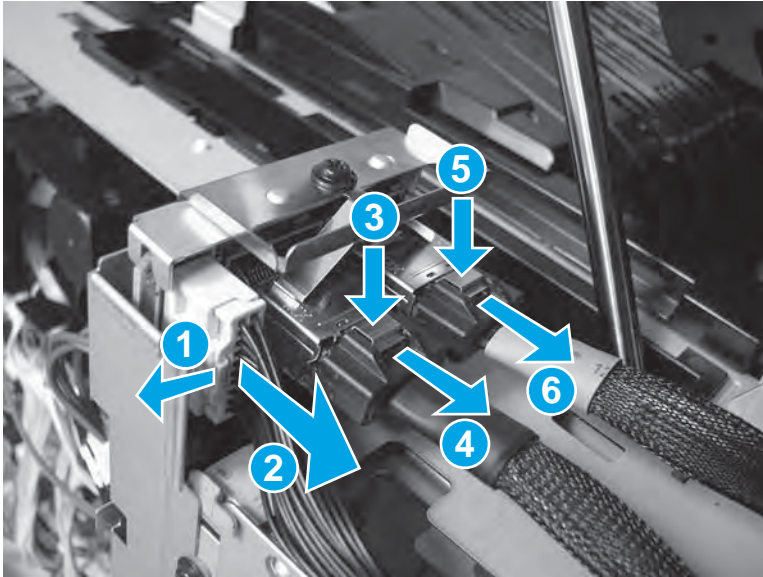


2. Use a small flat-blade screw driver to release three connectors.

 **TIP:** When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callouts 3/4/5/6) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

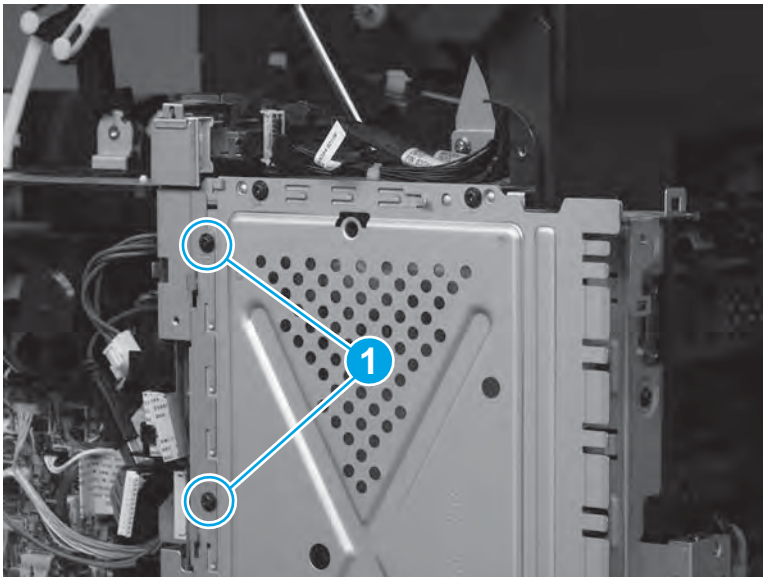
The wire harness with the blue band (callouts 5/6) connects to the inner connector on the ICB when reinstalled.

**Figure 1-841** Disconnect three connectors



3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

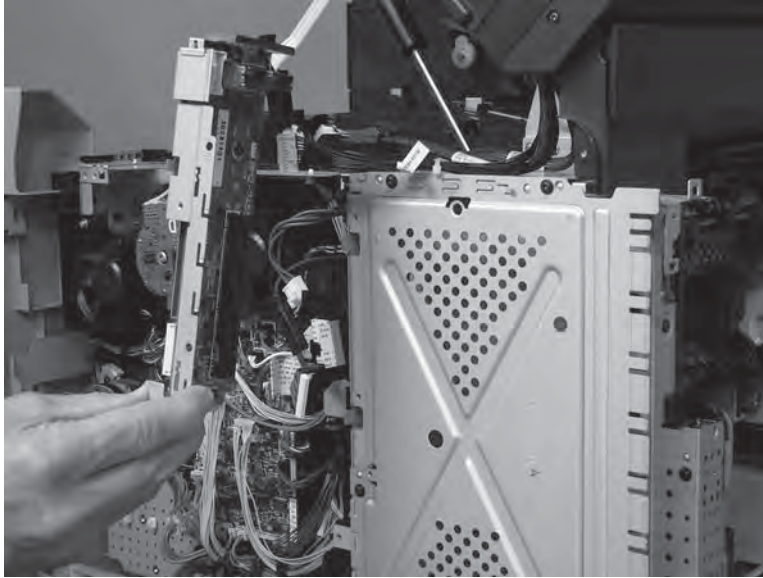
**Figure 1-842** Remove two screws





4. Remove the ICB.

**Figure 1-843** Remove the ICB

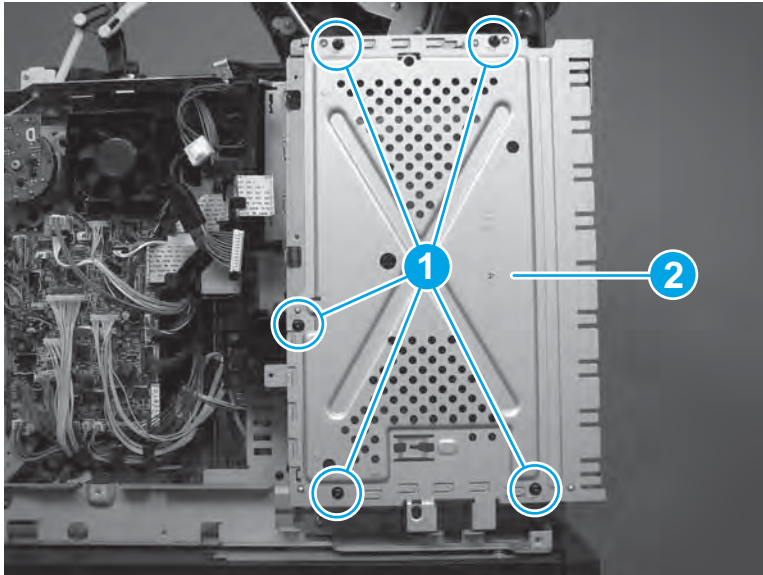


### Step 15: Remove the LVPS

 ESD sensitive assembly.

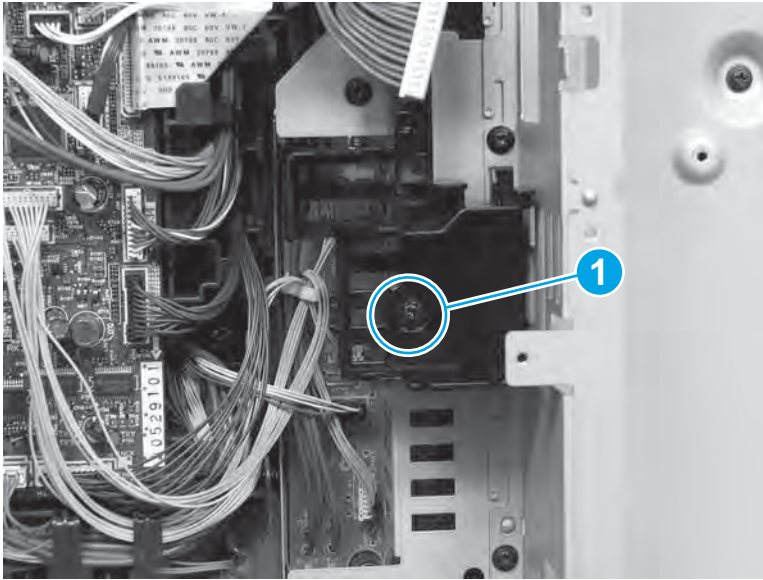
1. Remove five screws (callout 1), and the sheet-metal plate (callout 2).

**Figure 1-844** Remove the sheet-metal plate




2. Remove one screw (callout 1) near the DC controller.

**Figure 1-845** Remove one screw



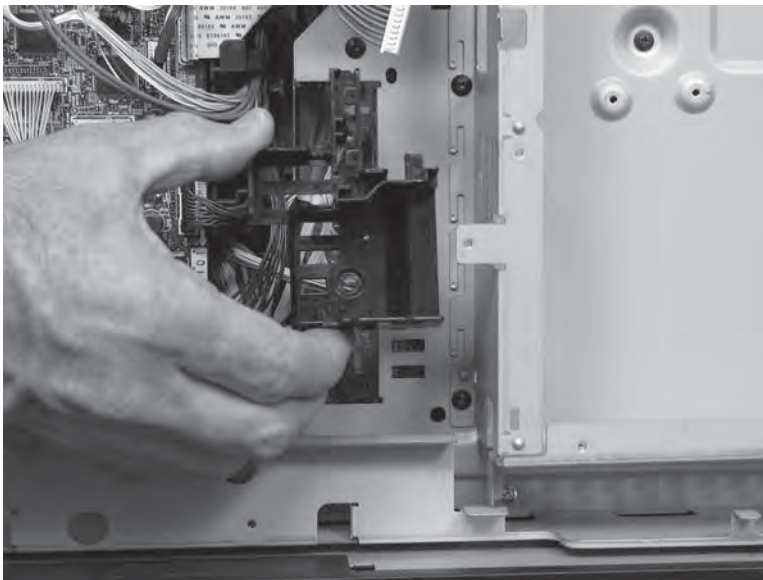
3. Remove the guide (callout 1).

---

 **Reinstallation tip:** Insert the hook at the top of the guide into the slot in the chassis, and then rotate the bottom of the guide into place.

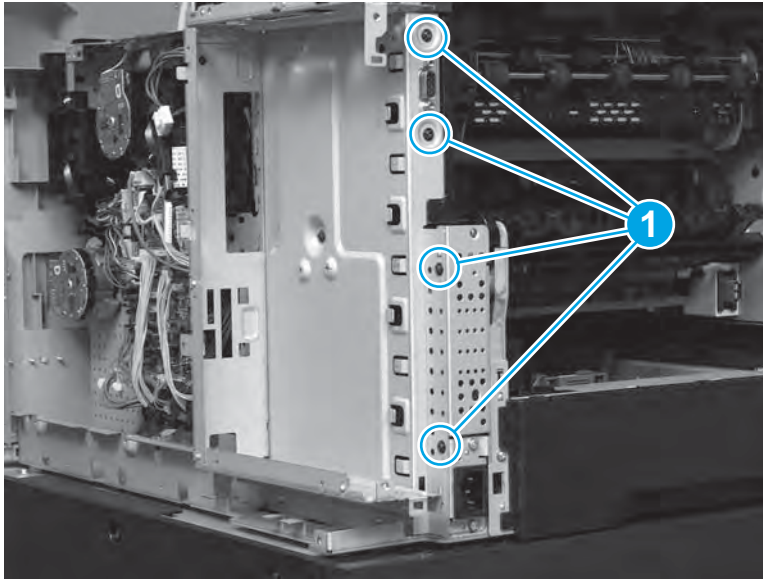
---

**Figure 1-846** Remove the guide



4. Remove four black screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-847** Remove four screws

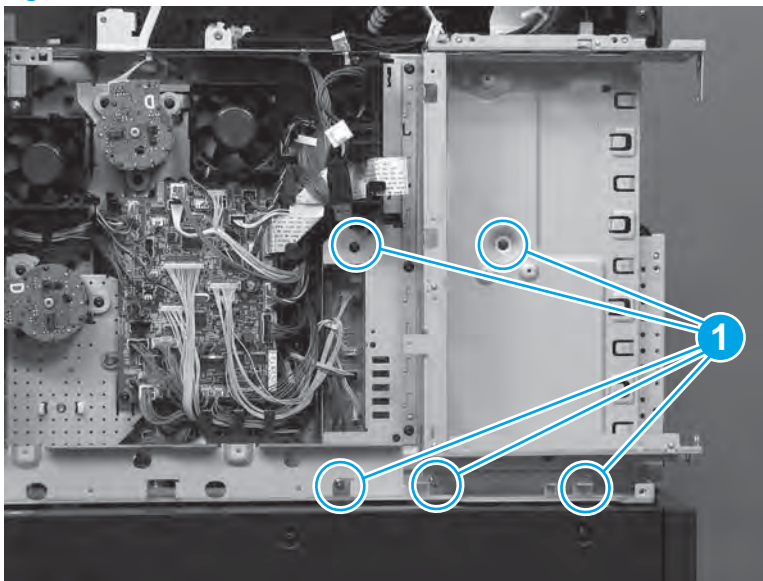


5. Remove five screws (callout 1).



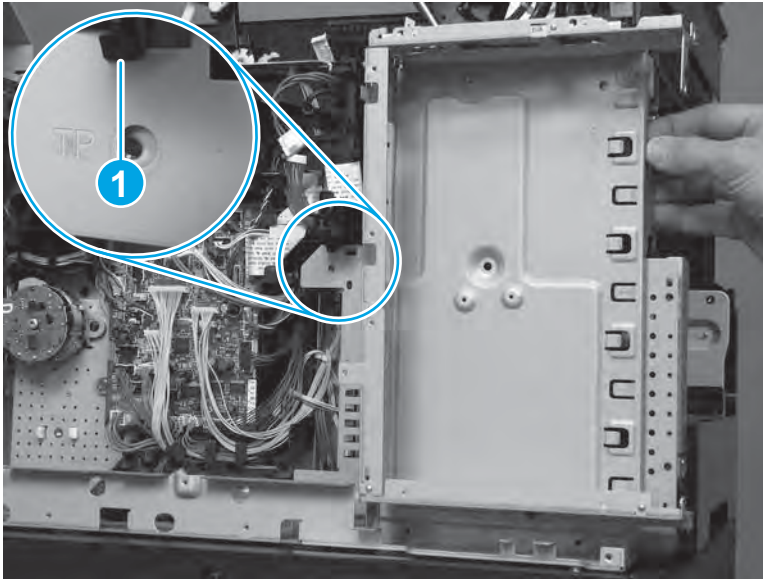
**NOTE:** The two upper screws are black, and the three screws across the bottom are silver.

**Figure 1-848** Remove two screws



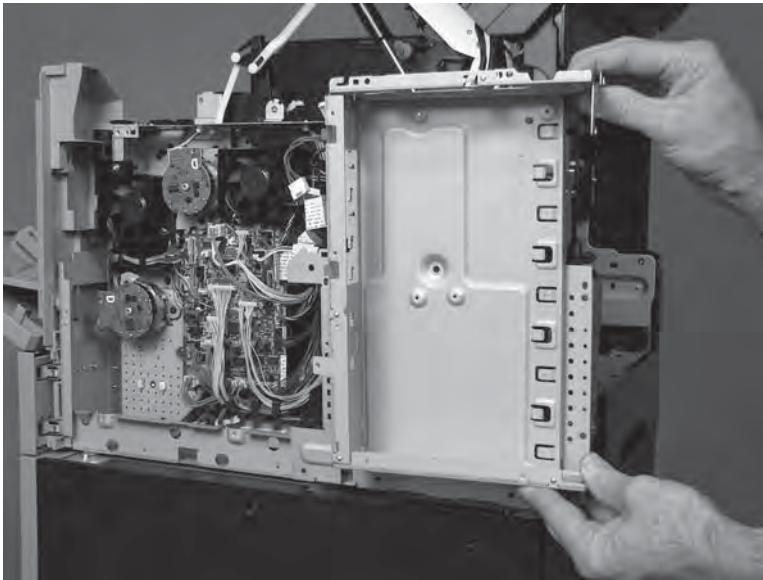
6. Slightly separate the sheet-metal plate from the product, and then release one tab (callout 1).

**Figure 1-849** Release one tab





7. Remove the sheet-metal plate from the product.

**Figure 1-850** Remove the sheet-metal plate

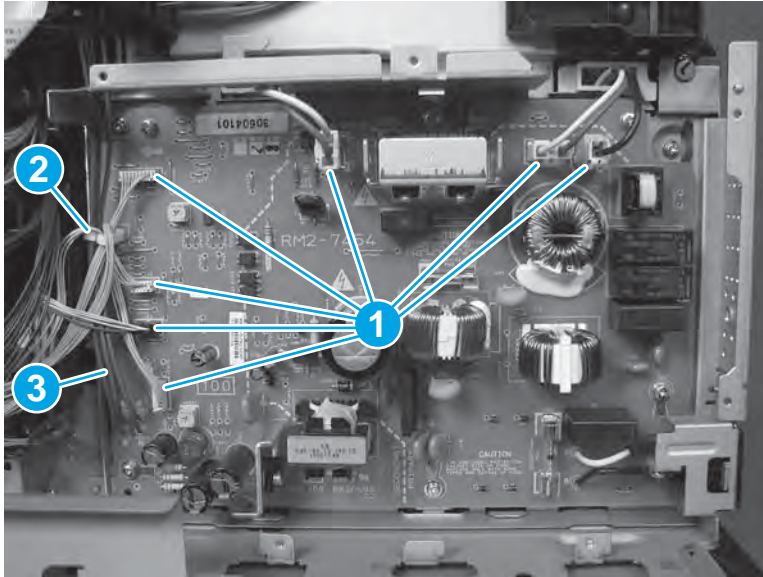


8. Disconnect seven connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** These wire-harnesses are stiff and can make the connectors difficult to disconnect.

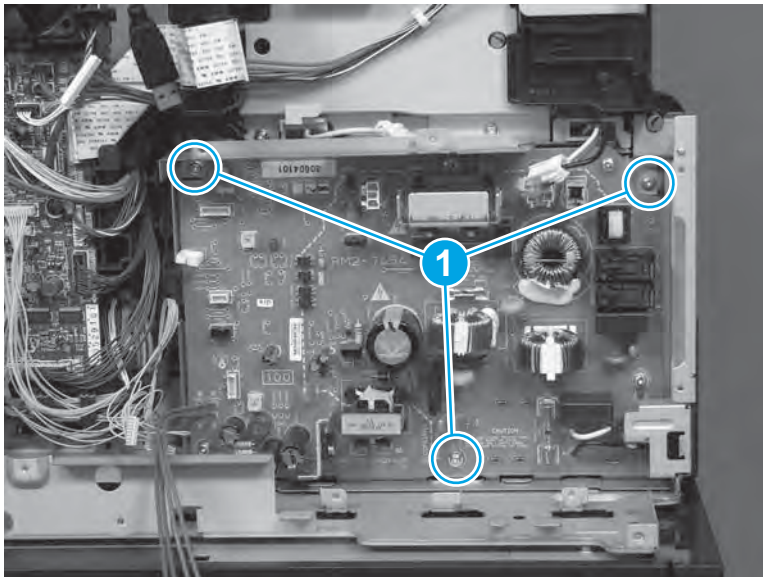
 **TIP:** The 4-wire wire harness (callout 3; two brown and 2 blue wires) cannot be disconnected from the LVPS, and does not need to be released from the retainer.

**Figure 1-851** Disconnect seven connectors



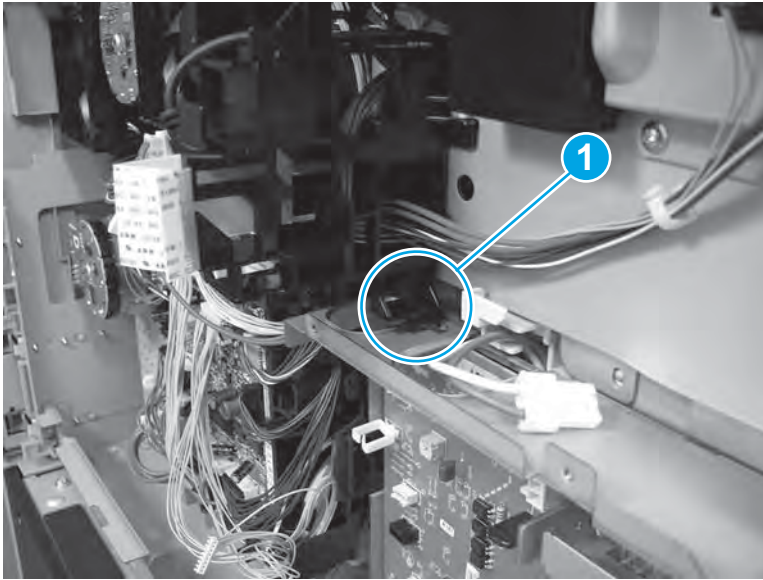
9. Remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-852** Remove three screws



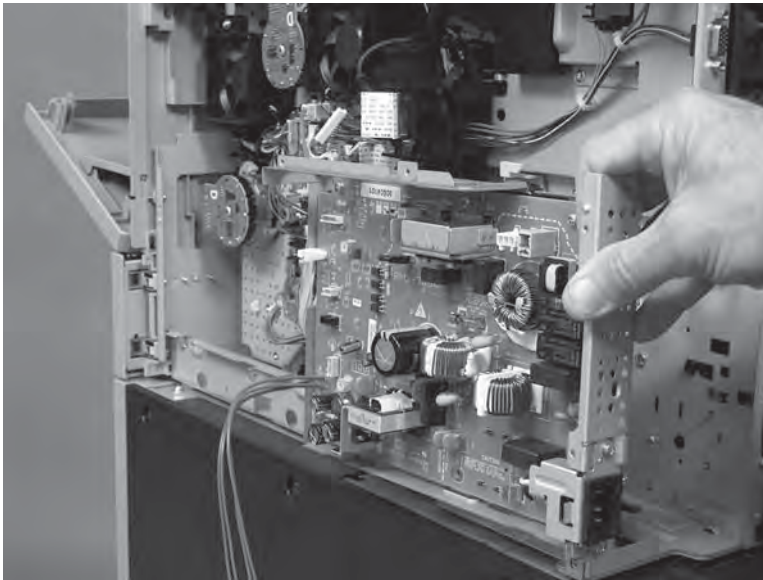
10. Release one tab (callout 1).

**Figure 1-853** Release one tab



11. Remove the LVPS.

**Figure 1-854** Remove the LVPS

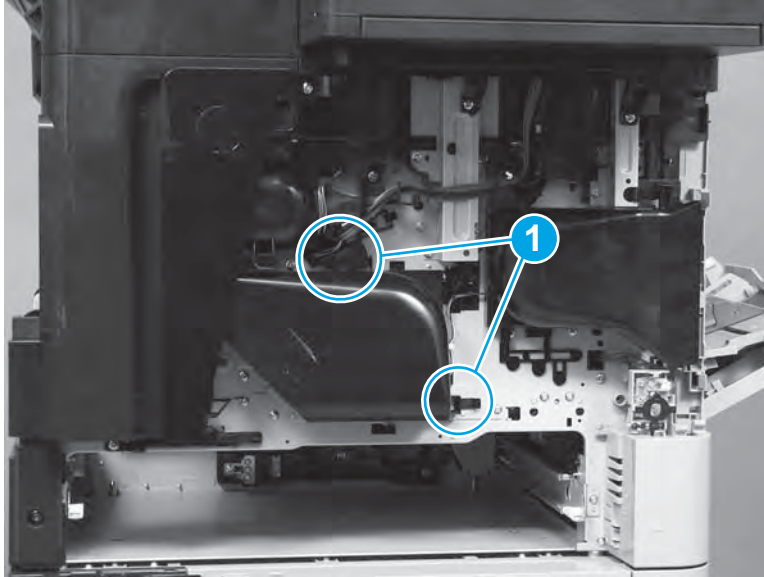


## Step 16: Remove the HVPS

 ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1).

**Figure 1-855** Release two tabs



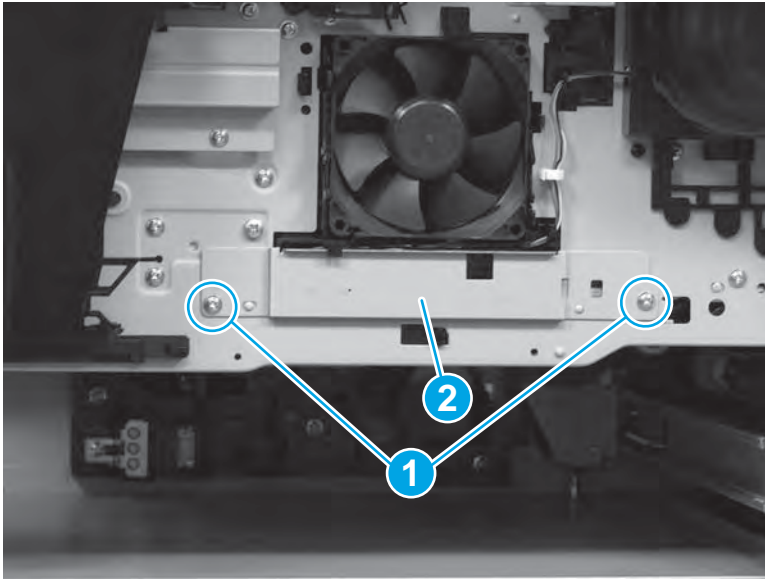
2. Remove the fan duct.

**Figure 1-856** Remove the fan duct



3. At the front of the product, remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

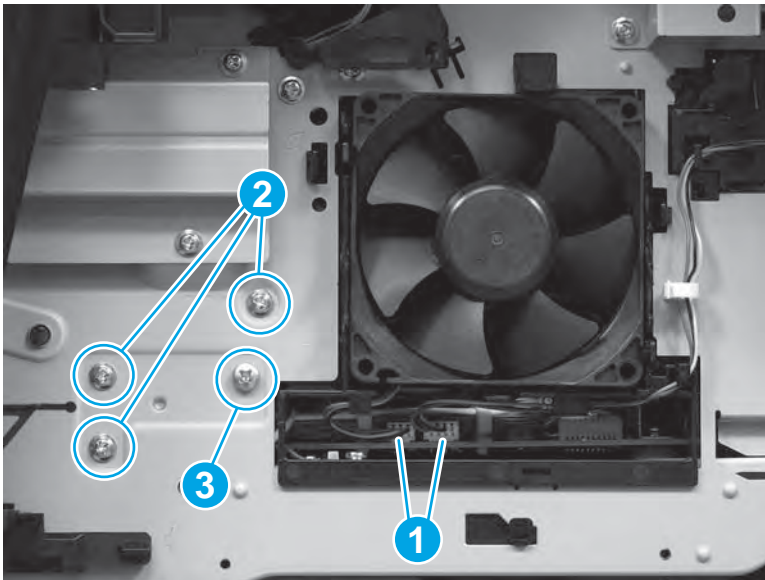
**Figure 1-857** Remove the cover



4. At the front side of the product, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove four screws (callout 2/3).

 **NOTE:** One screw (callout 3) is larger than the others.

**Figure 1-858** Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws

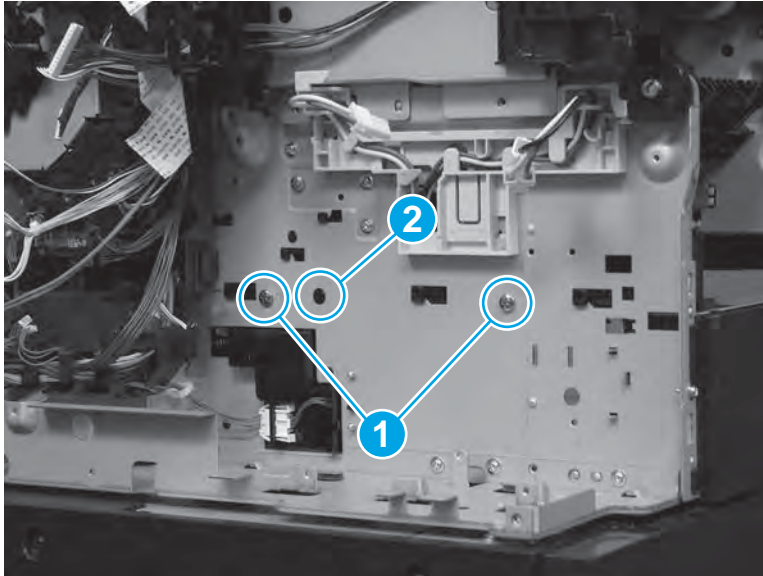




5. At the back of the product, remove two screws (callout 1), and then release one locking button (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** Keep the tab (callout 2) depressed.

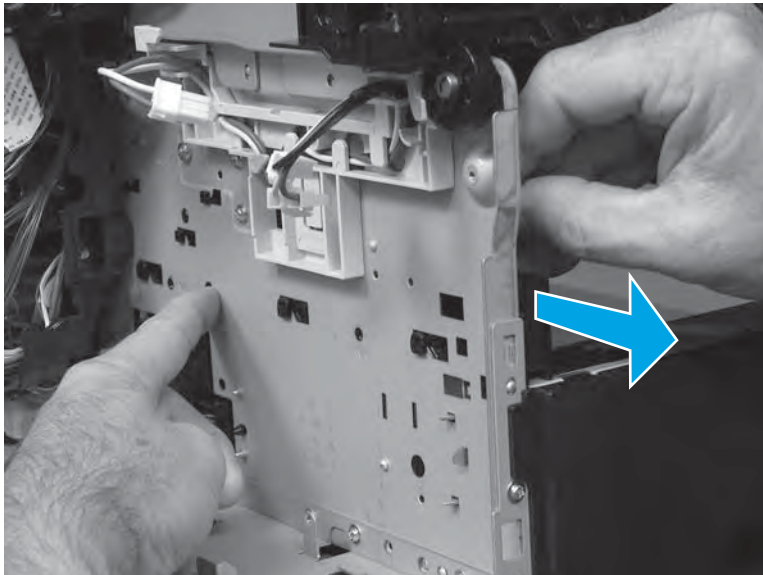
**Figure 1-859** Remove two screws and release one tab



6. Slide the guide to the right to release it.

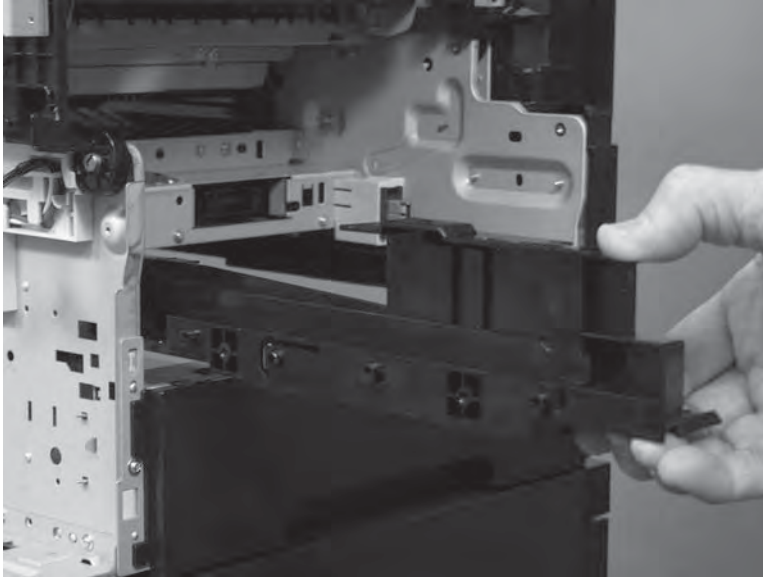
 **NOTE:** The guide is located inside the product chassis (where the removed duplexer would be installed).

**Figure 1-860** Release the guide



7. Remove the guide.

**Figure 1-861** Remove the guide



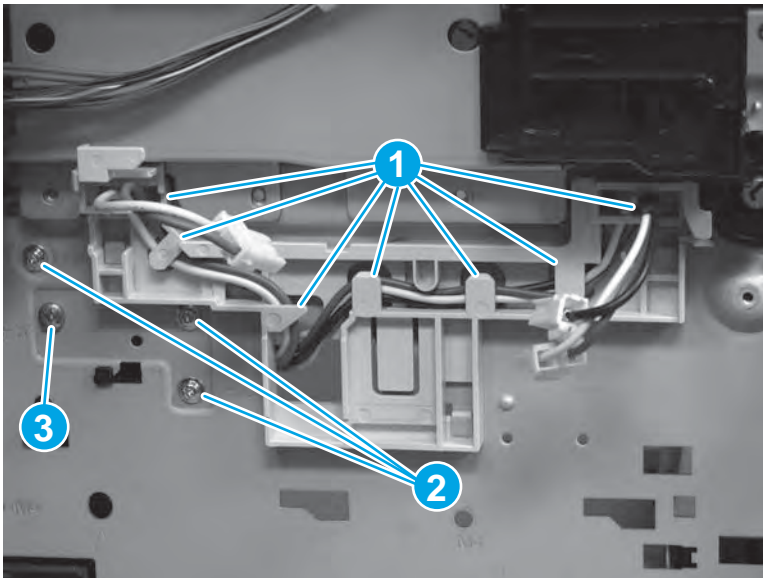
8. At the back of the product, release the LVPS wire harnesses from the guide (callout 1), and then remove four screws (callout 2/3).

---

 **NOTE:** One screw (callout 3) is larger than the others.

---

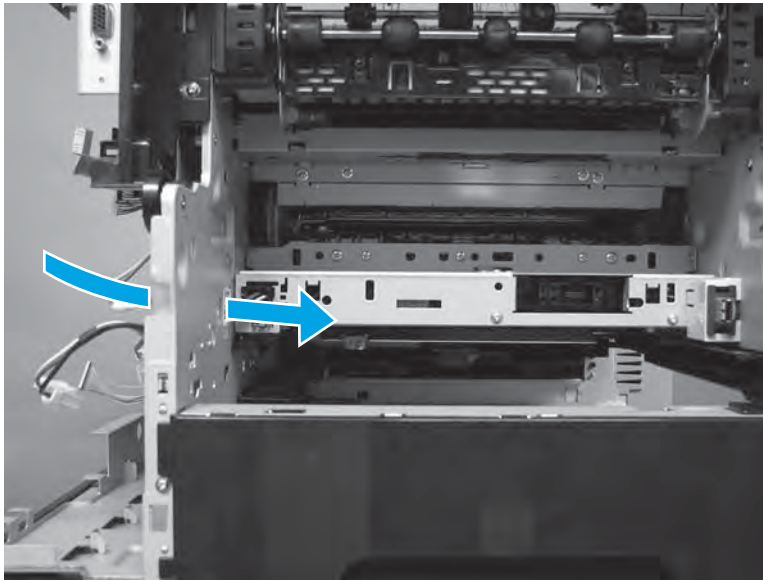
**Figure 1-862** Release the wire harnesses and remove four screws



- Support the HVPS and feed the LVPS wire harnesses through the hole in the chassis.

**CAUTION:** Be careful. Do not damage the wire harnesses.

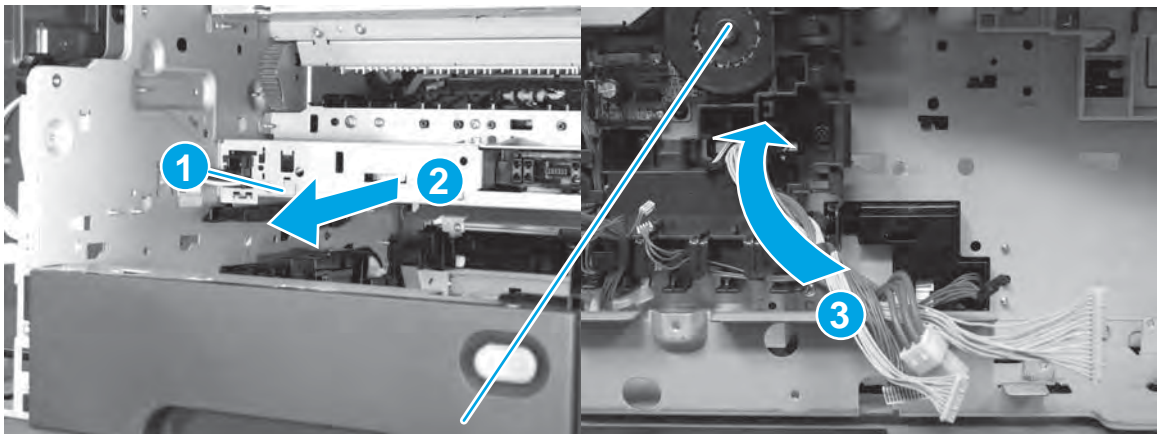
**Figure 1-863** Feed the wire harnesses through the hole



- Slightly slide the HVPS (callout 1) out of the product (callout 2), while at the back of the product feeding the wire harness through the hole in the chassis (callout 3).

**CAUTION:** Be careful. Do not damage the wire harnesses.

**Figure 1-864** Feed the wire harnesses through the hole



11. Remove the HVPS from the product.

**Figure 1-865** Remove the HVPS

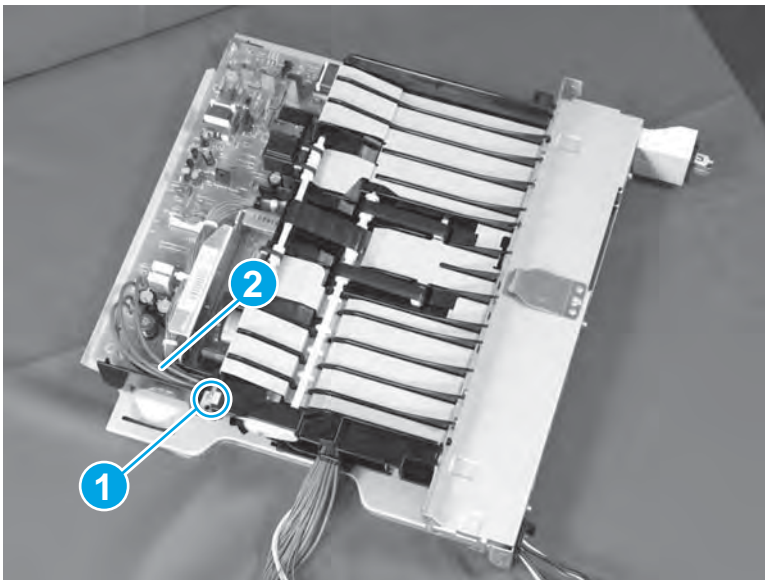


12. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the wire harness (callout 2).



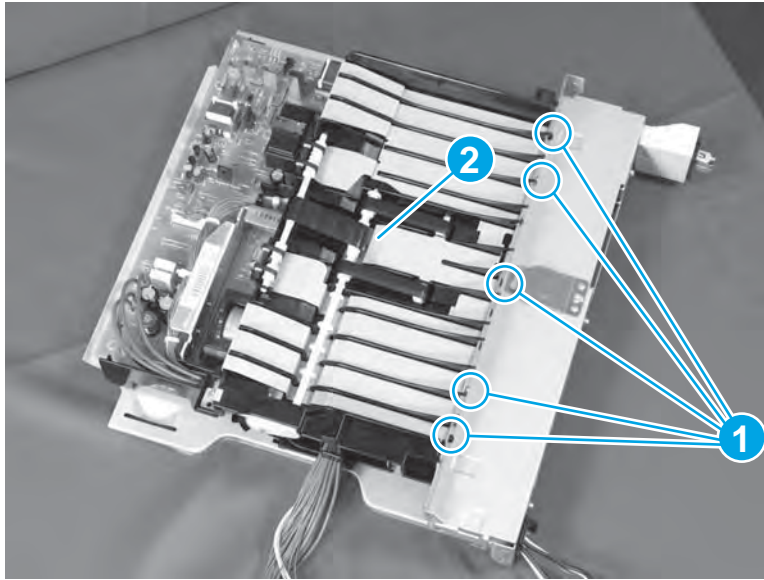
**NOTE:** If the HVPS is removed to gain access to another assembly, do not remove the feed assembly. If a replacement HVPS is being installed, remove the feed assembly.

**Figure 1-866** Remove one screw and release the wire harness



13. Remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the feed assembly (callout 2).

**Figure 1-867** Remove the feed assembly



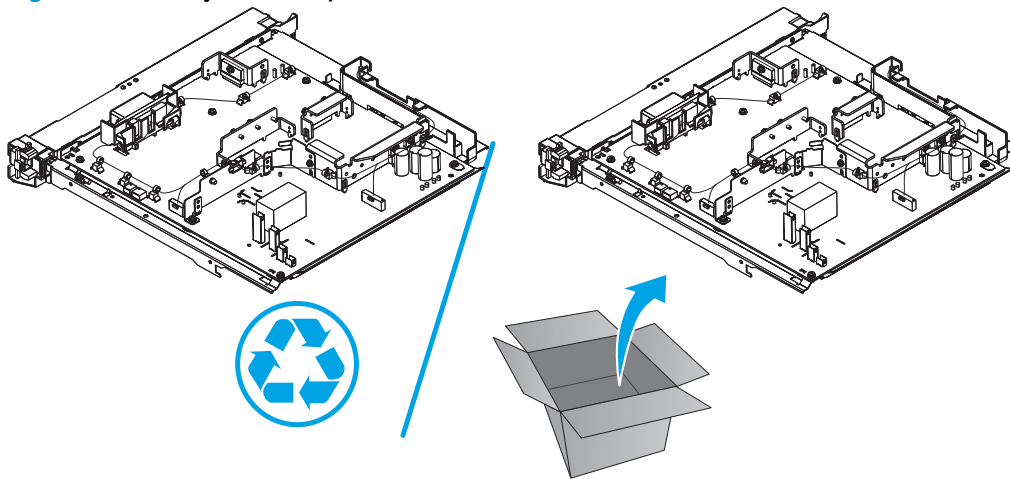
### Step 17: Unpack the replacement HVPS

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

**Figure 1-868** Recycle and unpack




### Step 18: Install the HVPS

 **NOTE:** If a replacement HVPS is being installed, go to step [1](#).

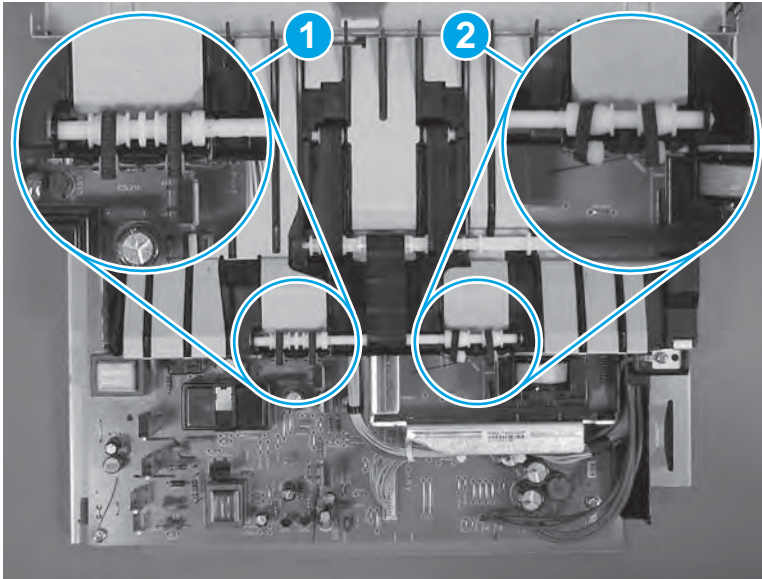
If the HVPS was removed to gain access to another assembly, go to step [7](#).

 ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Be careful when handling the feed assembly. Make sure that the drive belts and belt shafts do not become dislodged. Callout 1 shows the belts and shafts correctly installed. Callout 2 shows the belts and shafts dislodged.

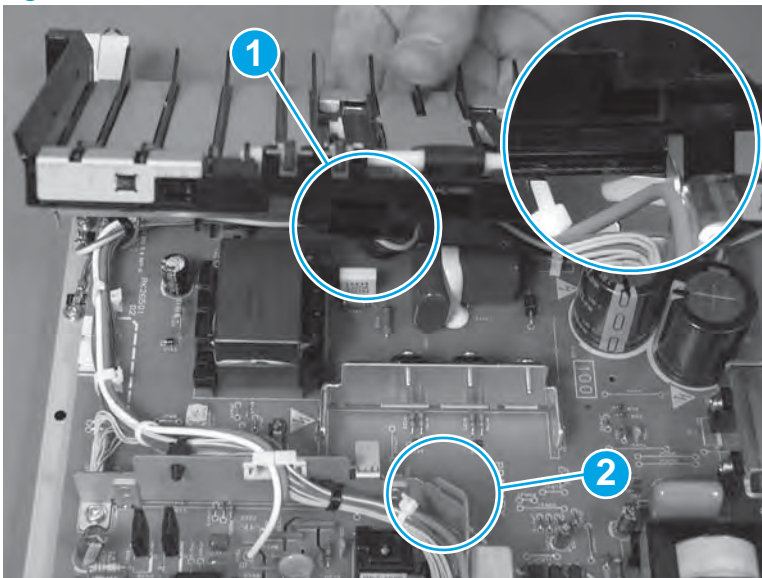
 **CAUTION:** The feed assembly belt shafts are only held captive by the belts. If the belts become dislodged, the shafts can easily be lost.

**Figure 1-869** Check the drive belts and belt shafts



2. The foot (callout 1) on the underside of the feed assembly, must fit into the sheet-metal slot (callout 2) on the HVPS.

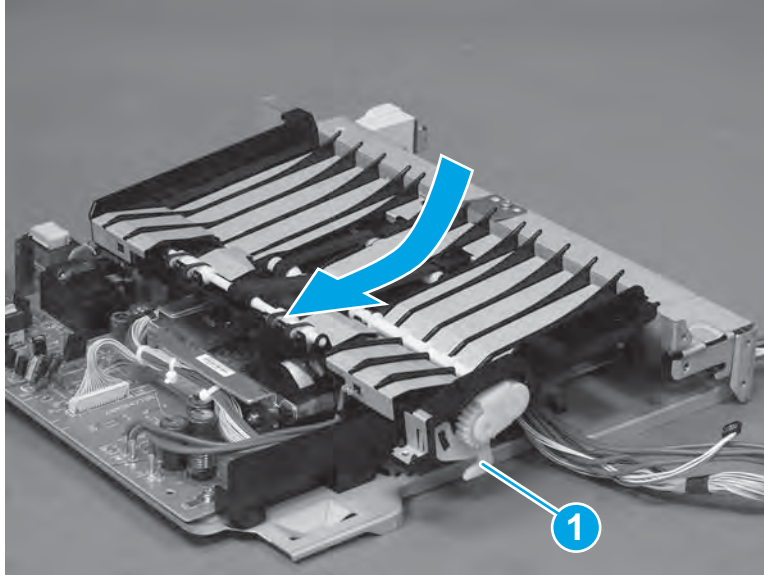
**Figure 1-870** Check the foot and slot



3. Install the feed assembly on the replacement HVPS at a slight angle so that the foot on the underside of the feed assembly fits into the sheet-metal slot on the HVPS. See [Figure 1-870 Check the foot and slot on page 552](#).

 **NOTE:** Make sure that the white lever (callout 1) on the assembly is correctly positioned.

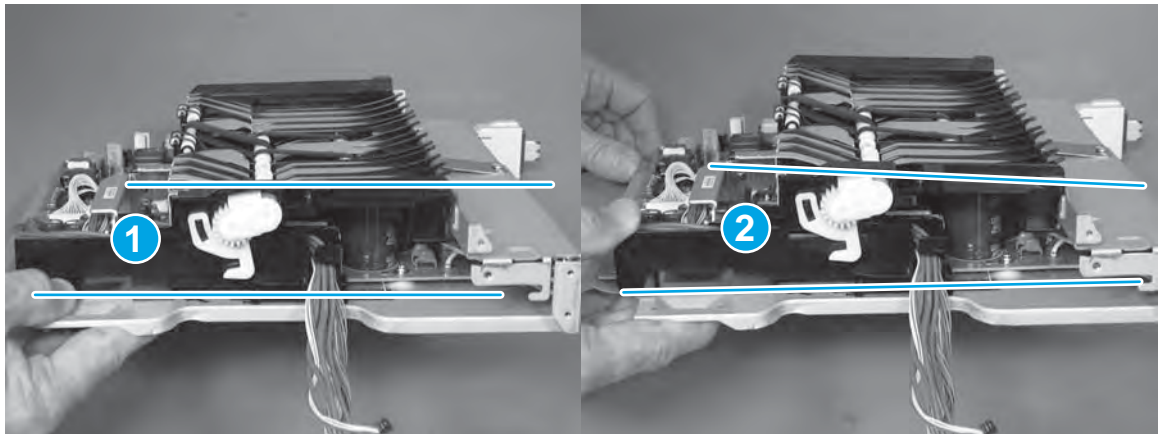
**Figure 1-871** Install the feed assembly



4. When correctly installed the feed assembly mounts flat (callout 1) on the HVPS. The assembly should not be angled (callout 2)—if the assembly is angled, make sure that the foot on the underside of the assembly is correctly positioned in the sheet-metal slot on the HVPS.

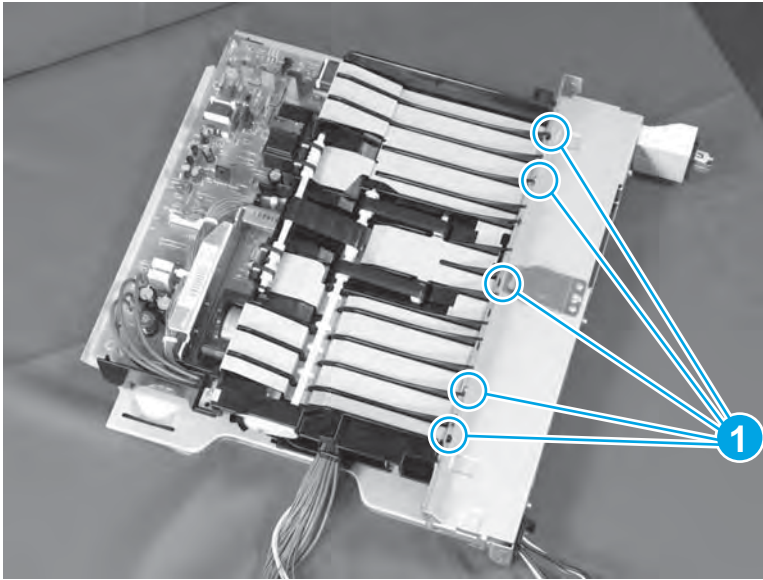
 **IMPORTANT:** Be careful when handling the feed assembly. Make sure that the drive belts and belt shafts do not become dislodged. See [Figure 1-869 Check the drive belts and belt shafts on page 552](#).

**Figure 1-872** Verify the feed assembly installation



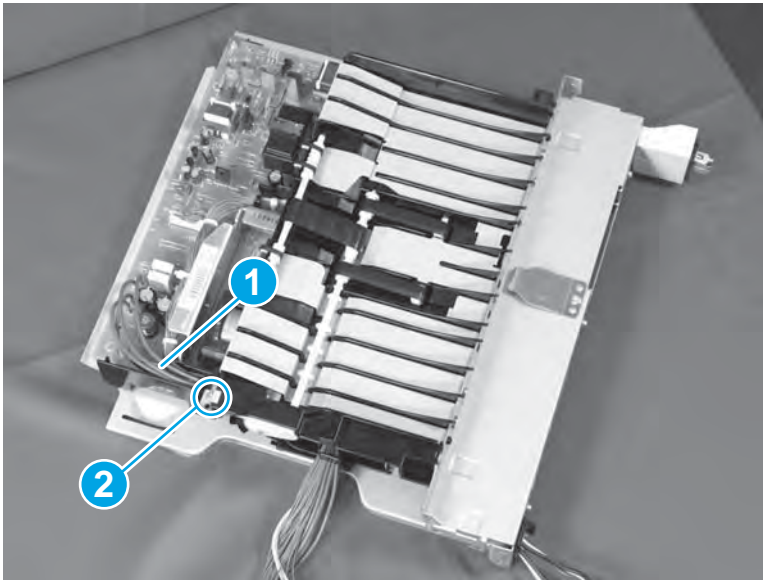
5. Install five screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-873** Install five screws




6. Connect one wire harness (callout 1), and then install one screw (callout 2).

**Figure 1-874** Connect one wire harness and install one screw and release

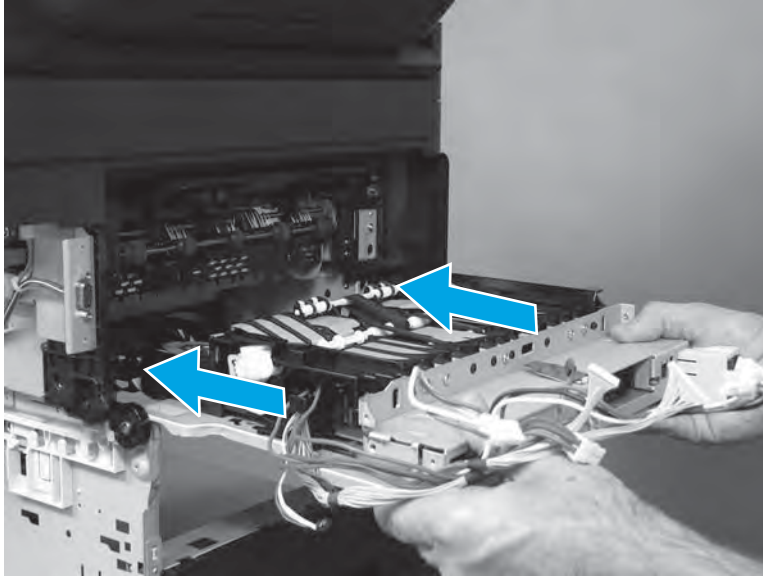





7. Partially slide the HVPS into the product.


 **Reinstallation tip:** The feed assembly must be correctly positioned or the HVPS will not completely slide into the product. If there are problems reinstalling the HVPS, make sure that the feed assembly is correctly mounted. See [Figure 1-872 Verify the feed assembly installation on page 553](#).

**Figure 1-875** Partially install the HVPS

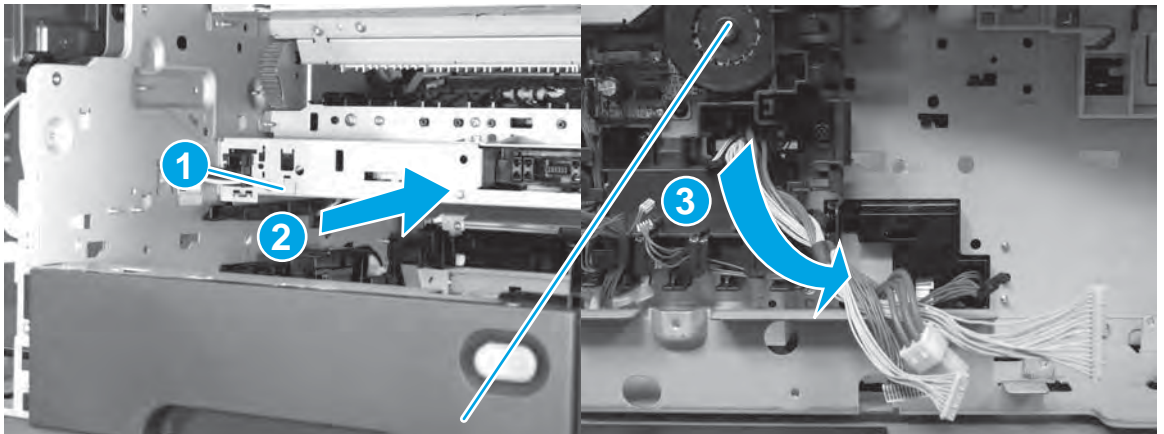


8. Continue to slide the HVPS (callout 1) into the product (callout 2), while at the back of the product feeding the wire harness through the hole in the chassis (callout 3).

 **CAUTION:** Be careful. Do not damage the wire harnesses.

 **TIP:** Keep the HVPS as level as possible when reinstalling it. Make sure that the assembly is correctly positioned on the two side support rails.

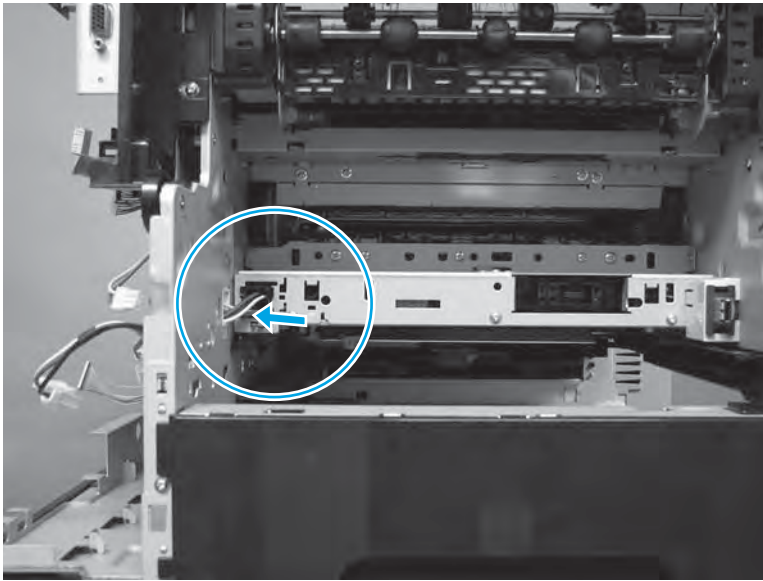
**Figure 1-876** Feed the wire harnesses through the hole



- Support the HVPS and feed the LVPS wire harnesses through the hole in the chassis.

**⚠ CAUTION:** Be careful. Do not damage the wire harnesses.

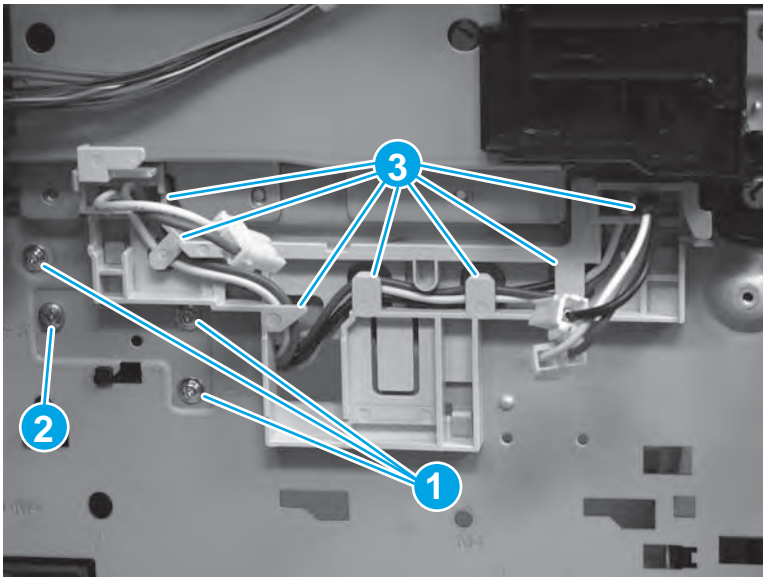
**Figure 1-877** Feed the wire harnesses through the hole




- At the back of the product, install four screws (callout 1/2), and then install the LVPS wire harnesses in the guide (callout 3), and then.

**📝 NOTE:** One screw (callout 2) is larger than the others.

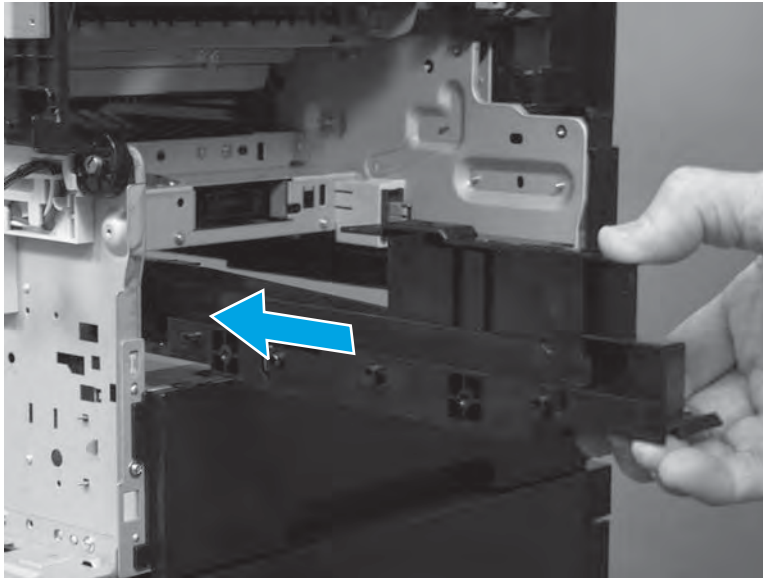
**Figure 1-878** Install four screws and install the wire harnesses



11. Install the guide.

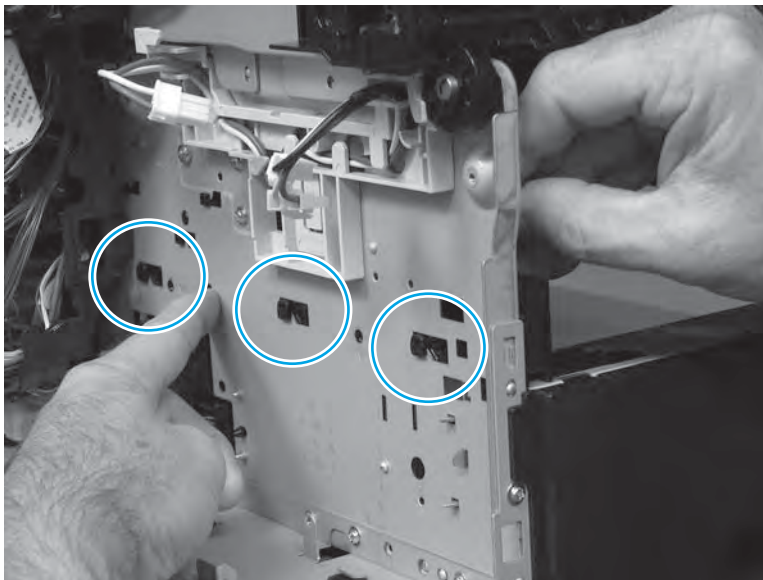
 **NOTE:** The guide is installed inside the product chassis (where the removed duplexer would be installed).

**Figure 1-879** Install the guide



12. Make sure that the tabs on the guide are engaged in the slots on the chassis.

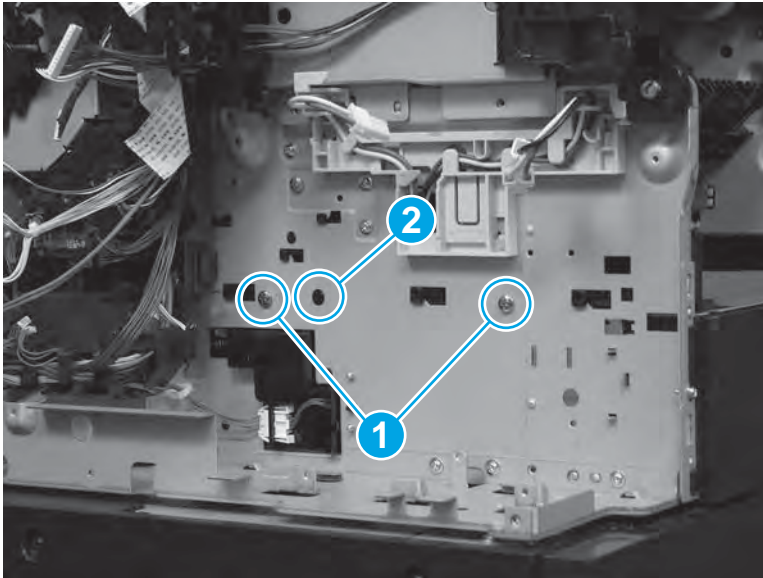
**Figure 1-880** Check the guide




13. At the back of the product, install two screws (callout 1).

 **NOTE:** Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged in the hole in the chassis.

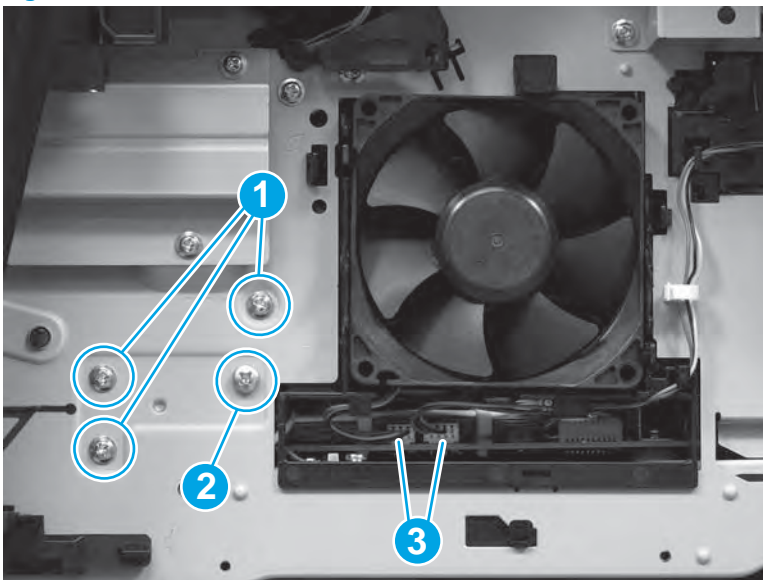
**Figure 1-881** Install two screws



14. At the front side of the product, install four screws (callout 1/2), and then connect two connectors (callout 3).

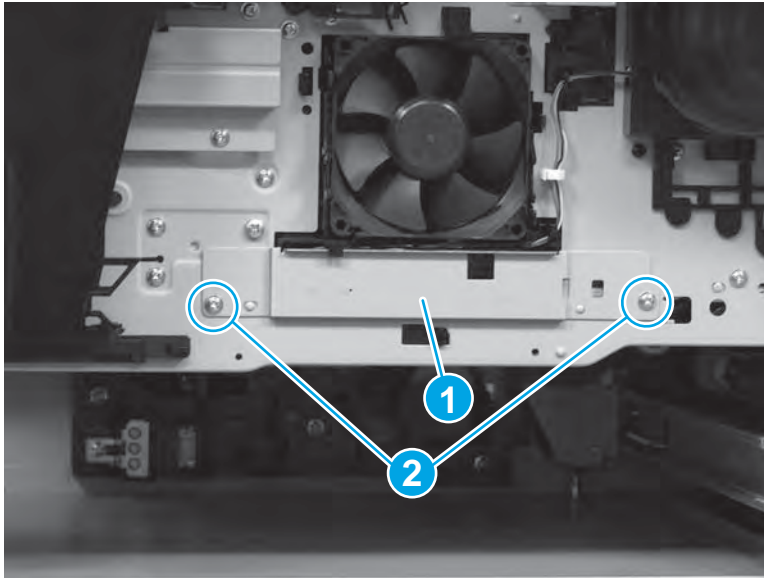
 **NOTE:** One screw (callout 2) is larger than the others.

**Figure 1-882** Install four screws and connect two connectors



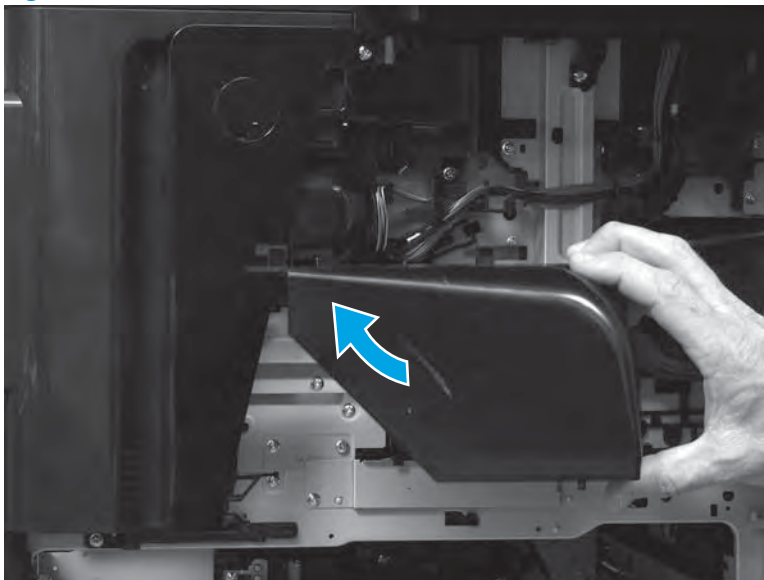
15. At the front of the product, install the cover (callout 1), and then install two screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-883** Install the cover



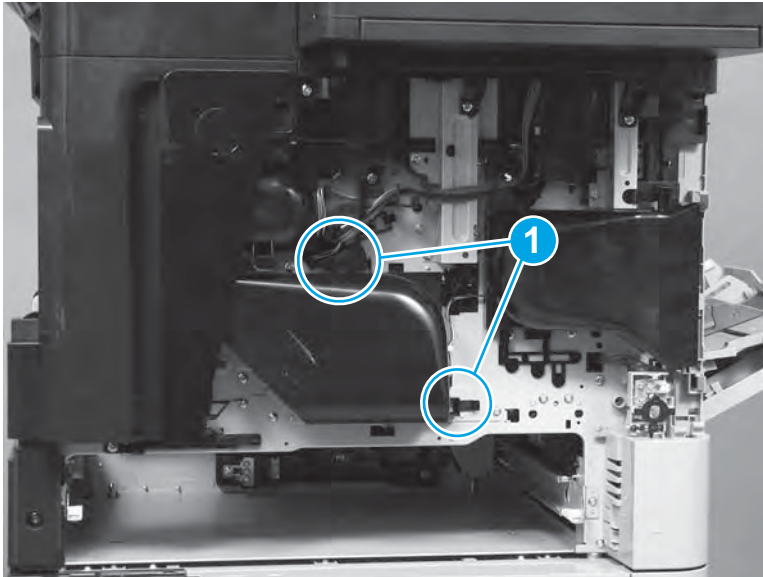
16. Install the fan duct.

**Figure 1-884** Install the fan duct



17. Make sure that the two tabs (callout 1) are correctly engaged on the product, and that the fan duct is securely held in place.


**Figure 1-885** Check two tabs




## Step 19: Install the LVPS

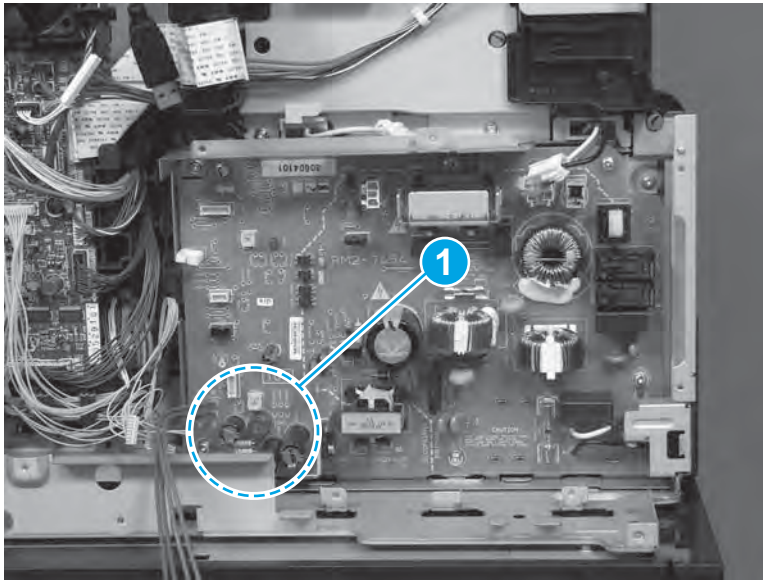
 ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Install the LVPS on the product.

 **IMPORTANT:** When installing the LVPS, make sure that the inline connector (callout 1; behind the LVPS) from the DC controller to the cassette media size switch (SW102) is fully seated. This connector is easily dislodged.

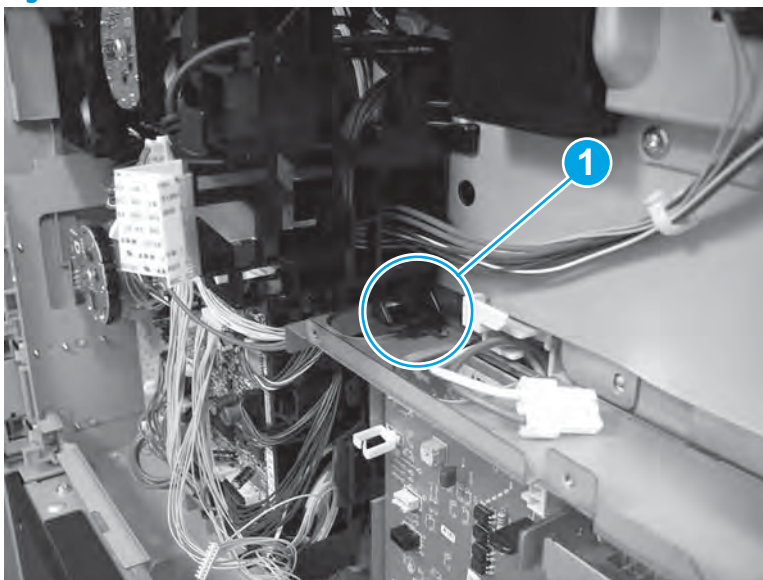
 **TIP:** If a Tray 2 removed error message appears on the control-panel display after servicing the product, check this connector.

**Figure 1-886** Install the LVPS



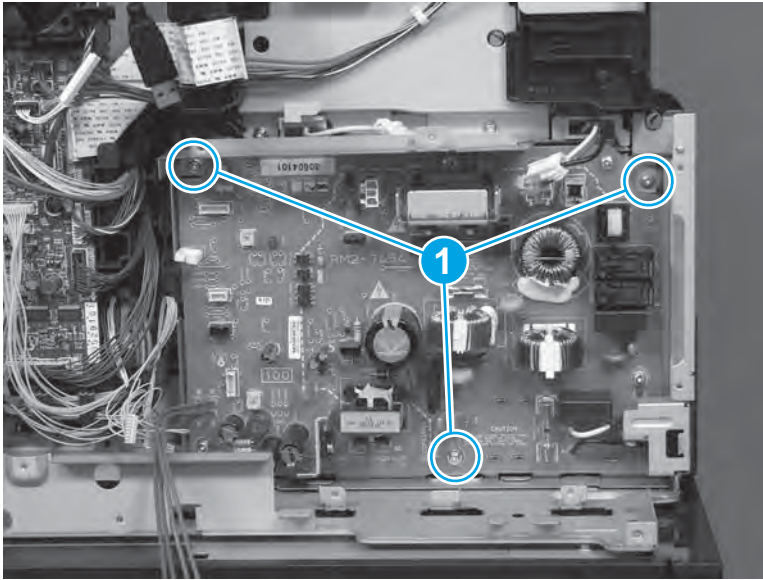
2. Make sure that the LVPS is installed behind one tab (callout 1).

**Figure 1-887** Check one tab



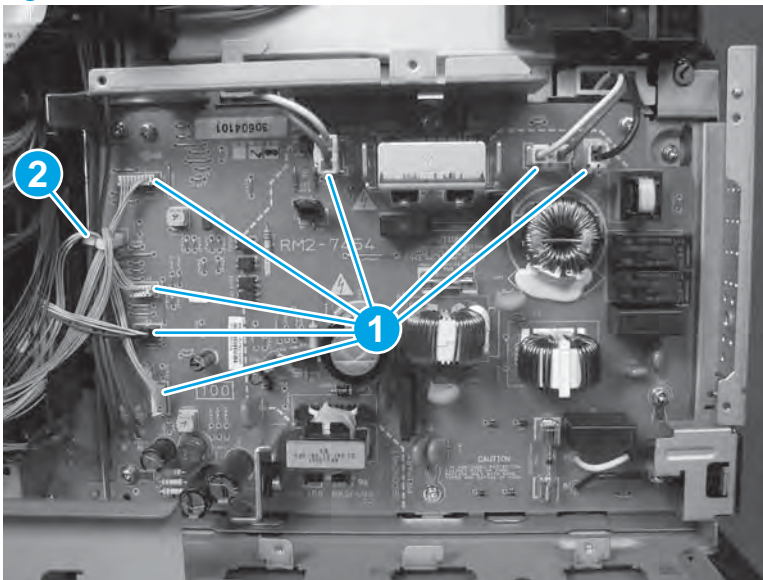
3. Install three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-888** Install three screws



4. Connect seven connectors (callout 1), and then install the wire harness in the retainer (callout 2).

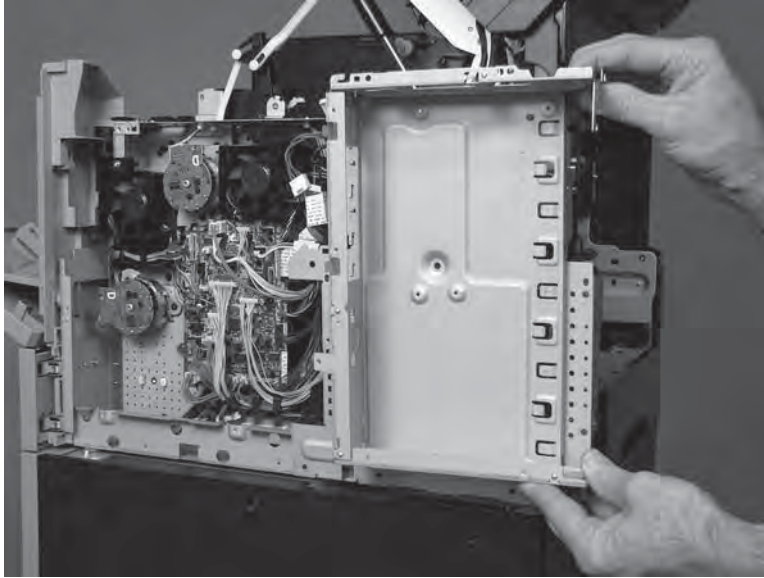
**Figure 1-889** Connect seven connectors





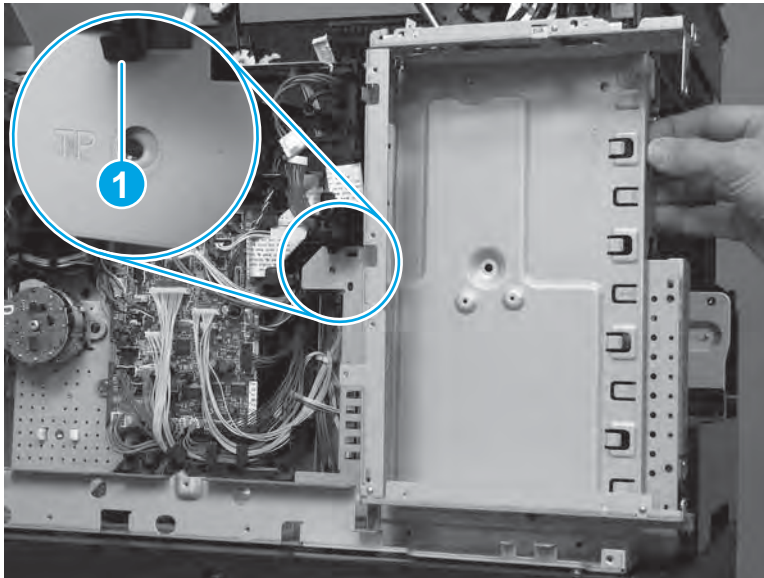
5. Install the sheet-metal plate on the product.

**Figure 1-890** Install the sheet-metal plate




6. Make sure that the sheet-metal plate is installed behind one tab (callout 1).

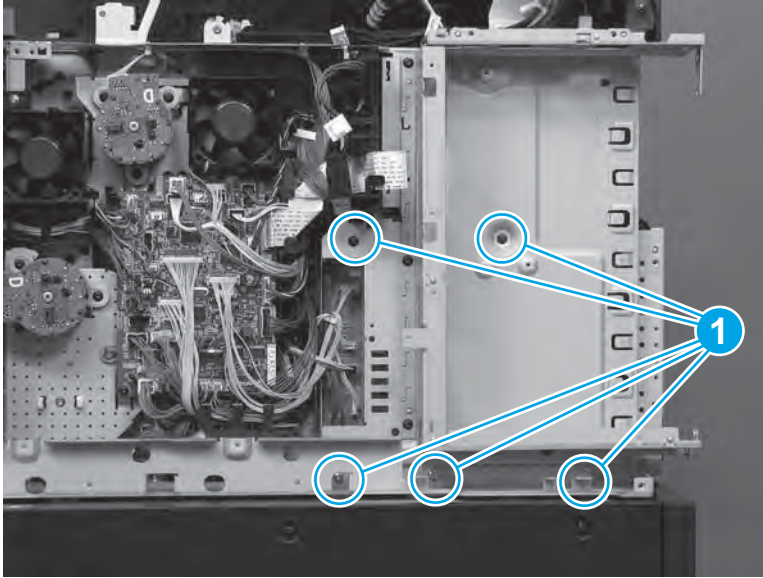
**Figure 1-891** Check one tab



7. Install five screws (callout 1).

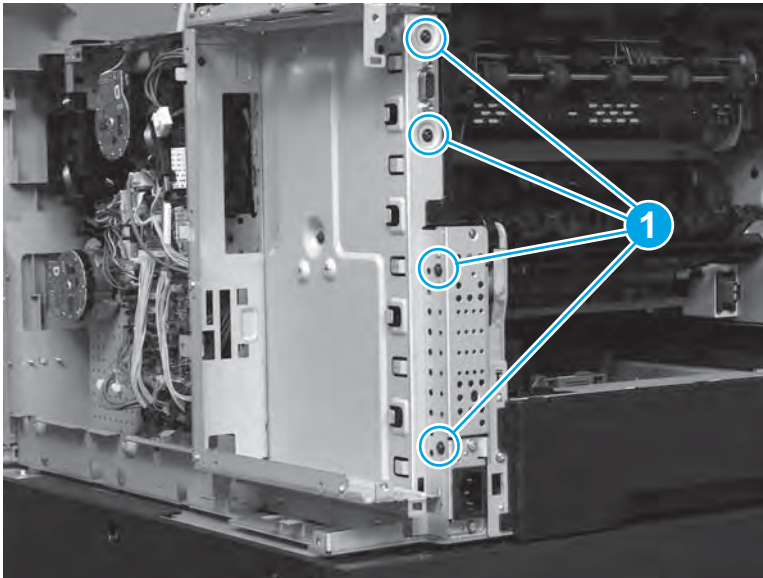
 **NOTE:** The two upper screws are black, and the three screws across the bottom are silver.

**Figure 1-892** Install five screws



8. Install four black screws (callout 1).

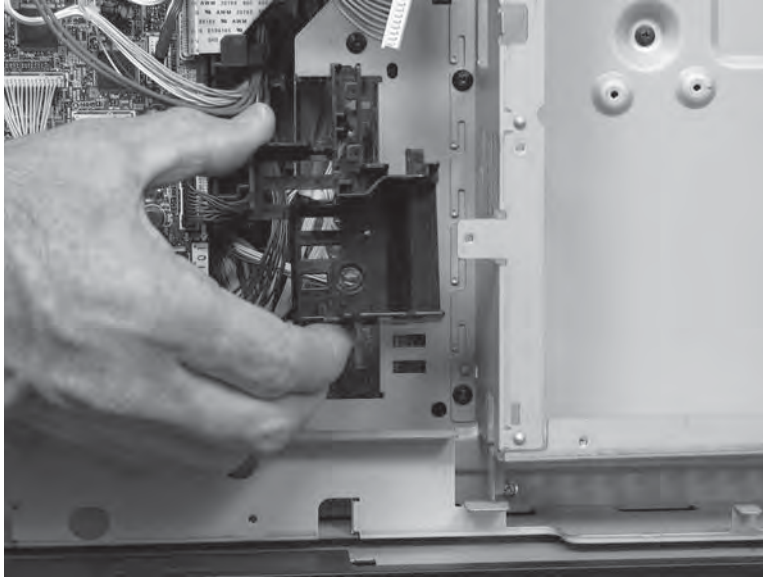
**Figure 1-893** Install four screws



9. Install the guide.

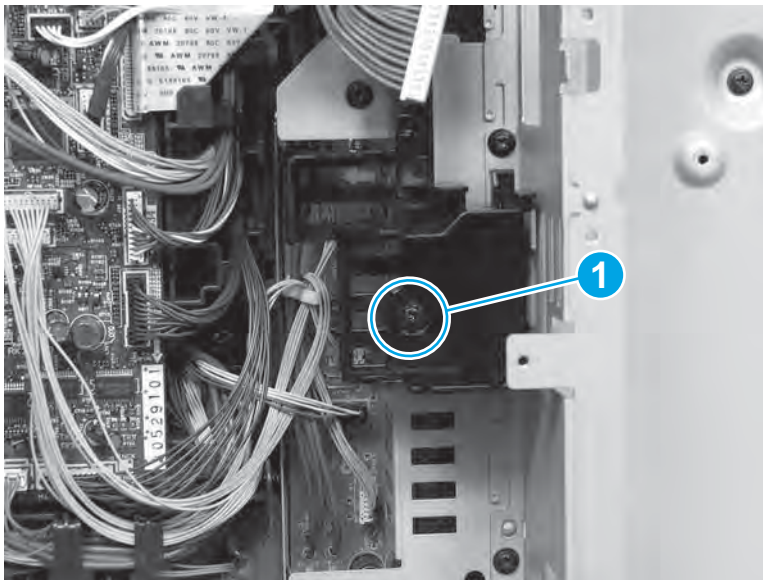
**TIP:** Insert the hook at the top of the guide into the slot in the chassis, and then rotate the bottom of the guide into place.

**Figure 1-894** Install the guide



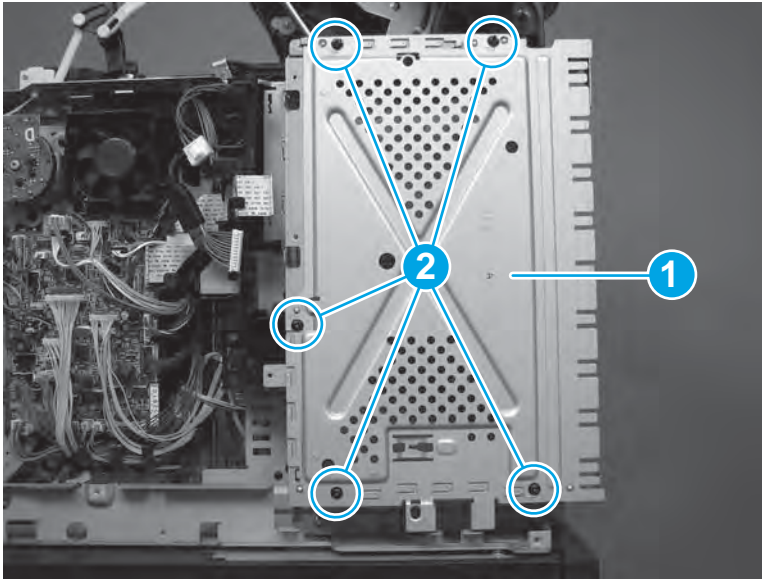
10. Install one screw (callout 1) near the DC controller.

**Figure 1-895** Install one screw



11. Install the sheet-metal plate (callout 1), and then install five screws (callout 2).

**Figure 1-896** Install the sheet-metal plate

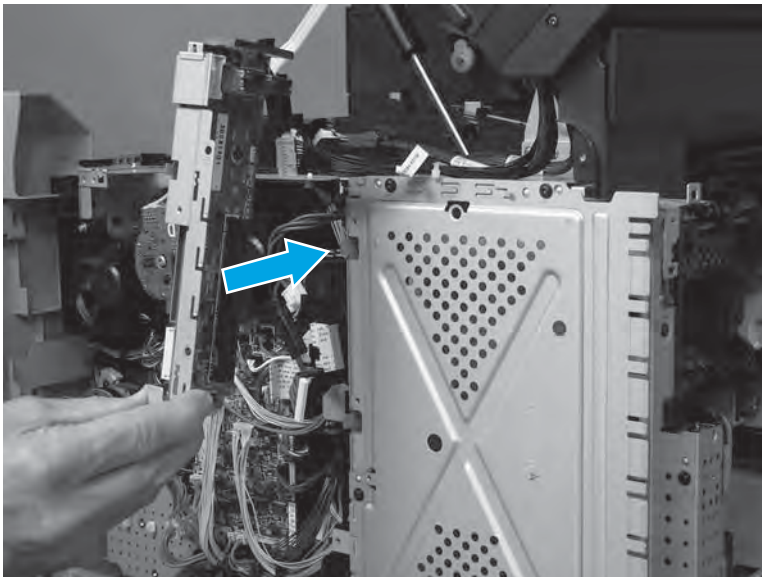


## Step 20: Install the ICB

 ESD sensitive assembly.

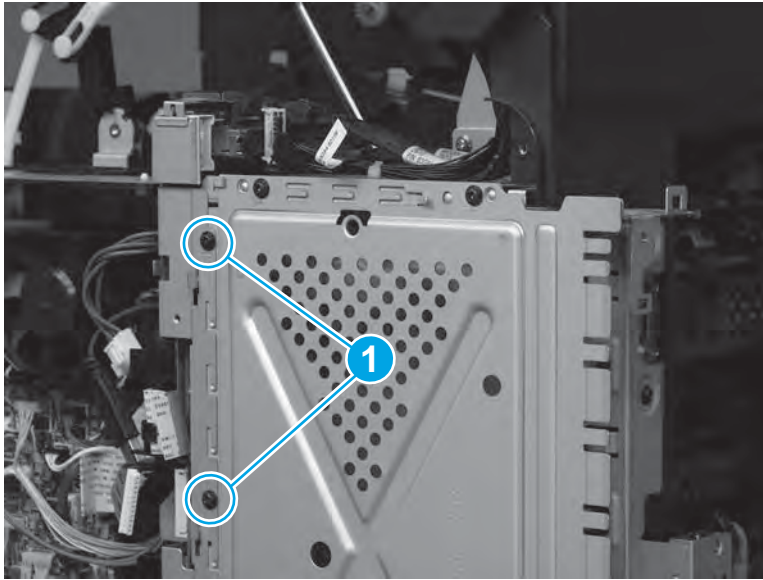
1. Install the ICB on the product.

**Figure 1-897** Install the ICB



2. Install two screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-898** Install two screws

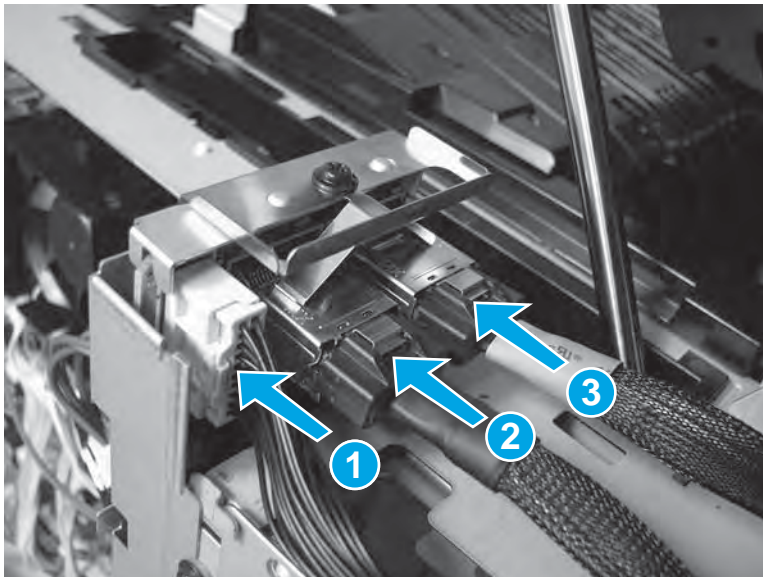


3. At the top of the ICB, connect three connectors.

**TIP:** When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callouts 2/3) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

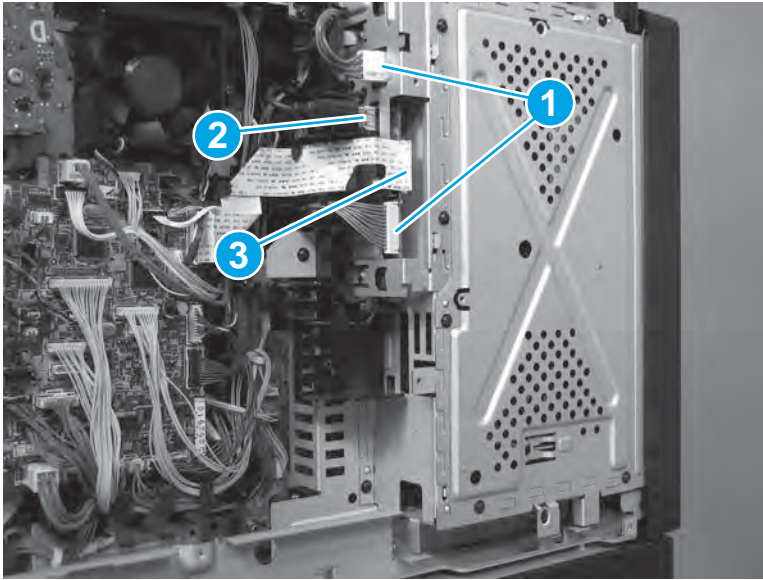
The wire harness with the blue band (callouts 3) connects to the inner connector on the ICB when reinstalled.

**Figure 1-899** Connect three connectors



4. Connect two connectors (callout 1), one USB connector (callout 2), and then connect one FFC (callout 3).

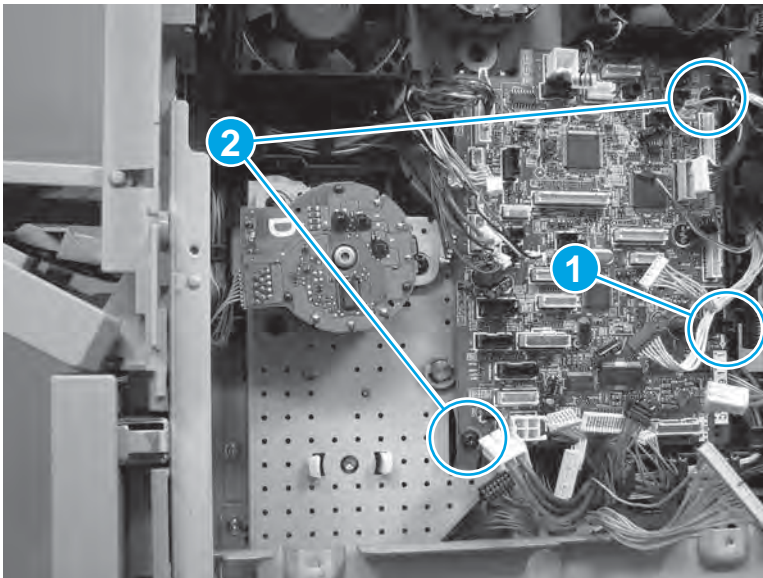
**Figure 1-900** Connect four connectors



### Step 21: Install the DC controller

1. Position the DC controller on the product, engage one tab (callout 1), and then install two screws (callout 2).

**Figure 1-901** Install the DC controller



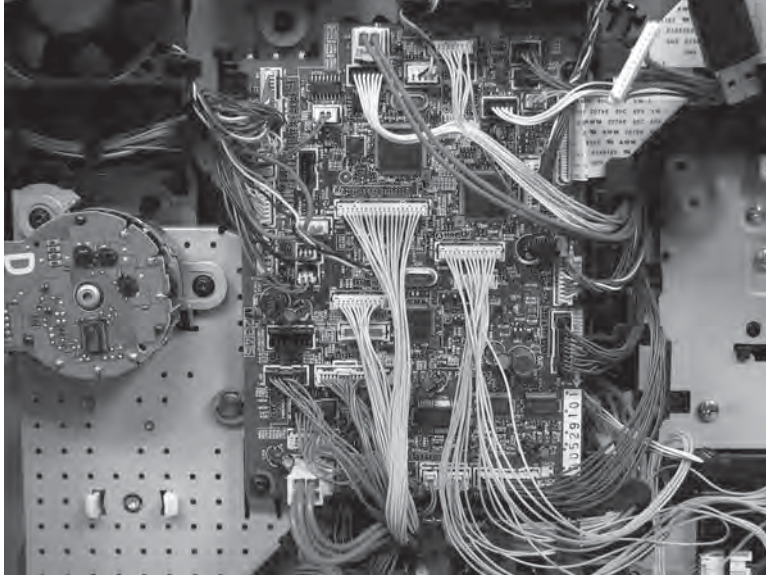
2. Connect all of the connectors on the DC controller.
  - 34 wire-harness connectors
  - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

---

 **Reinstallation tip:** Connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

---

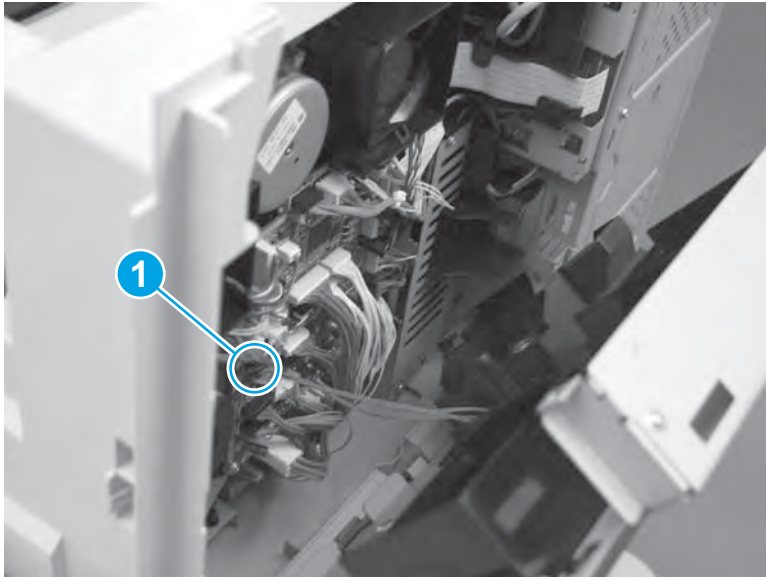
**Figure 1-902** Connect all of the connectors



**Step 22: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly**

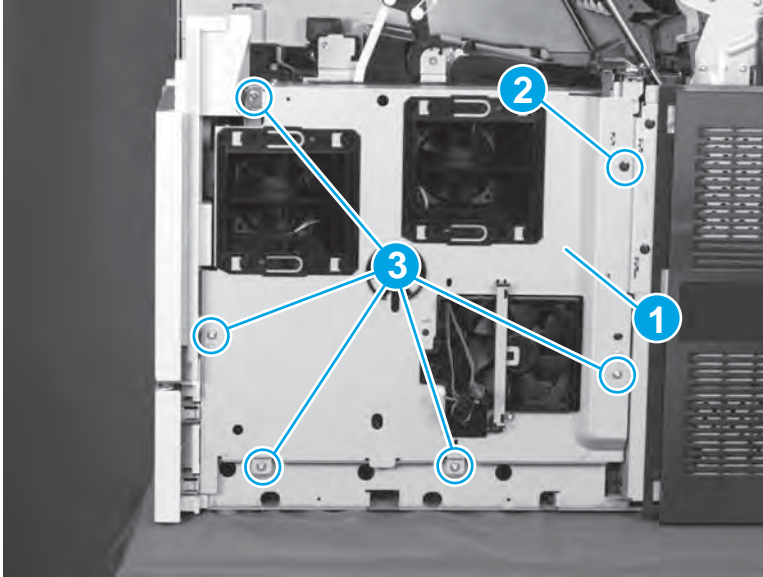
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

**Figure 1-903** Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

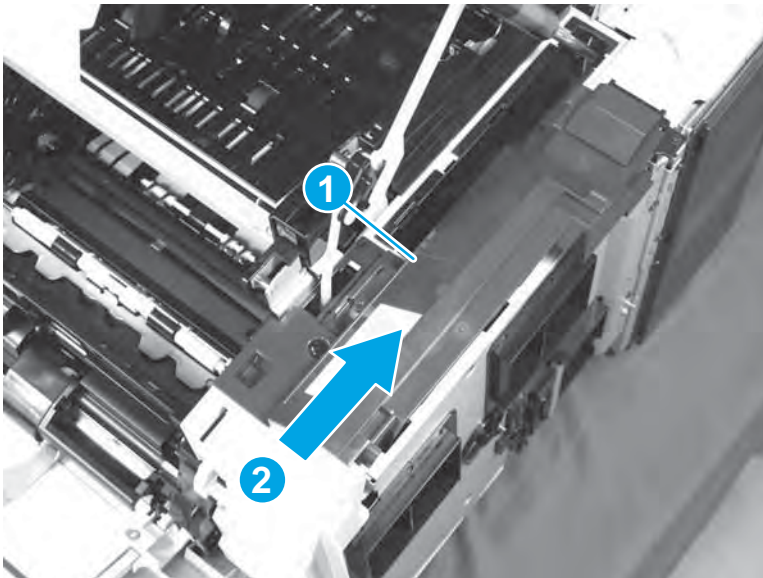
**Figure 1-904** Remove six screws



### Step 23: Install the rear-top cover

1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

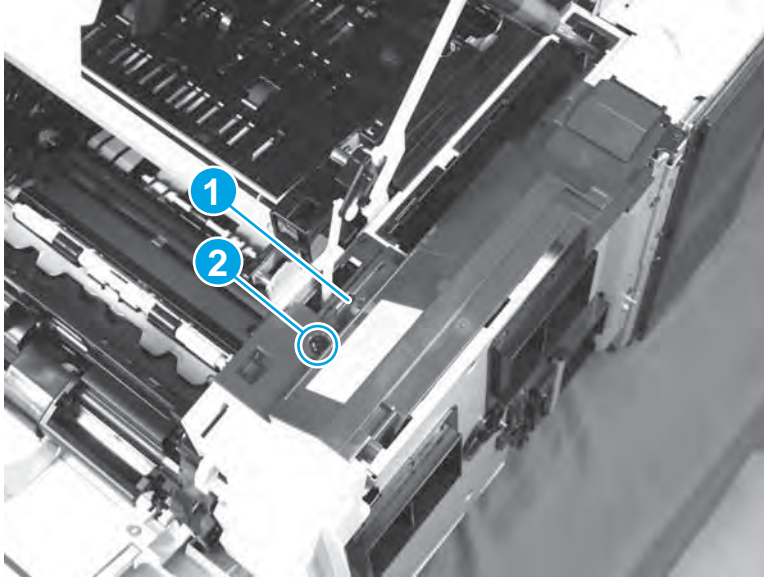
**Figure 1-905** Install the cover





2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

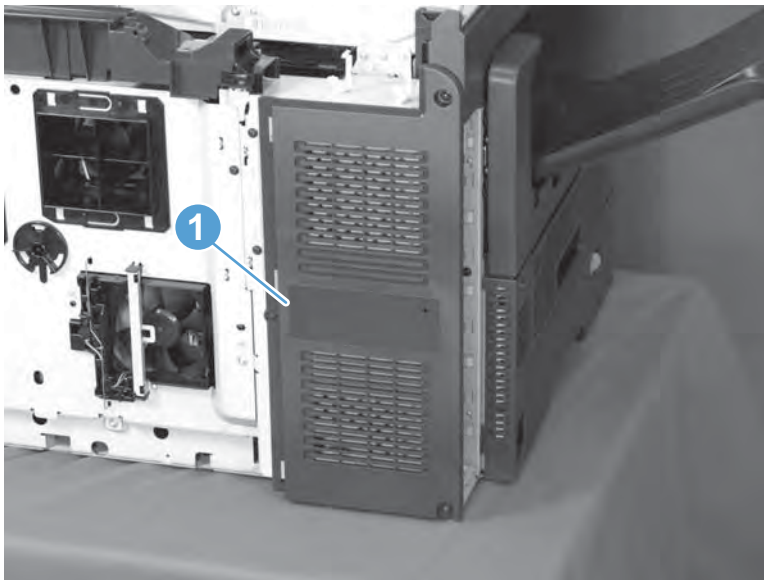
**Figure 1-906** Install one screw



#### **Step 24: Install the rear-left cover**

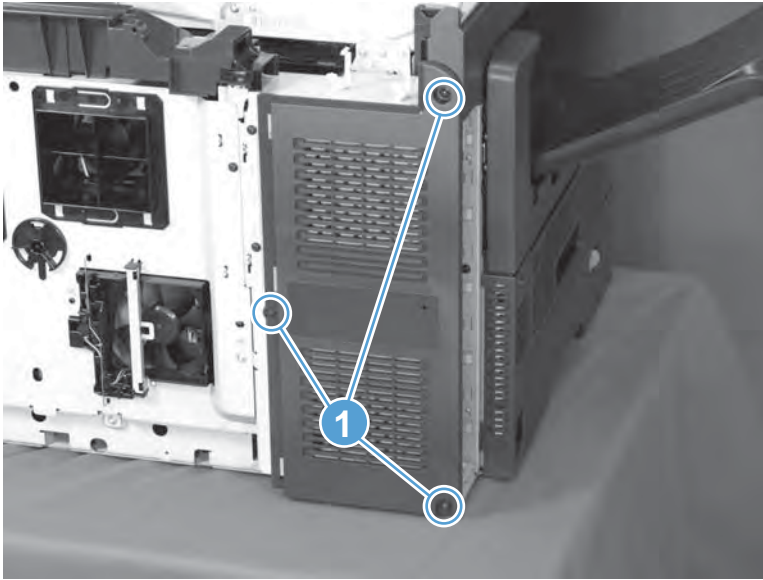
1. Position the cover (callout 1) on the product.

**Figure 1-907** Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1).

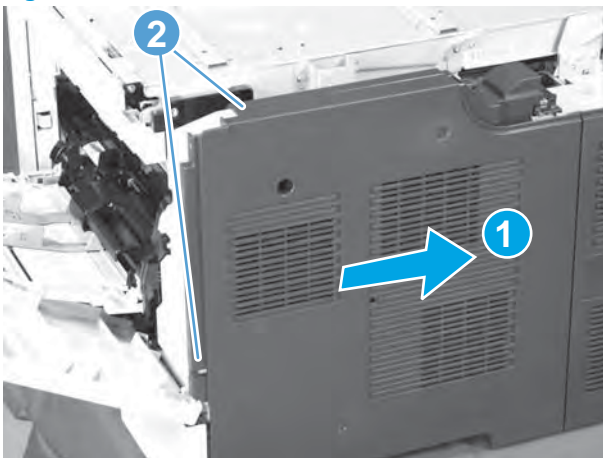
**Figure 1-908** Install three screws



### Step 25: Install the rear-right cover

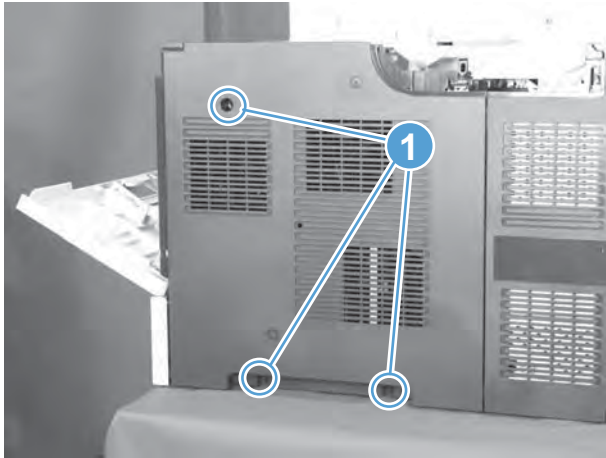
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

**Figure 1-909** Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

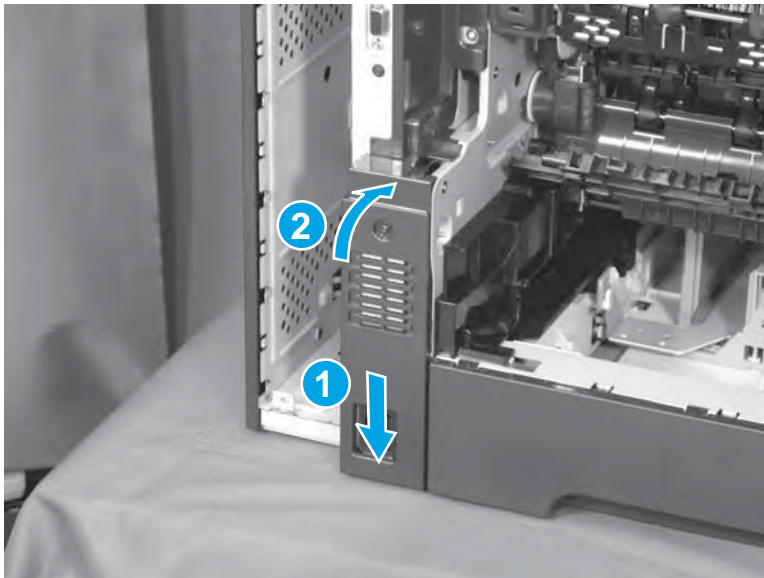
**Figure 1-910** Install three screws



### Step 26: Install the side-rear cover

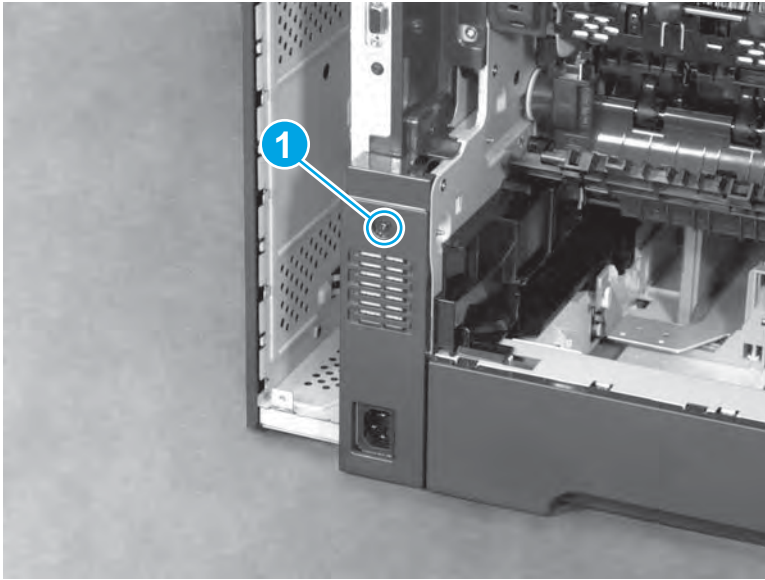
1. Position the bottom of the cover on the product (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the cover toward the product (callout 2) to install it.

**Figure 1-911** Install the side-rear cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1).

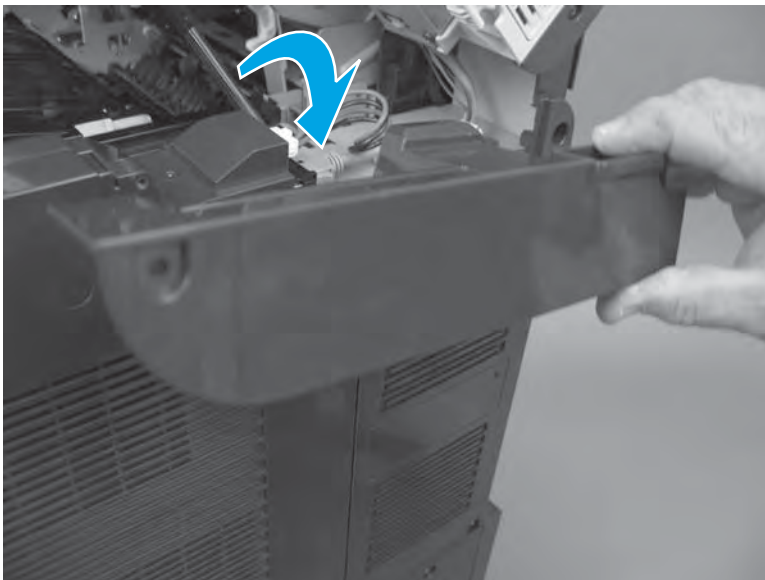
**Figure 1-912** Install one screw



### Step 27: Install the image scanner cable cover

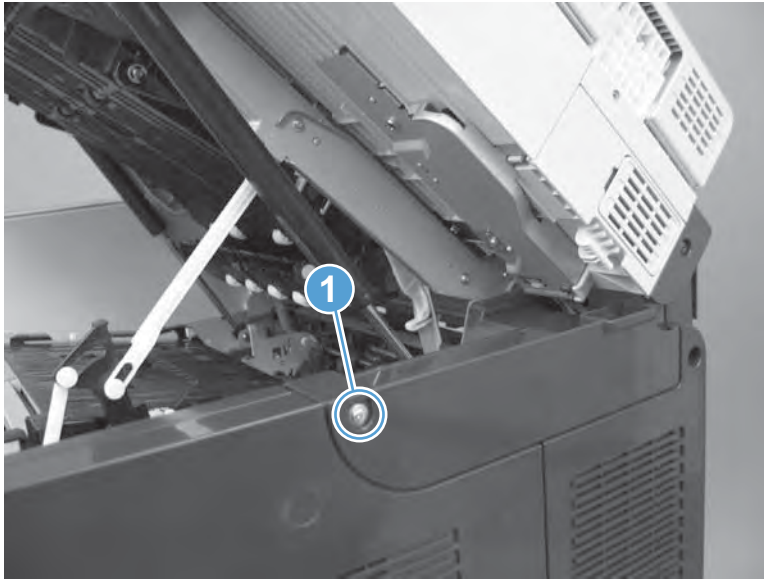
1. Install the cover on the product.

**Figure 1-913** Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

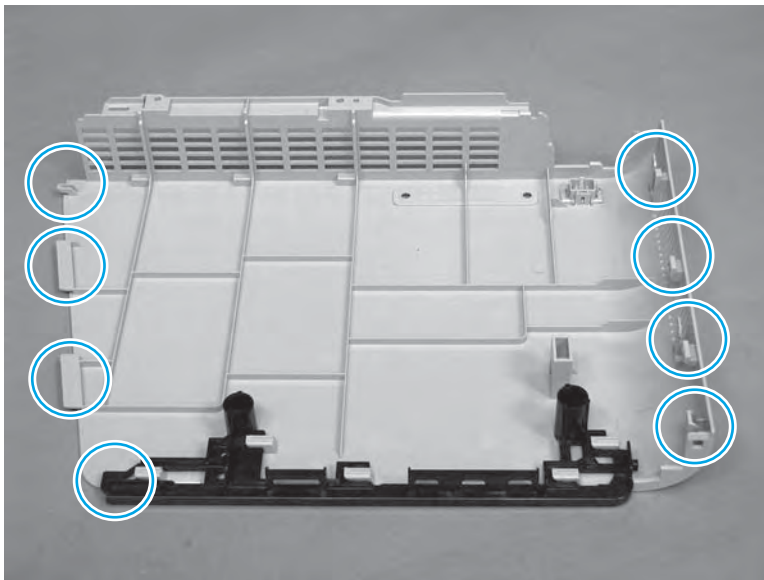
**Figure 1-914** Install one screw



### Step 28: Install the front cover

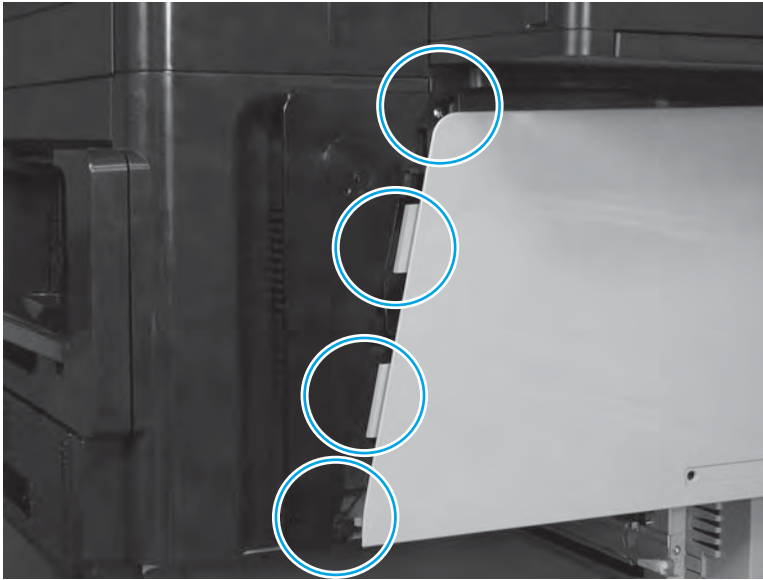
1. Take note of the location of all of the tabs on the back of the cover.

**Figure 1-915** Note of the location of the tabs



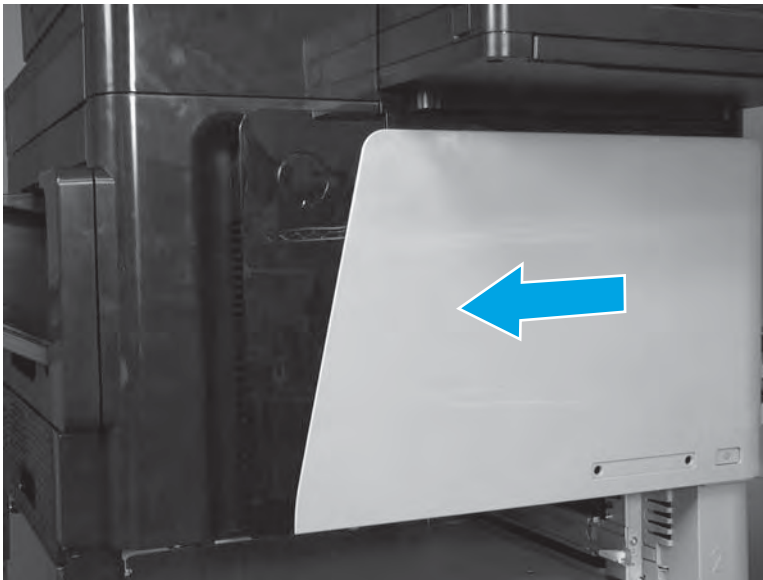
2. Align the four tabs (callout 1) on the cover with the slots (callout 2) on the logo panel.

**Figure 1-916** Align four tabs



3. Slightly slide the cover toward the left side of the product to engage the tabs in the slots.

**Figure 1-917** Slide the cover to the left



- Carefully flex the right-upper corner of the cover toward from the product to engage one locking pin.

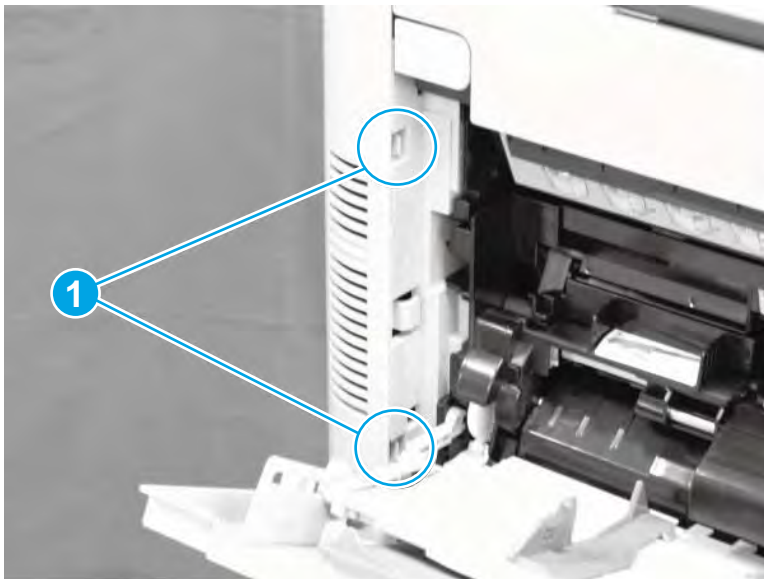
**Figure 1-918** Engage one locking pin



- Engage two tabs (callout 1).

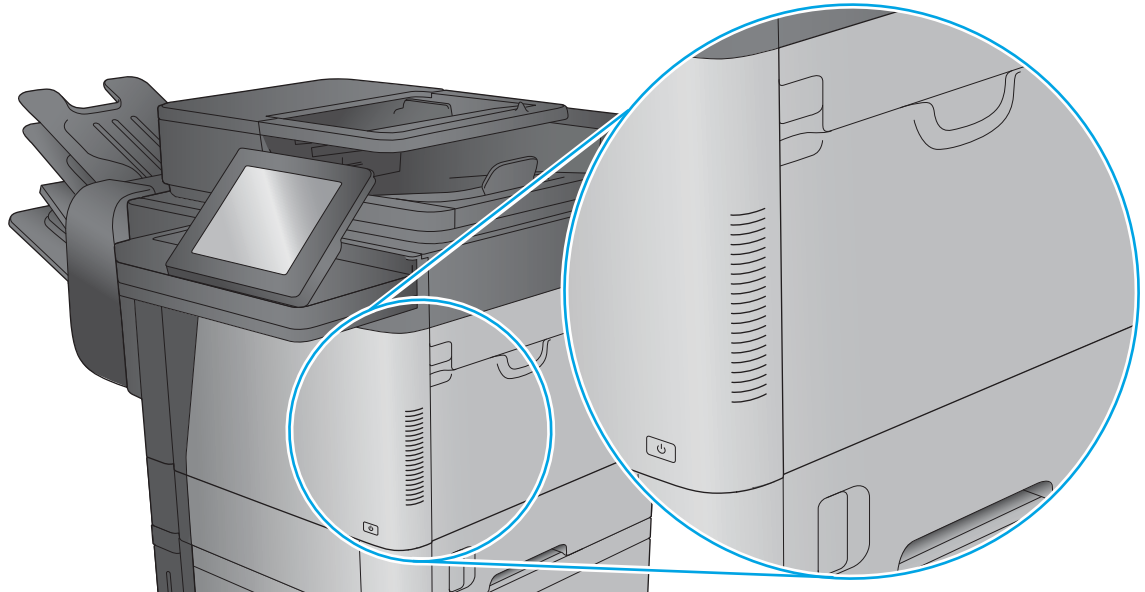
 **TIP:** Engage the upper tab first, and then engage the lower tab.

**Figure 1-919** Engage two tabs




6. Close Tray 1, and verify that the gap between the edge of the front cover and the tray is even. If it is uneven, the tabs are not correctly engaged.

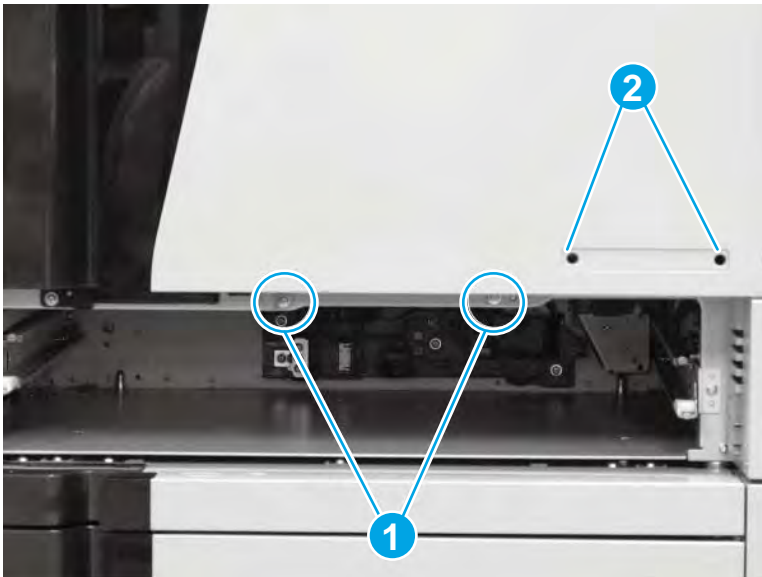
**Figure 1-920** Check cover installation



7. Install two screws (callout 1), and then reinstall Tray 2.


 **Reinstallation tip:** To install the product nameplate on the front cover, align the pins on the back side of the nameplate with the holes in the cover (callout 2), and then push in on the nameplate until it snaps in place.

**Figure 1-921** Install two screws



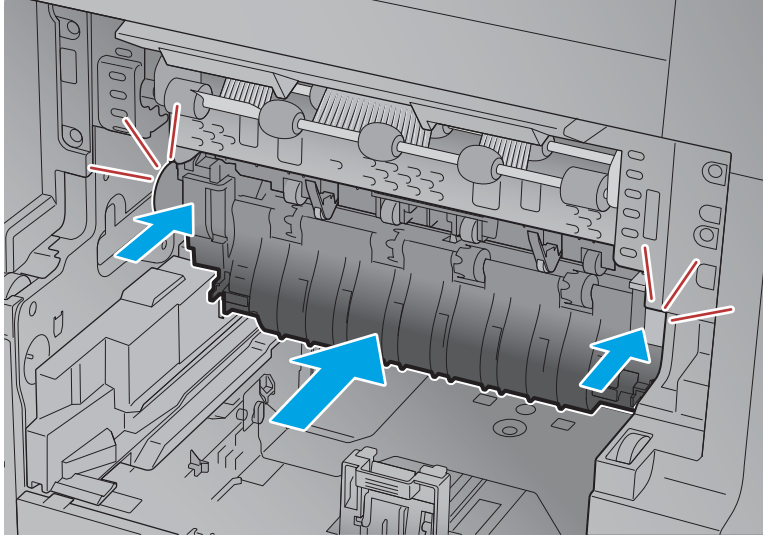
## Step 29: Install the fuser

- ▲ Position the fuser in the product, push in to install it, and then make sure that it is fully seated.

 **TIP:** When the fuser is fully seated, the two blue locking levers make an audible click.



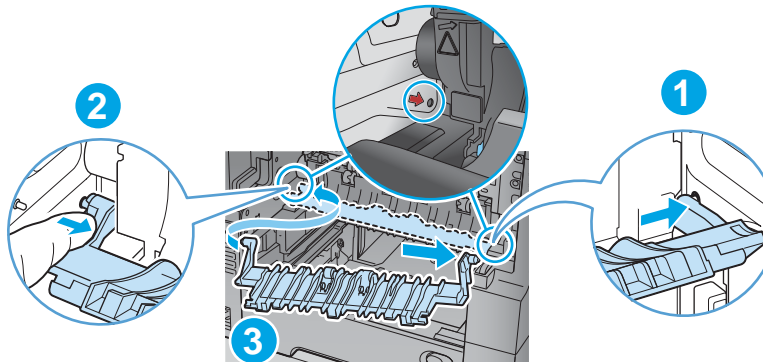
**Figure 1-922** Install the fuser



### Step 30: Install the fuser-entrance guide


1. Position the front hinge-pin of the fuser-entrance guide in the mounting hole in the product chassis (callout 1).
2. Slightly flex the rear hinge pin (callout 2), rotate the guide into the product (callout 3) to install it.


**Figure 1-923** Install the fuser-entrance guide



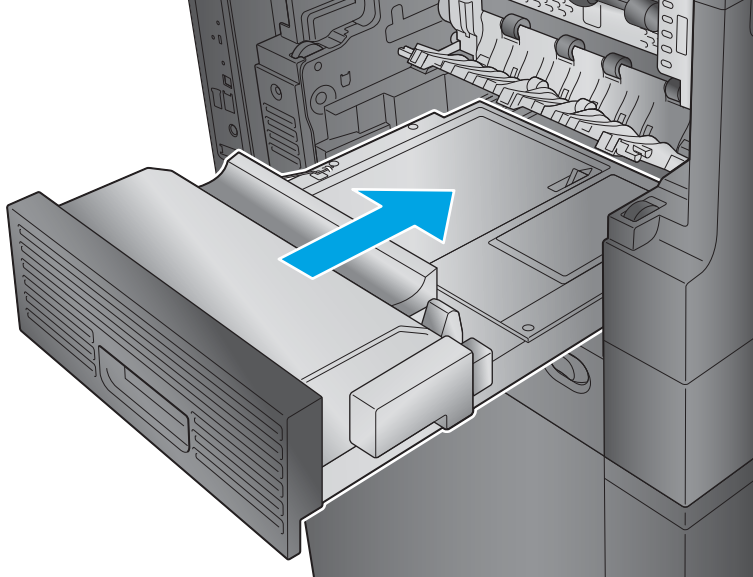
### Step 31: Install the duplex accessory

- ▲ Position the duplex assembly on the product at a slight angle, engage the slide rails, and then slide the duplex assembly all of the way into the product to install it.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that the duplex accessory is full installed.

 **NOTE:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed duplex accessory.

**Figure 1-924** Install the duplex accessory

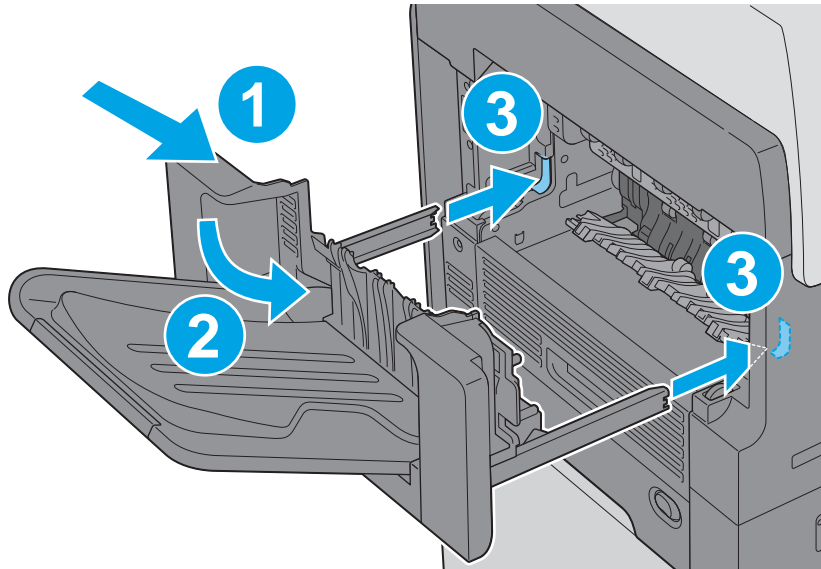


**Step 32: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox**


▲ Do one of the following:

- a. **M630dn and M630f:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

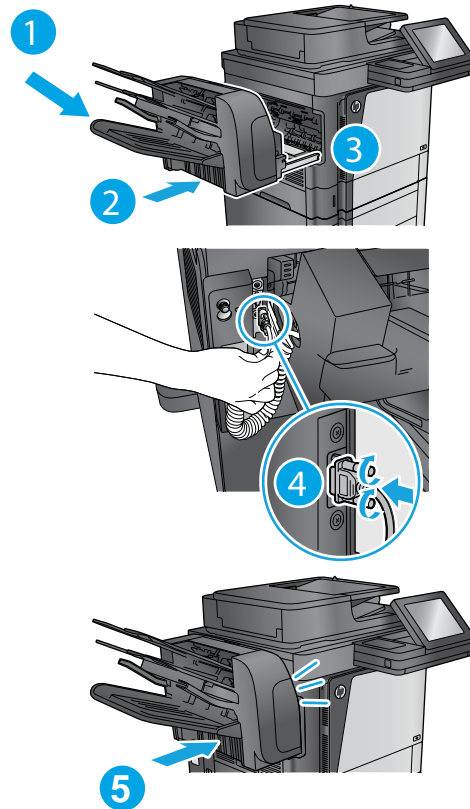
**Figure 1-925** Install the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4), and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.

 **TIP:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

**Figure 1-926** Install the stapling mailbox

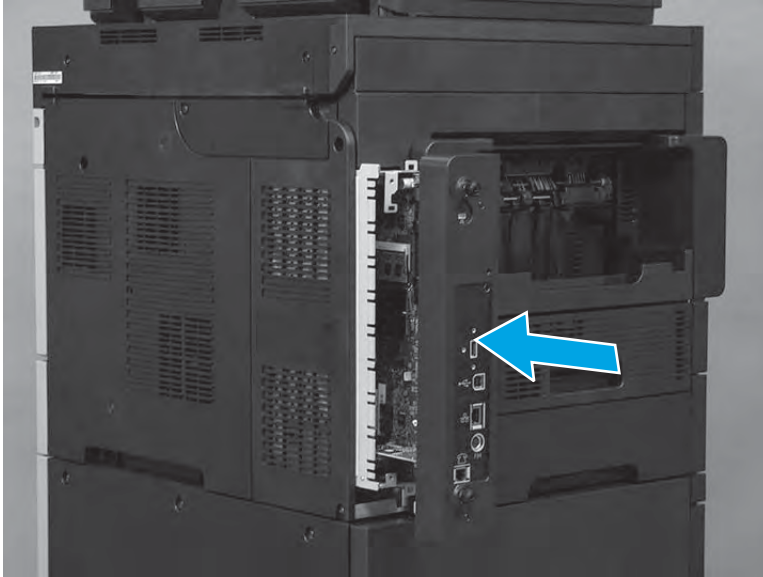


### Step 33: Install the formatter

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

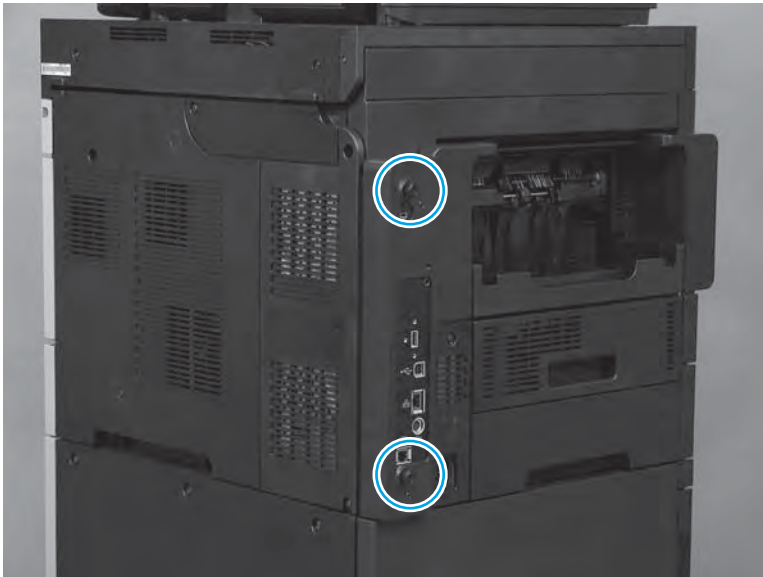
1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

**Figure 1-927** Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot



2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.


**Figure 1-928** Tighten the two thumbscrews



### Step 34: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:
  - a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.
  - b. Plug in the power cord.
2. Turn on the product.

---

 **TIP:** If the product does not initialize when the power is turned on, make sure that the memory DIMM is correctly installed.

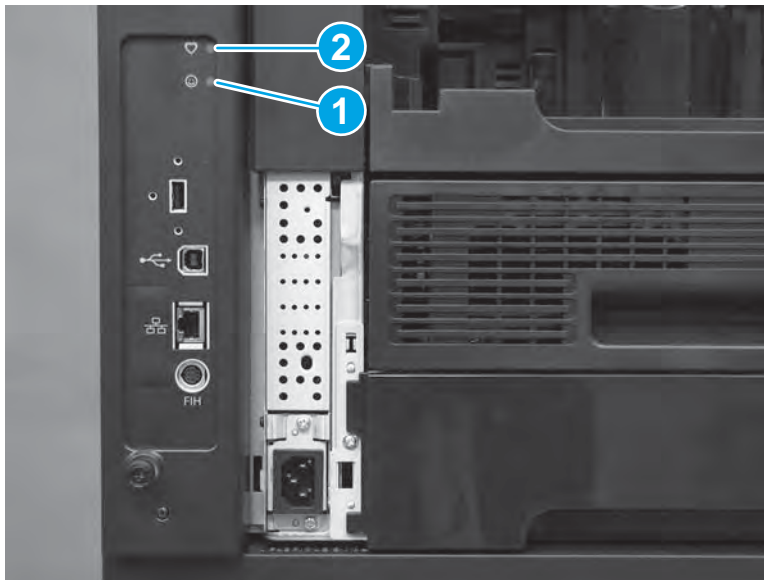
---

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter:

- The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is functioning correctly.
  - While the product is initializing, the heartbeat LED illuminates solid red for about one second, and then turns solid green for about twenty seconds.
  - After the initialization sequence is complete, the heartbeat LED blinks continuously if the printer is functioning correctly.
- The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LEDs do not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).

**Figure 1-929** Verify that the formatter is functioning



## Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

## Feed roller assembly

### Remove the following assemblies:

- Output bin and bin base assembly. See [Output bin and bin base assembly on page 68](#).



**NOTE:** If the optional HP Stapling Mailbox is installed, remove it.

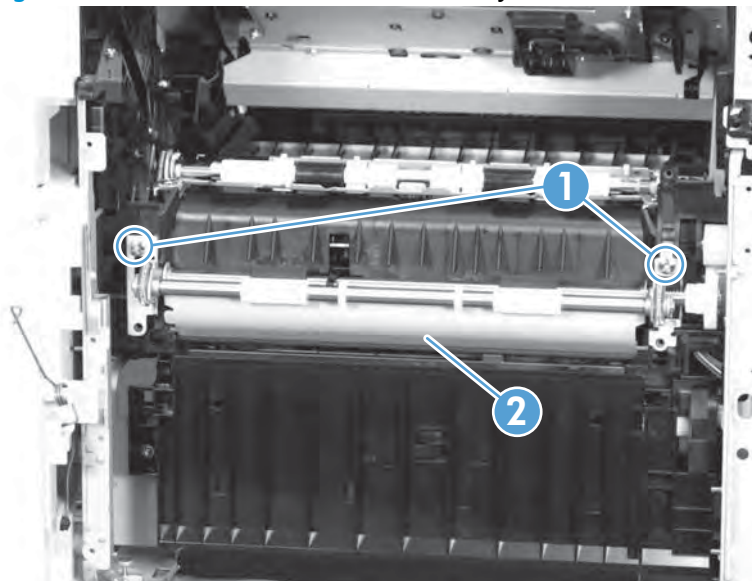
- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Tray 1 cover. See [Tray 1 cover on page 287](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).
- Rear-top cover. See [Rear-top cover on page 335](#).
- Right-lower door. See [Right-lower door on page 345](#).
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See [DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382](#).
- Tray 1 pickup assembly. See [Tray 1 pickup assembly on page 403](#).

### Remove the feed roller assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the feed roller assembly (callout 2).

**Figure 1-930** Remove the feed roller assembly



## Pickup drive assembly

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 5: Remove the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 6: Remove the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 7: Remove the right-lower door](#)
- [Step 8: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 9: Remove the DC controller](#)
- [Step 10: Remove the feed motor](#)
- [Step 11: Remove the pickup drive assembly](#)
- [Step 12: Unpack the replacement pickup drive assembly](#)
- [Step 13: Install the pickup drive assembly](#)
- [Step 14: Install the feed motor](#)
- [Step 15: Install the DC controller](#)
- [Step 16: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 17: Install the right-lower door](#)
- [Step 18: Install the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 19: Install the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 20: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 21: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 22: Install the Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Step 23: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 24: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

### Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the pickup drive assembly.

## Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

Pickup drive assembly part number	
RM2-5804-000CN	Pickup drive assembly

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

**⚠ WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

## Required tools

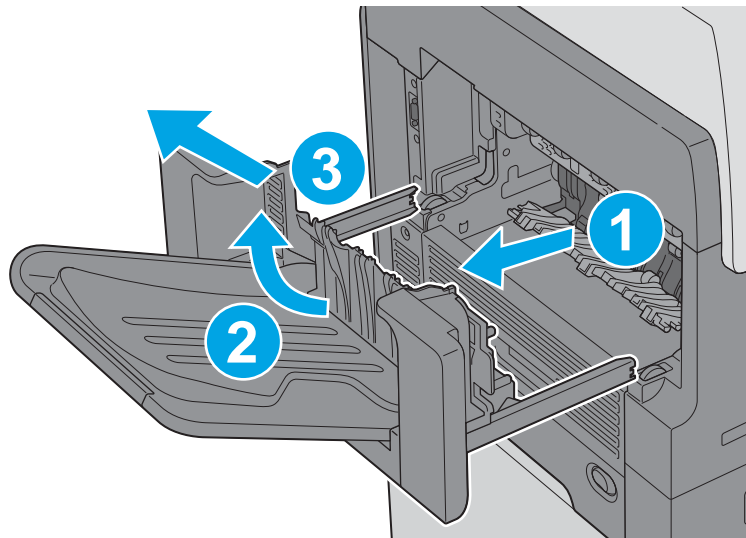
#2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152-mm (6-in) shaft length

## Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following steps:

- M630dn and M630f:** Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

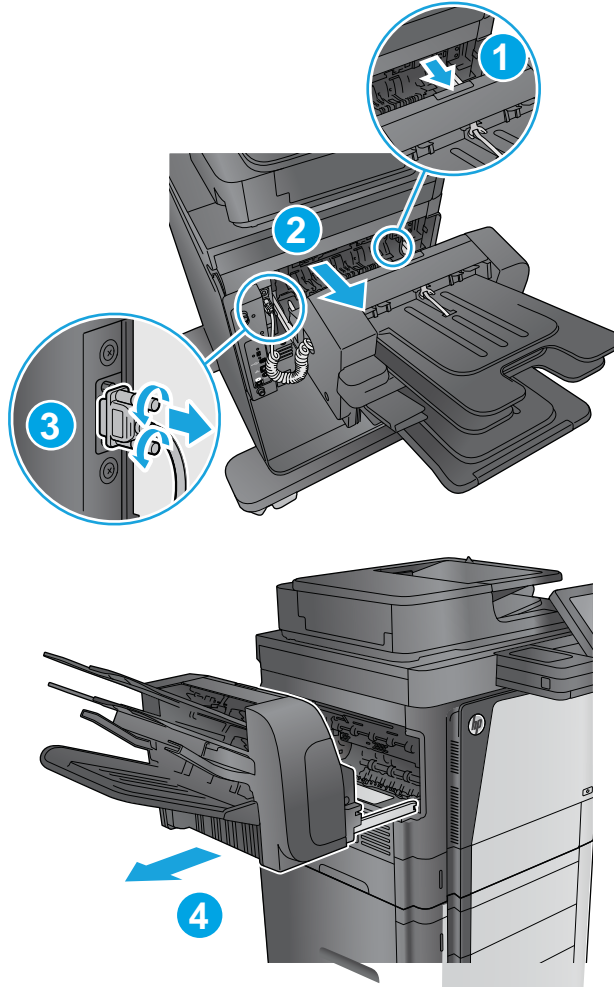
**Figure 1-931** Remove the output bin





- b. **M630z:** Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

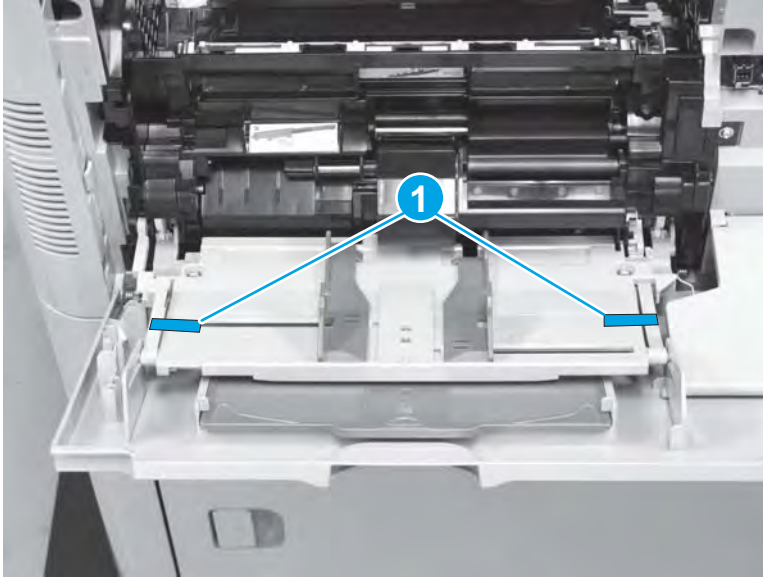
**Figure 1-932** Remove the stapling mailbox



## Step 2: Remove the Tray 1 cover

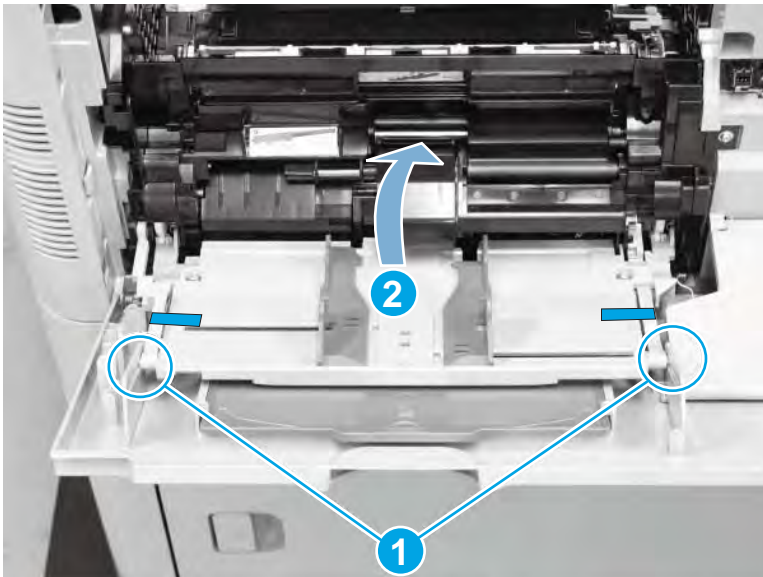
1. Use low adhesive tape to secure the outer retaining pins (callout 1) to the inner tray.

**Figure 1-933** Secure the outer retaining pins



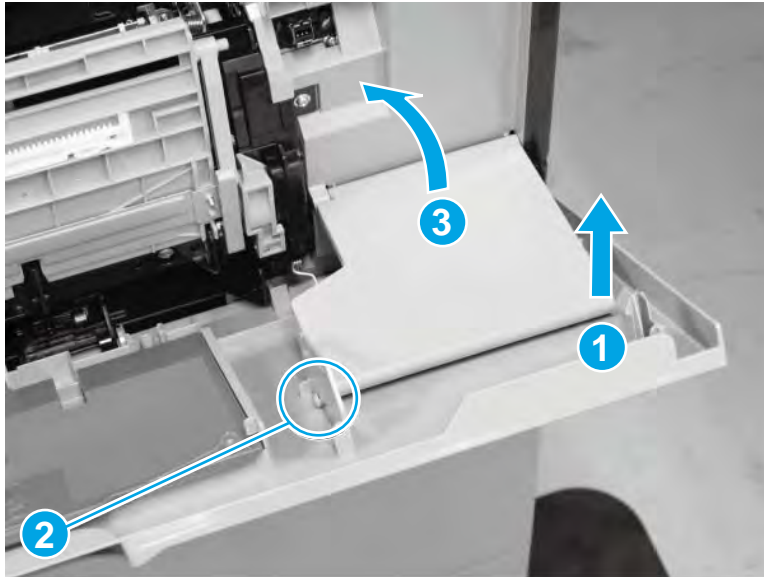
2. Open Tray 1, release the two outer retaining pins (callout 1) on the cover, and then carefully fold the inner tray up (callout 2) and into the product to protect it.

**Figure 1-934** Release two outer retaining pins



- Carefully lift on the outer corner of the tray inner cover (callout 1) to release one pin (callout 2) from the guide, and then fold the inner cover up (callout 3) and into the product.

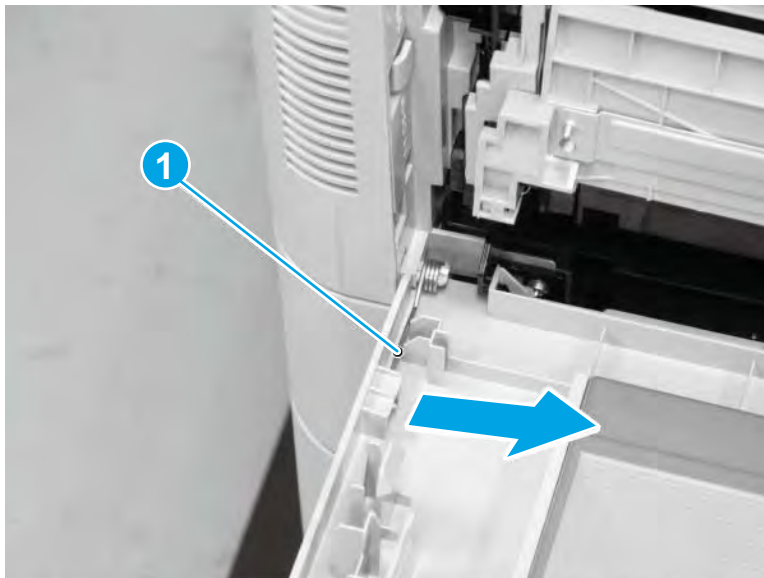
**Figure 1-935** Release one pin



- Release the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

**CAUTION:** The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

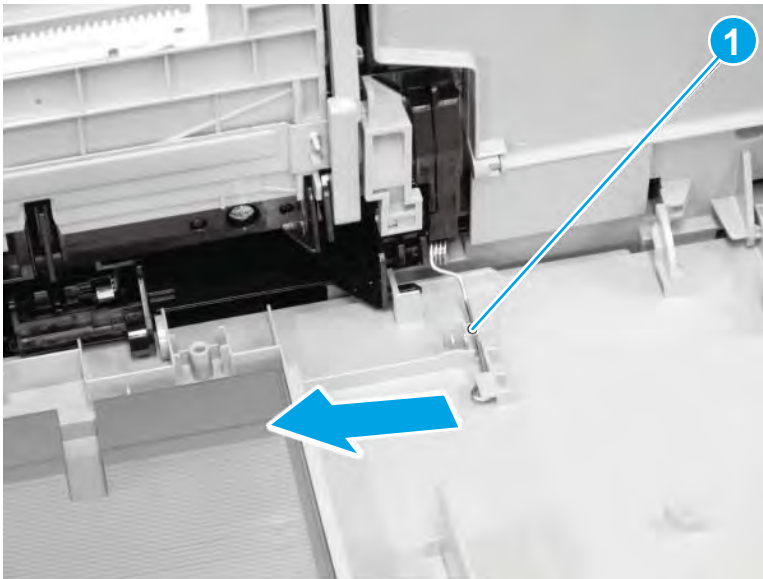
**Figure 1-936** Release the left-side spring



5. Release the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

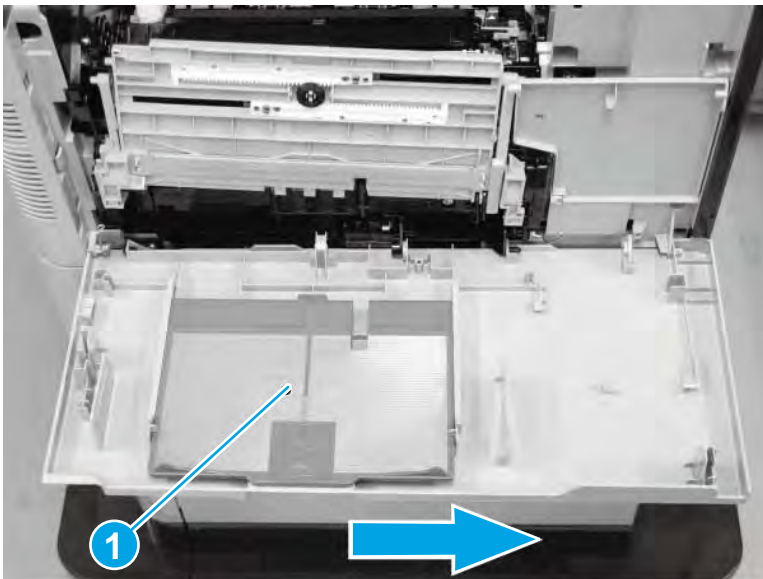
**⚠ CAUTION:** The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

**Figure 1-937** Release the right-side spring



6. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the back of the product to release it, and then remove the cover.

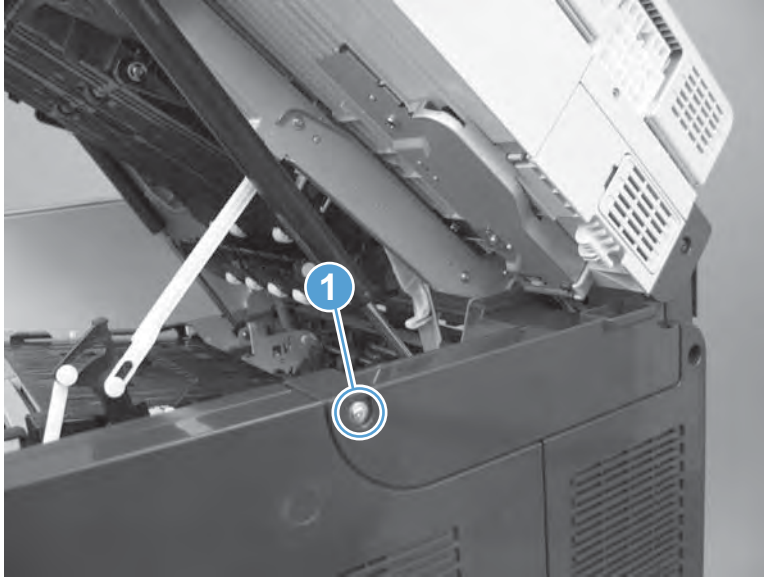
**Figure 1-938** Remove the cover



### Step 3: Remove the image scanner cable cover

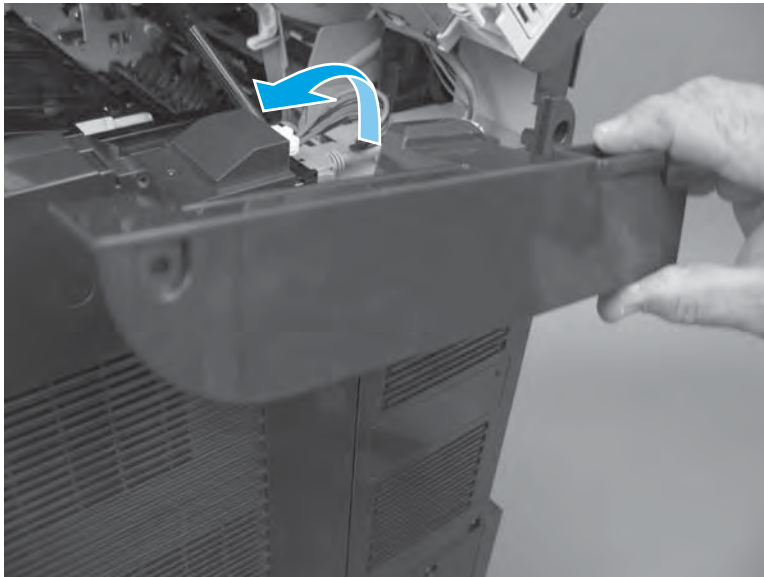
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-939** Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

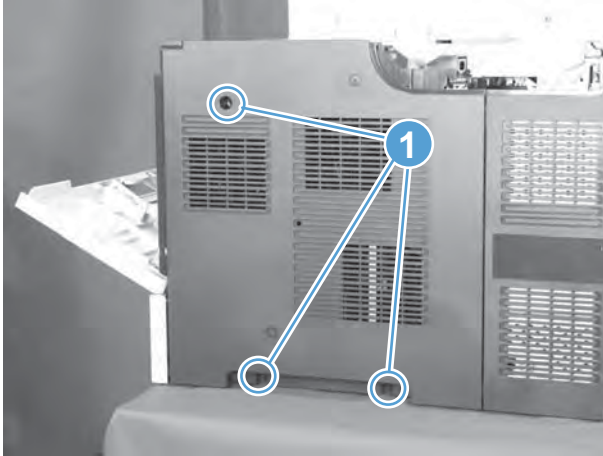
**Figure 1-940** Remove the cover



#### **Step 4: Remove the rear-right cover**

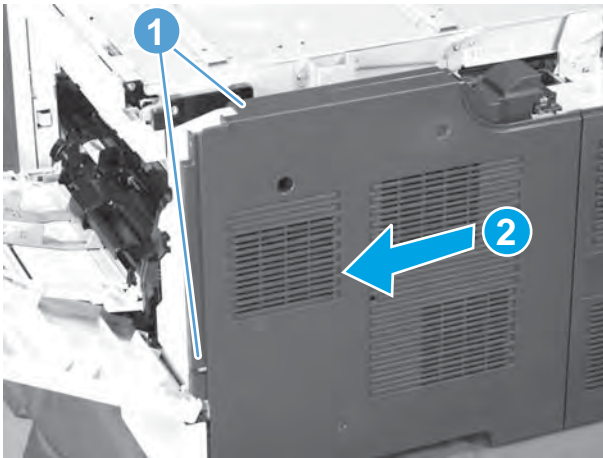
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-941** Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

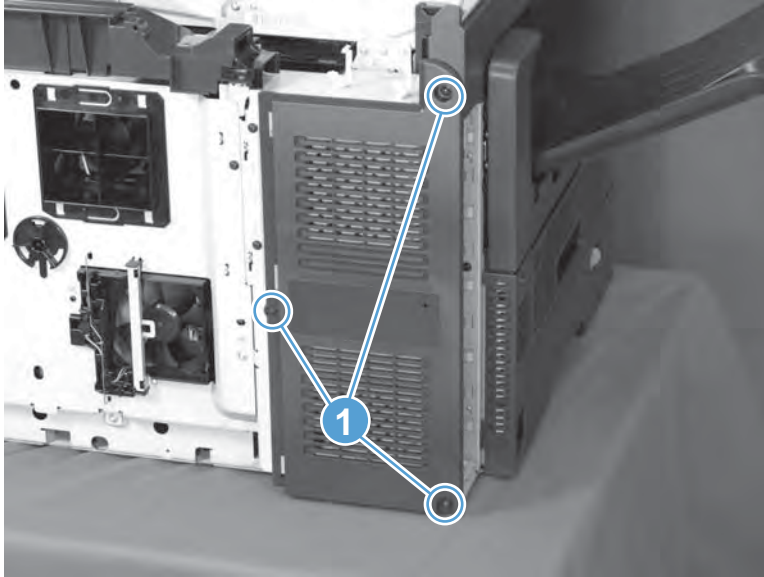
**Figure 1-942** Remove the cover



### **Step 5: Remove the rear-left cover**

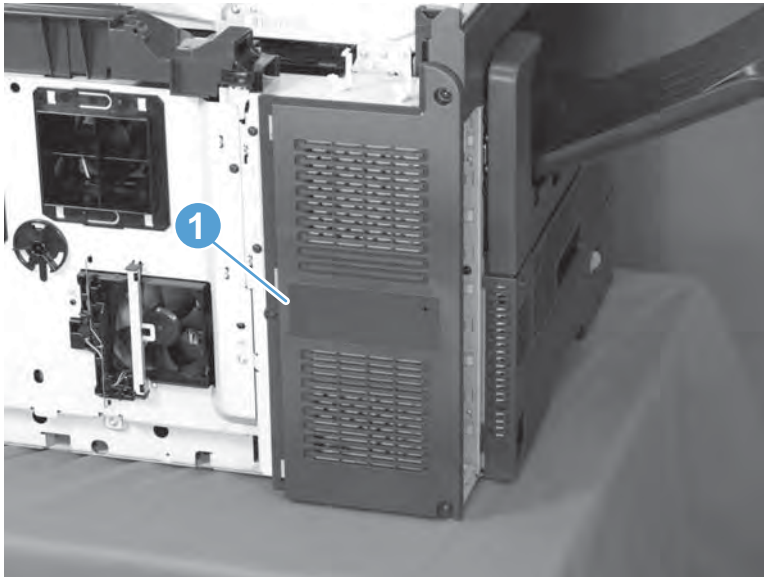
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-943** Remove three screws



2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

**Figure 1-944** Remove the cover



## Step 6: Remove the rear-top cover

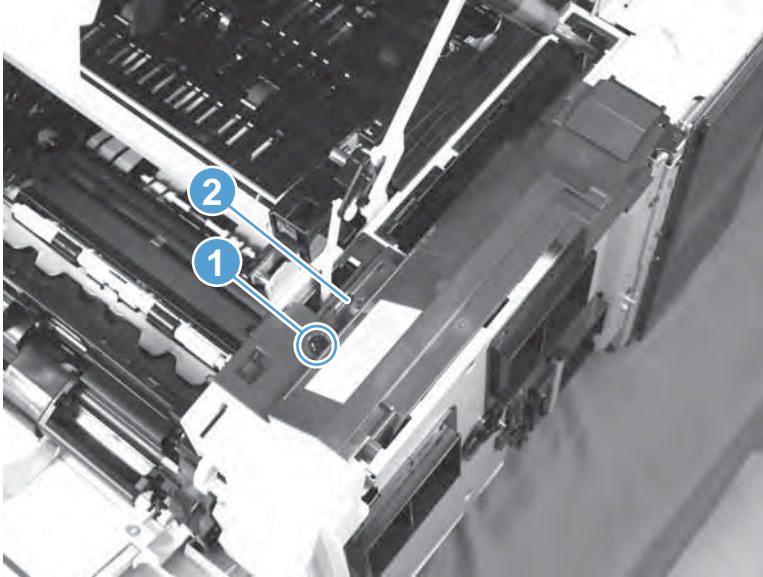
---

 **NOTE:** If the top cover is closed, open it now.

---

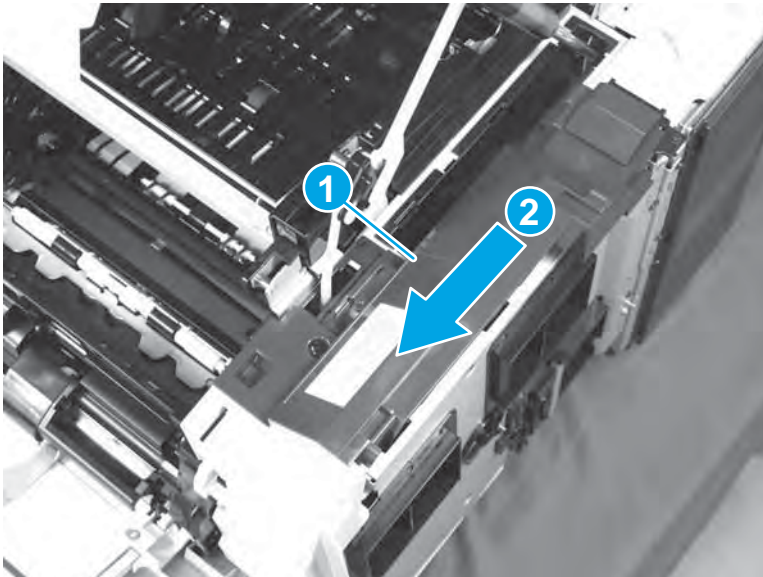
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

**Figure 1-945** Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-946** Remove the cover

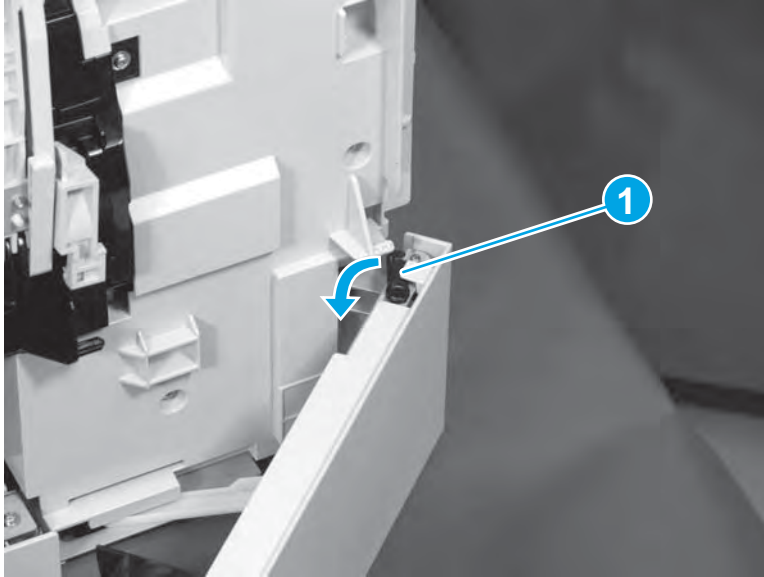


### **Step 7: Remove the right-lower door**

1. Open the right-lower door, and then rotate the stopper (callout 1) to release it.

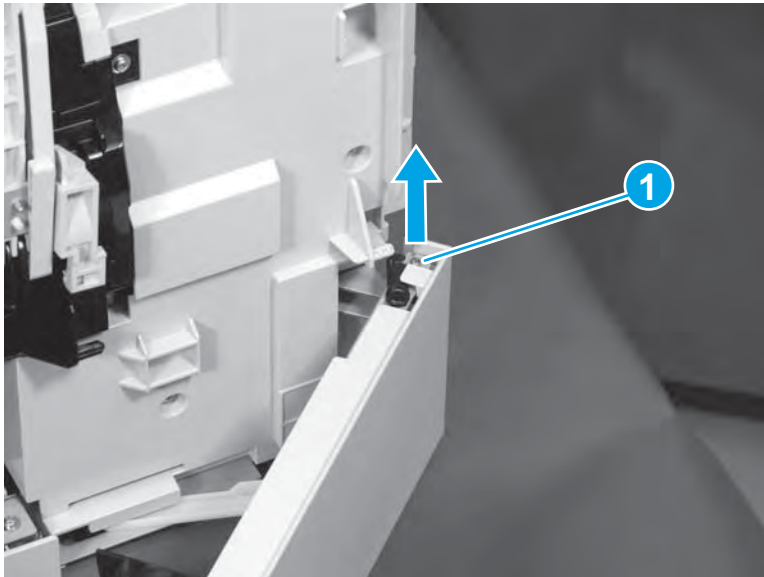


**Figure 1-947** Rotate the stopper



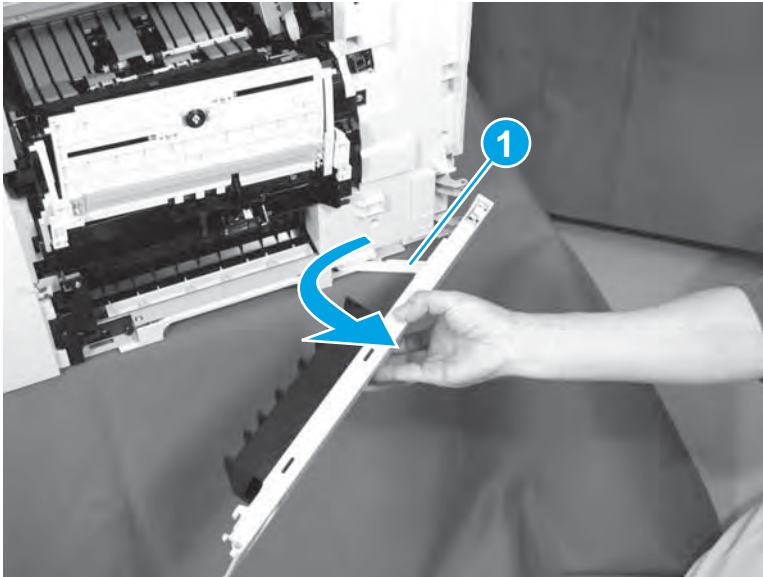
2. Support the door, and then remove the shaft (callout 1).

**Figure 1-948** Remove the shaft



3. Release the door-retainer arm (callout 1) by sliding it toward the front of the product, and then remove the door.

**Figure 1-949** Remove the door

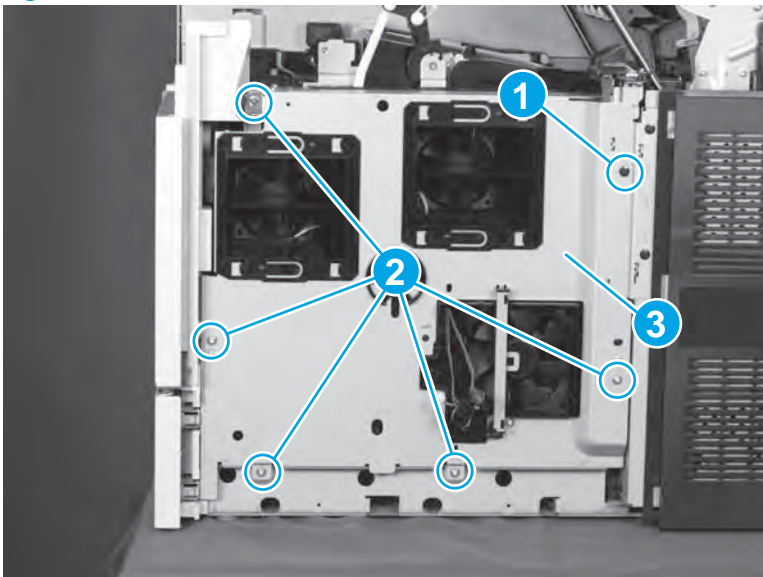


### Step 8: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

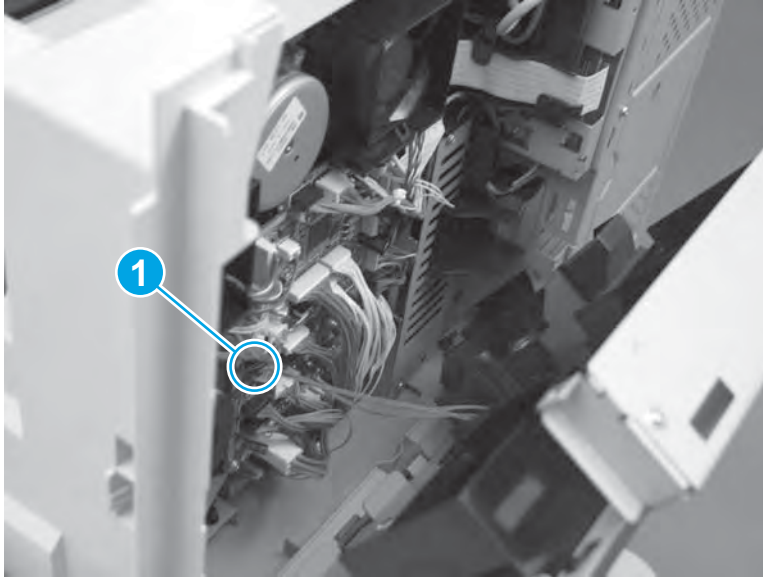
**CAUTION:** The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

**Figure 1-950** Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

**Figure 1-951** Disconnect one connector and remove the shield

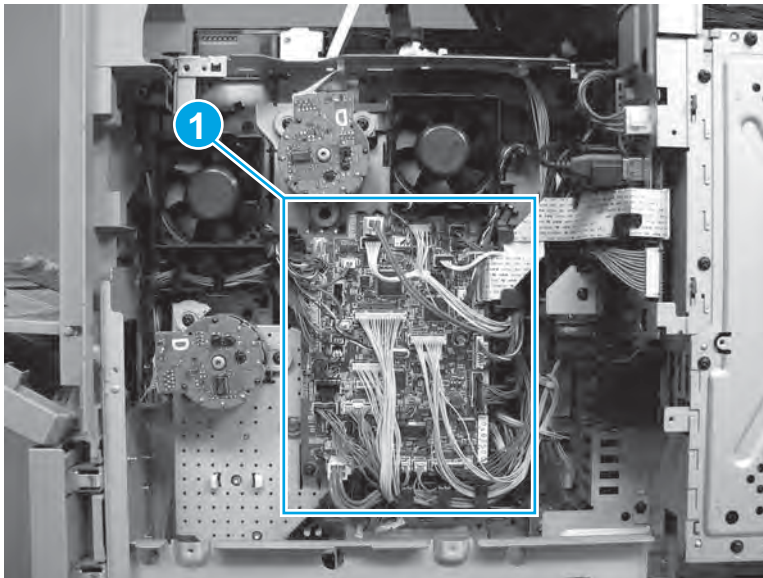


### Step 9: Remove the DC controller

1. Disconnect all of the connectors (callout 1) on the DC controller.
  - 34 wire-harness connectors
  - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

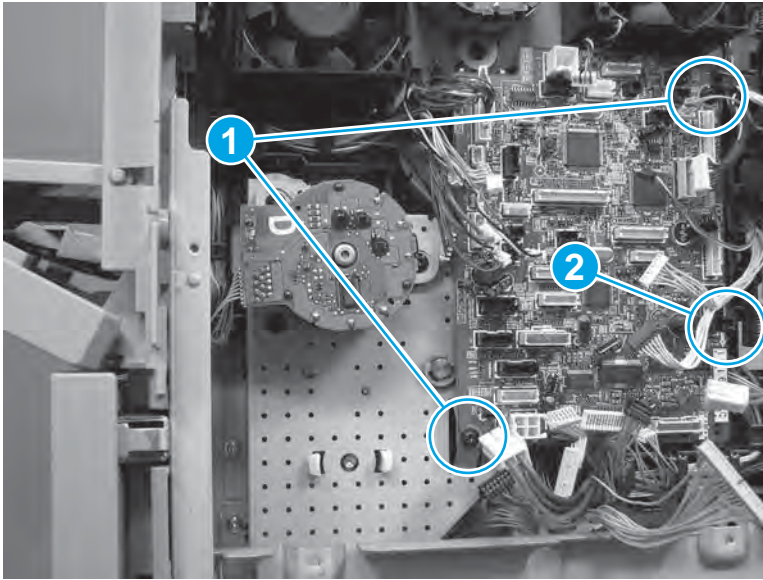
 **Reinstallation tip:** When the DC controller is reinstalled, connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

**Figure 1-952** Disconnect all of the connectors



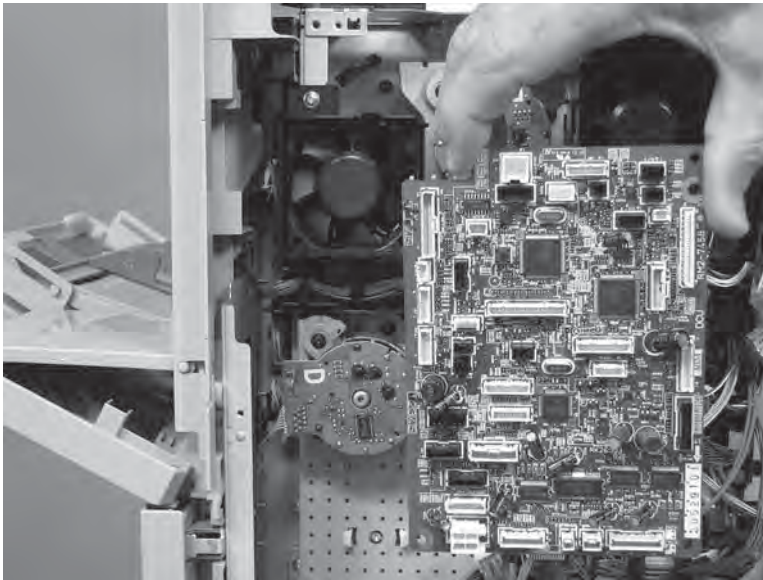
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2).

**Figure 1-953** Remove two screws and release one tab




3. Remove the DC controller.

**Figure 1-954** Remove the DC controller



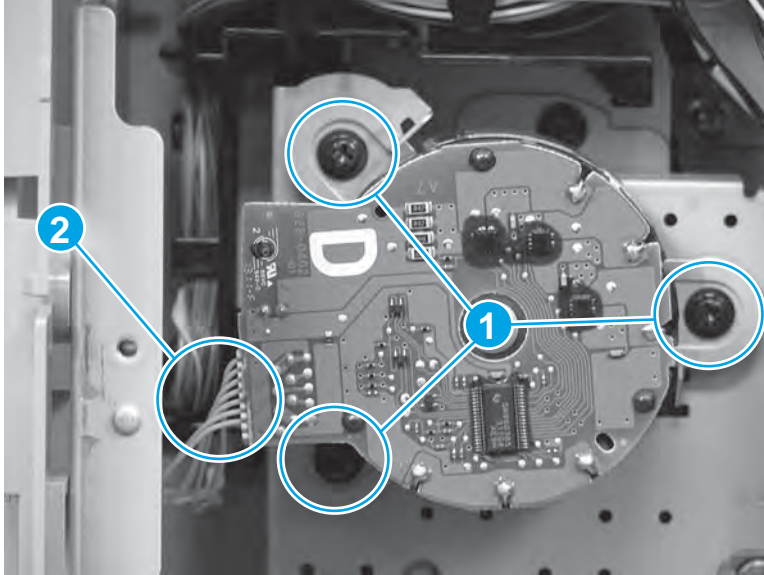
## Step 10: Remove the feed motor

- ▲ At the DC controller side of the product, remove three screws (callout 1), remove the feed motor, and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** The feed motor is located at the left-hand side of the DC controller.

 **TIP:** Slightly turn the motor counter clockwise to disengage it from the mounting bracket.

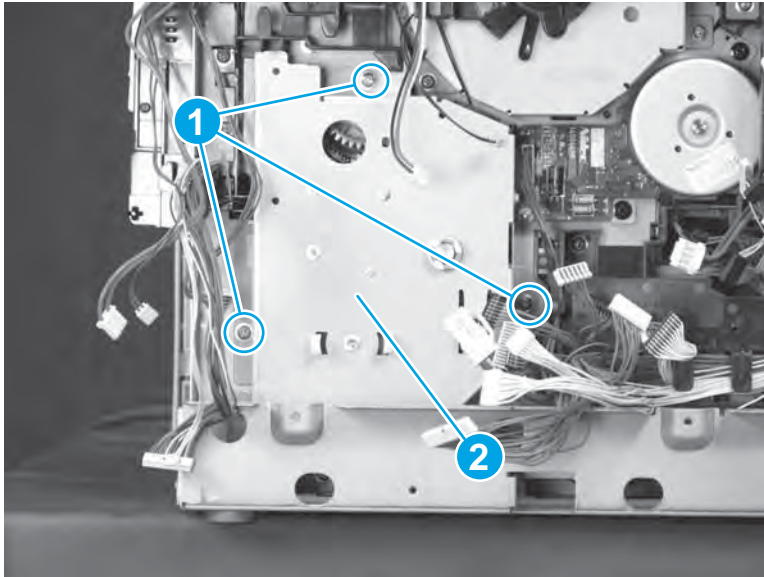
**Figure 1-955** Remove the feed motor



### Step 11: Remove the pickup drive assembly

- ▲ Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the pickup drive assembly (callout 2).


**Figure 1-956** Remove the pickup drive assembly

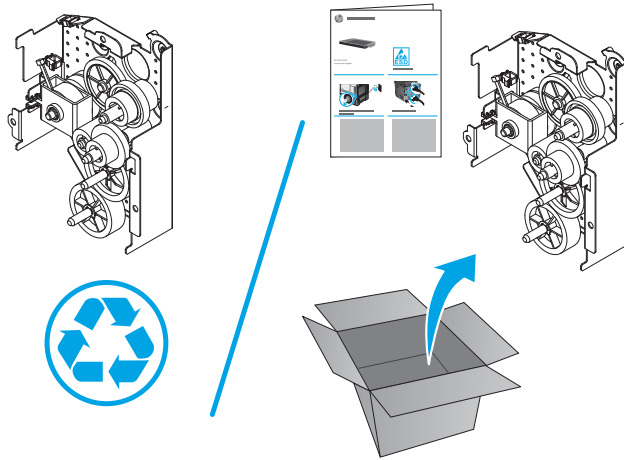


### Step 12: Unpack the replacement pickup drive assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

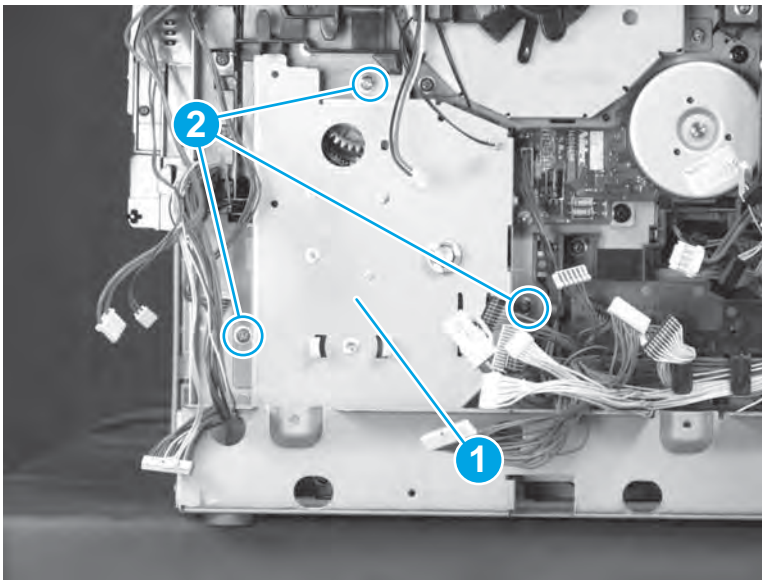


### Step 13: Install the pickup drive assembly

1. Position the pickup drive assembly (callout 1) on the product, and then install three screws (callout 2).

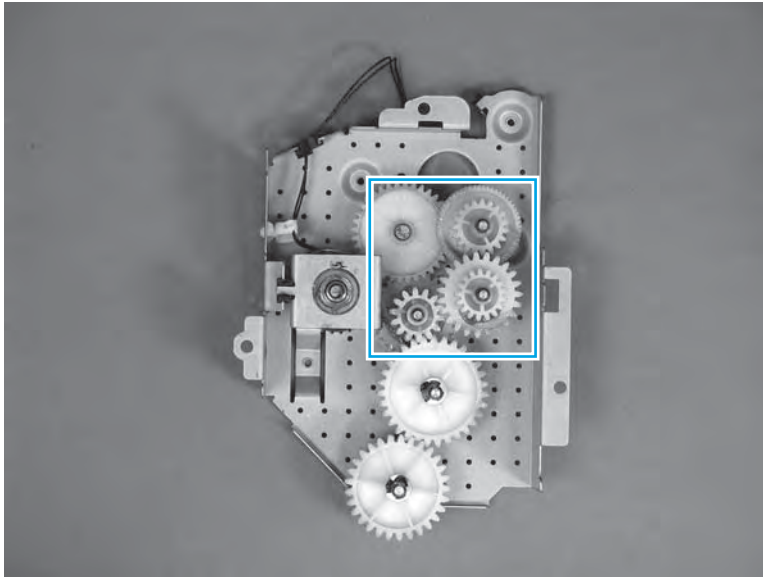
**⚠ CAUTION:** Some of the gears on the backside of the assembly are not captive.

**Figure 1-957** Install the pickup drive assembly




2. If the gears located on the backside of the assembly become dislodged, replace them as shown in the figure.

**Figure 1-958** Check the pickup drive assembly gears

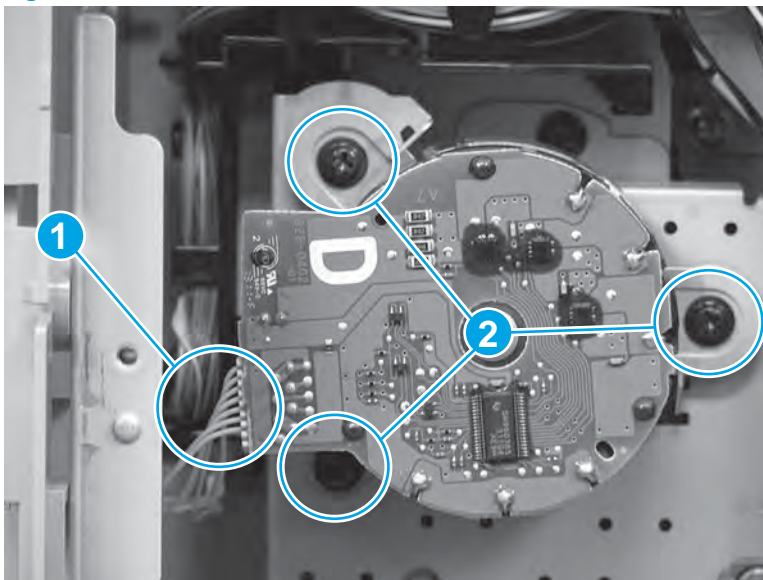


### Step 14: Install the feed motor

- ▲ Connect one connector (callout 1), and then install three screws (callout 2).

 **TIP:** It is easier to connect the connector before mounting the motor to the chassis.

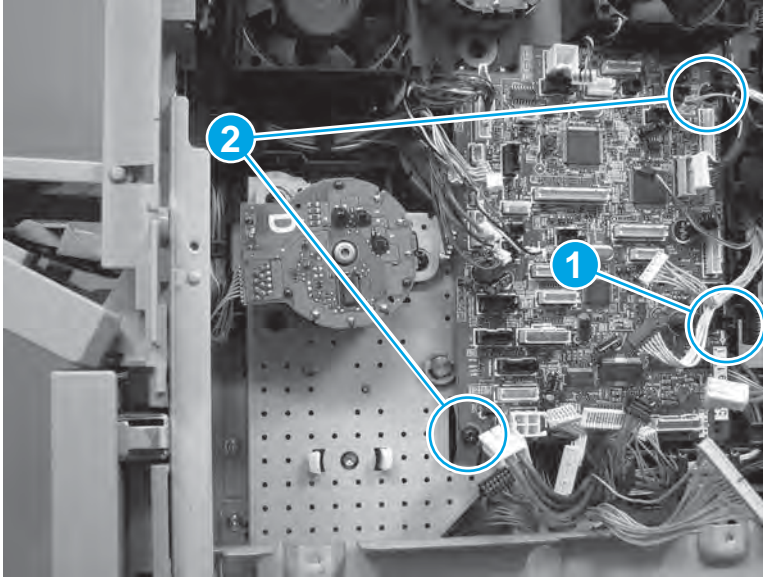
**Figure 1-959** Install the feed motor



### Step 15: Install the DC controller

1. Position the DC controller on the product, engage one tab (callout 1), and then install two screws (callout 2).

**Figure 1-960** Install the DC controller



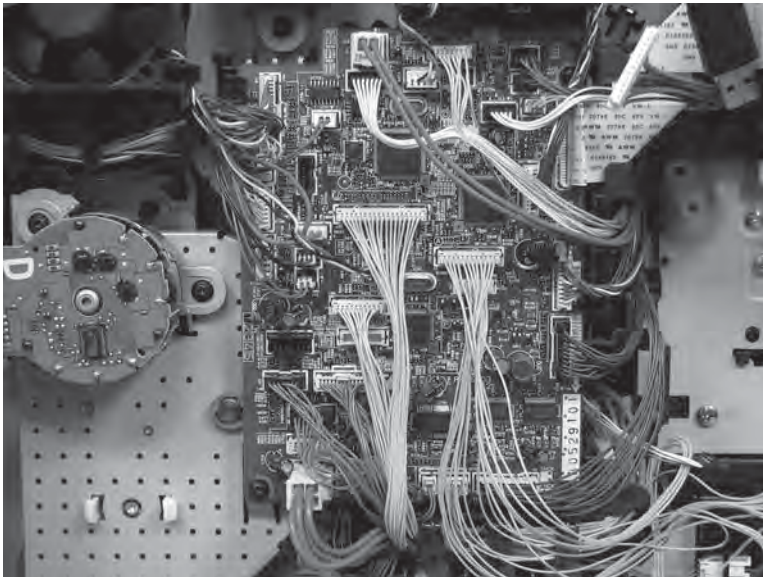
2. Connect all of the connectors on the DC controller.
  - 34 wire-harness connectors
  - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

---

 **Reinstallation tip:** Connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

---

**Figure 1-961** Connect all of the connectors

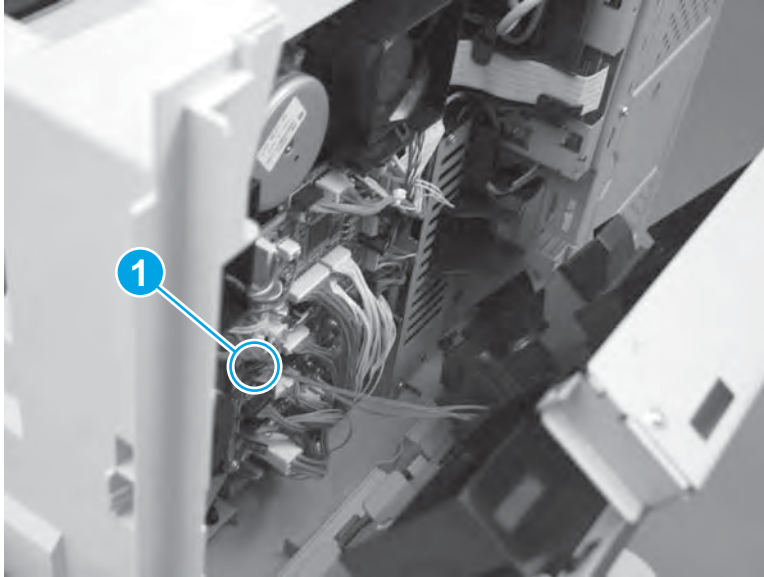


## Step 16: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

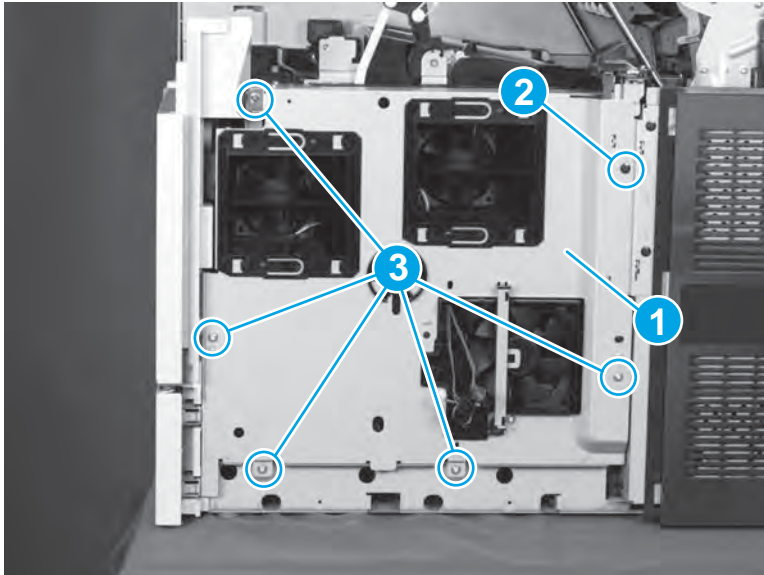


**Figure 1-962** Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

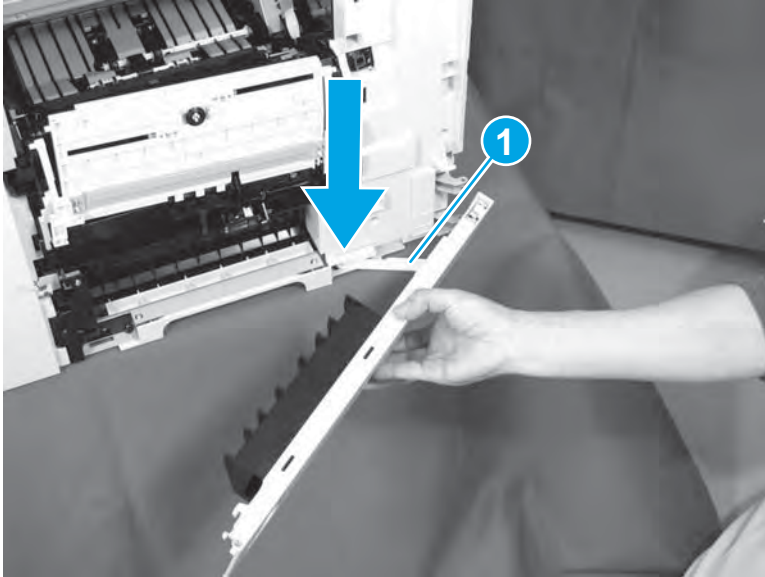
**Figure 1-963** Remove six screws



### Step 17: Install the right-lower door

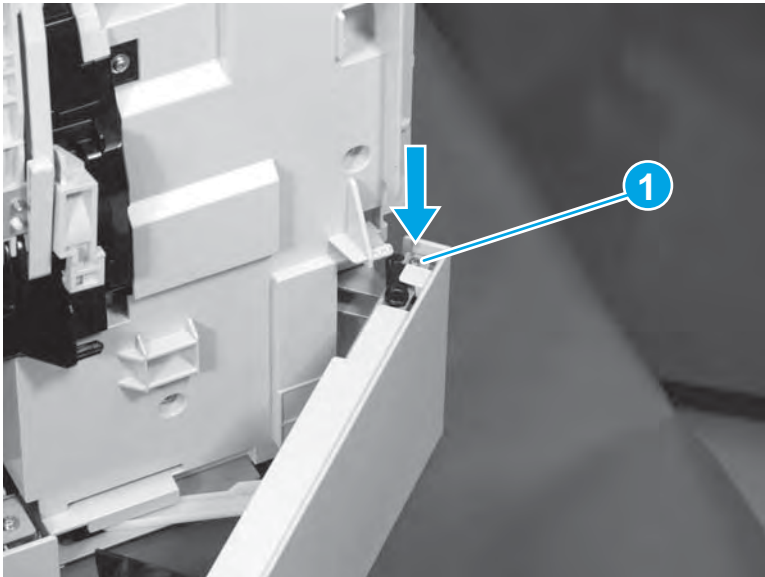
1. Install the door-retainer arm (callout 1) in the slot, and then position the right edge of the door on the product.

**Figure 1-964** Install the door



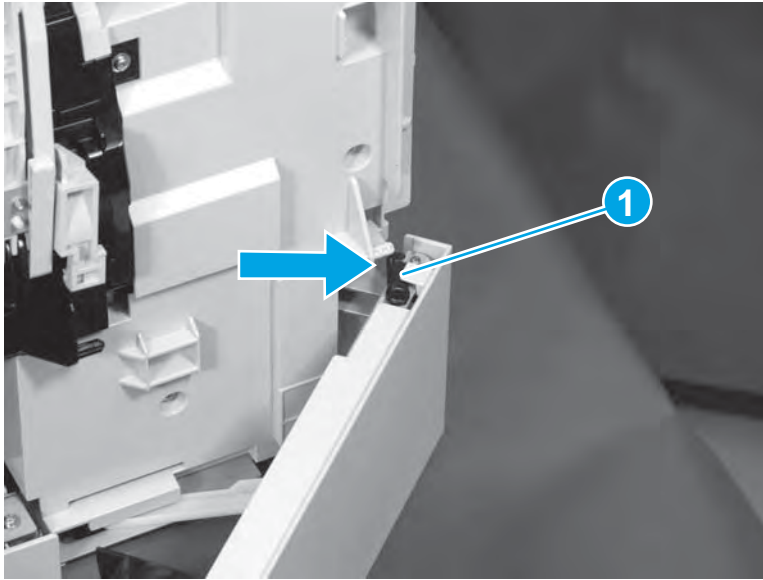
2. Install the shaft (callout 1).

**Figure 1-965** Install the shaft



3. Rotate the stopper (callout 1) to until it locks in place.

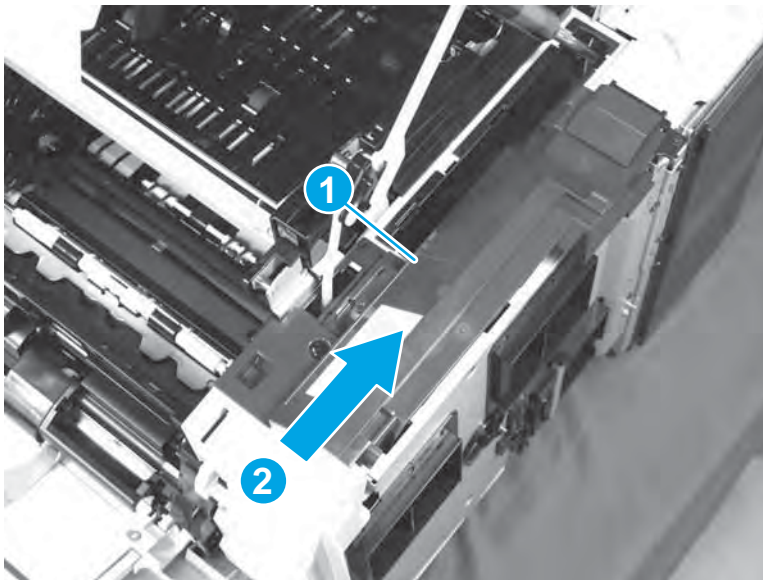
**Figure 1-966** Rotate the stopper



### Step 18: Install the rear-top cover

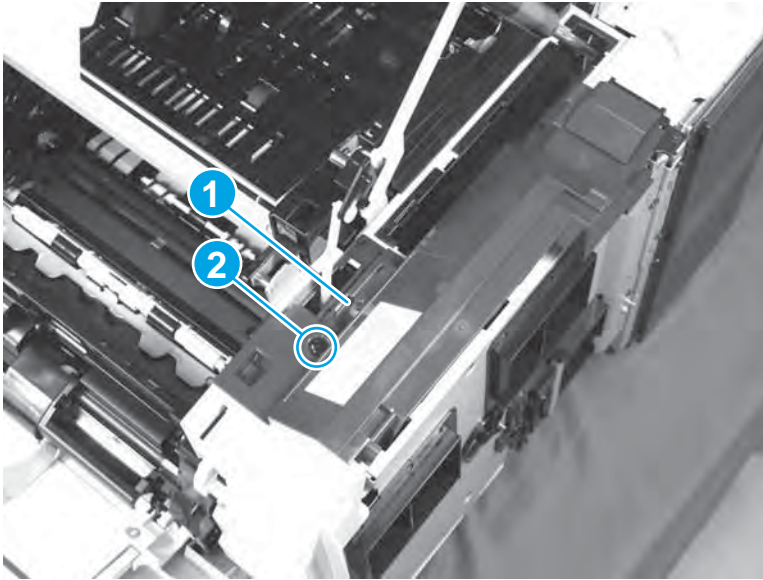
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

**Figure 1-967** Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

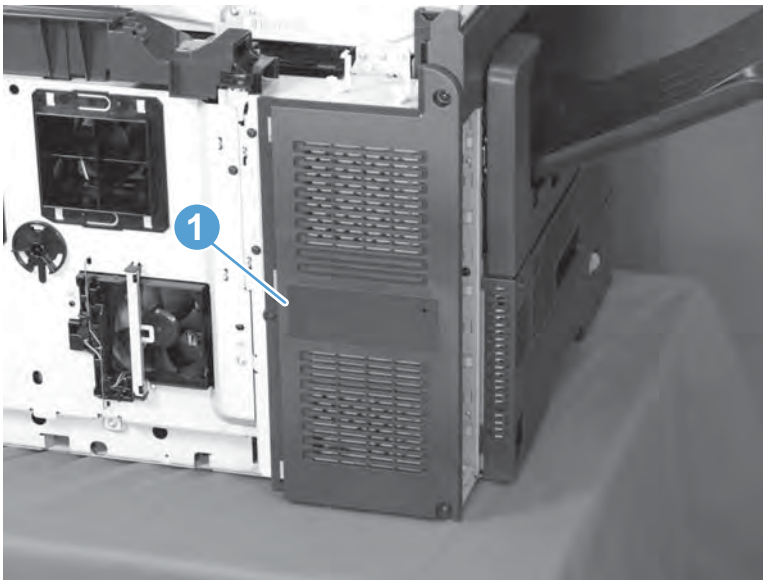
**Figure 1-968** Install one screw



### Step 19: Install the rear-left cover

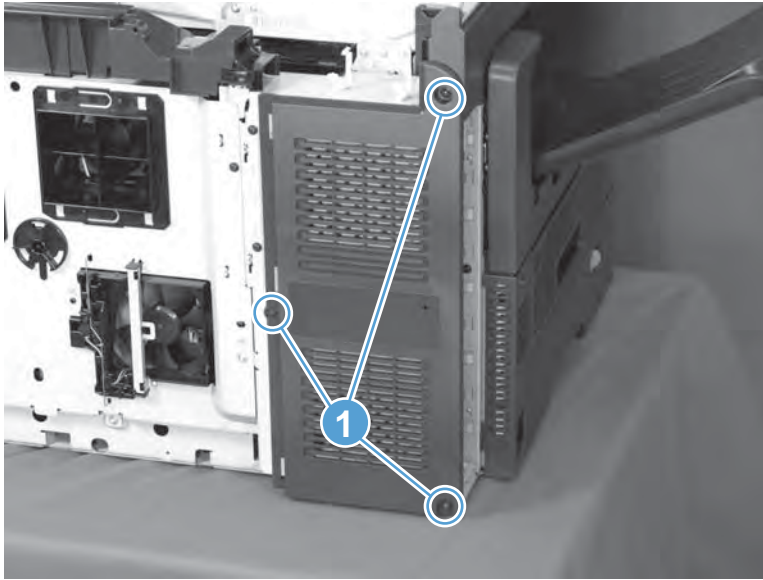
1. Position the cover (callout 1) on the product.

**Figure 1-969** Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1).

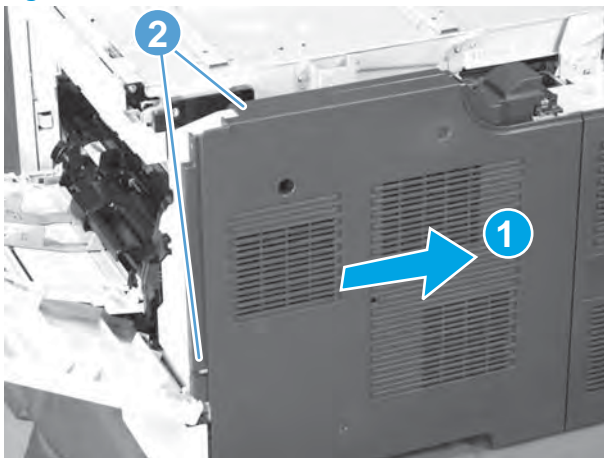
**Figure 1-970** Install three screws



### Step 20: Install the rear-right cover

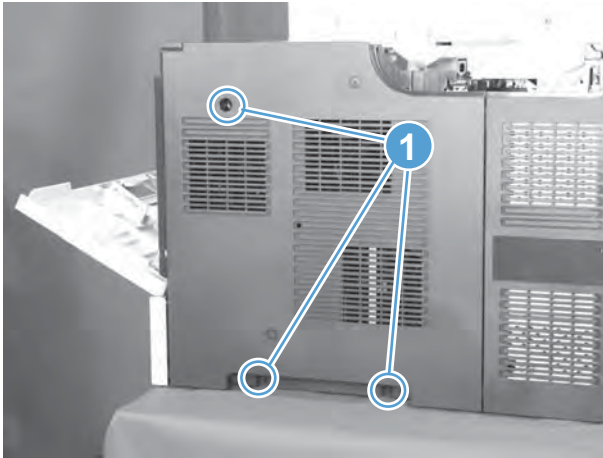
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

**Figure 1-971** Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

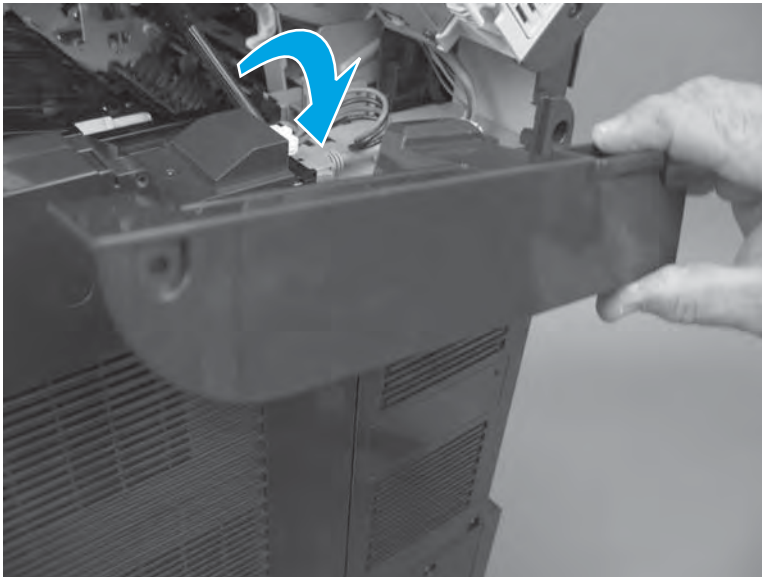
**Figure 1-972** Install three screws



### Step 21: Install the image scanner cable cover

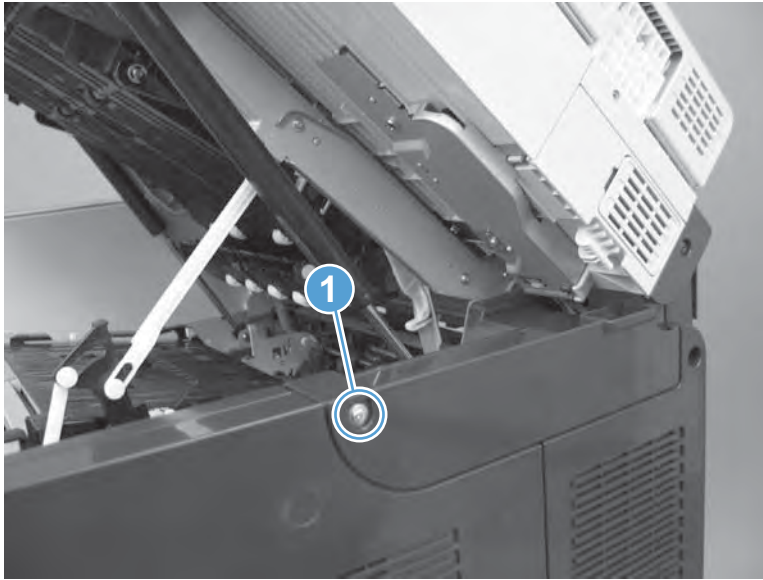
1. Install the cover on the product.

**Figure 1-973** Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

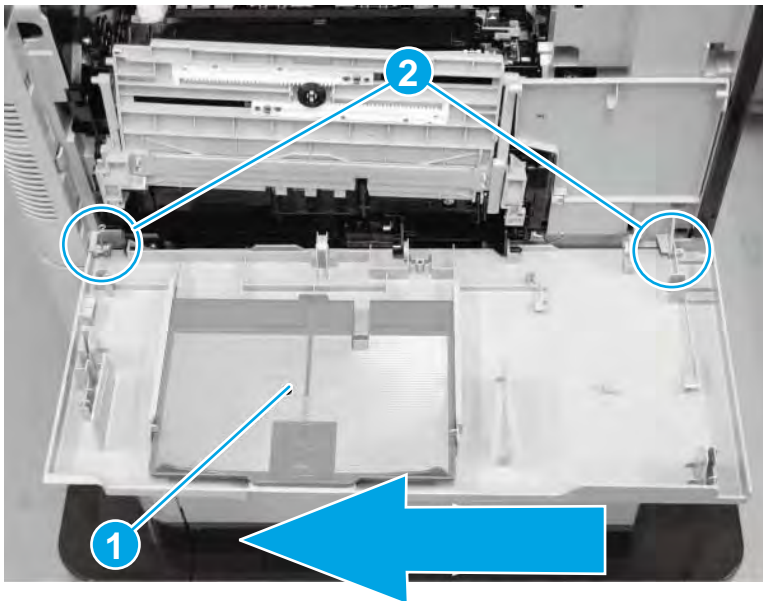
**Figure 1-974** Install one screw



### Step 22: Install the Tray 1 cover

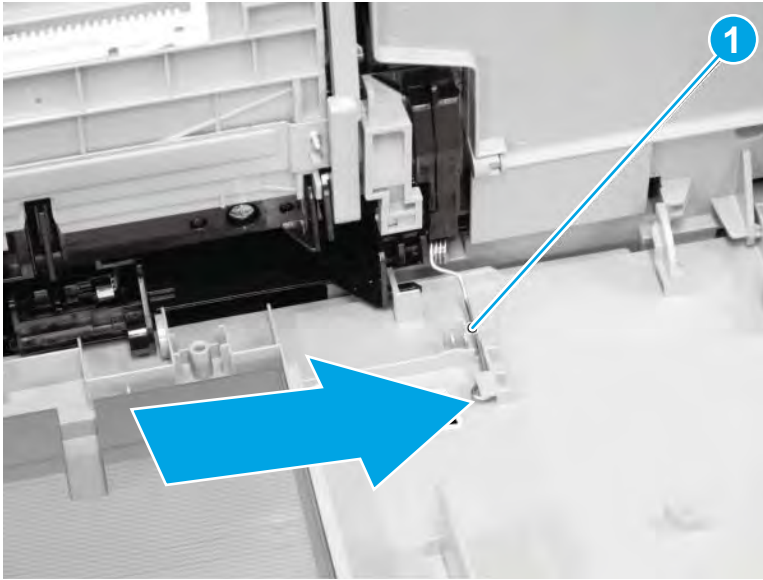
1. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the front of the product to install it on the hinge pins (callout 2).

**Figure 1-975** Install the cover



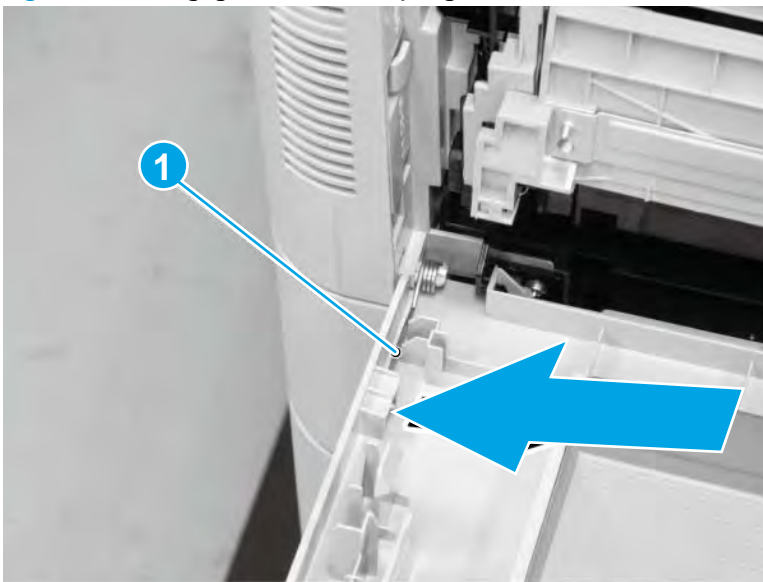
2. Engage the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

**Figure 1-976** Engage the right-side spring



3. Engage the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

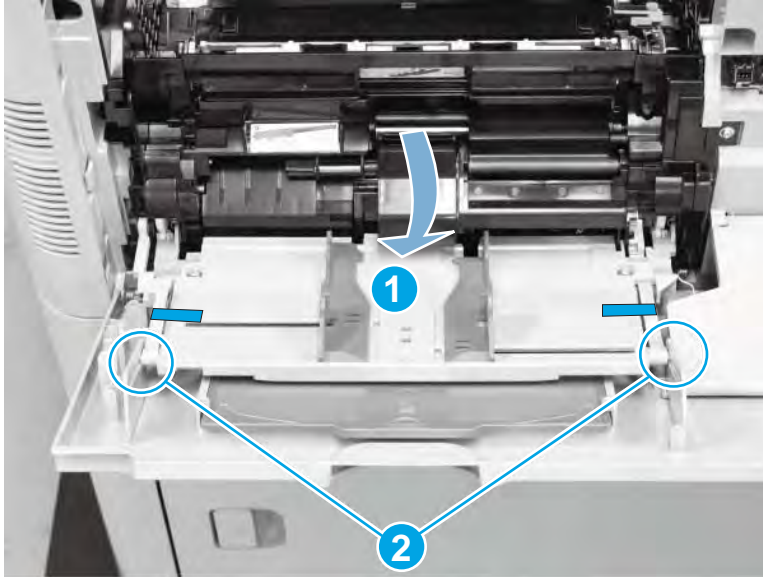
**Figure 1-977** Engage the left-side spring





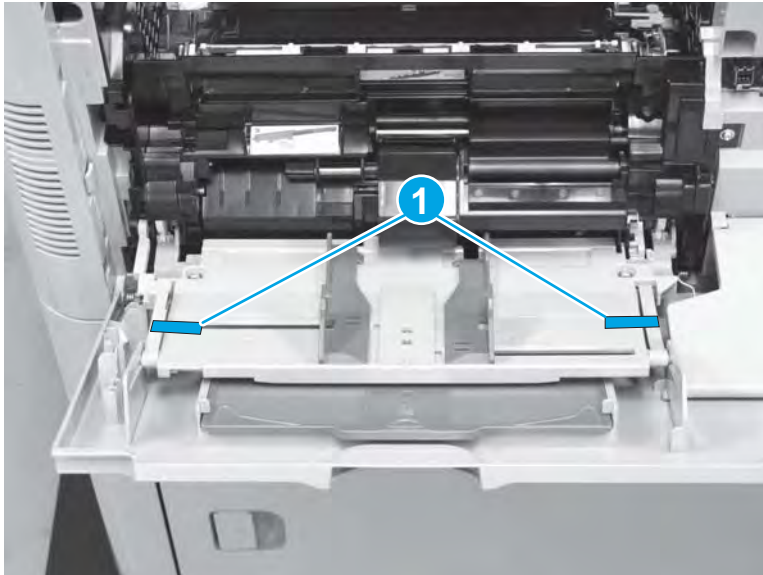
4. Lower the inner tray assembly (callout 1), and then engage the two outer retaining pins (callout 2) on the cover.

**Figure 1-978** Engage two outer retaining pins



5. Remove the low adhesive tape (callout 1), and then close the tray.

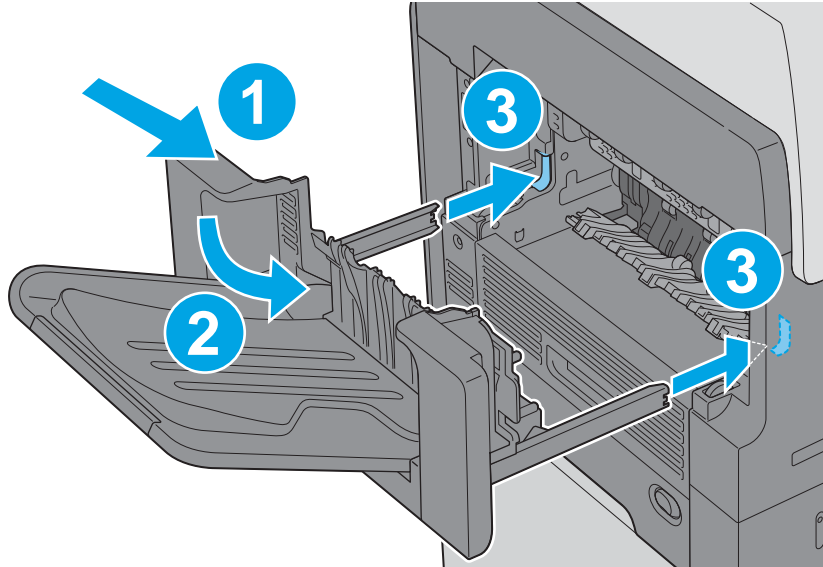
**Figure 1-979** Remove the low adhesive tape




### Step 23: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

- ▲ Do one of the following:
  - a. **M630dn and M630f:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

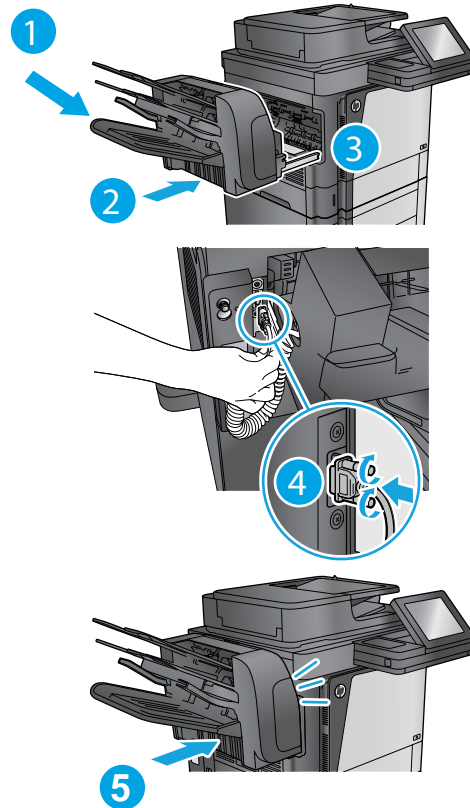
**Figure 1-980** Install the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4), and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.

 **TIP:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

**Figure 1-981** Install the stapling mailbox



## **Step 24: Turn the product power on**

### **After servicing**

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

### **Parts Return**

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

## Cassette pickup assembly

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the cassette-door-open detection switch](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 5: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 6: Remove the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 7: Remove the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 8: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 9: Remove the DC controller](#)
- [Step 10: Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly](#)
- [Step 11: Remove the feed motor](#)
- [Step 12: Remove the pickup drive assembly](#)
- [Step 13: Remove the cassette pickup assembly](#)
- [Step 14: Unpack the replacement cassette pickup assembly](#)
- [Step 15: Install the cassette pickup assembly](#)
- [Step 16: Install the pickup drive assembly](#)
- [Step 17: Install the feed motor](#)
- [Step 18: Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly](#)
- [Step 19: Install the DC controller](#)
- [Step 20: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 21: Install the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 22: Install the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 23: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 24: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 25: Install the cassette-door-open detection switch](#)
- [Step 26: Install the Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Step 27: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 28: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

## Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the cassette pickup assembly.

## Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to [www.hp.com/buy/parts](http://www.hp.com/buy/parts) to order the kit.

---

### Cassette pickup assembly part number

---

**RM1-5919-000CN**

Cassette pickup assembly

**NOTE:** This assembly is also called the paper pickup assembly.

---

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

**⚠ WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

---

## Required tools

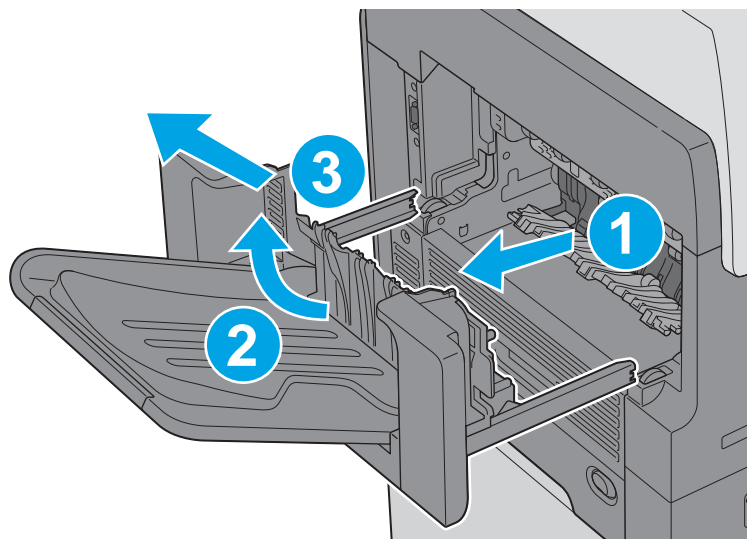
#2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152-mm (6-in) shaft length

## Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following steps:

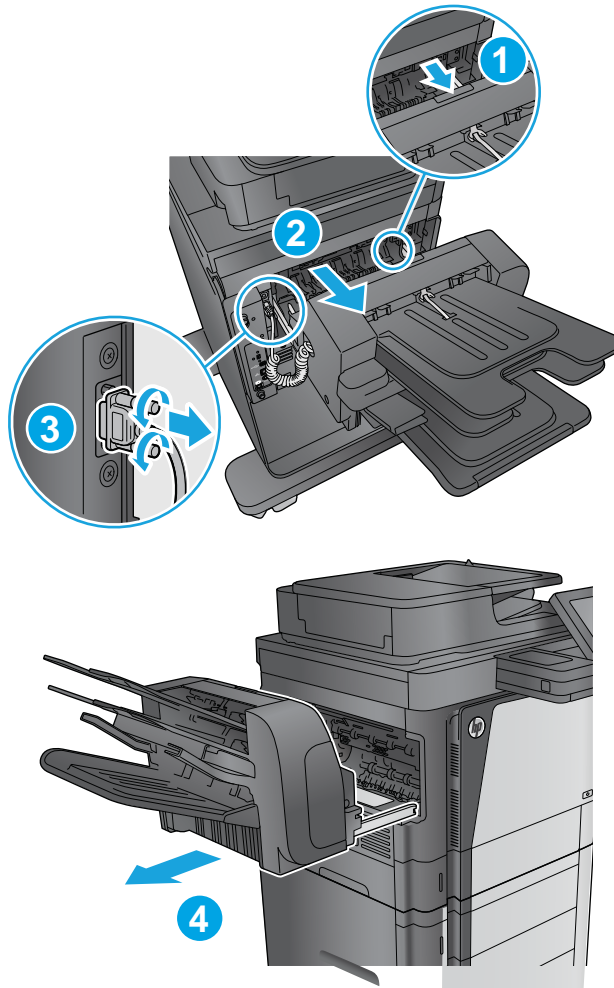
- a. **M630dn and M630f:** Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

**Figure 1-982** Remove the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

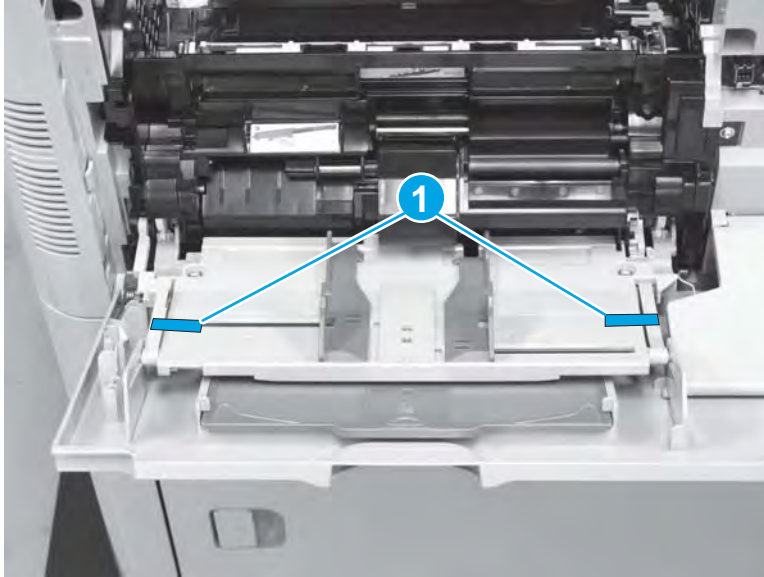
**Figure 1-983** Remove the stapling mailbox



## Step 2: Remove the Tray 1 cover

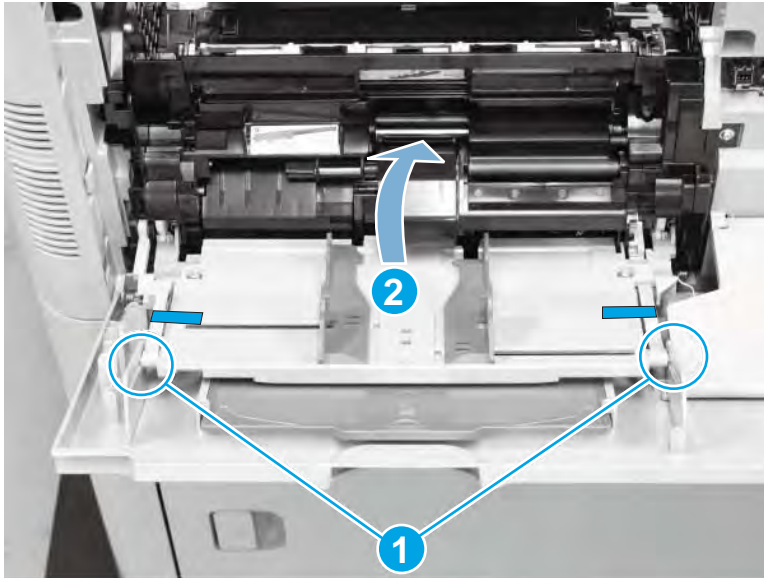
1. Use low adhesive tape to secure the outer retaining pins (callout 1) to the inner tray.

**Figure 1-984** Secure the outer retaining pins



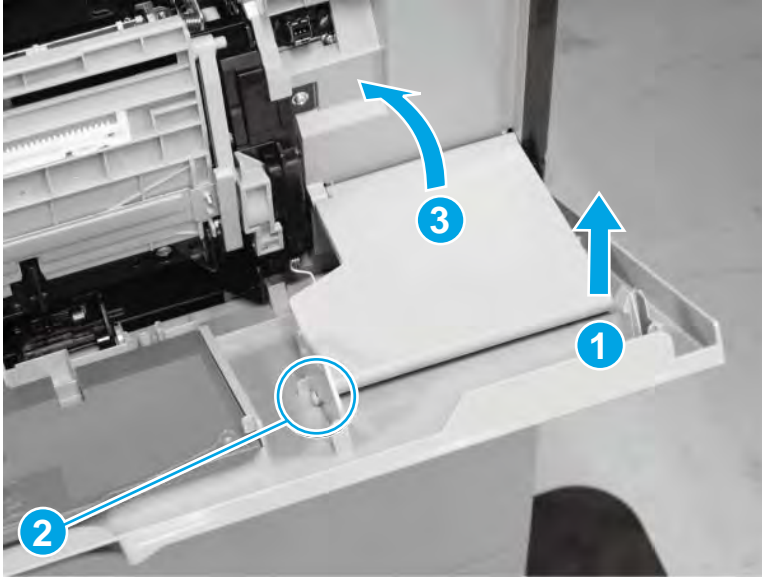
2. Open Tray 1, release the two outer retaining pins (callout 1) on the cover, and then carefully fold the inner tray up (callout 2) and into the product to protect it.

**Figure 1-985** Release two outer retaining pins



- Carefully lift on the outer corner of the tray inner cover (callout 1) to release one pin (callout 2) from the guide, and then fold the inner cover up (callout 3) and into the product.

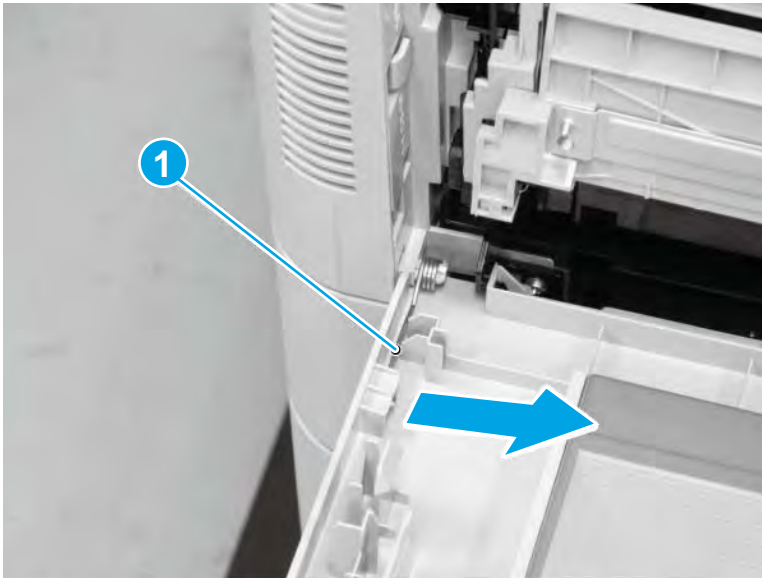
**Figure 1-986** Release one pin



- Release the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

**CAUTION:** The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

**Figure 1-987** Release the left-side spring

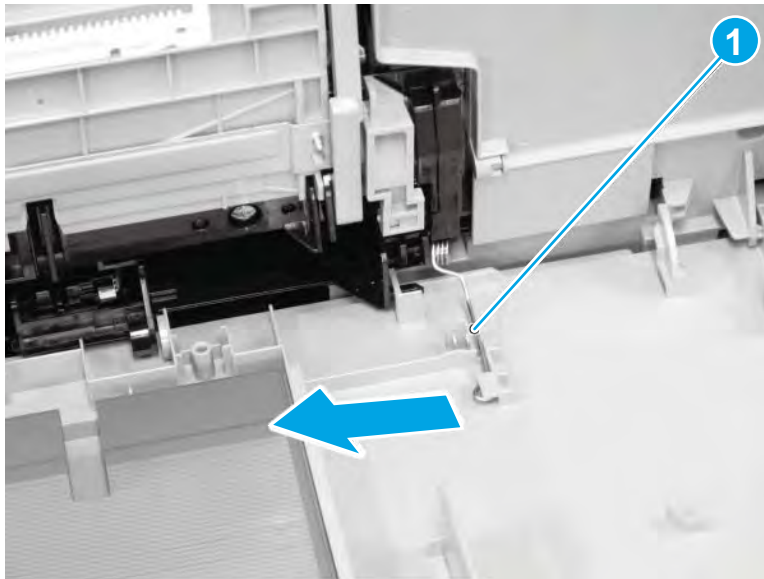




5. Release the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

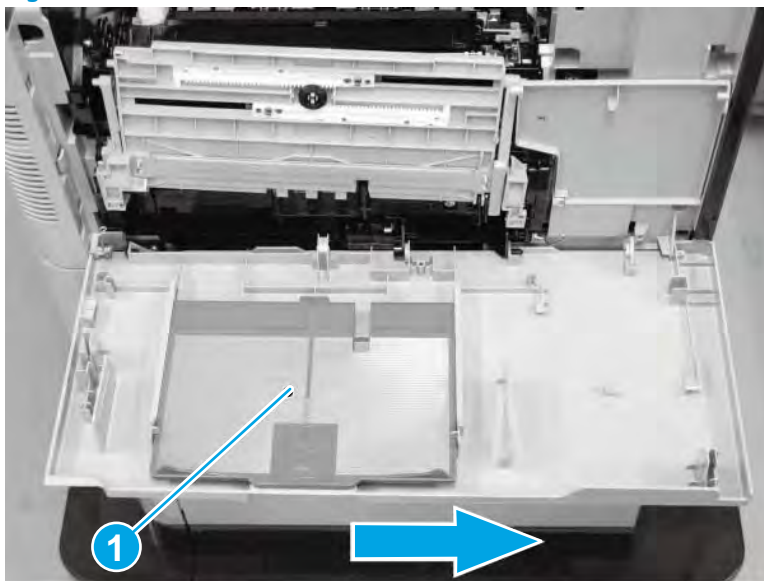
**CAUTION:** The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

**Figure 1-988** Release the right-side spring



6. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the back of the product to release it, and then remove the cover.

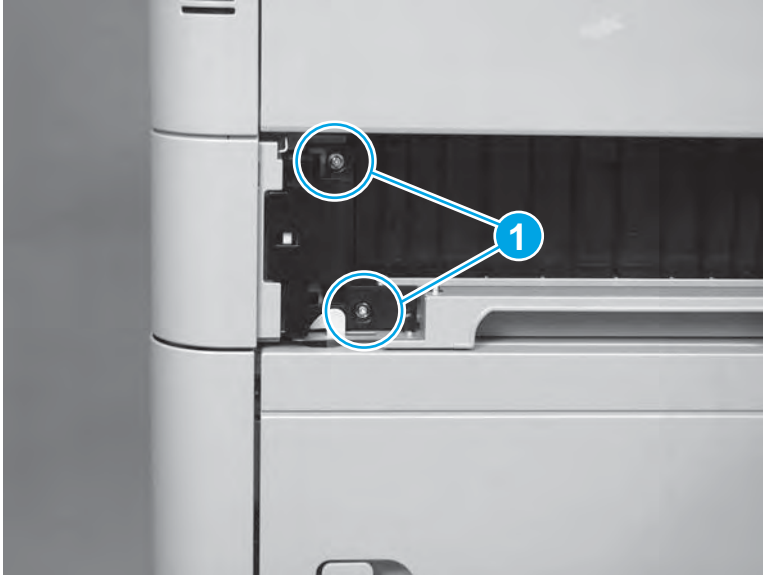
**Figure 1-989** Remove the cover




### Step 3: Remove the cassette-door-open detection switch

1. Open the right-lower door, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

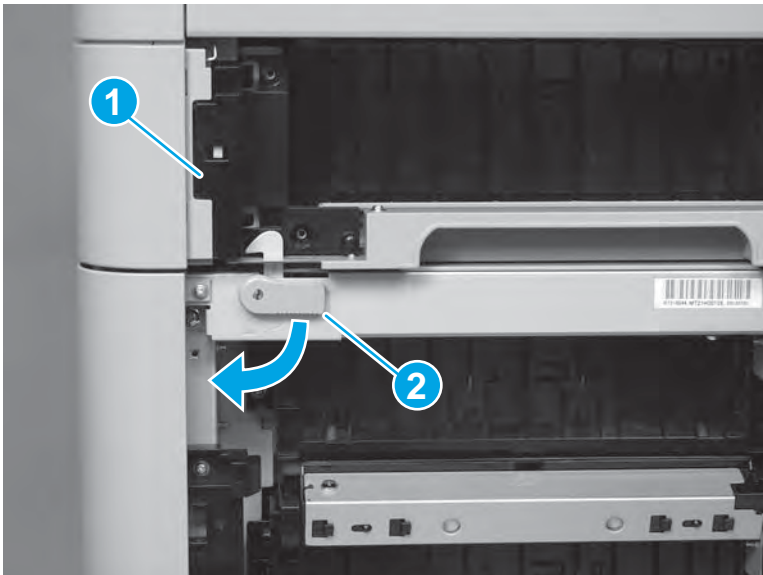
**Figure 1-990** Remove two screws



2. Remove the switch cover (callout 1).

 **TIP:** If the product is installed on an optional input accessory, open the accessory right door, and then release the blue lever (callout 2) to lower the locking latch to make removing the cover easier.

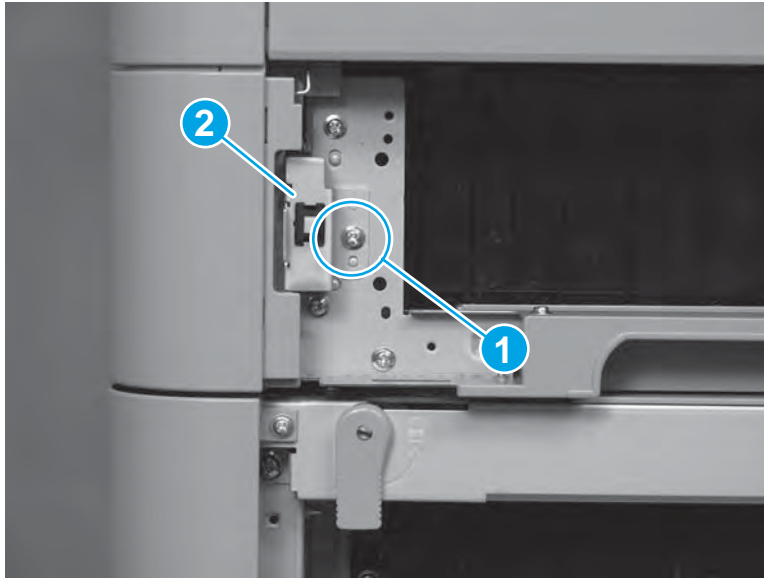
**Figure 1-991** Remove the cover



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then separate the switch assembly (callout 2) from the product.

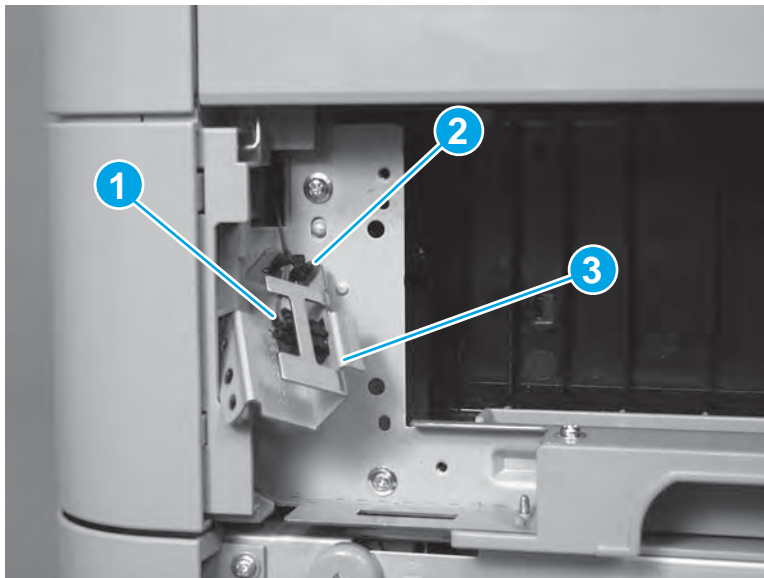
**CAUTION:** A wire harness connects the switch assembly to the product. Do not attempt to completely remove the switch assembly.

**Figure 1-992** Remove one screw



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 2), and then remove the switch assembly (callout 3).

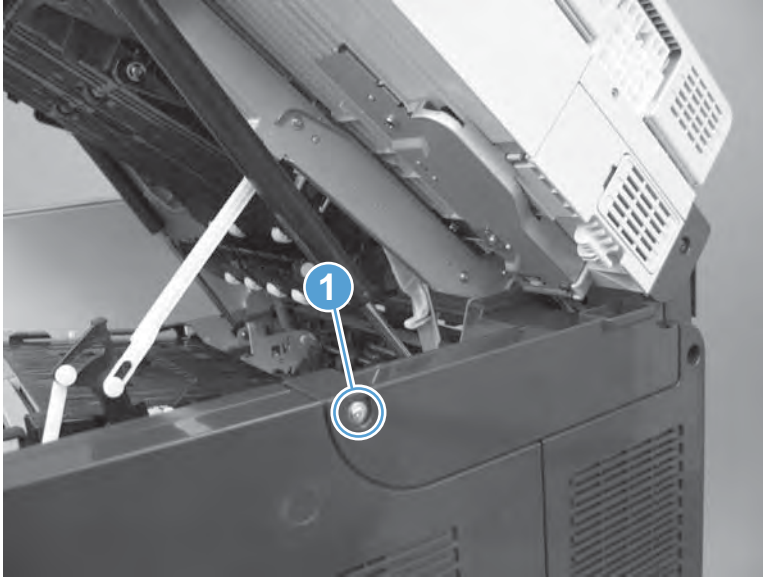
**Figure 1-993** Remove the switch



#### Step 4: Remove the image scanner cable cover

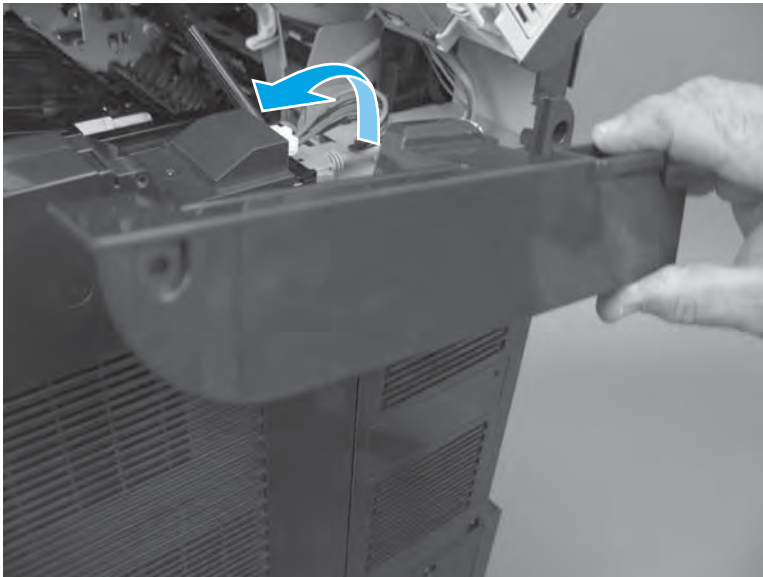
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-994** Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

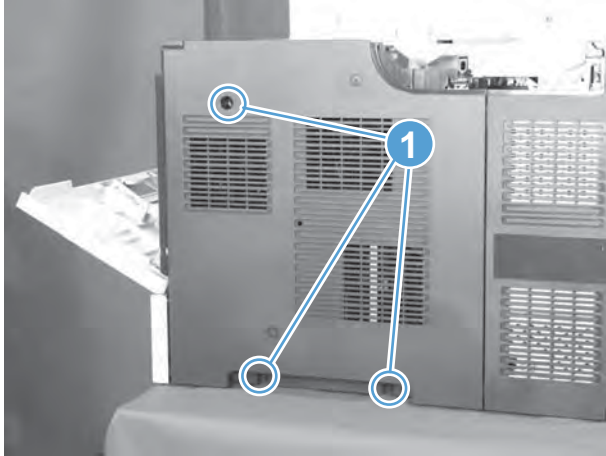
**Figure 1-995** Remove the cover



### **Step 5: Remove the rear-right cover**

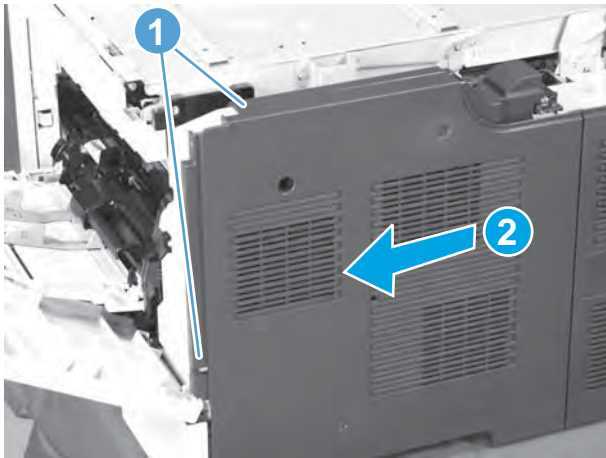
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-996** Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

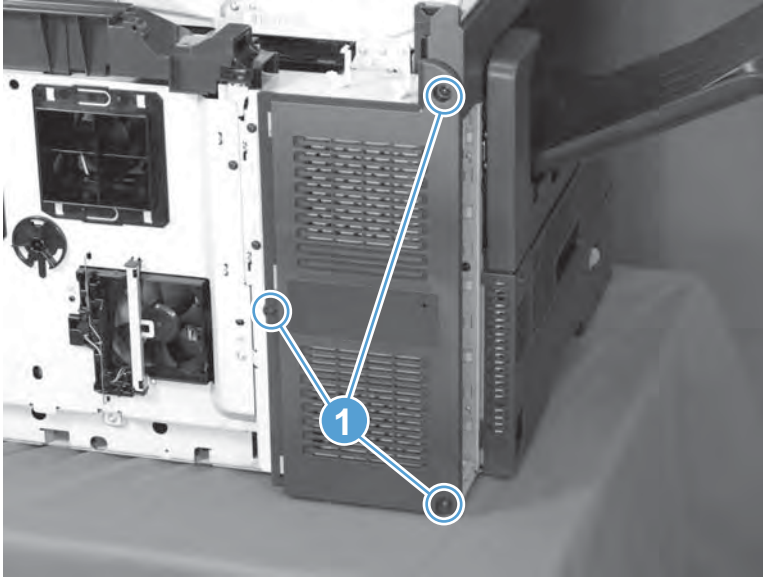
**Figure 1-997** Remove the cover



### **Step 6: Remove the rear-left cover**

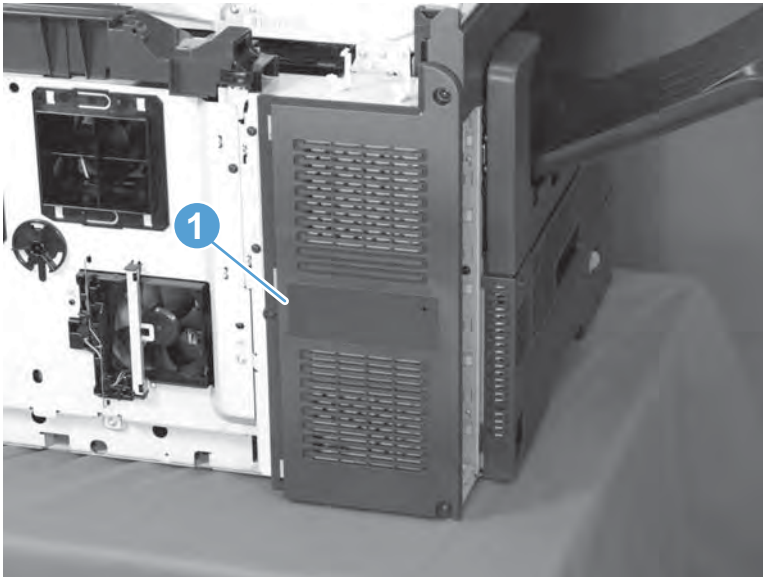
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-998** Remove three screws



2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

**Figure 1-999** Remove the cover

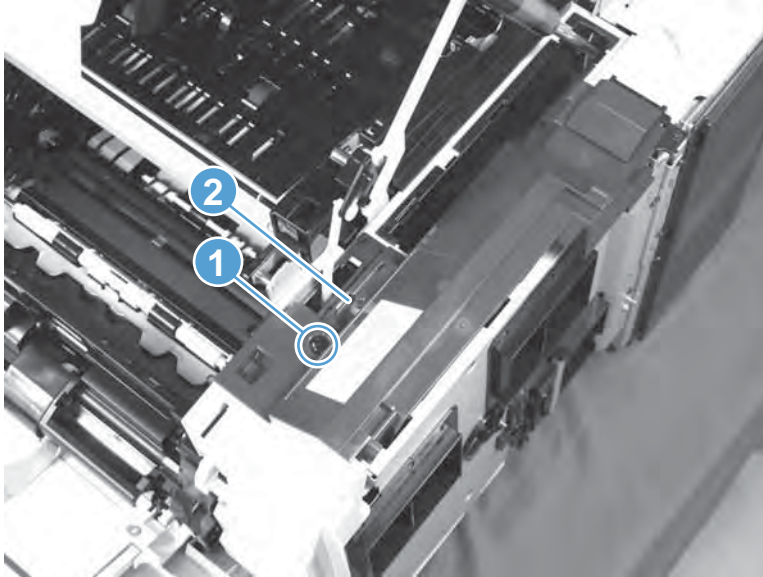


## Step 7: Remove the rear-top cover

 **NOTE:** If the top cover is closed, open it now.

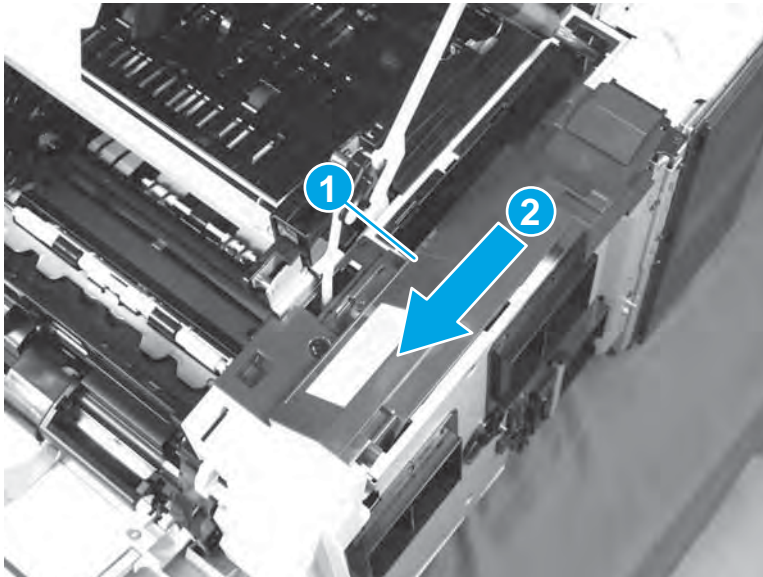
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1000** Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-1001** Remove the cover

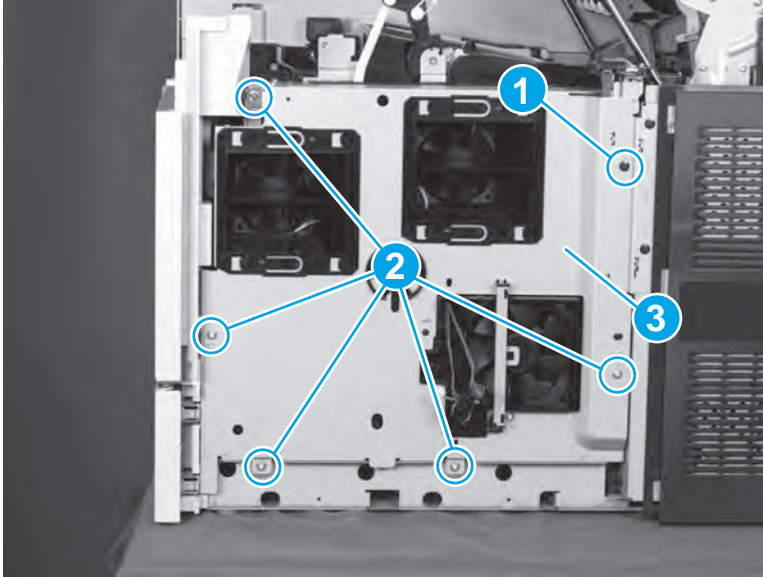


### Step 8: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

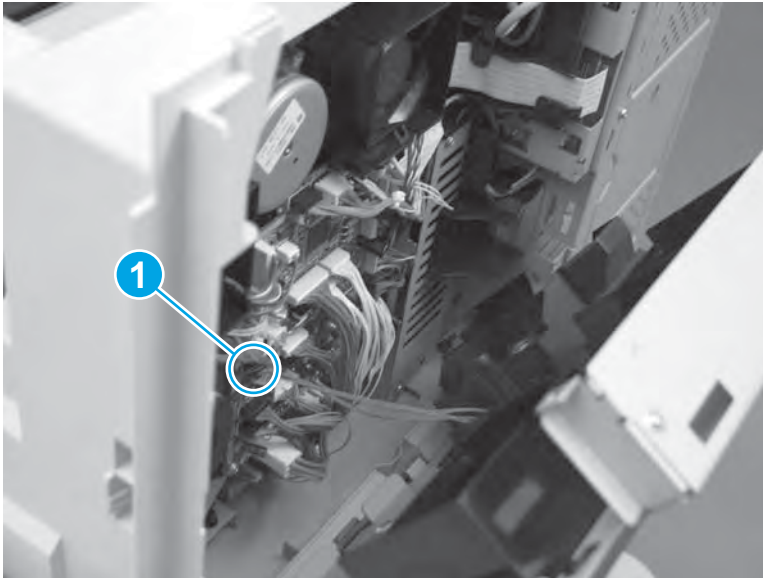
**CAUTION:** The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

**Figure 1-1002** Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

**Figure 1-1003** Disconnect one connector and remove the shield



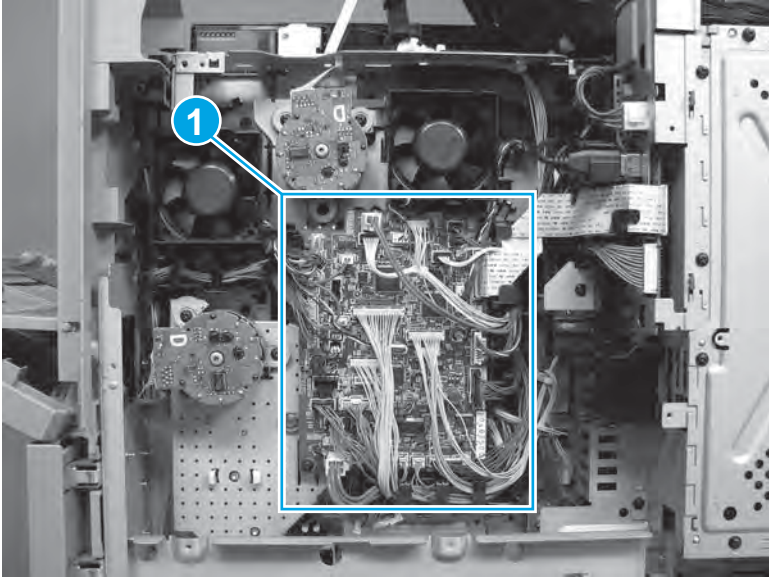
### Step 9: Remove the DC controller

1. Disconnect all of the connectors (callout 1) on the DC controller.
  - 34 wire-harness connectors
  - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

 **Reinstallation tip:** When the DC controller is reinstalled, connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

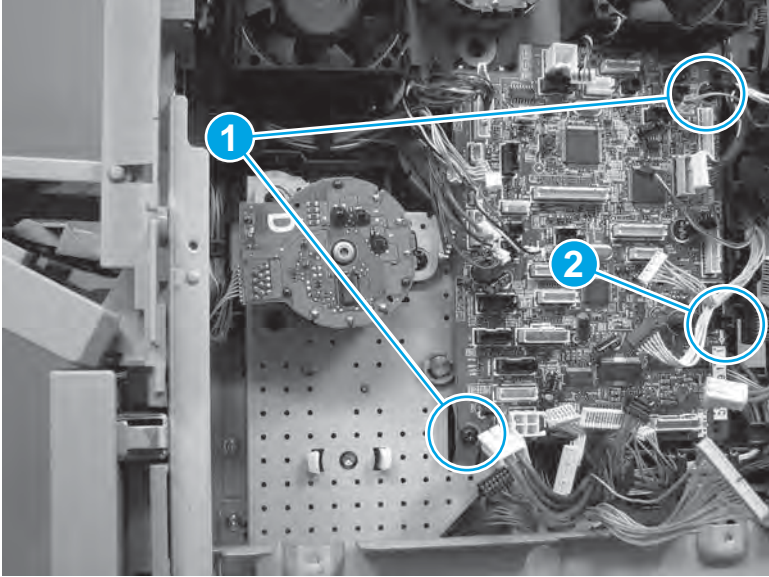


**Figure 1-1004** Disconnect all of the connectors



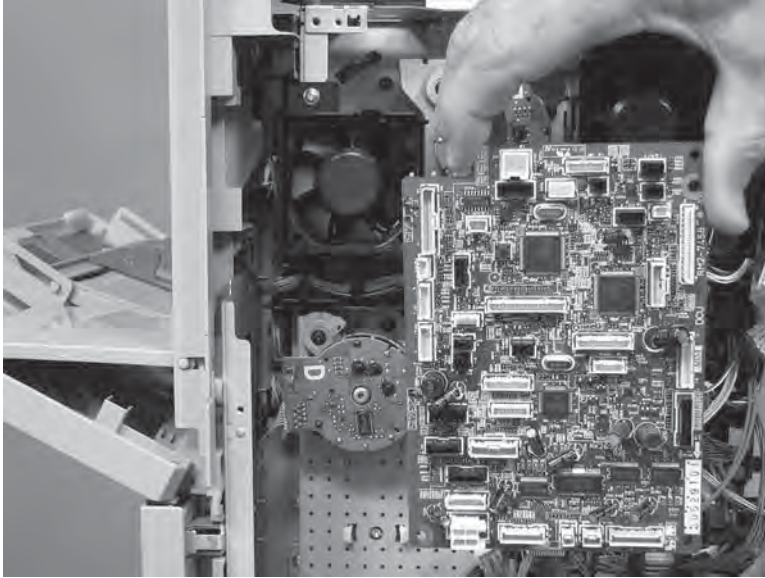
- 2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1005** Remove two screws and release one tab



3. Remove the DC controller.

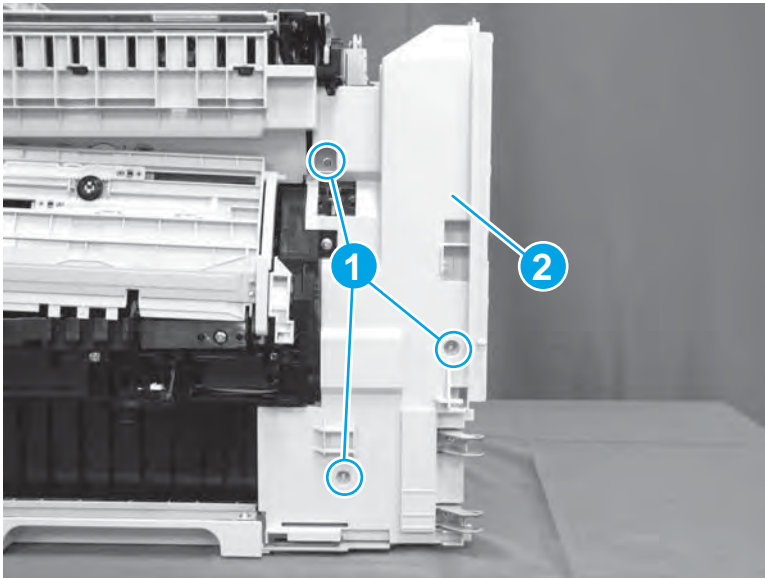
**Figure 1-1006** Remove the DC controller




### Step 10: Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly

1. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the Tray 1 gear cover (callout 2).

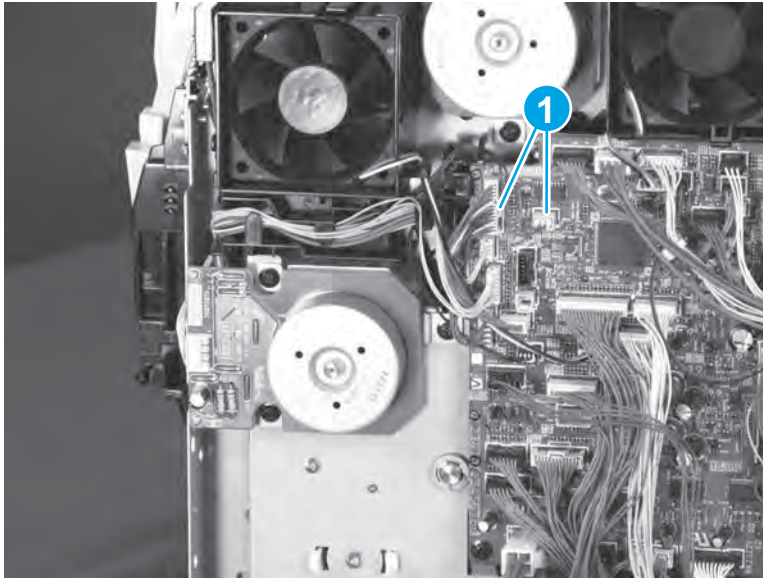
**Figure 1-1007** Remove three screws and the Tray 1 gear cover



2. Disconnect two connectors (J71 and J81; callout 1).

 **NOTE:** The feed motor is shown installed in the figure below, but it has been removed earlier in this procedure.

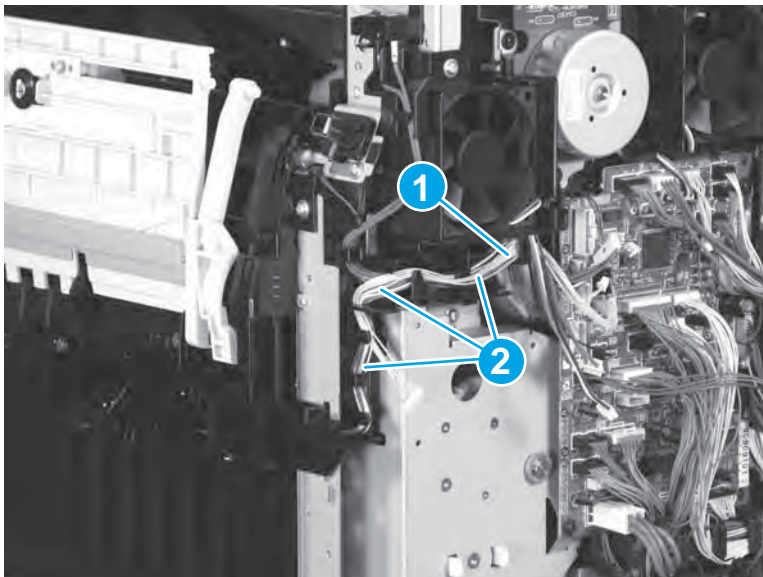
**Figure 1-1008** Disconnect two connectors



3. Release the wire harnesses (callout 1) from the guide (callout 2).

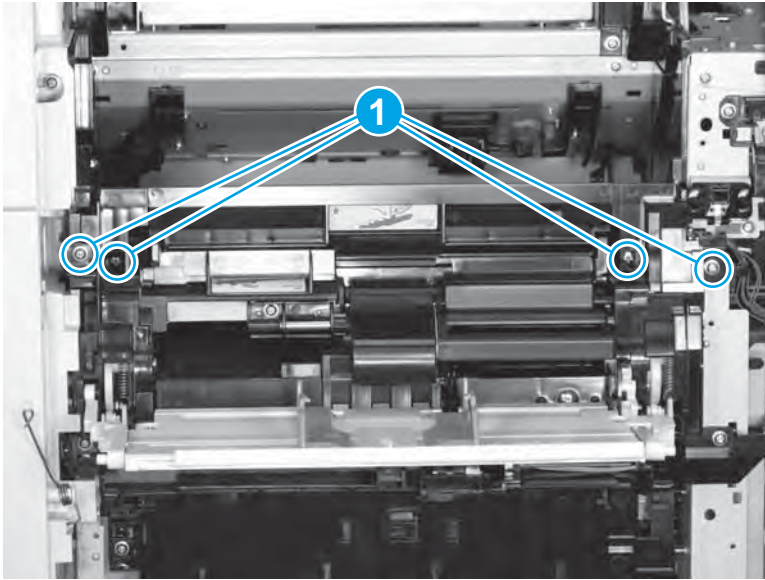
 **NOTE:** The feed motor is shown removed in the figure below, but it does not need to be removed.

**Figure 1-1009** Release the wire harnesses



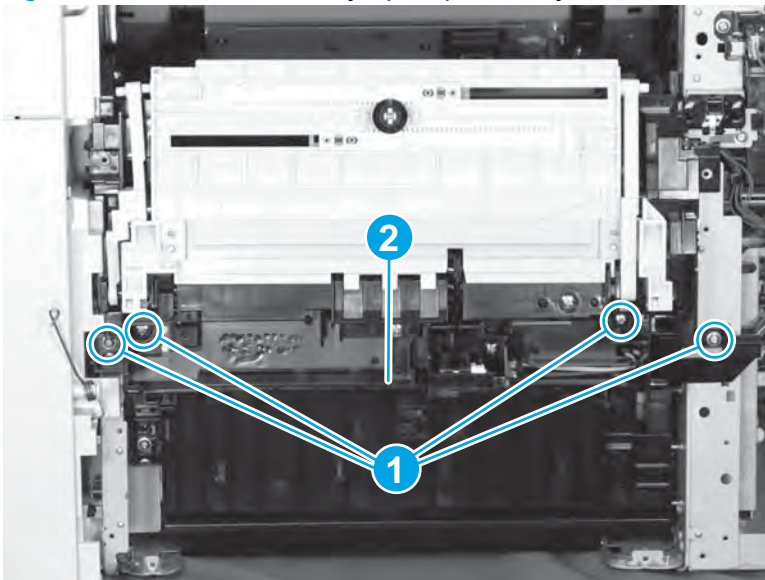
4. Remove four screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1010** Remove four screws



5. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly (callout 2).


**Figure 1-1011** Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly



### Step 11: Remove the feed motor

- ▲ At the DC controller side of the product, remove three screws (callout 1), remove the feed motor, and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

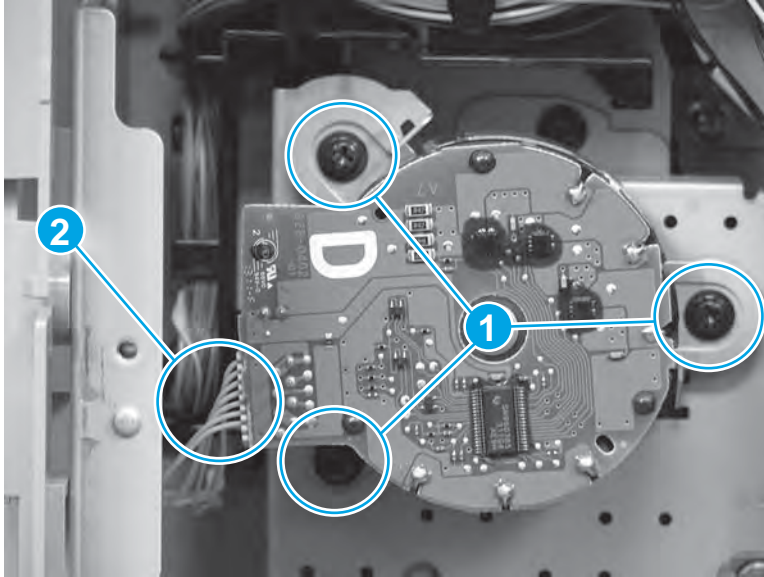
---

 **NOTE:** The feed motor is located at the left-hand side of the DC controller.

 **TIP:** Slightly turn the motor counter clockwise to disengage it from the mounting bracket.

---

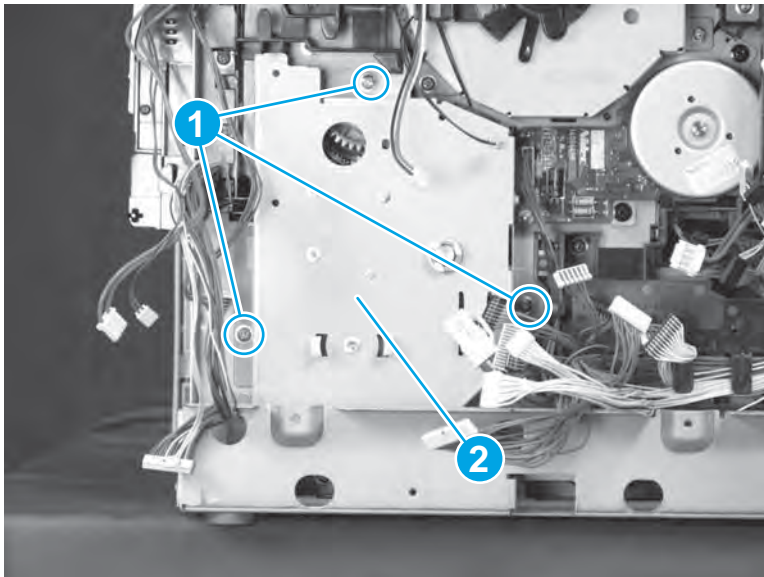
**Figure 1-1012** Remove the feed motor



### **Step 12: Remove the pickup drive assembly**

- ▲ Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the pickup drive assembly (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1013** Remove the pickup drive assembly



### **Step 13: Remove the cassette pickup assembly**

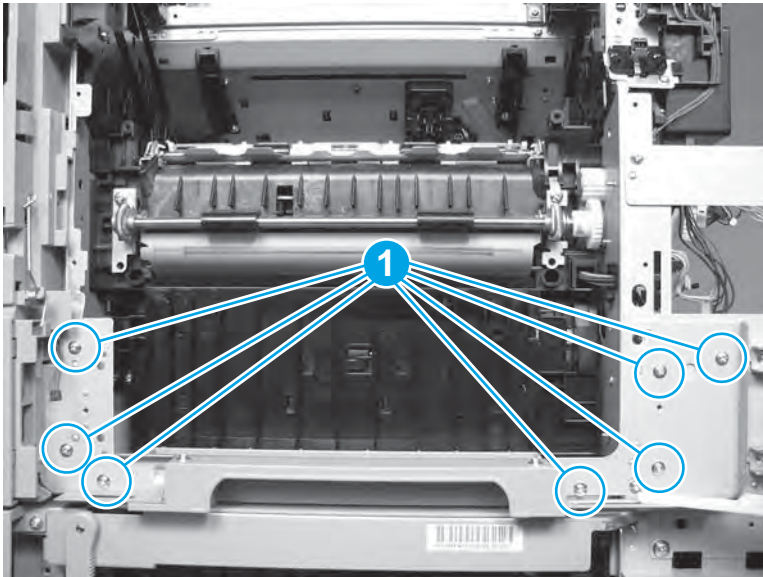
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the cassette rail (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1014** Remove one screw and the cassette rail



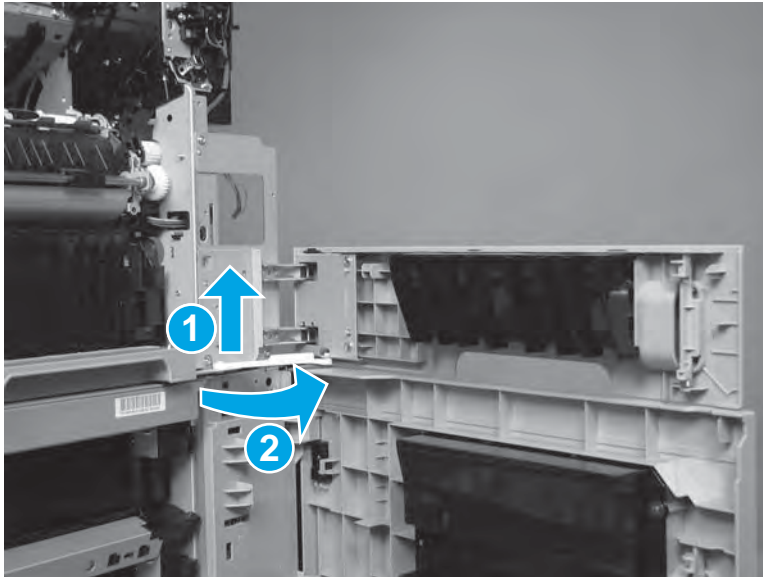
2. Remove seven screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1015** Remove seven screws



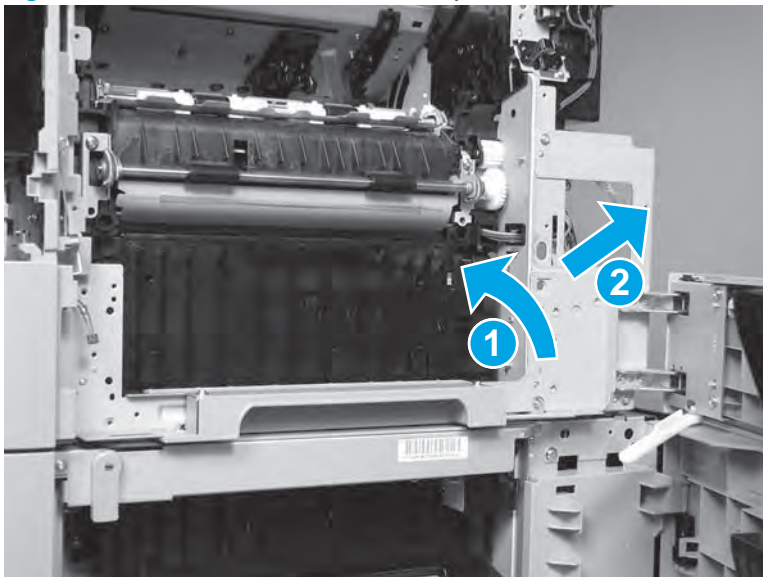
3. Open the right lower cover, lift up on the retainer arm to disengage it (callout 1), and then rotate it out of the way (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1016** Disengage the cover retainer



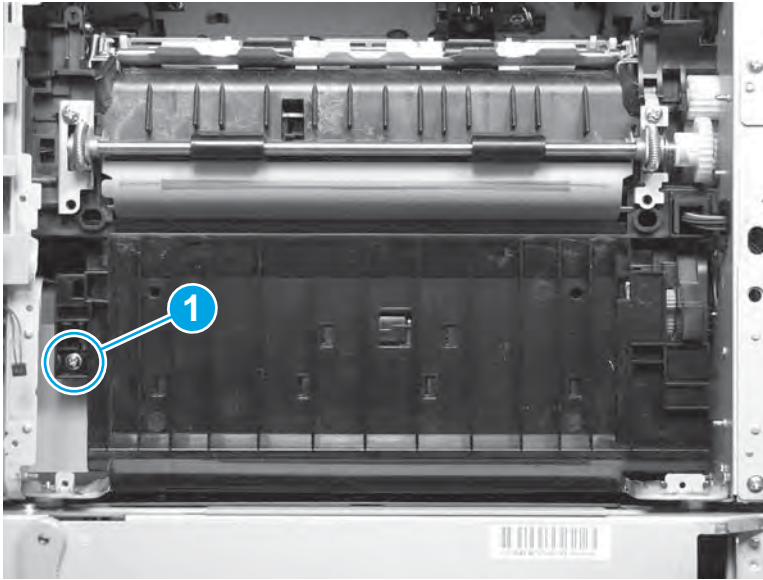
4. Rotate the sheet-metal plate up (callout 1), and then remove it (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1017** Remove the sheet-metal plate



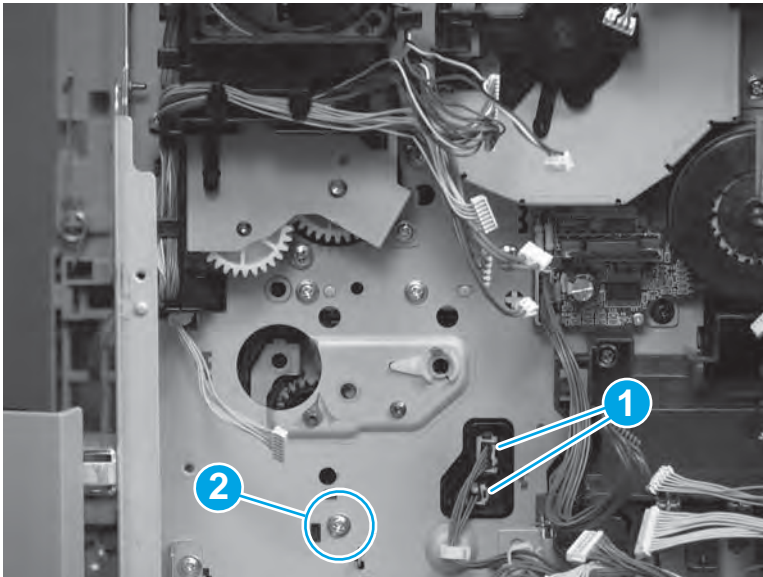
5. Remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1018** Remove one screw



6. At the DC controller side of the product, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

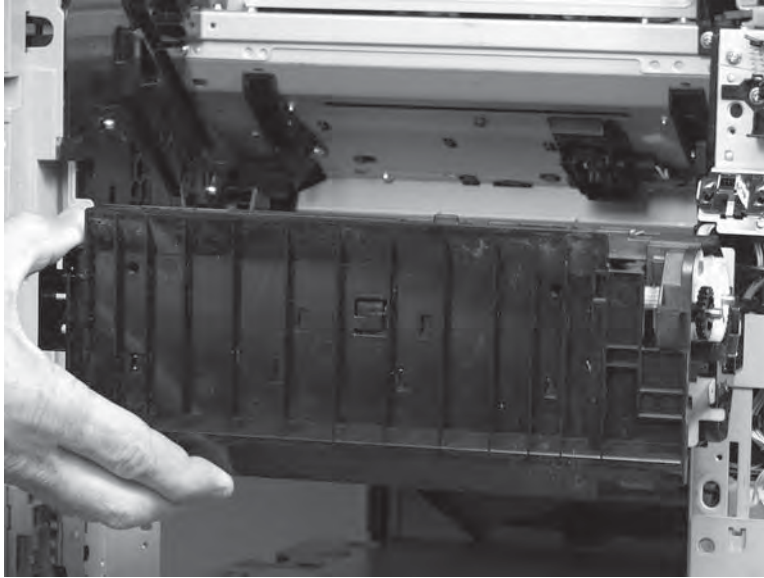
**Figure 1-1019** Disconnect two connectors and remove one screw





7. Remove the cassette pickup assembly.

**Figure 1-1020** Remove the cassette pickup assembly

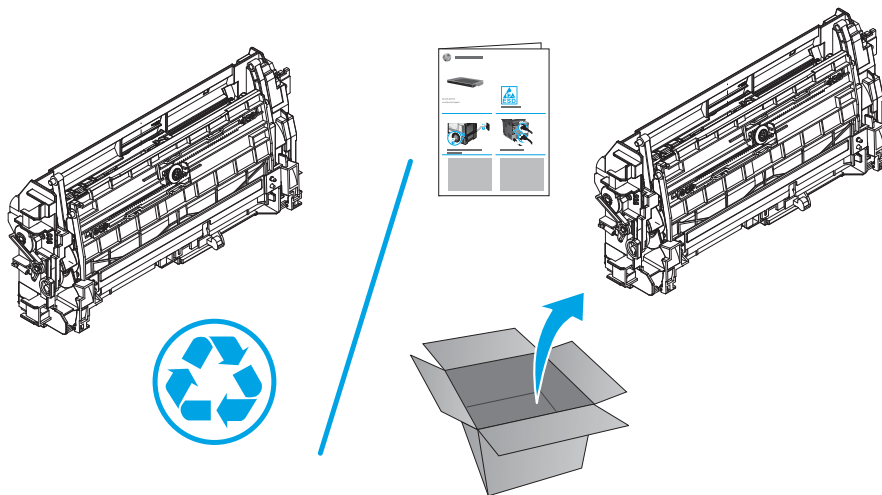


### Step 14: Unpack the replacement cassette pickup assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

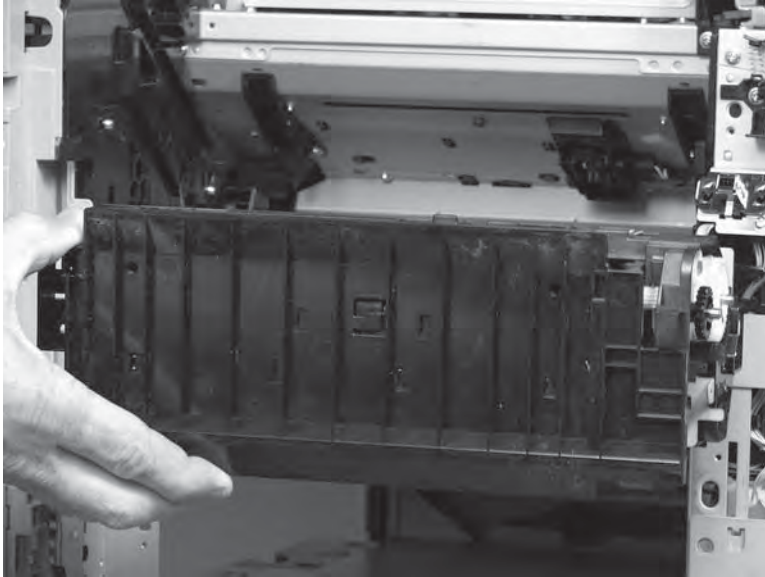
 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



### Step 15: Install the cassette pickup assembly

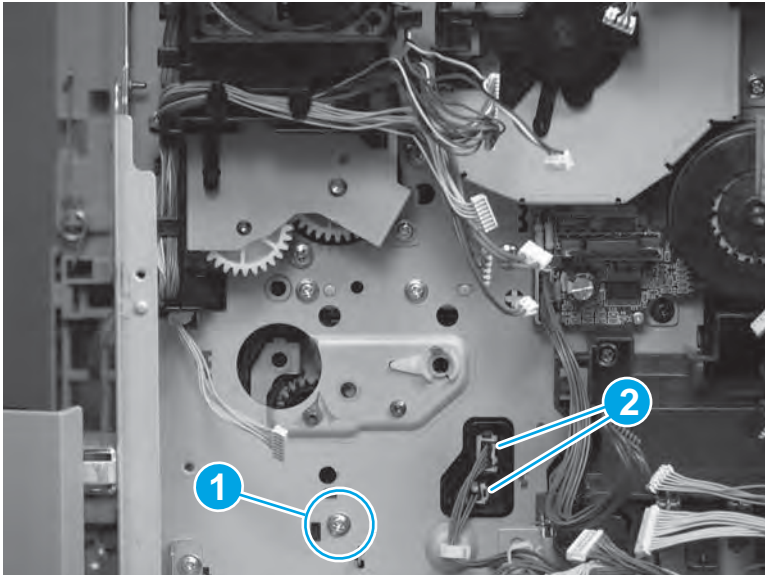
1. Position the cassette pickup assembly on the product.

**Figure 1-1021** Install the cassette pickup assembly



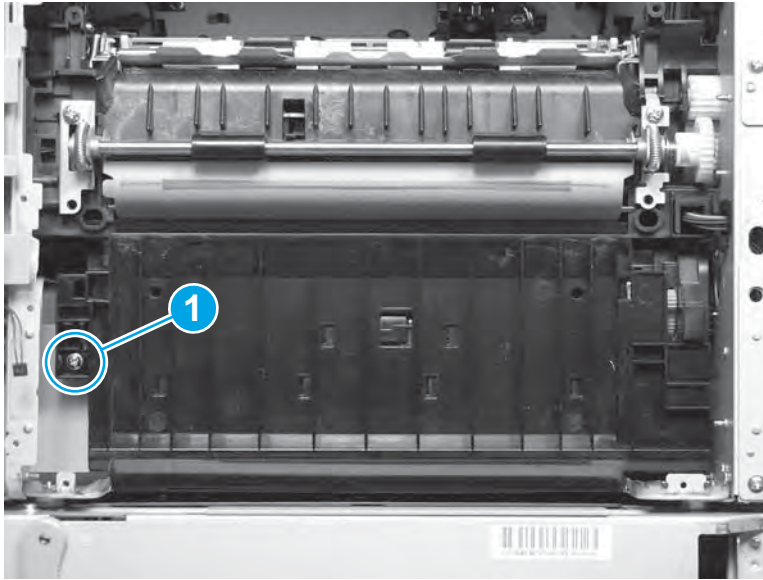
2. At the DC controller side of the product, install one screw (callout 1), and then connect two connectors (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1022** Install one screw and connect two connectors



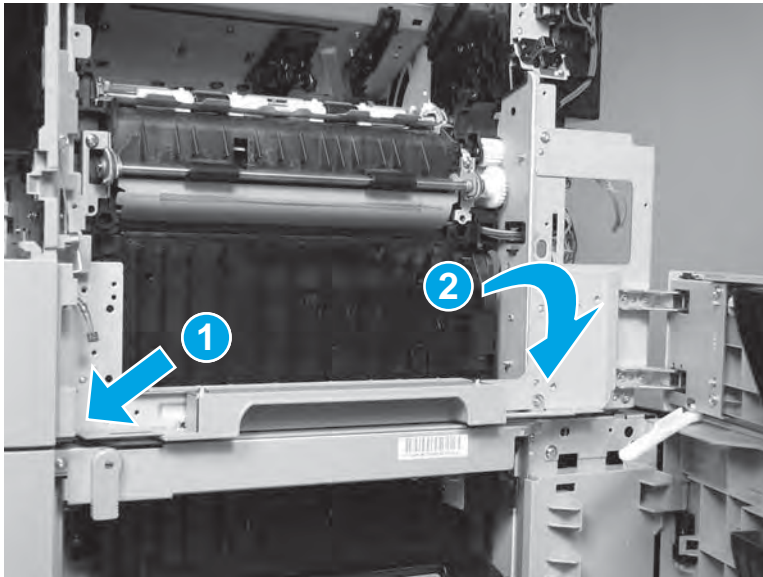
3. Install one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1023** Install one screw



4. Position the corner of the sheet-metal plate (callout 1) on the product, and then rotate it down (callout 2) to install it.

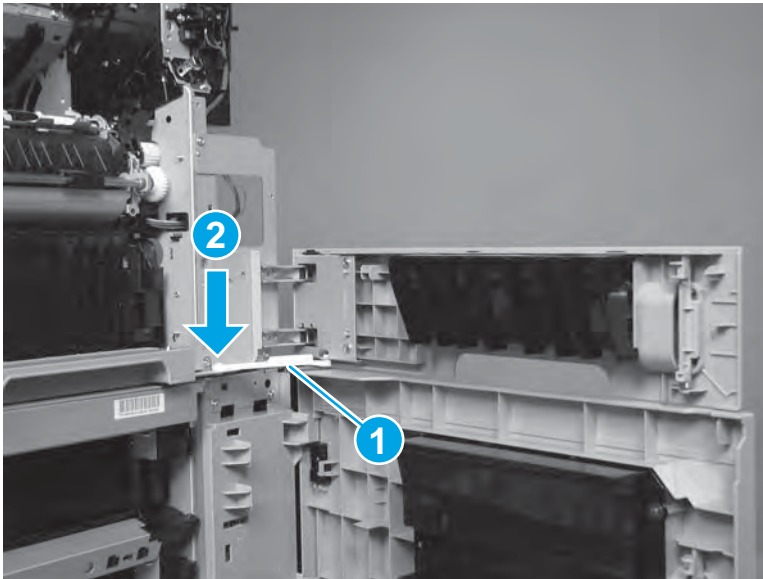
**Figure 1-1024** Install the sheet-metal plate



5. Rotate the retainer arm (callout 1) into place, and then engage it with the slot in the product (callout 2).

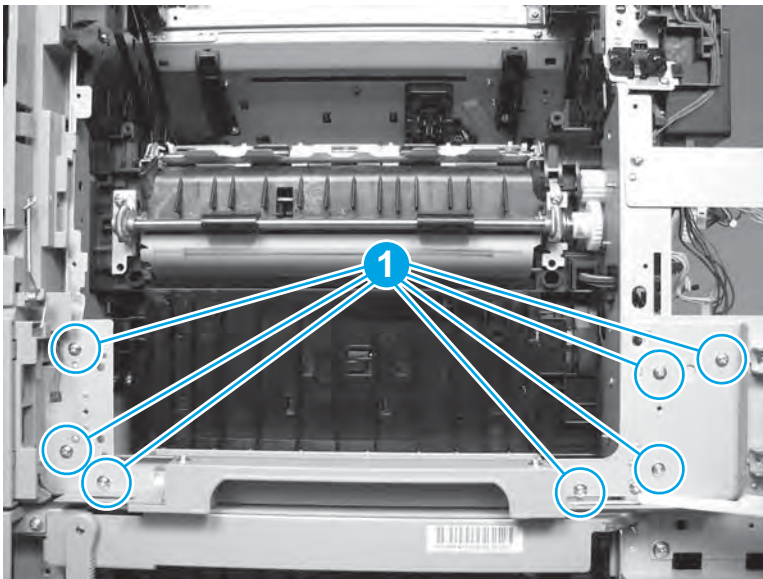
 **TIP:** Slightly raise the sheet-metal plate to make engaging the retainer arm easier.

**Figure 1-1025** Engage the cover retainer



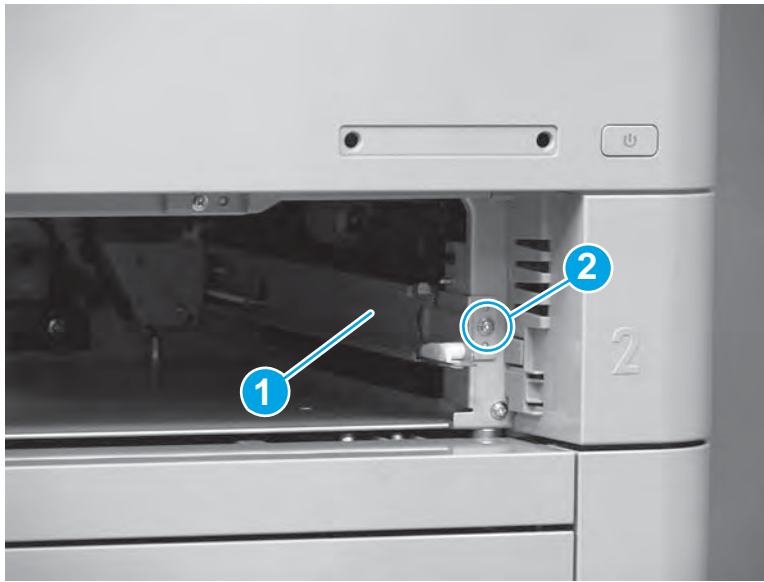
6. Install seven screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1026** Install seven screws



7. Install the cassette rail (callout 1), and then install one screw (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1027** Install the cassette rail and one screw

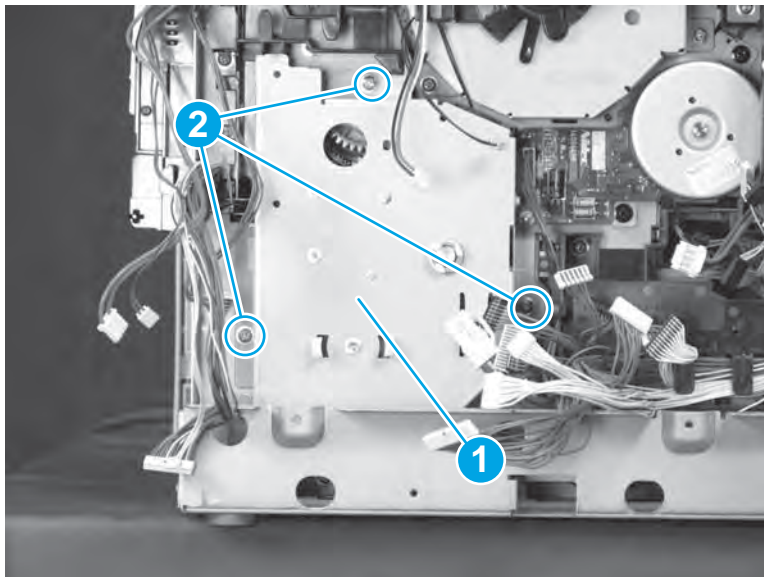


### Step 16: Install the pickup drive assembly

1. Position the pickup drive assembly (callout 1) on the product, and then install three screws (callout 2).

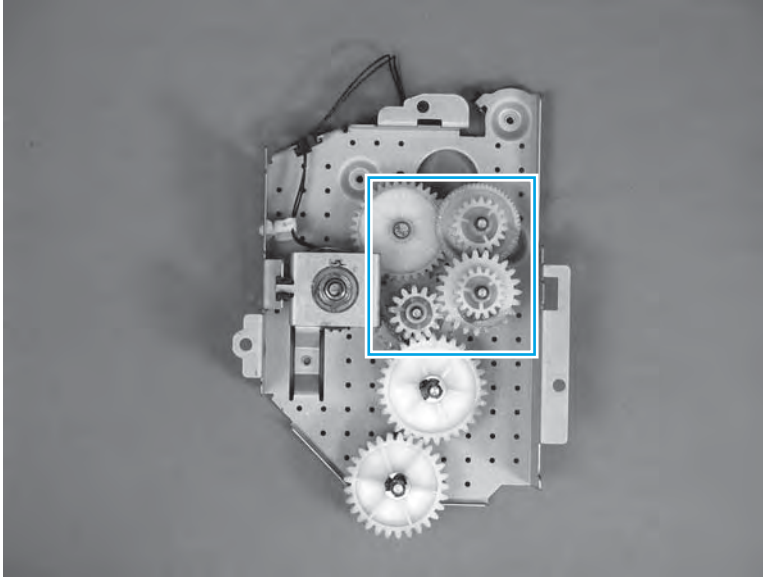
**CAUTION:** Some of the gears on the backside of the assembly are not captive.

**Figure 1-1028** Install the pickup drive assembly



2. If the gears located on the backside of the assembly become dislodged, replace them as shown in the figure.

**Figure 1-1029** Check the pickup drive assembly gears

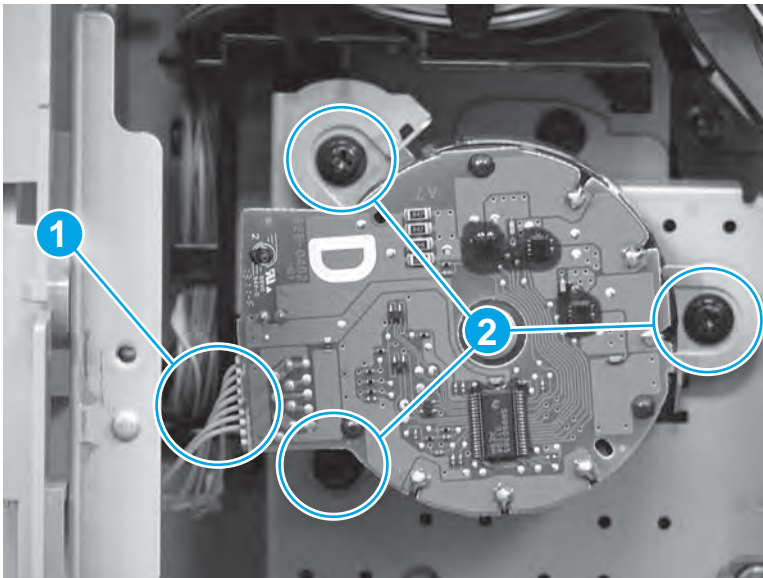


### Step 17: Install the feed motor

- ▲ Connect one connector (callout 1), and then install three screws (callout 2).

💡 **TIP:** It is easier to connect the connector before mounting the motor to the chassis.

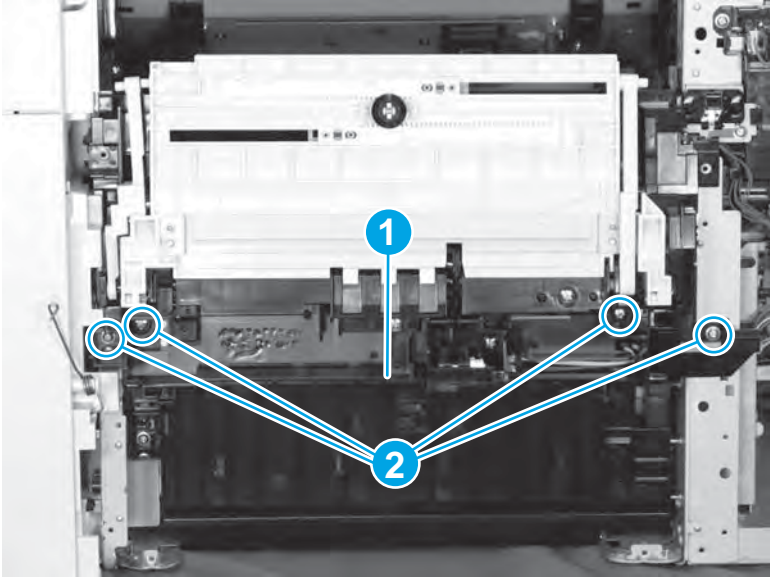
**Figure 1-1030** Install the feed motor



### Step 18: Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly

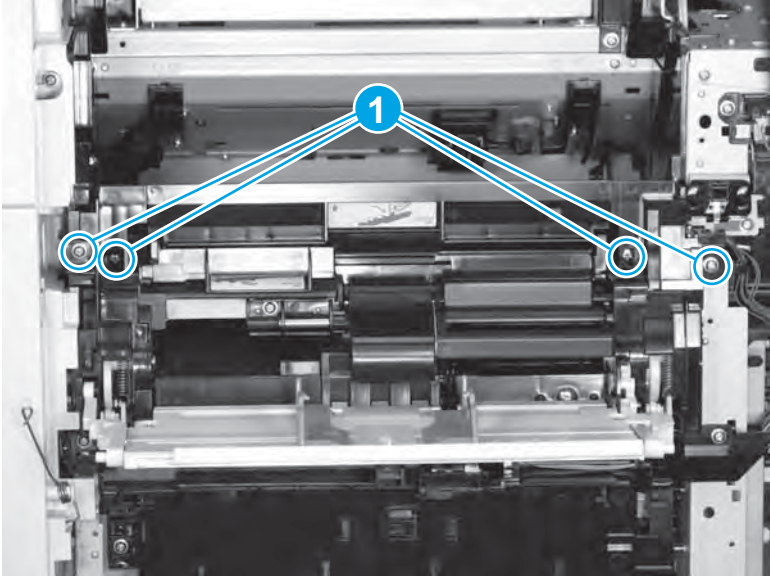
1. Position the Tray 1 pickup assembly (callout 1) on the product, and then install four screws (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1031** Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly



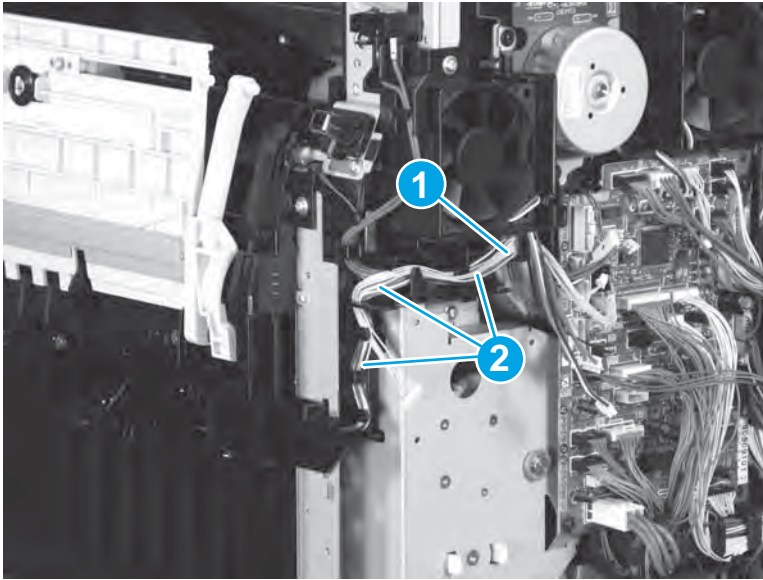
- 2. Install four screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1032** Install four screws



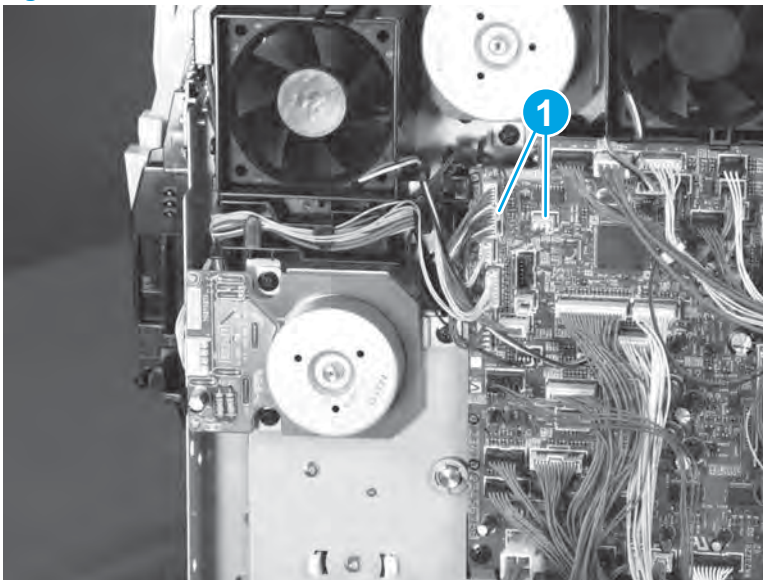
3. Install the wire harnesses (callout 1) in the guide (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1033** Install the wire harnesses in the guide



4. Connect two connectors (J71 and J81; callout 1).

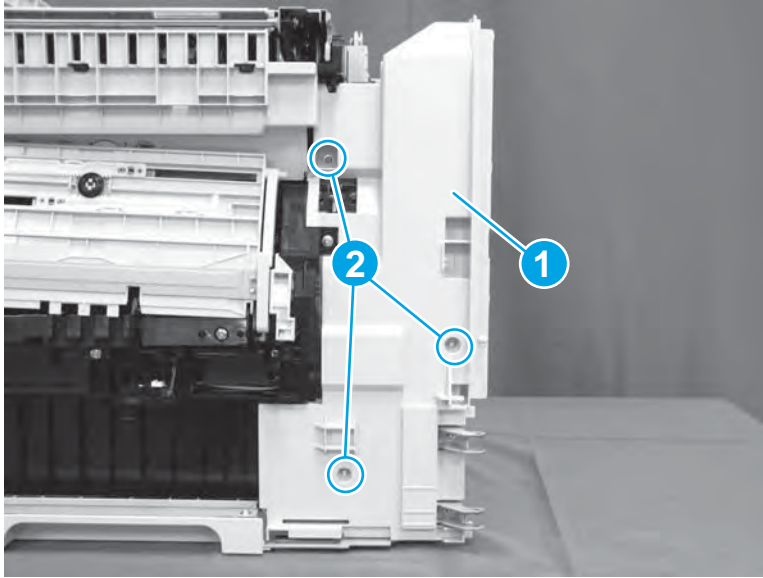
**Figure 1-1034** Connect two connectors





5. Position the Tray 1 gear cover (callout 1) on the product, and then install three screws (callout 2).

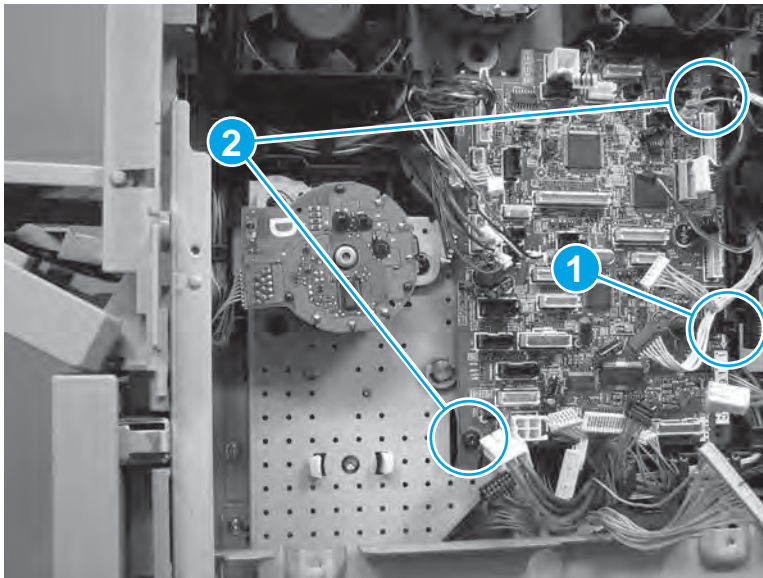
**Figure 1-1035** Install the Tray 1 gear cover



## Step 19: Install the DC controller

1. Position the DC controller on the product, engage one tab (callout 1), and then install two screws (callout 2).

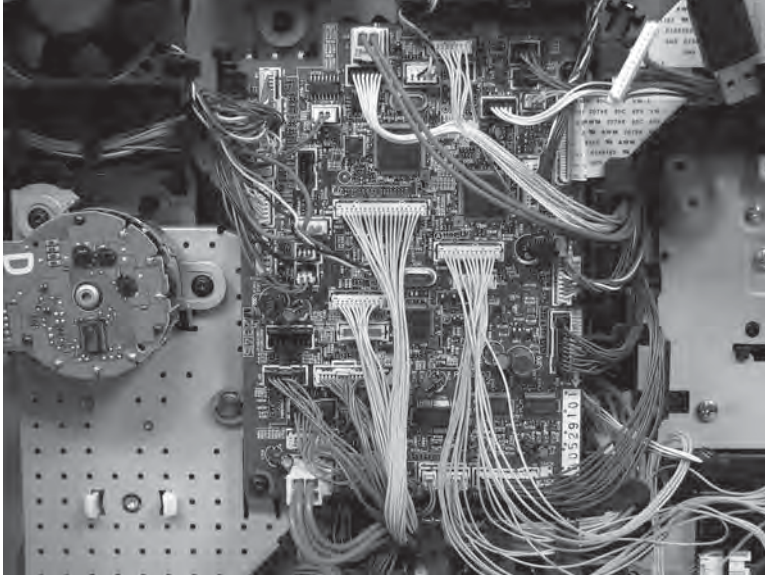
**Figure 1-1036** Install the DC controller



2. Connect all of the connectors on the DC controller.
  - 34 wire-harness connectors
  - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

 **Reinstallation tip:** Connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

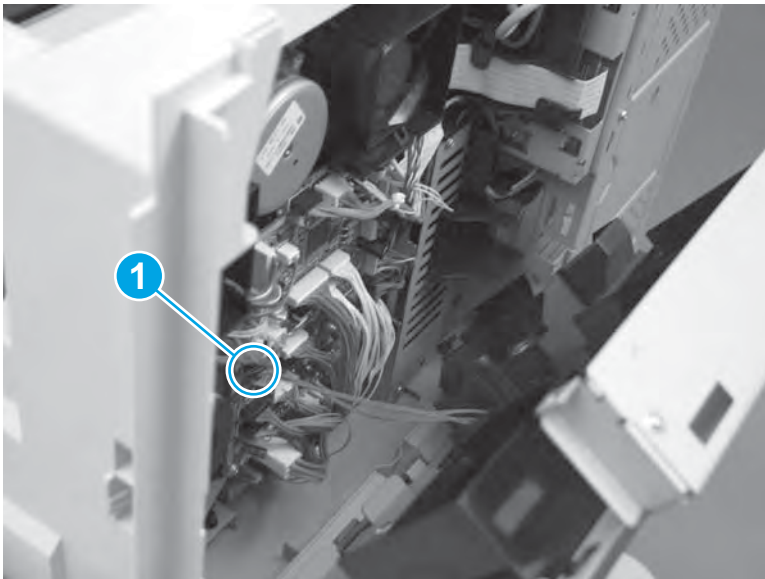
**Figure 1-1037** Connect all of the connectors



### Step 20: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

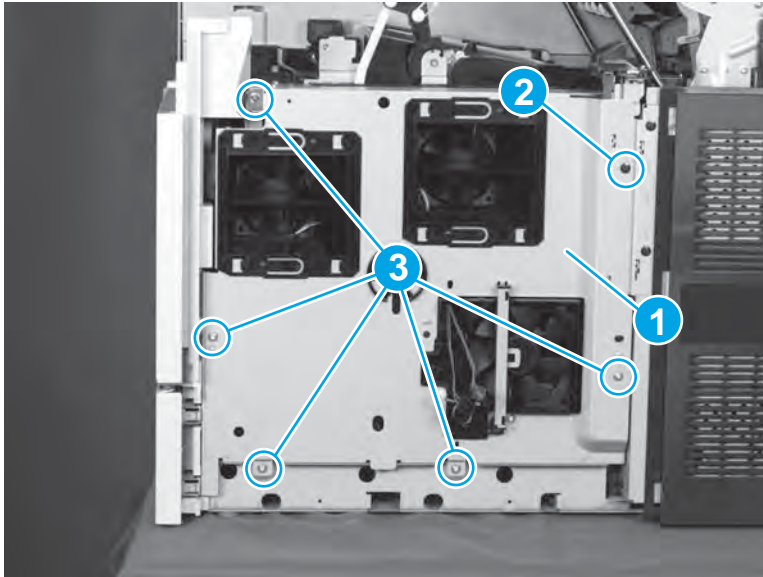
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

**Figure 1-1038** Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

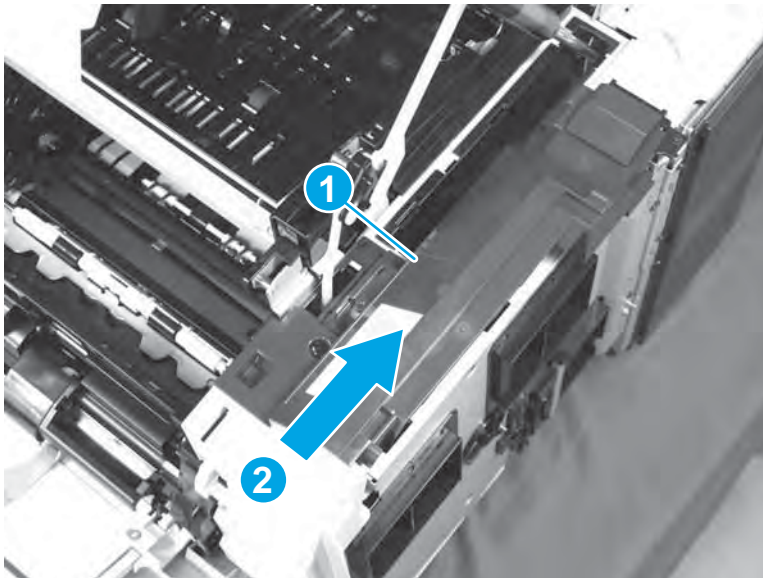
**Figure 1-1039** Remove six screws



### Step 21: Install the rear-top cover

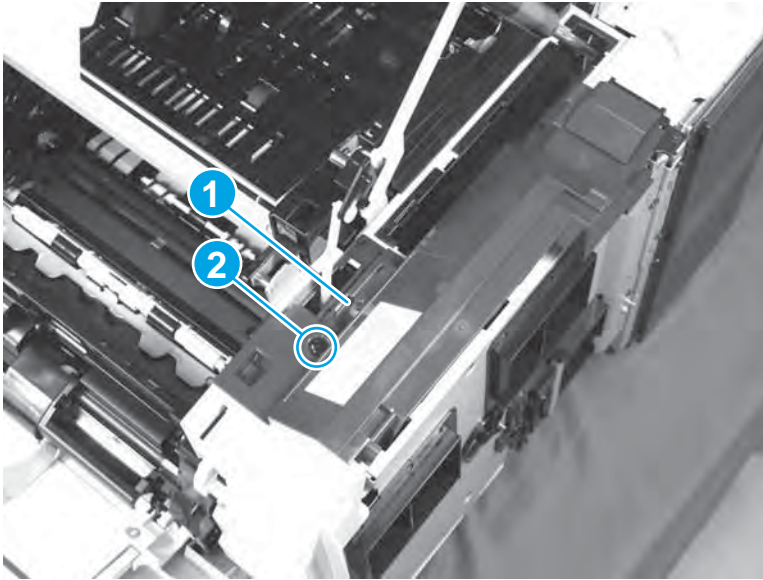
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1040** Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

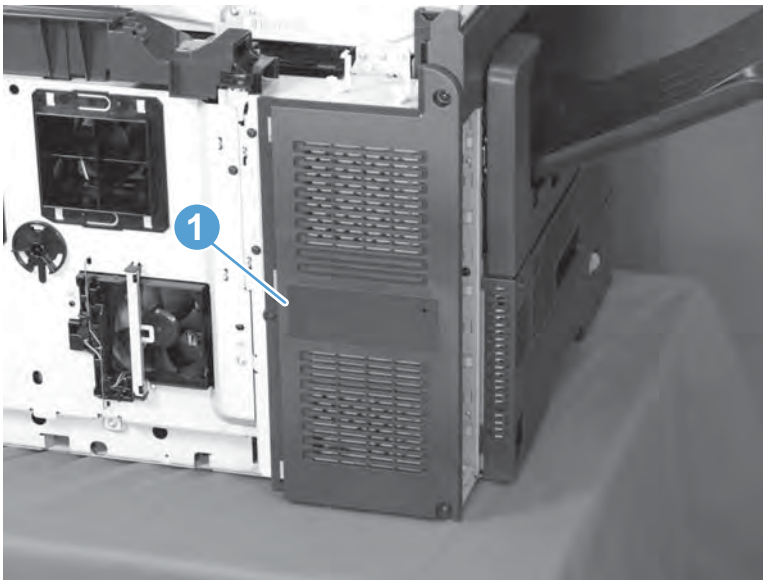
**Figure 1-1041** Install one screw



## Step 22: Install the rear-left cover

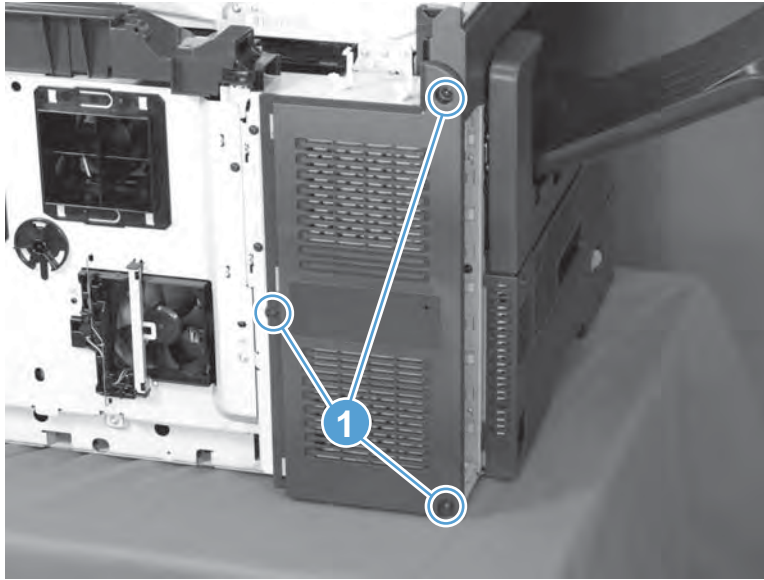
1. Position the cover (callout 1) on the product.

**Figure 1-1042** Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1).

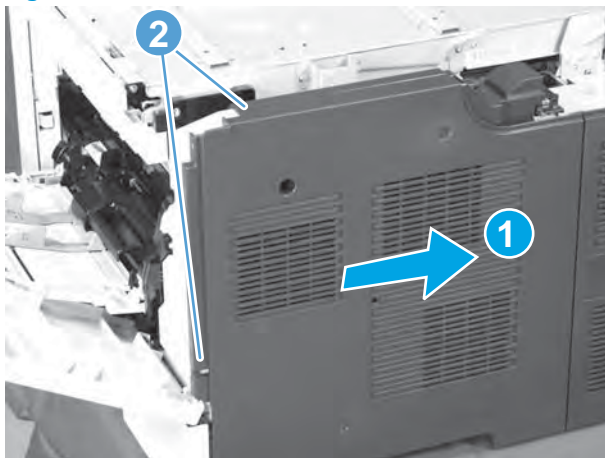
**Figure 1-1043** Install three screws



### Step 23: Install the rear-right cover

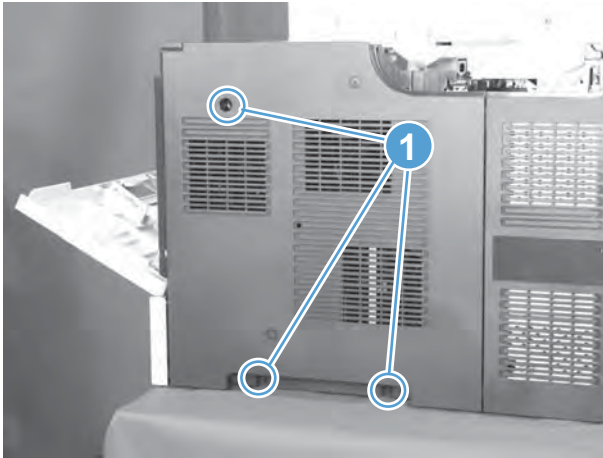
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1044** Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

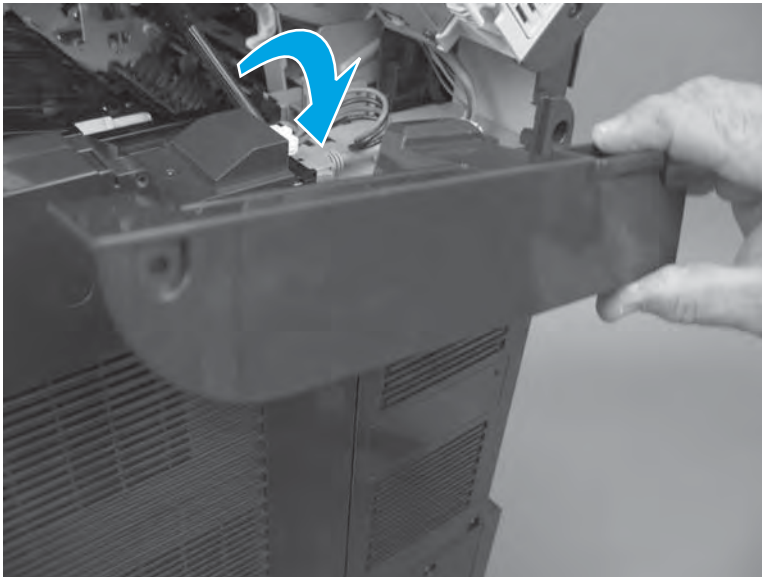
**Figure 1-1045** Install three screws



### Step 24: Install the image scanner cable cover

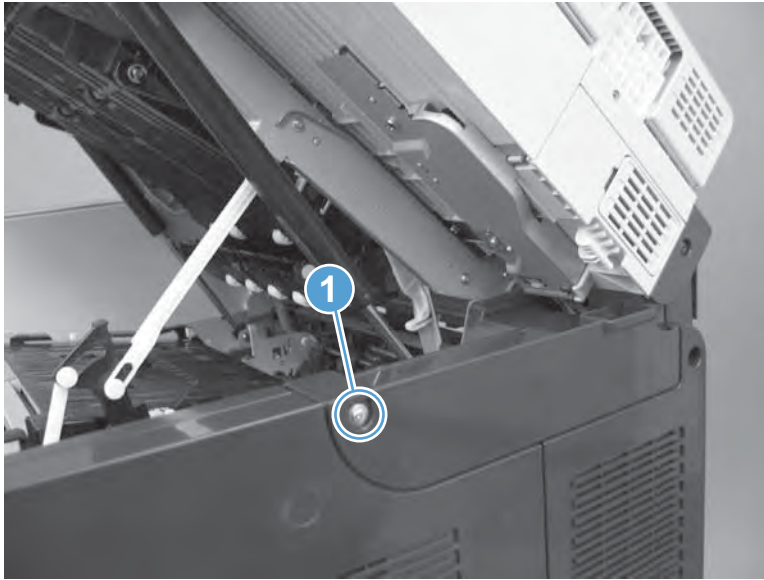
1. Install the cover on the product.

**Figure 1-1046** Install the cover




2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

**Figure 1-1047** Install one screw

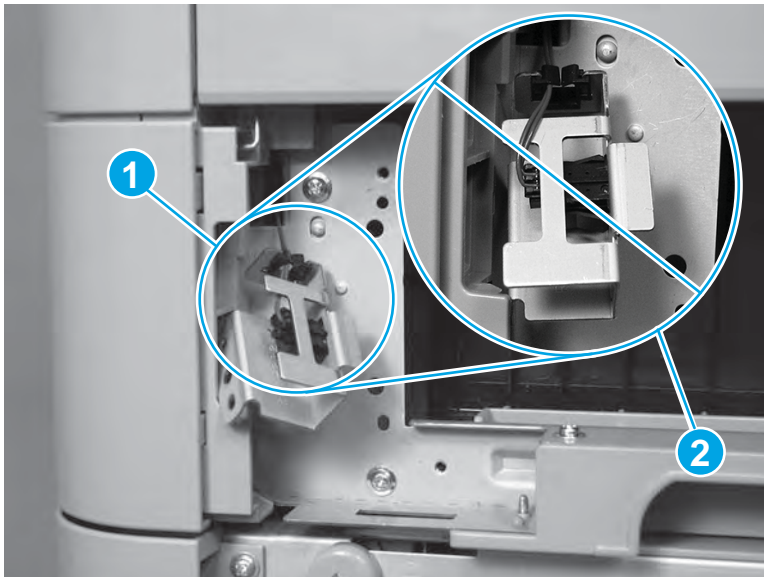


### Step 25: Install the cassette-door-open detection switch

1. Connect one connector, and then install the wire harness in the retainer (callout 1).

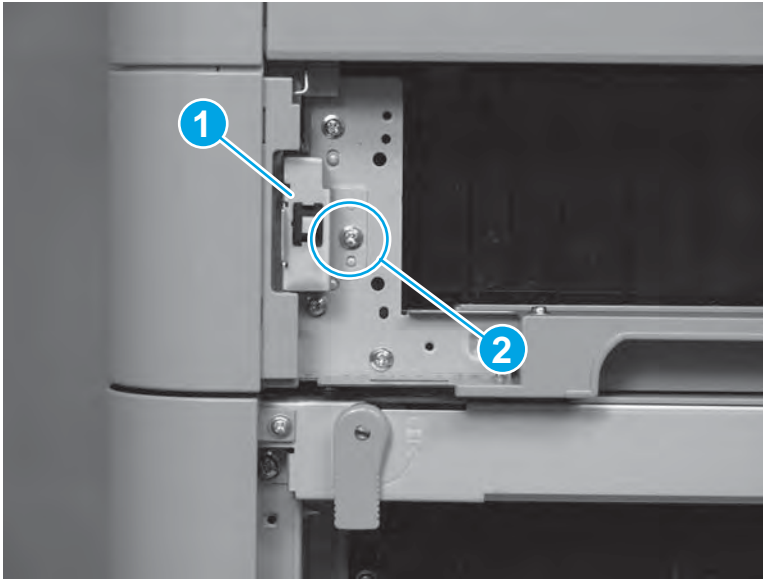
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that the wire harness is routed *inside* the bracket. It must not be routed outside of the bracket (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1048** Connect one connector



2. Position the switch assembly (callout 1) on the product, and then install one screw (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1049** Install one screw

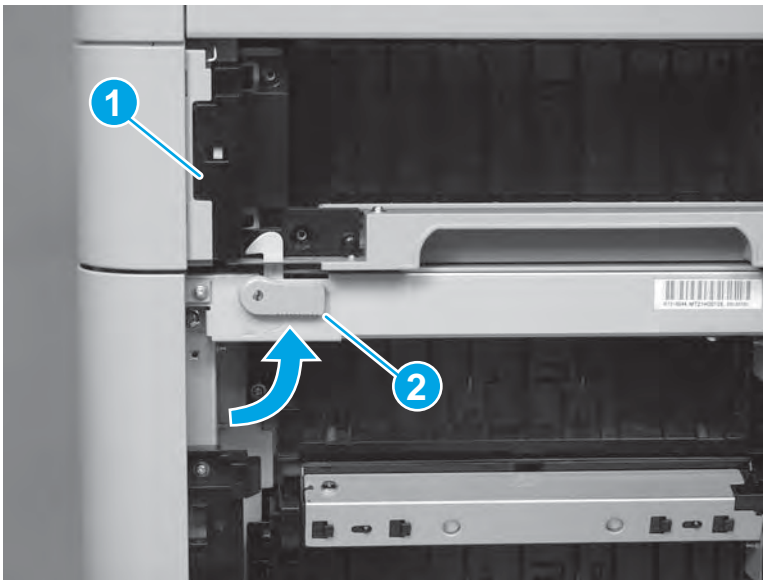


3. Install the switch cover (callout 1).



**NOTE:** If the product is installed on an optional input accessory, make sure to rotate the blue lever (callout 2) to lock the latch.

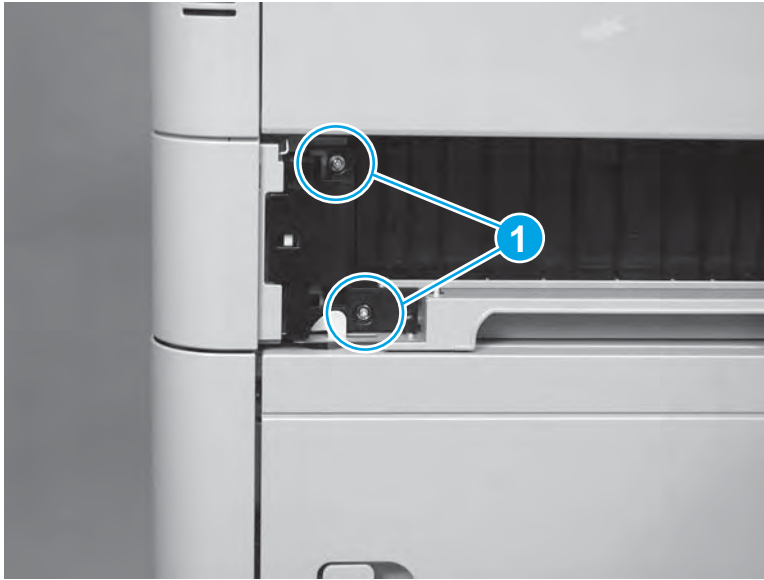
**Figure 1-1050** Install the cover





4. Install two screws (callout 1), and then close all of the doors.

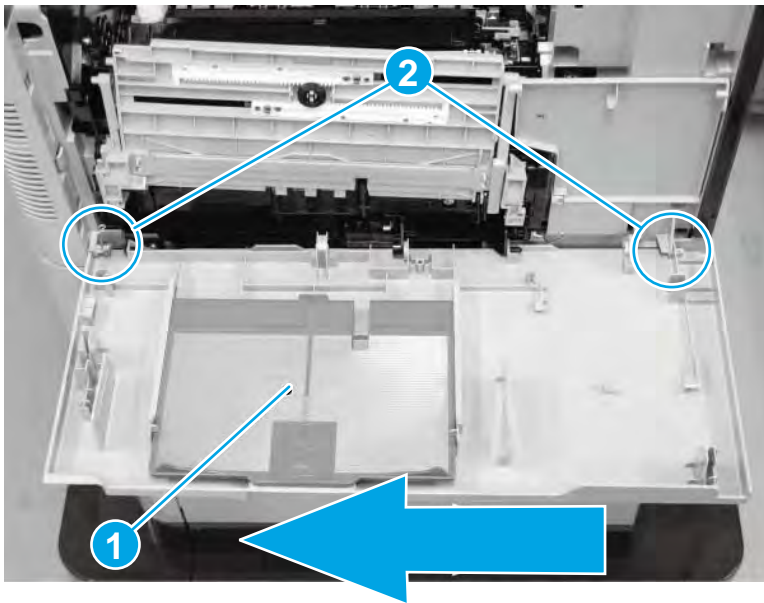
**Figure 1-1051** Install two screws



### Step 26: Install the Tray 1 cover

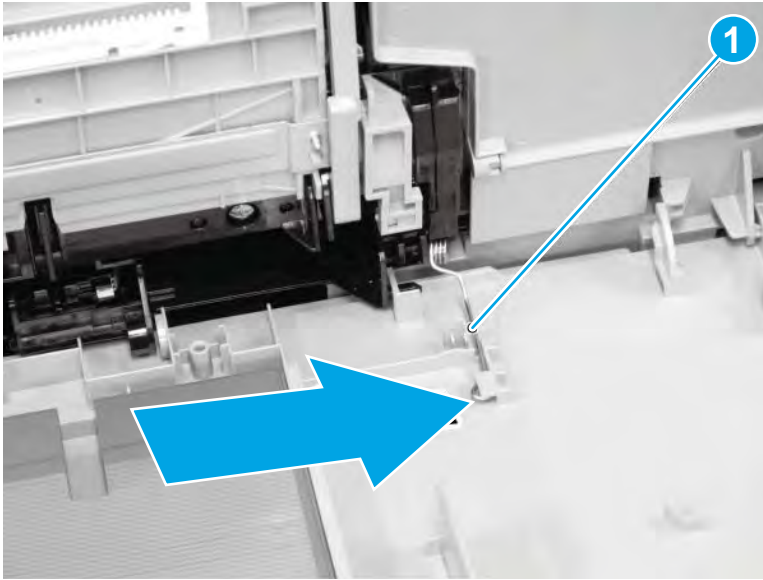
1. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the front of the product to install it on the hinge pins (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1052** Install the cover



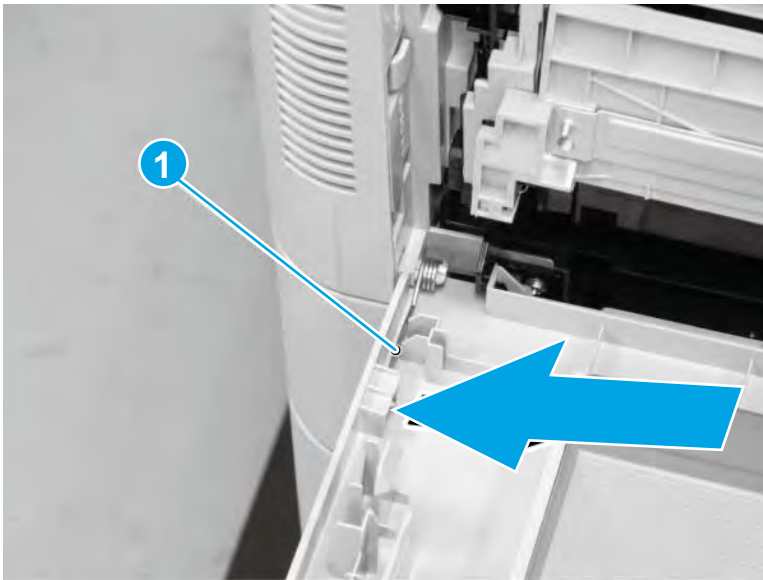
2. Engage the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1053** Engage the right-side spring



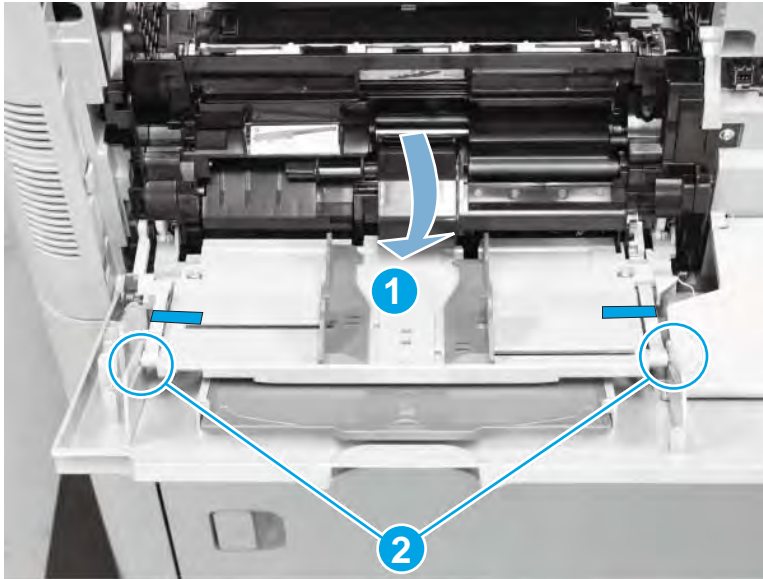
3. Engage the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1054** Engage the left-side spring



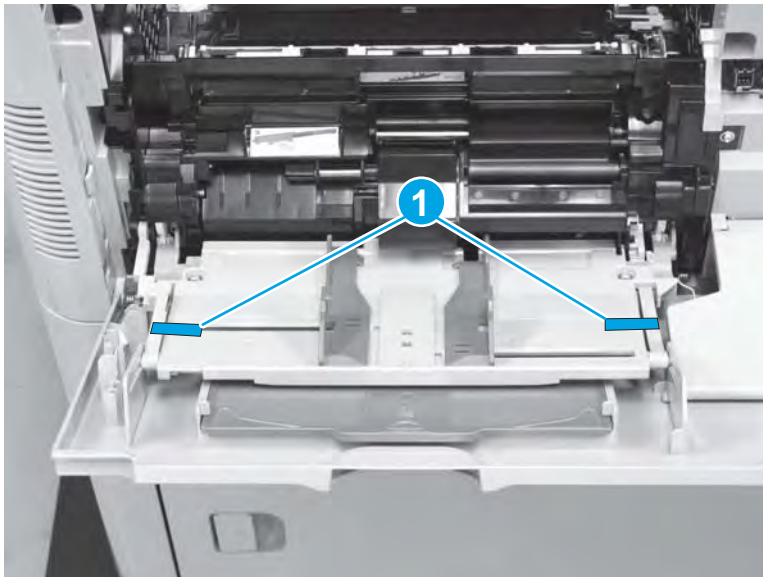
4. Lower the inner tray assembly (callout 1), and then engage the two outer retaining pins (callout 2) on the cover.

**Figure 1-1055** Engage two outer retaining pins



5. Remove the low adhesive tape (callout 1), and then close the tray.

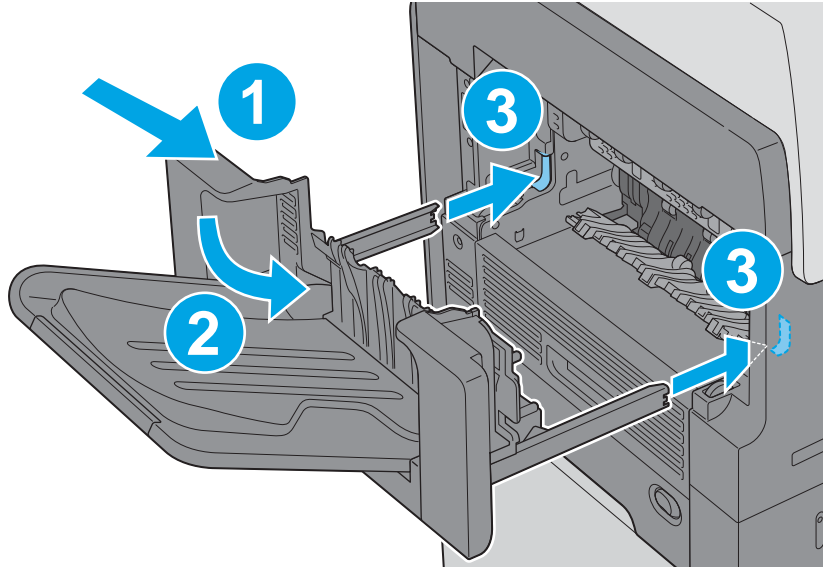
**Figure 1-1056** Remove the low adhesive tape




## Step 27: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

- ▲ Do one of the following:
  - a. **M630dn and M630f:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

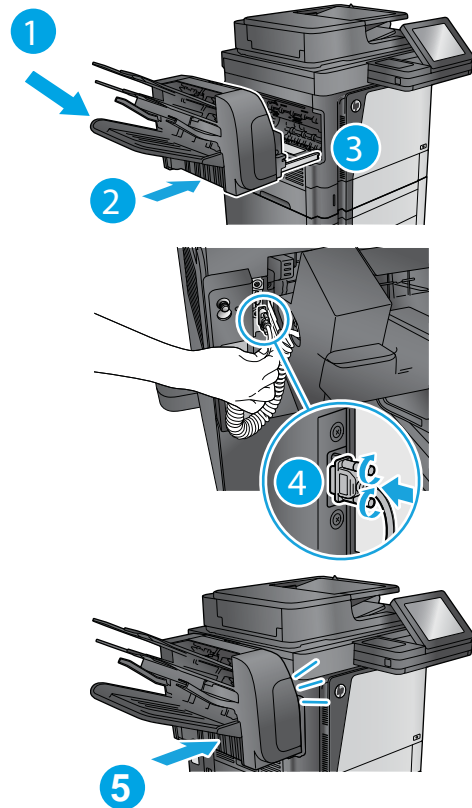
**Figure 1-1057** Install the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4), and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.

 **TIP:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

**Figure 1-1058** Install the stapling mailbox



## **Step 28: Turn the product power on**

### **After servicing**

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

### **Parts Return**

[www.Product return and recycling](http://www.Product return and recycling).

## Optional input and output accessories

---



**NOTE:** HP recommends removing the accessories from the product before servicing them.

Some of the figures in this section might look slightly different than the M630 accessories. However, the procedures are correct for this product.

---

- [1x500-sheet paper feeder](#)
- [1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet](#)
- [2,500-sheet high capacity input \(HCI\)](#)
- [Stapling mailbox](#)

## 1x500-sheet paper feeder



**NOTE:** HP recommends removing the accessory from the product before servicing it.

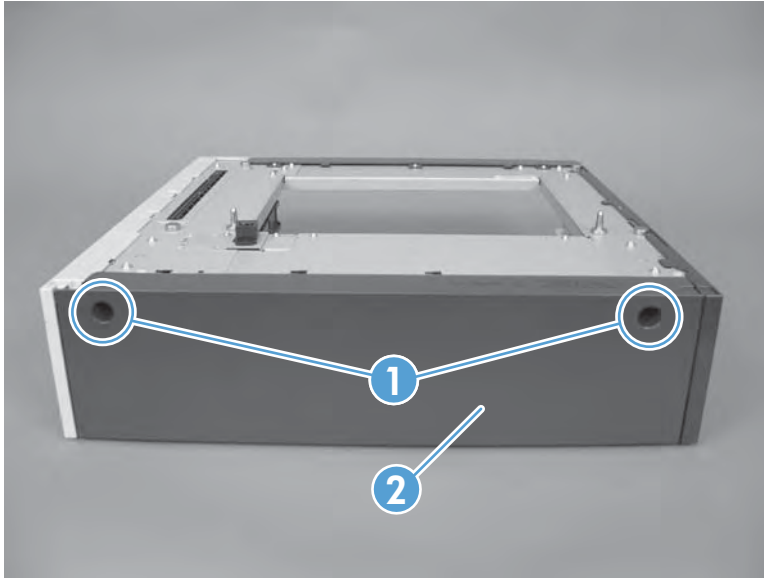
Some of the figures in this section might look slightly different than the M630 accessory. However, the procedures are correct for this product.

- [Rear cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\)](#)
- [Left cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\)](#)
- [Right cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\)](#)
- [Right-front cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\)](#)
- [Front-upper cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\)](#)
- [Pickup drive assembly \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\)](#)
- [Pickup assembly \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\)](#)
- [Lifter base assembly \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\)](#)
- [Lifter assembly \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\)](#)
- [Controller printed-circuit assembly \(PCA\) \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\)](#)

## Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear cover (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1059** Remove the rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)





## Left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)


### Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Rear cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 658](#).

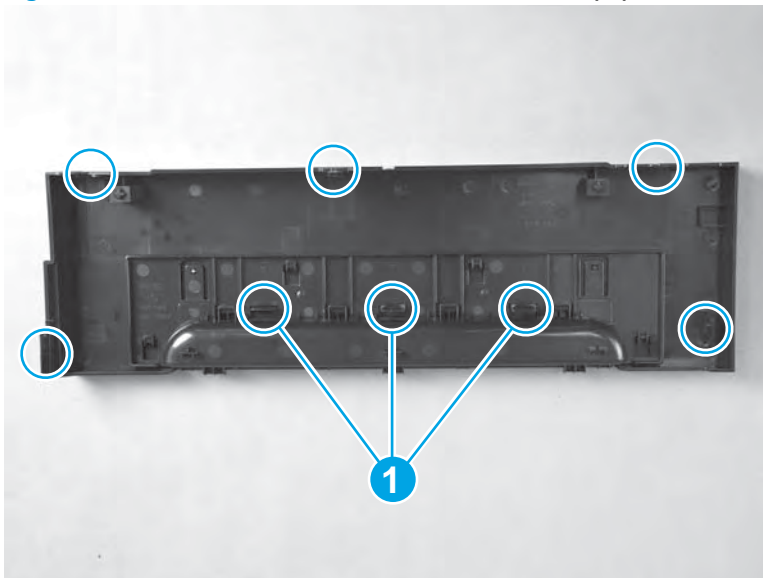
 **NOTE:** Remove the Tray 3 cassette if it has not already been removed.

### Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

1. The figure below shows the left cover removed. Take note of the locations of the tabs.

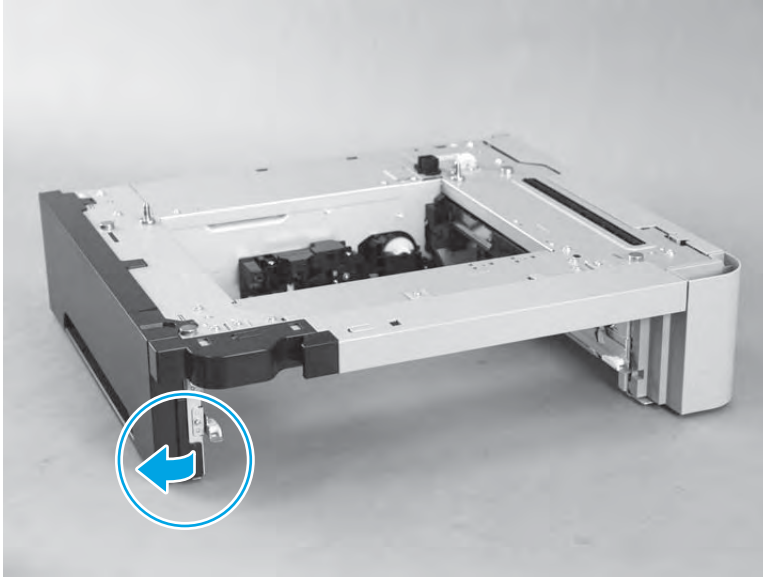
 **NOTE:** The three tabs (callout 1) along the inside middle are of the cover are difficult to see when removing the cover.

**Figure 1-1060** Left cover tab locations (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



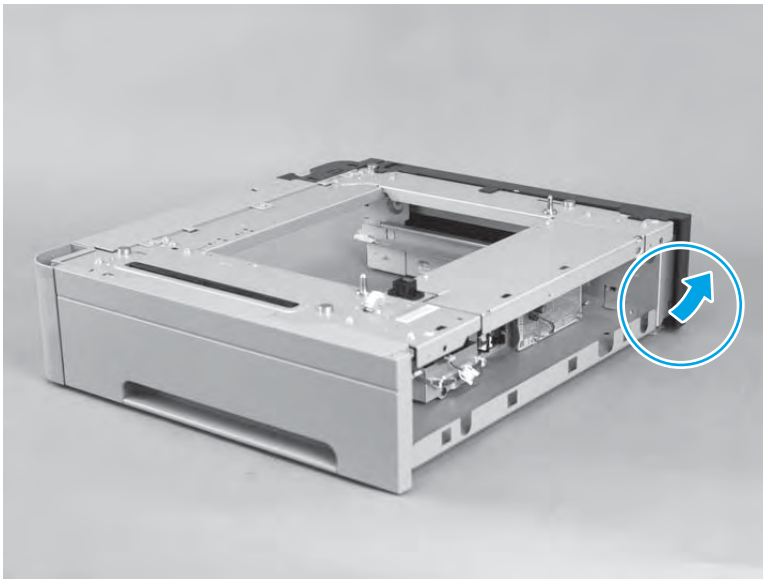
2. At the front of the accessory, release one tab, and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.

**Figure 1-1061** Release one tab (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



3. At the rear of the accessory, release one tab, and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.

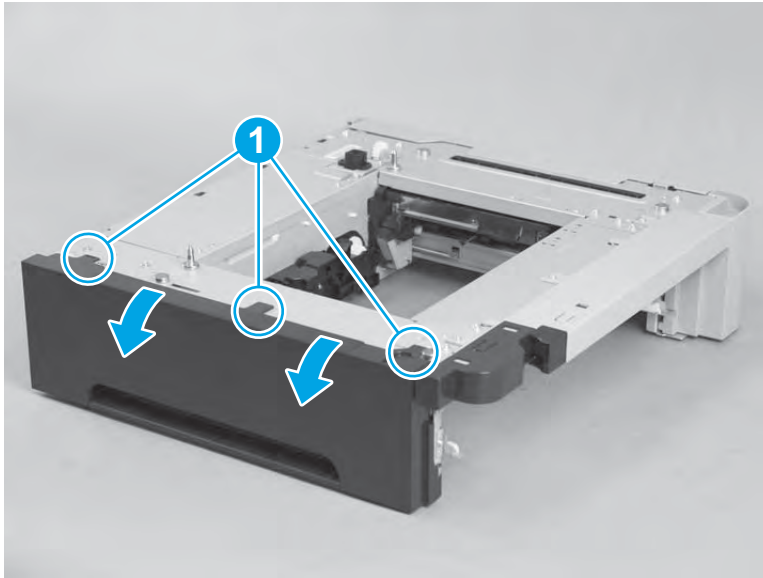
**Figure 1-1062** Release one tab (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



4. At the top of the accessory, release three tabs (callout 1), and then slightly separate the top edge of the cover from the chassis.

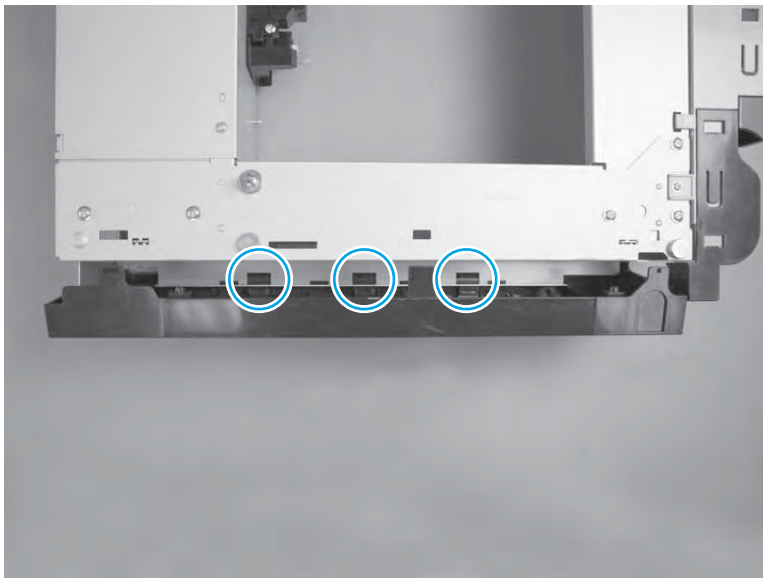
**CAUTION:** Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the chassis by three inner tabs.

**Figure 1-1063** Release three tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



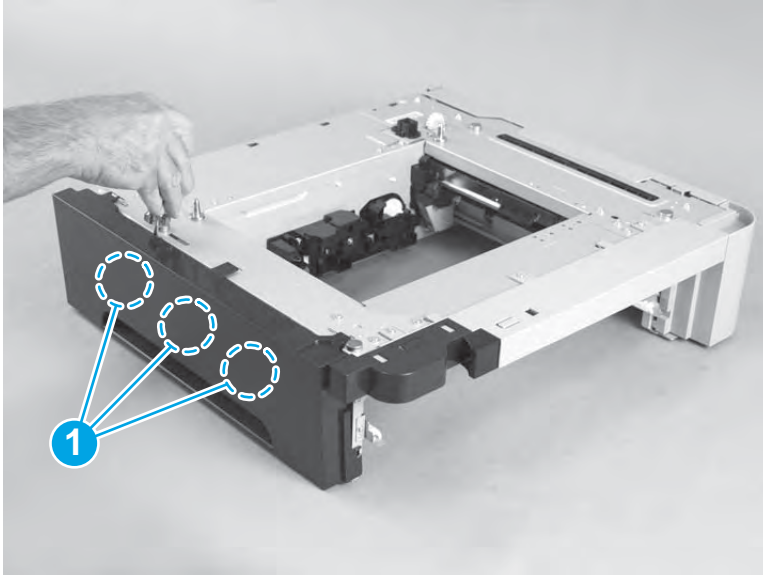
5. Look down at the top of the accessory, and then locate the three inner mounting tabs.

**Figure 1-1064** Locate three tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



6. Use a long-blade screwdriver to release the three inner mounting tabs (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-1065** Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



## Right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)


### Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Rear cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 658](#).

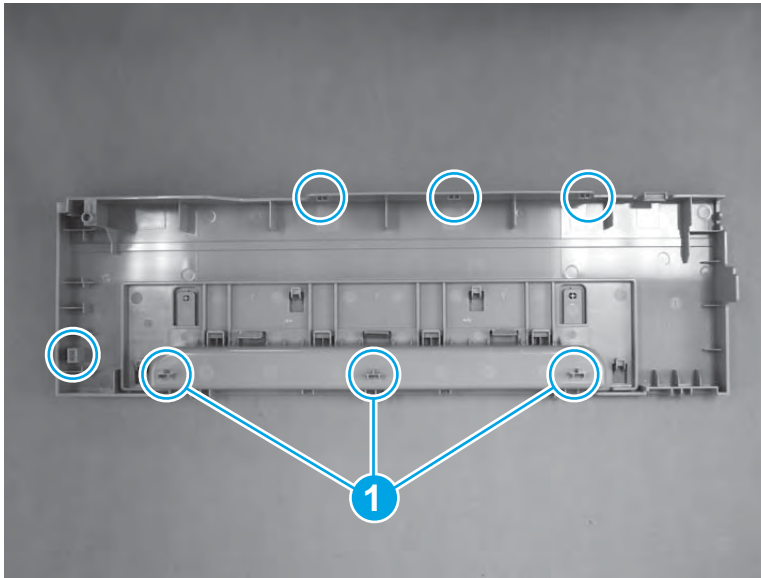
 **NOTE:** Remove the Tray 3 cassette if it has not already been removed.

### Remove the right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

1. The figure below shows the left cover removed. Take note of the locations of the tabs.

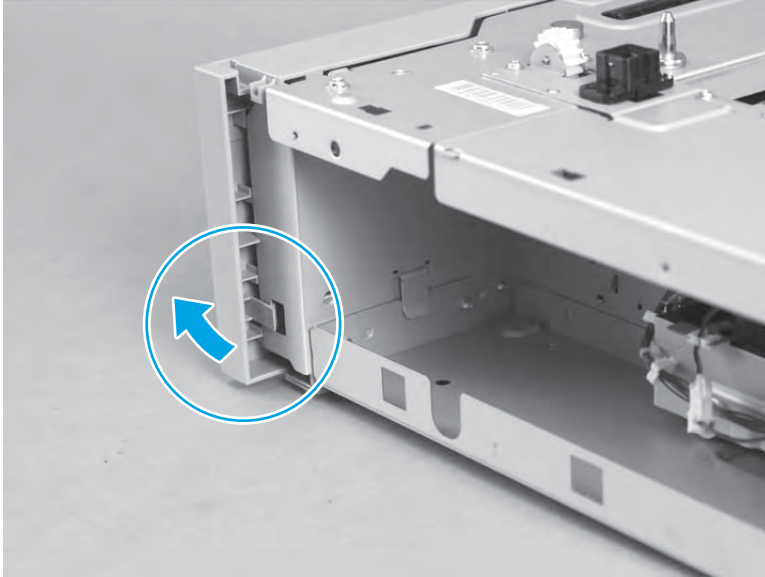
 **NOTE:** The three tabs (callout 1) along the inside middle are of the cover are difficult to see when removing the cover.

**Figure 1-1066** Left cover tab locations (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



2. At the rear of the accessory, release one tab, and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.

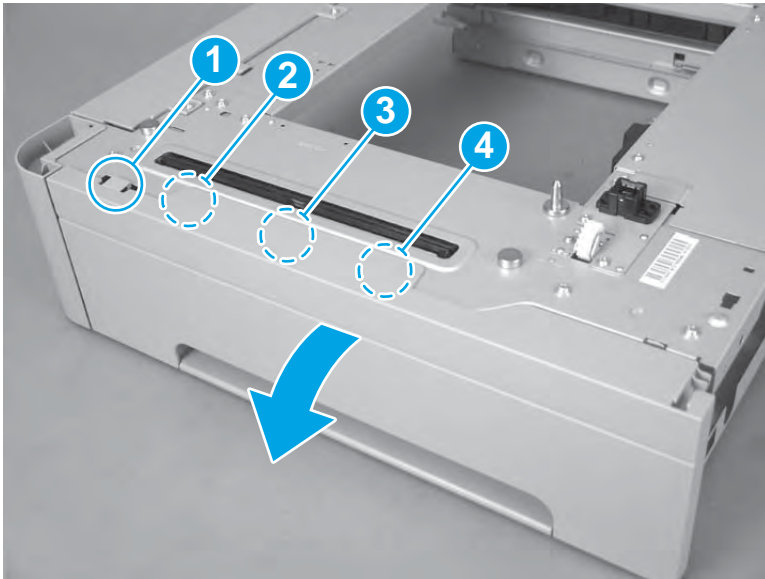
**Figure 1-1067** Release one tab (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



3. At the top of the accessory, release four tabs in the order shown below (callout 1/2/3/4), and then slightly separate the top edge of the cover from the chassis.

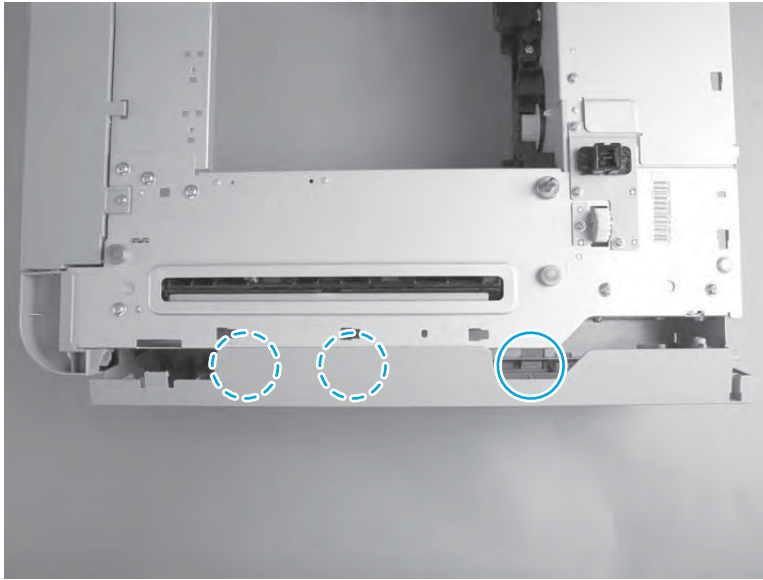
**CAUTION:** Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the chassis by three inner tabs.

**Figure 1-1068** Release four tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



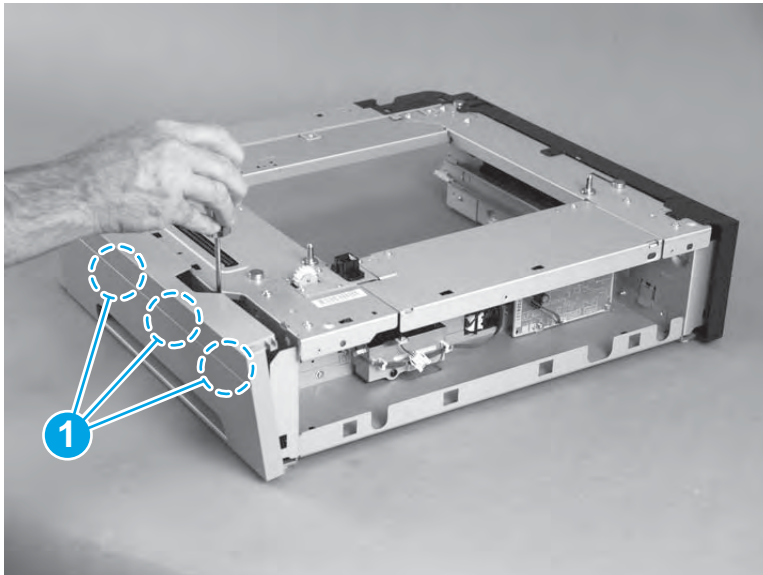
4. Look down at the top of the accessory, and then locate the three inner mounting tabs.

**Figure 1-1069** Locate three tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



5. Use a long-blade screwdriver to release the three inner mounting tabs (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-1070** Remove the right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



## Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

### Remove the following assemblies:

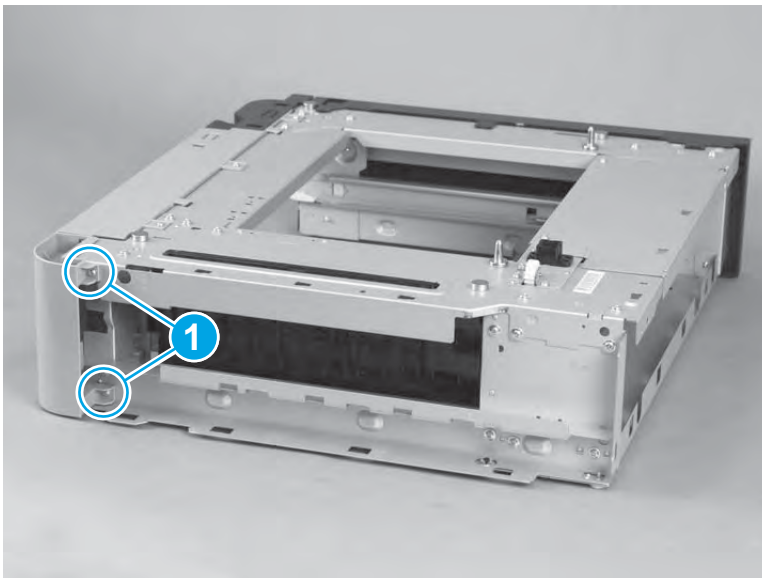
- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Rear cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 658](#).
- Right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Right cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 663](#).

 **NOTE:** Remove the Tray 3 cassette if it has not already been removed.

### Remove the right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

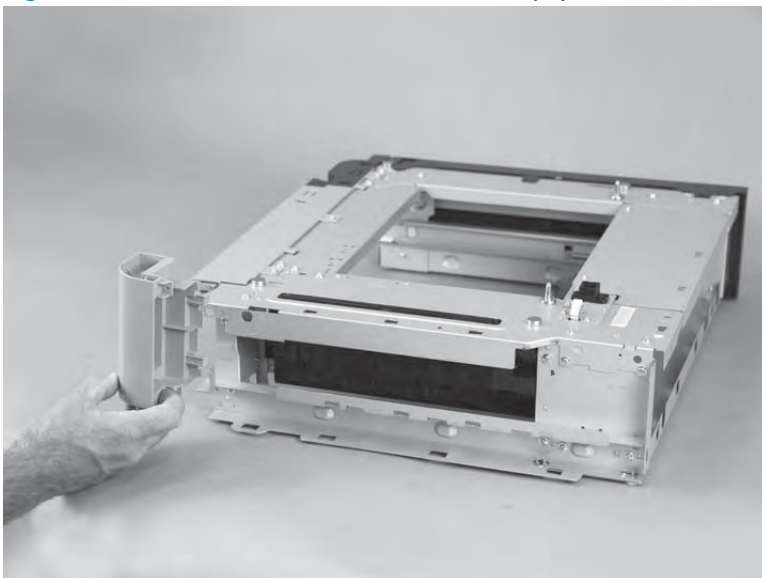
1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1071** Remove two screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



2. Remove the cover.

**Figure 1-1072** Remove the cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)





## Front-upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

### Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Rear cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 658](#).
- Right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Right cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 663](#).
- Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Right-front cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 666](#).

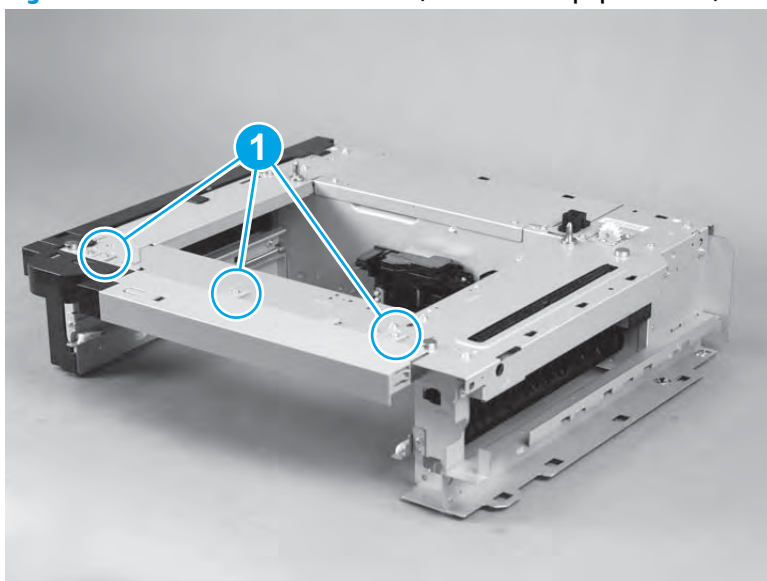


**NOTE:** Remove the Tray 3 cassette if it has not already been removed.

### Remove the front-upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

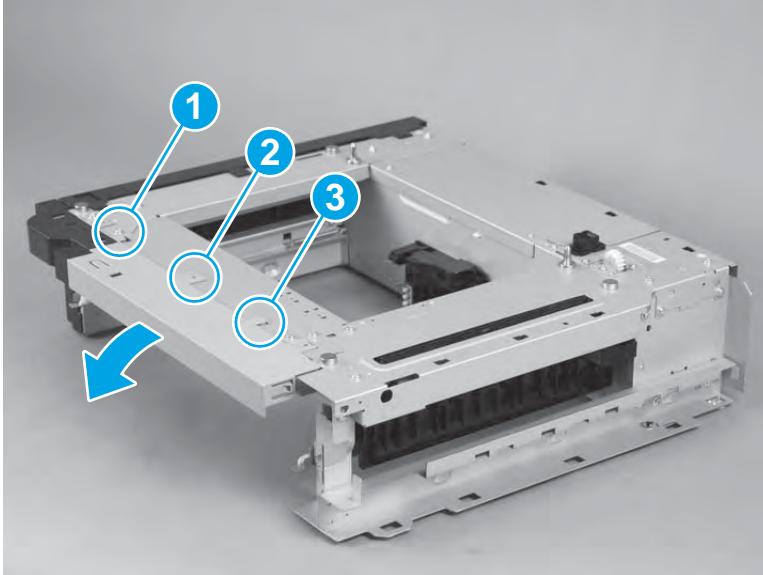
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1073** Remove three screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



2. Release three tabs in the order shown below (callout 1/2/3), and then rotate the top edge of the cover away from the chassis to remove the cover.

**Figure 1-1074** Remove the front-upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



## Pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

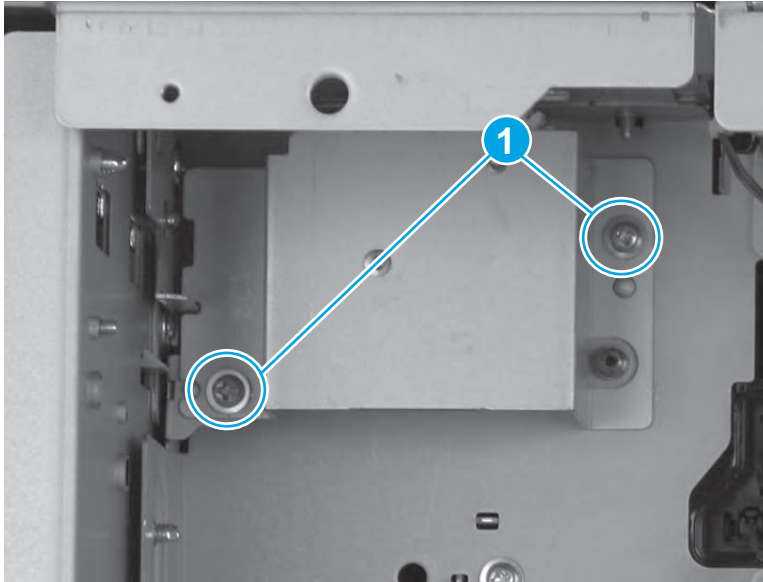
### Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Rear cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 658](#).

### Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

1. At the rear of the accessory, remove two screws (callout 1).

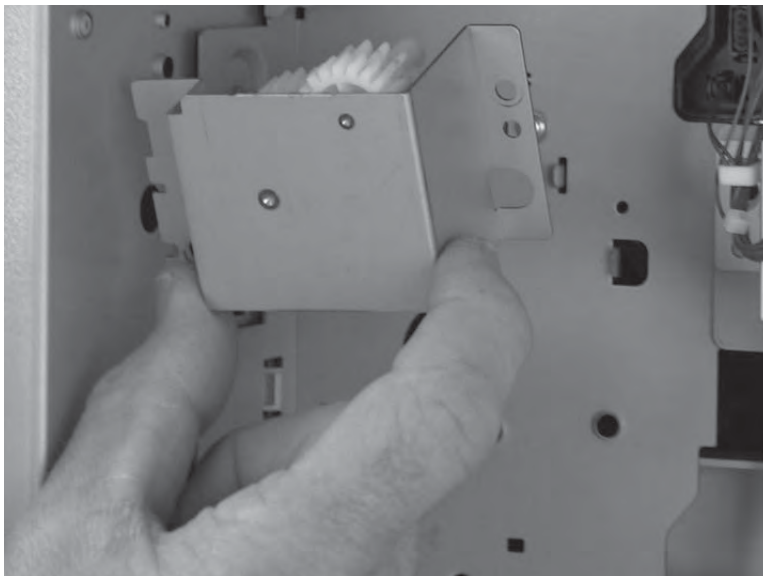
**Figure 1-1075** Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



2. Remove the pickup drive assembly.


**⚠ CAUTION:** The gears on the back side of the drive assembly are not captive. If they become dislodged, see [Install the pickup drive assembly on page 670](#) to reinstall them.

**Figure 1-1076** Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

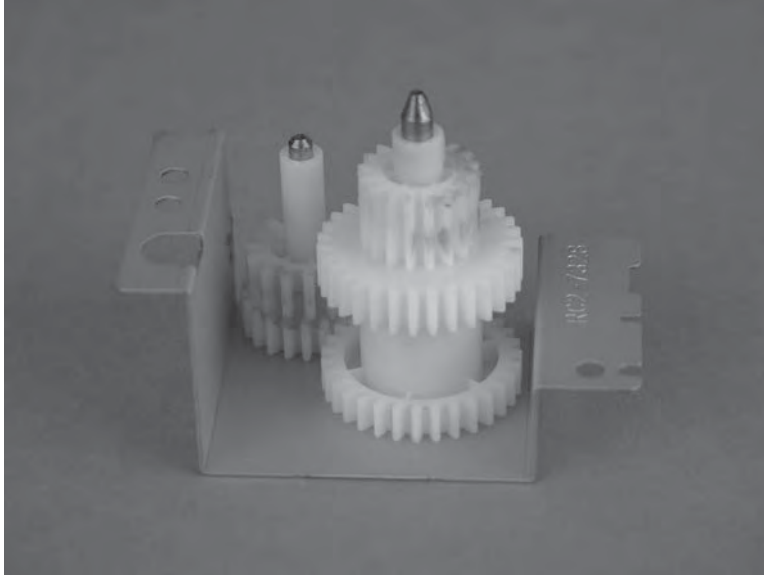


## Install the pickup drive assembly

If the gears on the drive assembly become dislodged, use the figure to reinstall them.

 **NOTE:** Do not remove the grease that is on the gears when handling them.

**Figure 1-1077** Gears on the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



## Pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

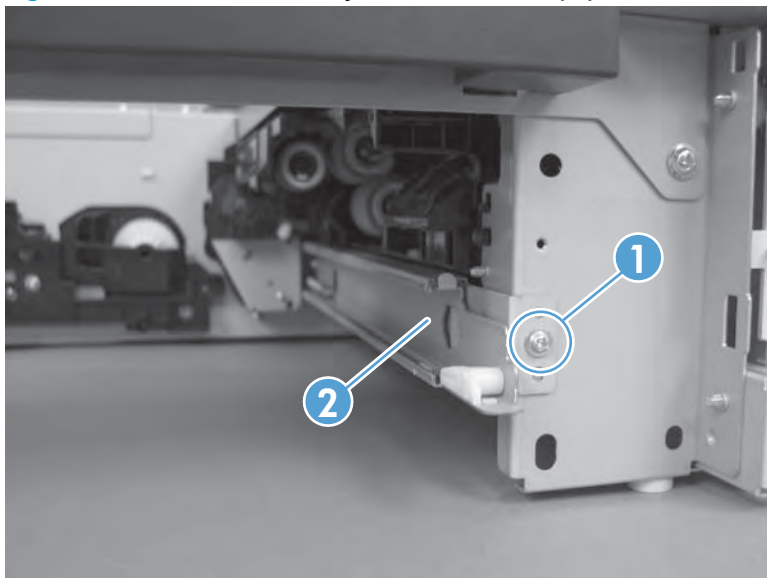
### Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Rear cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 658](#).
- Right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Right cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 663](#).
- Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Right-front cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 666](#).

### Remove the pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

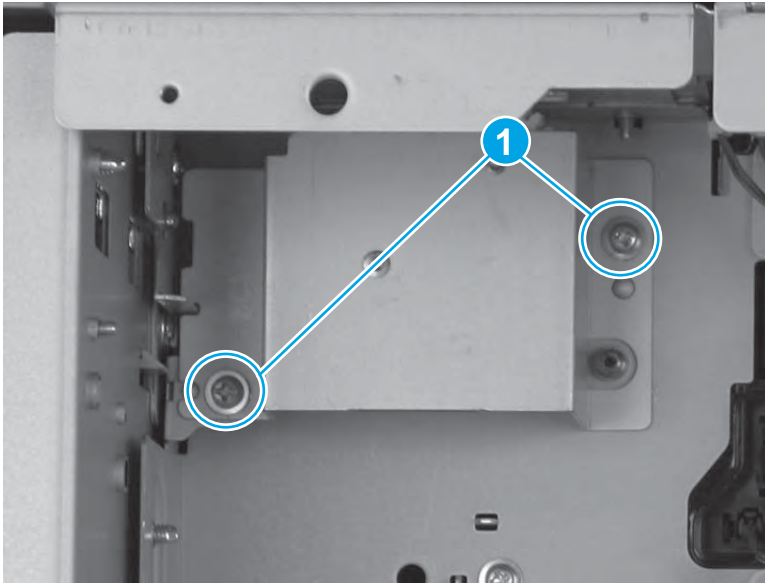
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the tray rail (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1078** Remove the tray rail (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



2. At the rear of the accessory, remove two screws (callout 1).

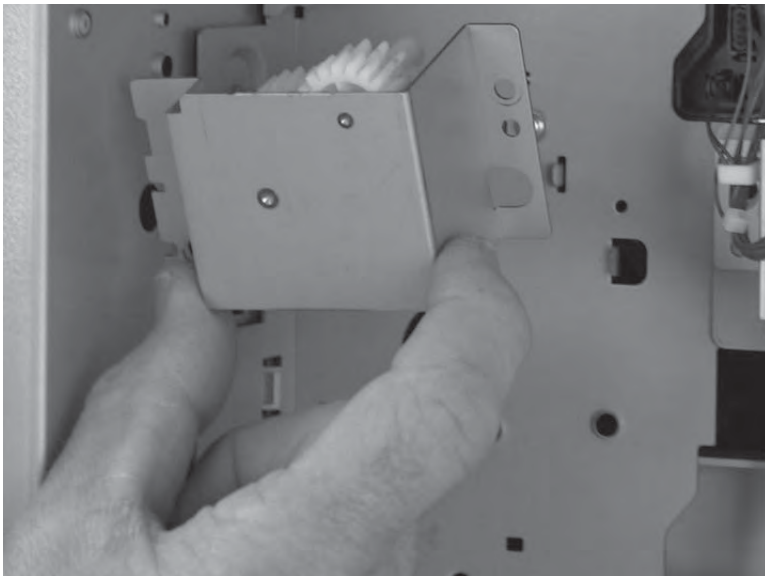
**Figure 1-1079** Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



3. Remove the pickup drive assembly.

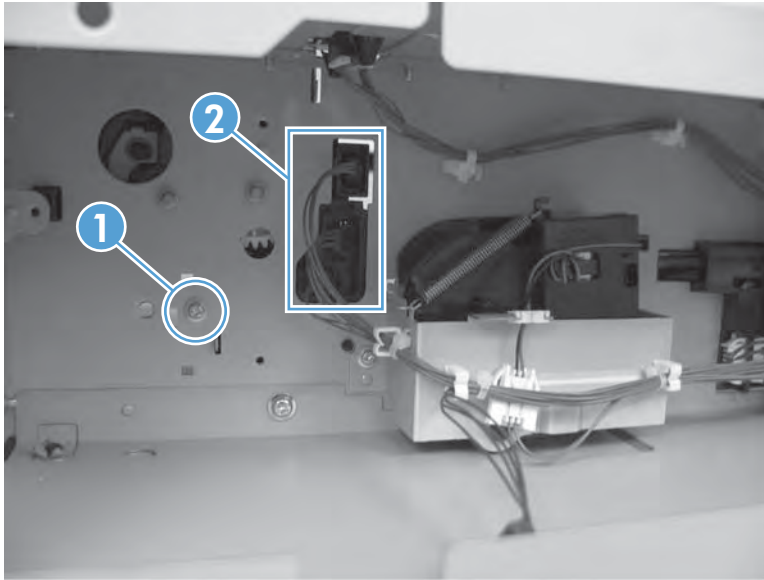
**⚠ CAUTION:** The gears on the back side of the drive assembly are not captive. If they become dislodged, see [Install the pickup assembly \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 674](#) to reinstall them.

**Figure 1-1080** Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



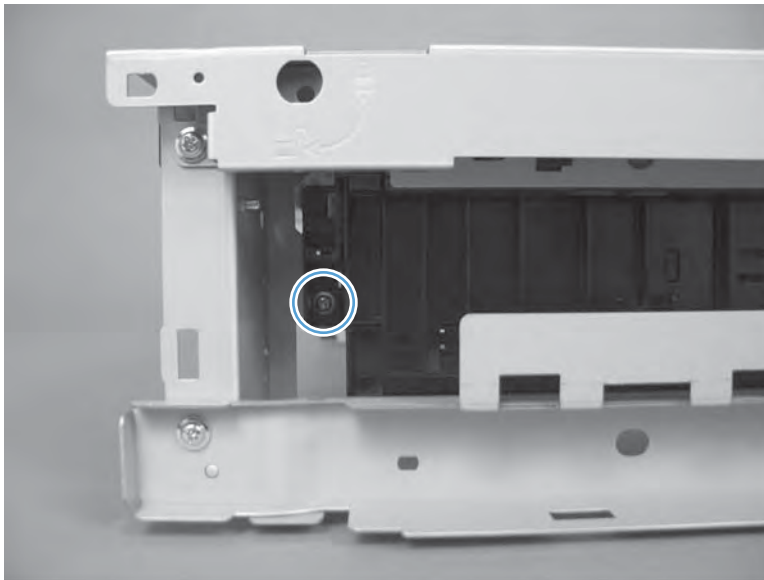
4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1081** Remove one screw and disconnect three connectors (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



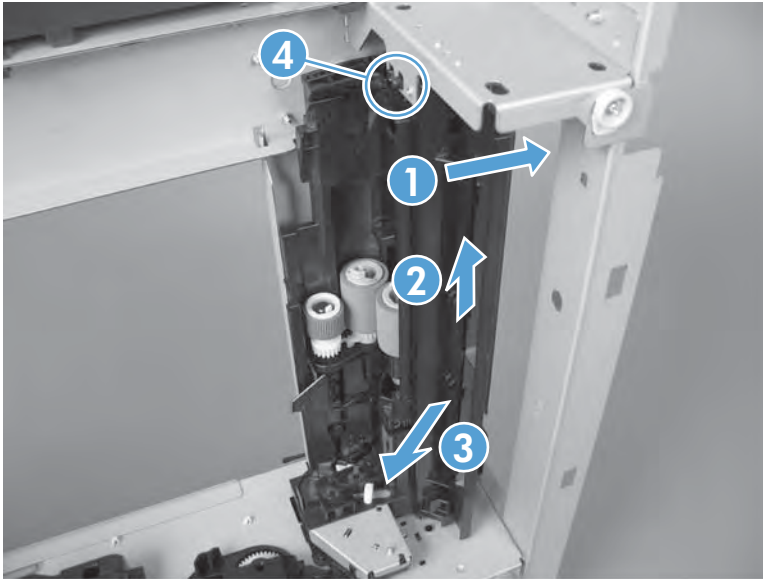
5. Remove one screw.

**Figure 1-1082** Remove one screw (1x500-sheet paper feeder)




6. Move the top of the assembly to the right (callout 1) until the post (callout 4) is free of the hole. Lift the assembly (callout 2), and then pull the bottom of the assembly (callout 3) to remove it.

**Figure 1-1083** Remove the pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

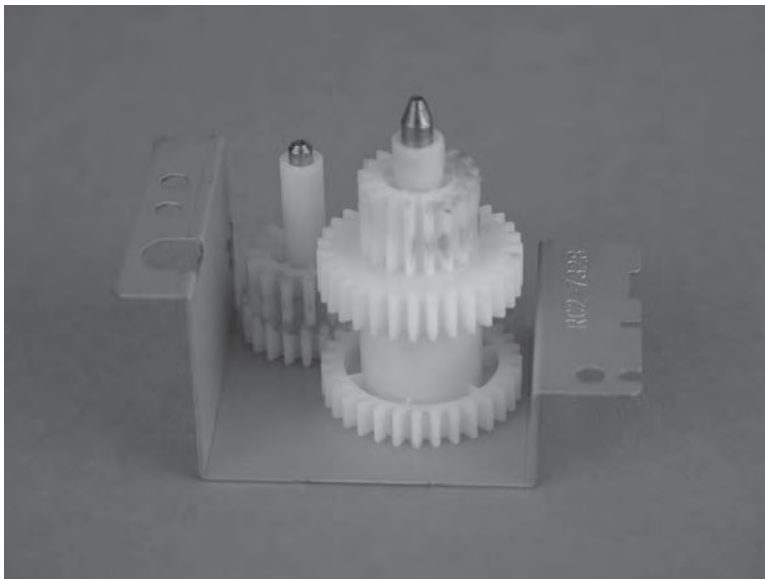


#### Install the pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

If the gears on the drive assembly become dislodged, use the figure to reinstall them.

 **NOTE:** Do not remove the grease that is on the gears when handling them.

**Figure 1-1084** Gears on the paper drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)





## Lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

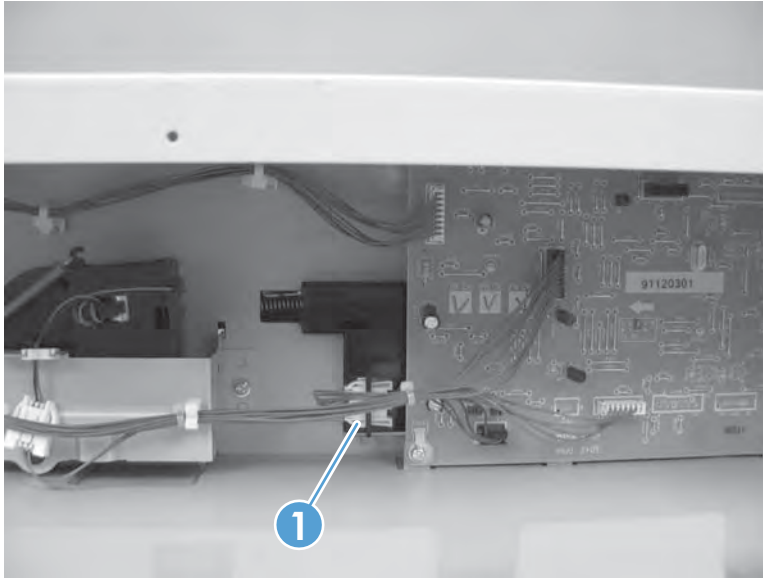
### Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Rear cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 658](#).


### Remove the lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

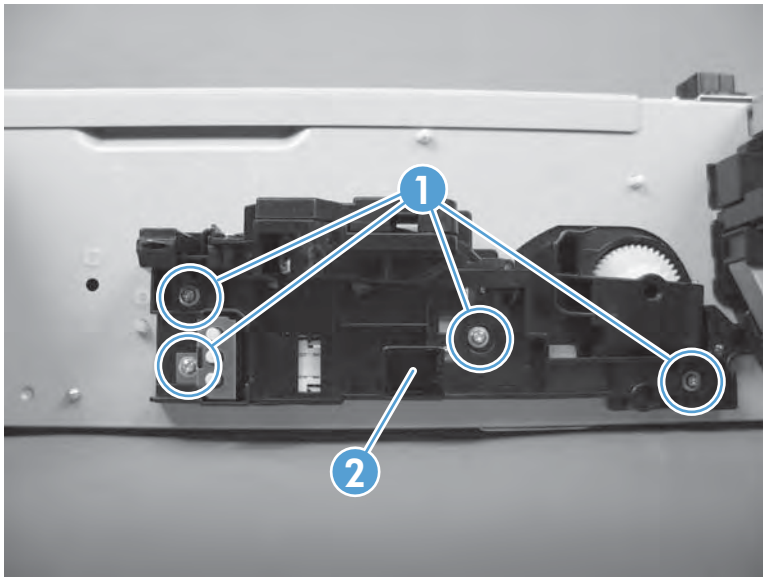
**Figure 1-1085** Disconnect one connector (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the lifter assembly (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** There is a spring behind the lifter assembly that is not captive. Do not lose the spring when the assembly is removed. make sure that the spring is correctly positioned when the assembly is reinstalled.

**Figure 1-1086** Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



## Lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

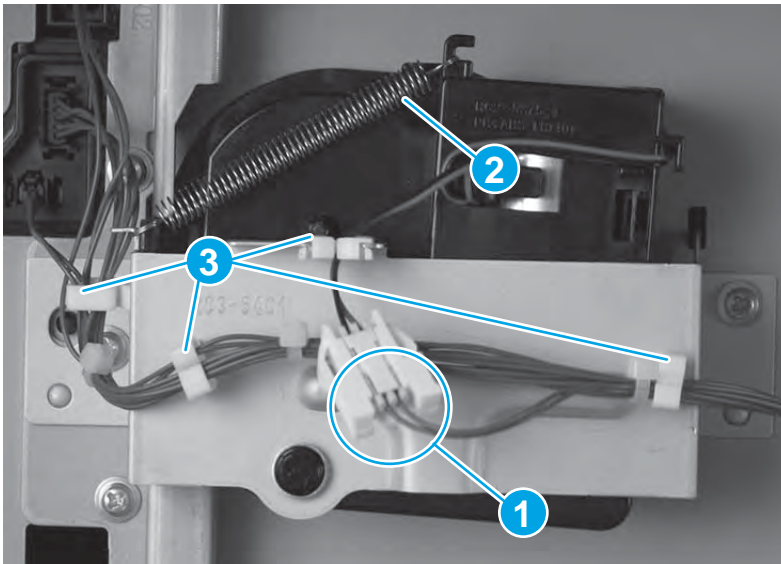
### Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Rear cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 658](#).

### Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

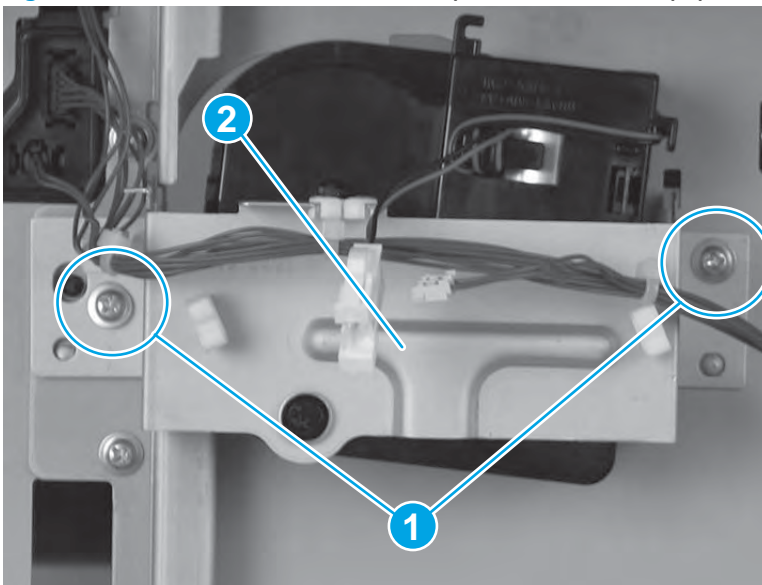
1. At the rear of the accessory, disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one spring (callout 2), and then release the wire harnesses from the guides (callout 3).

**Figure 1-1087** Disconnect one connector and remove one spring (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



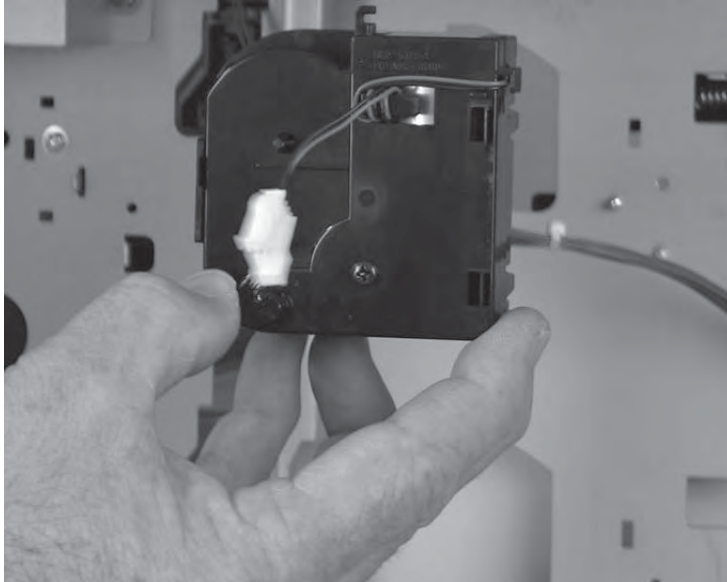
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal plate (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1088** Remove the sheet-metal plate (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



3. Remove the lifter assembly.

**Figure 1-1089** Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



## Controller printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

### Remove the following assemblies:

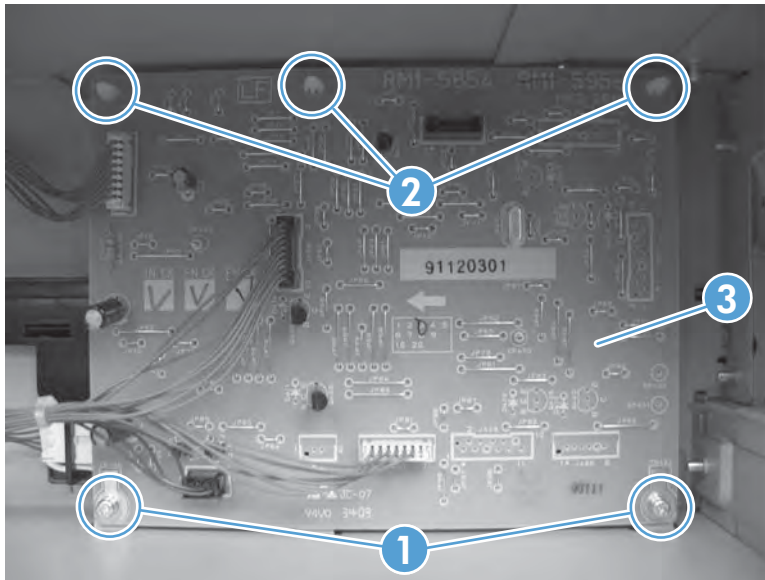
- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Rear cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 658](#).

### Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder)


**CAUTION:** ESD-sensitive part.

Disconnect all connectors, remove two screws (callout 1), use a pair of needle nose pliers to release three standoffs (callout 2), and then remove the PCA (callout 3).

**Figure 1-1090** Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



## 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet

 **NOTE:** HP recommends removing the accessory from the product before servicing it.

Some of the figures in this section might look slightly different than the M630 accessory. However, the procedures are correct for this product.

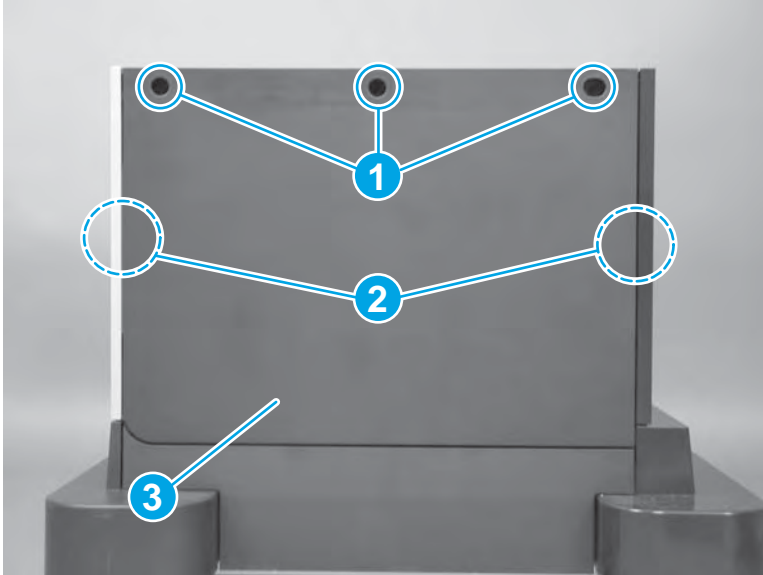
- [Rear and rear lower cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Stock box door \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Stock box and rails \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Left cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Front upper cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Right-front cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Right door \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Right center cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Right-door hinge cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Pickup drive assembly \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Paper-pickup assembly \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Lifter base assembly \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Lifter assembly \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Controller printed-circuit assembly \(PCA\) \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)

## Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Remove three screws (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the rear and rear lower cover (callout 3).

**Figure 1-1091** Remove the rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

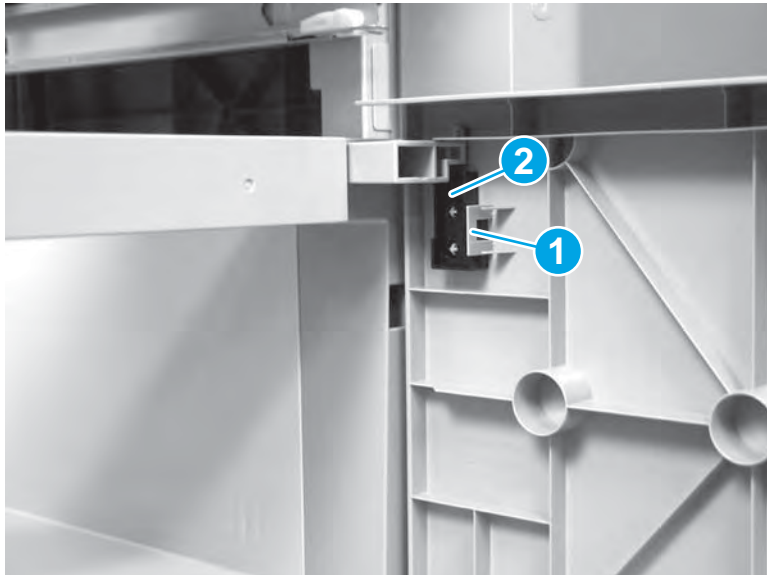


## Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

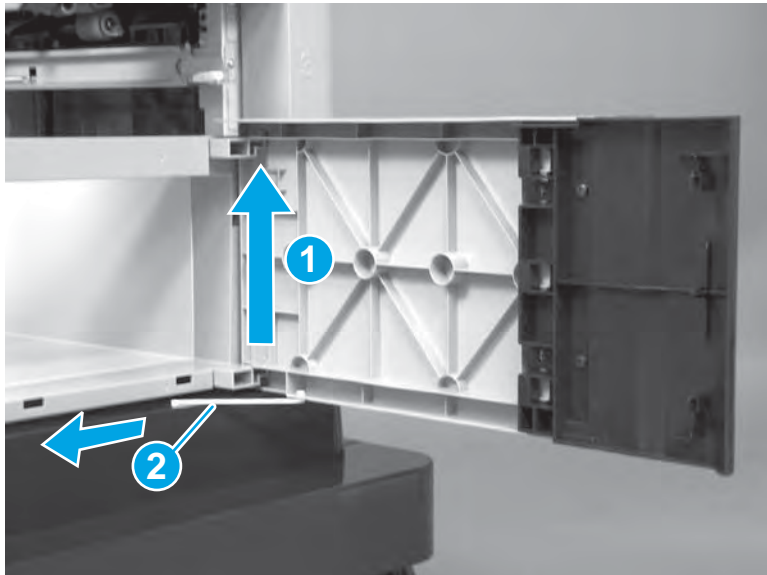
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the stopper (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1092** Remove the stopper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



2. Lift up on the door to remove it from the hinge pins (callout 1), slide it to the left to release the link arm (callout 2), and then remove it.

**Figure 1-1093** Remove the stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



## Stock box and rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

### Remove the following assemblies:

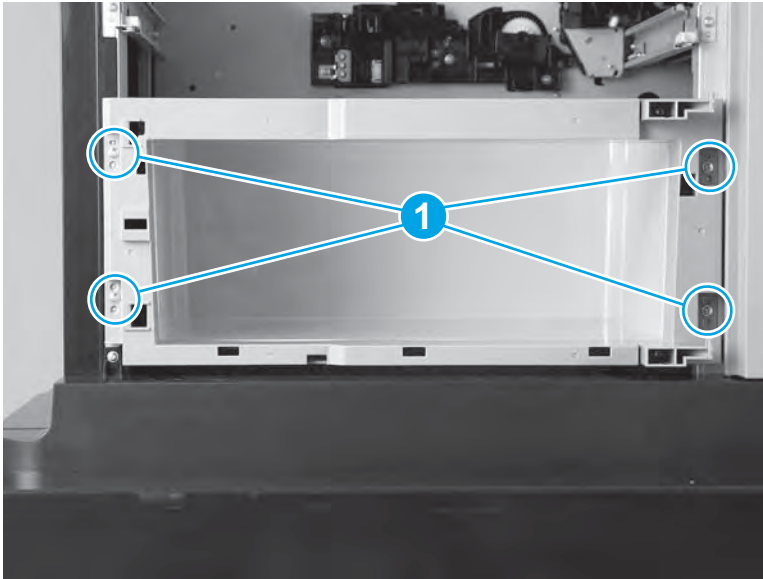
- Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Stock box door \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 681](#).

### Remove the stock box and rails

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

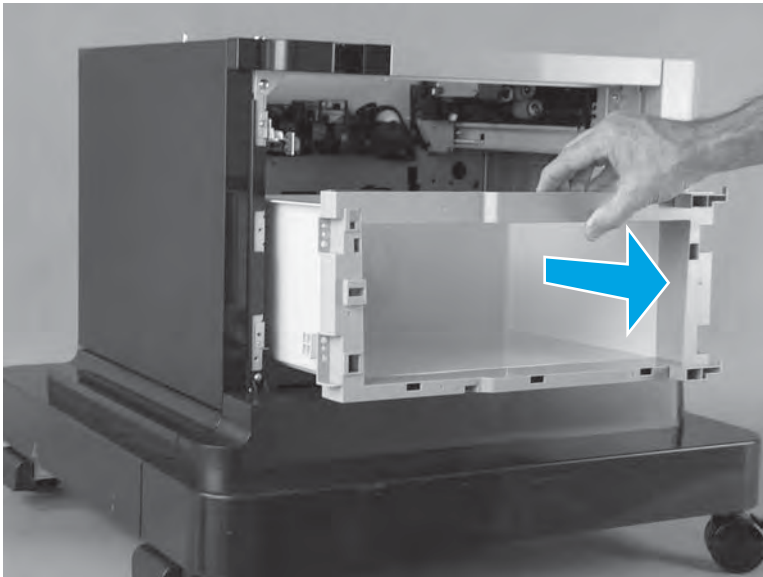
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1094** Remove four screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



2. Slide the stock box out of the accessory to remove it.

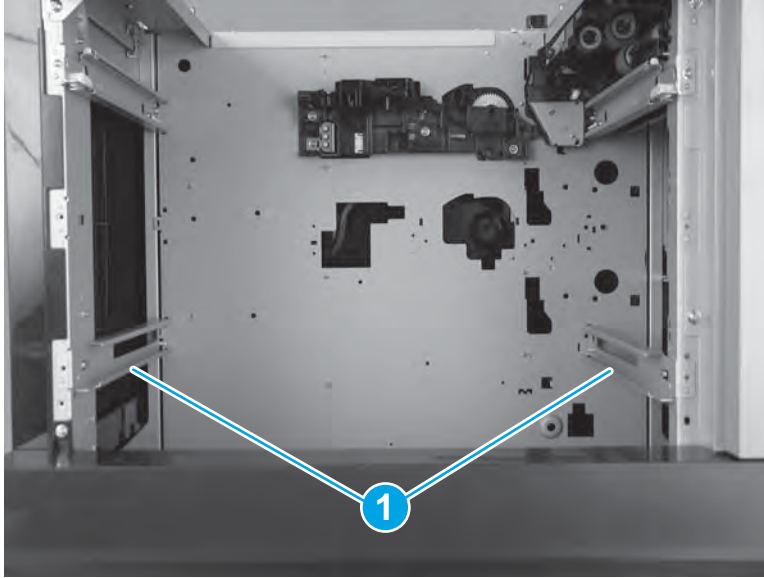
**Figure 1-1095** Remove the stock box (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)





3. Remove the stock box rails.

**Figure 1-1096** Remove the stock box rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



## Left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

### Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 680](#).
- Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Stock box door \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 681](#).
- Stock box and rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Stock box and rails \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 682](#).

---

 **NOTE:** The output accessory must be removed from the product before servicing this assembly.

---

### Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

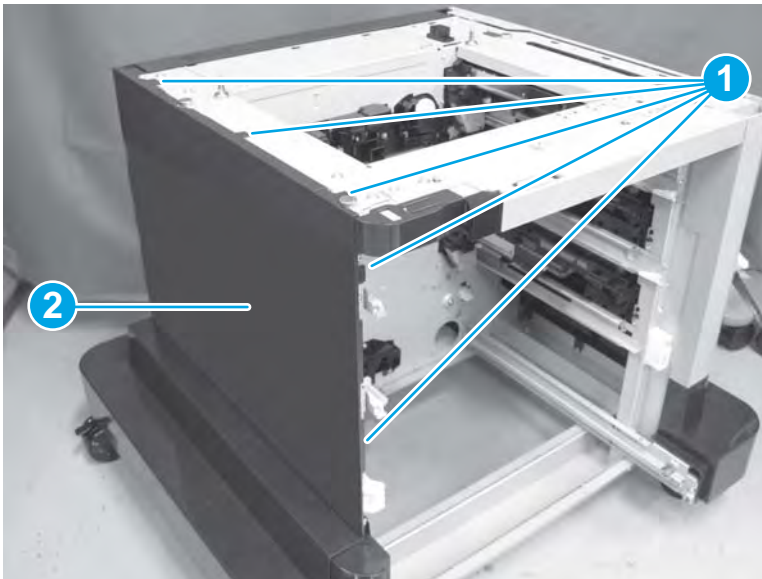
- ▲ Release five tabs (callout 1), and then remove the left cover (callout 2).

---

 **NOTE:** The figure below shows the 2,500-sheet paper feeder. However, this procedure is valid for the 1x500-sheet accessory.

---

**Figure 1-1097** Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



## Front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

### Remove the following assemblies:

- Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Stock box door \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 681](#).



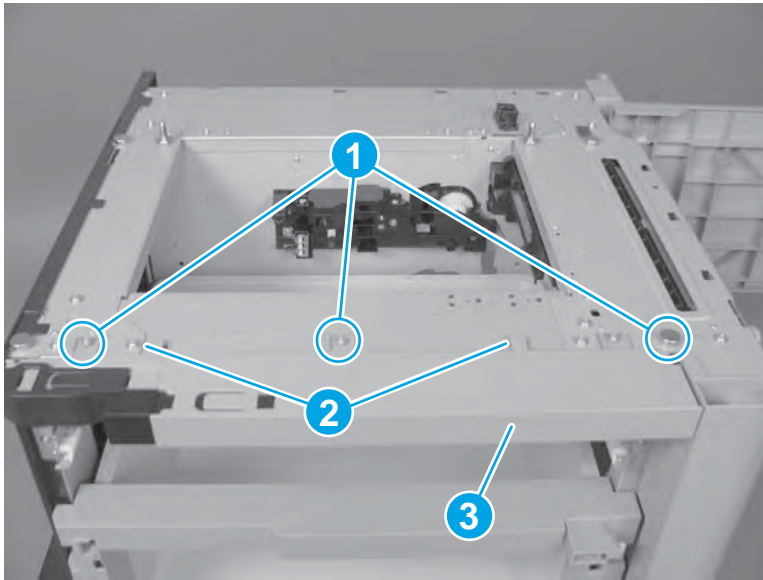
**NOTE:** The output accessory must be removed from the product before servicing this assembly.

### Remove the front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Remove three screws (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the front upper cover (callout 3).

**Figure 1-1098** Remove the front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



## Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

### Remove the following assemblies:

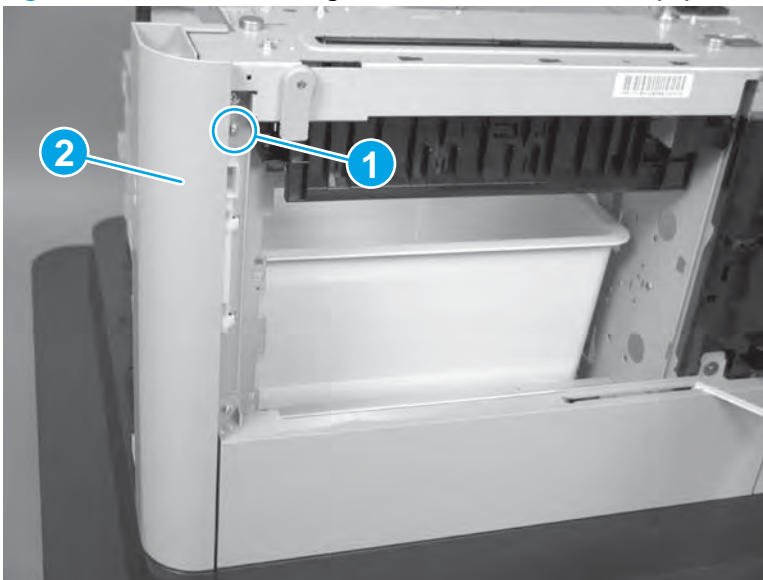
- Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Stock box door \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 681](#).
- Front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Front upper cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 685](#).

### Remove the right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Open the right door. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the right-front cover (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1099** Remove the right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

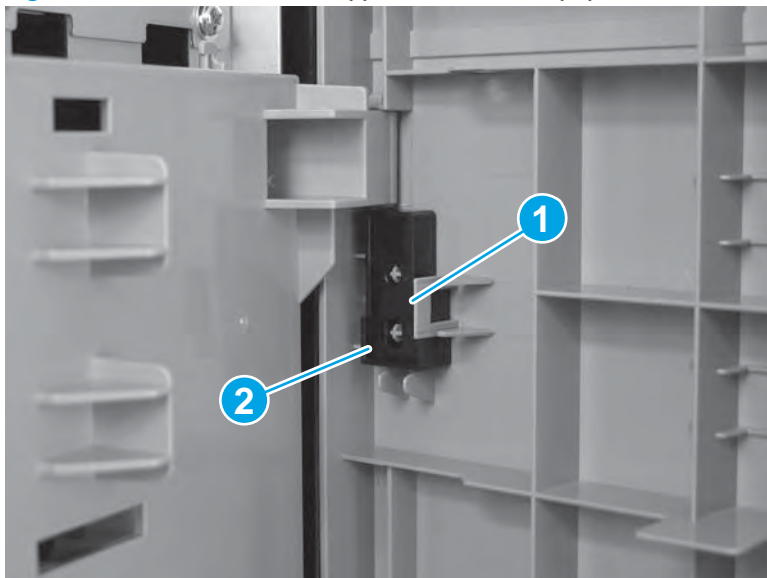


## Right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

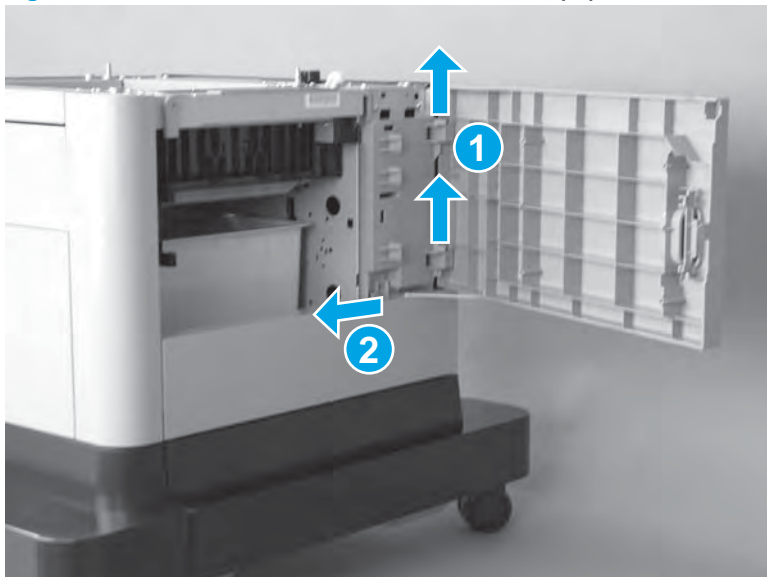
1. Open the right door, release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the stopper (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1100** Remove the stopper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



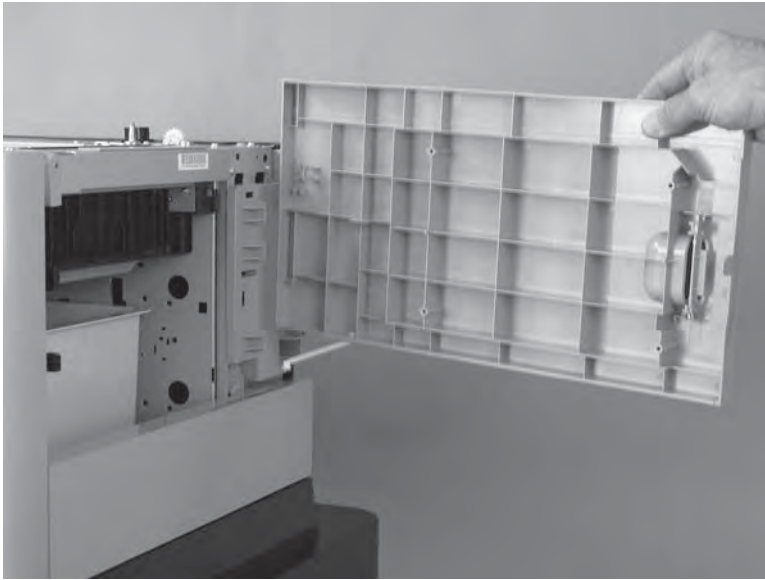
2. Lift up on the door (callout 1) to remove it from the hinge pins, and then slide it to the left to release the link arm (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1101** Release the link arm (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



3. Remove the right door.

**Figure 1-1102** Remove the right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



## Right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

### Remove the following assemblies:

- Right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Right door \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 687](#).

### Remove the right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

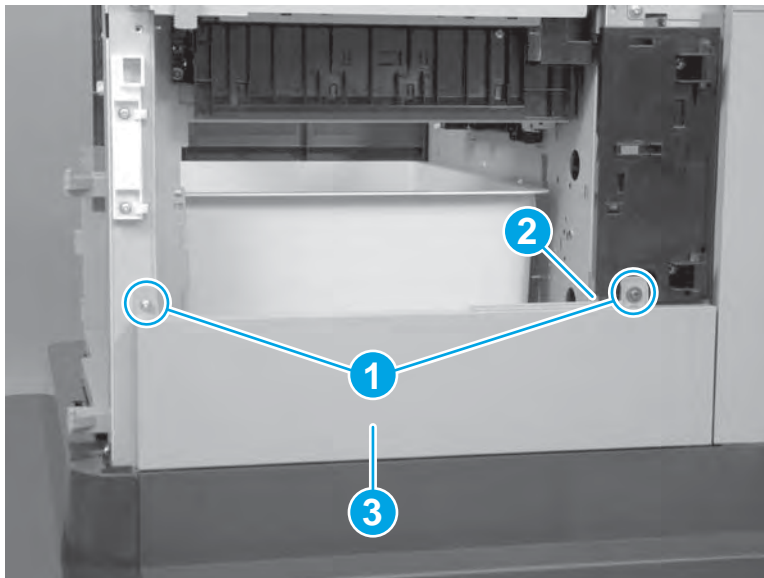
- ▲ Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the right center cover (callout 3).

---

 **Reinstallation tip:** The screw for the right side of the cover—near the tab (callout 2)—is a shoulder screw.

---

**Figure 1-1103** Remove the right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



## Right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

### Remove the following assemblies:

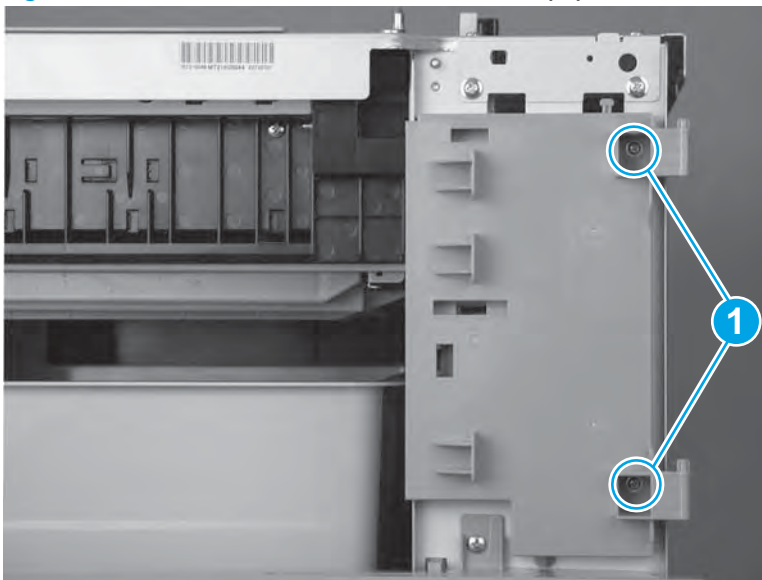
- Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 680](#).
- Right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Right door \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 687](#).

### Remove the right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

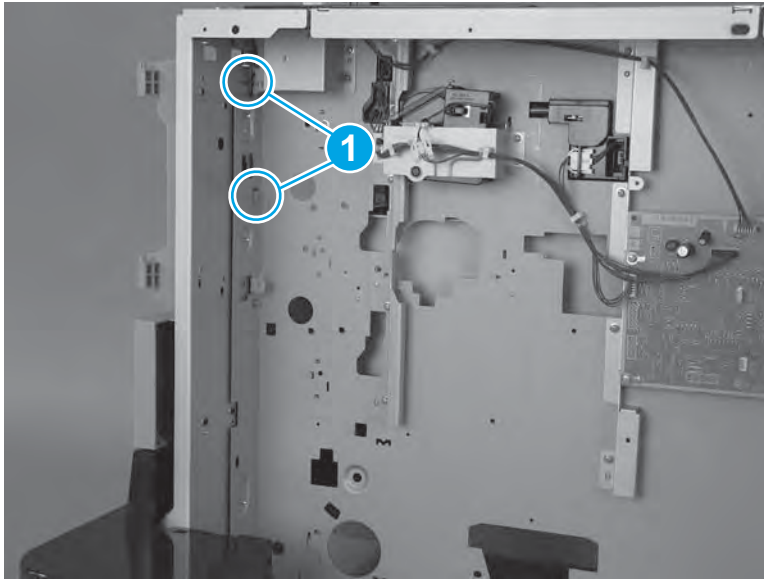
**Figure 1-1104** Remove the screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)





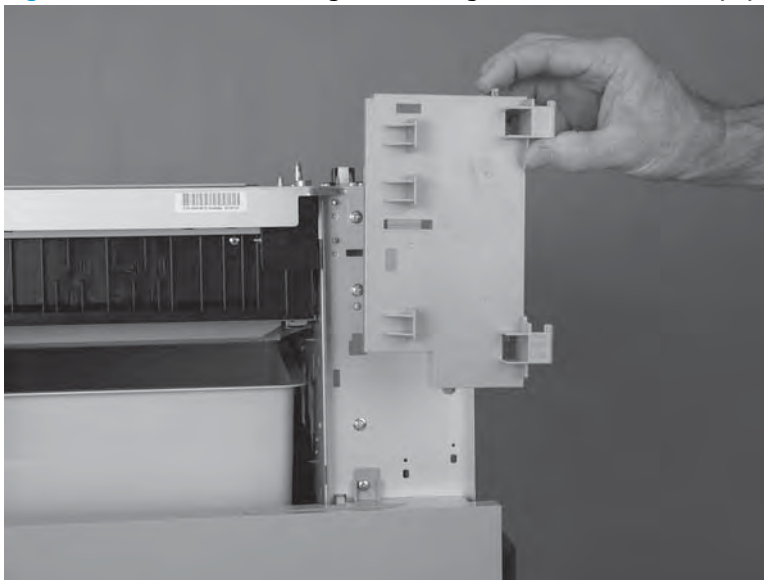
2. Release two tabs (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1105** Release two tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



3. Remove the right-door hinge cover.

**Figure 1-1106** Remove the right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



## Pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

### Remove the following assemblies:

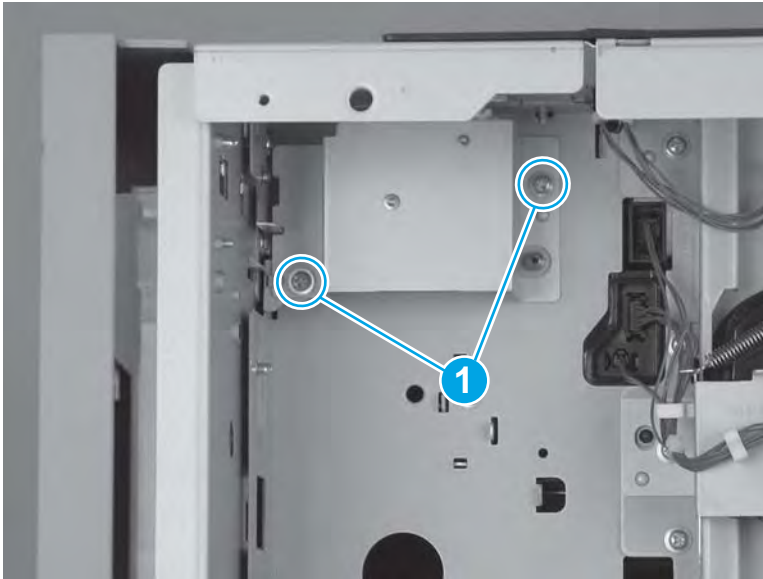
- Rear and rear lower cover. See [Rear and rear lower cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 680](#).

### Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. At the rear of the accessory, remove two screws (callout 1).

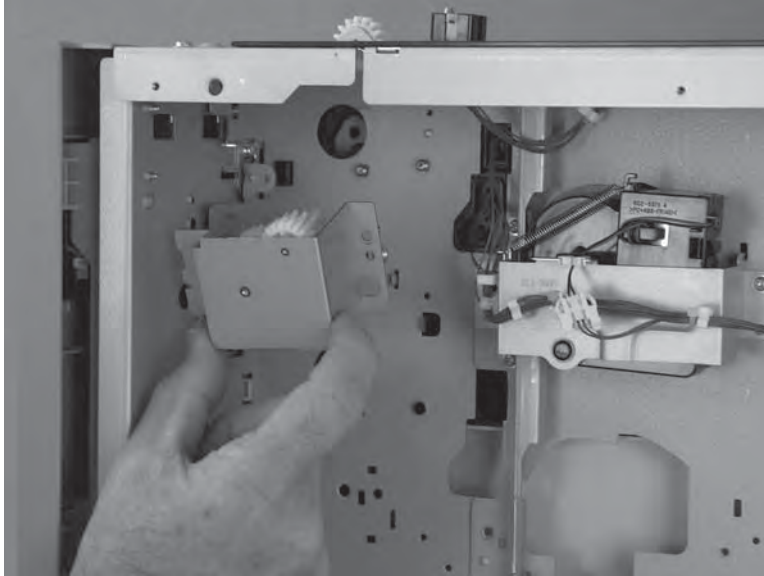
**Figure 1-1107** Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



2. Remove the pickup drive assembly.


**CAUTION:** The gears on the back side of the drive assembly are not captive. If they become dislodged, see [Install the paper drive assembly \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 694](#) to reinstall them.

**Figure 1-1108** Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

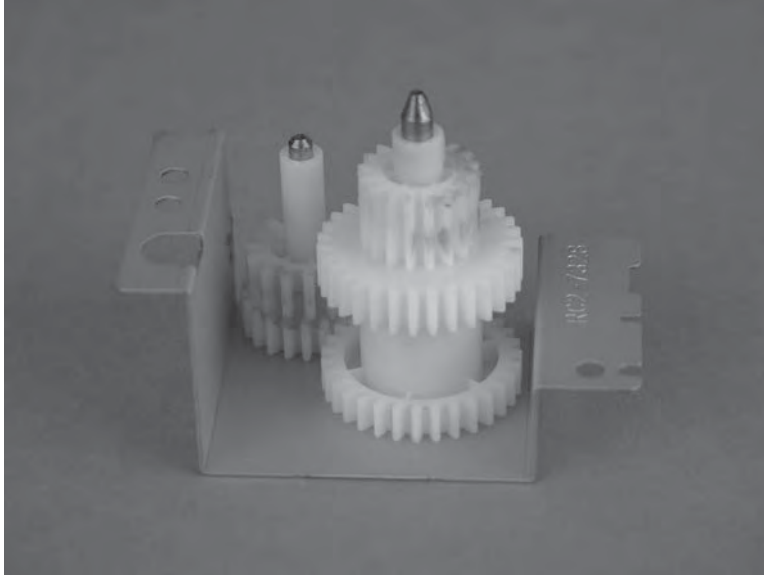


### Install the paper drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

If the gears on the drive assembly become dislodged, use the figure to reinstall them.

 **NOTE:** Do not remove the grease that is on the gears when handling them.

**Figure 1-1109** Paper drive assembly gears (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



## Paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

### Remove the following assemblies:

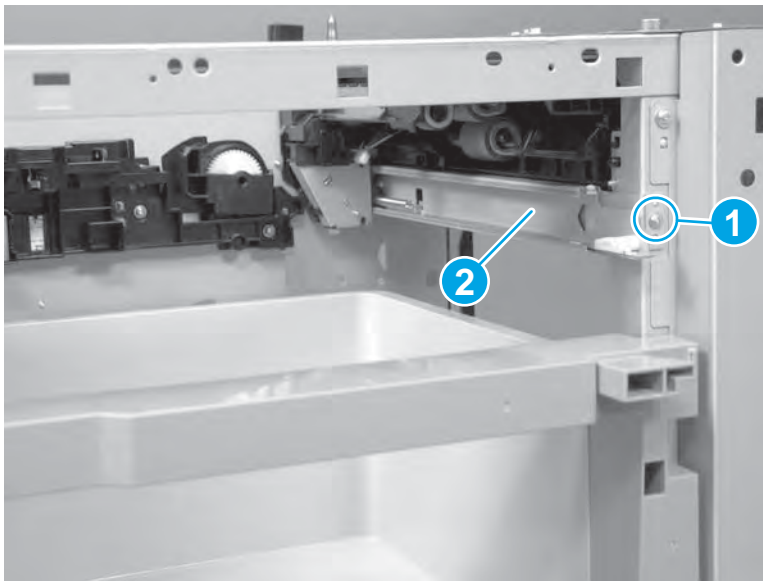
- Rear and rear lower cover. See [Rear and rear lower cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 680](#).
- Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Stock box door \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 681](#)
- Front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Front upper cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 685](#).
- Right front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Right-front cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 686](#).

### Remove the paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

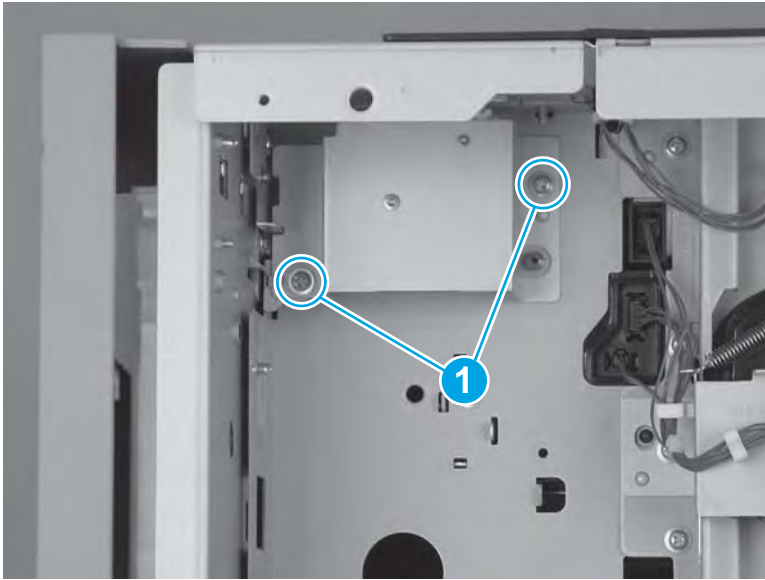
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the tray rail (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1110** Remove the tray rail (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



2. At the rear of the accessory, remove two screws (callout 1).

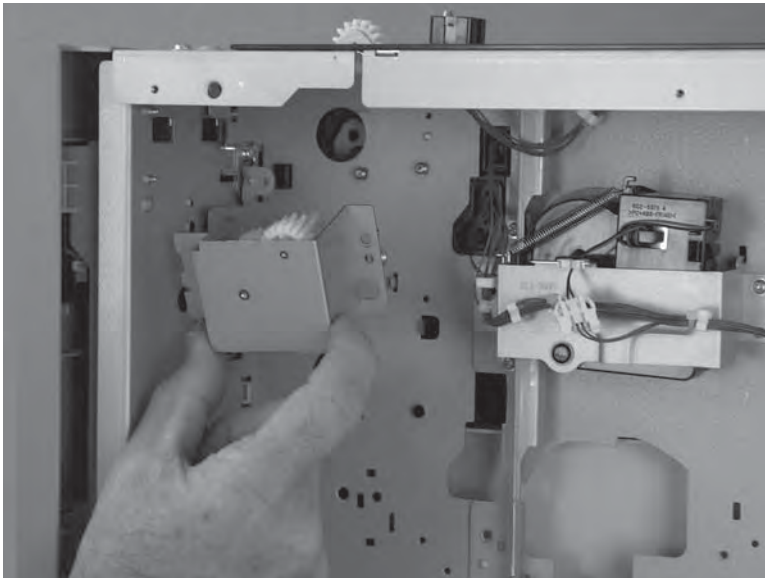
**Figure 1-1111** Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



3. Remove the pickup drive assembly.

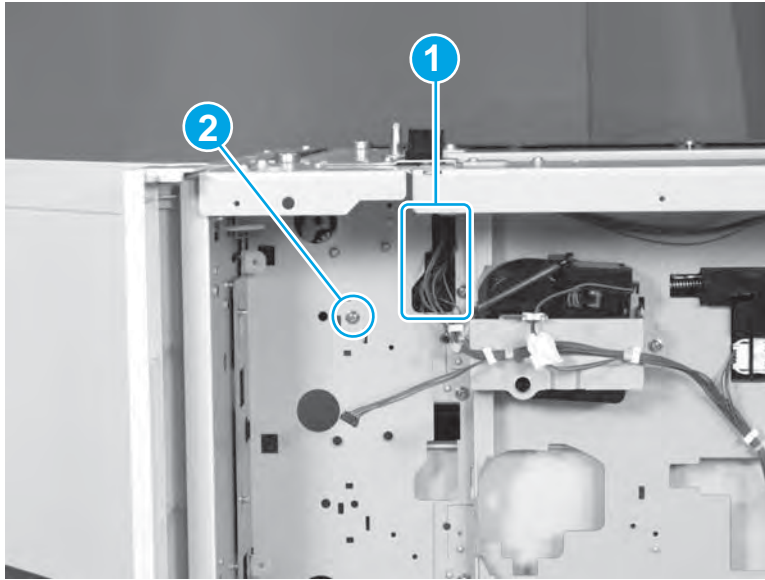
**CAUTION:** The gears on the back side of the drive assembly are not captive. If they become dislodged, see [Install the paper-pickup assembly \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 698](#) to reinstall them.

**Figure 1-1112** Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



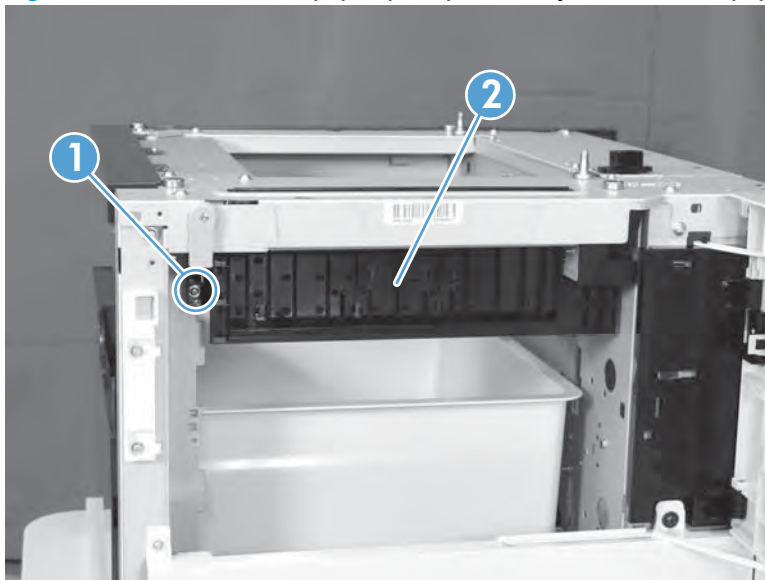
4. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1113** Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)




5. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the paper-pickup assembly (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1114** Remove the paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

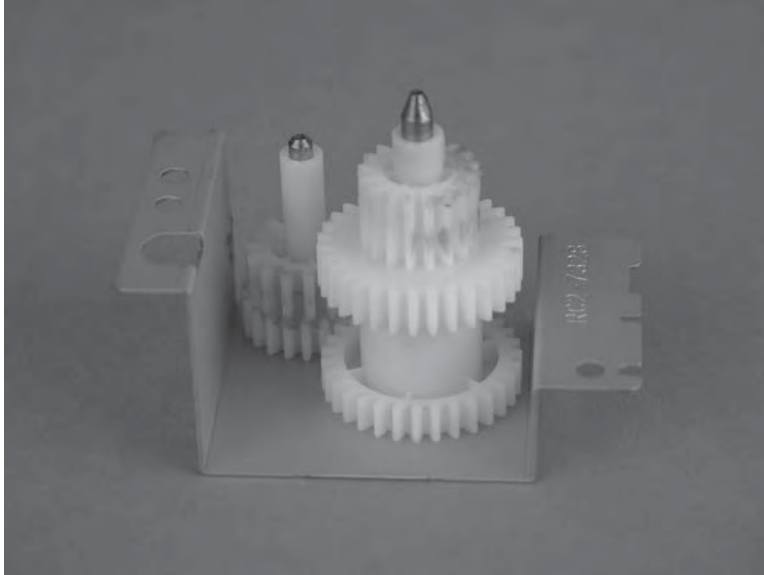


### Install the paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

If the gears on the drive assembly become dislodged, use the figure to reinstall them.

 **NOTE:** Do not remove the grease that is on the gears when handling them.

**Figure 1-1115** Gears on the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)





## Lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

### Remove the following assemblies:

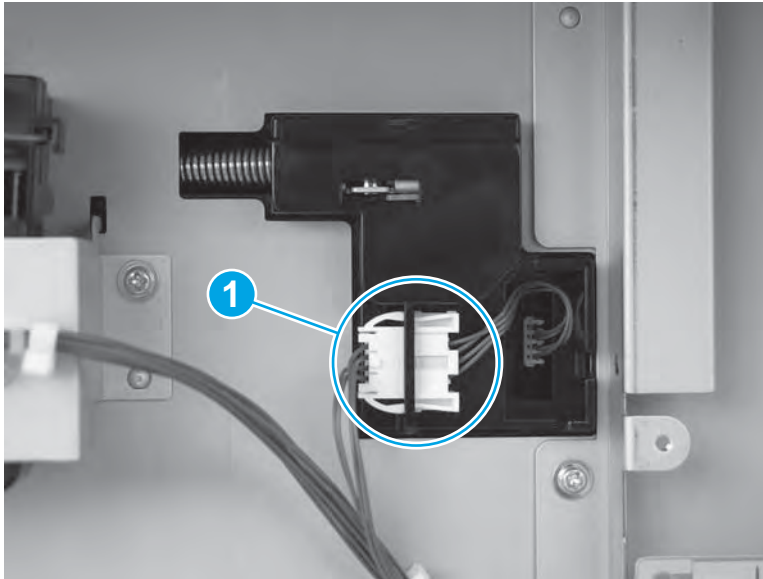
- Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 680](#).

### Remove the lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

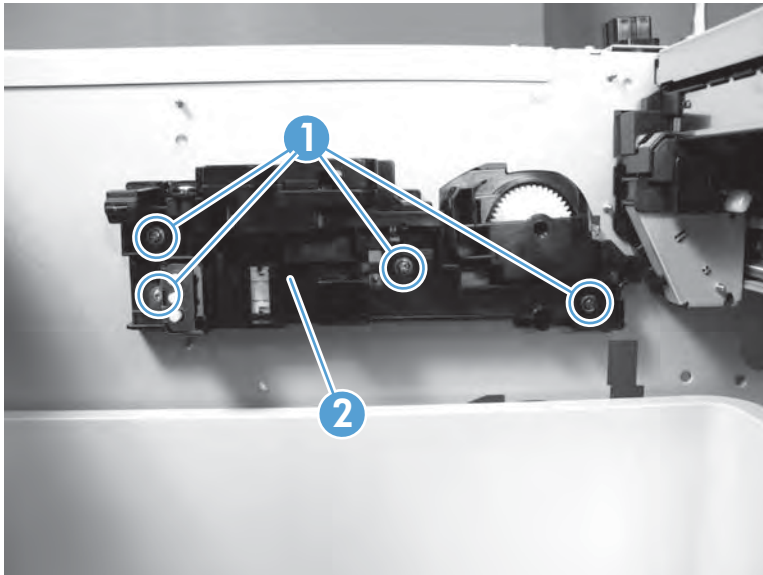
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1116** Disconnect connector (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the lifter assembly (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1117** Remove the lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



## Lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

### Remove the following assemblies:

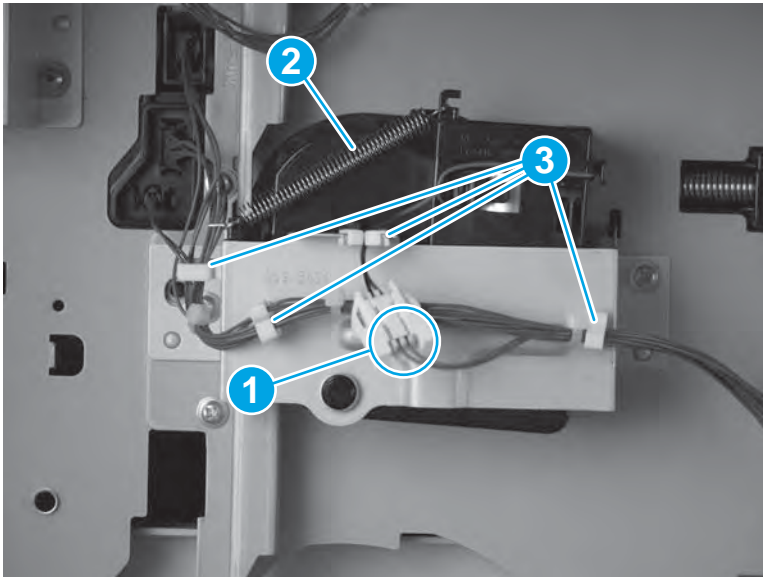
- Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#) on page 680.

### Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

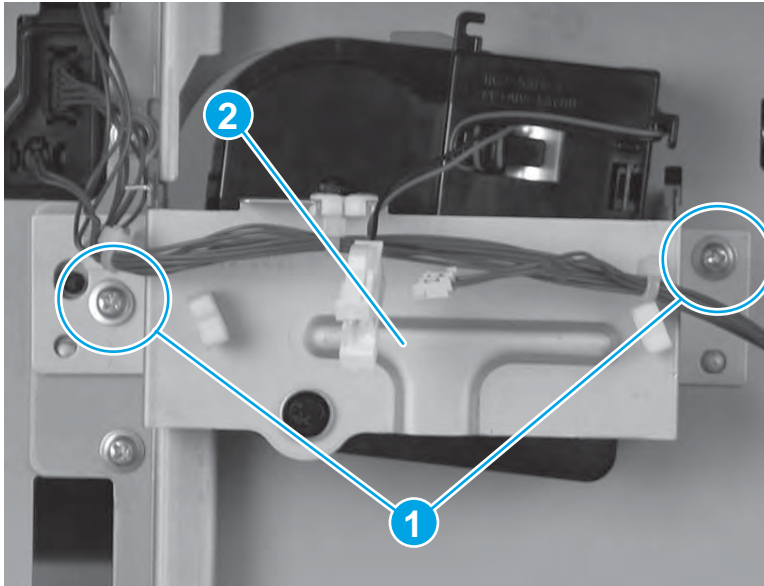
1. At the rear of the accessory, disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one spring (callout 2), and then release the wire harnesses from the guides (callout 3).

**Figure 1-1118** Disconnect one connector and remove one spring (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



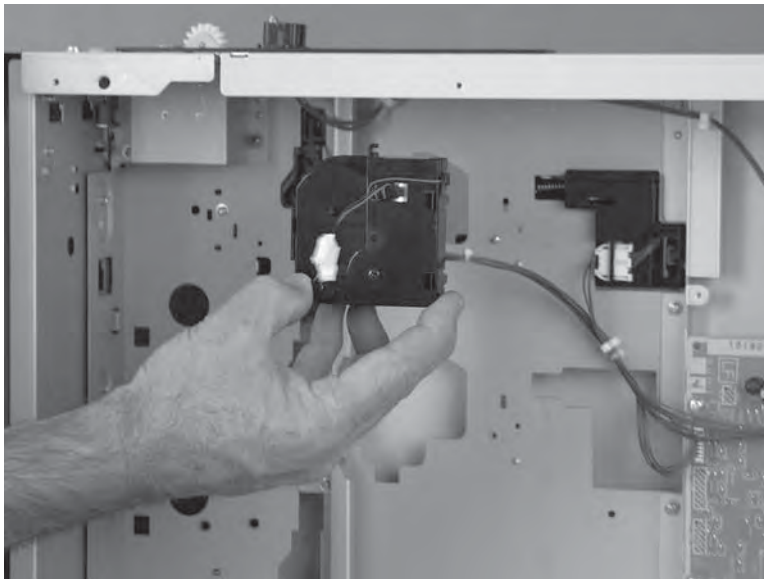
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal plate (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1119** Remove the sheet-metal plate (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



3. Remove the lifter assembly.

**Figure 1-1120** Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



## Controller printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

### Remove the following assemblies

- Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#) on page 680.

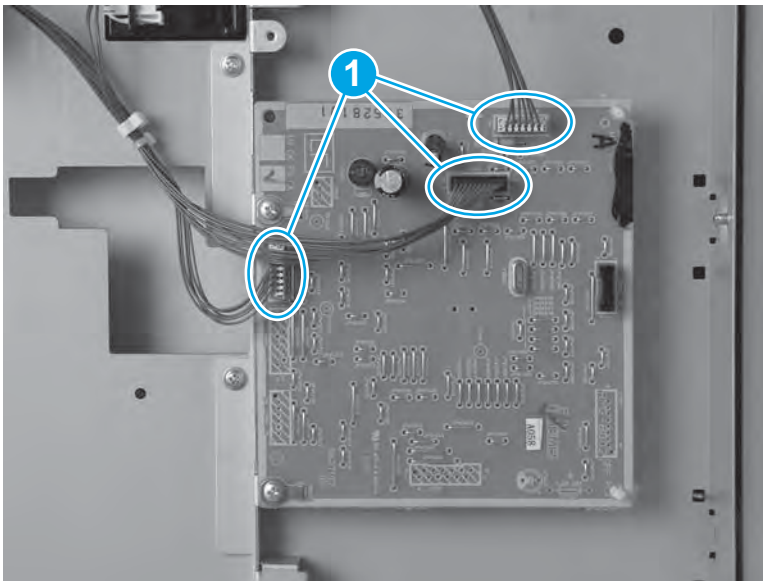
### Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

 **CAUTION:**  ESD-sensitive assembly.

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

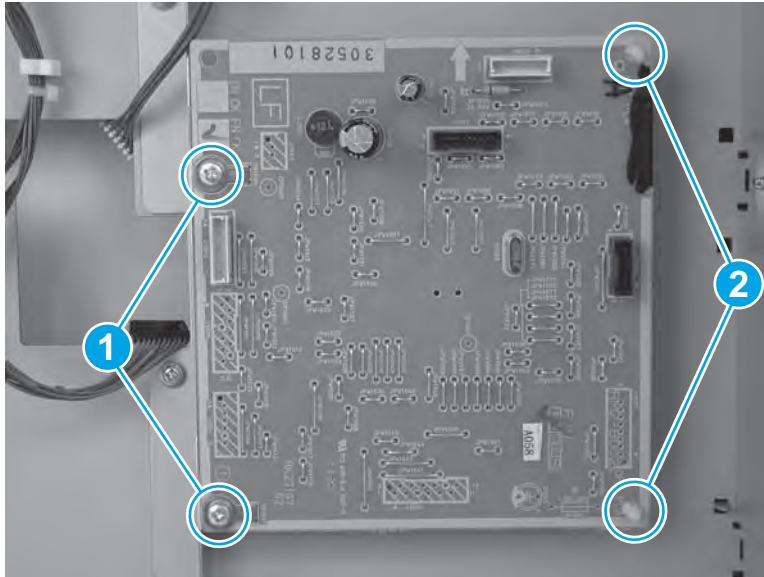
1. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1121** Disconnect three connectors (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), use a pair needle-nose pliers to release two standoffs (callout 2), and then remove the controller PCA.

**Figure 1-1122** Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



## 2,500-sheet high capacity input (HCI)



**NOTE:** HP recommends removing the accessory from the product before servicing it.

---

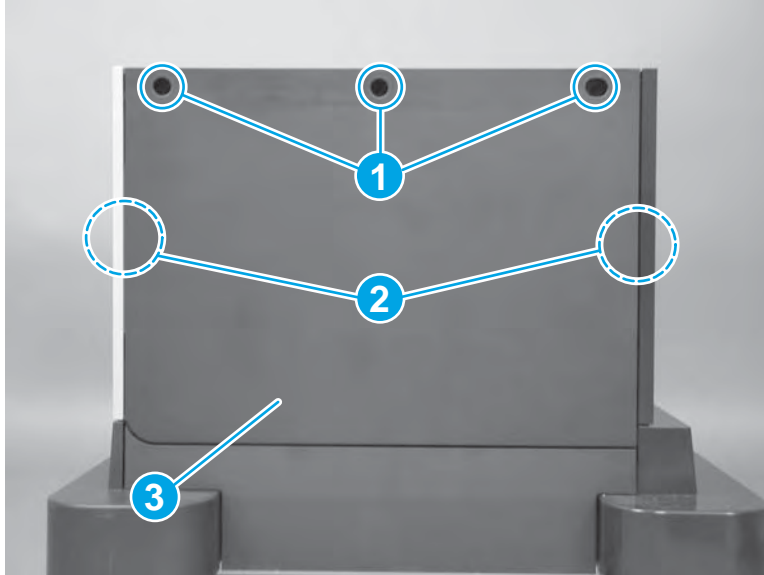
- [Rear and rear lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Right door \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Right center cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Right lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Front upper cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Right front cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Left cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Tray 3 pickup assembly \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Tray 4 pickup assembly \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Tray 5 pickup assembly \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Pickup drive assembly \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Tray 3 lifter base assembly \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Tray 4 lifter base assembly \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Tray 3 lifter assembly \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Tray 4 lifter assembly \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Tray 5 lifter drive assembly \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Controller printed-circuit assembly \(PCA\) \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)

## Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Remove three screws (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the rear and rear lower cover (callout 3).

**Figure 1-1123** Remove rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

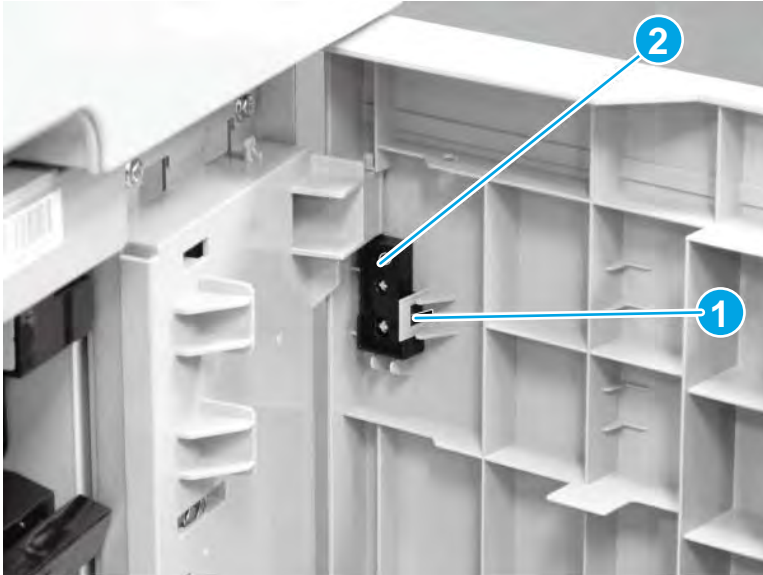


## Right door (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

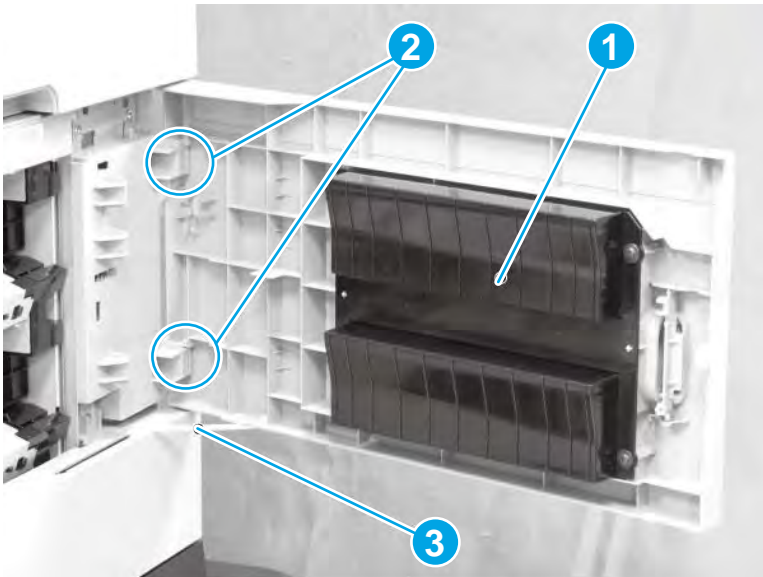
1. Open the right door, release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the stopper (callout 2)

**Figure 1-1124** Remove the stopper (HCI optional paper feeder)



2. Lift up on the door (callout 1) to remove it from the hinge pins (callout 2), slide it to the left to release the link arm (callout 3), and then remove the door.

**Figure 1-1125** Remove the right door (HCI optional paper feeder)





## Right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

### Remove the following assemblies:

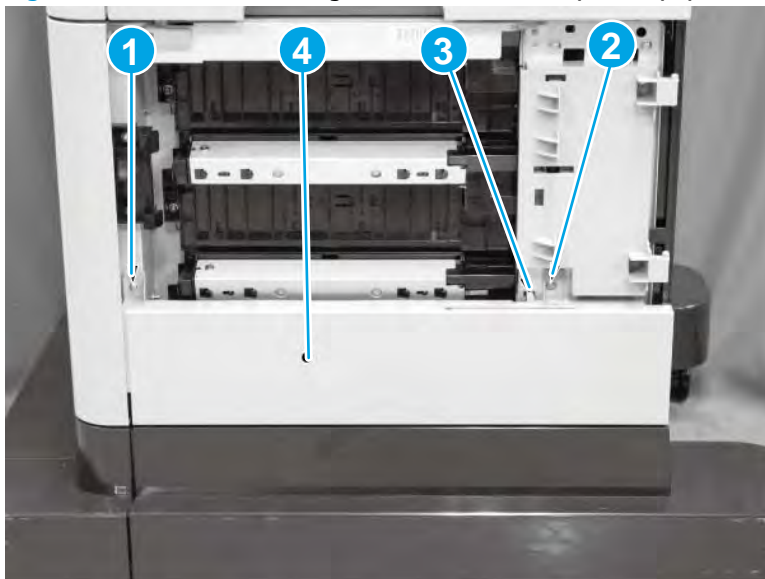
- Right door (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Right door \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 706](#).

### Remove the right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Remove one screw (callout 1), remove one shoulder screw (callout 2), release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the right cover (callout 4).

**Figure 1-1126** Remove the right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder)



## Right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

### Remove the following assemblies:

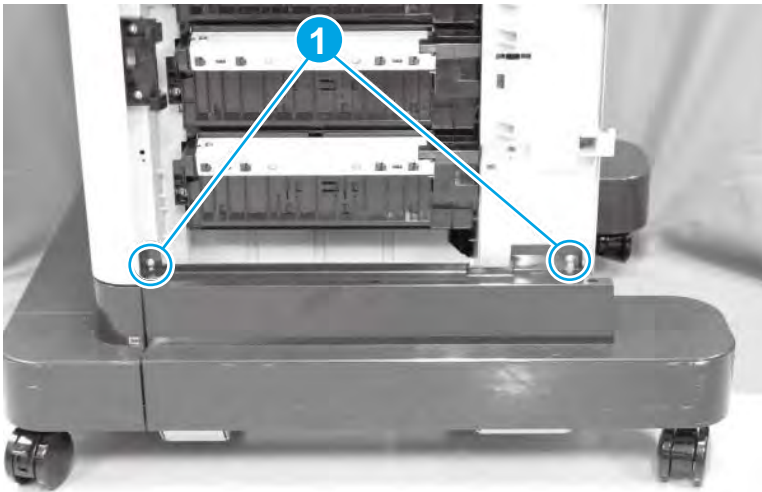
- Right door (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Right door \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 706](#).
- Right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Right center cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 707](#).

### Remove the right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

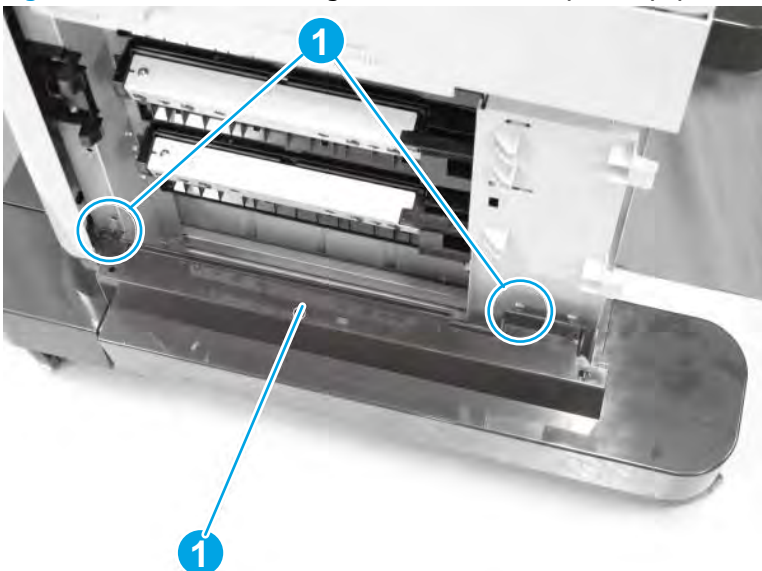
1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1127** Remove the screws (HCI optional paper feeder)



2. Release two pins (callout 1), and then remove the lower right cover (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1128** Remove the right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

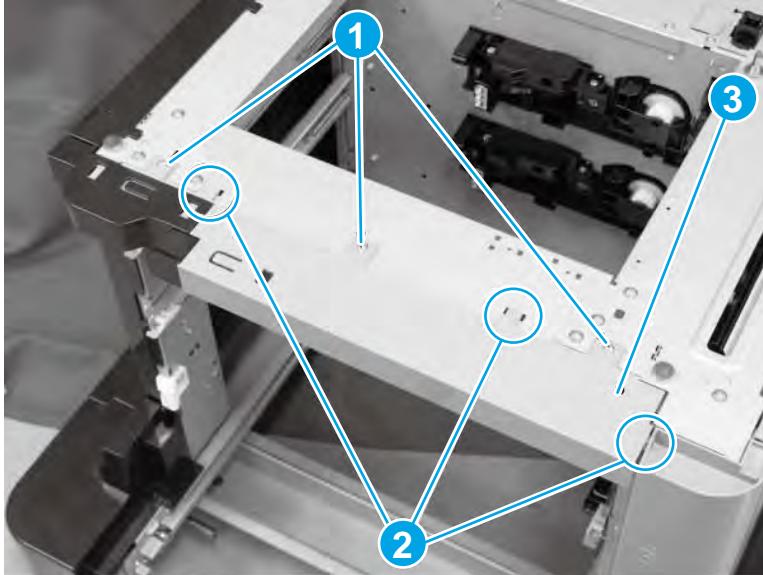


## Front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Remove three screws (callout 1), release three tabs (callout 2), and then remove the front upper cover (callout 3).

**Figure 1-1129** Remove the front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder)



## Right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

### Remove the following assemblies:

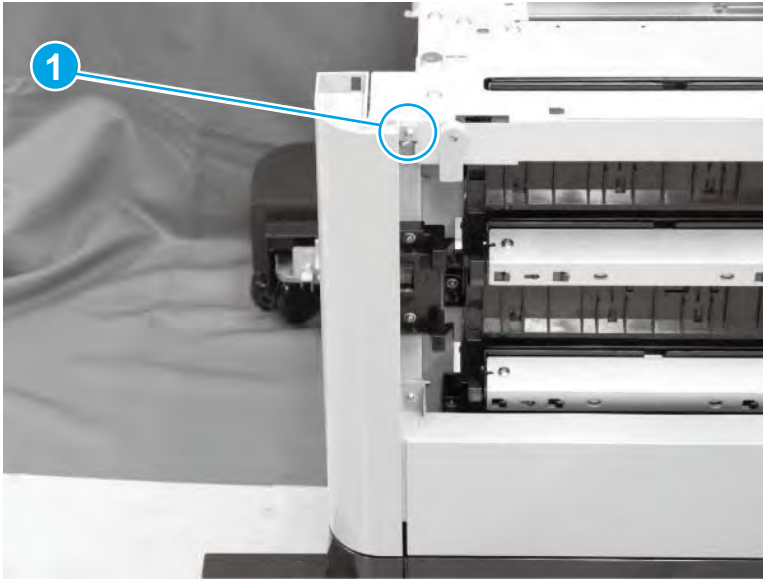
- Front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Front upper cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#) on page 709.

### Remove the right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

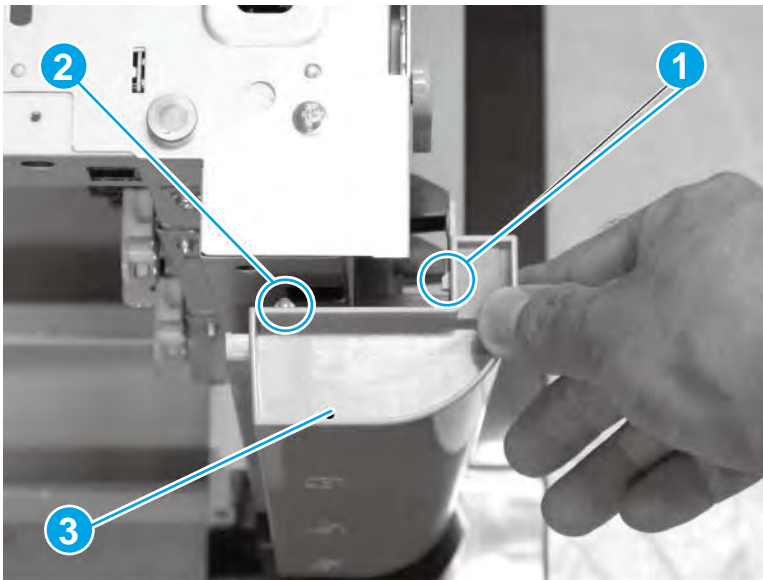
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1130** Remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder)



2. Release one tab (callout 1), release one pin (callout 2), and then pull up to remove the right front cover (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1131** Remove the right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

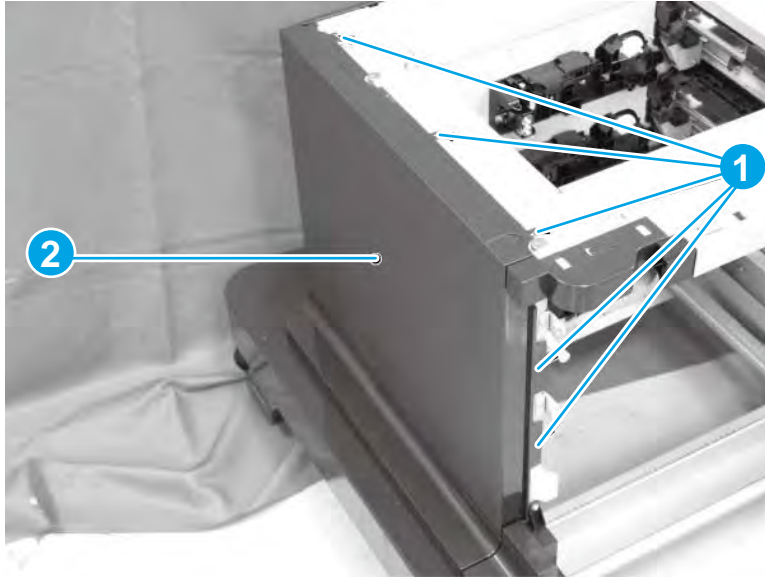


## Left cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Release five tabs (callout 1), and then remove the left cover (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1132** Remove the left cover (HCI optional paper feeder)



## Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

### Remove the following assemblies:

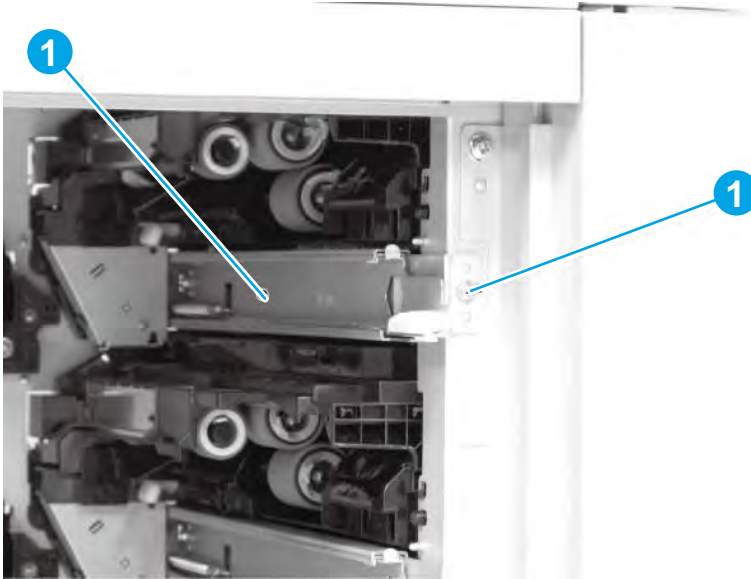
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 705](#).

### Remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the tray rail (callout 2).

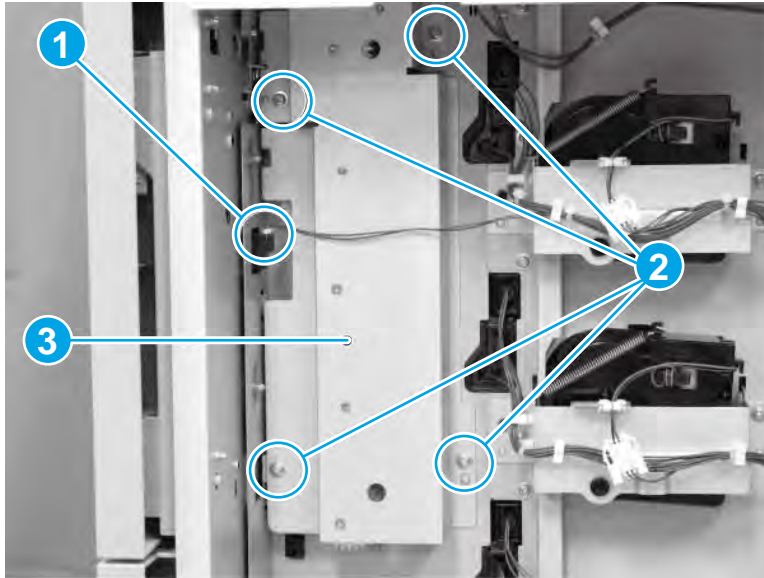
**Figure 1-1133** Remove the tray rail (HCI optional paper feeder)



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the pickup drive assembly (callout 3).

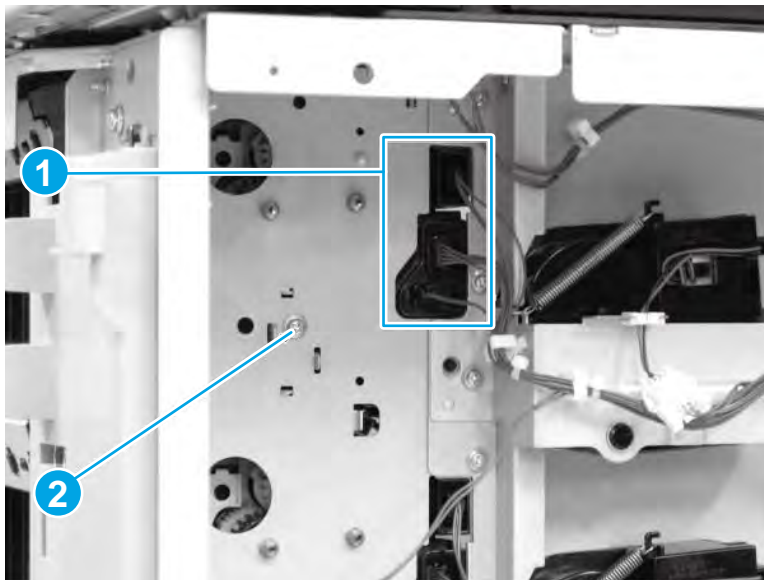
**CAUTION:** The gears on the back side of the drive assembly are not captive. If they become dislodged, see [Install the Tray 3 pickup assembly \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 715](#) to reinstall them.

**Figure 1-1134** Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



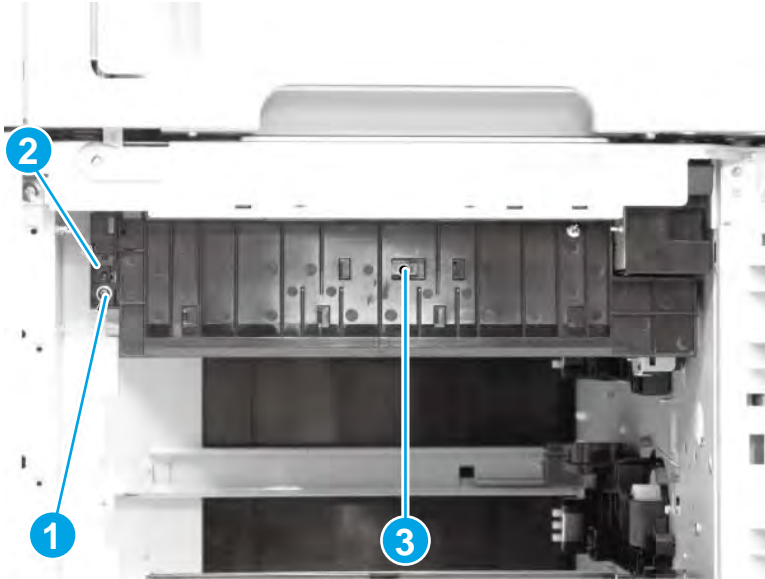
3. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1135** Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder)



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly (callout 3).


**Figure 1-1136** Remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



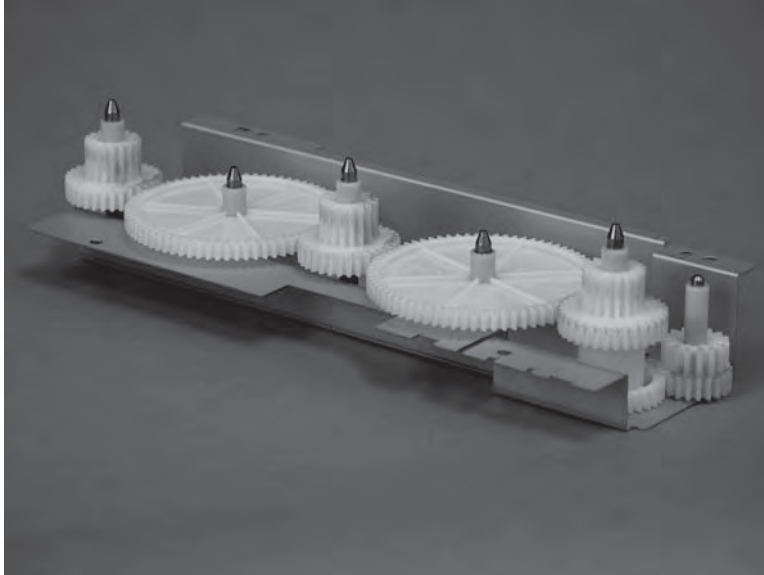


### Install the Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

If the gears on the drive assembly become dislodged, use the figure to reinstall them.

 **NOTE:** Do not remove the grease that is on the gears when handling them.

**Figure 1-1137** Paper drive assembly gears (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



## Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

### Remove the following assemblies:

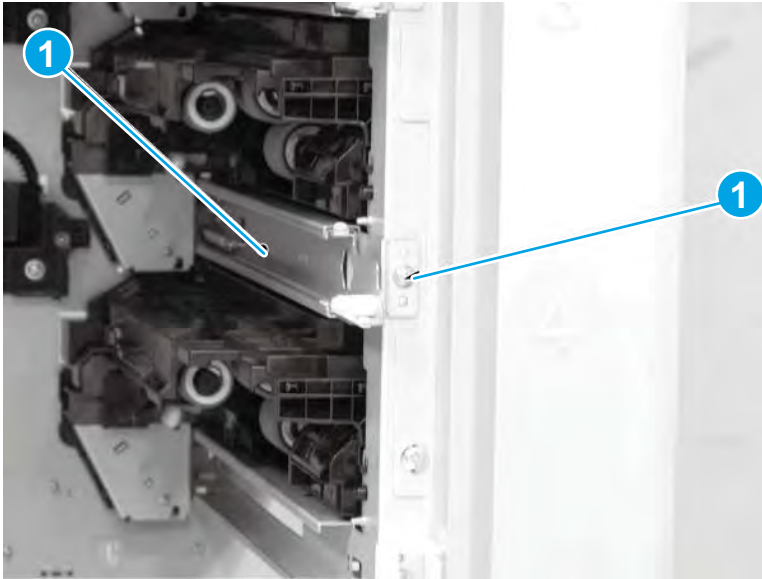
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 705](#).

### Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the tray rail (callout 2).

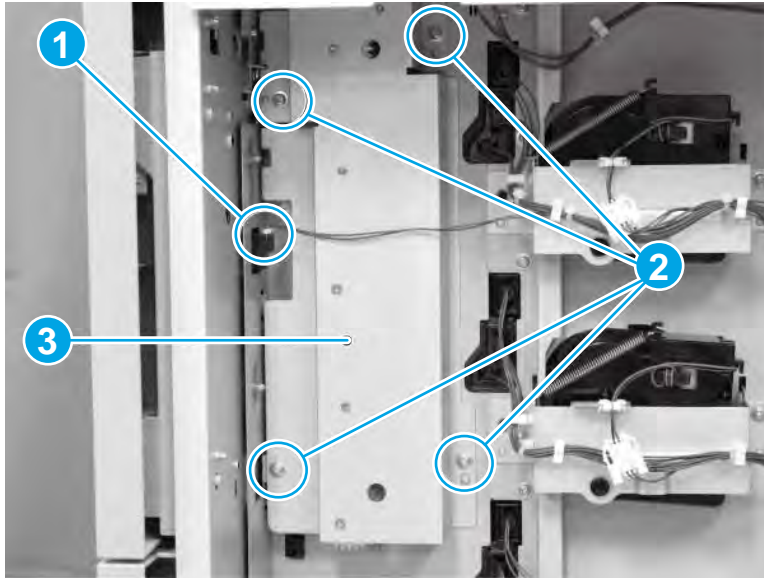
**Figure 1-1138** Remove the tray rail (HCI optional paper feeder)



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the pickup drive assembly (callout 3).

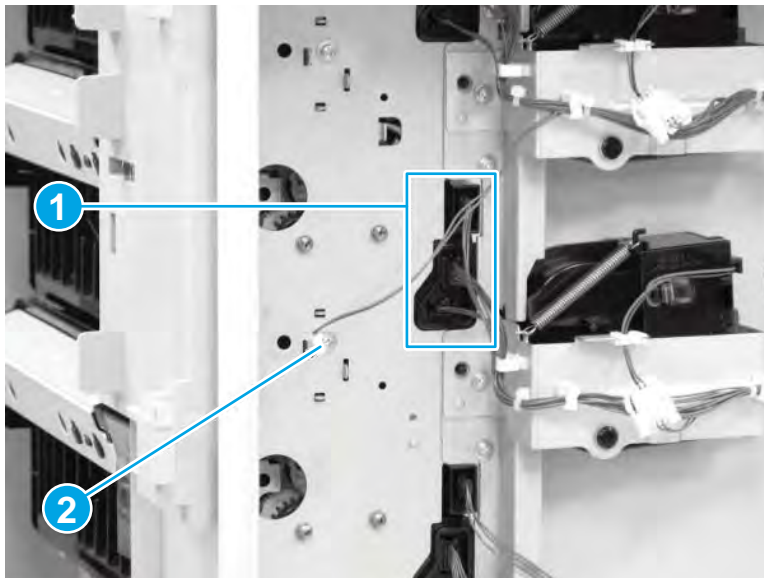
**CAUTION:** The gears on the back side of the drive assembly are not captive. If they become dislodged, see [Install the Tray 3 pickup assembly \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 715](#) to reinstall them.

**Figure 1-1139** Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



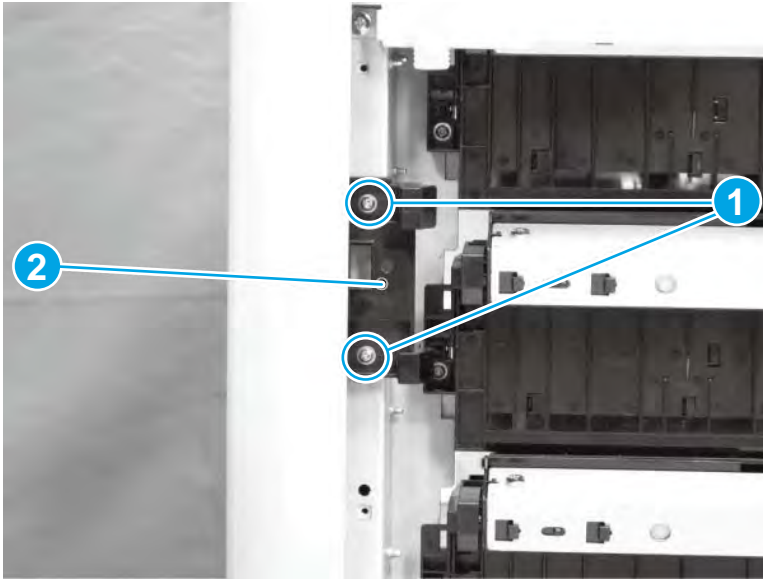
3. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1140** Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder)



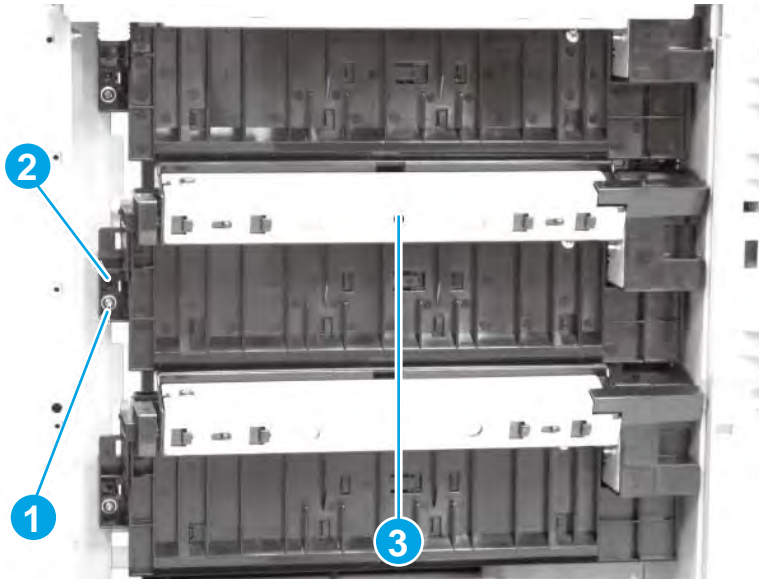
4. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the latch holder (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1141** Remove the latch holder (HCI optional paper feeder)




5. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly (callout 3).

**Figure 1-1142** Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

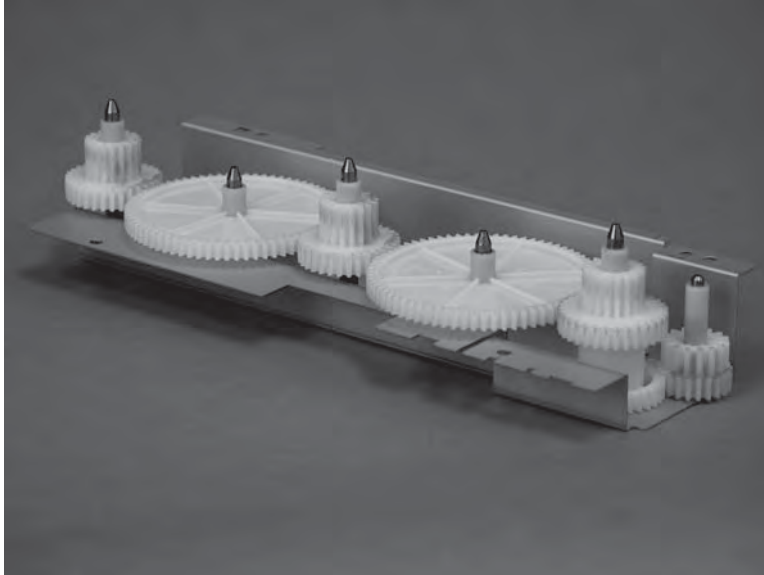


### Install the Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

If the gears on the drive assembly become dislodged, use the figure to reinstall them.

 **NOTE:** Do not remove the grease that is on the gears when handling them.

**Figure 1-1143** Paper drive assembly gears (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



## Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

### Remove the following assemblies:

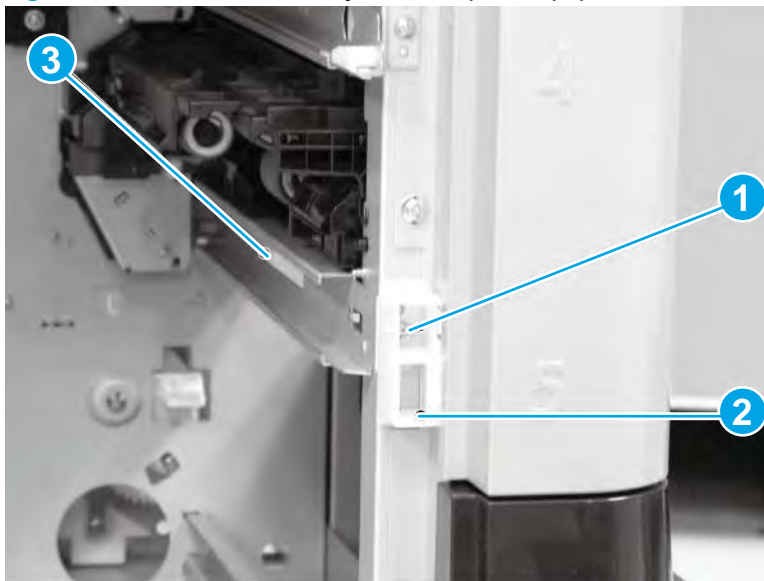
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 705](#).

### Remove the Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

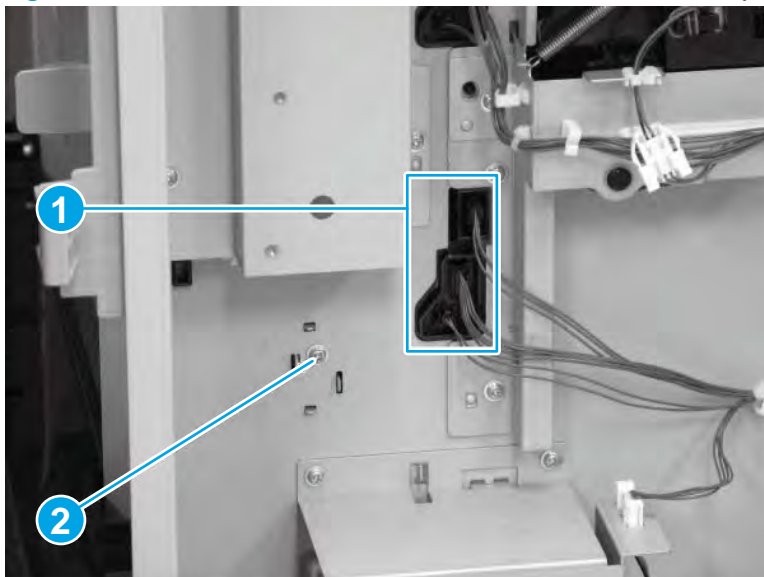
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), remove the cover (callout 2), and then remove the tray rail (callout 3).

**Figure 1-1144** Remove the tray rail (HCI optional paper feeder)



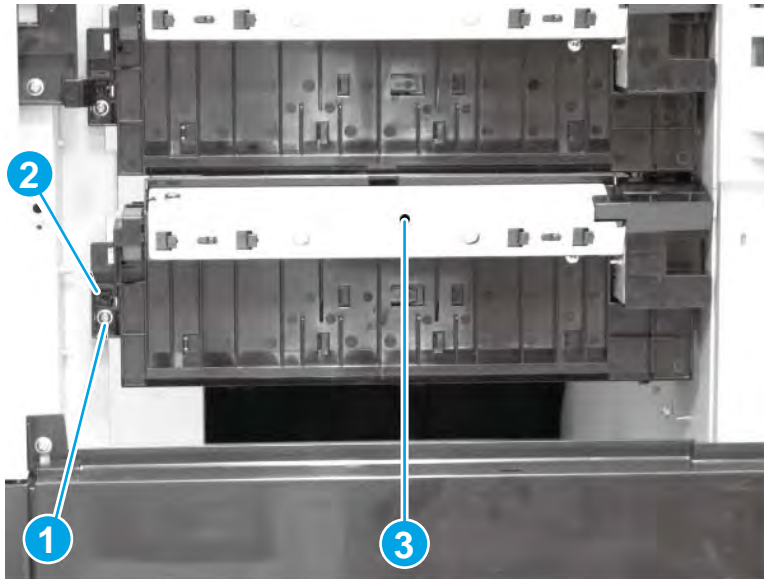
2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1145** Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder)



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the Tray 5 pickup assembly (callout 3).

**Figure 1-1146** Remove the Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



## Pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

### Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 705](#).

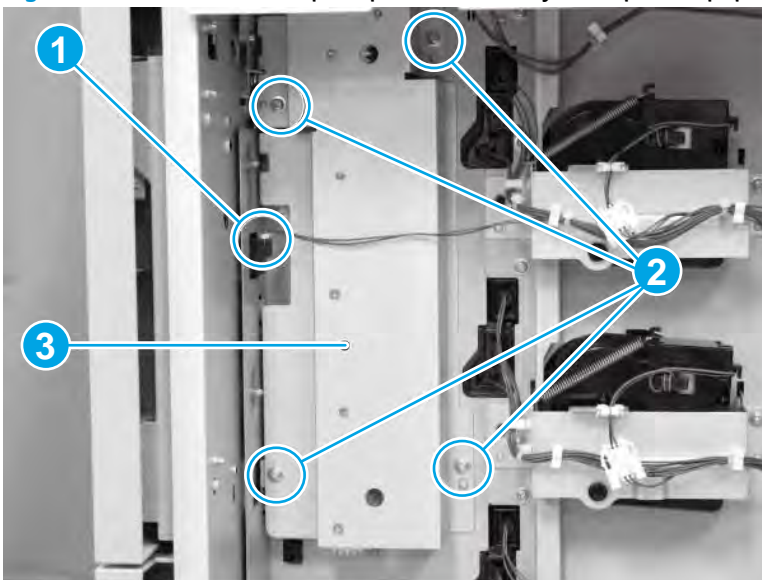
### Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the pickup drive assembly (callout 3).

**CAUTION:** The gears on the back side of the drive assembly are not captive. If they become dislodged, see [Install the pickup drive assembly on page 723](#) to reinstall them.


**Figure 1-1147** Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



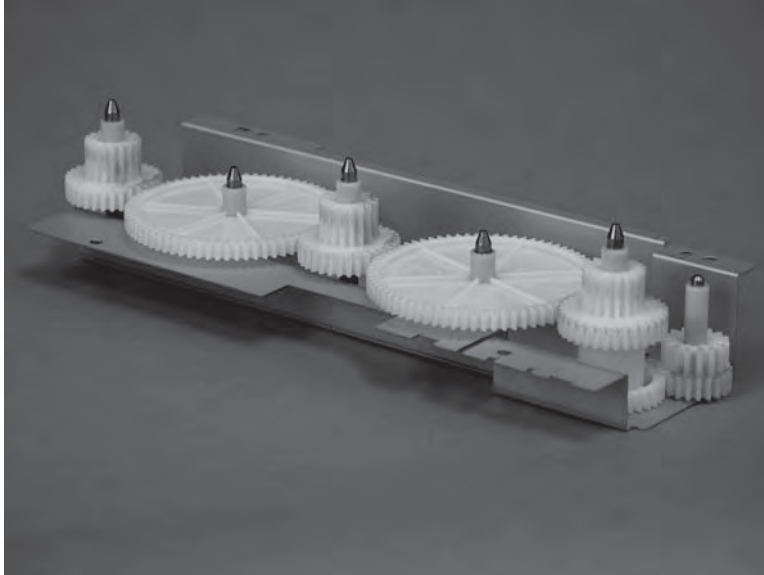


## Install the pickup drive assembly

If the gears on the drive assembly become dislodged, use the figure to reinstall them.

 **NOTE:** Do not remove the grease that is on the gears when handling them.

**Figure 1-1148** Gears on the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



## Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

### Remove the following assemblies:

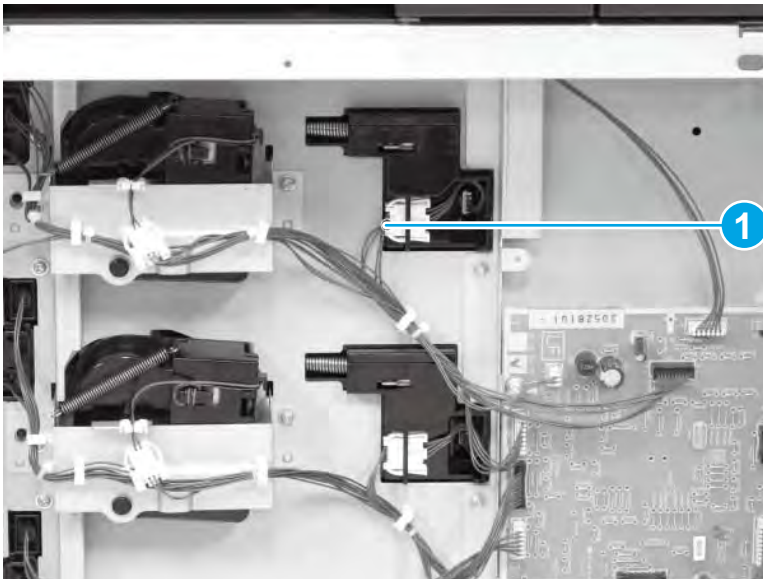
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 705](#).

### Remove the Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

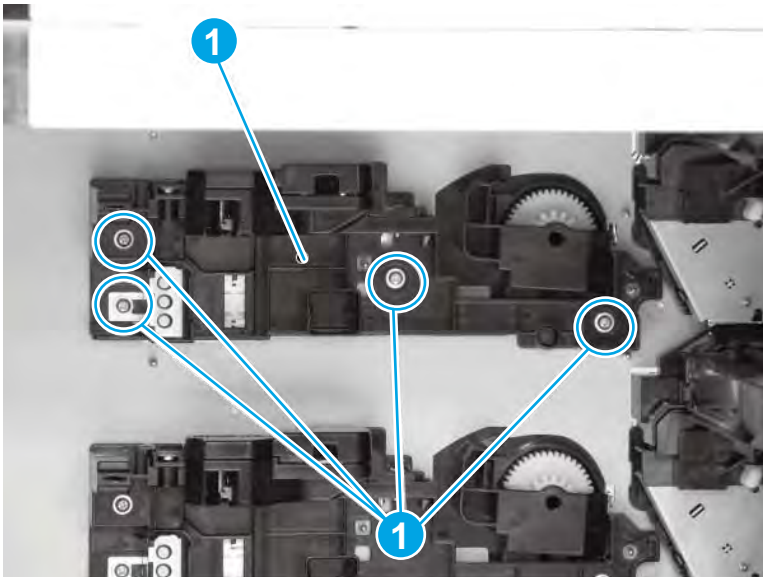
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1149** Disconnect connector (HCI optional paper feeder)



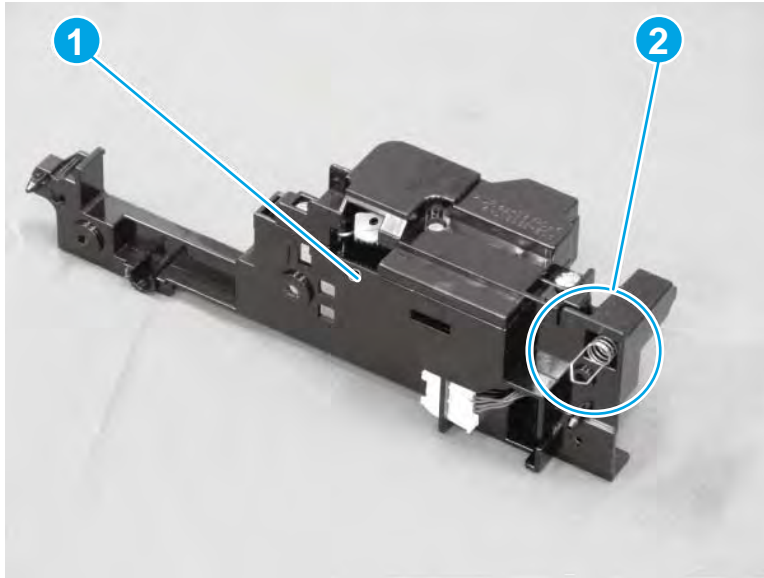
2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the Tray 3 lifter base assembly (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1150** Remove the Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



3. Remove the Tray 3 lifter base assembly (callout 1) spring (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1151** Remove the lifter base assembly spring (HCI optional paper feeder)



## Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

### Remove the following assemblies:

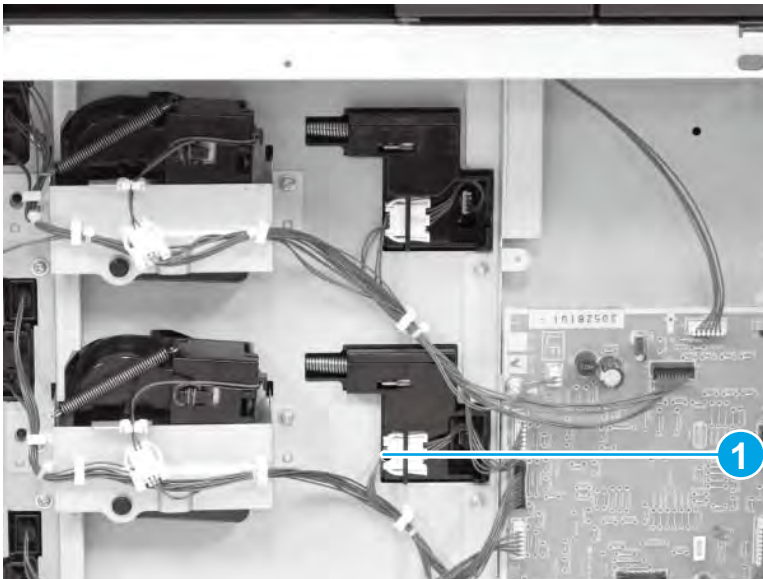
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 705](#).

### Remove the Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

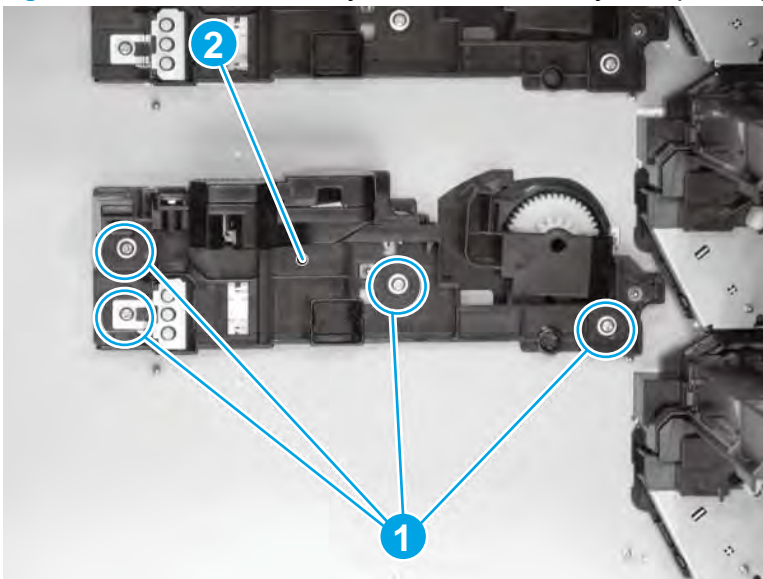
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1152** Disconnect connector (HCI optional paper feeder)



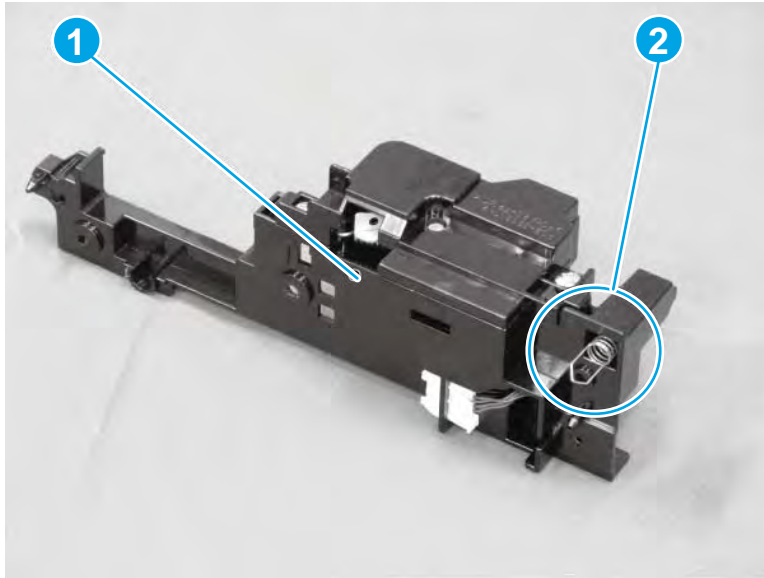
2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the Tray 4 lifter base assembly (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1153** Remove the Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



3. Remove the Tray 4 lifter base assembly (callout 1) spring (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1154** Remove the lifter base assembly spring (HCI optional paper feeder)



## Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

### Remove the following assemblies:

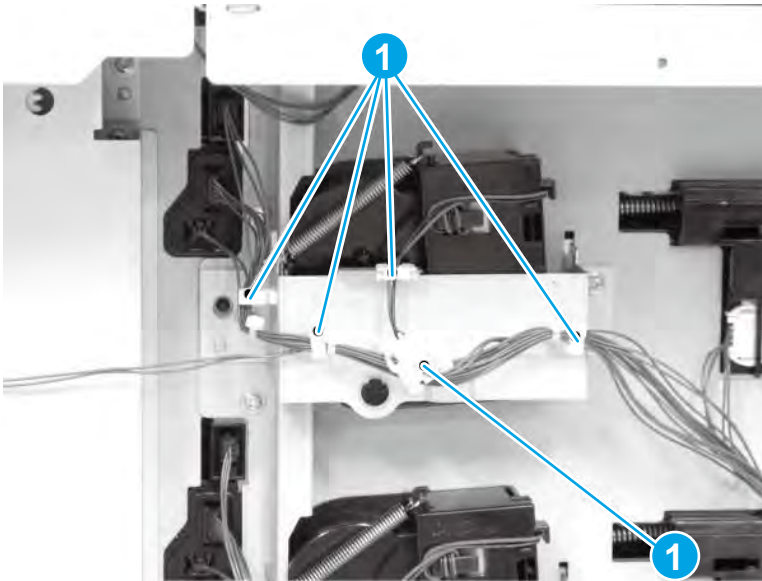
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 705](#).

### Remove the Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

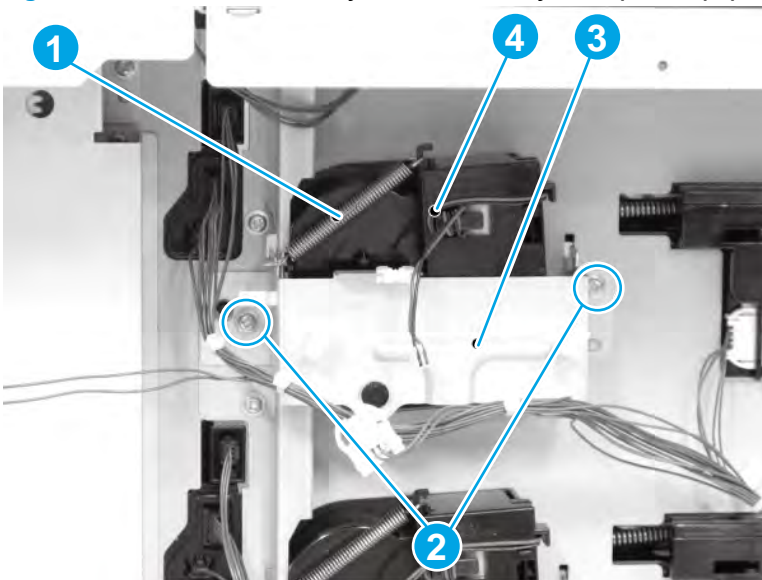
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and the release the wire harnesses from four retainers (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1155** Disconnect connectors (HCI optional paper feeder)



2. Remove one spring (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), remove the sheet-metal plate (callout 3), and then remove the Tray 3 lifter assembly (callout 4).

**Figure 1-1156** Remove the Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



## Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

### Remove the following assemblies:

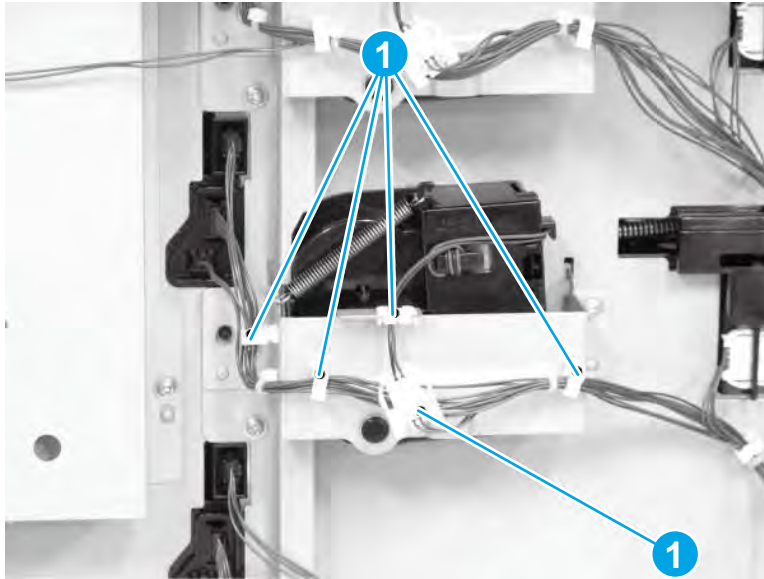
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 705](#).

### Remove the Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

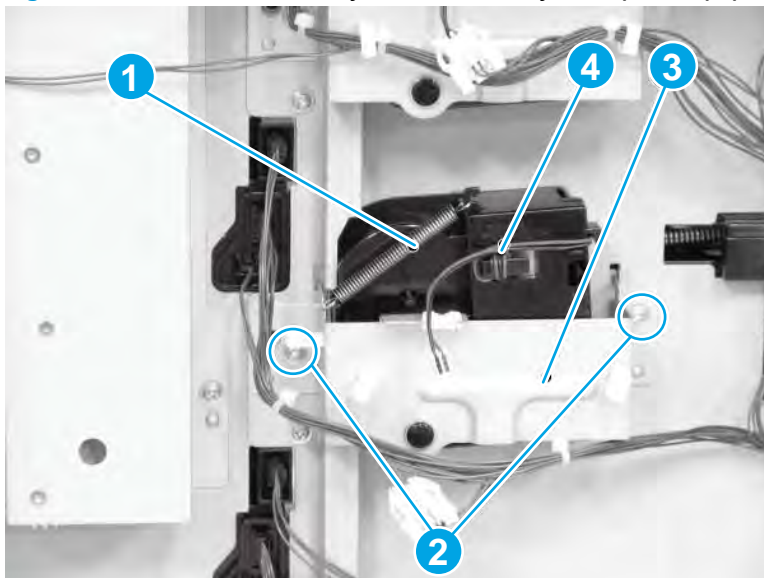
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and release the wire harnesses from four retainers (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1157** Disconnect connectors (HCI optional paper feeder)



2. Remove one spring (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), remove the sheet-metal plate (callout 3), and then remove the Tray 4 lifter assembly (callout 4).

**Figure 1-1158** Remove the Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



## Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

### Remove the following assemblies:

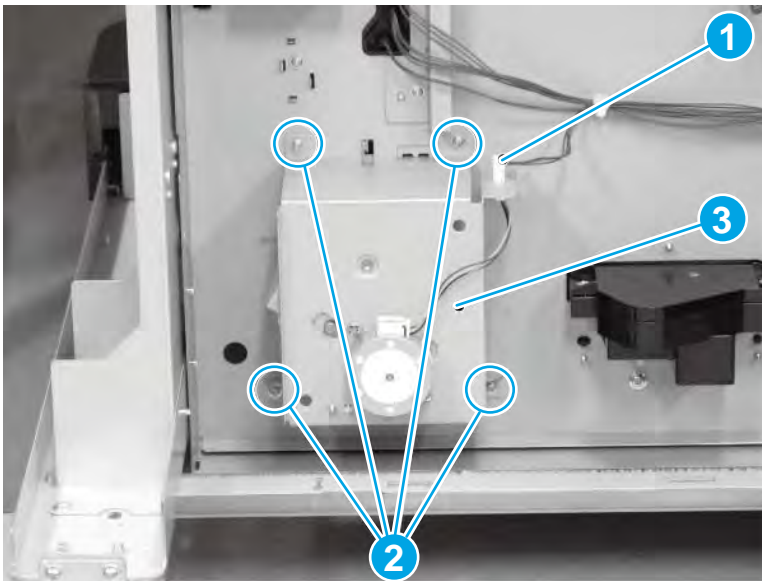
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 705](#).
- Right door (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Right door \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 706](#).
- Right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Right center cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 707](#).
- Right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Right lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 708](#).

### Remove the Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (callout 3).

**Figure 1-1159** Remove the Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)





## Controller printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (HCI optional paper feeder)

### Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 705](#).

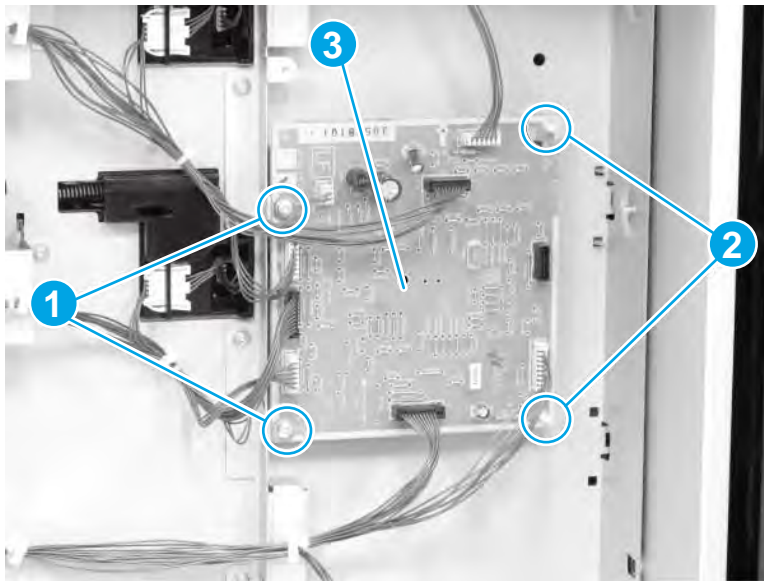
### Remove the controller PCA (HCI optional paper feeder)

**⚠ CAUTION:** ESD-sensitive part.

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Disconnect all of the connectors, remove two screws (callout 1), use a pair needle-nose pliers to release two standoffs (callout 2), and then remove the feeder PCA (callout 3).

**Figure 1-1160** Remove the controller PCA (HCI optional paper feeder)



## Stapling mailbox



**NOTE:** HP recommends removing the accessory from the product before servicing it.

Some of the figures in this section might look slightly different than the M630 accessory. However, the procedures are correct for this product.

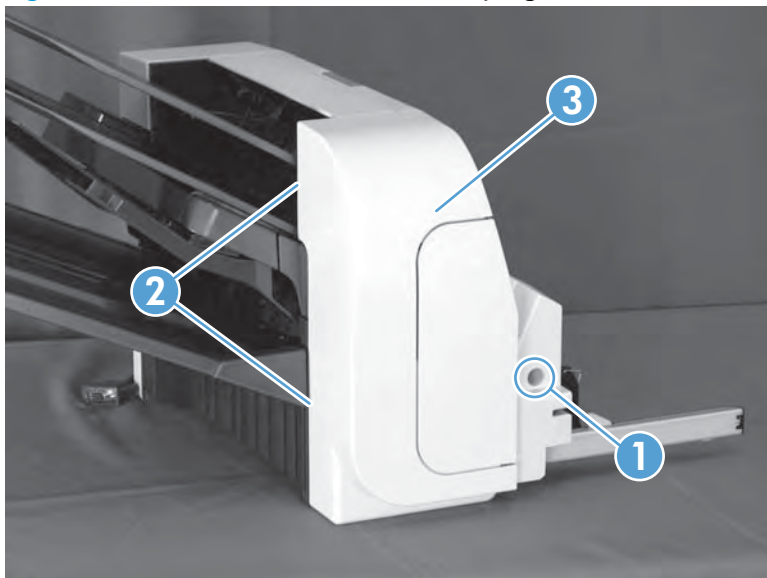
- [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Rear cover \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Handle assembly \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Top cover \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Output bin 3 \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Output bin assembly cover \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Driver printed-circuit assembly \(PCA\) \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Output bin sensor printed-circuit assembly \(PCA\) \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Stapler assembly \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Jogger assembly \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Output bin solenoid \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Output bin assembly \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Stage top assembly \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Stage assembly \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Output bin 3 drive assembly \(stapling mailbox\)](#)

## Front cover (stapling mailbox)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

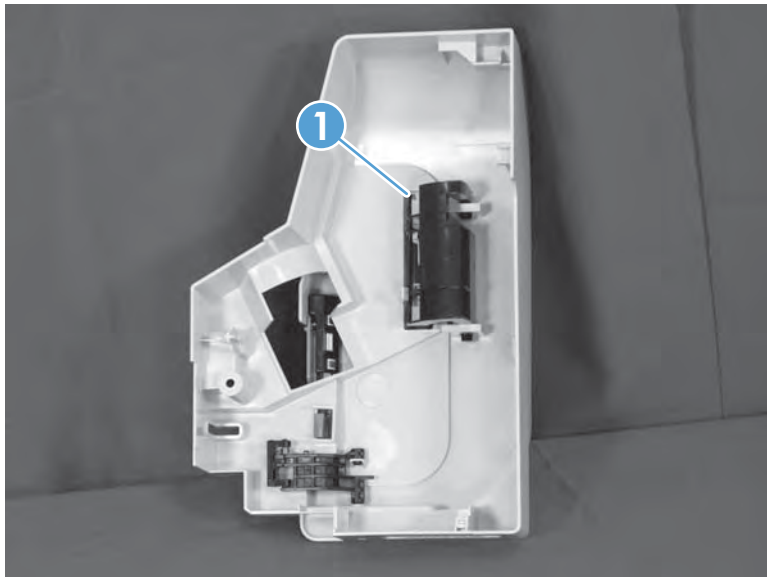
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the front cover (callout 3).

**Figure 1-1161** Remove the front cover (stapling mailbox)



2. If necessary, remove the lever assembly (callout 1) from the cover.

**Figure 1-1162** Remove the lever assembly (stapling mailbox)

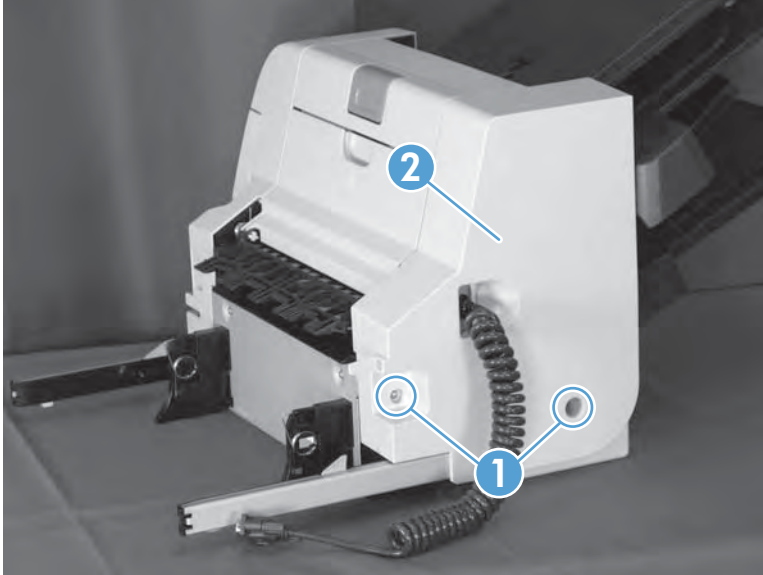


## Rear cover (stapling mailbox)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear cover (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1163** Remove the rear cover (stapling mailbox)



## Handle assembly (stapling mailbox)

### Remove the following assemblies:

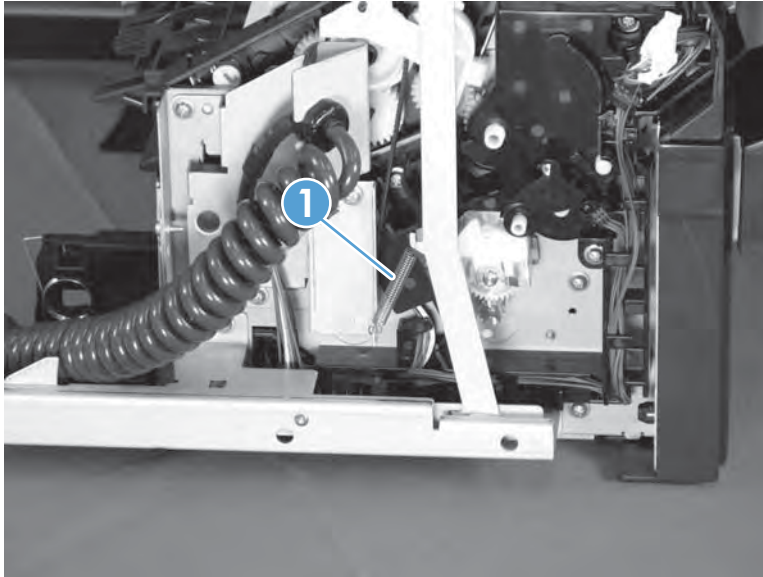
- Front cover. See [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 733](#).
- Rear cover. See [Rear cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 734](#).

### Remove the handle assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

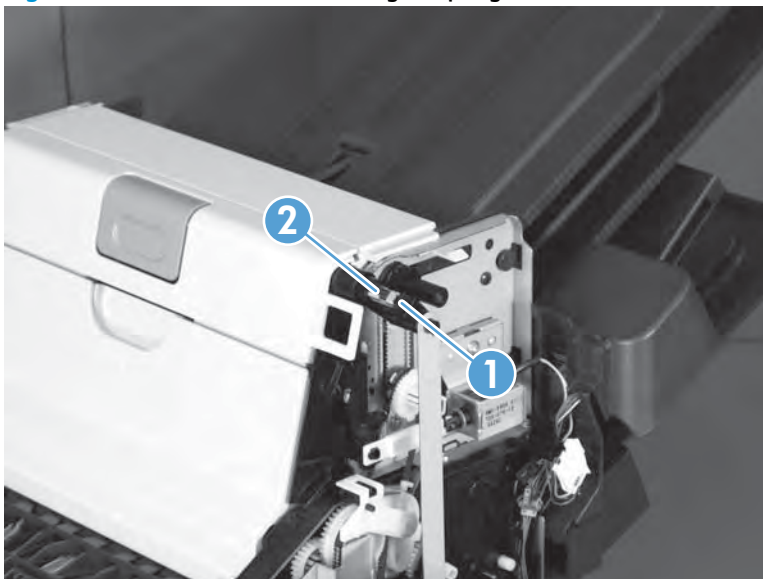
1. Remove one spring (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1164** Remove one spring (stapling mailbox)



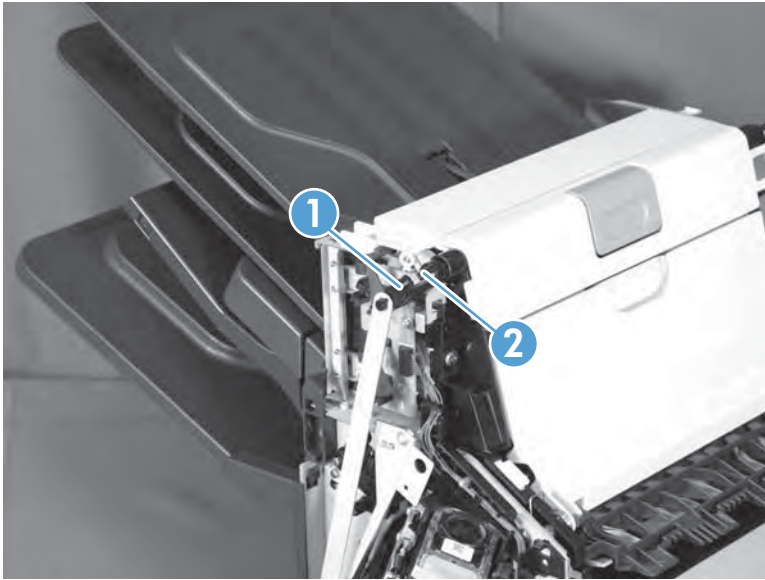
2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the bushing (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1165** Remove the bushing (stapling mailbox)



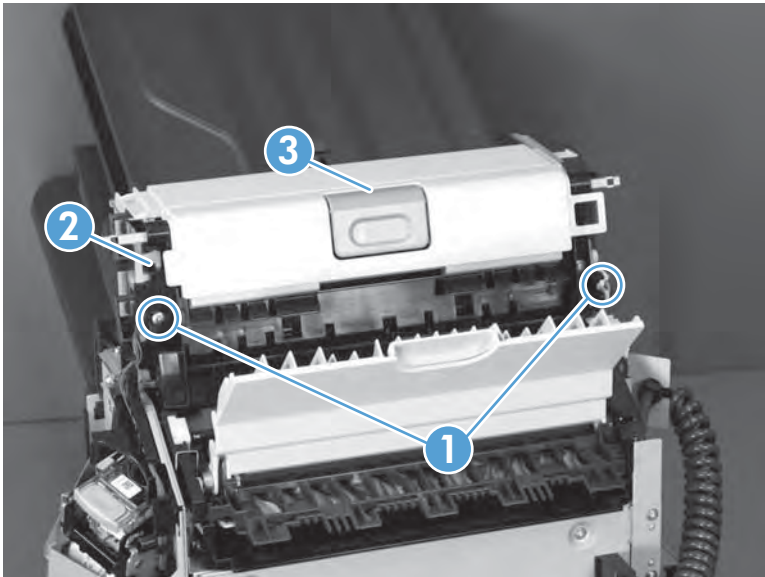
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the bushing (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1166** Remove the bushing (stapling mailbox)



4. Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the handle assembly (callout 3).

**Figure 1-1167** Remove the handle assembly (stapling mailbox)



## Top cover (stapling mailbox)

### Remove the following assemblies:

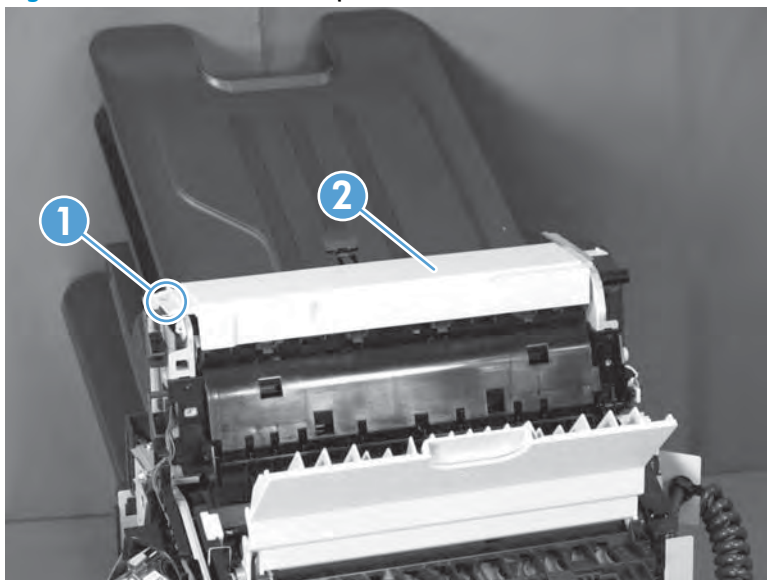
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 733](#).
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See [Rear cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 734](#).
- Handle assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Handle assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 735](#).

### Remove the top cover

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the top cover (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1168** Remove the top cover

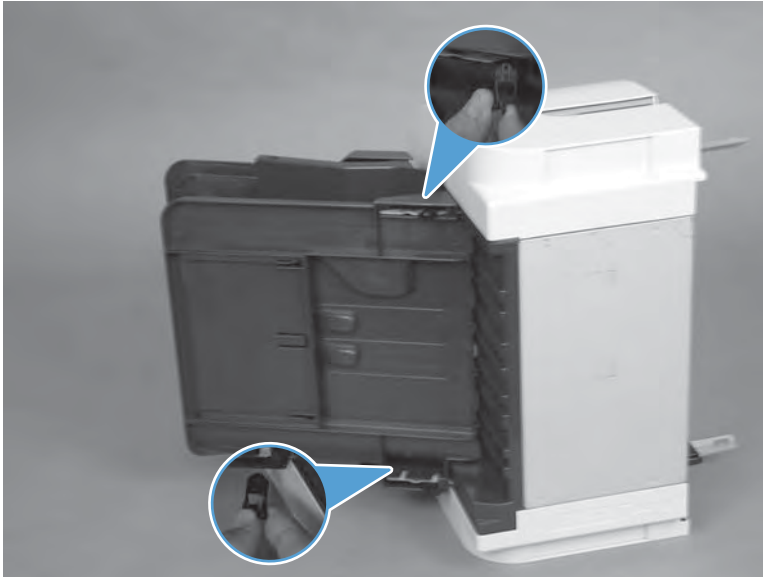



## Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

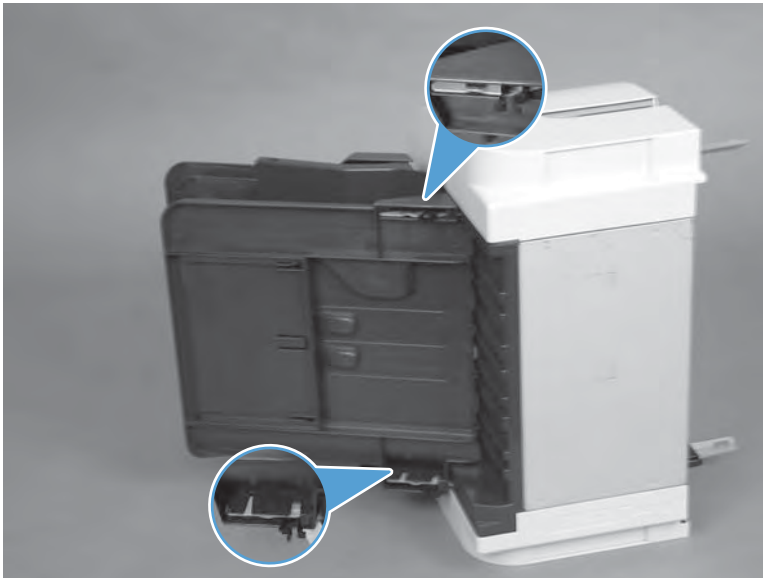
1. Squeeze and pull two stoppers to remove them from the output bin.

**Figure 1-1169** Remove two stoppers (stapling mailbox)



 **NOTE:** When reinstalling the output bin, make sure the two stoppers are installed in the correct position.

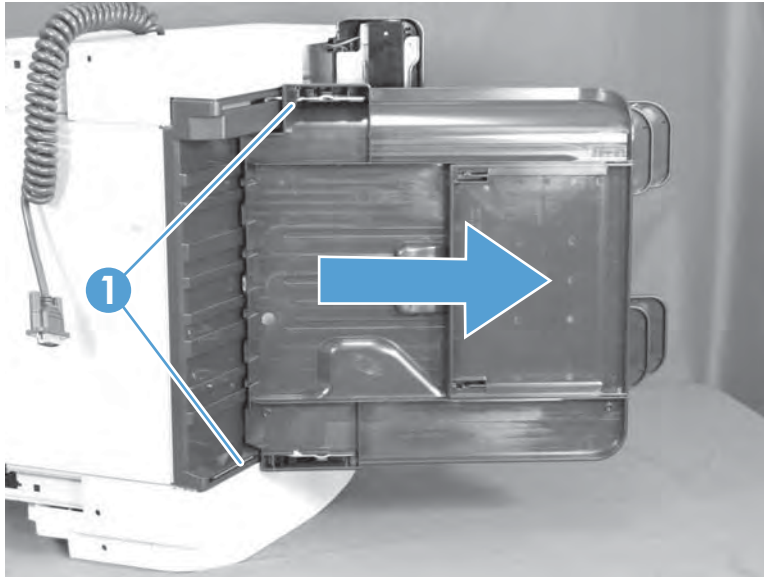
**Figure 1-1170** Reinstall the two stoppers (stapling mailbox)





2. Release two tabs (callout 1) and then slide the output bin away from the stapling mailbox chassis to remove it.

**Figure 1-1171** Remove the output bin (stapling mailbox)



## Output bin assembly cover (stapling mailbox)

### Remove the following assemblies:

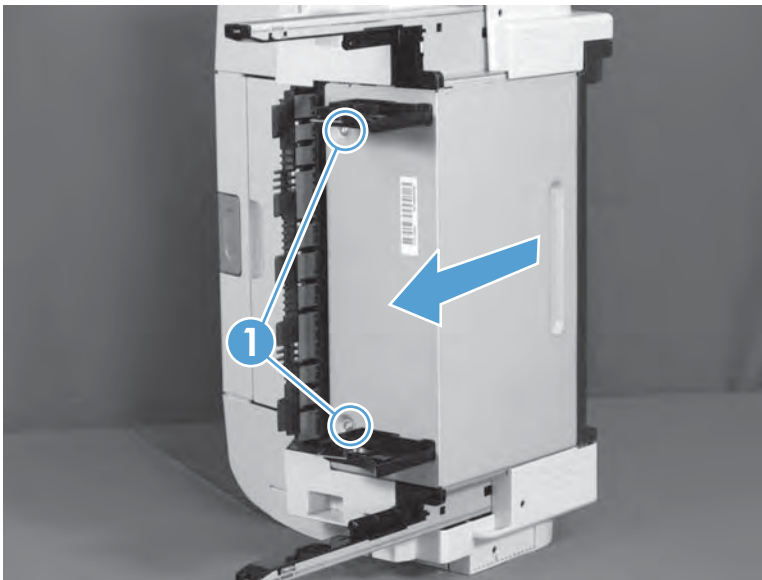
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 733](#).
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See [Rear cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 734](#).
- Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox). See [Output bin 3 \(stapling mailbox\) on page 738](#).

### Remove the output bin assembly cover

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

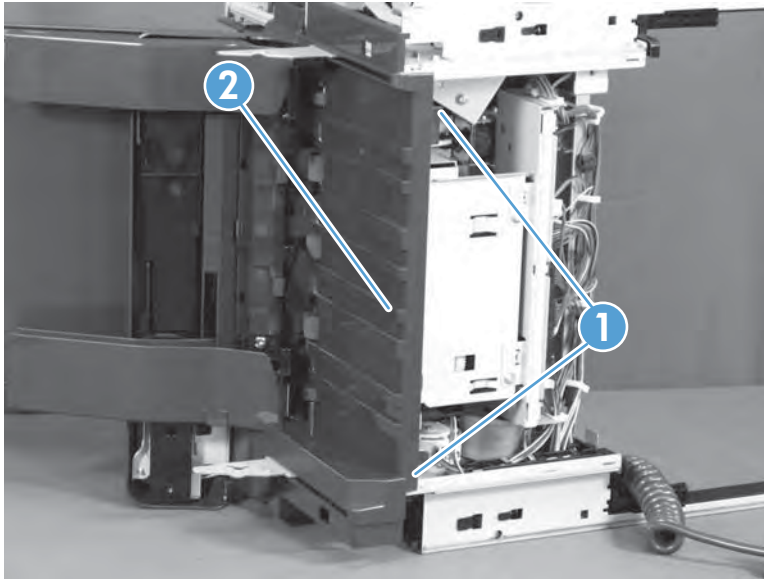
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the PCA cover away from the stapling mailbox chassis to remove it.

**Figure 1-1172** Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox)



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the output bin cover assembly (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1173** Remove the output bin assembly cover (stapling mailbox)



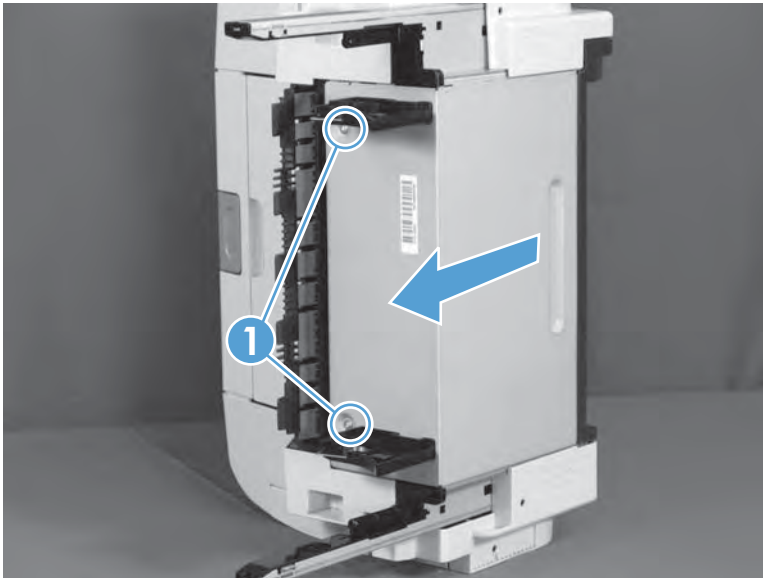
## Driver printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (stapling mailbox)

**CAUTION:** ESD-sensitive part.

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

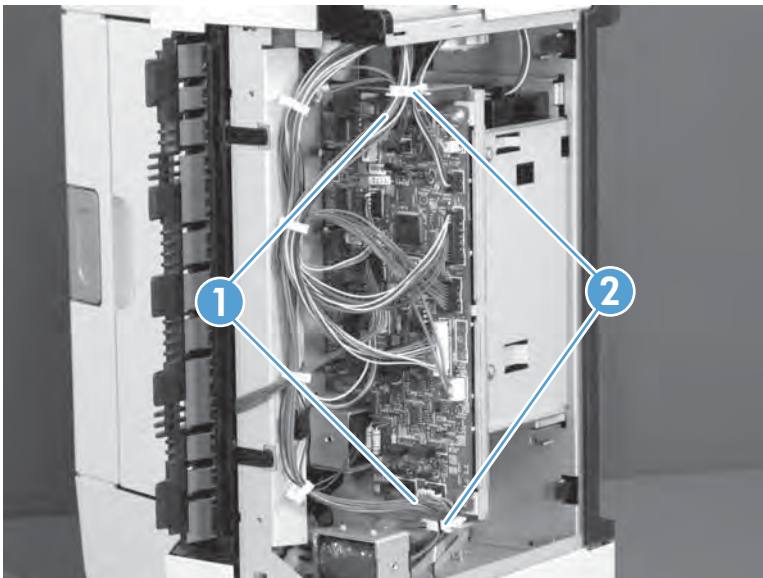
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the PCA cover away from the stapling mailbox chassis to remove it.

**Figure 1-1174** Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox)



2. Release the wire harnesses (callout 1) from the guide (callout 2).

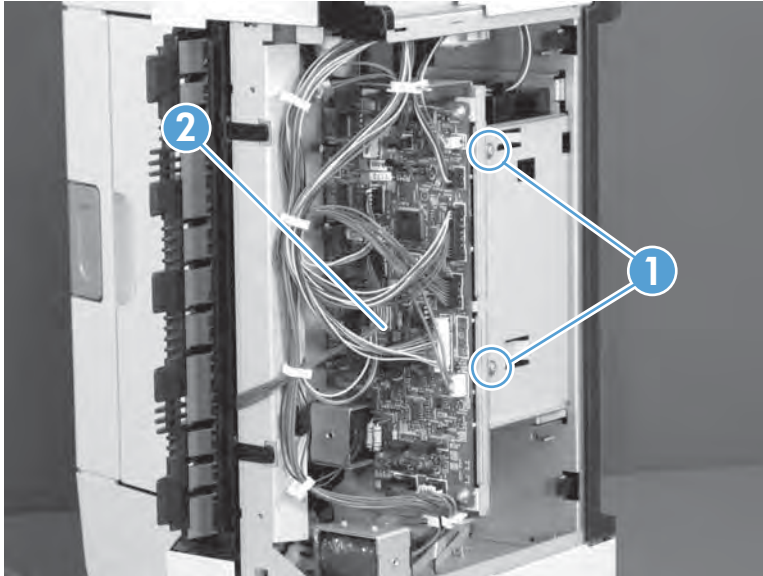
**Figure 1-1175** Release the wire harnesses (stapling mailbox)



3. Disconnect all connectors from the PCA, remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the PCA (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** Connector J460 is empty.

**Figure 1-1176** Remove the PCA (stapling mailbox)



## Output bin sensor printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (stapling mailbox)

### Remove the following assemblies:

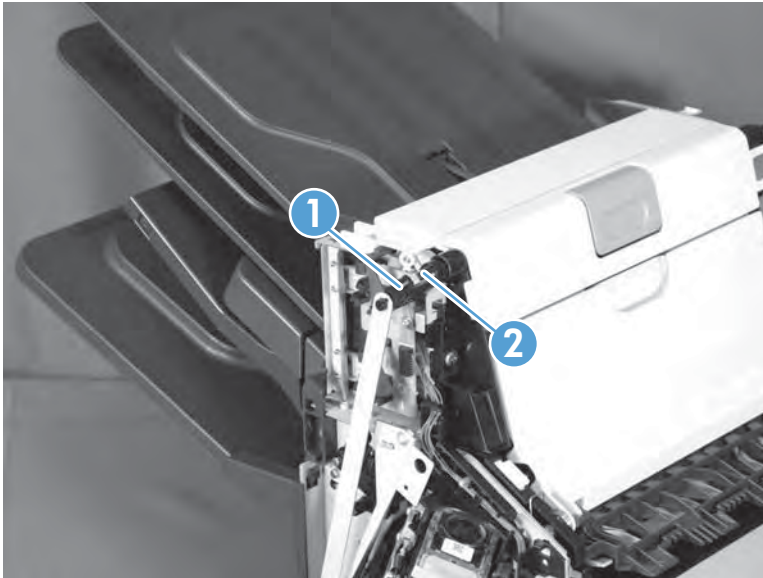
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 733](#).

### Remove the output bin sensor PCA

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

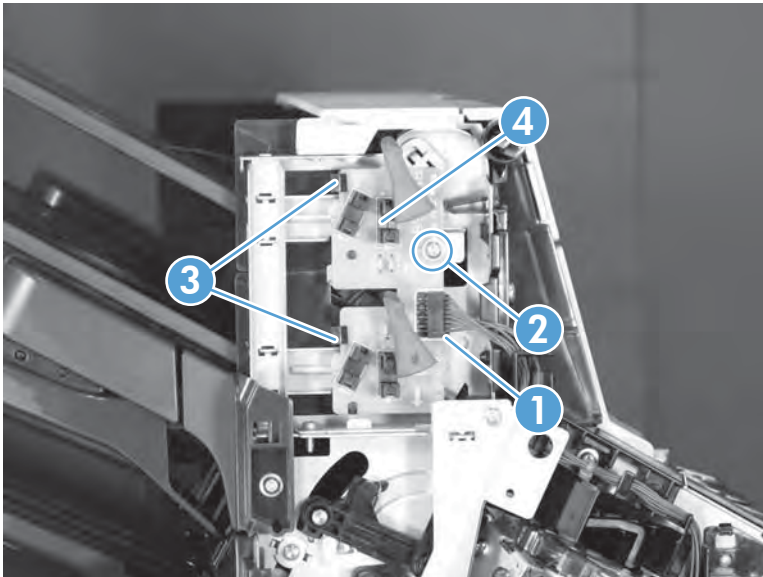
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the bushing (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1177** Remove the bushing (stapling mailbox)



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), release two tabs (callout 3), and then remove the output bin sensor PCA (callout 4).

**Figure 1-1178** Remove the output bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox)



## Stapler assembly (stapling mailbox)

### Remove the following assemblies:

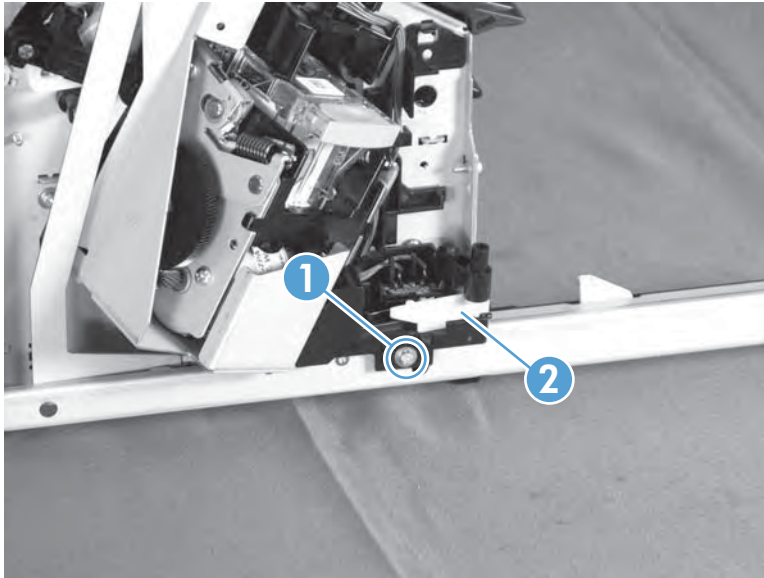
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 733](#).

### Remove the stapler assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

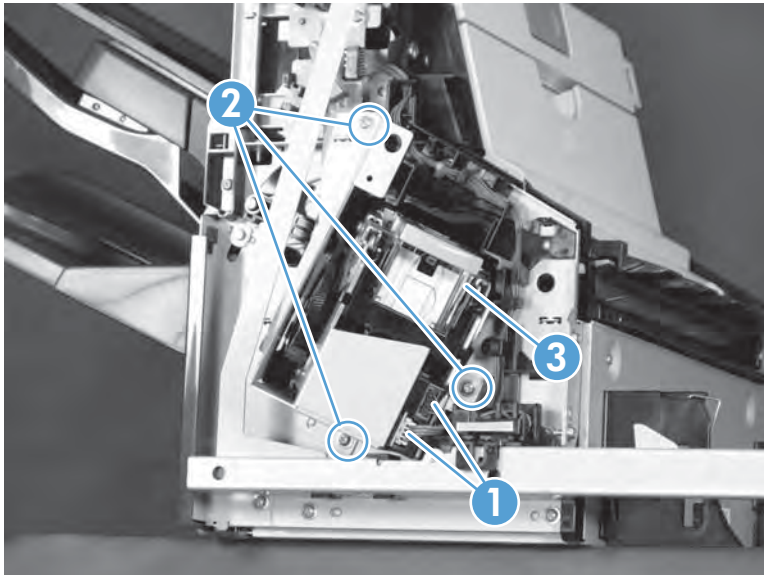
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the interlock assembly (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1179** Remove the interlock assembly (stapling mailbox)



2. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the stapler assembly (callout 3).

**Figure 1-1180** Remove the stapler assembly (stapling mailbox)



## Jogger assembly (stapling mailbox)

### Remove the following assemblies:

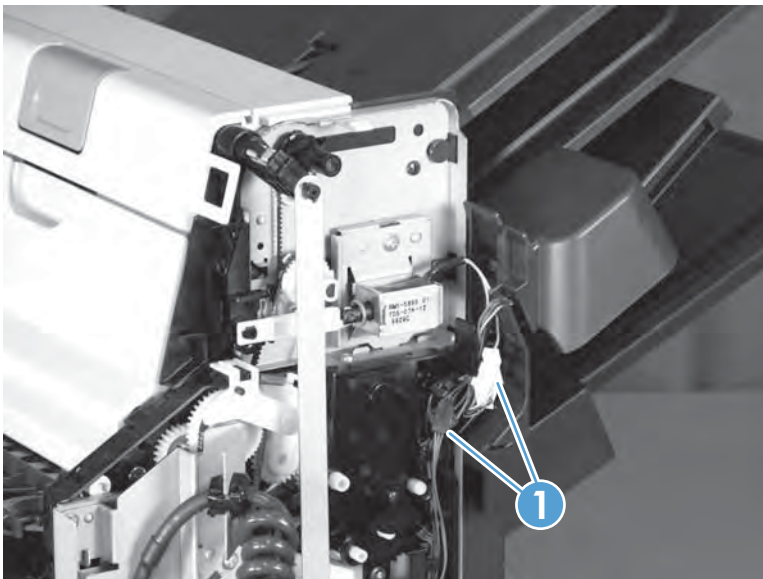
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 733](#).
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See [Rear cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 734](#).

### Remove the jogger assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

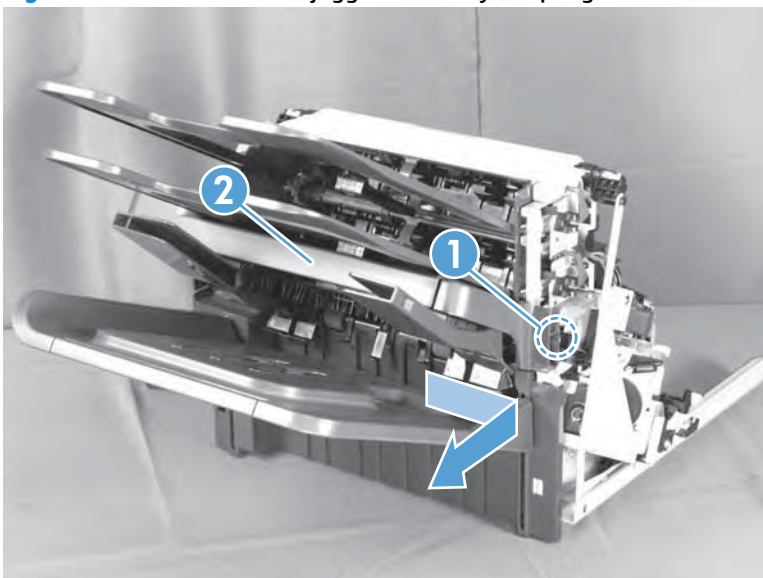
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1181** Disconnect two connectors (stapling mailbox)



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), slide the jogger assembly (callout 2) toward the right-side of the stapler, and then pull the assembly away from the stapler to remove it.

**Figure 1-1182** Remove the jogger assembly (stapling mailbox)





## Output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox)

### Remove the following assemblies:

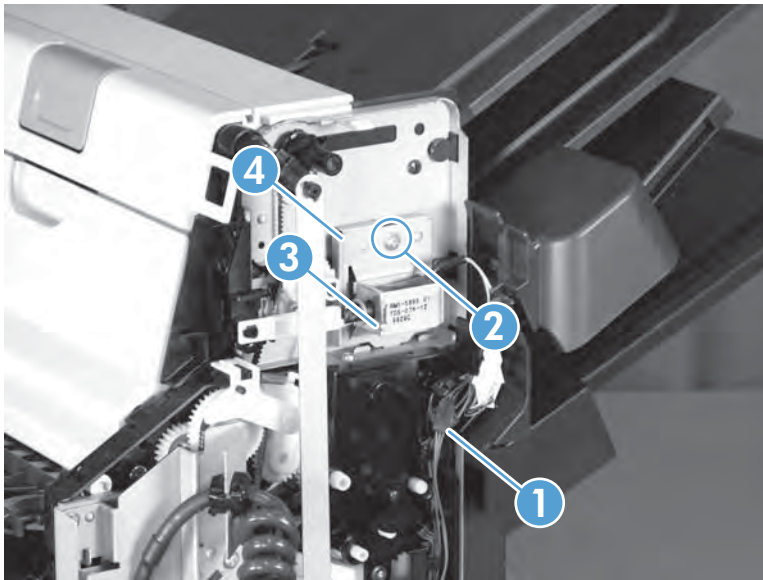
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 733](#).
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See [Rear cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 734](#).

### Remove the output bin solenoid

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

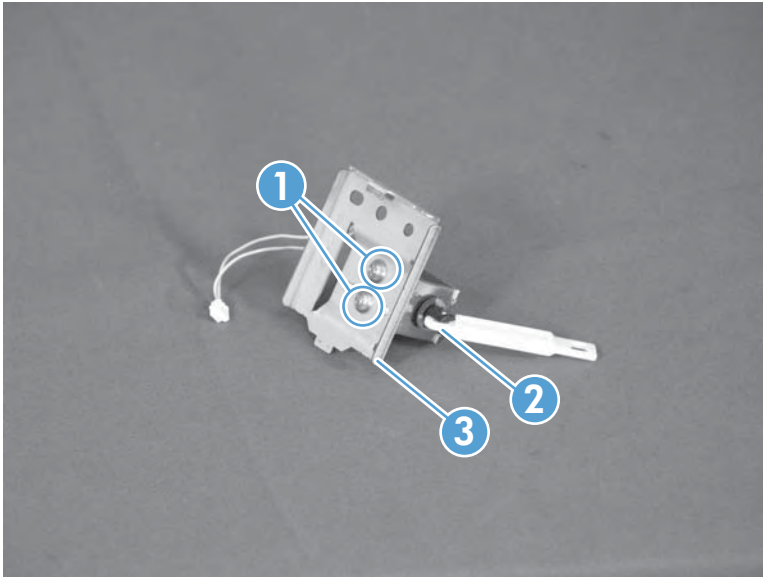
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), and then remove the output bin solenoid (callout 3) and the sheet-metal plate (callout 4) together.

**Figure 1-1183** Remove the output bin solenoid and sheet-metal plate (stapling mailbox)



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then separate the output bin solenoid (callout 2) from the sheet-metal plate (callout 3).

**Figure 1-1184** Remove the output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox)



## Output bin assembly (stapling mailbox)

### Remove the following assemblies:

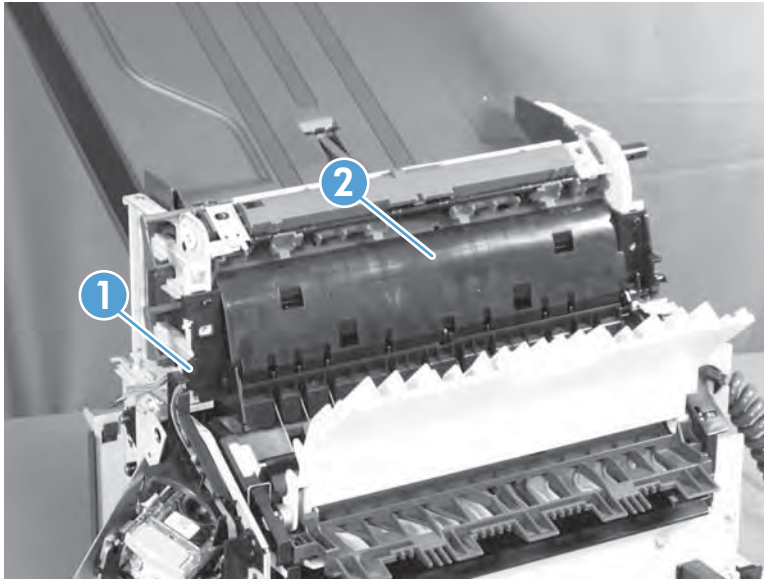
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 733](#).
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See [Rear cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 734](#).
- Handle assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Handle assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 735](#).
- Top cover (stapling mailbox). See [Top cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 737](#).
- Output bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox). See [Output bin sensor printed-circuit assembly \(PCA\) \(stapling mailbox\) on page 744](#).
- Jogger assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Jogger assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 746](#).
- Output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox). See [Output bin solenoid \(stapling mailbox\) on page 747](#).

### Remove the output bin assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

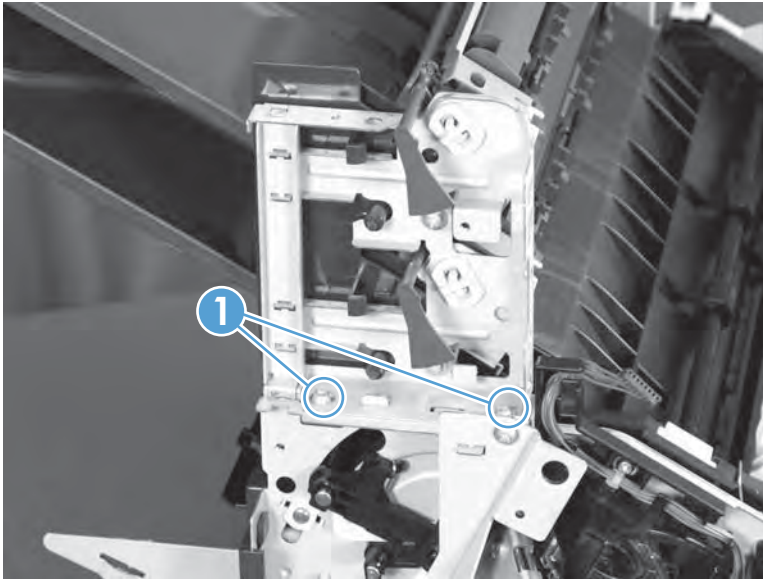
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the output-bin flapper assembly (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1185** Remove the output-bin flapper assembly (stapling mailbox)



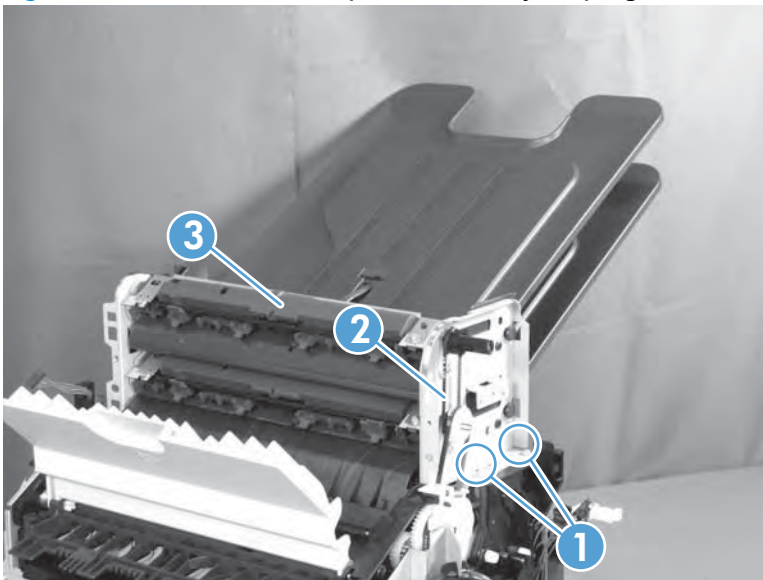
2. Remove two screws (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1186** Remove two screws (stapling mailbox)



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), remove the belt (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

**Figure 1-1187** Remove the output bin assembly (stapling mailbox)



## Stage top assembly (stapling mailbox)

### Remove the following assemblies:

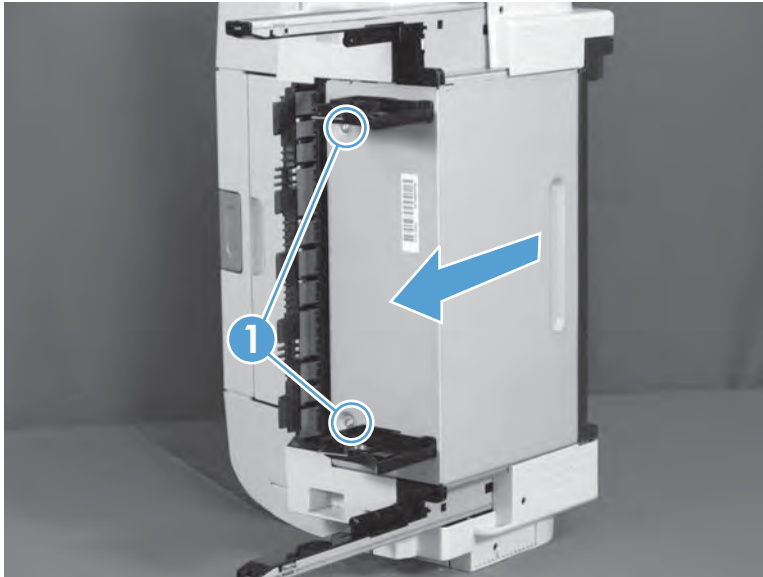
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 733](#).
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See [Rear cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 734](#).
- Handle assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Handle assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 735](#).
- Top cover (stapling mailbox). See [Top cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 737](#).
- Output bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox). See [Output bin sensor printed-circuit assembly \(PCA\) \(stapling mailbox\) on page 744](#).
- Stapler assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Stapler assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 745](#).
- Jogger assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Jogger assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 746](#).
- Output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox). See [Output bin solenoid \(stapling mailbox\) on page 747](#).
- Output bin assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Output bin assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 749](#).

### Remove the stage top assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

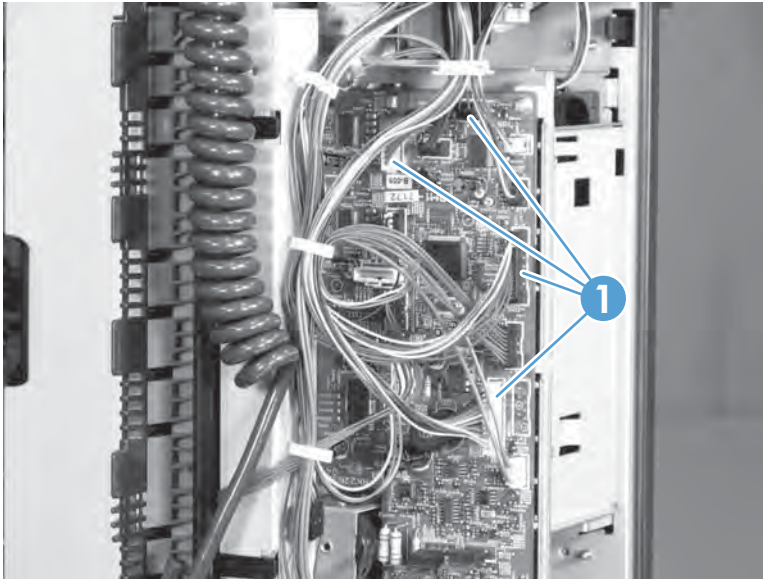
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the PCA cover away from the stapling mailbox chassis to remove it.

**Figure 1-1188** Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox)



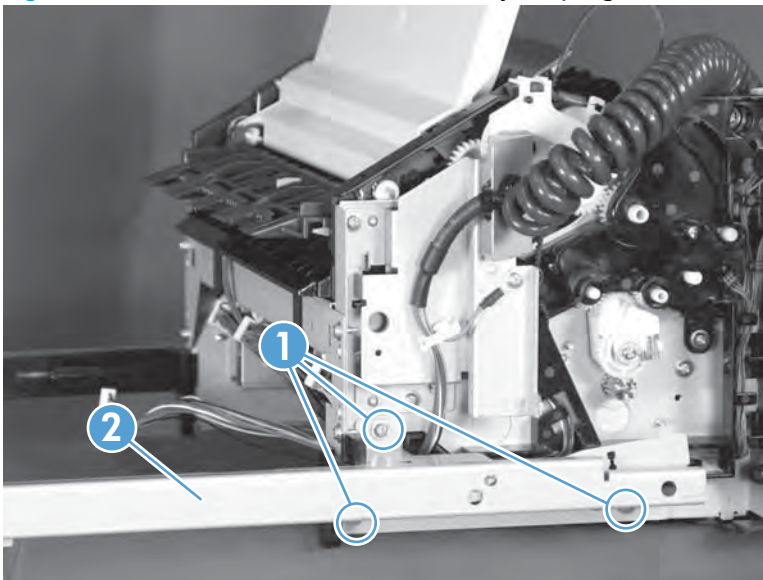
2. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1189** Disconnect four connectors (stapling mailbox)



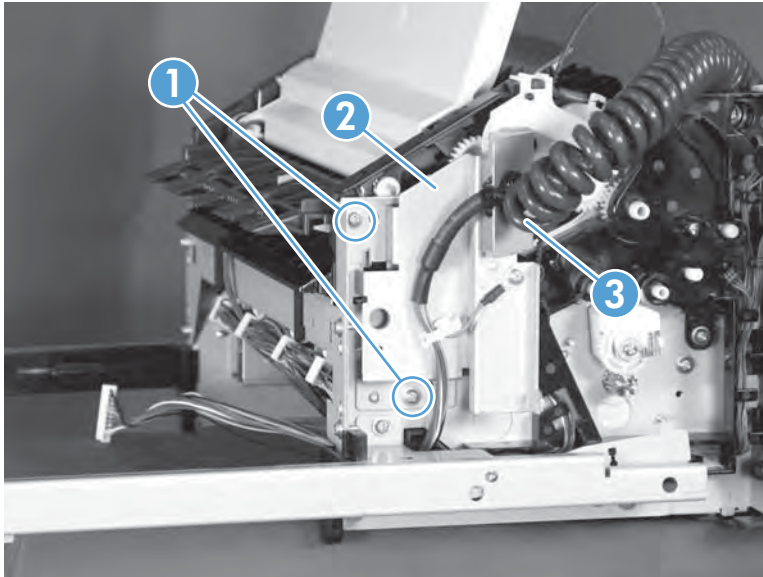
3. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear-rail assembly (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1190** Remove the rear-rail assembly (stapling mailbox)



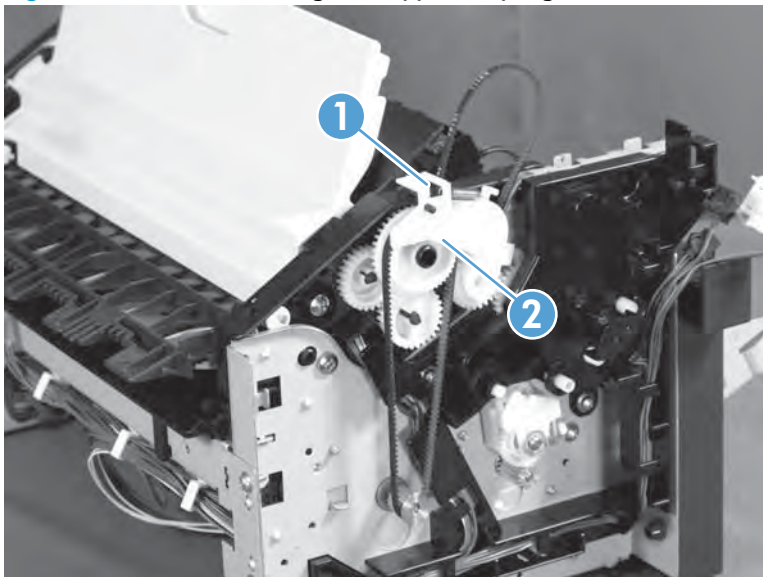
4. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal plate (callout 2) and wire harness (callout 3) together.

**Figure 1-1191** Remove the sheet-metal plate (stapling mailbox)



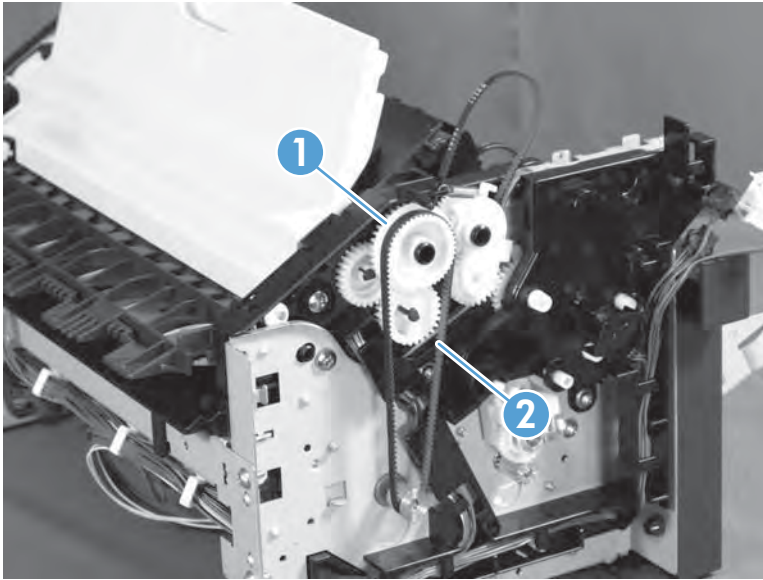
5. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the gear stopper (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1192** Remove the gear stopper (stapling mailbox)



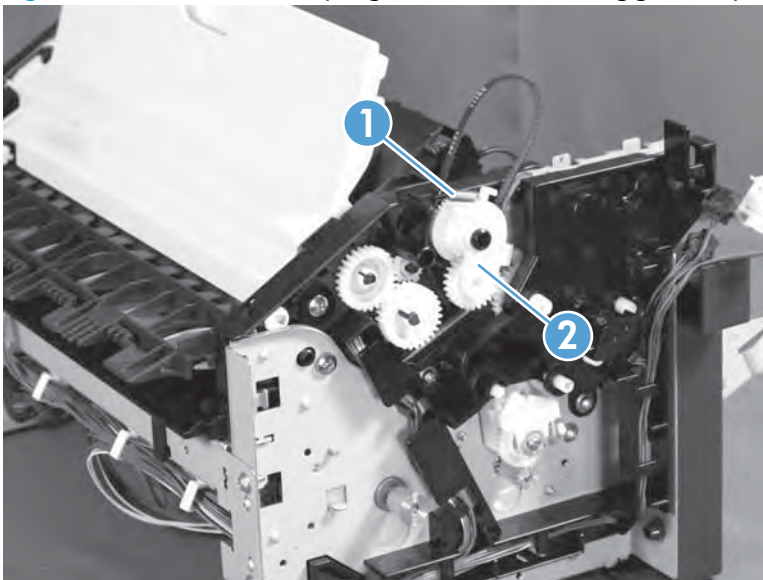
6. Remove one gear (callout 1), and then remove the belt (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1193** Remove one gear and the belt (stapling mailbox)



7. Release one spring (callout 1), and then remove the swing gear (callout 2).

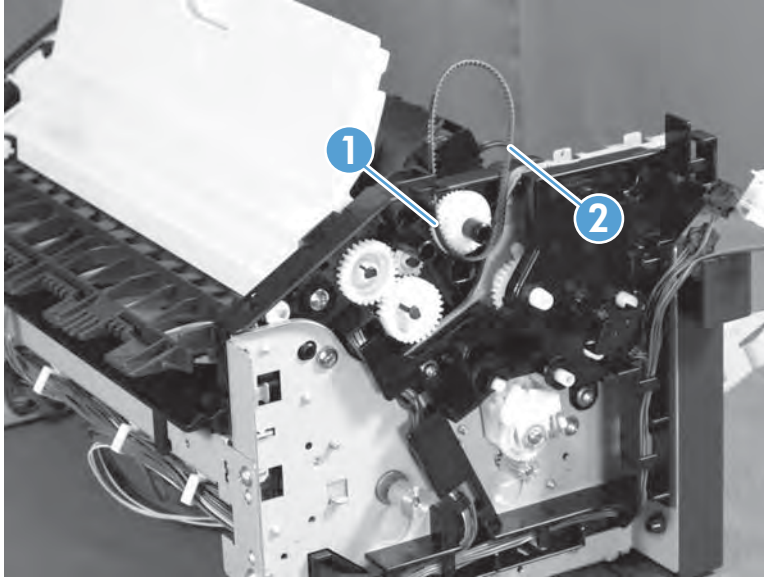
**Figure 1-1194** Release one spring and remove the swing gear (stapling mailbox)





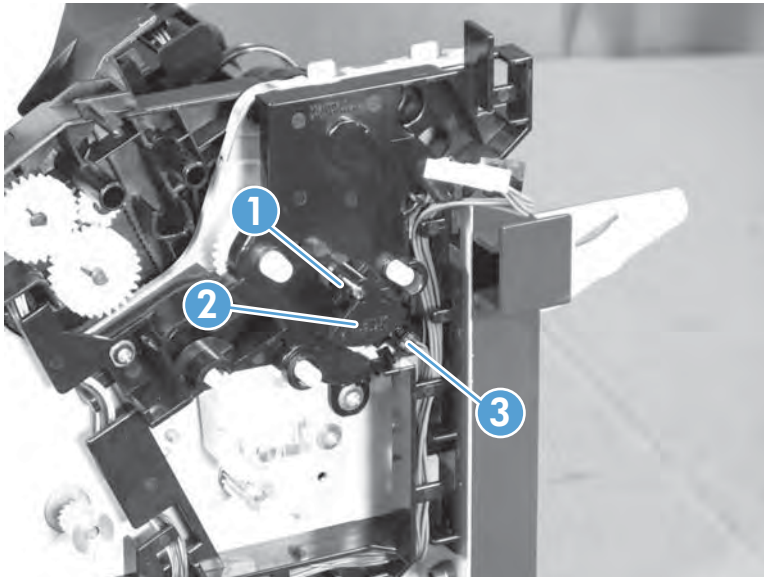
8. Remove one gear (callout 1), and then remove the belt (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1195** Remove one gear and remove the belt (stapling mailbox)



9. Release one tab (callout 1), remove the sensor flag (callout 2), and then disconnect one connector (callout 3).

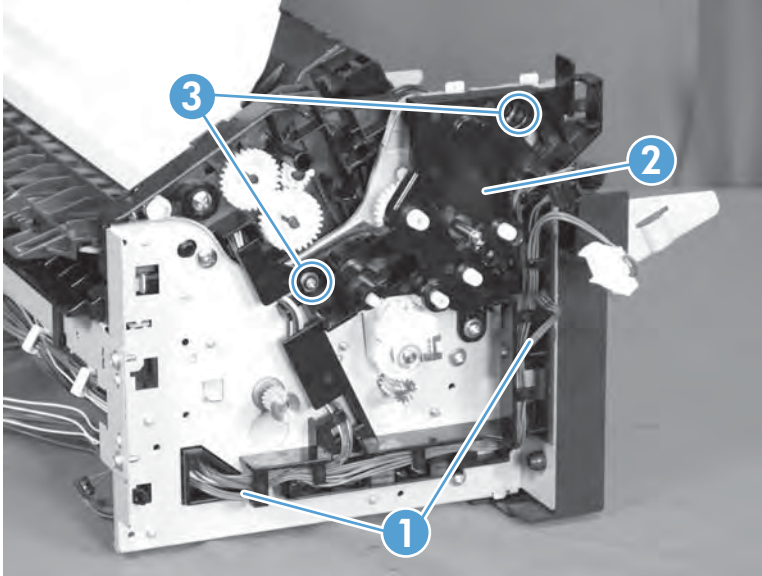
**Figure 1-1196** Remove the sensor flag (stapling mailbox)



10. Release the wire harnesses (callout 1) from the guide (callout 2), remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the guide (callout 2).

**⚠ CAUTION:** Not all of the gears behind the guide are captive. Make sure that they are not dislodged when the guide is removed.

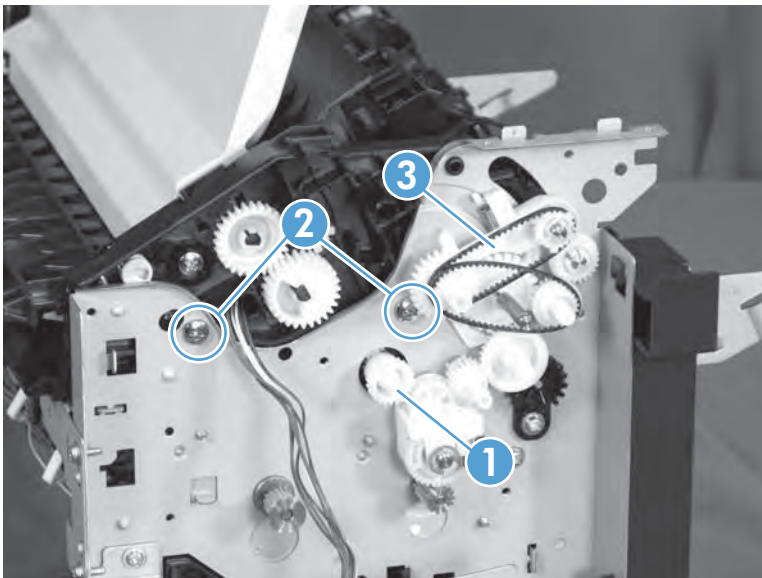
**Figure 1-1197** Remove the guide (stapling mailbox)



11. Remove one gear (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

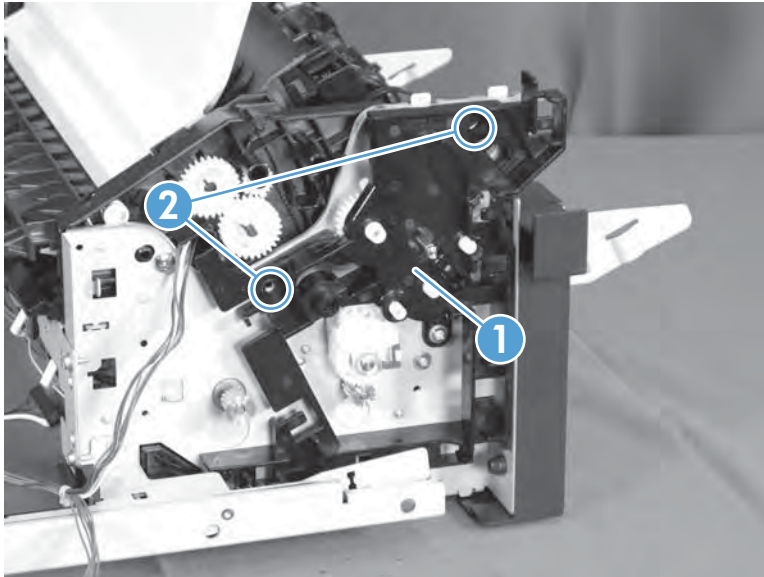
**⚠ CAUTION:** Not all of the gears are captive. Make sure that they are not dislodged.

**Figure 1-1198** Remove one gear (stapling mailbox)



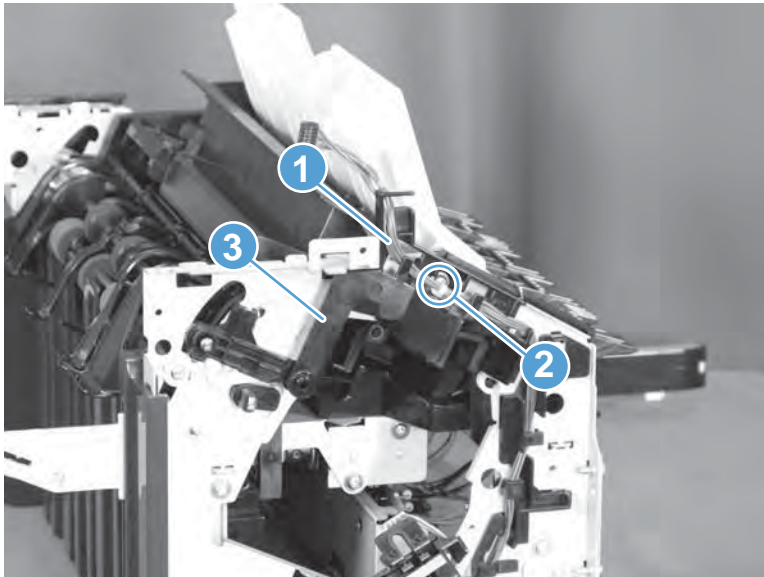
12. Replace the guide (callout 1), and then install two screws (callout 2) to secure it and prevent loose gears from becoming dislodged.

**Figure 1-1199** Replace the guide (stapling mailbox)



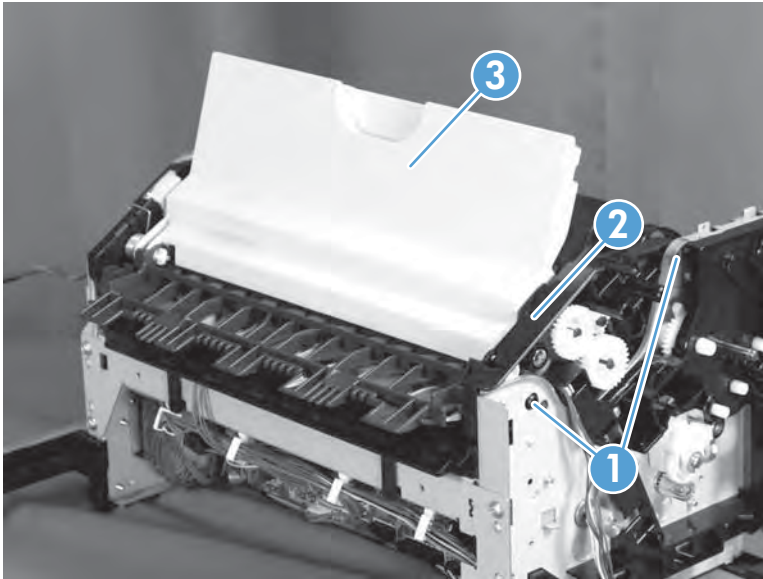
13. Release the wire harnesses (callout 1) from the guide (callout 2), and then remove the guide (callout 3).

**Figure 1-1200** Remove the guide (stapling mailbox)



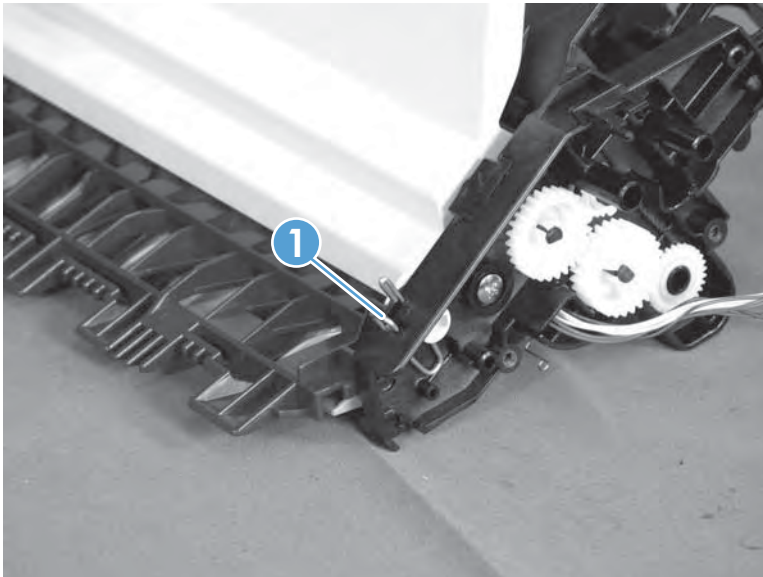
14. Release two bosses (callout 1), and then remove the stage top assembly (callout 2) and the right door (callout 3) together.

**Figure 1-1201** Remove the stage top assembly and right door (stapling mailbox)



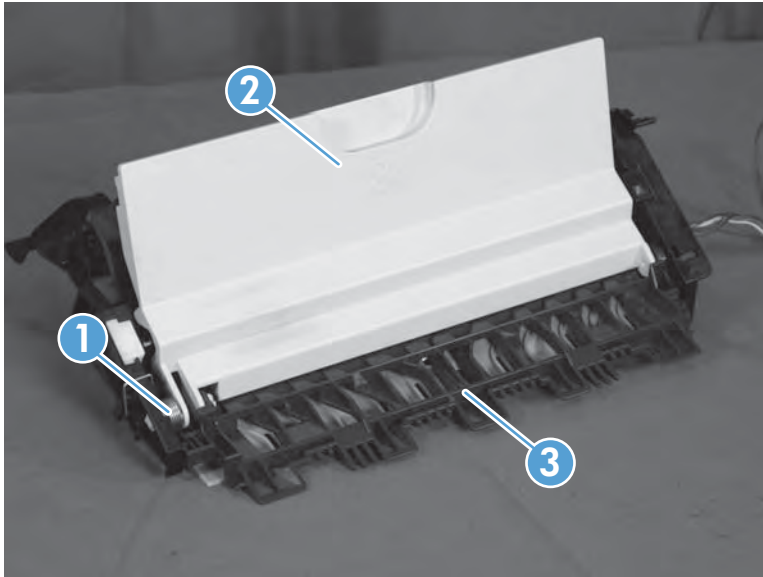
15. Remove the stopper (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1202** Remove the stopper (stapling mailbox)



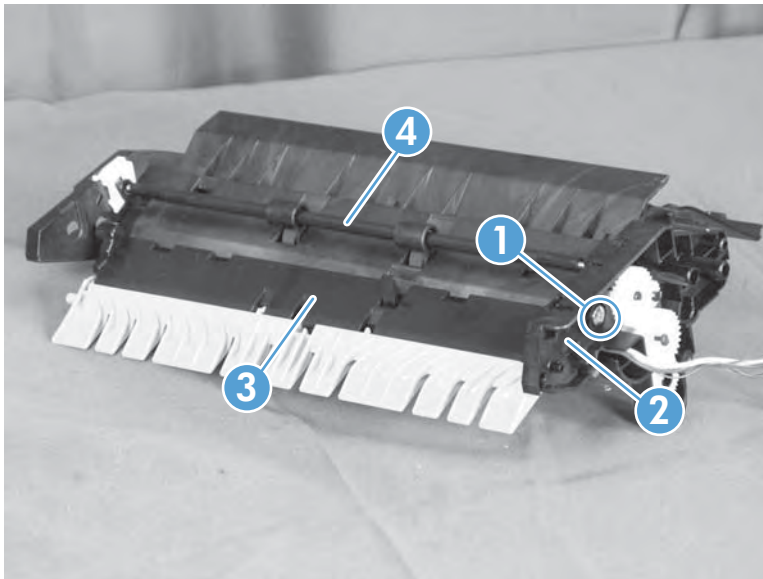
16. Remove one spring (callout 1), and then remove the right door (callout 2) and the inlet guide (callout 3) together.

**Figure 1-1203** Remove the right door and inlet guide (stapling mailbox)



17. Remove one screw (callout 1), remove the bushing (callout 2), and then remove the paper feed guide (callout 3) from the stage top assembly (callout 4).

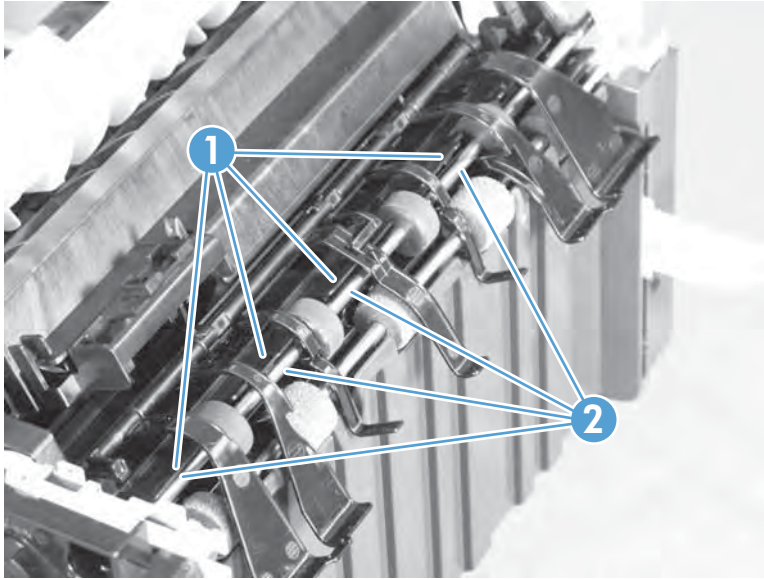
**Figure 1-1204** Remove the paper feed guide (stapling mailbox)



### Install the stage top assembly

When installing the stage top assembly, make sure to insert the guide (callout 1) of the assembly **under** the shaft (callout 2) of the output bin 3 upper delivery roller.

**Figure 1-1205** Install the stage top assembly (stapling mailbox)



## Stage assembly (stapling mailbox)

### Remove the following assemblies:

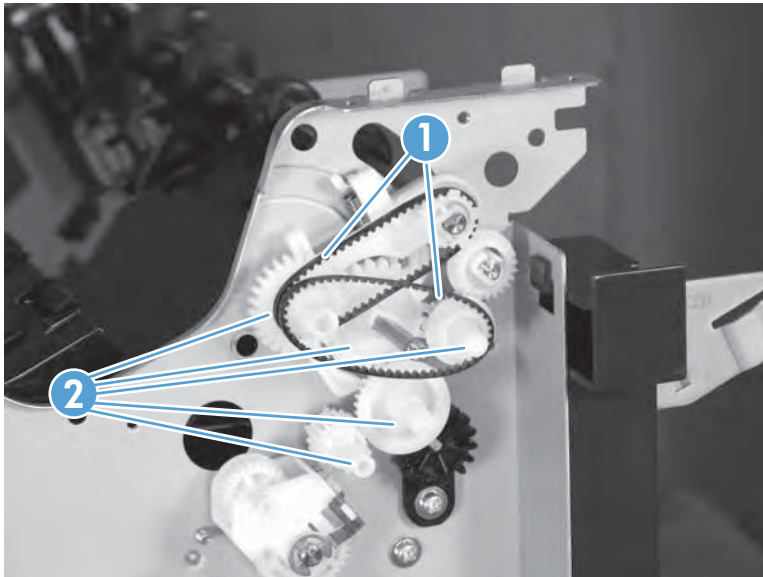
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 733](#).
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See [Rear cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 734](#).
- Handle assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Handle assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 735](#).
- Top cover (stapling mailbox). See [Top cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 737](#).
- Output bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox). See [Output bin sensor printed-circuit assembly \(PCA\) \(stapling mailbox\) on page 744](#).
- Stapler assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Stapler assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 745](#).
- Jogger assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Jogger assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 746](#).
- Output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox). See [Output bin solenoid \(stapling mailbox\) on page 747](#).
- Output bin assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Output bin assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 749](#).
- Stage top assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Stage top assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 751](#).

### Remove the stage assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

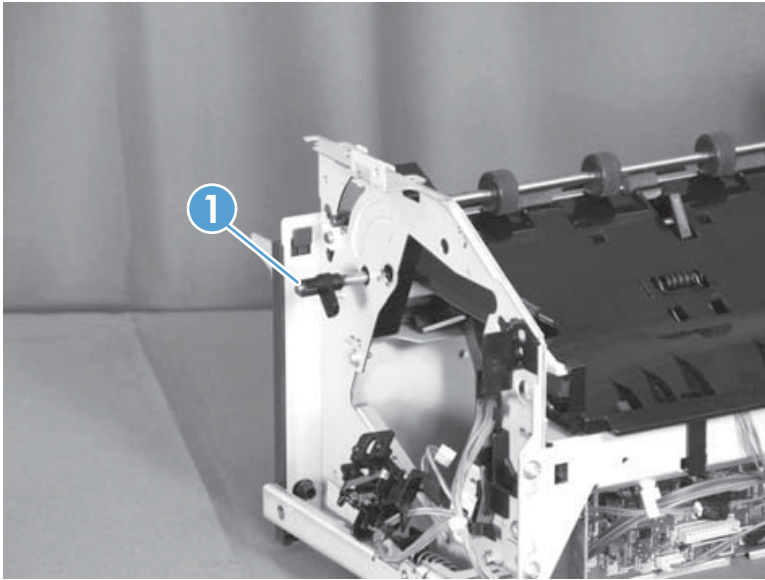
1. Remove two belts (callout 1), and then remove five gears (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1206** Remove two belts and five gears (stapling mailbox)



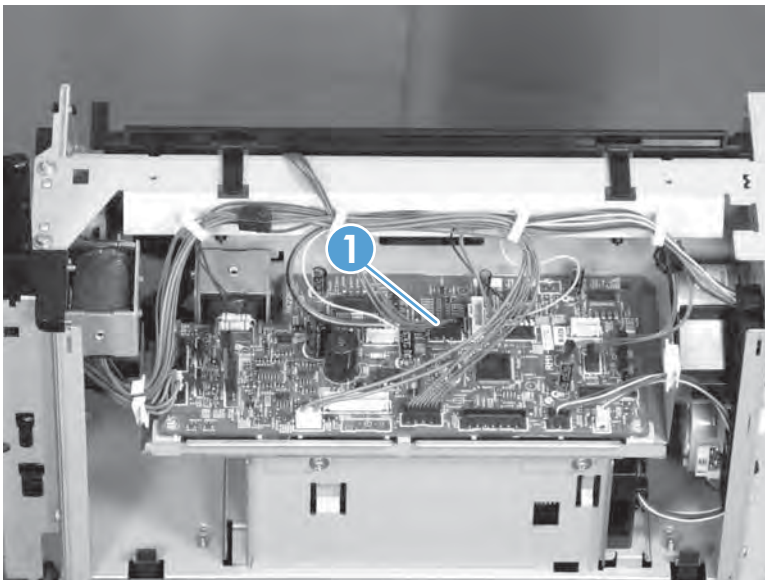
2. Pull out the shaft (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1207** Pull out the shaft (stapling mailbox)



3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

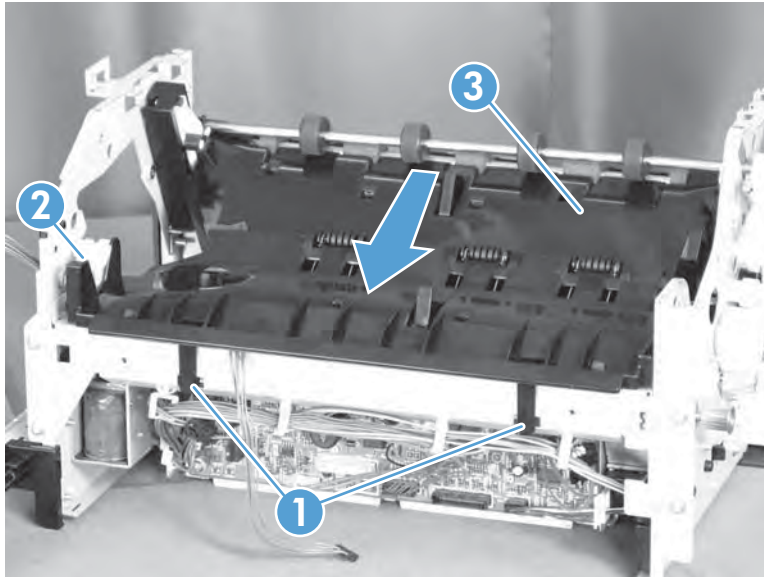
**Figure 1-1208** Disconnect one connector (stapling mailbox)





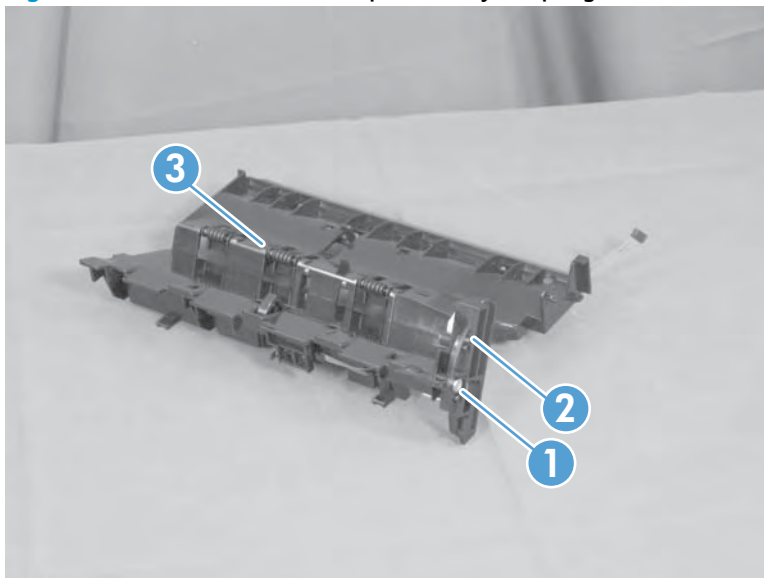
4. Release two tabs (callout 1), remove the solenoid arm (callout 2), and then slide the stage assembly (callout 3) as shown below to remove it.

**Figure 1-1209** Remove the stage assembly (stapling mailbox)



5. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the stamp assembly (callout 2) from the stage assembly (callout 3).

**Figure 1-1210** Remove the stamp assembly (stapling mailbox)



## Output bin 3 drive assembly (stapling mailbox)

### Remove the following assemblies:

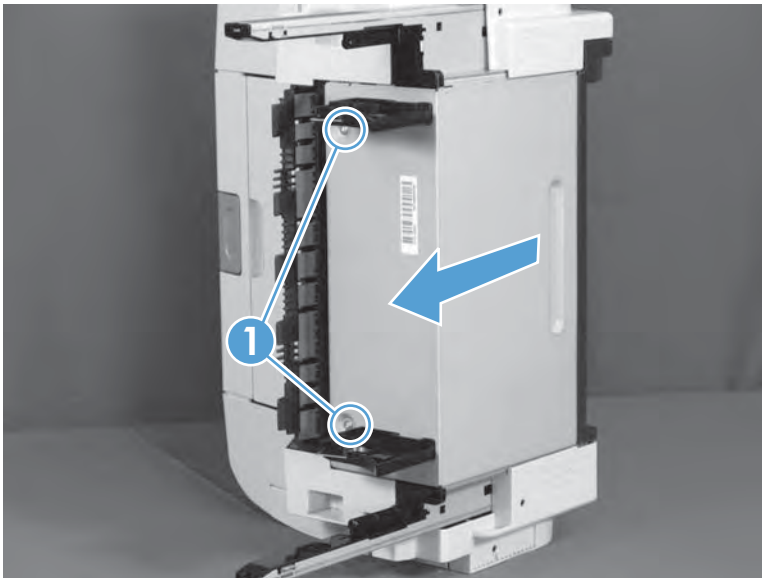
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 733](#).
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See [Rear cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 734](#).
- Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox). See [Output bin 3 \(stapling mailbox\) on page 738](#).
- Output bin assembly cover (stapling mailbox). See [Output bin assembly cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 740](#).

### Remove the output bin 3 drive assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

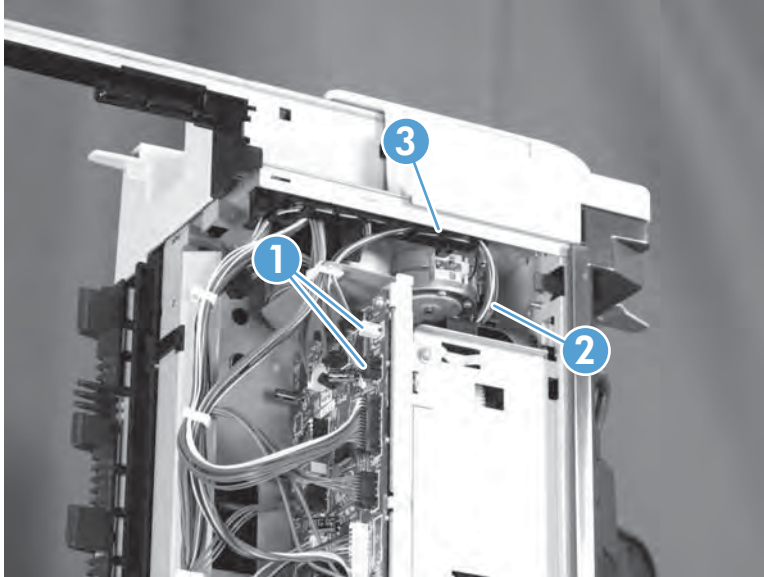
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the PCA cover away from the stapling mailbox chassis to remove it.

**Figure 1-1211** Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox)



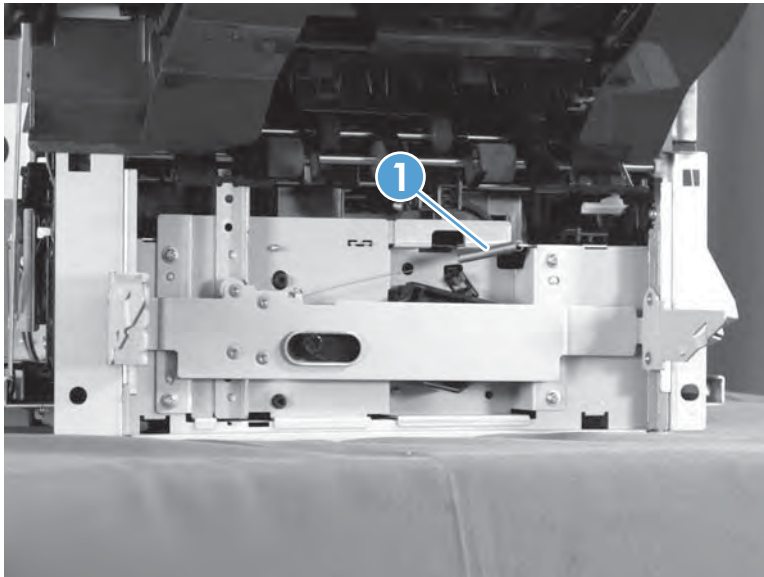
2. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses (callout 2) from the guide (callout 3).

**Figure 1-1212** Disconnect two connectors (stapling mailbox)



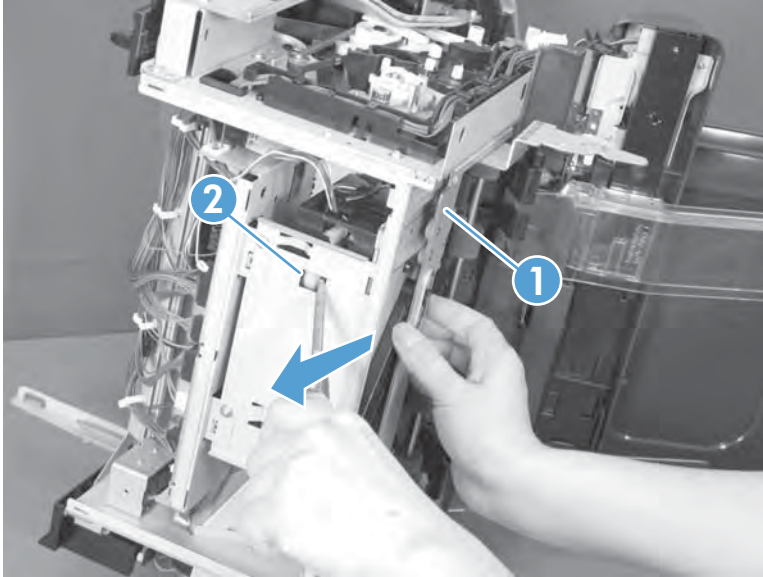
3. Remove one spring (callout 1).

**Figure 1-1213** Remove one spring (stapling mailbox)



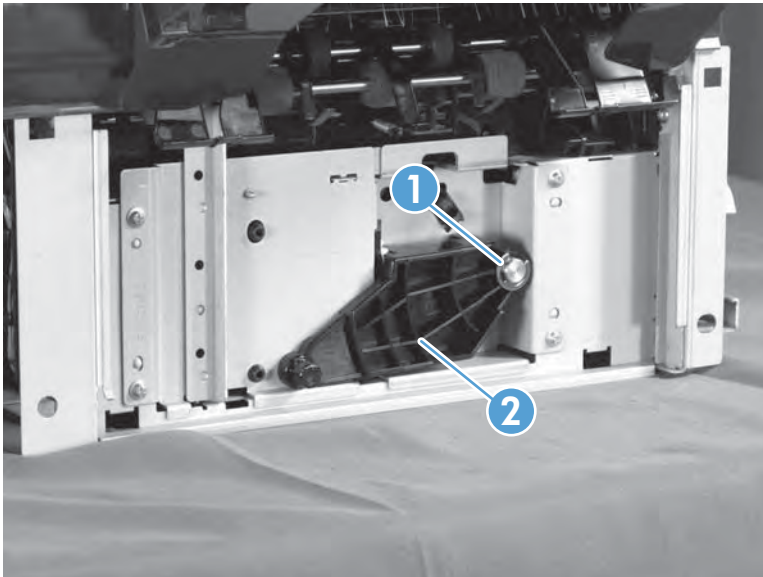
4. Use a screw driver to disengage the gear (callout 1), and then slide the tray support (callout 2) as shown below to remove it.

**Figure 1-1214** Remove the tray support (stapling mailbox)



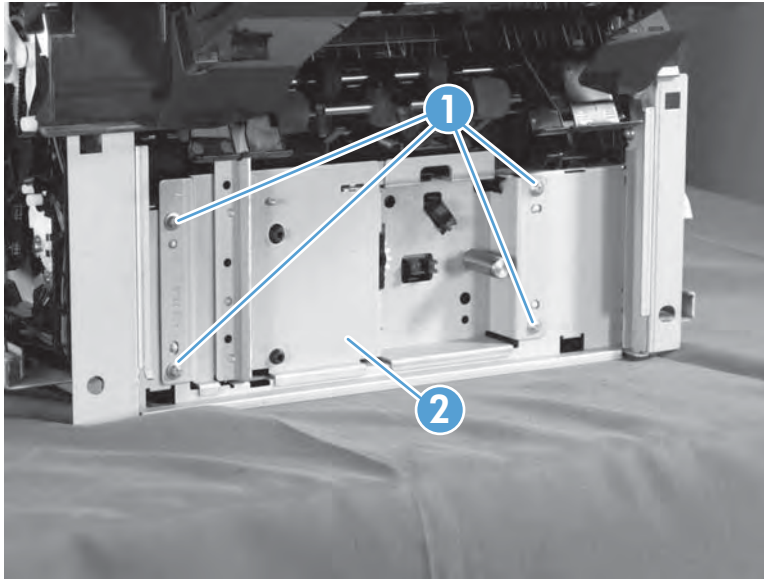
5. Remove one e-ring (callout 1), and then remove the lifter lever (callout 2).

**Figure 1-1215** Remove the lifter lever (stapling mailbox)



6. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the output bin 3 drive assembly.

**Figure 1-1216** Remove the output bin 3 drive assembly (stapling mailbox)





---

## 2 Parts and diagrams

- [For additional service and support information](#)
- [Order parts, accessories, and supplies](#)
- [How to use the parts lists and diagrams](#)
- [Document feeder and scanner components](#)
- [Document feeder components](#)
- [Scanner control board \(SCB\)](#)
- [Control panel](#)
- [Covers](#)
- [Upper plate assembly](#)
- [Internal components](#)
- [1x500-sheet paper feeder](#)
- [1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet](#)
- [2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder](#)
- [Stapling mailbox](#)
- [Envelope feeder](#)
- [Alphabetical parts list](#)
- [Numerical parts list](#)

## For additional service and support information

HP service personnel, go to the Link Service Access Work Bench (SAW) at <http://h41302.www4.hp.com/km/saw/home.do>.

Channel partners, go to Link HP Channel Services Network (CNS) at <https://h30125.www3.hp.com/hpcsn>.

- Install and configure
- Product specifications
- Up to date control-panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting
- Solutions for product issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Service advisories
- Warranty & regulatory information



# Order parts, accessories, and supplies

Use the following list to locate part number and ordering information for the product:

- Information on where to order parts  
See [Ordering information on page 771](#).
- Related documentation available for the product  
See [Related documentation on page 771](#).
- Part numbers for supplies  
See [Supplies part numbers on page 772](#).
- Part numbers for both customer-replaceable and service-replaceable kits  
See [Customer self-repair kits on page 772](#) and [Service replacement kits on page 774](#).
- Part numbers for accessories  
See [Accessories on page 775](#).

## Ordering information

**Table 2-1 Ordering information**

Order supplies and paper	<a href="http://www.hp.com/go/suresupply">www.hp.com/go/suresupply</a>
Order genuine HP parts or accessories	<a href="http://www.hp.com/buy/parts">www.hp.com/buy/parts</a>
Order through service or support providers	Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.
Order using HP software	For information about using the HP software to order parts, accessories, and supplies, see the product user guide.

## Related documentation

**Table 2-2 Related documentation and software**

Item	Description	Part number
<i>HP LaserJet Enterprise M630 User Guide</i>	Product user guide	B3G84-90904
<i>HP LaserJet Enterprise M630 Repair Manual</i>	English repair manual	Not applicable
<i>HP LaserJet Enterprise M630 Troubleshooting Manual</i>	English troubleshooting manual	Not applicable

## Supplies part numbers

**Table 2-3 Supplies part numbers**

Item	Description	Part number
HP LaserJet toner cartridges	High-capacity toner cartridge	CF281X (new) CF281-67902 (service)
	Standard-capacity toner cartridge	CF281A (new) CF281-67901 (service)

## Customer self-repair kits

Following are the customer-replaceable kits available for the product. Each kit includes parts and installation instructions.

The customer self-repair (CSR) level indicates the expected difficulty the customer will experience when replacing this part:

- **A:** Easy
- **B:** Difficult

**Table 2-4 Customer self-repair kits**

Item	Description	CSR level	Part number
Control panel replacement kit	• Control panel assembly	A	B3G84-67908
Stapling mailbox replacement kit	• 900-sheet, 3-bin stapling mailbox	A	B3M76-67902
Staple cartridge replacement kit	• HP staple cartridge refill	A	C8085-60541
1x500-sheet paper feeder kit	• 500-sheet paper feeder	A	B3M73-67902
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet kit	• 500-sheet paper feeder and cabinet	A	B3M74-67902
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder kit	• 2,500-sheet paper feeder	A	B3M75-67902
Envelope feeder kit	• Envelope feeder	A	B3G87-67902
HP LaserJet postcard media insert tray kit	• HP LaserJet postcard media insert tray	A	CC497-67902
Duplex assembly kit	• Duplex assembly	A	B3G84-67903
Formatter assembly kit	• Formatter printed circuit assembly (PCA)	A	B3G85-67901
	• Formatter tray with fax opening		
	• Formatter extension cover bracket		

**Table 2-4 Customer self-repair kits (continued)**

Item	Description	CSR level	Part number
Formatter assembly kit (India/China only)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Formatter printed circuit assembly (PCA)</li> <li>• Formatter tray with fax opening</li> <li>• Formatter extension cover bracket</li> </ul>	A	B3G85-67902
Hard disk drive kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 320 GB encrypted hard disk drive</li> <li>• Cradle</li> </ul>	B	B3G85-67903
Hard disk drive kit (U.S. government only)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• FIPS HDD 500 GB hard disk drive</li> <li>• Cradle</li> </ul>	B	B3G85-67904
Solid-state memory (SSM) kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 8 GB SSM module</li> <li>• Retainer bracket</li> </ul>	B	B3G84-67907
1 GB memory DIMM kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1 GB memory DIMM</li> </ul>	A	B3G84-67910
2 GB memory DIMM kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 2 GB memory DIMM</li> </ul>	A	B3G84-67909
Fax card kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 500</li> </ul>	A	A2W77-67910
USB wireless print server kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jetdirect 2700w USB Wireless Print Server</li> </ul>	A	J8026-61001
NFC accessory kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• HP Jetdirect 2800w NFC &amp; Wireless Direct Accessory</li> </ul>	A	J8029-61001
Fuser service kit (110V)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 110V Fuser</li> </ul>	A	B3M77-67903
Fuser service kit (220V)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 220V Fuser</li> </ul>	A	B3M78-67903
Fuser entrance guide kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Face-up open guide assembly</li> </ul>	A	B3G84-67904
Tray 1 roller kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Paper pickup, feed, and separation rollers for Tray 1</li> </ul>	B	B3G84-67906
Tray 2–5 roller kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Paper pickup and feed rollers for Trays 2–5</li> </ul>	A	B3G84-67905
Transfer roller kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Transfer roller</li> </ul>	A	B3G84-67901
ADF roller maintenance kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Document feeder roller</li> <li>• Document feeder separation pad</li> </ul>	A	L2725-60002
ADF separation pad spring kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Document feeder separation pad spring</li> </ul>	A	5851-4879
ADF white backing kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• White backing for the document feeder</li> <li>• Mylar strips</li> </ul>	A	5851-6084
Backside background selector kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Backside background selector for the document feeder</li> </ul>	A	5851-5022
Service maintenance kit (110V)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 110V Fuser</li> <li>• Transfer roller</li> <li>• Tray 2–5 pickup and feed rollers</li> </ul>	A	B3M77-67902
Service maintenance kit (220V)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 220V Fuser</li> <li>• Transfer roller</li> <li>• Tray 2–5 pickup and feed rollers</li> </ul>	A	B3M78-67902

**Table 2-4 Customer self-repair kits (continued)**

Item	Description	CSR level	Part number
U.S. English keyboard kit (M630z)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>U.S. English keyboard</li> </ul>	A	5851-5380
U.K. English keyboard kit (M630z)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>U.K. English keyboard</li> </ul>	A	5851-5008
Keyboard overlay kit (M630z)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Keyboard overlay</li> </ul>	A	5851-6019 (FR, IT, RU, DE, ES: UK Kybd) 5851-6020 (FR-CN, ES-LA, ES: US Kybd) 5851-6021 (FR-SW, DE-SW, DA: UK Kybd) 5851-6022 (ZHTW, ZHCN) 5851-6023 (ES, PT) 5851-6024 (JA-KG, JA-KT)

## Service replacement kits

Following are the service replacement kits available for the product that include installation instructions. These kits are not customer-replaceable and must be installed by authorized service providers.

See the diagrams and parts lists following [How to use the parts lists and diagrams on page 776](#) for a complete listing of all service parts available for the product.

**Table 2-5 Service replacement kits**

Item	Description	Part number
Front cover assembly kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Front cover</li> <li>Nameplate</li> <li>Jewel</li> </ul>	B3G85-67905
Mylar kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mylar strips</li> </ul>	B3G86-67903
Scanner control board (SCB) kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Scanner control board</li> </ul>	B3G86-67904
ADF whole unit kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ADF whole unit</li> <li>ADF white backing</li> </ul>	B3G86-67901
Image scanner whole unit kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Image scanner whole unit</li> <li>ADF white backing</li> <li>Mylar strips</li> </ul>	B3G86-67905

## Accessories


**Table 2-6 Accessories**


Item	Description	Part number
1x500-sheet paper feeder	500-sheet paper feeder accessory	B3M73A (new)
		B3M73-67902 (service)
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet	500-sheet paper feeder and storage cabinet accessory	B3M74A (new)
		B3M74-67902 (service)
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder	2,500-sheet paper feeder accessory	B3M75A (new)
		B3M75-67902 (service)
Stapling mailbox	900-sheet, 3-bin stapling mailbox accessory	B3M76A (new)
		B3M76-67902 (service)
Envelope feeder	Envelope feeder accessory	B3G87A (new)
		B3G87-67902 (service)
HP LaserJet postcard media insert tray	Tray insert for printing small-size paper	CC497A (new)
		CC497-67902 (service)
HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 500	Analog fax accessory	CC487A (new)
		A2W77-67910 (service)
HP Jetdirect 2700w USB wireless print server	Accessory for wireless printing	J8026A (new)
		J8026-61001 (service)
HP Jetdirect 2800w NFC/wireless direct accessory	Wireless direct accessory for “touch” printing from mobile devices	J8029A (new)
		J8029-61001 (service)

## How to use the parts lists and diagrams

The figures in this chapter show the major subassemblies in the product and their component parts. A parts list table follows each exploded view assembly diagram. Each table lists the item number, the associated part number, and the description of each part. If a part is not listed in the table, then it is not a field replacement unit (FRU).

---

 **CAUTION:** Be sure to order the correct part. When looking for part numbers for electrical components, pay careful attention to the voltage that is listed in the description column. Doing so will ensure that the part number selected is for the correct model.

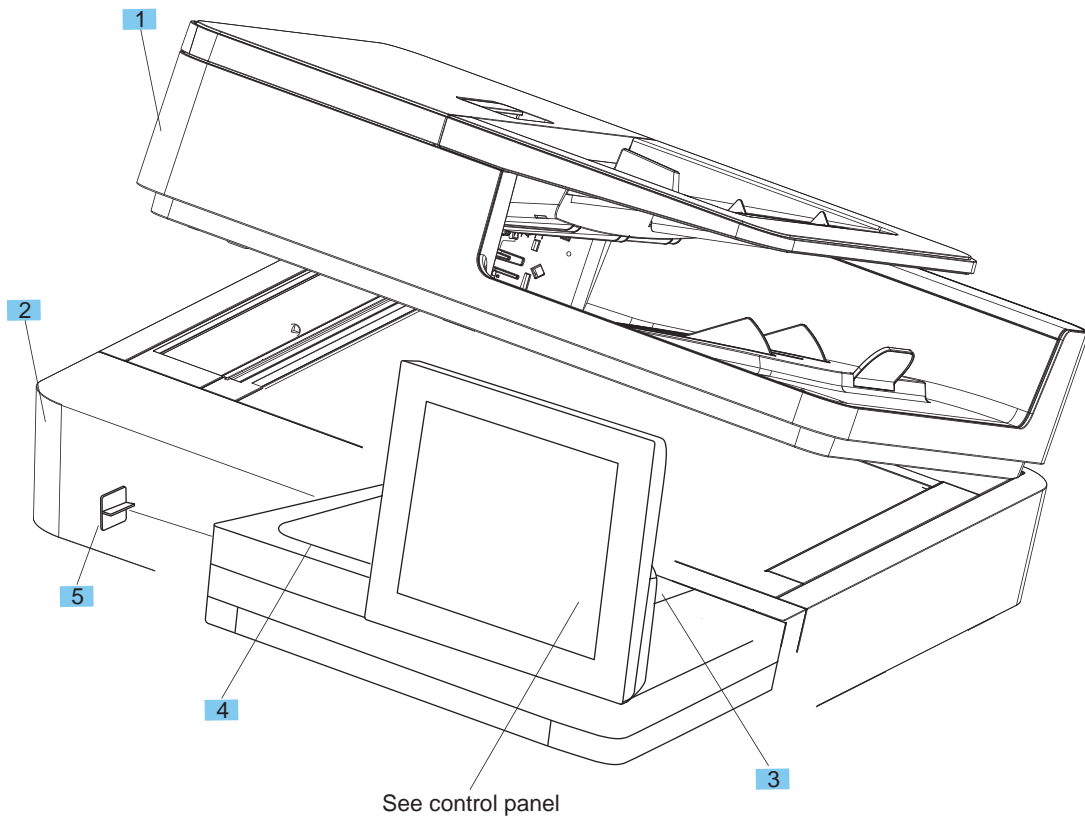
 **NOTE:** In this manual, the abbreviation “PCA” stands for “printed circuit-board assembly.” Components described as a PCA might consist of a single circuit board or a circuit board plus other parts, such as cables and sensors.

---



# Document feeder and scanner components

Figure 2-1 Document feeder and scanner components





**Table 2-7 Document feeder and scanner components**

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Kit, document feeder, complete with white backing <sup>1</sup>	B3G86-67901	1
2	Kit, image scanner assembly, complete with white backing <sup>2</sup>	B3G86-67905	1
3	Cover, control panel access	5042-9118	1
4	Cover, HIP	5851-5361	1
5	Cover, USB	5851-5360	1

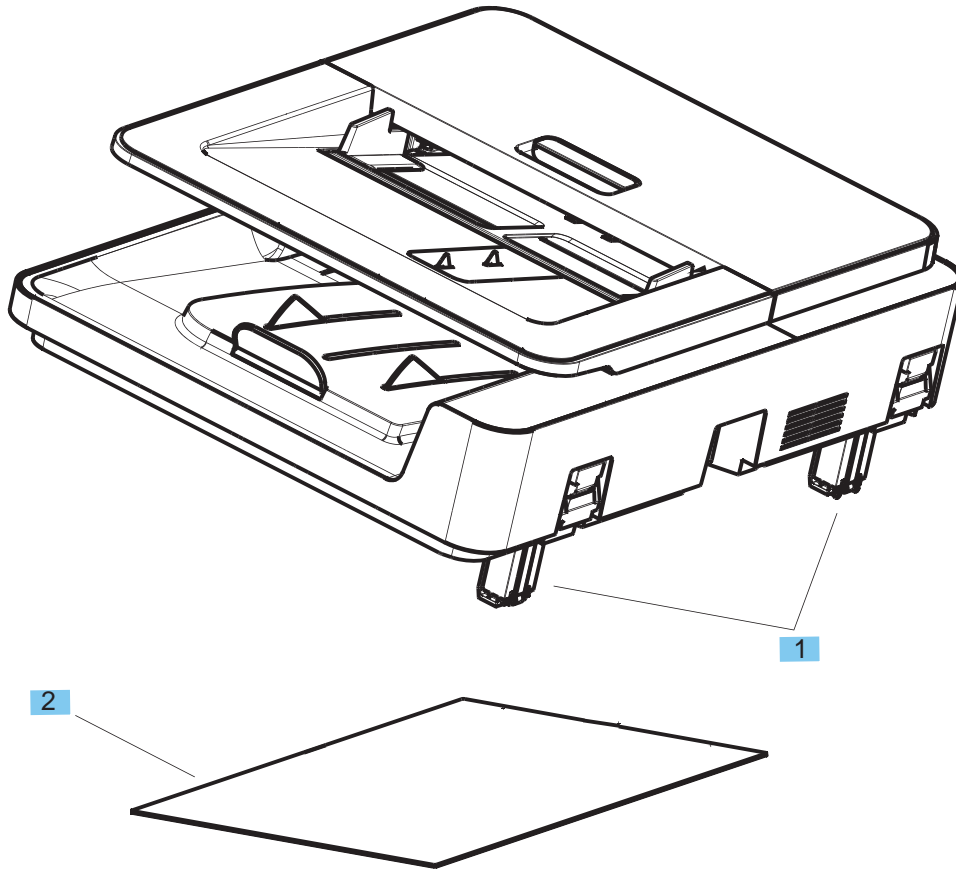
<sup>1</sup> When the document feeder assembly is replaced, use the [Service](#) menu to set the [Document feeder Kit Interval](#), [ADF Count](#), and [Clean Rollers Count](#) values to zero.

<sup>2</sup> When the image scanner assembly is replaced, use the [Service](#) menu to set the [Flatbed Count](#) value to zero.

# Document feeder components

## Document feeder components (1 of 2)

Figure 2-2 Document feeder components (1 of 2)

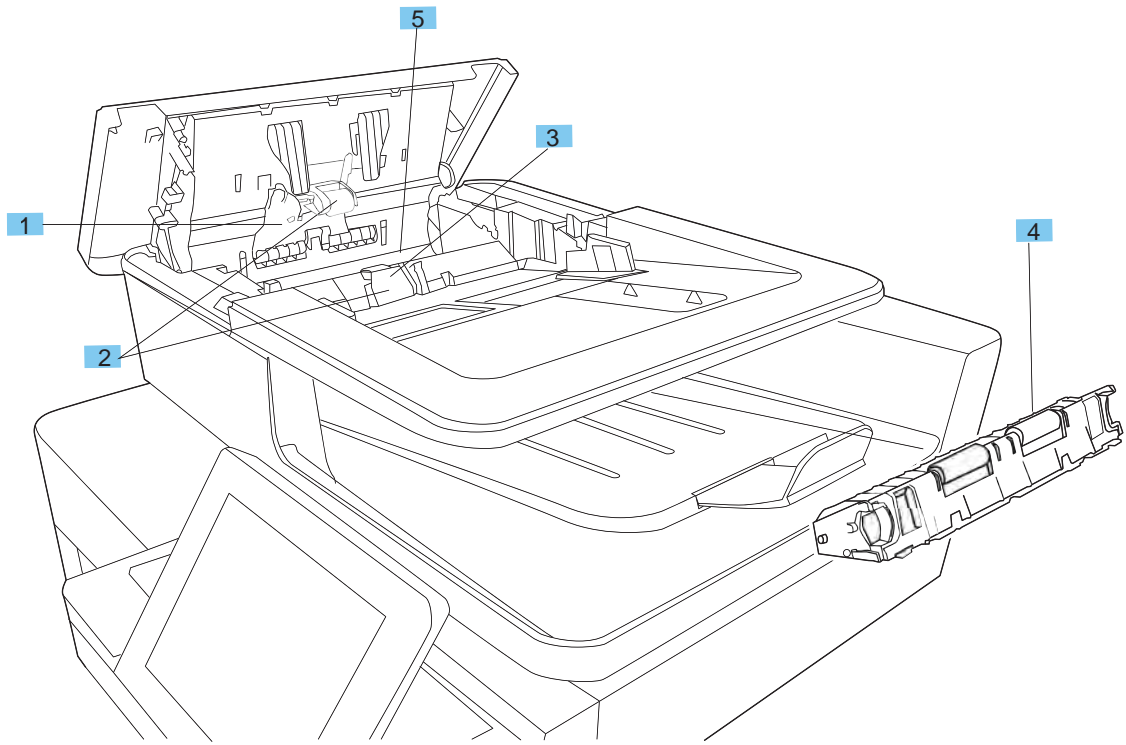


**Table 2-8 Document feeder components (1 of 2)**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
1	Assembly, Hinge HR	B4A39-60008	2
2	Kit, ADF white backing	5851-6084	1

## Document feeder components (2 of 2)

Figure 2-3 Document feeder components (2 of 2)

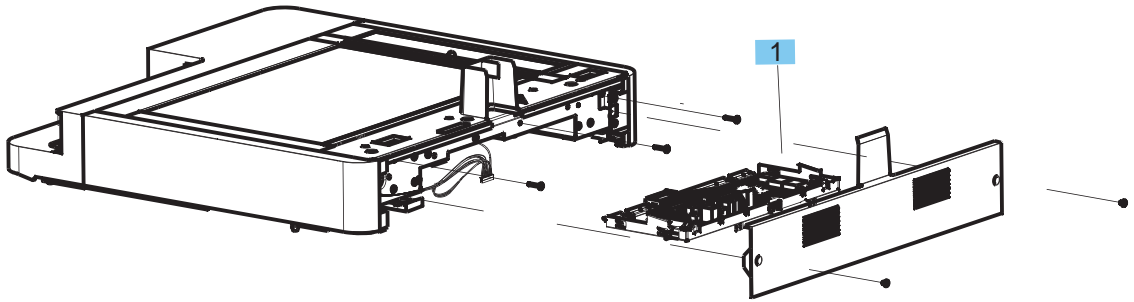


**Table 2-9 Document feeder components (2 of 2)**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
1	Cover, document-feeder roller	CC355-40013	1
2	Kit, ADF roller maintenance (includes roller and separation pad)	L2725-60002	1
3	Kit, ADF separation pad spring	5851-4879	1
4	Kit, background selector for backside scan	5851-5022	1
5	Kit, document feeder mylar strip	B3G86-67903	2

# Scanner control board (SCB)

Figure 2-4 Scanner control board (SCB)

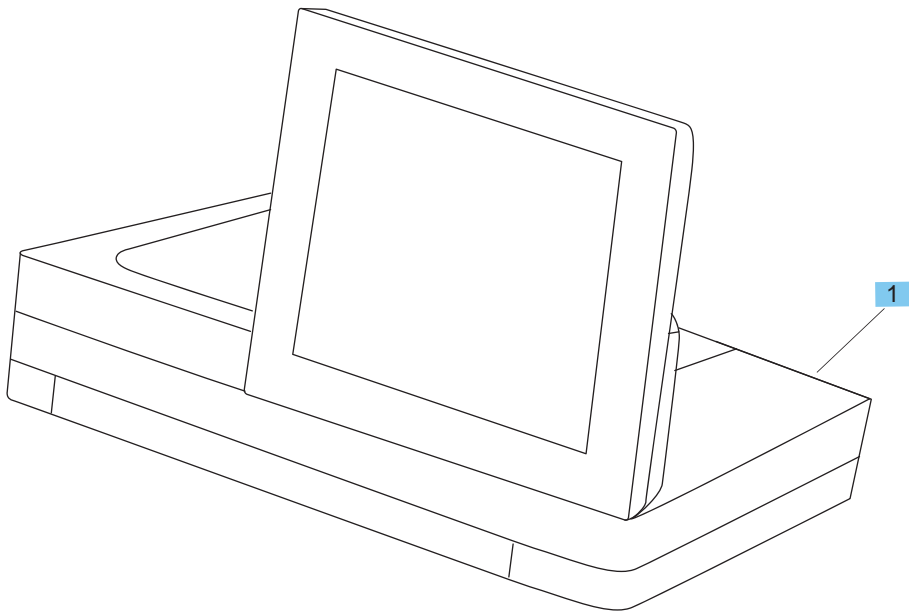


**Table 2-10 Scanner control board (SCB)**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
1	Scanner control board	B3G86-67904	1
Not shown	Cable, SCB wire harness	B3G84-60109	1
Not shown	Cable, SCB right	B3G84-60107	1
Not shown	Cable, SCB left	B3G84-60108	1

# Control panel

Figure 2-5 Control panel



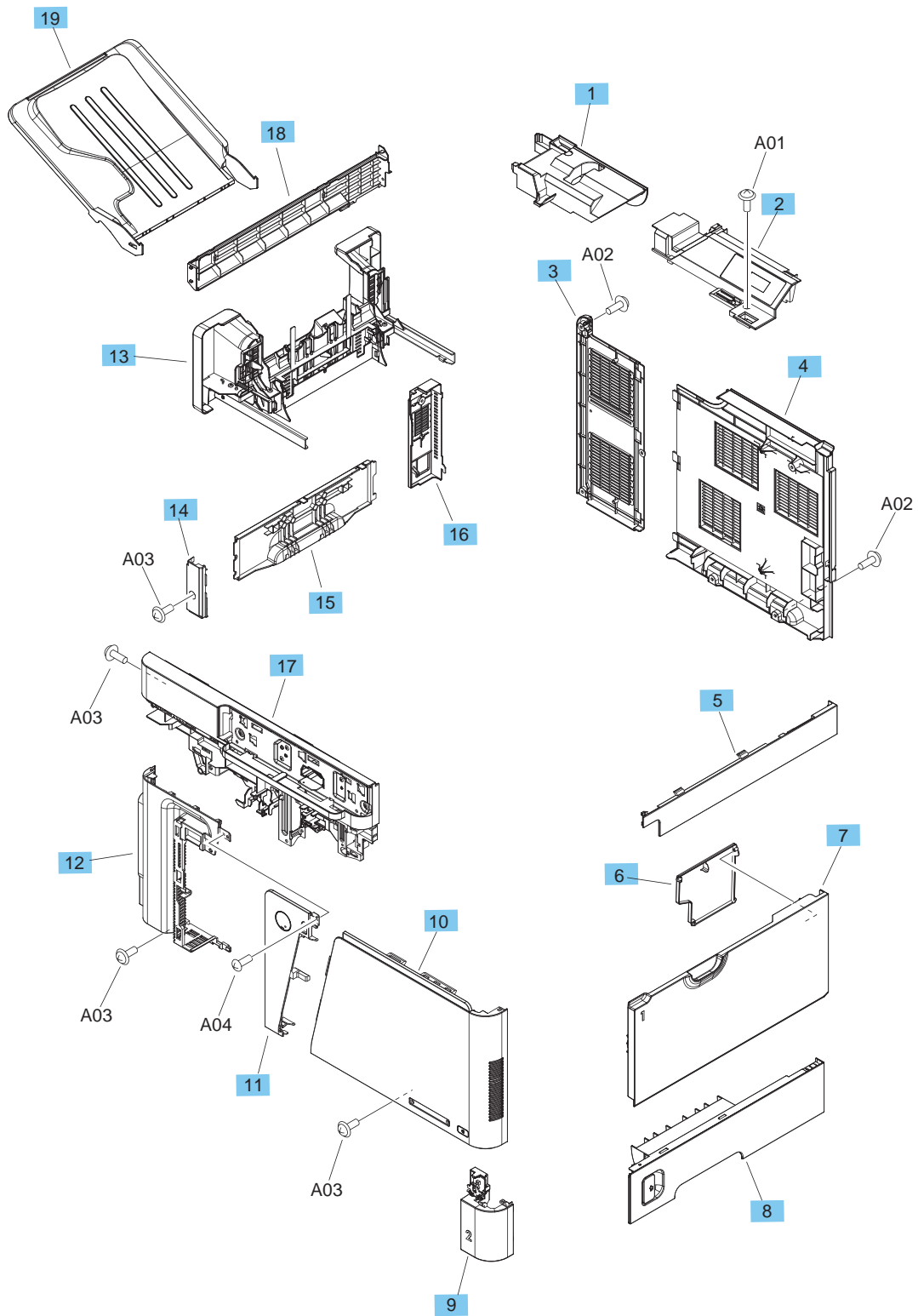


**Table 2-11 Control panel**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
1	Kit, control panel (without keyboard)	B3G84-67908	1
Not shown	Thumbscrew, control panel	5851-0660	1
Not shown	Kit, U.S. English keyboard (M630z)	5851-5380	1
Not shown	Kit, U.K. English keyboard (M630z)	5851-5008	1

# Covers

Figure 2-6 Covers

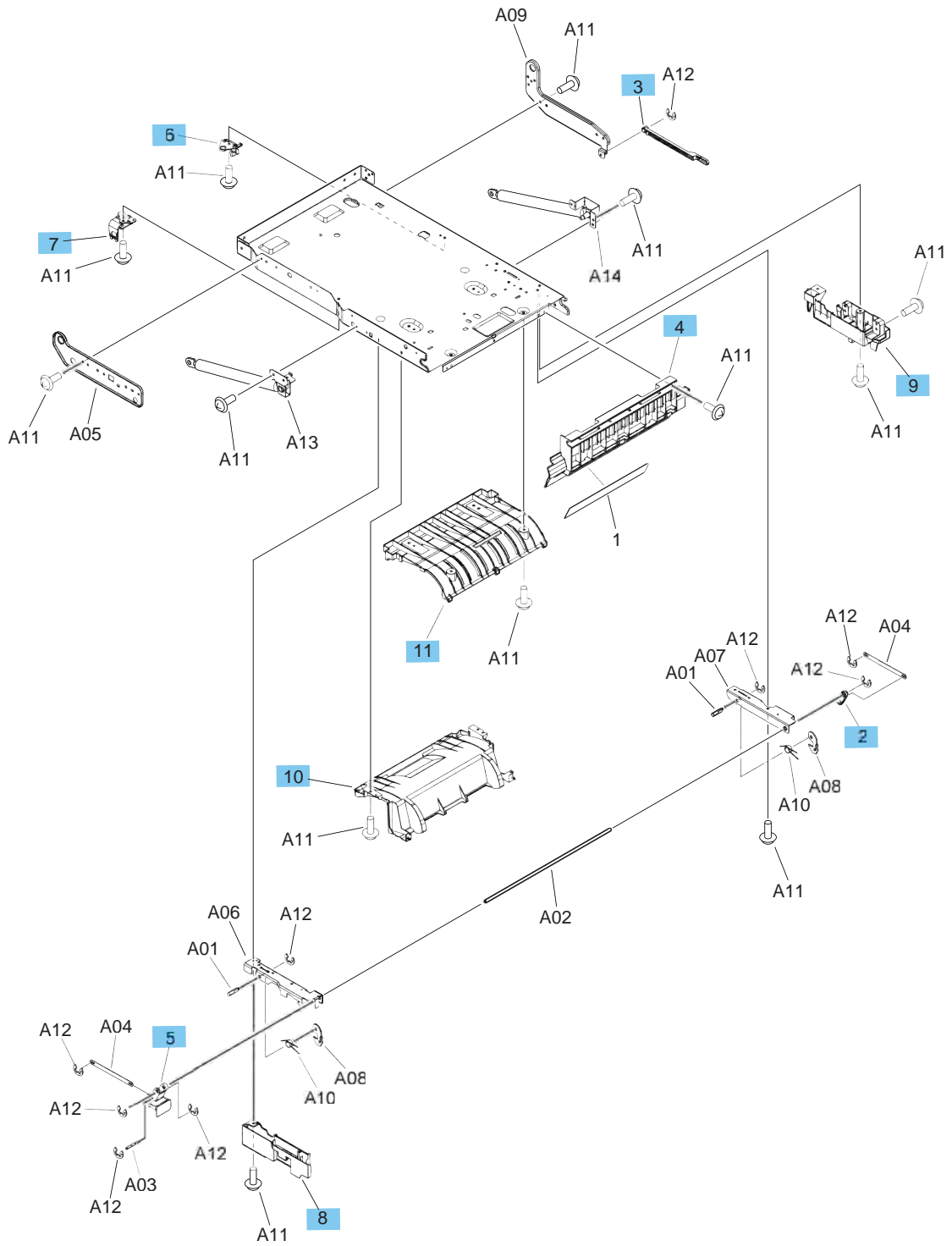


**Table 2-12 Covers**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
1	Cover, IS cable	RC4-1575-000CN	1
2	Cover, rear top	RC4-1574-000CN	1
3	Cover, rear left	RC4-5692-000CN	1
4	Cover, rear right	RL2-0999-000CN	1
5	Cover, IS right	RC4-1527-000CN	1
6	Cover, MP (Tray 1) inner	RC4-3948-000CN	1
7	Assembly, MP (Tray 1) cover	RM2-5816-000CN	1
8	Assembly, right lower door	RM2-5820-000CN	1
9	Assembly, power switch	RM2-5818-000CN	1
10	Kit, front cover assembly	B3G85-67905	1
11	Panel, logo	RL2-1000-000CN	1
12	Cover, front left	RC4-1515-000CN	1
13	Assembly, tray base (part of output bin assembly kit)	B3G84-69702	1
14	Cover, front left lower	RC4-5717-000CN	1
15	Cover, cassette (Tray 2) left	RC4-1573-000CN	1
16	Cover, side rear	RC4-5716-000CN	1
17	Assembly, front top cover	RM2-5814-000CN	1
18	Cover, IS left lower	RC4-5693-000CN	1
19	Assembly, paper delivery tray (part of output bin assembly kit)	B3G84-69702	1

# Upper plate assembly

Figure 2-7 Upper plate assembly



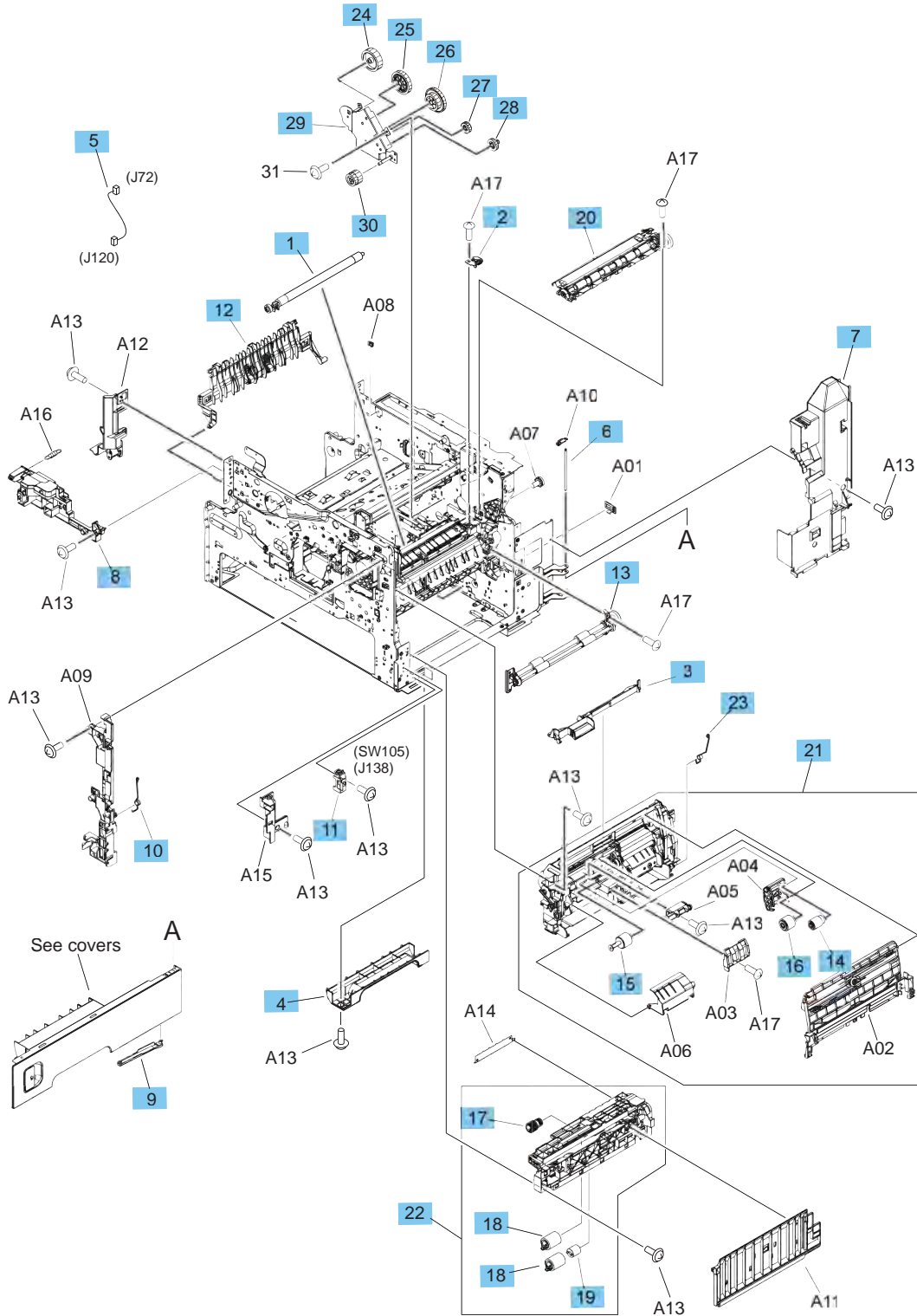
**Table 2-13 Upper plate assembly**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
2	Link, handle	RC1-2822-000CN	1
3	Rod, link	RC4-5729-000CN	1
4	Holder, shutter, light	RC4-5707-000CN	1
5	Handle, lock	RC4-5690-000CN	1
6	Block upper guide support, rear	RC4-1531-000CN	1
7	Block upper guide support, front	RC4-1530-000CN	1
8	Cover, IS lock, front	RC4-5721-000CN	1
9	Cover, IS lock, rear	RC4-1537-000CN	1
10	Guide, cartridge, upper	RC4-1529-000CN	1
11	Guide, legal	RC2-8029-000CN	1

# Internal components

## Internal components (1 of 5)

Figure 2-8 Internal components (1 of 5)

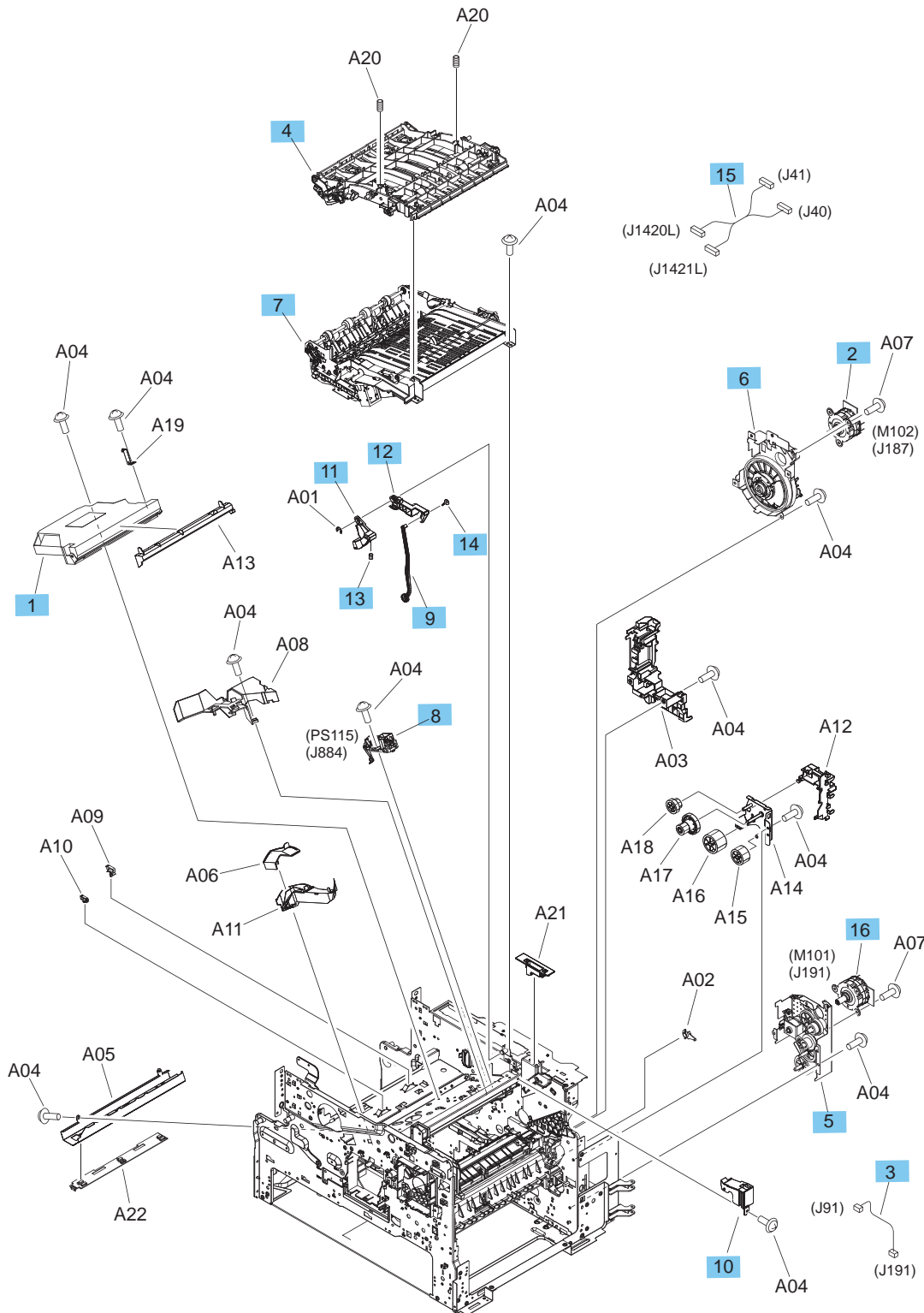


**Table 2-14 Internal components (1 of 5)**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
1	Kit, transfer roller	B3G84-67901	1
2	Assembly, grounding plate	RM1-5461-000CN	1
3	Cover, envelope	RL1-2831-000CN	1
4	Cover, handle right lower	RC4-5706-000CN	1
5	Cable, size detect (SW102)	RM1-7179-000CN	1
6	Shaft, right door hinge	RU5-4142-000CN	1
7	Cover, MP (Tray 1) gear	RC4-1572-000CN	1
8	Assembly, lifter base	RM1-5913-000CN	1
9	Rod, link	RC1-2902-000CN	1
10	Spring, torsion	RC2-8085-000CN	1
11	Assembly, right door sensor (SW105)	RM1-1045-000CN	1
12	Kit, fuser-entrance guide	B3G84-67904	1
13	Assembly, paper feed roller	RM1-8411-010CN	1
14	Roller, Tray 1 pickup (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	B3G84-67906	1
15	Roller, Tray 1 separation (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	B3G84-67906	1
16	Roller, Tray 1 feed (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	B3G84-67906	1
17	Roller, Tray 2 pickup (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	1
18	Roller, Tray 2 feed (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	2
19	Limiters, torque	RC1-3293-000CN	1
20	Assembly, registration	RM1-8413-000CN	1
21	Assembly, MP (Tray 1) pickup	RM2-5822-000CN	1
22	Assembly, paper pickup	RM1-5919-000CN	1
23	Spring, torsion	RC3-1470-000CN	1
24	Gear, 33T	RU7-0292-000CN	1
25	Gear, 35T	RU7-0303-000CN	1
26	Gear, 91T/25T	RU7-0290-000CN	1
27	Gear, 15T	RU7-0294-000CN	1
28	Gear, 17T	RU7-0293-000CN	1
29	Side plate, fuser drive	RL1-3024-000CN	1
30	Gear, 23T/19T	RU7-0295-000CN	1

## Internal components (2 of 5)

Figure 2-9 Internal components (2 of 5)



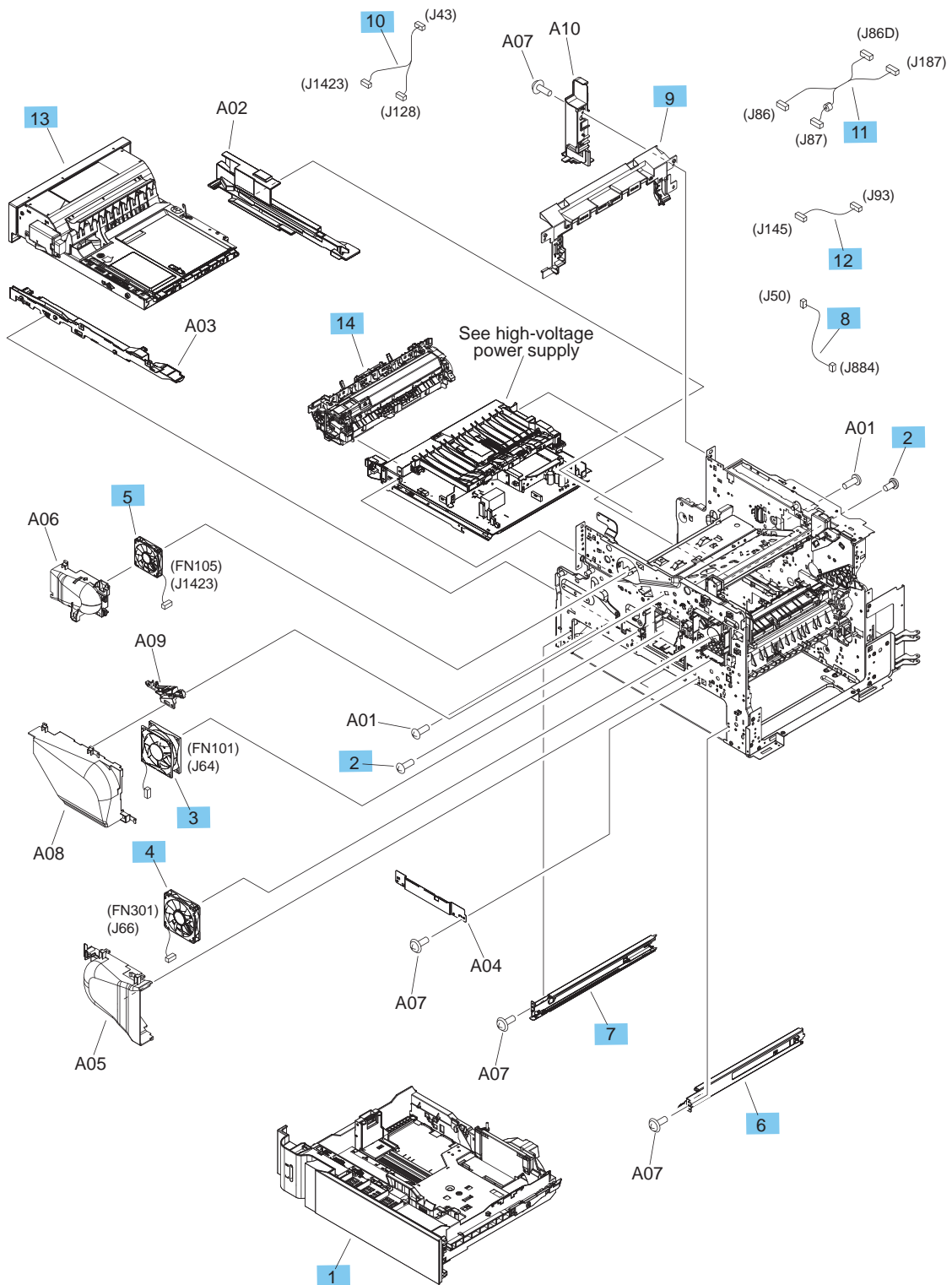


**Table 2-15 Internal components (2 of 5)**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
1	Assembly, laser/scanner	RM1-8406-000CN	1
2	Assembly, drum motor (M102)	RM1-8358-000CN	1
3	Assembly, feed motor cable	RM2-7470-000CN	1
4	Assembly, reverse guide	RM2-5810-000CN	1
5	Assembly, paper pickup drive	RM2-5804-000CN	1
6	Assembly, drum drive	RM2-5918-000CN	1
7	Assembly, reverse	RM2-5799-000CN	1
8	Assembly, cartridge sensor (PS115)	RM1-8323-000CN	1
9	Rod, release	RC2-8086-000CN	1
10	Cover, door arm	RC1-2833-000CN	1
11	Arm, door B	RC2-7967-000CN	1
12	Arm, door 1	RC4-5728-000CN	1
13	Spring, compression	RU5-2265-000CN	1
14	Stopper, bushing arm	RC1-3090-000CN	1
15	Assembly, reverse joint cable	RM2-7487-000CN	1
16	Assembly, feed motor (M101)	RM2-5942-000CN	1

## Internal components (3 of 5)

Figure 2-10 Internal components (3 of 5)

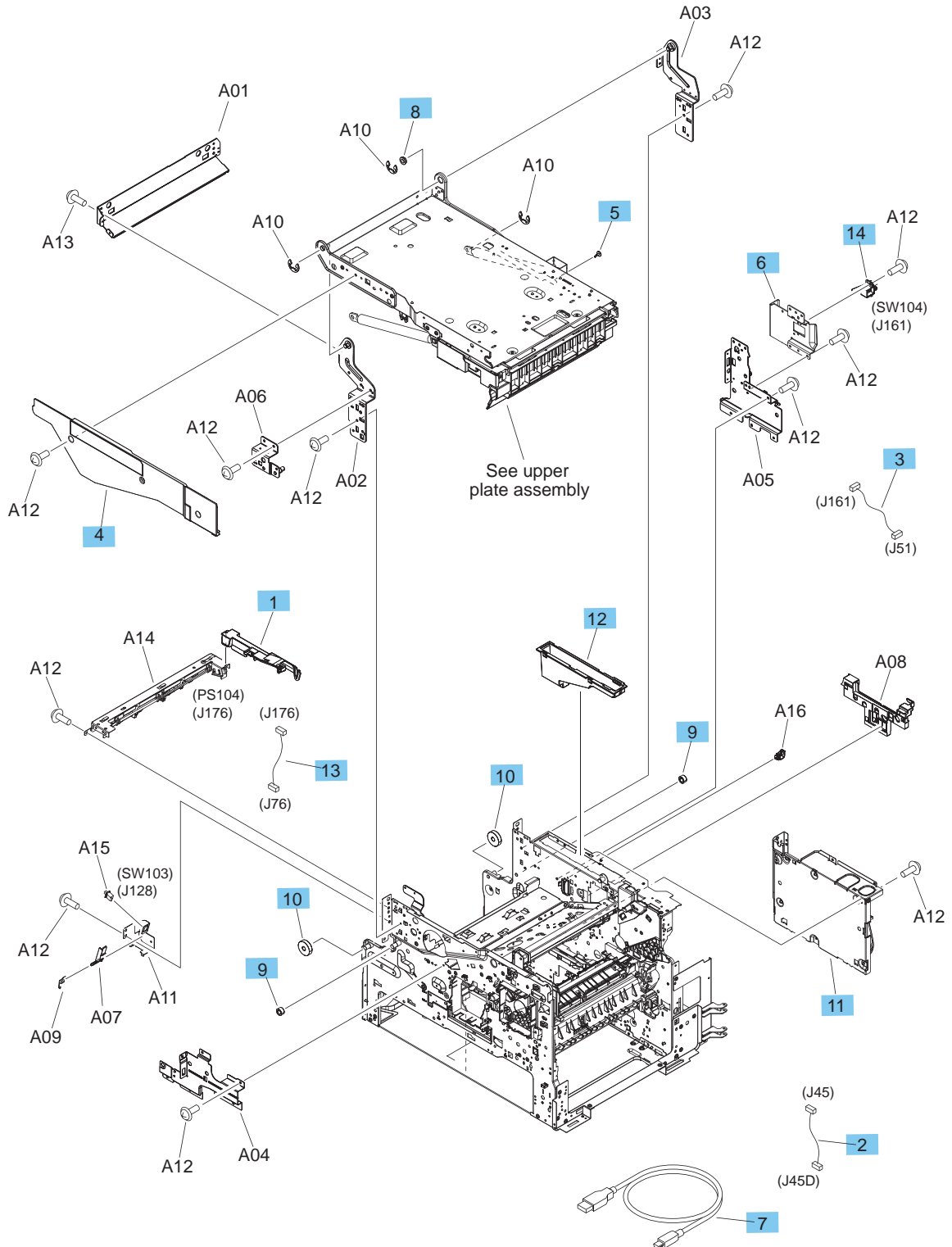


**Table 2-16 Internal components (3 of 5)**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
1	Cassette (Tray 2)	RM2-5094-000CN	1
2	Screw, M4x5	RC2-2633-000CN	2
3	Fan (FN101)	RK2-1988-000CN	1
4	Fan (FN301)	RK2-3244-000CN	1
5	Fan (FN105)	RK2-0280-000CN	1
6	Assembly, cassette (Tray 2) right rail	RM1-5931-000CN	1
7	Assembly, cassette (Tray 2) left rail	RM1-5932-000CN	1
8	Assembly, cartridge sensor cable	RM2-7477-000CN	1
9	Shroud, center	RL2-0995-000CN	1
10	Assembly, reverse fan cable	RM2-7486-000CN	1
11	Assembly, scanner joint cable	RM2-7471-000CN	1
12	Assembly, laser scanner cable	RM2-7482-000CN	1
13	Kit, duplex assembly	B3G84-67903	1
14	Kit, fuser replacement, 110V	B3M77-67903	1
14	Kit, fuser replacement, 220V	B3M78-67903	1

## Internal components (4 of 5)

Figure 2-11 Internal components (4 of 5)

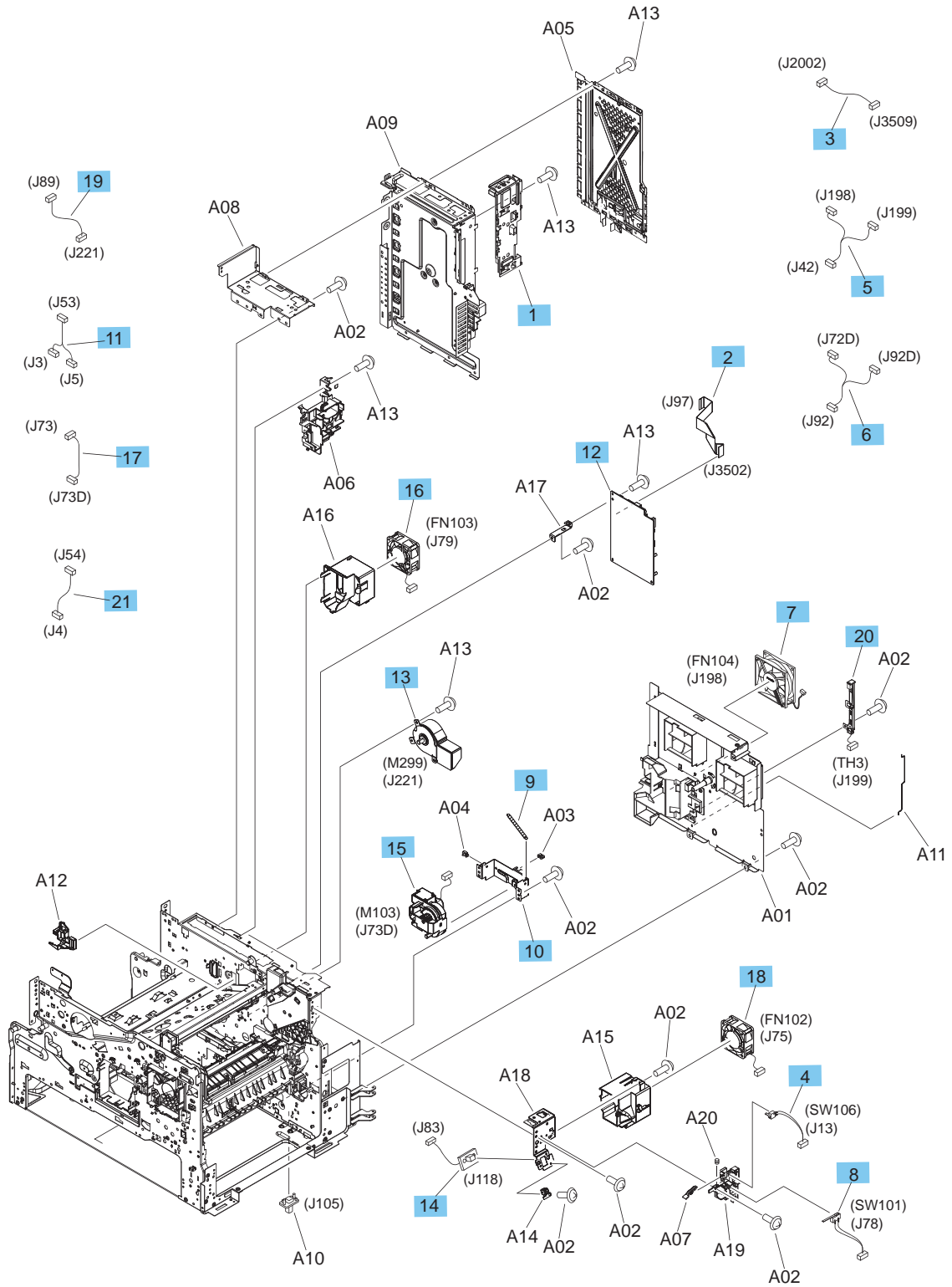


**Table 2-17 Internal components (4 of 5)**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
1	Cover, reverse side rear	RC1-2852-000CN	1
2	Assembly, IS power cable	RM2-7491-000CN	1
3	Assembly, option sensor cable	RM2-7484-000CN	1
4	Cover, IS front	RL2-0996-000CN	1
5	Stopper, bushing arm	RC1-3090-000CN	1
6	Assembly, mounting plate	RM2-5917-000CN	1
7	Cable, USB	RK2-6506-000CN	1
8	Bushing	RC4-1569-000CN	1
9	Roller, delivery option 1	RC1-2892-000CN	2
10	Roller, delivery option 2	RC1-2893-000CN	2
11	Low-voltage power supply, 110V	RM2-5792-000CN	1
11	Low-voltage power supply, 220V	RM2-5793-000CN	1
12	Guard, gas spring edge, rear	RC1-2886-000CN	1
13	Assembly, full sensor cable	RM2-7480-000CN	1
14	Assembly, push button switch (SW104)	RM1-7374-000CN	1

# Internal components (5 of 5)

Figure 2-12 Internal components (5 of 5)

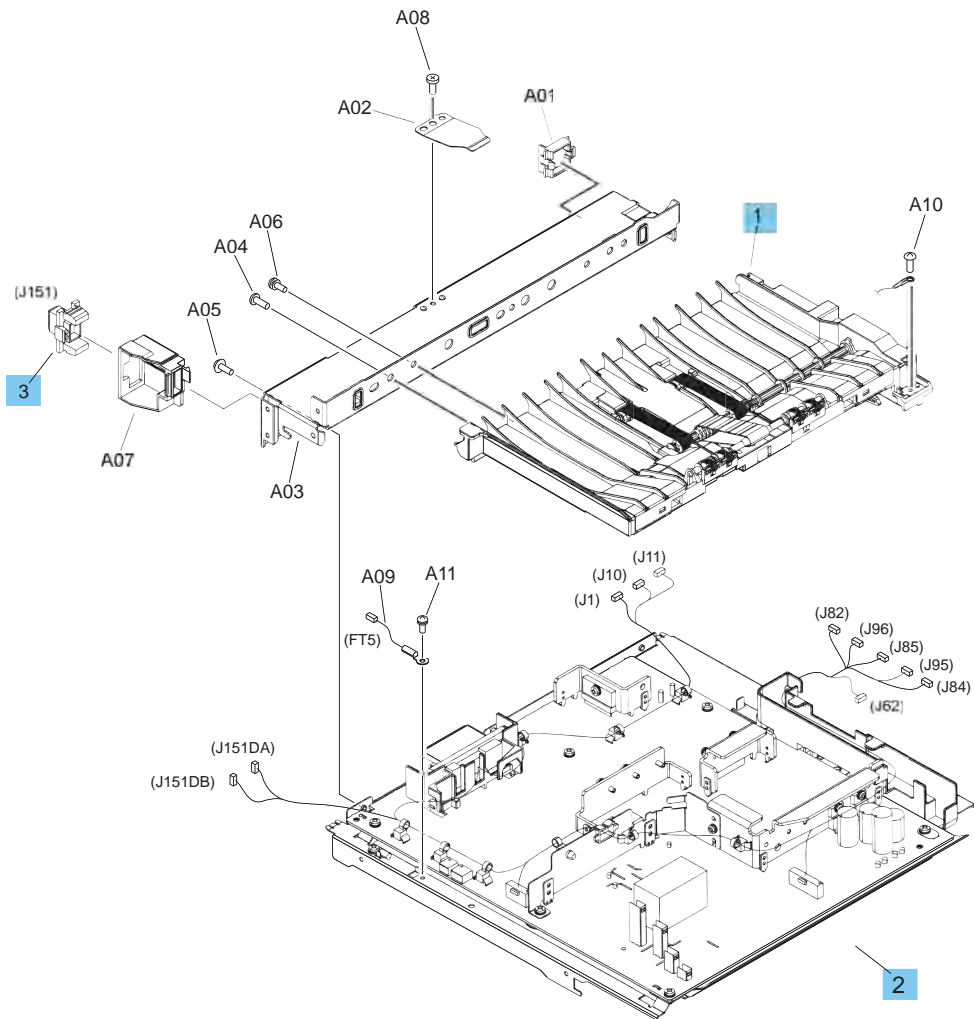


**Table 2-18 Internal components (5 of 5)**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
1	Assembly, interconnect board (ICB) PCA	RM2-5791-000CN	1
2	Cable, flat	RK2-6508-000CN	1
3	Assembly, side band cable	RM2-7474-000CN	1
4	Assembly, door sensor cable (SW106)	RM2-7476-000CN	1
5	Assembly, environmental sensor cable	RM2-7473-000CN	1
6	Cable, P sensor solenoid	RM1-7170-000CN	1
7	Fan (FN104)	RK2-6509-000CN	1
8	Assembly, door switch cable (SW101)	RM2-7478-000CN	1
9	Spring, tension	RU6-2475-000CN	1
10	Support, lifter	RC2-6441-000CN	1
11	Assembly, DC controller cable	RM2-7479-000CN	1
12	Assembly, DC controller PCA	RM2-7458-000CN	1
13	Assembly, fuser motor (M299)	RM1-5051-020CN	1
14	Cable, envelope feeder	RM1-5085-000CN	1
15	Assembly, lifter (M103)	RM1-5914-000CN	1
16	Fan (FN103)	RK2-1992-000CN	1
17	Cable, lifter motor	RM1-7162-000CN	1
18	Fan (FN102)	RK2-1989-000CN	1
19	Cable, fuser motor	RM1-7159-000CN	1
20	Assembly, temperature sensor (TH3)	RM1-7420-000CN	1
21	Assembly, DC controller cable	RM2-7481-000CN	1

# High-voltage power supply

Figure 2-13 High-voltage power supply





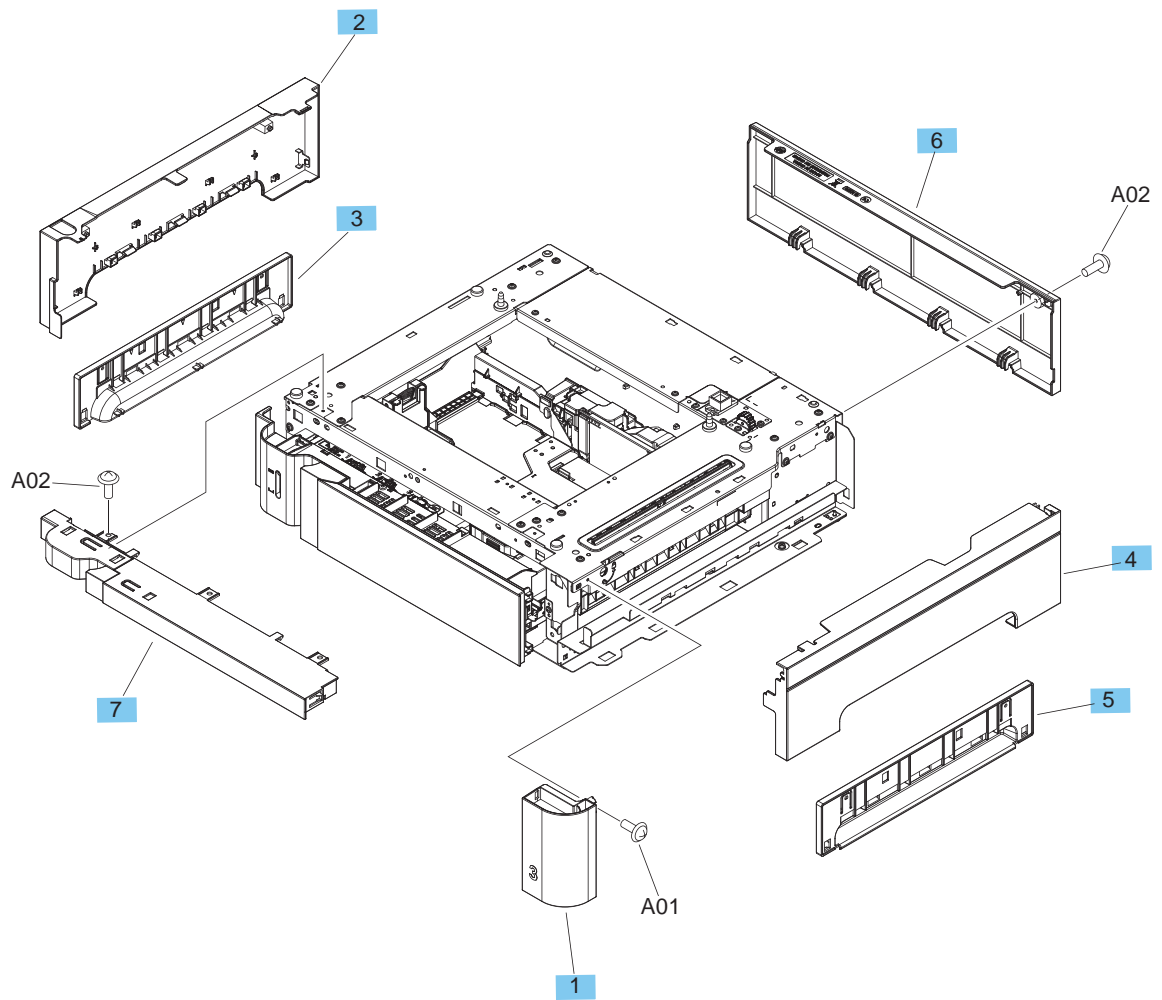
**Table 2-19 High-voltage power supply**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
1	Assembly, paper feed	RM1-4548-000CN	1
2	High-voltage power supply 110V	RM2-5826-000CN	1
2	High-voltage power supply 220V	RM2-5827-000CN	1
3	Connector, drawer	WS1-6336-000CN	1

# 1x500-sheet paper feeder

## 1x500-sheet paper feeder covers

Figure 2-14 500-sheet paper feeder covers

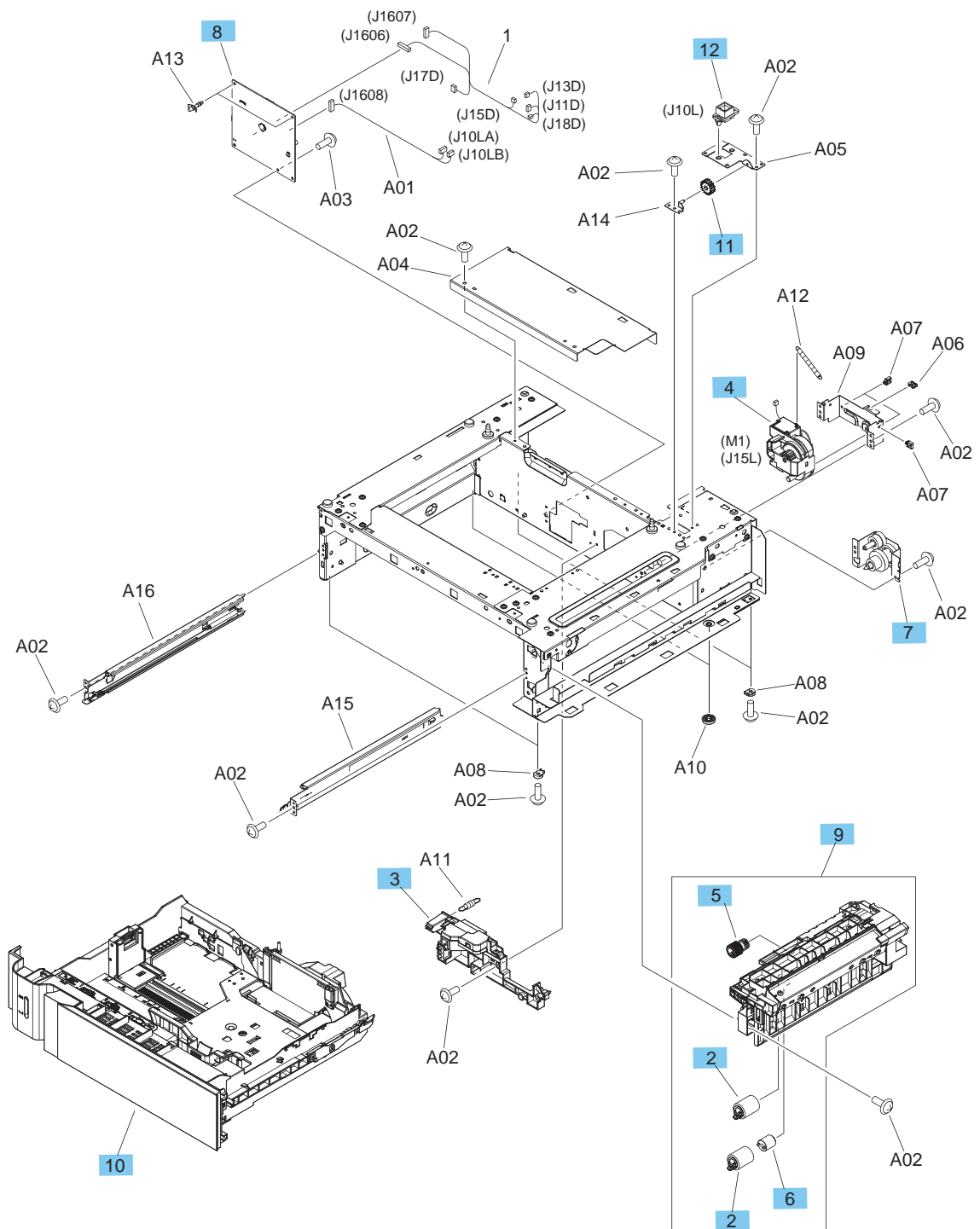


**Table 2-20 1x500-sheet paper feeder covers**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
1	Cover, right front (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1638-000CN	1
2	Cover, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1966-000CN	1
3	Cover, handle, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1967-000CN	1
4	Cover, right (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1968-000CN	1
5	Cover, handle, right (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1969-000CN	1
6	Cover, rear (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1970-000CN	1
7	Assembly, front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-5106-000CN	1

# 1x500-sheet paper feeder components

Figure 2-15 1x500-sheet paper feeder components



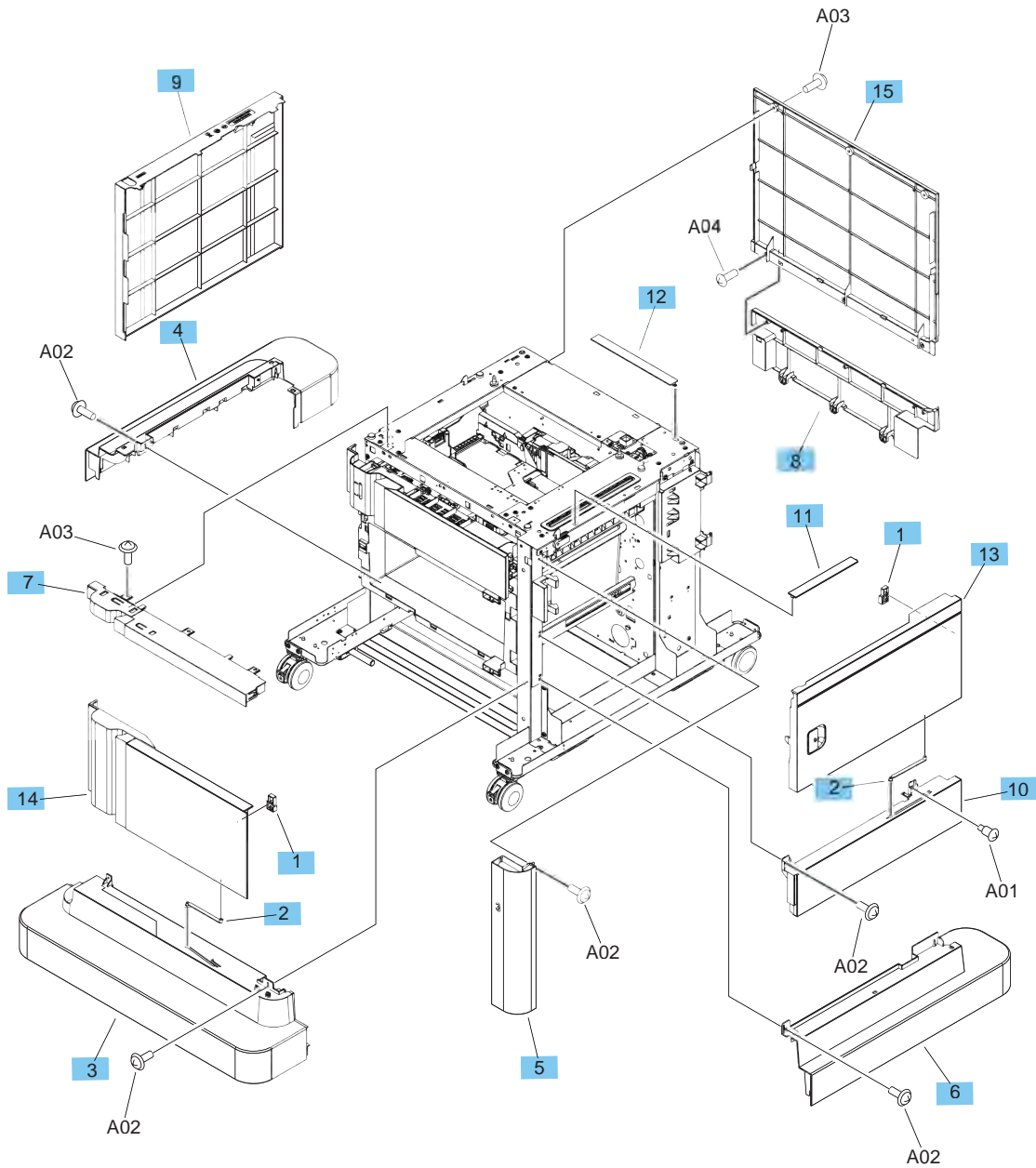
**Table 2-21 1x500-sheet paper feeder components**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
2	Roller, paper feed/separation (1x500-sheet paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	2
3	Assembly, lifter base (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM1-5913-000CN	1
4	Assembly, lifter (M1) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM1-5914-000CN	1
5	Roller, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	1
6	Limitter, torque (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC1-3293-000CN	1
7	Assembly, paper pickup drive (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM1-5941-000CN	1
8	Assembly, controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-8002-000CN	1
9	Assembly, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-0341-000CN	1
10	Assembly, cassette (tray) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-5094-000CN	1
11	Gear, 16T	RU5-0083-000CN	1
12	Connector, drawer 6P	VS1-7500-006CN	1

# 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet

## 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers

Figure 2-16 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers

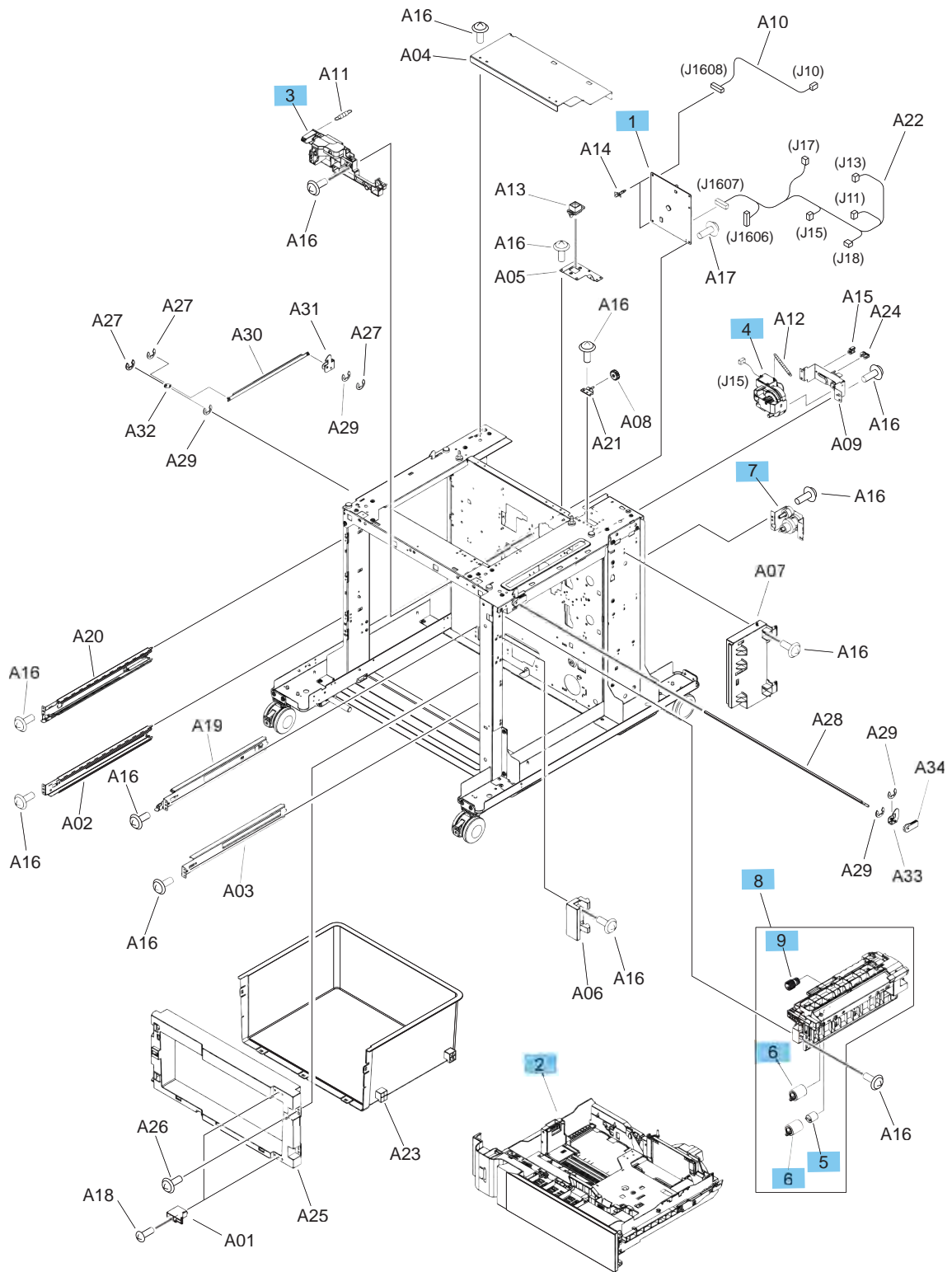


**Table 2-22 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
1	Stopper, front door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC2-2666-000CN	2
2	Link, door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC2-6438-000CN	2
3	Cover, front lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1632-000CN	1
4	Cover, left lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1633-000CN	1
5	Cover, right front (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1636-000CN	1
6	Cover, right lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1643-000CN	1
7	Assembly, front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5106-000CN	1
8	Cover, rear lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1958-000CN	1
9	Cover, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1959-000CN	1
10	Cover, right center (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1961-000CN	1
11	Cover, right upper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1962-000CN	1
12	Cover, rear upper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1964-000CN	1
13	Assembly, right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5104-000CN	1
14	Assembly, stock door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5105-000CN	1
15	Cover, rear (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1957-000CN	1

# 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components

Figure 2-17 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components





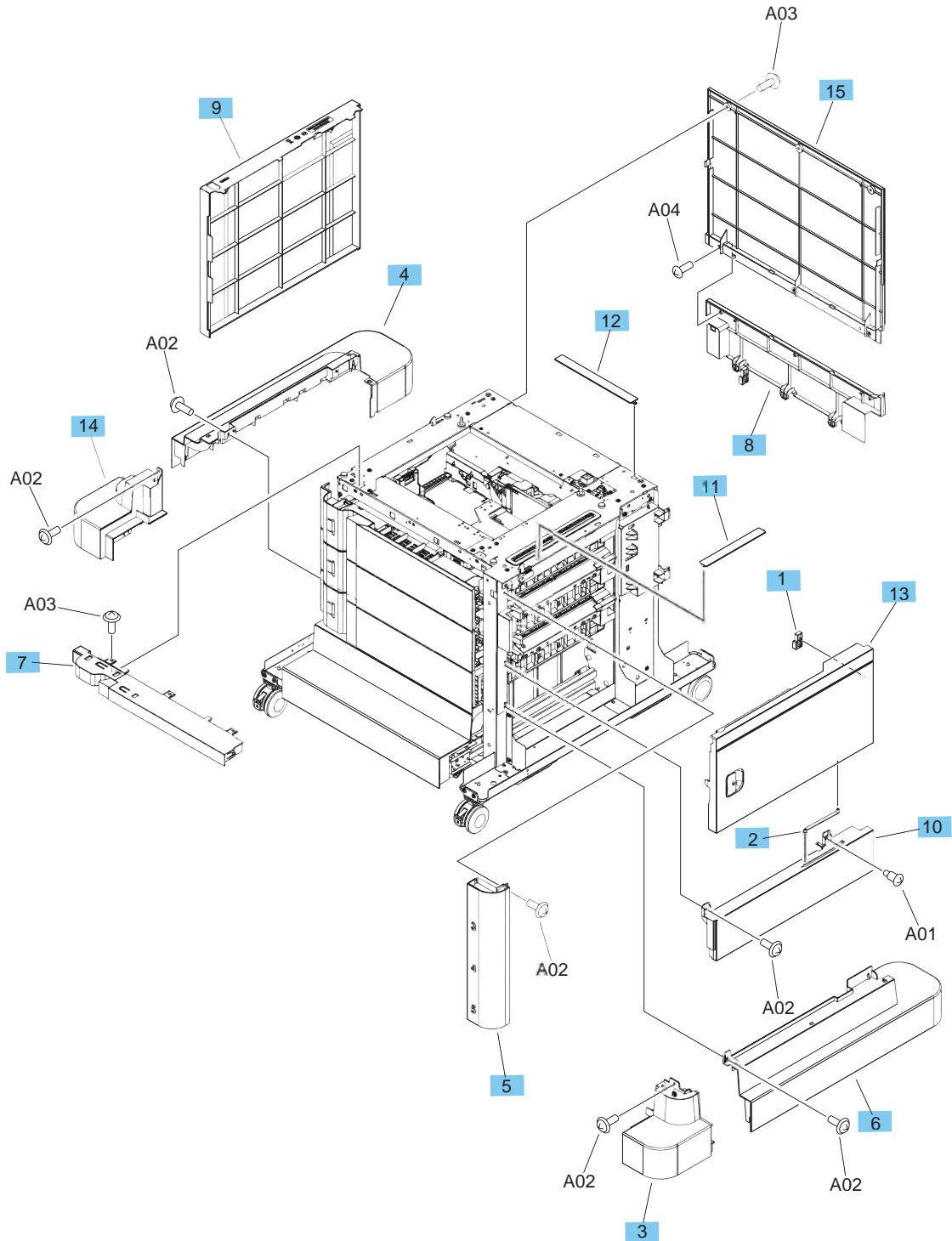
**Table 2-23 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
1	Assembly, controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-8002-000CN	1
2	Assembly, cassette (tray) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5094-000CN	1
3	Assembly, lifter base (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM1-5913-000CN	1
4	Assembly, lifter (M1) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM1-5914-000CN	1
5	Limiters, torque (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC1-3293-000CN	1
6	Roller, paper feed/separation (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	2
7	Assembly, paper pickup drive (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM1-5941-000CN	1
8	Assembly, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-0341-000CN	1
9	Roller, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	1

# 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder

## 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers

Figure 2-18 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers

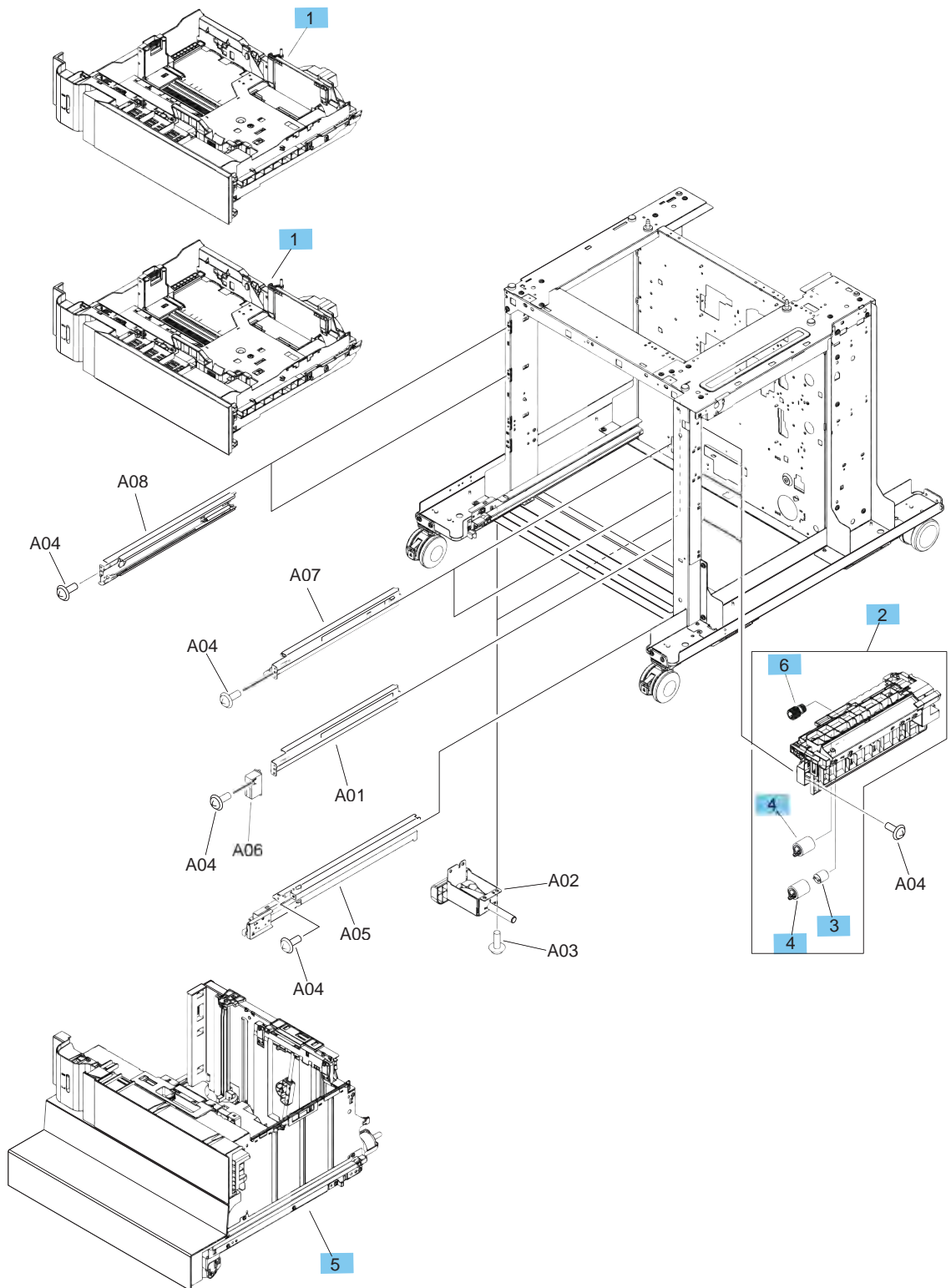


**Table 2-24 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
1	Stopper, front door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC2-2666-000CN	1
2	Link, door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC2-6438-000CN	1
3	Cover, front lower right (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1639-000CN	1
4	Cover, left lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1633-000CN	1
5	Cover, right front (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1637-000CN	1
6	Cover, right lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1643-000CN	1
7	Assembly, front upper cover (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5106-000CN	1
8	Cover, rear lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1958-000CN	1
9	Cover, left (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1959-000CN	1
10	Cover, right center (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1961-000CN	1
11	Cover, right upper (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1962-000CN	1
12	Cover, rear upper (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1964-000CN	1
13	Assembly, right door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5101-000CN	1
14	Cover, front lower left (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1640-000CN	1
15	Cover, rear (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1957-000CN	1

## 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2)

Figure 2-19 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2)



**Table 2-25 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2)**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
1	Assembly, cassette (tray) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5094-000CN	2
2	Assembly, paper pickup (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-0341-000CN	3
3	Limiter, torque (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC1-3293-000CN	3
4	Roller, paper feed/separation (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	6
5	Assembly, tray (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5100-000CN	1
6	Roller, paper pickup (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	3



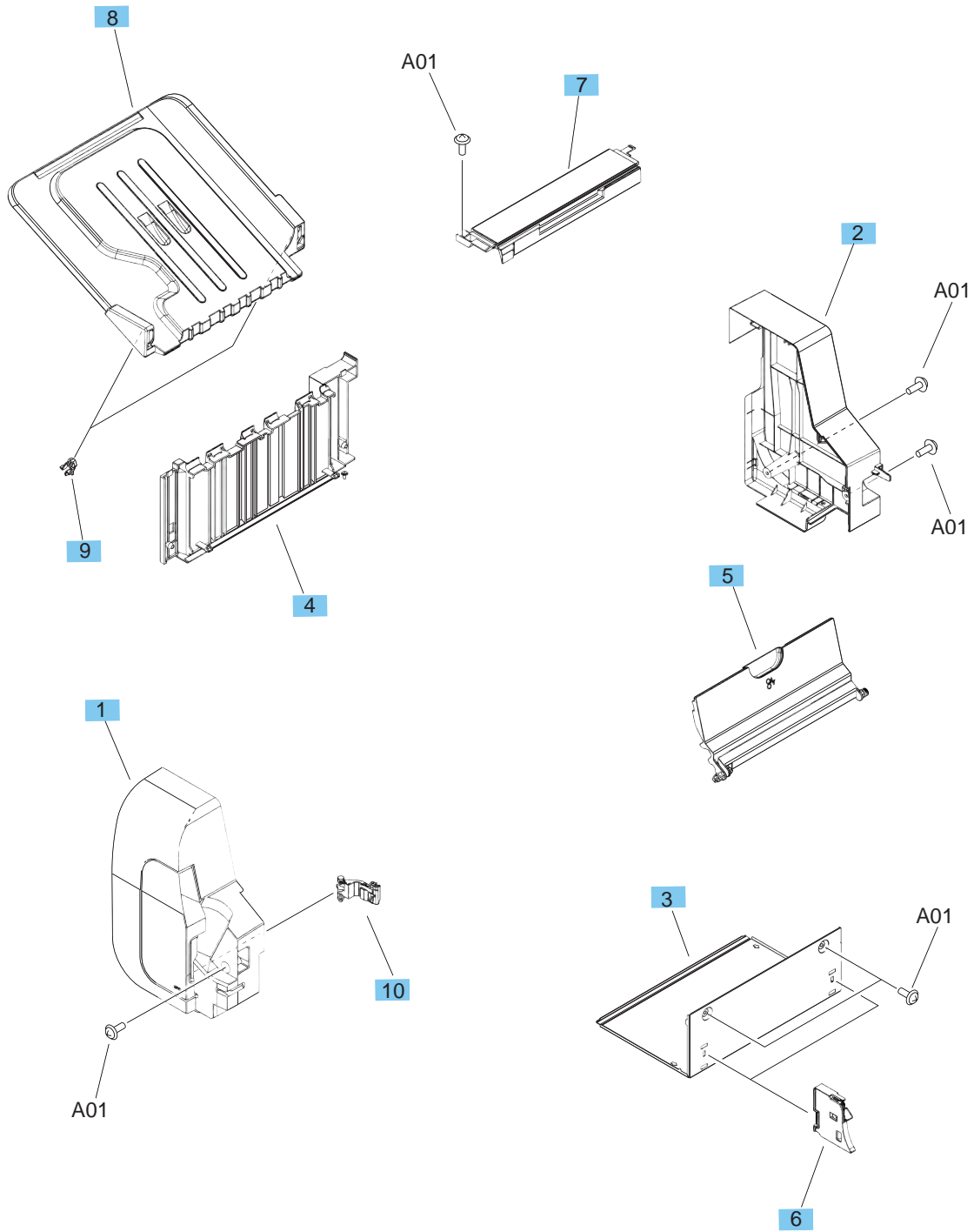
**Table 2-26 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2)**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
1	Assembly, paper pickup drive (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM1-5942-000CN	1
2	Assembly, tray size sensor (SW4) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-0350-000CN	1
3	Assembly, lifter base (SW2, SW3) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM1-5913-000CN	2
4	Assembly, lifter (M1, M3) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM1-5914-000CN	2
5	Assembly, lifter drive (M4) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-0346-000CN	1
6	Assembly, controller PCA (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-8007-000CN	1

# Stapling mailbox

## Stapling mailbox covers

Figure 2-21 Stapling mailbox covers



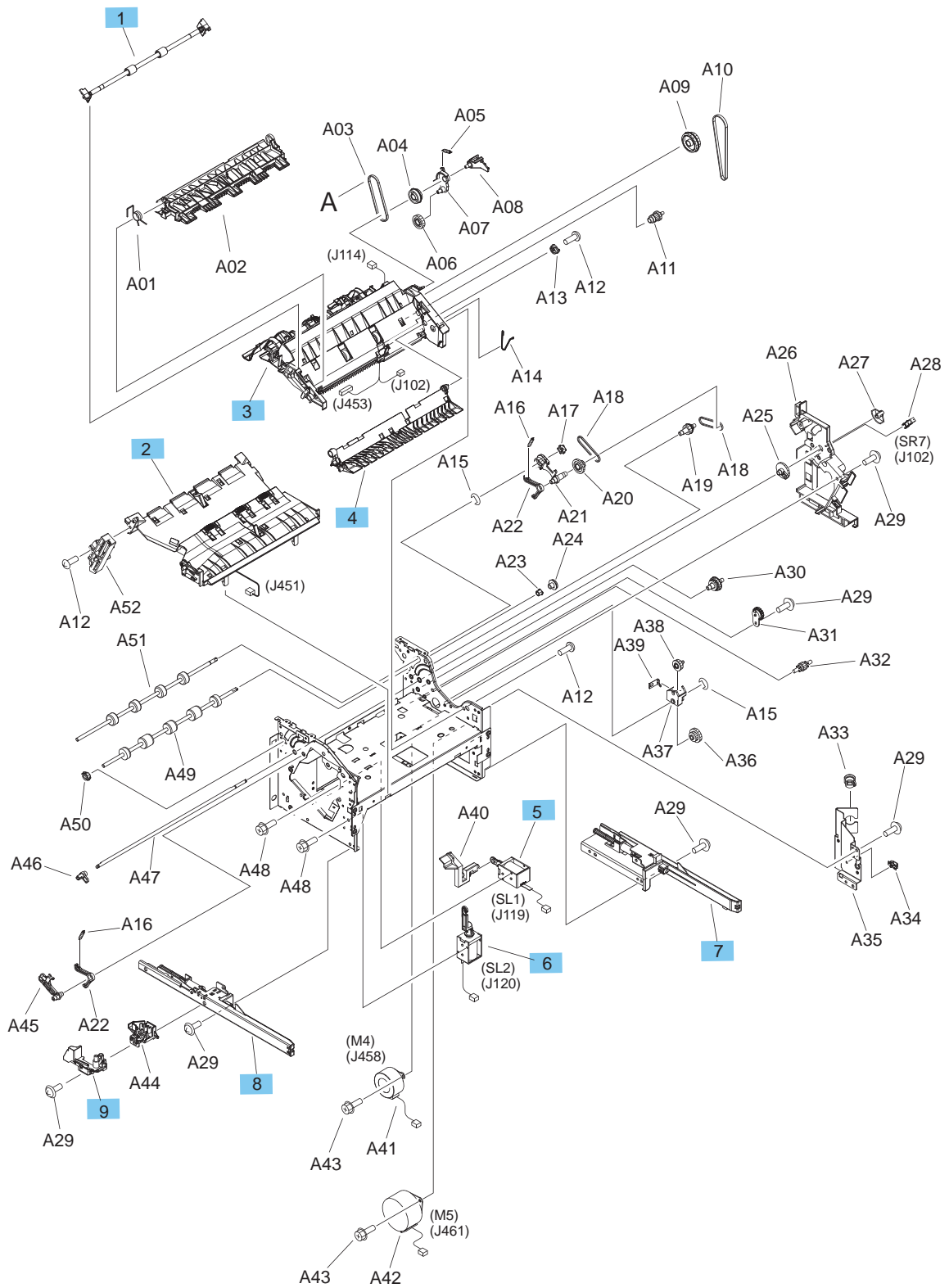


**Table 2-27 Stapling mailbox covers**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
1	Assembly, front cover (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5275-000CN	1
2	Cover, rear (stapling mailbox)	RC4-2039-000CN	1
3	Cover, bottom (stapling mailbox)	RL1-2438-000CN	1
4	Panel, stacking (stapling mailbox)	RL2-0501-000CN	1
5	Door, right (stapling mailbox)	RC4-2037-000CN	1
6	Assembly, lifter guide (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6330-000CN	2
7	Assembly, top cover (stapling mailbox)	RL2-0502-000CN	1
8	Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5240-000CN	1
9	Stopper, tray (stapling mailbox)	RC2-5576-000CN	2
10	Assembly, interlock lever (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6335-000CN	1

# Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2)

Figure 2-22 Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2)

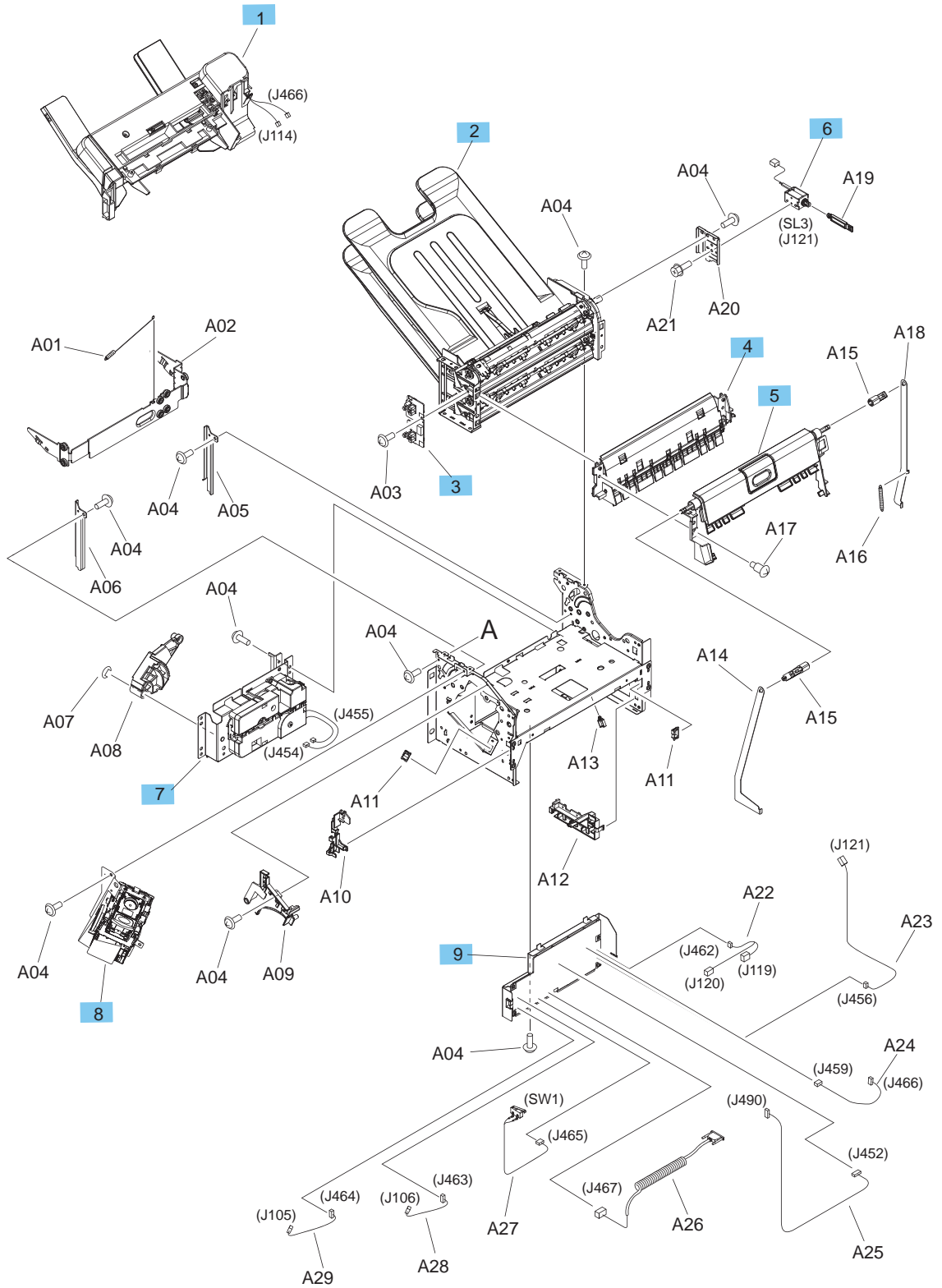


**Table 2-28 Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2)**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
1	Assembly, paper feed roller (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6332-000CN	1
2	Assembly, stage (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5159-000CN	1
3	Subassembly, stage top (stapling mailbox)	RM1-7437-010CN	1
4	Assembly, paper feed guide (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5173-000CN	1
5	Assembly, stamp solenoid (SL1) (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6664-000CN	1
6	Assembly, entrance solenoid (SL2)(stapling mailbox)	RM1-6663-000CN	1
7	Assembly, rail rear (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6327-000CN	1
8	Assembly, rail front (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6326-000CN	1
9	Assembly, interlock (stapling mailbox)	RM1-7431-000CN	1

## Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2)

Figure 2-23 Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2)



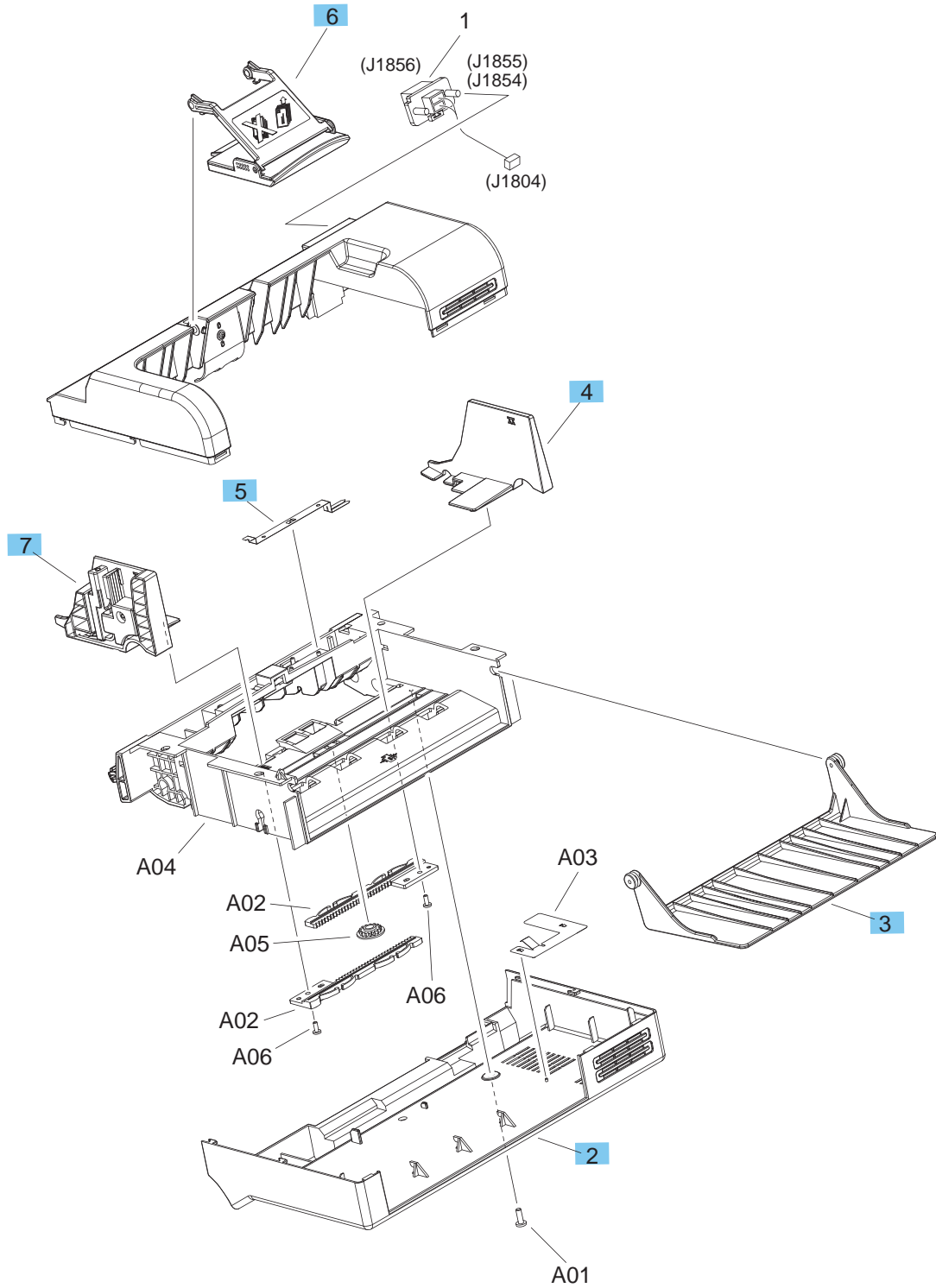
**Table 2-29 Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2)**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
1	Assembly, jog (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5235-000CN	1
2	Assembly, bin (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5242-000CN	1
3	Assembly, bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5894-000CN	1
4	Assembly, flapper (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5157-000CN	1
5	Assembly, handle	RM2-5277-000CN	1
6	Assembly, bin solenoid (SL3) (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5896-000CN	1
7	Assembly, output bin 3 drive (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5156-000CN	1
8	Assembly, stapler (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5166-000CN	1
9	Assembly, driver PCA (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5278-000CN	1

# Envelope feeder

## Envelope feeder covers

Figure 2-24 Envelope feeder covers

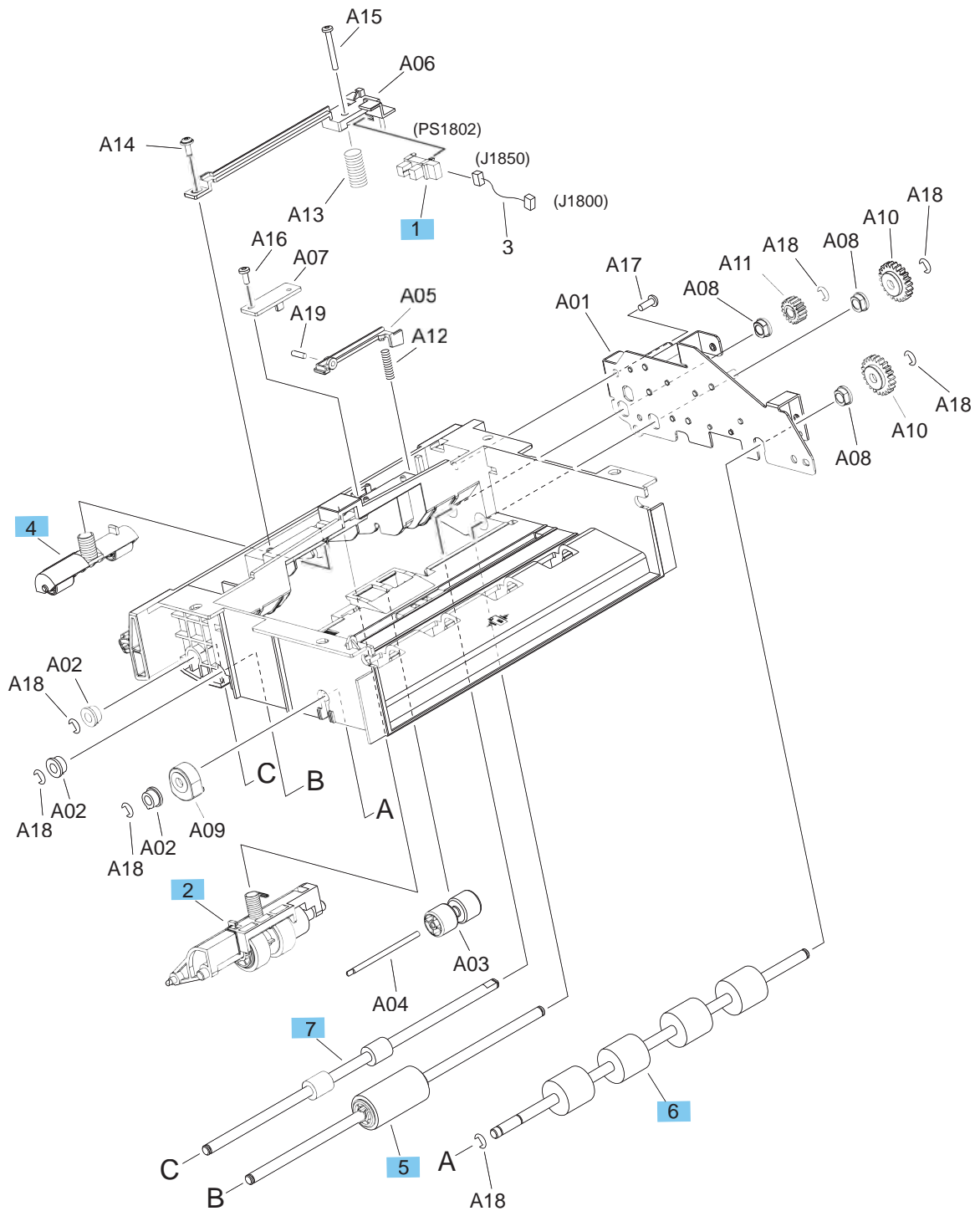


**Table 2-30 Envelope feeder covers**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
2	Cover, lower (envelope feeder)	RC4-6105-000CN	1
3	Tray, extension (envelope feeder)	RC4-6106-000CN	1
4	Plate, width limit right (envelope feeder)	RC4-6107-000CN	1
5	Plate, grounding 1 (envelope feeder)	RC2-5688-000CN	1
6	Assembly, weight (envelope feeder)	RM2-6170-000CN	1
7	Assembly, paper side end (envelope feeder)	RM2-6171-000CN	1

## Envelope feeder components (1 of 2)

Figure 2-25 Envelope feeder components (1 of 2)



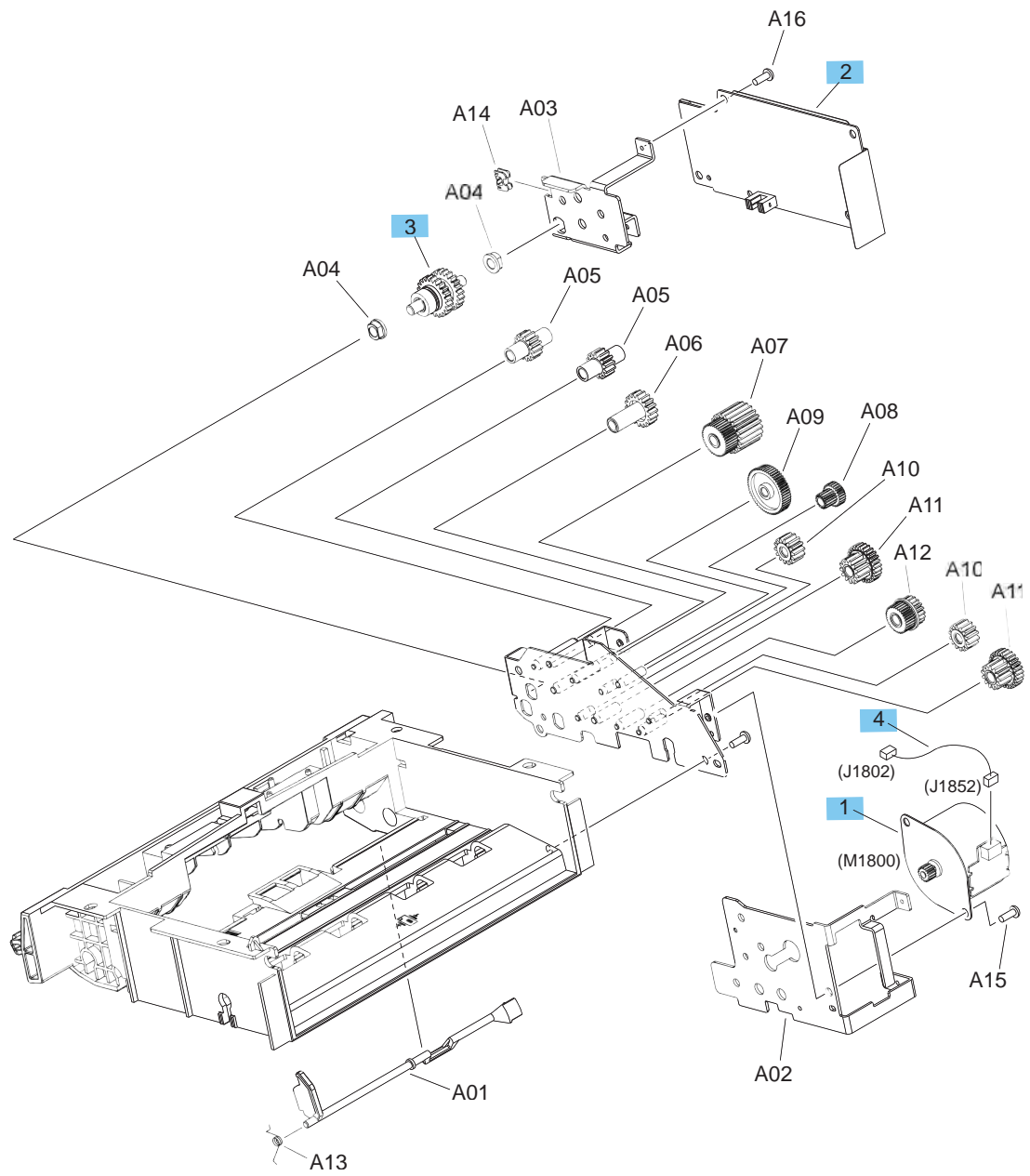


**Table 2-31 Envelope feeder components (1 of 2)**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
1	Photointerrupter (PS1802) (envelope feeder)	WG8-5624-000CN	1
2	Assembly, separation roller (envelope feeder)	RM1-5224-000CN	1
4	Assembly, paper-feed roller (envelope feeder)	RM1-5223-000CN	1
5	Assembly, paper pickup roller (envelope feeder)	RM1-5221-000CN	1
6	Roller, paper pickup (envelope feeder)	RC2-5700-000CN	1
7	Roller, paper-feed (envelope feeder)	RC2-5701-000CN	1

## Envelope feeder components (2 of 2)

Figure 2-26 Envelope feeder components (2 of 2)



**Table 2-32 Envelope feeder components (2 of 2)**

<b>Ref</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Qty</b>
1	Motor, stepping DC24V (M1800) (envelope feeder)	RK2-2162-000CN	1
2	Assembly, controller PCA (envelope feeder)	RM2-8134-000CN	1
3	Assembly, joint shaft (envelope feeder)	RM1-5222-000CN	1
4	Cable, paper feed motor (envelope feeder)	RM1-5238-000CN	1

# Alphabetical parts list

**Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list**

Description	Part number	Table and page
Arm, door 1	RC4-5728-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
Arm, door B	RC2-7967-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
Assembly, bin (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5242-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823</a>
Assembly, bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5894-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823</a>
Assembly, bin solenoid (SL3) (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5896-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823</a>
Assembly, cartridge sensor (PS115)	RM1-8323-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
Assembly, cartridge sensor cable	RM2-7477-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
Assembly, cassette (Tray 2) left rail	RM1-5932-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
Assembly, cassette (Tray 2) right rail	RM1-5931-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
Assembly, cassette (tray) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5094-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811</a>
Assembly, cassette (tray) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-5094-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807</a>
Assembly, cassette (tray) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5094-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815</a>
Assembly, controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-8002-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811</a>
Assembly, controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-8002-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807</a>
Assembly, controller PCA (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-8007-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817</a>
Assembly, controller PCA (envelope feeder)	RM2-8134-000CN	<a href="#">Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829</a>
Assembly, DC controller cable	RM2-7479-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
Assembly, DC controller cable	RM2-7481-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
Assembly, DC controller PCA	RM2-7458-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>

**Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)**

<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
Assembly, door sensor cable (SW106)	RM2-7476-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
Assembly, door switch cable (SW101)	RM2-7478-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
Assembly, driver PCA (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5278-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823</a>
Assembly, drum drive	RM2-5918-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
Assembly, drum motor (M102)	RM1-8358-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
Assembly, entrance solenoid (SL2)(stapling mailbox)	RM1-6663-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821</a>
Assembly, environmental sensor cable	RM2-7473-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
Assembly, feed motor (M101)	RM2-5942-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
Assembly, feed motor cable	RM2-7470-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
Assembly, flapper (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5157-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823</a>
Assembly, front cover (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5275-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox covers on page 819</a>
Assembly, front top cover	RM2-5814-000CN	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
Assembly, front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5106-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
Assembly, front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-5106-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805</a>
Assembly, front upper cover (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5106-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
Assembly, full sensor cable	RM2-7480-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
Assembly, fuser motor (M299)	RM1-5051-020CN	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
Assembly, grounding plate	RM1-5461-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Assembly, handle	RM2-5277-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823</a>
Assembly, Hinge HR	B4A39-60008	<a href="#">Document feeder components (1 of 2) on page 781</a>
Assembly, interconnect board (ICB) PCA	RM2-5791-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
Assembly, interlock (stapling mailbox)	RM1-7431-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821</a>

**Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)**

<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
Assembly, interlock lever (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6335-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox covers on page 819</a>
Assembly, IS power cable	RM2-7491-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
Assembly, jog (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5235-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823</a>
Assembly, joint shaft (envelope feeder)	RM1-5222-000CN	<a href="#">Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829</a>
Assembly, laser scanner cable	RM2-7482-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
Assembly, laser/scanner	RM1-8406-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
Assembly, lifter (M1) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM1-5914-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811</a>
Assembly, lifter (M1) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM1-5914-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807</a>
Assembly, lifter (M1, M3) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM1-5914-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817</a>
Assembly, lifter (M103)	RM1-5914-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
Assembly, lifter base (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM1-5913-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811</a>
Assembly, lifter base (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM1-5913-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807</a>
Assembly, lifter base (SW2, SW3) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM1-5913-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817</a>
Assembly, lifter base	RM1-5913-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Assembly, lifter drive (M4) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-0346-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817</a>
Assembly, lifter guide (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6330-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox covers on page 819</a>
Assembly, mounting plate	RM2-5917-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
Assembly, MP (Tray 1) cover	RM2-5816-000CN	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
Assembly, MP (Tray 1) pickup	RM2-5822-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Assembly, option sensor cable	RM2-7484-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>

**Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)**

<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
Assembly, output bin 3 drive (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5156-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823</a>
Assembly, paper delivery tray (part of output bin assembly kit)	B3G84-69702	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
Assembly, paper feed	RM1-4548-000CN	<a href="#">High-voltage power supply on page 803</a>
Assembly, paper feed guide (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5173-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821</a>
Assembly, paper feed roller (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6332-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821</a>
Assembly, paper feed roller	RM1-8411-010CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Assembly, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-0341-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811</a>
Assembly, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-0341-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807</a>
Assembly, paper pickup (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-0341-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815</a>
Assembly, paper pickup drive (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM1-5941-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811</a>
Assembly, paper pickup drive (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM1-5941-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807</a>
Assembly, paper pickup drive (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM1-5942-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817</a>
Assembly, paper pickup drive	RM2-5804-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
Assembly, paper pickup roller (envelope feeder)	RM1-5221-000CN	<a href="#">Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827</a>
Assembly, paper pickup	RM1-5919-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Assembly, paper side end (envelope feeder)	RM2-6171-000CN	<a href="#">Envelope feeder covers on page 825</a>
Assembly, paper-feed roller (envelope feeder)	RM1-5223-000CN	<a href="#">Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827</a>
Assembly, power switch	RM2-5818-000CN	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
Assembly, push button switch (SW104)	RM1-7374-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
Assembly, rail front (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6326-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821</a>
Assembly, rail rear (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6327-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821</a>

**Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)**

<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
Assembly, registration	RM1-8413-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Assembly, reverse fan cable	RM2-7486-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
Assembly, reverse guide	RM2-5810-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
Assembly, reverse joint cable	RM2-7487-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
Assembly, reverse	RM2-5799-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
Assembly, right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5104-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
Assembly, right door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5101-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
Assembly, right door sensor (SW105)	RM1-1045-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Assembly, right lower door	RM2-5820-000CN	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
Assembly, scanner joint cable	RM2-7471-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
Assembly, separation roller (envelope feeder)	RM1-5224-000CN	<a href="#">Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827</a>
Assembly, side band cable	RM2-7474-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
Assembly, stage (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5159-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821</a>
Assembly, stamp solenoid (SL1) (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6664-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821</a>
Assembly, stapler (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5166-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823</a>
Assembly, stock door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5105-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
Assembly, temperature sensor (TH3)	RM1-7420-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
Assembly, top cover (stapling mailbox)	RL2-0502-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox covers on page 819</a>
Assembly, tray (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5100-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815</a>
Assembly, tray base (part of output bin assembly kit)	B3G84-69702	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
Assembly, tray size sensor (SW4) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-0350-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817</a>



**Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)**

<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
Assembly, weight (envelope feeder)	RM2-6170-000CN	<a href="#">Envelope feeder covers on page 825</a>
Block upper guide support, front	RC4-1530-000CN	<a href="#">Upper plate assembly on page 791</a>
Block upper guide support, rear	RC4-1531-000CN	<a href="#">Upper plate assembly on page 791</a>
Bushing	RC4-1569-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
Cable, envelope feeder	RM1-5085-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
Cable, flat	RK2-6508-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
Cable, fuser motor	RM1-7159-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
Cable, lifter motor	RM1-7162-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
Cable, P sensor solenoid	RM1-7170-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
Cable, paper feed motor (envelope feeder)	RM1-5238-000CN	<a href="#">Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829</a>
Cable, SCB left	B3G84-60108	<a href="#">Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785</a>
Cable, SCB right	B3G84-60107	<a href="#">Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785</a>
Cable, SCB wire harness	B3G84-60109	<a href="#">Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785</a>
Cable, size detect (SW102)	RM1-7179-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Cable, USB	RK2-6506-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
Cassette (Tray 2)	RM2-5094-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
Connector, drawer	WS1-6336-000CN	<a href="#">High-voltage power supply on page 803</a>
Connector, drawer 6P	VS1-7500-006CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807</a>
Cover, bottom (stapling mailbox)	RL1-2438-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox covers on page 819</a>
Cover, cassette (Tray 2) left	RC4-1573-000CN	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
Cover, control panel access	5042-9118	<a href="#">Document feeder and scanner components on page 779</a>
Cover, document-feeder roller	CC355-40013	<a href="#">Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783</a>

**Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)**

<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
Cover, door arm	RC1-2833-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
Cover, envelope	RL1-2831-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Cover, front left	RC4-1515-000CN	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
Cover, front left lower	RC4-5717-000CN	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
Cover, front lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1632-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
Cover, front lower left (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1640-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
Cover, front lower right (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1639-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
Cover, handle right lower	RC4-5706-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Cover, handle, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1967-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805</a>
Cover, handle, right (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1969-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805</a>
Cover, HIP	5851-5361	<a href="#">Document feeder and scanner components on page 779</a>
Cover, IS cable	RC4-1575-000CN	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
Cover, IS front	RL2-0996-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
Cover, IS left lower	RC4-5693-000CN	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
Cover, IS lock, front	RC4-5721-000CN	<a href="#">Upper plate assembly on page 791</a>
Cover, IS lock, rear	RC4-1537-000CN	<a href="#">Upper plate assembly on page 791</a>
Cover, IS right	RC4-1527-000CN	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
Cover, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1959-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
Cover, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1966-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805</a>
Cover, left (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1959-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
Cover, left lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1633-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
Cover, left lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1633-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
Cover, lower (envelope feeder)	RC4-6105-000CN	<a href="#">Envelope feeder covers on page 825</a>

**Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)**

<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
Cover, MP (Tray 1) gear	RC4-1572-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Cover, MP (Tray 1) inner	RC4-3948-000CN	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
Cover, rear (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1957-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
Cover, rear (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1970-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805</a>
Cover, rear (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1957-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
Cover, rear (stapling mailbox)	RC4-2039-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox covers on page 819</a>
Cover, rear left	RC4-5692-000CN	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
Cover, rear lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1958-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
Cover, rear lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1958-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
Cover, rear right	RL2-0999-000CN	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
Cover, rear top	RC4-1574-000CN	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
Cover, rear upper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1964-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
Cover, rear upper (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1964-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
Cover, reverse side rear	RC1-2852-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
Cover, right (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1968-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805</a>
Cover, right center (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1961-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
Cover, right center (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1961-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
Cover, right front (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1636-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
Cover, right front (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1638-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805</a>
Cover, right front (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1637-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
Cover, right lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1643-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
Cover, right lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1643-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
Cover, right upper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1962-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>

**Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)**

<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
Cover, right upper (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1962-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
Cover, side rear	RC4-5716-000CN	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
Cover, USB	5851-5360	<a href="#">Document feeder and scanner components on page 779</a>
Door, right (stapling mailbox)	RC4-2037-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox covers on page 819</a>
Fan (FN101)	RK2-1988-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
Fan (FN102)	RK2-1989-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
Fan (FN103)	RK2-1992-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
Fan (FN104)	RK2-6509-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
Fan (FN105)	RK2-0280-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
Fan (FN301)	RK2-3244-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
Gear, 15T	RU7-0294-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Gear, 16T	RU5-0083-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807</a>
Gear, 17T	RU7-0293-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Gear, 23T/19T	RU7-0295-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Gear, 33T	RU7-0292-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Gear, 35T	RU7-0303-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Gear, 91T/25T	RU7-0290-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Guard, gas spring edge, rear	RC1-2886-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
Guide, cartridge, upper	RC4-1529-000CN	<a href="#">Upper plate assembly on page 791</a>
Guide, legal	RC2-8029-000CN	<a href="#">Upper plate assembly on page 791</a>
Handle, lock	RC4-5690-000CN	<a href="#">Upper plate assembly on page 791</a>
High-voltage power supply 110V	RM2-5826-000CN	<a href="#">High-voltage power supply on page 803</a>

**Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)**

<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
High-voltage power supply 220V	RM2-5827-000CN	<a href="#">High-voltage power supply on page 803</a>
Holder, shutter, light	RC4-5707-000CN	<a href="#">Upper plate assembly on page 791</a>
Kit, ADF roller maintenance (includes roller and separation pad)	L2725-60002	<a href="#">Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783</a>
Kit, ADF separation pad spring	5851-4879	<a href="#">Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783</a>
Kit, ADF white backing	5851-6084	<a href="#">Document feeder components (1 of 2) on page 781</a>
Kit, background selector for backside scan	5851-5022	<a href="#">Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783</a>
Kit, control panel (without keyboard)	B3G84-67908	<a href="#">Control panel on page 787</a>
Kit, document feeder mylar strip	B3G86-67903	<a href="#">Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783</a>
Kit, document feeder, complete with white backing <sup>1</sup>	B3G86-67901	<a href="#">Document feeder and scanner components on page 779</a>
Kit, duplex assembly	B3G84-67903	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
Kit, front cover assembly	B3G85-67905	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
Kit, fuser replacement, 110V	B3M77-67903	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
Kit, fuser replacement, 220V	B3M78-67903	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
Kit, fuser-entrance guide	B3G84-67904	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Kit, image scanner assembly, complete with white backing <sup>2</sup>	B3G86-67905	<a href="#">Document feeder and scanner components on page 779</a>
Kit, transfer roller	B3G84-67901	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Kit, U.K. English keyboard (M630z)	5851-5008	<a href="#">Control panel on page 787</a>
Kit, U.S. English keyboard (M630z)	5851-5380	<a href="#">Control panel on page 787</a>
Limiters, torque	RC1-3293-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Limiters, torque (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC1-3293-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811</a>
Limiters, torque (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC1-3293-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807</a>
Limiters, torque (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC1-3293-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815</a>

**Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)**

<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
Link, door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC2-6438-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
Link, door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC2-6438-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
Link, handle	RC1-2822-000CN	<a href="#">Upper plate assembly on page 791</a>
Low-voltage power supply, 110V	RM2-5792-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
Low-voltage power supply, 220V	RM2-5793-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
Motor, stepping DC24V (M1800) (envelope feeder)	RK2-2162-000CN	<a href="#">Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829</a>
Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5240-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox covers on page 819</a>
Panel, logo	RL2-1000-000CN	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
Panel, stacking (stapling mailbox)	RL2-0501-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox covers on page 819</a>
Photointerrupter (PS1802) (envelope feeder)	WG8-5624-000CN	<a href="#">Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827</a>
Plate, grounding 1 (envelope feeder)	RC2-5688-000CN	<a href="#">Envelope feeder covers on page 825</a>
Plate, width limit right (envelope feeder)	RC4-6107-000CN	<a href="#">Envelope feeder covers on page 825</a>
Rod, link	RC4-5729-000CN	<a href="#">Upper plate assembly on page 791</a>
Rod, link	RC1-2902-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Rod, release	RC2-8086-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
Roller, delivery option 1	RC1-2892-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
Roller, delivery option 2	RC1-2893-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
Roller, paper feed/separation (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811</a>
Roller, paper feed/separation (1x500-sheet paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807</a>
Roller, paper feed/separation (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815</a>
Roller, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811</a>

**Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)**

<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
Roller, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807</a>
Roller, paper pickup (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815</a>
Roller, paper pickup (envelope feeder)	RC2-5700-000CN	<a href="#">Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827</a>
Roller, paper-feed (envelope feeder)	RC2-5701-000CN	<a href="#">Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827</a>
Roller, Tray 1 feed (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	B3G84-67906	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Roller, Tray 1 pickup (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	B3G84-67906	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Roller, Tray 1 separation (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	B3G84-67906	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Roller, Tray 2 feed (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Roller, Tray 2 pickup (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Scanner control board	B3G86-67904	<a href="#">Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785</a>
Screw, M4x5	RC2-2633-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
Shaft, right door hinge	RU5-4142-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Shroud, center	RL2-0995-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
Side plate, fuser drive	RL1-3024-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Spring, compression	RU5-2265-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
Spring, tension	RU6-2475-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
Spring, torsion	RC2-8085-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Spring, torsion	RC3-1470-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
Stopper, bushing arm	RC1-3090-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
Stopper, bushing arm	RC1-3090-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
Stopper, front door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC2-2666-000CN	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>

**Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)**

<b>Description</b>	<b>Part number</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
Stopper, front door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC2-2666-000CN	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
Stopper, tray (stapling mailbox)	RC2-5576-000CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox covers on page 819</a>
Subassembly, stage top (stapling mailbox)	RM1-7437-010CN	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821</a>
Support, lifter	RC2-6441-000CN	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
Thumbscrew, control panel	5851-0660	<a href="#">Control panel on page 787</a>
Tray, extension (envelope feeder)	RC4-6106-000CN	<a href="#">Envelope feeder covers on page 825</a>



# Numerical parts list

**Table 2-34 Numerical parts list**

Part number	Description	Table and page
5042-9118	Cover, control panel access	<a href="#">Document feeder and scanner components on page 779</a>
5851-0660	Thumbscrew, control panel	<a href="#">Control panel on page 787</a>
5851-4879	Kit, ADF separation pad spring	<a href="#">Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783</a>
5851-5008	Kit, U.K. English keyboard (M630z)	<a href="#">Control panel on page 787</a>
5851-5022	Kit, background selector for backside scan	<a href="#">Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783</a>
5851-5360	Cover, USB	<a href="#">Document feeder and scanner components on page 779</a>
5851-5361	Cover, HIP	<a href="#">Document feeder and scanner components on page 779</a>
5851-5380	Kit, U.S. English keyboard (M630z)	<a href="#">Control panel on page 787</a>
5851-6084	Kit, ADF white backing	<a href="#">Document feeder components (1 of 2) on page 781</a>
B3G84-60107	Cable, SCB right	<a href="#">Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785</a>
B3G84-60108	Cable, SCB left	<a href="#">Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785</a>
B3G84-60109	Cable, SCB wire harness	<a href="#">Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785</a>
B3G84-67901	Kit, transfer roller	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
B3G84-67903	Kit, duplex assembly	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
B3G84-67904	Kit, fuser-entrance guide	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
B3G84-67905	Roller, Tray 2 pickup (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
B3G84-67905	Roller, Tray 2 feed (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
B3G84-67905	Roller, paper feed/separation (1x500-sheet paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807</a>
B3G84-67905	Roller, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807</a>
B3G84-67905	Roller, paper feed/separation (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811</a>
B3G84-67905	Roller, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811</a>

**Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)**

<b>Part number</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
B3G84-67905	Roller, paper feed/separation (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815</a>
B3G84-67905	Roller, paper pickup (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815</a>
B3G84-67906	Roller, Tray 1 pickup (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
B3G84-67906	Roller, Tray 1 separation (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
B3G84-67906	Roller, Tray 1 feed (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
B3G84-67908	Kit, control panel (without keyboard)	<a href="#">Control panel on page 787</a>
B3G84-69702	Assembly, tray base (part of output bin assembly kit)	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
B3G84-69702	Assembly, paper delivery tray (part of output bin assembly kit)	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
B3G85-67905	Kit, front cover assembly	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
B3G86-67901	Kit, document feeder, complete with white backing <sup>1</sup>	<a href="#">Document feeder and scanner components on page 779</a>
B3G86-67903	Kit, document feeder mylar strip	<a href="#">Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783</a>
B3G86-67904	Scanner control board	<a href="#">Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785</a>
B3G86-67905	Kit, image scanner assembly, complete with white backing <sup>2</sup>	<a href="#">Document feeder and scanner components on page 779</a>
B3M77-67903	Kit, fuser replacement, 110V	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
B3M78-67903	Kit, fuser replacement, 220V	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
B4A39-60008	Assembly, Hinge HR	<a href="#">Document feeder components (1 of 2) on page 781</a>
CC355-40013	Cover, document-feeder roller	<a href="#">Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783</a>
L2725-60002	Kit, ADF roller maintenance (includes roller and separation pad)	<a href="#">Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783</a>
RC1-2822-000CN	Link, handle	<a href="#">Upper plate assembly on page 791</a>
RC1-2833-000CN	Cover, door arm	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
RC1-2852-000CN	Cover, reverse side rear	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
RC1-2886-000CN	Guard, gas spring edge, rear	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>

**Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)**

<b>Part number</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
RC1-2892-000CN	Roller, delivery option 1	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
RC1-2893-000CN	Roller, delivery option 2	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
RC1-2902-000CN	Rod, link	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
RC1-3090-000CN	Stopper, bushing arm	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
RC1-3090-000CN	Stopper, bushing arm	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
RC1-3293-000CN	Limiter, torque	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
RC1-3293-000CN	Limiter, torque (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807</a>
RC1-3293-000CN	Limiter, torque (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811</a>
RC1-3293-000CN	Limiter, torque (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815</a>
RC2-2633-000CN	Screw, M4x5	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
RC2-2666-000CN	Stopper, front door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
RC2-2666-000CN	Stopper, front door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
RC2-5576-000CN	Stopper, tray (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox covers on page 819</a>
RC2-5688-000CN	Plate, grounding 1 (envelope feeder)	<a href="#">Envelope feeder covers on page 825</a>
RC2-5700-000CN	Roller, paper pickup (envelope feeder)	<a href="#">Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827</a>
RC2-5701-000CN	Roller, paper-feed (envelope feeder)	<a href="#">Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827</a>
RC2-6438-000CN	Link, door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
RC2-6438-000CN	Link, door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
RC2-6441-000CN	Support, lifter	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
RC2-7967-000CN	Arm, door B	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
RC2-8029-000CN	Guide, legal	<a href="#">Upper plate assembly on page 791</a>

**Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)**

<b>Part number</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
RC2-8085-000CN	Spring, torsion	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
RC2-8086-000CN	Rod, release	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
RC3-1470-000CN	Spring, torsion	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
RC4-1515-000CN	Cover, front left	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
RC4-1527-000CN	Cover, IS right	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
RC4-1529-000CN	Guide, cartridge, upper	<a href="#">Upper plate assembly on page 791</a>
RC4-1530-000CN	Block upper guide support, front	<a href="#">Upper plate assembly on page 791</a>
RC4-1531-000CN	Block upper guide support, rear	<a href="#">Upper plate assembly on page 791</a>
RC4-1537-000CN	Cover, IS lock, rear	<a href="#">Upper plate assembly on page 791</a>
RC4-1569-000CN	Bushing	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
RC4-1572-000CN	Cover, MP (Tray 1) gear	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
RC4-1573-000CN	Cover, cassette (Tray 2) left	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
RC4-1574-000CN	Cover, rear top	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
RC4-1575-000CN	Cover, IS cable	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
RC4-1632-000CN	Cover, front lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
RC4-1633-000CN	Cover, left lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
RC4-1633-000CN	Cover, left lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
RC4-1636-000CN	Cover, right front (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
RC4-1637-000CN	Cover, right front (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
RC4-1638-000CN	Cover, right front (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805</a>
RC4-1639-000CN	Cover, front lower right (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
RC4-1640-000CN	Cover, front lower left (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
RC4-1643-000CN	Cover, right lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>

**Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)**

<b>Part number</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
RC4-1643-000CN	Cover, right lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
RC4-1957-000CN	Cover, rear (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
RC4-1957-000CN	Cover, rear (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
RC4-1958-000CN	Cover, rear lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
RC4-1958-000CN	Cover, rear lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
RC4-1959-000CN	Cover, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
RC4-1959-000CN	Cover, left (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
RC4-1961-000CN	Cover, right center (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
RC4-1961-000CN	Cover, right center (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
RC4-1962-000CN	Cover, right upper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
RC4-1962-000CN	Cover, right upper (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
RC4-1964-000CN	Cover, rear upper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
RC4-1964-000CN	Cover, rear upper (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
RC4-1966-000CN	Cover, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805</a>
RC4-1967-000CN	Cover, handle, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805</a>
RC4-1968-000CN	Cover, right (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805</a>
RC4-1969-000CN	Cover, handle, right (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805</a>
RC4-1970-000CN	Cover, rear (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805</a>
RC4-2037-000CN	Door, right (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox covers on page 819</a>
RC4-2039-000CN	Cover, rear (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox covers on page 819</a>
RC4-3948-000CN	Cover, MP (Tray 1) inner	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
RC4-5690-000CN	Handle, lock	<a href="#">Upper plate assembly on page 791</a>

**Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)**

<b>Part number</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
RC4-5692-000CN	Cover, rear left	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
RC4-5693-000CN	Cover, IS left lower	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
RC4-5706-000CN	Cover, handle right lower	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
RC4-5707-000CN	Holder, shutter, light	<a href="#">Upper plate assembly on page 791</a>
RC4-5716-000CN	Cover, side rear	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
RC4-5717-000CN	Cover, front left lower	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
RC4-5721-000CN	Cover, IS lock, front	<a href="#">Upper plate assembly on page 791</a>
RC4-5728-000CN	Arm, door 1	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
RC4-5729-000CN	Rod, link	<a href="#">Upper plate assembly on page 791</a>
RC4-6105-000CN	Cover, lower (envelope feeder)	<a href="#">Envelope feeder covers on page 825</a>
RC4-6106-000CN	Tray, extension (envelope feeder)	<a href="#">Envelope feeder covers on page 825</a>
RC4-6107-000CN	Plate, width limit right (envelope feeder)	<a href="#">Envelope feeder covers on page 825</a>
RK2-0280-000CN	Fan (FN105)	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
RK2-1988-000CN	Fan (FN101)	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
RK2-1989-000CN	Fan (FN102)	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
RK2-1992-000CN	Fan (FN103)	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
RK2-2162-000CN	Motor, stepping DC24V (M1800) (envelope feeder)	<a href="#">Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829</a>
RK2-3244-000CN	Fan (FN301)	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
RK2-6506-000CN	Cable, USB	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
RK2-6508-000CN	Cable, flat	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
RK2-6509-000CN	Fan (FN104)	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
RL1-2438-000CN	Cover, bottom (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox covers on page 819</a>
RL1-2831-000CN	Cover, envelope	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>

**Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)**

<b>Part number</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
RL1-3024-000CN	Side plate, fuser drive	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
RL2-0501-000CN	Panel, stacking (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox covers on page 819</a>
RL2-0502-000CN	Assembly, top cover (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox covers on page 819</a>
RL2-0995-000CN	Shroud, center	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
RL2-0996-000CN	Cover, IS front	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
RL2-0999-000CN	Cover, rear right	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
RL2-1000-000CN	Panel, logo	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
RM1-1045-000CN	Assembly, right door sensor (SW105)	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
RM1-4548-000CN	Assembly, paper feed	<a href="#">High-voltage power supply on page 803</a>
RM1-5051-020CN	Assembly, fuser motor (M299)	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
RM1-5085-000CN	Cable, envelope feeder	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
RM1-5156-000CN	Assembly, output bin 3 drive (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823</a>
RM1-5157-000CN	Assembly, flapper (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823</a>
RM1-5159-000CN	Assembly, stage (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821</a>
RM1-5166-000CN	Assembly, stapler (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823</a>
RM1-5173-000CN	Assembly, paper feed guide (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821</a>
RM1-5221-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup roller (envelope feeder)	<a href="#">Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827</a>
RM1-5222-000CN	Assembly, joint shaft (envelope feeder)	<a href="#">Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829</a>
RM1-5223-000CN	Assembly, paper-feed roller (envelope feeder)	<a href="#">Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827</a>
RM1-5224-000CN	Assembly, separation roller (envelope feeder)	<a href="#">Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827</a>
RM1-5238-000CN	Cable, paper feed motor (envelope feeder)	<a href="#">Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829</a>
RM1-5461-000CN	Assembly, grounding plate	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>

**Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)**

<b>Part number</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
RM1-5894-000CN	Assembly, bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823</a>
RM1-5896-000CN	Assembly, bin solenoid (SL3) (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823</a>
RM1-5913-000CN	Assembly, lifter base	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
RM1-5913-000CN	Assembly, lifter base (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807</a>
RM1-5913-000CN	Assembly, lifter base (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811</a>
RM1-5913-000CN	Assembly, lifter base (SW2, SW3) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817</a>
RM1-5914-000CN	Assembly, lifter (M103)	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
RM1-5914-000CN	Assembly, lifter (M1) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807</a>
RM1-5914-000CN	Assembly, lifter (M1) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811</a>
RM1-5914-000CN	Assembly, lifter (M1, M3) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817</a>
RM1-5919-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
RM1-5931-000CN	Assembly, cassette (Tray 2) right rail	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
RM1-5932-000CN	Assembly, cassette (Tray 2) left rail	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
RM1-5941-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup drive (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807</a>
RM1-5941-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup drive (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811</a>
RM1-5942-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup drive (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817</a>
RM1-6326-000CN	Assembly, rail front (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821</a>
RM1-6327-000CN	Assembly, rail rear (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821</a>
RM1-6330-000CN	Assembly, lifter guide (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox covers on page 819</a>



**Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)**

<b>Part number</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
RM1-6332-000CN	Assembly, paper feed roller (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821</a>
RM1-6335-000CN	Assembly, interlock lever (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox covers on page 819</a>
RM1-6663-000CN	Assembly, entrance solenoid (SL2)(stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821</a>
RM1-6664-000CN	Assembly, stamp solenoid (SL1) (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821</a>
RM1-7159-000CN	Cable, fuser motor	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
RM1-7162-000CN	Cable, lifter motor	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
RM1-7170-000CN	Cable, P sensor solenoid	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
RM1-7179-000CN	Cable, size detect (SW102)	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
RM1-7374-000CN	Assembly, push button switch (SW104)	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
RM1-7420-000CN	Assembly, temperature sensor (TH3)	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
RM1-7431-000CN	Assembly, interlock (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821</a>
RM1-7437-010CN	Subassembly, stage top (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821</a>
RM1-8323-000CN	Assembly, cartridge sensor (PS115)	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
RM1-8358-000CN	Assembly, drum motor (M102)	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
RM1-8406-000CN	Assembly, laser/scanner	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
RM1-8411-010CN	Assembly, paper feed roller	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
RM1-8413-000CN	Assembly, registration	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
RM2-0341-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807</a>
RM2-0341-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811</a>
RM2-0341-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815</a>

**Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)**

<b>Part number</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
RM2-0346-000CN	Assembly, lifter drive (M4) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817</a>
RM2-0350-000CN	Assembly, tray size sensor (SW4) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817</a>
RM2-5094-000CN	Cassette (Tray 2)	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
RM2-5094-000CN	Assembly, cassette (tray) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807</a>
RM2-5094-000CN	Assembly, cassette (tray) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811</a>
RM2-5094-000CN	Assembly, cassette (tray) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815</a>
RM2-5100-000CN	Assembly, tray (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815</a>
RM2-5101-000CN	Assembly, right door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
RM2-5104-000CN	Assembly, right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
RM2-5105-000CN	Assembly, stock door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
RM2-5106-000CN	Assembly, front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805</a>
RM2-5106-000CN	Assembly, front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809</a>
RM2-5106-000CN	Assembly, front upper cover (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813</a>
RM2-5235-000CN	Assembly, jog (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823</a>
RM2-5240-000CN	Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox covers on page 819</a>
RM2-5242-000CN	Assembly, bin (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823</a>
RM2-5275-000CN	Assembly, front cover (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox covers on page 819</a>
RM2-5277-000CN	Assembly, handle	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823</a>
RM2-5278-000CN	Assembly, driver PCA (stapling mailbox)	<a href="#">Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823</a>
RM2-5791-000CN	Assembly, interconnect board (ICB) PCA	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>

**Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)**

<b>Part number</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
RM2-5792-000CN	Low-voltage power supply, 110V	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
RM2-5793-000CN	Low-voltage power supply, 220V	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
RM2-5799-000CN	Assembly, reverse	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
RM2-5804-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup drive	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
RM2-5810-000CN	Assembly, reverse guide	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
RM2-5814-000CN	Assembly, front top cover	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
RM2-5816-000CN	Assembly, MP (Tray 1) cover	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
RM2-5818-000CN	Assembly, power switch	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
RM2-5820-000CN	Assembly, right lower door	<a href="#">Covers on page 789</a>
RM2-5822-000CN	Assembly, MP (Tray 1) pickup	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
RM2-5826-000CN	High-voltage power supply 110V	<a href="#">High-voltage power supply on page 803</a>
RM2-5827-000CN	High-voltage power supply 220V	<a href="#">High-voltage power supply on page 803</a>
RM2-5917-000CN	Assembly, mounting plate	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
RM2-5918-000CN	Assembly, drum drive	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
RM2-5942-000CN	Assembly, feed motor (M101)	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
RM2-6170-000CN	Assembly, weight (envelope feeder)	<a href="#">Envelope feeder covers on page 825</a>
RM2-6171-000CN	Assembly, paper side end (envelope feeder)	<a href="#">Envelope feeder covers on page 825</a>
RM2-7458-000CN	Assembly, DC controller PCA	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
RM2-7470-000CN	Assembly, feed motor cable	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
RM2-7471-000CN	Assembly, scanner joint cable	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
RM2-7473-000CN	Assembly, environmental sensor cable	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
RM2-7474-000CN	Assembly, side band cable	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
RM2-7476-000CN	Assembly, door sensor cable (SW106)	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>

**Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)**

<b>Part number</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
RM2-7477-000CN	Assembly, cartridge sensor cable	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
RM2-7478-000CN	Assembly, door switch cable (SW101)	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
RM2-7479-000CN	Assembly, DC controller cable	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
RM2-7480-000CN	Assembly, full sensor cable	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
RM2-7481-000CN	Assembly, DC controller cable	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
RM2-7482-000CN	Assembly, laser scanner cable	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
RM2-7484-000CN	Assembly, option sensor cable	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
RM2-7486-000CN	Assembly, reverse fan cable	<a href="#">Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797</a>
RM2-7487-000CN	Assembly, reverse joint cable	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
RM2-7491-000CN	Assembly, IS power cable	<a href="#">Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799</a>
RM2-8002-000CN	Assembly, controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807</a>
RM2-8002-000CN	Assembly, controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811</a>
RM2-8007-000CN	Assembly, controller PCA (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	<a href="#">2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817</a>
RM2-8134-000CN	Assembly, controller PCA (envelope feeder)	<a href="#">Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829</a>
RU5-0083-000CN	Gear, 16T	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807</a>
RU5-2265-000CN	Spring, compression	<a href="#">Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795</a>
RU5-4142-000CN	Shaft, right door hinge	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
RU6-2475-000CN	Spring, tension	<a href="#">Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801</a>
RU7-0290-000CN	Gear, 91T/25T	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
RU7-0292-000CN	Gear, 33T	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
RU7-0293-000CN	Gear, 17T	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>

**Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)**

<b>Part number</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Table and page</b>
RU7-0294-000CN	Gear, 15T	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
RU7-0295-000CN	Gear, 23T/19T	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
RU7-0303-000CN	Gear, 35T	<a href="#">Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793</a>
VS1-7500-006CN	Connector, drawer 6P	<a href="#">1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807</a>
WG8-5624-000CN	Photointerrupter (PS1802) (envelope feeder)	<a href="#">Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827</a>
WS1-6336-000CN	Connector, drawer	<a href="#">High-voltage power supply on page 803</a>



# Index

## Symbols/Numerics

1x500-sheet paper feeder  
  components 806  
  covers 804  
  part number 775  
  parts lists and diagrams 804  
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet  
  components 810  
  covers 808  
  part number 775  
  parts lists and diagrams 808  
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder  
  components 814, 816  
  covers 812  
  part number 775  
  parts lists and diagrams 812  
2,500-sheet tray  
  rollers, removing and replacing 137  
500-sheet trays  
  rollers, removing and replacing 137

**A**  
accessories  
  ordering 771  
  part numbers 775  
ADF roller maintenance kit  
  part number 772  
ADF separation pad spring kit  
  part number 772  
ADF white backing  
  location 781, 839, 843  
  part number 781, 839, 843  
  removing and replacing 161  
ADF white backing kit  
  part number 772

ADF whole unit kit  
  part number 774  
after-service checklist 6

**B**  
backside background selector  
  location 783, 839, 843  
  part number 772, 783, 839, 843  
  removing and replacing 18  
before-service checklist 6

**C**  
cartridge  
  ordering 772  
  part numbers 772  
  removing and replacing 8  
cartridge fan (FN301)  
  location 797, 838, 848  
  part number 797, 838, 848  
  removing and replacing 467  
cartridge front-side fan (FN103)  
  location 801, 838, 848  
  part number 801, 838, 848  
  removing and replacing 460  
cartridge sensor assembly  
  location 795, 830, 851  
  part number 795, 830, 851  
  removing and replacing 378  
cassette  
  pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing 671  
  Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 712

  Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 716  
  Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 720  
cassette lifter base assembly  
  location 793, 832, 850  
  part number 793, 832, 850  
cassette pickup assembly  
  location 793, 833, 850  
  part number 793, 833, 850  
  removing and replacing 614  
cassette-door-open detection switch (SW105)  
  removing and replacing 363  
cautions iii  
components  
  1x500-sheet paper feeder 806  
  1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet 810  
  2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder 814, 816  
  envelope feeder 826, 828  
  HCI 814, 816  
  stapling mailbox 820, 822  
control panel  
  parts lists and diagrams 786  
control panel assembly  
  part number 787, 839, 844  
  removing and replacing 92  
control panel replacement kit  
  part number 772  
control-panel assembly  
  location 778  
controller (1x500-sheet paper feeder)  
  location 807, 830, 854

- part number 807, 830, 854
- PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing 678
- controller (HCI optional paper feeder) PCA (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 731
- controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
  - location 811, 830, 854
  - part number 811, 830, 854
  - removing and replacing 702
- controller PCA (HCI optional paper feeder)
  - location 817, 830, 854
  - part number 817, 830, 854
  - removing and replacing 731
- conventions, document iii
- covers
  - 1x500-sheet paper feeder 804
  - 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet 808
  - 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder 812
  - envelope feeder 824
  - front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 685
  - front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing 667
  - front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 709
  - HCI 812
  - left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 684
  - left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing 659
  - left cover (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 711
  - output bin and bin base assembly, removing 68
  - rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 680
  - rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 705
  - rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing 658
  - right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 689
  - right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 707
  - right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing and replacing 663
  - right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 687
  - right door (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 706
  - right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 710
  - right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 708
  - right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 690
  - right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 686
  - right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing 666
  - stapling mailbox 818
  - stock box and rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 682
  - stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 681
- covers, base product
  - parts lists and diagrams 788
- covers, doors, and panels (product base)
  - location diagram 273
- customer self-repair kits
  - part numbers 772
- D**
- DC controller
  - location 801, 830, 853
  - part number 801, 830, 853
  - removing and replacing 391
- DC controller shield-plate assembly
  - removing and replacing 382
- DIMM
  - part number 772
  - removing and replacing 54
- document conventions iii
- document feeder (ADF)
  - location 779, 839, 844
  - part number 779, 839, 844
  - removing and replacing 201
- document feeder and scanner components
  - parts lists and diagrams 778
- document feeder components
  - parts lists and diagrams 780
- document feeder maintenance kit
  - document-feeder roller and separation pad, removing and replacing 152
- document feeder roller cover
  - removing and replacing 176
- document feeder white backing
  - location 781, 839, 843
  - part number 781, 839, 843
  - removing and replacing 161
- document-feeder hinge assembly
  - location 781, 831, 844
  - part number 781, 831, 844
  - removing and replacing 229
- document-feeder hinge cover
  - removing and replacing 358
- document-feeder mylar strip
  - location 783, 839, 844
  - part number 783, 839, 844
  - removing and replacing 170
- document-feeder roller and separation pad
  - location 782, 783, 839, 844
  - part number 783, 839, 844
  - removing and replacing 152
- document-feeder roller cover
  - location 783, 835, 844
  - part number 783, 835, 844
  - removing and replacing 176
- documentation, related
  - user guide 771
- drum motor (M102)
  - location 795, 831, 851
  - part number 795, 831, 851
  - removing and replacing 454
- duplex accessory
  - location 797, 839, 843
  - part number 797, 839, 843
  - removing and replacing 70



duplex assembly kit  
part number 772

## E

electrostatic discharge (ESD) 3  
envelope feeder  
components 826, 828  
covers 824  
part number 775  
parts lists and diagrams 824  
envelope feeder cover  
removing and replacing 282  
environmental sensor  
location 801, 834, 851  
part number 801, 834, 851  
ESD electrostatic discharge (ESD) 3

## F

fax PCA  
part number 775  
removing and replacing 61  
feed motor (M101)  
location 795, 831, 853  
part number 795, 831, 853  
removing and replacing 443  
feed roller assembly  
location 793, 833, 851  
part number 793, 833, 851  
removing and replacing 584  
field-replaceable units (FRUs)  
replacing 3  
formatter  
part number 772  
removing and replacing 23  
front cover  
location 789, 839, 844  
part number 789, 839, 844  
removing and replacing 274  
front cover assembly kit  
part number 774  
front upper cover (1x500-sheet  
paper feeder with cabinet)  
location 809, 831, 852  
part number 809, 831, 852  
removing and replacing 685  
front upper cover (1x500-sheet  
paper feeder)  
location 805, 831, 852  
part number 805, 831, 852  
removing and replacing 667

front upper cover (HCI optional paper  
feeder)  
location 813, 831, 852  
part number 813, 831, 852  
removing and replacing 709  
front-left cover  
removing and replacing 307  
front-left cover and logo cover  
assembly  
removing and replacing 307  
FRUs (field-replaceable units)  
replacing 3  
fuser  
location 797, 839, 844  
part number (110V) 797, 839,  
844  
part number (220V) 797, 839,  
844  
removing and replacing 83  
fuser entrance guide kit  
part number 772  
fuser motor (M299)  
location 801, 831, 849  
part number 801, 831, 849  
removing and replacing 455  
fuser service kit  
part number 772  
fuser-entrance guide  
location 793, 839, 843  
part number 793, 839, 843  
removing and replacing 76

## H

hard disk drive (HDD)  
part number 772  
removing and replacing 40  
HCI  
components 814, 816  
covers 812  
high-voltage power supply  
parts lists and diagrams 802  
high-voltage power supply (HVPS)  
location 803, 838, 853  
part number (110V) 803, 838,  
853  
part number (220V) 803, 839,  
853  
removing and replacing 521

HP Jetdirect 2700w USB wireless  
print serve  
part number 775  
HP Jetdirect 2800w NFC/wireless  
direct accessory  
part number 775  
HP LaserJet MFP analog fax  
accessory 500  
part number 775  
HP LaserJet postcard media insert  
tray  
part number 775

## I

image scanner assembly  
location 779, 839, 844  
part number 779, 839, 844  
removing and replacing 230  
image scanner cable cover  
removing and replacing 283  
image scanner whole unit kit  
part number 774  
installation 3  
screws 3  
*See also* replacing parts  
interconnect board (ICB)  
location 801, 831, 852  
part number 801, 831, 852  
removing and replacing 426  
interlock switch (SW101)  
location 801, 831, 854  
part number 801, 831, 854  
interlock switch assembly (SW101  
and SW106)  
removing and replacing 471  
internal components, product  
parts lists and diagrams 792

## K

keyboard assembly (M630z)  
removing and replacing 110  
keyboard kit  
part number 772  
keyboard overlay kit  
part number 772  
kit  
document feeder (ADF) 201  
instructions right-lower door  
instructions 345

instructions, 500-sheet trays and 2,500-sheet tray 137  
instructions, backside background selector 18  
instructions, cassette-door-open detection switch (SW105) 363  
instructions, control panel assembly 92  
instructions, document feeder maintenance 152  
instructions, document feeder white backing 161  
instructions, document-feeder mylar strip 170  
instructions, duplex accessory 70  
instructions, fax PCA 61  
instructions, formatter 23  
instructions, front cover 274  
instructions, fuser 83  
instructions, fuser-entrance guide 76  
instructions, hard disk drive (HDD) and solid state memory (SSM) 40  
instructions, image scanner assembly 230  
instructions, image scanner cable cover 283  
instructions, keyboard assembly (M630z) 110  
instructions, memory DIMM 54  
instructions, output bin and bin base assembly 68  
instructions, power switch assembly 314  
instructions, rear-left cover 327  
instructions, rear-right cover 323  
instructions, rear-top cover 335  
instructions, scanner control board (SCB) 185  
instructions, scanner rear cover 182  
instructions, staple cartridge 14  
instructions, toner cartridge 8  
instructions, transfer roller 144  
instructions, Tray 1 cover 287  
instructions, tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers 127

## L

laser scanner  
  warnings for servicing 3  
laser/scanner assembly  
  location 795, 832, 851  
  part number 795, 832, 851  
  removing and replacing 375  
laser/scanner fan (FN102)  
  location 801, 838, 848  
  part number 801, 838, 848  
  removing and replacing 458  
left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)  
  location 809, 836, 847  
  part number 809, 836, 847  
  removing and replacing 684  
left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)  
  location 805, 836, 847  
  part number 805, 836, 847  
  removing and replacing 659  
left cover (HCI optional paper feeder)  
  location 813, 836, 847  
  part number 813, 836, 847  
  removing and replacing 711  
left-rear corner cover  
  location 789, 835, 846  
  part number 789, 835, 846  
lifter assembly  
  location 801, 832, 850  
  part number 801, 832, 850  
  removing and replacing 518  
lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)  
  location 811, 832, 850  
  part numbers 811, 832, 850  
  removing and replacing 700  
lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)  
  location 807, 832, 850  
  part number 807, 832, 850  
  removing and replacing 676  
lifter base assembly  
  removing and replacing 516  
lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)  
  location 811, 832, 850  
  part number 811, 832, 850  
  removing and replacing 699

lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)  
  location 807, 832, 850  
  part number 807, 832, 850  
  removing and replacing 675  
location diagram  
  covers, doors, and panels (product base) 273  
logo cover  
  location 789, 840, 849  
  part number 789, 840, 849  
  removing and replacing 307  
low-voltage power supply (LVPS)  
  location 799, 840, 853  
  part number 799, 840, 853  
  removing and replacing 479  
low-voltage power supply fan (FN104)  
  location 801, 838, 848  
  part number 801, 838, 848  
  removing and replacing 462

## M

main fan (FN101)  
  location 797, 838, 848  
  part number 797, 838, 848  
  removing and replacing 456  
memory DIMM  
  part number 772  
  removing and replacing 54  
motors  
  pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing 669  
mylar kit  
  part number 774

## N

notes iii

## O

order parts, accessories, and supplies 771  
ordering  
  accessories 771  
  parts 771  
  supplies 771  
  toner cartridge 772  
output accessory detection switch (SW104)  
  location 799, 833, 851

part number 799, 833, 851  
removing and replacing 474  
output bin and bin base assembly  
location 789, 834, 844  
part number 789, 834, 844  
removing and replacing 68  
output bin assembly kit  
part number 772

## P

paper feeder  
controller PCA, removing 678,  
731  
front cover, removing 667  
front upper cover, removing  
709  
left cover, removing 659, 711  
lifter assembly, removing 676  
lifter base assembly, removing  
675  
pickup assembly, removing 671  
pickup drive assembly,  
removing 669  
rear and rear lower cover,  
removing 705  
rear cover, removing 658  
right center cover, removing  
707  
right cover, removing 663  
right door, removing 706  
right front cover, removing 710  
right lower cover, removing 708  
right-front cover, removing 666  
Tray 3 lifter assembly,  
removing 728  
Tray 3 lifter base assembly,  
removing 724  
Tray 3 pickup assembly,  
removing 712  
Tray 4 lifter assembly,  
removing 729  
Tray 4 lifter base assembly,  
removing 726  
Tray 4 pickup assembly,  
removing 716  
Tray 5 lifter drive assembly,  
removing 730

Tray 5 pickup assembly,  
removing 720  
Tray pickup drive assembly,  
removing 722  
paper pickup assembly  
removing and replacing 614  
paper pickup assembly (1x500-sheet  
paper feeder with cabinet)  
location 811, 833, 851  
part number 811, 833, 851  
paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet  
paper feeder with cabinet)  
removing and replacing 695  
part numbers  
accessories 775  
customer self-repair kits 772  
service replacement kits 774  
supplies 772  
toner cartridge 772  
parts  
ordering 771  
parts lists and diagrams 769  
1x500-sheet paper feeder 804  
1x500-sheet paper feeder with  
cabinet 808  
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper  
feeder 812  
control panel 786  
covers, base product 788  
document feeder and scanner  
components 778  
document feeder components  
780  
envelope feeder 824  
high-voltage power supply 802  
internal components, product  
792  
scanner control board (SCB) 784  
stapling mailbox 818  
upper plate assembly 790  
using 776  
pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper  
feeder)  
location 807, 833, 851  
part number 807, 833, 851  
removing and replacing 671  
pickup drive assembly  
location 795, 833, 853  
part number 795, 833, 853  
removing and replacing 585

pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet  
paper feeder with cabinet)  
location 811, 833, 850  
part number 811, 833, 850  
removing and replacing 692  
pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet  
paper feeder)  
location 807, 833, 850  
part number 807, 833, 850  
removing and replacing 669  
pickup drive assembly (HCI optional  
paper feeder)  
location 817, 833, 850  
part number 817, 833, 850  
removing and replacing 722  
pickup, feed, and separation rollers,  
replacing tray 1 127  
power switch assembly  
location 789, 833, 853  
part number 789, 833, 853  
removing and replacing 314

## R

rear and rear lower cover (1x500-  
sheet paper feeder with cabinet)  
location 809, 837, 847  
part number 809, 837, 847  
removing and replacing 680  
rear and rear lower cover (HCI  
optional paper feeder)  
location 813, 837, 847  
part number 813, 837, 847  
removing and replacing 705  
rear cover (1x500-sheet paper  
feeder)  
location 805, 837, 847  
part number 805, 837, 847  
removing and replacing 658  
rear-left cover  
location 789, 837, 848  
part number 789, 837, 848  
removing and replacing 327  
rear-right cover  
location 789, 837, 849  
part number 789, 837, 849  
removing and replacing 323  
rear-top cover  
location 789, 837, 846  
part number 789, 837, 846  
removing and replacing 335

registration assembly  
     location 793, 834, 851  
     part number 793, 834, 851  
     removing and replacing 362

removal order  
     removing order 6

removal strategy  
     removing and replacing 3

removing and replacing  
     500-sheet trays and 2,500-sheet tray 137

    backside background selector 18

    cartridge fan (FN301) 467

    cartridge front-side fan (FN103) 460

    cartridge sensor assembly 378

    cassette pickup assembly 614

    cassette-door-open detection switch (SW105) 363

    control panel assembly 92

    controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 702

    controller PCA (HCI optional paper feeder) 731

    DC controller 391

    DC controller shield-plate assembly 382

    document feeder white backing 161

    document-feeder hing assembly 229

    document-feeder hinge cover 358

    document-feeder mylar strip 170

    document-feeder roller and separation pad 152

    drum motor (M102) 454

    duplex accessory 70

    envelope feeder cover 282

    fax PCA 61

    feed motor (M101) 443

    feed roller assembly 584

    formatter 23

    front cover 274

    front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 685

    front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 667

    front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 709

    front-left cover 307

    front-left cover and logo cover assembly 307

    fuser 83

    fuser motor (M299) 455

    fuser-entrance guide 76

    hard disk drive (HDD) 40

    high-voltage power supply (HVPS) 521

    ifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 699

    image scanner assembly 230

    image scanner cable cover 283

    interconnect board (ICB) 426

    interlock switch assembly (SW101 and SW106) 471

    keyboard assembly (M630z) 110

    laser/scanner assembly 375

    laser/scanner fan (FN102) 458

    left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 684

    left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 659

    left cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 711

    lifter assembly 518

    lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 700

    lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 676

    lifter base assembly 516

    lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 675

    logo cover 307

    low-voltage power supply (LVPS) 479

    low-voltage power supply fan (FN104) 462

    main fan (FN101) 456

    memory DIMM 54

    output accessory detection switch (SW104) 474

    output bin and bin base assembly 68

    paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 695

    pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 671

    pickup drive assembly 585

    pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 692

    pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 669

    pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 722

    power switch assembly 314

    rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 680

    rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 705

    rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 658

    rear-left cover 327

    rear-right cover 323

    rear-top cover 335

    registration assembly 362

    reverse assembly 371

    reverse assembly fan (FN105) 464

    reverse assembly upper guide assembly 369

    right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 689

    right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 707

    right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 663

    right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 687

    right door (HCI optional paper feeder) 706

    right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 710

    right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 708

    right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 690

    right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 686

    right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 666

    right-lower door 345

    scanner rear cover 182

- side-rear cover 296
- solid state memory (SSM) 40
- staple cartridge 14
- stapling mailbox driver PCA 742
- stapling mailbox handle assembly 735
- stapling mailbox output bin 3 drive assembly 764
- stapling mailbox output bin assembly 749
- stapling mailbox output bin assembly cover 740
- stapling mailbox stage assembly 761
- stapling mailbox stage top assembly 751
- stapling mailbox stapler unit 745
- stapling mailbox, front cover 733
- stapling mailbox, jogger assembly 746
- stapling mailbox, output bin 3 738
- stapling mailbox, output bin sensor PCA 744
- stapling mailbox, output bin solenoid 747
- stapling mailbox, rear cover 734
- stapling mailbox, top cover 737
- stock box and rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 682
- stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 681
- temperature sensor 380
- toner cartridge 8
- transfer roller 144
- Tray 1 cover 287
- Tray 1 pickup assembly 403
- tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers 127
- Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 728
- Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 724
- Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 712
- Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 729
- Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 726
- Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 716
- Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 730
- Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 720
- trays 295
- removing parts
  - after-service checklist 6
  - before-service checklist 6
  - controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 678
  - service approach 5
  - tools, required 5
- repair approach 5
- replacing parts
  - about 3
  - after-service checklist 6
  - before-service checklist 6
  - screws 3
  - service approach 5
  - tools, required 5
- reverse assembly
  - location 795, 834, 853
  - part number 795, 834, 853
  - removing and replacing 371
- reverse assembly fan (FN105)
  - removing and replacing 464
- reverse assembly upper guide assembly
  - removing and replacing 369
- reverse fan (FN105)
  - location 797, 838, 848
  - part number 797, 838, 848
- reverse guide assembly
  - location 795, 834, 853
  - part number 795, 834, 853
- right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
  - location 809, 837, 847
  - part number 809, 837, 847
  - removing and replacing 689
- right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder)
  - location 813, 837, 847
  - part number 813, 837, 847
  - removing and replacing 707
- right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
  - location 805, 837, 847
  - part number 805, 837, 847
  - removing and replacing 663
- right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
  - location 809, 834, 852
  - part number 809, 834, 852
  - removing and replacing 687
- right door (HCI optional paper feeder)
  - location 813, 834, 852
  - part number 813, 834, 852
  - removing and replacing 706
- right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder)
  - location 813, 837, 846
  - part number 813, 837, 846
  - removing and replacing 710
- right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder)
  - location 813, 837, 847
  - part number 813, 837, 847
  - removing and replacing 708
- right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
  - removing and replacing 690
- right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
  - location 809, 837, 846
  - part number 809, 837, 846
  - removing and replacing 686
- right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
  - location 805, 837, 846
  - part number 805, 837, 846
  - removing and replacing 666
- right-lower cover
  - location 789, 834, 853
  - part number 789, 834, 853
- right-lower door
  - removing and replacing 345
- rollers
  - 2,500-sheet tray, removing and replacing 137
  - 500-sheet trays, removing and replacing 137

- transfer, removing and replacing 144
- tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers, replacing 127

## S

- scanner control board
  - location 785, 841, 844
  - part number 785, 841, 844
  - removing and replacing 185
- scanner control board (SCB)
  - parts lists and diagrams 784
- scanner control board (SCB) kit
  - part number 774
- scanner rear cover
  - removing and replacing 182
- SCB
  - location 785, 841, 844
  - part number 785, 841, 844
  - removing and replacing 185
- screwdrivers, required 5
- screws
  - installing 3
  - types of 5
- secondary transfer roller
  - location 793, 839, 843
  - part number 793, 839, 843
- service and support information v, 2, 770
- service approach 5
- service maintenance kit
  - part number 772
- service replacement kits
  - part numbers 774
- side-rear cover
  - removing and replacing 296
- solid state memory (SSM)
  - removing and replacing 40
- solid-state memory (SSM)
  - part number 772
- staple cartridge
  - removing and replacing 14
- staple cartridge replacement kit
  - part number 772
- staples
  - part number 772
  - removing and replacing 14
- stapling mailbox
  - components 820, 822

- covers 818
  - part number 775
  - parts lists and diagrams 818
  - removal and repair 732
- stapling mailbox driver PCA
  - location 823, 831, 852
  - part number 823, 831, 852
  - removing and replacing 742
- stapling mailbox front cover
  - location 819, 831, 852
  - part number 819, 831, 852
- stapling mailbox handle assembly
  - removing and replacing 735
- stapling mailbox jogger
  - part number 823, 832, 852
- stapling mailbox output bin 3
  - location 819, 840, 852
  - part number 819, 840, 852
- stapling mailbox output bin 3 drive assembly
  - location 823, 833, 849
  - part number 823, 833, 849
- stapling mailbox output bin assembly
  - location 823, 830, 852
  - part number 823, 830, 852
  - removing and replacing 749
- stapling mailbox output bin assembly cover
  - removing and replacing 740
- stapling mailbox output bin output bin 3 drive assembly
  - removing and replacing 764
- stapling mailbox output bin sensor PCA
  - location 823, 830, 850
  - part number 823, 830, 850
- stapling mailbox output bin solenoid
  - location 823, 830, 850
  - part number 823, 830, 850
- stapling mailbox rear cover
  - location 819, 837, 847
  - part number 819, 837, 847
  - removing and replacing 734
- stapling mailbox stage assembly
  - location 821, 834, 849
  - part number 821, 834, 849
  - removing and replacing 761
- stapling mailbox stage top assembly
  - location 821, 842, 851

- part number 821, 842, 851
- removing and replacing 751
- stapling mailbox stapler unit
  - location 823, 834, 849
  - part number 823, 834, 849
  - removing and replacing 745
- stapling mailbox top cover
  - location 819, 834, 849
  - part number 819, 834, 849
- stapling mailbox, front cover
  - removing and replacing 733
- stapling mailbox, jogger assembly
  - removing and replacing 746
- stapling mailbox, output bin 3
  - removing and replacing 738
- stapling mailbox, output bin sensor PCA
  - removing and replacing 744
- stapling mailbox, output bin solenoid
  - removing and replacing 747
- stapling mailbox, top cover
  - removing and replacing 737
- static, precautions for 3
- stock box and rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
  - removing and replacing 682
- stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
  - location 809, 834, 852
  - part number 809, 834, 852
  - removing and replacing 681
- supplies
  - ordering 771
  - part numbers 772

## T

- temperature sensor
  - removing and replacing 380
- tips iii
- toner cartridge
  - ordering 772
  - part numbers 772
  - removing and replacing 8
- tools, required 5
- transfer roller
  - removing and replacing 144
- transfer roller kit
  - part number 772
- transfer roller, removing and replacing 144

- tray 1
  - pickup, feed, and separation
    - rollers, removing and replacing 127
- Tray 1 cover
  - location 789, 832, 853
  - part number 789, 832, 853
  - removing and replacing 287
- Tray 1 pickup assembly
  - location 793, 832, 853
  - part number 793, 832, 853
  - removing and replacing 403
- tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers
  - location 793, 841, 844
  - part number 793, 841, 844
  - removing and replacing 127
- Tray 1 roller kit
  - part number 772
- Tray 2–5 roller kit
  - part number 772
- Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
  - location 817, 832, 850
  - part number 817, 832, 850
  - removing and replacing 728
- Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
  - location 817, 832, 850
  - part number 817, 832, 850
  - removing and replacing 724
- Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
  - location 815, 833, 851
  - part number 815, 833, 851
  - removing and replacing 712
- Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
  - part number 817, 832, 850
  - removing and replacing 729
- Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
  - location 817, 832, 850
  - part number 817, 832, 850
  - removing and replacing 726
- Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
  - location 815, 833, 851
  - part number 815, 833, 851
  - removing and replacing 716
- Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
  - location 817, 832, 850
- Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
  - location 817, 832, 852
  - part number 817, 832, 852
  - removing and replacing 730
- Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
  - location 815, 833, 851
  - part number 815, 833, 851
  - removing and replacing 720
- trays
  - location 797, 807, 811, 815, 830, 835, 852
  - part number 797, 807, 811, 815, 830, 835, 852
  - removing and replacing 295
  - rollers, location 793, 841, 843
  - rollers, part number 793, 841, 843
  - rollers, removing and replacing 137
- troubleshooting
  - service approach 5

## U

- upper plate assembly
  - parts lists and diagrams 790

## W

- warnings iii







